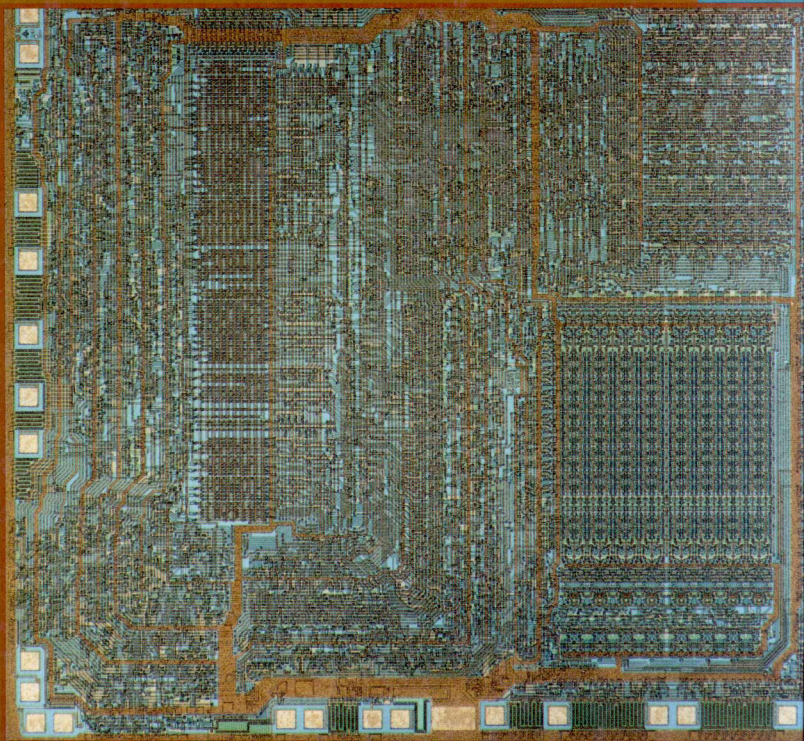


THE Z80 MICROPROCESSOR

Architecture, Interfacing,
Programming, and Design



Ramesh Gaonkar

THE Z80 MICROPROCESSOR

**Architecture, Interfacing,
Programming, and Design**

THE Z80 MICROPROCESSOR

Architecture, Interfacing,
Programming, and Design

Ramesh S. Gaonkar

ONONDAGA COMMUNITY COLLEGE
STATE UNIVERSITY OF NEW YORK

Macmillan Publishing Company
New York

Collier Macmillan Canada, Inc.
Toronto

Maxwell Macmillan International Publishing Group
New York Oxford Singapore Sydney

Cover Photo: Z80® CPU. Zilog, Inc.

Published by Merrill Publishing Company
A Bell & Howell Information Company
Columbus, Ohio 43216

This book was set in Times Roman

Administrative Editor: Steve Helba
Developmental Editor: Don Thompson
Production Coordinator: Rex Davidson
Art Coordinator: Pete Robison
Cover Designer: Cathy Watterson

Copyright © 1988 by Macmillan Publishing Company, a division of Macmillan, Inc.
All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced in any form, electronic
or mechanical, including photocopy, recording, or any information storage and
retrieval system, without permission in writing from the publisher.

Library of Congress Catalog Card Number: 87-62817
International Standard Book Number: 0-675-20540-9
Printed in the United States of America
3 4 5 6 7 8 9—92 91

Client: Macmillan
Job: 12182 GaokarFM
Date: 12/19/90
File: [Macmillan 2 / file 141] (bj)
Fonts: Times (32,1014)
Proof: 5 4 3 2 1

MERRILL'S INTERNATIONAL SERIES IN ELECTRICAL AND ELECTRONICS TECHNOLOGY

ADAMSON	<i>Structured BASIC Applied to Technology</i> , 20772-X
BATESTON	<i>Introduction to Control System Technology, Second Edition</i> , 8255-2
BEACH/JUSTICE	<i>DC/AC Circuit Essentials</i> , 20193-4
BERLIN	<i>Experiments in Electronic Devices, Second Edition</i> , 20881-5
BERLIN/GETZ	<i>The Illustrated Electronic Dictionary</i> , 20451-8
	<i>Principles of Electronic Instrumentation and Measurement</i> , 20449-6
BOGART	<i>Experiments in Instrumentation and Measurement</i> , 20450-X
BOGART/BROWN	<i>Electronic Devices and Circuits</i> , 20317-1
BOYLESTAD	<i>Experiments in Electronic Devices and Circuits</i> , 20488-7
BOYLESTAD/KOUSOUROU	<i>Introductory Circuit Analysis, Fifth Edition</i> , 20631-6
BREY	<i>Experiments in Circuit Analysis, Fifth Edition</i> , 20743-6
	<i>Microprocessors and Peripherals: Hardware, Software, Interfacing, and Applications, Second Edition</i> 20883-X
	<i>8086/8088 Microprocessor: Architecture, Programming and Interfacing</i> , 20443-7
BUCHLA	<i>Experiments in Electric Circuits Fundamentals</i> , 20836-X
	<i>Experiments in Electronics Fundamentals: Circuits, Devices and Applications</i> , 20736-3
COX	<i>Digital Experiments: Emphasizing Systems and Design</i> , 20562-X
FLOYD	<i>Digital Experiments: Emphasizing Troubleshooting</i> , 20518-2
	<i>Electric Circuits Fundamentals</i> , 20756-8
	<i>Electronics Fundamentals: Circuits, Devices and Applications</i> , 20714-2
	<i>Digital Fundamentals, Third Edition</i> , 20517-4
	<i>Electronic Devices, Second Edition</i> , 20883-1
	<i>Essentials of Electronic Devices</i> , 20062-8
	<i>Principles of Electric Circuits, Second Edition</i> , 20402-X
	<i>Electric Circuits, Electron Flow Version</i> , 20037-7
GAONKAR	<i>Microprocessor Architecture, Programming, and Applications with the 8085/8080A</i> , 20159-4
GILLIES	<i>The Z80 Microprocessor: Architecture, Interfacing, Programming, and Design</i> 20540-9
HUMPHRIES	<i>Instrumentation and Measurements for Electronic Technicians</i> , 20432-1
KULATHINAL	<i>Motors and Controls</i> , 20235-3
LAMIT/LLOYD	<i>Transform Analysis and Electronic Networks with Applications</i> , 20765-7
LAMIT/WAHLER/HIGGINS	<i>Drafting for Electronics</i> , 20200-0
MARUGGI	<i>Workbook in Drafting for Electronics</i> , 20417-8
MILLER	<i>Technical Graphics: Electronics Worktext</i> , 20161-6
ROSENBLATT/FRIEDMAN	<i>The 68000 Microprocessor: Architecture, Programming, and Applications</i> , 20522-0
SCHOENBECK	<i>Direct and Alternating Current Machinery, Second Edition</i> , 20160-8
SCHWARTZ	<i>Electronic Communications: Modulation and Transmission</i> , 20473-9
STANLEY, B.H.	<i>Survey of Electronics, Third Edition</i> , 20162-4
STANLEY, W.D.	<i>Experiments in Electric Circuits, Second Edition</i> , 20403-8
TOCCI	<i>Operational Amplifiers with Linear Integrated Circuits</i> , 20090-3
	<i>Fundamentals of Electronic Devices, Third Edition</i> , 9887-4
	<i>Electronic Devices, Third Edition, Conventional Flow Version</i> , 20063-6
	<i>Fundamentals of Pulse and Digital Circuits, Third Edition</i> , 20033-4
	<i>Introduction to Electric Circuit Analysis, Second Edition</i> , 20002-4
WEBB	<i>Programmable Controllers: Principles and Applications</i> , 20452-6
YOUNG	<i>Electronic Communication Techniques</i> , 20202-7

To Gaokar, Deodhar, Bhandwalkar, and Khadapkar—
who dedicated their lives to teaching,
devoted their waking moments to helping
others, and who have been my source of
inspiration and guidance.

Preface

This text is intended for microprocessor courses at the undergraduate level in technology and engineering. It is a comprehensive treatment of the microprocessor, covering both hardware and software based on the Z80 microprocessor family. The text assumes a course in digital logic as a prerequisite; however, it does not assume a background in programming. This text is also suited for the second level course in curricula where the first level course is based on another microprocessor. At the outset there are two critical questions: Why teach an 8-bit microprocessor when technology is dominated by 16- and 32-bit microprocessors? And why select the Z80 microprocessor?

The first question is best answered by an analogy from the auto industry. For transportation, we have trucks, sports cars, family cars, and compact cars. Each serves a different purpose. The 8-bit microprocessors have already established their market in the areas of industrial control, such as machine control, process control, instrumentation, and consumer appliances. The 16- and 32-bit microprocessors are so powerful that their applications are better suited in such areas as high-speed data processing, CAD/CAM, multitasking, and multi-user systems. The 16- and 32-bit microprocessors are less likely to replace 8-bit microprocessors in industrial control applications. In many applications, even 8-bit microprocessors are utilized at less than 50 percent of their capacity. Furthermore, the basic concepts of architecture, programming, and interfacing are easier to teach with the 8-bit than with the 16-bit microprocessor.

The second question has several answers. One is that the Z80 is one of the most widely used microprocessors in industrial applications. It has simple architecture and a powerful instruction set that includes the 8085 instruction set (except for two instructions). In addition, there appears to be a resurgence of interest in the Z80, indicated by the

introduction of Z80-compatible microprocessors by major manufacturers such as National Semiconductor, Hitachi, Toshiba, and Zilog itself.

The microprocessor is a general purpose programmable logic device. A thorough understanding of the microprocessor demands the concepts and skills from two different disciplines: hardware concepts from electronics and programming skills from computer science. Hardware is the physical structure of the microprocessor and the programming makes it function—one without the other is meaningless. Therefore, in this text, the contents are presented with an integrated approach to hardware and software in the context of the Z80 microprocessor. Part I focuses on the microprocessor architecture and interfacing, Part II introduces programming, and Part III integrates the hardware and software concepts from earlier sections in dealing with interfacing and designing microprocessor-based products. Each topic is covered in depth from basic concepts to industrial applications and illustrated by numerous examples with complete schematics. Material is supported with assignments having practical applications.

Part I consists of five chapters that deal with the hardware aspects of the microcomputer as a system, presented with the spiral approach. The material is presented in a format analogous to the view from an airplane that is getting ready to land. As the plane circles, the passenger observes a view without details. As the plane descends, the same view is seen with more details. This approach is preferable because students need to use a microcomputer as a system in their laboratory work in the early stages of a course, without understanding all aspects of the system. Chapter 1 presents an overview of the computer systems and discusses the microcomputer and its assembly language in the context of the entire spectrum of computers and their languages. Chapter 2 develops a generalized model of the microprocessor unit and focuses on the basic concepts related to memory and input/output (I/O). Chapter 3 examines the Z80 microprocessor in the context of the hardware and software models developed in Chapter 2. Chapters 4 and 5 are concerned with basic concepts in interfacing memory and I/O.

Part II has six chapters that deal with Z80 instructions, programming techniques, program development, and software development systems. Chapters 6 and 7 are general in nature, serving as an introduction to assembly language programming and assemblers. In the remaining chapters (Chapters 8 through 11), the contents are presented in a step-by-step format. A few instructions that can perform a simple task are selected. Each instruction is reviewed briefly by referring to the instruction set in the appendix. These instructions are then used in writing programs with explanations of programming techniques and troubleshooting hints. Each illustrative program begins with a problem statement, provides the analysis of the problem, illustrates the program, and explains the programming steps. These chapters conclude by reviewing all the instructions discussed in those chapters. The contents in Part II are presented in such a way that, in a course with heavy emphasis on hardware, students can teach themselves assembly language programming if necessary.

Part III synthesizes the hardware concepts of Part I and software techniques of Part II. It deals with advanced topics in interfacing memory and I/Os with numerous industrial and practical examples. Each illustration analyzes the hardware and includes software, and

describes how hardware and software work together to accomplish given objectives. Chapters 12 through 16 include various types of data transfer between the microprocessor and its peripherals, such as interrupts, interfacing of dynamic memory, I/O with hand-shake signals using programmable devices, and serial I/O. Chapter 17 deals primarily with the project design of a single-board microcomputer that brings together all the concepts discussed in the text, and Chapter 18 provides a brief introduction to 16-bit microprocessors and single-chip microcontrollers. Finally, the text includes two appendices related to the instruction set. Appendix A includes the complete set of Z80 instructions explained with illustrative examples in alphabetical order so that students can easily access the instruction set with a complete explanation of each item. In addition, Appendix E summarizes all the instructions with flat information for quick reference when writing programs.

A Word to Faculty Members

This is my second textbook based on my teaching experience and my association with industry engineers and programmers. It is an attempt to share my classroom experiences and my observations in industrial practices. My assumptions and observations are similar to those of my first 8085 textbook. They are as follows:

1. It is easier to teach microprocessor concepts with an 8-bit microprocessor than with a 16-bit microprocessor. Due to their easy access on college campuses, personal computers can be used to develop programs using cross assemblers.
2. Software (instructions) is an integral part of the microprocessor and demands an emphasis equal to that of the hardware.
3. In industry, for the development of microprocessor-based projects, 70 percent of the efforts are devoted to software and 30 percent to hardware.
4. Technology and engineering students tend to be oriented toward hardware and have considerable difficulty in programming.
5. Students have difficulty in understanding mnemonics and realizing the critical importance of flags.

The text meets the objectives of courses with various emphases at the undergraduate level. For a one-semester course with 50 percent hardware and 50 percent software emphasis, the following chapters are recommended: Chapters 1 through 5 for hardware and interfacing lectures, and Chapters 6 through 10 and selected sections of Chapter 11 for software laboratory sessions. For additional interfacing concepts, the initial sections of Chapters 12, 13, and 15 (concepts in introduction to interrupts, programmable I/O devices, and serial I/O) are recommended. If the course is heavily oriented toward hardware, Chapters 1 through 5 and Chapters 12 through 16 are recommended, and necessary programs can be selected from Chapters 6 through 10. Interfacing laboratory sessions can be designed around the illustrations in chapters or assignments given at the end of chapters. If the course is heavily oriented toward software, Chapters 1 through 3 and 6 through 11 can be used. For a two-semester course, the entire text can be covered. The instructor's manual includes a course design, suggested weekly lecture and laboratory schedule, solutions, and selected figures to produce transparencies.

A Word With Students

The microprocessor is an exciting, challenging, and growing field; it will pervade industry for decades to come. To meet the challenges of this growing technology, you will need to be well conversant with the programmable aspect of the microprocessor. Programming is a process of problem solving and communication in a strange language of mnemonics. Most often, hardware-oriented students find this communication process very difficult. One of the questions frequently asked by a student is, How do I get started in a given programming assignment? One approach to learning programming is to examine various types of programs and imitate them: Begin by studying the illustrative program relevant to an assignment, its flowchart, its analysis, program description, and particularly, the comments. Read the instructions from Appendix A as necessary and pay attention to the flags. This text is written in such a way that simple programming of the microprocessor can be self-taught. Once you master the elementary programming techniques, interfacing and design become exciting and fun.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

The primary incentive for writing this text came from the wide acceptance of my first 8085 text and the generous comments from faculty and students across the country. It would have been impossible, however, to devote the necessary time and energy to undertake such a project with a full-time teaching commitment. I wish to thank my wife, Shaila, whose ventures in the corporate world supported this undertaking and my daughters, Nelima and Vanita, who good naturedly tolerated the consequent disruptions in their young lives. In addition to my family members, several persons have made valuable contributions to this text. I would like to extend my sincere appreciation to my colleagues Peter Cahan and James Delaney for their contributions in its final phases. I cannot sufficiently emphasize the critical role played by reviewers in shaping the ideas: I have been fortunate to work directly with Peter Holsberg from Mercer Community College and David Delker at Kansas State University. Similarly, I appreciate the efforts and numerous suggestions of the other reviewers: Charles Finley, DeVry Institute of Technology, Kansas City, Missouri; Frank Gergelyi, Metropolitan Technical Institute, West Milford, New Jersey; and Kevin Greshock and Sam Watson, DeVry Institute of Technology, Lombard, Illinois.

I would like to thank Al Davis from Publication Services, who took painstaking efforts in editing the manuscript and converted my idiosyncratic prose into a readable text. Finally, I would like to thank Steve Helba, Tim McEwen, and Don Thompson for undertaking and coordinating this project through various phases, and to Rex Davidson and Pete Robison for seeing it through the production process.

Contents

PART I	MICROPROCESSOR ARCHITECTURE AND INTERFACING	1
Chapter 1	Microprocessors, Microcomputers, and Assembly Language	3
	1.1 Microprocessors 4 □ 1.2 From Large Computers to Single-Chip Microcomputers 11 □ 1.3 Microprocessor Instruction Set and Computer Languages 16	
Chapter 2	Microcomputer System: MPU, Memory, and I/O	25
	2.1 Generalized Microprocessor Unit (MPU) 26 □ 2.2 Memory 32 □ 2.3 Input and Output (I/O) Devices 44 □ 2.4 Example of a Microcomputer System 45	
Chapter 3	Z80 Microprocessor: Programming Model and Hardware Model	51
	3.1 The Z80 Programming Model 52 □ 3.2 Z80 Hardware Model 57 □ 3.3 Machine Cycles and Bus Timings 61 □ 3.4 Some Puzzling Questions and Their Answers 69 □ 3.5 Architecture of Contemporary 8-Bit Microprocessors 71	
Chapter 4	Memory Interfacing	81
	4.1 Interfacing Memory 82 □ 4.2 Illustrative Example 1: Interfacing 2732 EPROM 87 □ 4.3 Illustrative Example 2: Interfacing Static R/W Memory 90 □ 4.4 Illustrative Example 3: Designing Memory 92 □ 4.5 Testing and Troubleshooting Interfacing Circuits 94 □ 4.6 Some Questions and Answers 96	

Chapter 5	Interfacing I/O Devices	101
	5.1 Interfacing Output Devices 102 □ 5.2 Illustrative Example 1: Interfacing LEDs 105 □ 5.3 Interfacing Input Devices 107 □ 5.4 Illustrative Example 2: Interfacing Input Switches 110 □ 5.5 Memory-Mapped I/O 111 □ 5.6 Illustrative Example 3: Appliance Control Using Memory-Mapped I/O Technique 113 □ 5.7 Additional Illustrative Examples: Interfacing Sensors and Motors 117 □ 5.8 Troubleshooting I/O Interfacing Circuits 120 □ 5.9 Some Questions and Answers 121	
PART II	ASSEMBLY LANGUAGE PROGRAMMING: THE Z80	127
Chapter 6	Introduction to Z80 Assembly Language Programming	129
	6.1 Overview: Z80 Instruction Set 130 □ 6.2 Addressing Modes 137 □ 6.3 How to Write, Assemble, and Execute a Simple Assembly Language Program 139 □ 6.4 Flowcharting 143 □ 6.5 List of Selected Z80 Instructions 146	
Chapter 7	Software Development Systems and Assemblers	151
	7.1 Microprocessor-Based Software Development Systems □ 152 7.2 Assemblers 159 □ 7.3 Writing Programs Using an Assembler 162	
Chapter 8	Introduction to Z80 Instructions and Programming Techniques	169
	8.1 Data Copy (Load) Operations 170 □ 8.2 Arithmetic Operations 177 □ 8.3 Branch Operations 182 □ 8.4 Z80 Instructions Related to Index Registers 187 □ 8.5 Programming Techniques: Looping, Counting, and Indexing 189 □ 8.6 Illustrative Program 1: Block Transfer of Data Bytes 191 □ 8.7 Illustrative Program 2: Addition With Carry 193 □ 8.8 Debugging a Program 195 □ 8.9 Z80 Special Instructions 197 □ 8.10 Illustrative Program 3: Block Transfer of Data Bytes Using Z80 Special Instructions 198	
Chapter 9	Logic and Bit Manipulation Instructions	206
	9.1 Logic and Compare Operations 208 □ 9.2 Rotate (Shift) Operations and Bit Manipulation 213 □ 9.3 Illustrative Program 1: Searching for a Maximum Number 217 □ 9.4 Illustrative Program 2: Generating Square Wave Pulses 218 □ 9.5 Debugging Programs 221 □ 9.6 Z80 Special Instructions 223 □ 9.7 Illustrative Program 3: Searching for a Maximum Number Using the Instruction CPI 224	
Chapter 10	Stacks and Subroutines	233
	10.1 Stack 234 □ 10.2 Illustrative Program 1: Examining and Manipulating Flags 239 □ 10.3 Subroutine 241 □ 10.4 Illustrative Program 2: Traffic Signal Controller 245 □ 10.5 Subroutine	

	Documentation and Parameter Passing 249 □ 10.6 Advanced Subroutine Concepts 251 □ 10.7 Illustrative Program 3: BCD Counter and Its Seven-Segment LED Display 252 □ 10.8 Modular Programming and Debugging 257	
Chapter 11	Application Programs and Software Design 263	263
	11.1 16-Bit Operations 264 □ 11.2 Illustrative Program: Multiprecision Addition 268 □ 11.3 Binary Multiplication 269 □ 11.4 Binary Division 271 □ 11.5 Illustrative Program: BCD to Binary Conversion 274 □ 11.6 Illustrative Program: Binary to BCD Conversion 277 □ 11.7 Illustrative Program: ASCII to Binary Code Conversion 279 □ 11.8 Illustrative Program: Binary to ASCII Code Conversion 281 □ 11.9 Software Design 282	
PART III	INTERFACING PERIPHERALS, PROGRAMMABLE I/O DEVICES, APPLICATIONS, AND DESIGN	289
Chapter 12	Interrupts 293	293
	12.1 Basic Concepts in Interrupt I/O 294 □ 12.2 Illustration: An Implementation of the Z80 Interrupt in Mode 0 302 □ 12.3 Illustration: Interfacing an A/D Converter in Interrupt Mode 1 307 □ 12.4 Interrupt Mode 2 313 □ 12.5 Nonmaskable Interrupt 315 □ 12.6 Multiple Interrupts and Priorities 318 □ 12.7 Illustration: Restart as a Software Instruction—Implementation of a Breakpoint Technique 322	
Chapter 13	Programmable Interface Devices 329	329
	13.1 Basic Concepts in Programmable Devices 330 □ 13.2 Z80 Parallel Input/Output Device (PIO) 333 □ 13.3 Modes 0, 1, and 2 with Handshake Signals and Interrupt I/O 339 □ 13.4 Mode 3: Bit Mode 344 □ 13.5 Illustration: Interfacing Keyboard and Seven-Segment Display 348 □ 13.6 Illustration: Bidirectional Data Transfer between Two Microcomputers Using PIO in Mode 2 359 □ 13.7 The 8255A Programmable Peripheral Interface 366	
Chapter 14	Programmable Timers and Counters 385	385
	14.1 Z80 CTC—Counter/Timer Circuit 386 □ 14.2 Illustration: Design of a Baud (Rate) Generator Using the CTC in the Timer Mode 395 □ 14.3 Illustration: Using the CTC in the Counter Mode with Interrupt 398 □ 14.4 The 8253 Programmable Interval Timer 401	
Chapter 15	Serial I/O and Data Communication 411	411
	15.1 Basic Concepts in Serial I/O 412 □ 15.2 Software-Controlled Asynchronous Serial I/O 422 □ 15.3 Programmable Communication Interface—Intel 8251A: Hardware Approach to Serial I/O 425 □ 15.4 Illustration: Interfacing a RS-232 Terminal Using the 8251A in the	

	Polled Mode 435 □ 15.5 Serial Input/Output Controllers: Z80 SIO and DART 439 □ 15.6 Illustration: Interfacing a RS-232 Terminal Using DART (SIO) in the Interrupt Mode 455	
Chapter 16	Advanced Topics in Memory Design and DMA Concepts 463 16.1 Interfacing Memory Using Wait States 464 □ 16.2 Interfacing Dynamic Memory 468 □ 16.3 Illustration: Interfacing the 2118—16K R/W Dynamic Memory—with the Z80 475 □ 16.4 Designing Memory Systems 478 □ 16.5 Direct Memory Access (DMA) and the Z80 DMA Controller 484	
Chapter 17	Designing Microprocessor-Based Products 495 17.1 Project Statement: Designing a Microcomputer System 496 □ 17.2 Z80 MPU Design 497 □ 17.3 Memory Design 504 □ 17.4 Designing Scanned Displays 507 □ 17.5 Interfacing a Matrix Keyboard 512 □ 17.6 Project Decisions and Software Design 519 □ 17.7 Designing Software Modules 526 □ 17.8 Development and Troubleshooting Tools 532	
Chapter 18	Trends in Microprocessor Technology 537 18.1 Single-Chip Microcomputers (Microcontrollers) 538 □ 18.2 16- and 32-Bit Microprocessors 541 □ 18.3 Bus Interface Standards 554	
References		559
Appendix A	Z80 Instruction Set	561
Appendix B	Number Systems 621 B.1 Number Conversion 621 □ B.2 2's Complement and Arithmetic Operations 623 □ B.3 Modulo-2 Arithmetic 629	621
Appendix C	American Standard Code for Information Interchange: ASCII Codes	631
Appendix D	Preferred Logic Symbols	633
Appendix E	The Micro-Trainer: Z80-Based Single-Board Microcomputer for Laboratory Use	637
Appendix F	Z80 Instruction Summary	641
Index		647

CHAPTER 1:
Microprocessors, Microcomputers, and
Assembly Language

CHAPTER 2:
Microcomputer System: MPU, Memory, and I/O

CHAPTER 3:
Z80 Microprocessor: Programming Model and
Hardware Model

CHAPTER 4:
Memory Interfacing

CHAPTER 5:
Interfacing I/O Devices

Part I of this book is concerned primarily with microprocessor architecture in the context of microprocessor-based products. The microprocessor-based systems are discussed in terms of three components—the microprocessor, memory, and input and output—and their communication process. The role of the programming languages, from the machine language to high-level languages, is presented in the context of the system.

The material is presented in a format similar to the view from an airplane preparing to land. As the plane circles, one observes a view without any details. As the plane descends, one begins to see the same view but with more details. Chapter 1 presents the microprocessor from two points of view: the microprocessor as a programmable device and as an element of a computer system, and how it communicates with memory and I/O. The chapter also discusses the role of assembly language in microprocessor-based products and presents an overview of various types of computers—from large computers to microcomputers—and their applications. Chapter 2 describes in generalized models a microcomputer system and its three components: the

I

Microprocessor Architecture and Interfacing

microprocessor, memory, and input and output (I/O). Chapters 3, 4, and 5 examine these components in detail and discuss how memory and I/O devices interface with the Z80 microprocessor.

PREREQUISITES

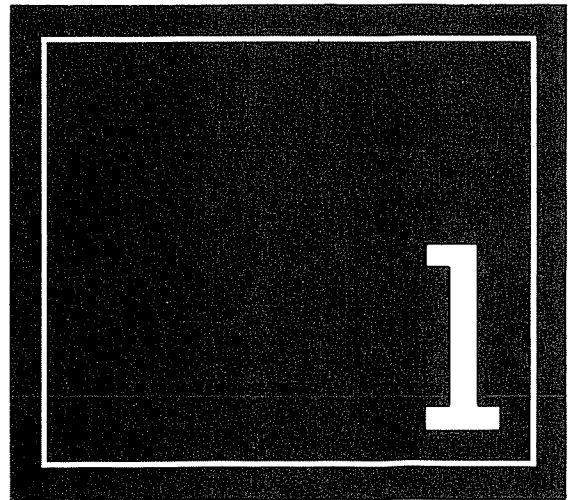
The reader is expected to know the following concepts:

- Number systems (binary, octal and hexadecimal) and their conversions.
- Boolean algebra, logic gates, flip-flops, and registers.
- Concepts in combinational and sequential logic.

Microprocessors, Microcomputers, and Assembly Language

The microcomputer plays a significant role in the everyday functioning of industrialized societies. The microcomputer is no different from any other computer in its basic structure. In the 1960s, computers were accessible and affordable only to such institutions as large corporations, universities, and government agencies. Today because of advances in semiconductor technology, the million-dollar computing capacity of the 1960s is now available for less than five dollars in an integrated circuit called the **microprocessor**. The microprocessor can be defined as a programmable logic device that can be used to control processes, to turn devices on or off, or as a data processing unit of a computer. A computer that is designed using the microprocessor is called a **microcomputer**. This chapter introduces the basic structure of a computer and shows how the same structure is applicable to microprocessor-based products. Later in the chapter, microcomputer applications in an industrial environment are presented in the context of the entire spectrum of various computer applications.

The microprocessor communicates and operates in the binary numbers 0 and 1, called **bits**. Each microprocessor has a fixed set of instructions in the form of binary patterns called a **machine language**. However, it is difficult for humans to communicate



in the language of 0s and 1s. Therefore, the binary instructions are given abbreviated names, called **mnemonics**, which form the **assembly language** for a given microprocessor. This chapter explains both the machine language and the assembly language of the microprocessor known as the Z80. The advantages of assembly language are compared with such English-like languages as BASIC and FORTRAN.

OBJECTIVES

- Draw a block diagram of a microprocessor-based system and explain the functions of each component: microprocessor, memory, and I/O, and their lines of communication (the bus).
- Explain the terms SSI, MSI, and LSI.
- Define the terms *bit*, *byte*, *word*, *instruction*, *software*, and *hardware*.
- Explain the difference between the machine language and the assembly language of a computer.
- Explain the terms low-level and high-level languages.
- Explain the advantages of an assembly language over high-level languages.

1.1

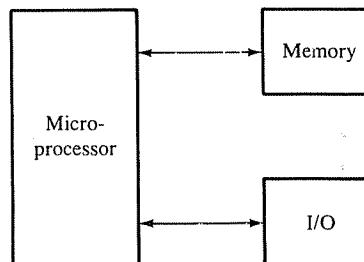
MICROPROCESSORS

A microprocessor is a multipurpose, *programmable* logic device that reads *binary* instructions from a storage device called *memory*, accepts binary data as *input* and processes data according to those instructions, and provides results as *output*. A typical programmable machine can be represented with three components: microprocessor, memory, and I/O as shown in Figure 1.1. These three components work together or interact with each other to perform a given task; thus, they comprise a system. The physical components of this system are called **hardware**. A set of instructions written for the microprocessor to perform a task is called a **program**, and a group of programs is called **software**. The machine (system) represented in Figure 1.1 can be programmed to turn traffic lights on and off, compute mathematical functions, or keep track of a guidance system. This system may be simple or sophisticated, depending on its applications, and it is recognized by various names depending upon the purpose for which it is designed. When the microprocessor system is used for control applications such as turning devices (or machines) on and off, it is generally known as a microcontroller. When it is used for computing or data processing, it is known as microcomputer.

BINARY DIGITS

The microprocessor operates in binary digits, 0 and 1, also known as bits. **Bit** is an abbreviation for the term *binary digit*. These digits are represented in terms of electrical voltages in the machine: generally, 0 represents one voltage level, and 1 represents another. The digits 0 and 1 are also synonymous with low and high, respectively.

FIGURE 1.1
A Programmable Machine



Each microprocessor recognizes and processes a group of bits called the **word**, and microprocessors are classified according to their word length. For example, a processor with an 8-bit word is known as an 8-bit microprocessor, and a processor with a 16-bit word is known as a 16-bit microprocessor.

A MICROPROCESSOR AS A PROGRAMMABLE DEVICE

The fact that the microprocessor is programmable means it can be instructed to perform given tasks within its capability. A toaster is an example of an elementary programmable machine. It can be programmed to remain on for a given length of time by adjusting a mechanical lever to a “light” or “dark” setting. The toaster is designed to understand and execute one instruction. On the other hand, the present-day microprocessor is designed to understand and execute many binary instructions. It can be used to perform sophisticated computing functions as well as to perform such simple control tasks as turning devices on and off. The person using a microprocessor selects appropriate instructions and asks the microprocessor to perform various tasks on a given set of data.

The engineer who designs a toaster determines the timing for light and dark toast, and the manufacturer of the toaster provides the necessary instructions to operate the toaster. Similarly, after the engineers designing a microprocessor determine a set of tasks the microprocessor should perform and design the necessary logic circuits, the manufacturer of the microprocessor provides the user with a list of the instructions the processor will understand. For example, an instruction for adding two numbers may look like a group of eight binary digits, such as 1000 0000. These instructions are simply a pattern of 0s and 1s. The user (programmer) selects instructions from the list and determines the sequence of execution for a given task. These instructions are entered or stored in a storage device called memory, which can be read by the microprocessor.

MEMORY

Memory is like the page(s) of a notebook with space for a fixed number of binary numbers on each line. However, these pages are generally made of semiconductor material. Typically, each line is an 8-bit register that can store eight binary bits, and several of these registers are arranged in a sequence called memory. These registers are always grouped together in powers of two. For example, a group of 1024 (2^{10}) 8-bit registers on a semiconductor chip is known as 1K byte of memory; 1K is the closest approximation in thousands. The user writes the necessary instructions and data in memory through an input device (described below), and asks the microprocessor to perform the given task and find an answer. The answer is generally displayed at an output device (described below) or stored in memory.

INPUT/OUTPUT

The user can enter instructions and data into memory through such devices as a keyboard or simple switches. These devices are called **input devices**. The microprocessor reads the instructions from the memory and processes the data according to those instructions. The result can be displayed by such a device as seven-segment LEDs (Light Emitting Diodes) or printed by a printer. These devices are called **output devices**.

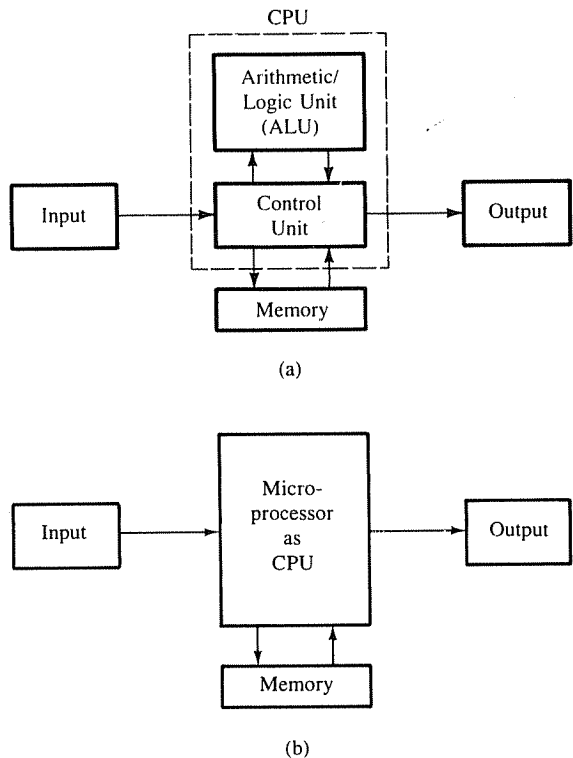
MICROPROCESSOR AS A CPU

We can also view the microprocessor as a primary component of a computer. Traditionally, the computer is represented in block diagram as shown in Figure 1.2 (a). The block diagram shows that the computer has four components: Memory, Input, Output, and the central processing unit (CPU), which consists of the ALU (Arithmetic/Logic Unit) and Control Unit. The CPU contains various registers to store data, the arithmetic/logic unit (ALU) to perform arithmetic and logical operations, instruction decoders, counters, and control lines. The CPU reads instructions from the memory and performs the tasks specified. It communicates with input/output devices either to accept or to send data. These devices are also known as **peripherals**. The CPU is the primary and central player in communicating with such devices as memory, input, and output. However, the timing of the communication process is controlled by the group of circuits called the control unit.

In the 1960s, the CPU was designed with discrete components on various boards. With the advent of the integrated circuit technology, it became possible to build the CPU on a single chip; this came to be known as a microprocessor, and the traditional block diagram shown in Figure 1.2(a) can be replaced by the block diagram shown in Figure 1.2(b).

FIGURE 1.2

(a) Traditional Block Diagram of a Computer (b) Block Diagram of a Computer with the Microprocessor as CPU



1.11 Advances in Semiconductor Technology

In the last thirty years, semiconductor technology has undergone unprecedented changes. After the invention of the transistor, integrated circuits (ICs) appeared on the scene at the end of the 1950s; an entire circuit consisting of several transistors, diodes, and resistors could be designed on a single chip. In the early 1960s, logic gates known as the 7400 series were commonly available as ICs, and the technology of integrating the circuits of a logic gate on a single chip became known as Small-Scale Integration (SSI). As semiconductor technology advanced, more than 100 gates were fabricated on one chip; this was called Medium-Scale Integration (MSI). A typical example of MSI is a decade counter (7490). Within a few years, it was possible to fabricate more than 1000 gates on a single chip; this came to be known as Large-Scale Integration (LSI). Now we are in the era of Very-Large-Scale Integration (VLSI) and Super-Large-Scale Integration (SLSI). The lines of demarcation between these different scales of integration are rather ill-defined and arbitrary.

As the technology moved from SSI to LSI, more and more logic circuits were built on one chip, and they could be programmed to do different functions through hard wired connections. For example, a counter chip can be programmed to count in Hex or decimal by providing logic 0 or 1 through appropriate pin connections. The next step was the idea of providing 0s and 1s through a register. The necessary signal patterns of 0s and 1s were stored in registers and given to the programmable chip at appropriate times; the group of registers used for storage was called memory. Because of the LSI technology, it became possible to build many computing functions and their related timing on a single chip.

The Intel 4004 was the first 4-bit programmable device that was primarily used in calculators. It was designed by Intel Corporation and became known as the 4-bit microprocessor. It was quickly replaced by the 8-bit microprocessor (the Intel 8008), which was in turn superseded by the Intel 8080. In the mid-1970s, the Intel 8080 was widely used in control applications, and small computers also were designed using the 8080 as the CPU; these computers became known as microcomputers. Within a few years after the emergence of the 8080, the Motorola 6800, the Zilog Z80, and the Intel 8085 microprocessors were developed as improvements over the 8080. The 6800 was designed with a different architecture and the instruction set from the 8080. On the other hand, the 8085 and the Z80 were designed as **upward software compatible** with the 8080; that is, they included all the instructions of the 8080 plus additional instructions. In terms of the instruction set, the 8080 and the 8085 are almost identical; however, the Z80 has a powerful instruction set containing twice as many instructions as the 8080. As the microprocessors began to acquire more and more computing functions, they were viewed more as CPUs rather than as programmable logic devices. Most microcomputers are now built with 16- and 32-bit microprocessors, and 64-bit microprocessors are also being used in some prototype computers. The 8-bit microprocessors are not simply being replaced by more powerful microprocessors, however; each microprocessor has begun to carve a niche for its own applications. The 8-bit microprocessors are being used as programmable logic devices in control applications, and the 16- and 32-bit microprocessors are being used for mathematical computing (number crunching) and data processing applications. Our focus here is in using 8-bit microprocessors as programmable devices.

1.12 Microcomputer Organization

Figure 1.3 shows a simplified but formal structure of a microcomputer. It includes four components: *microprocessor*, *input*, *output*, and *memory* (Read/Write Memory and Read-Only Memory). These components are organized around a common communication path called a **bus**. The entire group of components is also referred to as a system or a microcomputer system, and the components themselves are referred to as sub-systems. At the outset, it is necessary to differentiate between the terms microprocessor and microcomputer because of the common misuse of these terms in popular literature. The microprocessor is one component of the microcomputer. On the other hand, the microcomputer is a complete computer similar to any other computer, except that the CPU functions of the microcomputer are performed by the microprocessor. Similarly, the term **peripheral** is used for input/output devices. The various components of the microcomputer shown in Figure 1.3 and their functions are described in this section.

MICROPROCESSOR

The microprocessor is a semiconductor device consisting of electronic logic circuits manufactured by using either a large-scale (LSI) or very-large-scale integration (VLSI) technique. The microprocessor is capable of performing various computing functions and making decisions to change the sequence of program execution. In large computers, a CPU implemented on one or more circuit boards performs these computing functions. The microprocessor is in many ways similar to the CPU, but includes all the logic circuitry, including the control unit, on one chip. The microprocessor can be divided into three segments for the sake of clarity, as shown in Figure 1.3: Arithmetic/Logic Unit (ALU), Register Array, and Control Unit.

Arithmetic/Logic Unit This is the area of the microprocessor where various computing functions are performed on data. The ALU unit performs such arithmetic operations as addition and subtraction, and such logic operations as AND, OR, and exclusive OR. Results are stored either in registers or in memory.

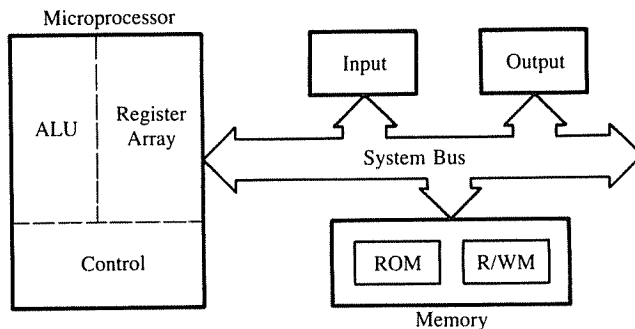


FIGURE 1.3
Microcomputer with Bus Architecture

Register Array This area of the microprocessor consists of various registers. These registers are primarily used to store data temporarily during the execution of a program. Some of the registers are accessible to the user through instructions.

Control Unit The control unit provides the necessary timing and control signals to all the operations in the microcomputer. It controls the flow of data between the microprocessor and memory and peripherals.

Now the question is: what is the relationship among the programmer's instruction (binary pattern of 0s and 1s), the ALU, and the control unit? This can be explained with the example of a Full Adder circuit. A Full Adder circuit can be designed with registers, logic gates, and a clock. The clock initiates the adding operation. Similarly, the bit pattern of an instruction initiates a sequence of clock signals, activates the appropriate logic circuits in the ALU, and performs the task. This is called microprogramming, which is done in the design stage of the microprocessor. The bit patterns required to initiate these microprogram operations are given to the programmer in the form of the instruction set of the microprocessor. The programmer selects appropriate bit patterns from the set for a given task and enters them sequentially in memory through an input device. When the CPU reads these bit patterns one at a time, it initiates appropriate microprograms through the control unit, and performs the task specified in the instructions.

At present, various microprocessors are available from different manufacturers. Examples of widely used 8-bit microprocessors include the Intel 8085, Zilog Z80, and Motorola 6800 and 6809. Earlier microcomputers such as the Radio Shack TRS-80, the Televideo 803, and the Kaypro 4 are designed around the Z80 microprocessor. The recent versions of IBM personal computers, Personal System/2, are designed around 16-bit and 32-bit microprocessors; the model 60 is based on the Intel 80286 (16-bit) and the model 80 is based on the Intel 80386 (32-bit). Single-board microcomputers such as the Intel SDK-85, the Motorola MEK-6800-D2, the Multitech Micro-Professor, and the CAMI Research Micro-Trainer are commonly used in college laboratories; the SDK-85 is based on the 8085 microprocessor, the MEK-6800-D2 on the 6800 microprocessor, and the Micro-Professor and the Micro-Trainer on the Z80 microprocessor.

INPUT

The input section transfers data and instructions in binary from the outside world to the microprocessor. It includes such devices as a keyboard, a teletype, and an analog-to-digital converter. Typically, a microcomputer used in college laboratories includes either a hexadecimal keyboard or an ASCII keyboard as an input device. The hexadecimal (Hex) keyboard has 16 data keys (0 to 9 and A to F) and some additional function keys to perform such operations as storing data and executing programs. The ASCII keyboard (explained in Section 1.3) is similar to a typewriter keyboard, and it is used to enter programs in an English-like language. Although the ASCII keyboard is found in most microcomputers, single-board microcomputers generally have Hex keyboards.

OUTPUT

The output section transfers data from the microprocessor to such output devices as light emitting diodes (LEDs), a cathode-ray tube (CRT), a printer, a magnetic tape, or another

computer. Typically, single-board computers include LEDs and seven-segment LEDs as output devices.

MEMORY

Memory stores such binary information as instructions and data, and provides that information to the microprocessor whenever necessary. To execute programs, the microprocessor reads instructions and data from memory and performs the computing operations in its ALU section. Results are either transferred to the output section for display or stored in memory for later use. The memory block (Figure 1.3) has two sections: **Read-Only Memory** (ROM) and **Read/Write Memory** (R/W), popularly known as **Random-Access Memory** (RAM).

The ROM is used to store programs that do not need alterations. The monitor program of a single-board microcomputer is generally stored in the ROM. This program interprets the information entered through a keyboard and provides equivalent binary digits to the microprocessor. Programs stored in the ROM can only be read; they cannot be altered.

The Read/Write Memory (R/W) is also known as user memory. It is used to store user programs and data. In single-board microcomputers, the monitor program monitors the Hex keys and stores those instructions and data in the R/W memory. The information stored in this memory can be easily read and altered.

SYSTEM BUS

The system bus is a communication path between the microprocessor and peripherals; it is nothing but a group of wires to carry bits. In fact, there are several buses in the system that will be discussed in the next chapter. All peripherals (and memory) share the same bus; however, the microprocessor communicates with only one peripheral at a time; the timing is provided by the control unit of the microprocessor.

1.13 How Does the Microcomputer Work?

Assume that a program and data are already entered in the R/W memory. (How to write and execute a program will be explained later.) The program includes binary instructions to add given data and to display the answer at the seven-segment LEDs. When the microcomputer is given a command to execute the program, it reads and executes one instruction at a time and finally sends the result to the seven-segment LEDs for display.

This process of program execution can best be described by comparing it to the process of assembling a radio kit. The instructions for assembling the radio are printed in a sequence on a sheet of paper. One reads the first instruction, then picks up the necessary components of the radio and performs the task. The sequence of the process is *read*, *interpret*, and *perform*. The microprocessor works the same way. The instructions are stored sequentially in the memory. The microprocessor fetches the first instruction from its memory sheet, decodes it, and executes that instruction. The sequence of *fetch*, *decode*, and *execute* is continued until the microprocessor comes across an instruction to *stop*. During the entire process, the microprocessor uses the system bus to fetch the binary instructions and data from the memory. It uses registers from the register section to store

data temporarily, and it performs the computing function in the ALU section. Finally, it sends out the result in binary, using the same bus lines, to the seven-segment LEDs.

1.14 Summary of Important Concepts

The functions of various components of a microcomputer can be summarized as follows:

1. The microprocessor
 - communicates with all peripherals (memory and I/Os) using the system bus.
 - controls timing of information flow.
 - performs the computing tasks specified in a program.
2. The memory
 - stores binary instructions and data, called programs.
 - provides the instructions and data to the microprocessor on request.
 - stores results and data for the microprocessor.
3. The input device
 - enters data and instructions under the control of a program such as a monitor program.
4. The output device
 - accepts data from the microprocessor as specified in a program.
5. The bus
 - carries bits between the microprocessor and memory and I/Os.

FROM LARGE COMPUTERS TO SINGLE-CHIP MICROCOMPUTERS

1.2

In the last thirty years, advances in semiconductor technology have had an unprecedented impact on computers. Thirty years ago, computers were accessible only to big corporations, universities, and government agencies. Now, “computer” has become a common word. The range of computers now available extends from such sophisticated, multi-million-dollar machines as the IBM 3090 to the less-than-\$200 home computer. All the computers now available on the market include the same basic components shown in Figure 1.3. Nevertheless, it is obvious that these computers are not all the same.

Different types of computers are designed to serve different purposes. Some are suitable for scientific calculations, while others are used simply for turning appliances on and off. Thus, it is necessary to have an overview of the entire spectrum of computer applications as a context for understanding the topics and applications discussed in this text. Until 15 years ago, computers were broadly classified in three categories: mainframe, mini-, and microcomputers. Since then, technology has changed considerably, and the distinctions between these categories have been blurred. Initially, the microcomputer was recognized as a computer with a microprocessor as its CPU. Now practically all computers have various types of microprocessors performing different functions within the large

CPU. For the sake of convenience, computers are classified here as large computers, medium-sized computers, and microcomputers.

1.21 Large Computers

These are large, general-purpose computers designed to perform such data processing tasks as complex scientific and engineering calculations and handling of records for large corporations or government agencies. The price is generally beyond \$1 million and can go as high as \$10 million. Typical examples of these computers include IBM 3090 or IBM 9370 series, Burroughs 6700, and Univac 1100.

These are high speed computers, and their word lengths range from 32 to 64 bits. They are capable of addressing megabytes of memory and handling all types of peripherals. For the more expensive, the CPU alone may cost more than one million dollars. For example, the IBM 3000/81 CPU, capable of addressing 32 megabytes of memory, may cost more than \$3 million; the price of the total system may go as high as \$6 million. However, IBM also has medium-sized systems, called 4300 series, costing around \$100,000, and they are also known as **mainframe computers**.

1.22 Medium-Sized Computers

In the late 1960s, these computers were designed to meet the instructional needs of small colleges, the manufacturing problems of small factories, and the data processing tasks of medium-sized businesses, such as payroll and accounting. They were called **minicomputers**. The price range was anywhere from \$25,000 to \$100,000. Typical examples include such computers as Digital Equipment PDP 11/45 and Data General Nova.

These computers were slower than the large computers, and their word length generally ranged from 12 to 32 bits. They were capable of addressing 64K to 256K bytes of memory. Some of the larger minicomputers were known as **midicomputers**. However, these classifications are no longer valid. For example, Digital Equipment's new VAX 11 system is a 32-bit machine with megabytes of memory addressing capacity. The price ranges from \$50,000 to \$450,000. The high end of the VAX 11 system is almost in the territory of the large computers.

1.23 Microcomputers

The 4-bit and 8-bit microprocessors became available in the mid 1970s, and initial applications were primarily in the areas of machine control and instrumentation. As the price of the microprocessors and memory began to decline, the applications mushroomed in almost all areas, including video games, word processing, and small business applications. Early arrivals in the microcomputer market, such as Cromemco, North Star Horizon, Radio Shack TRS-80, and Apple were designed around 8-bit microprocessors. Since then, 16-bit and 32-bit microprocessors such as Intel 8086/88, 80286, and 80386, Motorola 68000, and Zilog Z8000 have been introduced, and recent microcomputers have been designed around these microprocessors. Present day microcomputers can be classified into four groups: business (or personal), home, single-board, and single-chip microcomputers.

BUSINESS MICROCOMPUTERS

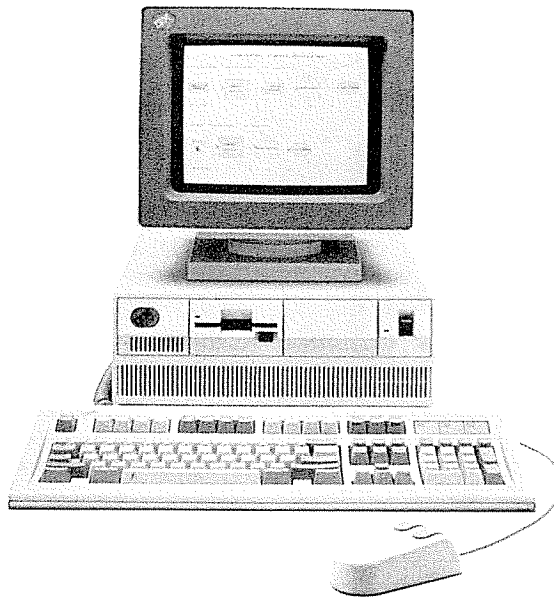
These microcomputers are being used for a variety of purposes, such as payroll, business accounts, word processing, legal and medical recordkeeping, personal finance, and instruction. They are also known as personal computers. Typically, the price ranges from \$1,000 to \$8,000 for a single-user system, and it can go higher for a multi-user system. Examples include such microcomputers as IBM Personal Computers (IBM PC, XT, AT, System/2), the AT&T 6300 series, Apple Computers, and Zenith or Compaq computers.

At the low end of the microcomputer spectrum, a typical configuration includes an 8-bit or 16-bit microprocessor, 64K (or 128K) bytes of memory, a CRT terminal, a printer, and dual disk drive for 5¼-inch floppy disks. The **floppy disk** is a magnetic medium similar to a cassette tape except that it is round in shape, like a record. Information recorded on these disks can be accessed randomly using disk drives, while information stored on a cassette tape is accessed serially. In order to read information at the end of the tape, the user must run the entire tape through the machine. Floppy disks are used to store such programs as compilers, interpreters, system programs, user programs, and data. Whenever the user needs to write a program, the necessary software is transferred from the floppy disk to the system's memory. At the high end of the microcomputer spectrum, the basic configuration remains essentially similar. It may include a 16-bit or 32-bit microprocessor, a hard disk with megabytes of storage, two floppy disks, an expensive terminal, and a printer.

FIGURE 1.4

Microcomputer with Disk Storage:
IBM Personal System/2

SOURCE: Photograph courtesy of IBM Corporation



HOME COMPUTERS

Home computers are differentiated from business microcomputers in terms of their memory storage. Typically, these computers have an 8-bit microprocessor, a CRT terminal with an ASCII typewriter, 16K to 64K memory, and a cassette tape as a storage medium. Some of these computers can be used with television as a video monitor. The prices of these computers may range from less than \$200 to \$500. Typical examples include Commodore 64, Tandy 100, and Atari 130XE. These microcomputers are used primarily for playing video games, learning simple programming, and running some instructional programs.

SINGLE-BOARD MICROCOMPUTERS

These microcomputers are used primarily in college laboratories and industries for instructional purposes or for evaluating the performance of a given microprocessor. They can also be part of some larger systems. Typically, these microcomputers include an 8-bit microprocessor, from 256 to 2K bytes of user memory, a Hex keyboard, and seven-segment LEDs for display. The system monitor programs of these computers are generally small;

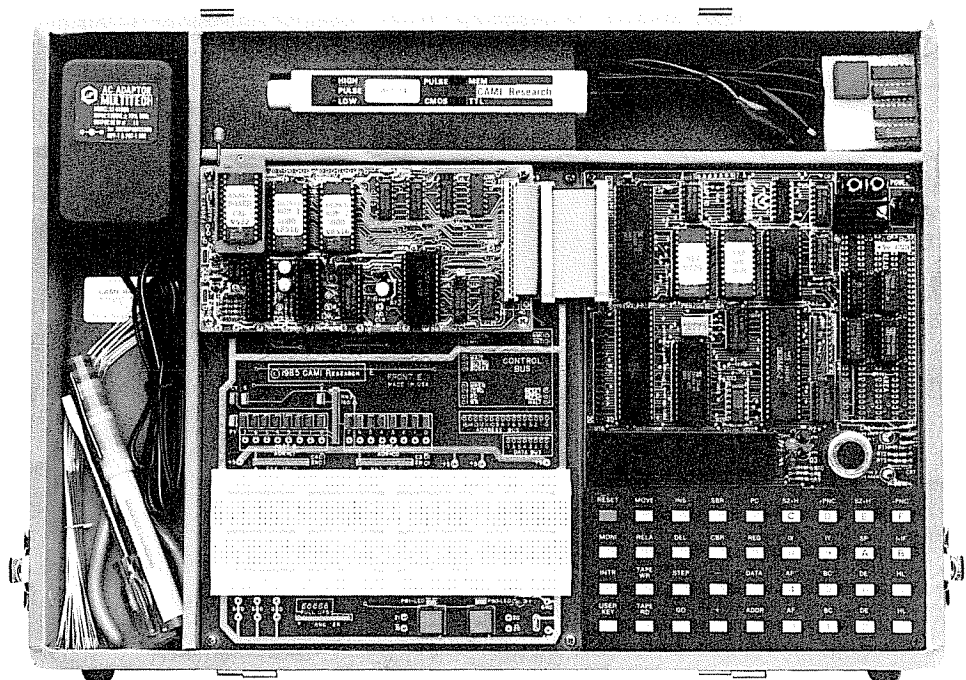


FIGURE 1.5

Single-Board Microcomputer: Micro-Trainer

SOURCE: Photograph courtesy of CAMI Research, Inc

they are stored in less than 2K bytes of ROM. The prices of these single-board computers range from \$100 to \$800, with the average price being about \$300.

Examples of these computers include such systems as Intel SDK-85, Motorola Evaluation Kit, and CAM1 Research Micro-Trainer (Figure 1.5). These are generally used to write and execute assembly language programs and to perform interfacing experiments.

SINGLE-CHIP MICROCOMPUTERS

These microcomputers are designed on a single chip, which typically includes a microprocessor, 64 bytes of R/W memory, from 1K to 2K bytes of ROM, and several signal lines to connect I/Os. These are complete microcomputers on a chip; they are also known as **microcontrollers**. They are used primarily for such functions as controlling appliances and traffic lights. Typical examples of these microcomputers include the Zilog Z8, Intel MCS 51 and 96 series, Fairchild F8, and Motorola 6802.

The entire spectrum of computer applications is shown in Figure 1.6, and various applications and categories of the microcomputer are listed in Table 1.1.

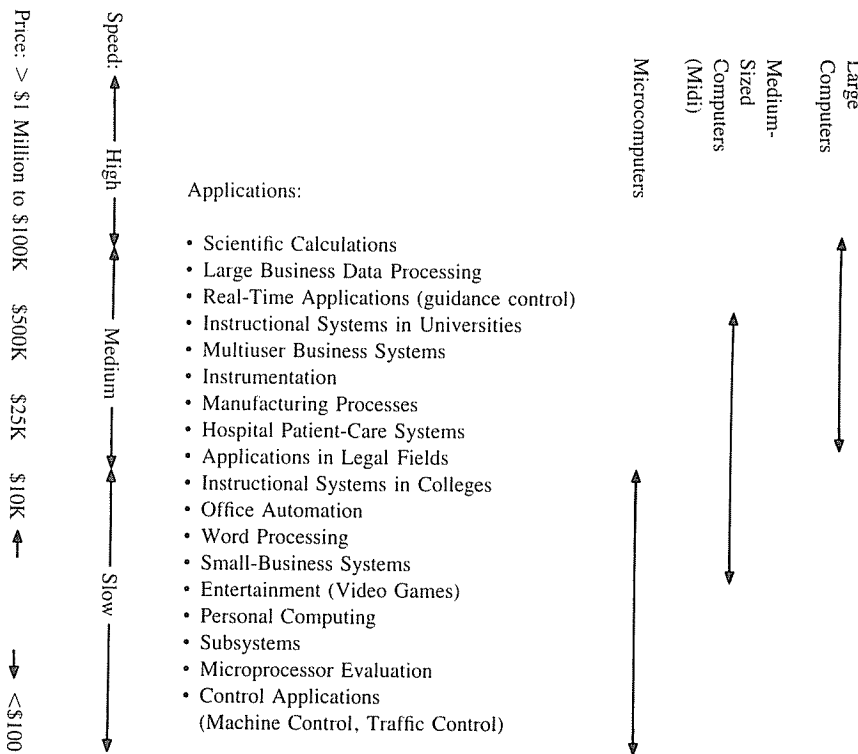


FIGURE 1.6

Applications: From Large Computers to Single-Chip Microcomputers

TABLE 1.1
Microcomputer Applications

Characteristics	Types			
	Microcomputer with Disk Storage	Microcomputer with Cassette Tape Storage	Single-Board Microcomputer	Single-Chip Microcomputer
Price range	\$1,000–8,000	\$100–\$500	\$100–\$800	<\$50
Memory size (R/W/M)	64K–512K	4K–64K	256 Bytes—2K	64–128 bytes
I/O	ASCII Keyboard, CRT	ASCII Keyboard, CRT	Hex Keyboard (Rarely ASCII) LEDs	Keyboard LEDs
Languages Used	Various Types of High-Level Languages, Assembly	High-Level, Gener- ally BASIC	Assembly	Assembly
Applications	Small Business Applications, Word Processing, Instructional Applications	Entertainment (Video Games), Personal Computing	Evaluation of Microprocessors, Assembly Lan- guage Instruction; As a Subsystem	Industrial Control

1.3 MICROPROCESSOR INSTRUCTION SET AND COMPUTER LANGUAGES

Microprocessors recognize and operate in binary numbers. However, each microprocessor has its own binary words, instructions, meanings, and language. The words are formed by combining a number of bits for a given machine. The **word** (or word length), as defined earlier, is the number of bits the microprocessor recognizes and processes at a time. The word length ranges from 4 bits for small, microprocessor-based computers, to 32 bits for such large computers as the IBM 3800 series. Another term commonly used to express word length is byte. The **byte** is defined as a group of eight bits. For example, a 16-bit microprocessor has a word length equal to two bytes. The term “nibble,” which stands for a group of four bits, is also found in popular computer magazines and books. (A byte has two nibbles.)

The **instruction** is defined as a complete task (such as Add) the microprocessor can perform; it can be made up of one or more words. Each machine has its own set of instructions based on the design of its CPU or its microprocessor. To be intelligible to the microprocessor, instructions must be written in binary language, also known as **machine language**. However, it is difficult for human beings to write programs in sets of 0s and 1s. Therefore, microprocessor manufacturers have devised Englishlike words to represent the binary instructions of a machine, and programmers can write programs using these words.

These are called **assembly language** programs. Because an assembly language is specific to a given machine, programs written in assembly language are not transferable from one machine to another. To circumvent this limitation, such general-purpose languages as BASIC and FORTRAN have been devised so that a program written in these languages can be machine-independent. These languages are called **high-level languages**. This section deals with various aspects of these three types of languages: machine, assembly, and high-level. The machine and assembly languages are discussed in the context of the Z80 microprocessor.

1.31 Machine Language

The number of bits in a word for a given machine is fixed, and words are formed through various combinations of these bits. For example, a machine with a word length of eight bits can have 256 (2^8) combinations of eight bits—thus a language of 256 words. However, not all of these words need to be used in the machine. The microprocessor design engineer selects combinations of bit patterns and gives a specific meaning to each combination by using electronic logic circuits; this is called an **instruction**. The set of instructions designed into the machine makes up what is called the machine language, a binary language composed of 0s and 1s. Its words, its instructions, and their meanings are specific to each computer. In this book, we are concerned with the language of the Z80 microprocessor from Zilog Corporation, a widely used microprocessor in industrial applications. The primary focus here is on the microprocessor, because it is the microprocessor that determines the machine language and the operations of a microcomputer.

1.32 Z80 Machine Language

The Z80 is a microprocessor with 8-bit word length. Its instruction set (or language) is upward compatible with that of the 8080; the Z80 has 159 instructions that include the entire 8080 set of 72 instructions. An instruction, as discussed earlier, is a binary pattern entered through an input device to command the microprocessor to perform a specific function. For example:

0011 1100	is an instruction that increments the number in the register called the accumulator by one.
1000 0000	is an instruction which adds the number in the register called B to the number in the accumulator, and keeps the sum in the accumulator.

The Z80 microprocessor has a variety of such bit patterns resulting in its 159 instructions for performing different operations, called the **instruction set**. The Z80 microprocessor also accepts data in 8-bit words as input from input devices, processes data according to the instructions written by the user, and sends out data in 8-bit words to output devices. This binary language with a predetermined instruction set is called the Z80 machine language.

However, it is tedious and conducive to error for human beings to recognize and

write instructions in binary language. Therefore, for convenience, these instructions are written in hexadecimal (or octal) code and entered into a single-board microcomputer by using Hex keys.

For example, the binary instruction 0011 1100 (mentioned previously) is equivalent to 3C in hexadecimal. This instruction can be entered into a singleboard microcomputer system with Hex keyboard by pressing two keys: 3 and C. The monitor program of the system translates these keys into their equivalent binary pattern.

1.33 Z80 Assembly Language

Even though the instructions can be written in hexadecimal code, it is still not easy to understand such a program. Therefore, each manufacturer of microprocessors has devised a symbolic code for each instruction, called a **mnemonic**. (The word *mnemonic* is based on the Greek word related to *memory aid*.) The mnemonic for a particular instruction consists of letters that suggest the operation to be performed by that instruction.

For example, the binary code 0011 1100 ($3C_{16}$ or $3C_H^*$ in hexadecimal) of the Z80 microprocessor is represented by the mnemonic INC A:

INC A INC stands for increment, and A represents the accumulator. This symbol suggests the operation of incrementing the accumulator content by one.

Similarly, the binary code 1000 0000 (80_{16} or 80_H^*) is represented as follows:

ADD A, B ADD stands for addition, and A and B represent the contents in the accumulator and register B respectively. This symbol suggests the addition of the contents in register B and the accumulator.

Even though these symbols do not specify the complete operations, they suggest the significant portions. The complete description of each instruction must be supplied by the manufacturer. The complete set of Z80 mnemonics is called the Z80 assembly language, and a program written in these mnemonics is called an assembly language program. Again, the assembly language is specific to each microprocessor. For example, the Motorola 6800 microprocessor has an entirely different set of binary codes and mnemonics from that of the Z80. An assembly language program written for one microprocessor is not transferable to a computer with another microprocessor unless the two microprocessors are compatible in their machine codes.

The machine language and the assembly language are microprocessor-specific, and both are considered low-level languages. The machine language is in binary, and the assembly language is in English-like words; however, the microprocessor understands only the binary. How, then, are the assembly language mnemonics entered into a microprocessor system and translated into binary code? In a microcomputer, the mnemonics are entered as ASCII code (explained in the next section) using the keyboard as an input device, and the translation is performed by a program called an **assembler**. In a single-

*Hexadecimal numbers are shown with the subscript H in the text.

board microcomputer, the user translates mnemonics into Hex digits by looking up the code manually in the instruction set and enters them into the system through the Hex keyboard. This is called **hand assembly**.

1.34 Alphanumeric Codes

A computer is a binary machine; in order to communicate with the computer in alphabetic letters and decimal numbers, translation codes are necessary. The commonly used code is known as ASCII—American Standard Code for Information Interchange. It is a 7-bit code with 128 (2^7) combinations, and each combination from 00_H to 7F_H is assigned to either a letter, a decimal number, a symbol, or a machine command (See Appendix C). For example, hexadecimal 30_H to 39_H represent 0 to 9, decimal digits; 41_H to 5A_H represent capital letters A through Z; 20_H to 2F_H represent various symbols; and the initial codes 00_H to 1F_H represent such machine commands as carriage return and line feed. Devices which use ASCII characters include ASCII terminals, teletype machines (TTY), and printers. When the key 9 is pressed on an ASCII terminal, the computer receives 39_H in binary, and the system program translates ASCII characters into appropriate binary or BCD numbers.

Another code, called EBCDIC (Extended Binary Coded Decimal Interchange Code) is widely used in IBM computers (except in IBM Personal Computers or microcomputers). This is an 8-bit code representing 256 combinations; however, several combinations are not used.

1.35 Writing and Executing an Assembly Language Program

As explained earlier, a program is a set of logically related instructions written in a specific sequence to accomplish a task. To write and execute an assembly language program manually on a single-board computer, with a Hex keyboard for input and LEDs for output, the following steps are necessary:

1. Write the instructions in mnemonics obtained from the instruction set supplied by the manufacturer.
2. Find the hexadecimal machine code for each instruction by searching through the set of instructions.
3. Enter (load) the program in the user memory in a sequential order by using the Hex keyboard as the input device.
4. Execute the program by pressing the *Execute* key. The answer will be displayed by the LEDs.

When the user program is entered by the keys, each entry is interpreted and converted into its binary equivalent by the monitor program, and the machine code is stored as eight bits in each memory location in a sequence. When the *Execute* command is given, the microprocessor fetches each instruction, decodes it, and executes it in a sequence until the end of the program.

The manual assembly procedure is commonly used in single-board microcomputers and is suited for small programs. However, the steps of looking up the machine codes and

entering the program, which are tedious and subject to errors, can be avoided by using an assembler on a microcomputer system.

The assembler is a program that translates the mnemonics entered by the ASCII keyboard into the corresponding binary machine codes of the microprocessor. Each microprocessor has its own assembler because the mnemonics and machine codes are specific to the microprocessor being used, and each assembler has certain rules which must be learned by the programmer. Assemblers are discussed in detail in Chapter 7.

1.36 High-Level Languages

Programming languages that are intended to be machine-independent are called high-level languages. The list includes such languages as C, FORTRAN, BASIC, PASCAL, and COBOL. These languages have certain sets of rules and draw on symbols and conventions from English. Instructions written in these languages are known as statements rather than mnemonics. A program written in BASIC for a microcomputer with the Z80 microprocessor can generally run on another microcomputer with a different microprocessor.

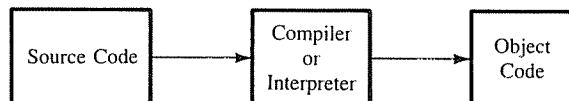
Now the question is: How do words in English get converted into the binary languages of different microprocessors? The answer lies with another program called either a **compiler** or an **interpreter**. These programs accept English-like statements as their input, called the *source code*. The compiler or interpreter then translates the source code into the machine language compatible with the microprocessor being used in the system. This translation into the machine language is called the *object code* (Figure 1.7). Each microprocessor needs its own compiler or interpreter for each high-level language. The primary difference between a compiler and an interpreter is in the process of generating machine code. The compiler reads the entire program first and then generates the object code, while the interpreter reads one instruction at a time, produces its object code, and executes the instruction before reading the next instruction. M-Basic is a common example of an interpreter for the BASIC language. Compilers are generally used in such languages as FORTRAN, COBOL, and PASCAL.

Compilers and interpreters require large memory space because each instruction in English requires several machine codes to translate that instruction into binary. On the other hand, there is a one-to-one correspondence between the assembly language mnemonics and the machine code. Thus, assembly language programs are compact and require less memory space; they are more efficient than the high-level language programs. The primary advantage of high-level languages is in troubleshooting programs, also known as debugging. It is much easier to find errors in a program written in a high-level language than to find them in a program written in assembly language.

In certain applications such as traffic control and appliance control, where programs are small and compact, assembly language is suitable. Similarly, in such real-time appli-

FIGURE 1.7

Block Diagram: Translation of High-Level Language Program into Machine Code



cations as converting a high frequency waveform into digital data, program efficiency is critical. In real-time applications, events and time should closely match with each other without significant delay. Therefore, assembly language is highly desirable in these applications. On the other hand, for applications in which programs are large and memory is not a limitation, high-level languages may be desirable. The advantage of time saved in debugging a large program may outweigh the disadvantages of large memory requirements and inefficiency.

SUMMARY

The various concepts and terms discussed in this chapter are summarized below:

Computer Structure

- **Digital Computer**—a programmable machine that processes binary data. It includes four components: CPU (ALU plus control unit), memory, input, and output.
- **CPU**—the Central Processing Unit. The group of circuits that processes data and provides control signals and timing. It includes the arithmetic/logic unit, registers, instruction decoder, and the control unit.
- **ALU**—the group of circuits that performs arithmetic and logic operations. The ALU is a part of the CPU.
- **Control Unit**—The group of circuits that provides timing and signals to all operations in the computer and controls data flow.
- **Memory**—a medium that stores binary information (instructions and data).
- **Input**—a device that transfers information from the outside world to the computer.
- **Output**—a device that transfers information from the computer to the outside world.

Scale of Integration

- **SSI**—Small-Scale Integration. The process of designing a few circuits on a single chip. The term refers to the technology used to fabricate discrete logic gates on a chip.
- **MSI**—Medium-Scale Integration. The process of designing more than 100 gates on a single chip.
- **LSI**—Large-Scale Integration. The process of designing more than 1,000 gates on a single chip. Similarly, the terms VLSI (Very-Large-Scale Integration) and SLSI (Super-Large-Scale Integration) are used to indicate the scale of integration.

Microcomputers

- **Microprocessor**—a semiconductor device (integrated circuit) that is manufactured by using the large-scale integration technique. It includes the ALU, register arrays, and control circuits on a single chip.

- **Microcomputer**—a computer that uses a microprocessor as its CPU. It includes four components: microprocessor, memory, input, and output.
- **Bus**—a group of lines used to transfer bits between the microprocessor and other components of the computer system.
- **ROM**—Read-Only Memory. A memory that stores binary information permanently. The information can be read from this memory but cannot be altered.
- **R/WM**—Read/Write Memory. A memory that stores binary information during the operation of the computer. This memory is used as a writing pad to write user programs and data. The information stored in this memory can be easily read and altered.

Computer Languages

- **Bit**—a binary digit, 0 or 1.
- **Byte**—a group of eight bits.
- **Nibble**—a group of four bits.
- **Word**—a group of bits the computer recognizes and processes as a whole.
- **Instruction**—a command in binary that is recognized and executed by the computer in order to accomplish a task. Some instructions are designed with one word, and some require multiple words.
- **Mnemonic**—a combination of letters to suggest the operation of an instruction.
- **Program**—a set of instructions written in a specific sequence for the computer to accomplish a given task.
- **Machine Language**—the binary medium of communication with a computer through a designed set of instructions specific to each computer.
- **Assembly Language**—a medium of communication with a computer in which programs are written in mnemonics. An assembly language is specific to a given computer.
- **Low-Level Language**—a medium of communication that is machine-dependent, or specific to a given computer. The machine and the assembly languages of a computer are considered low-level languages. Programs written in these languages are not transferable to different types of machines.
- **High-Level Language**—a medium of communication independent of a given computer. Programs are written in English-like words, and they can be executed on a machine using a translator (a compiler or an interpreter).
- **Compiler**—a program that translates English-like words of a high-level language into the machine language of a computer. A compiler reads a given program, called a source code, in its entirety, and then translates the program into the machine language, which is called an object code.
- **Interpreter**—a program that translates the English-like statements of a high-level language into the machine language of a computer. An interpreter translates one statement at a time from a source code to an object code.
- **Assembler**—a computer program that translates an assembly language program from mnemonics to the binary machine code of a computer.

- **Manual Assembly**—a procedure of looking up the machine code manually from the instruction set of a computer and entering those codes into the computer through a keyboard.
- **Monitor Program**—a program that interprets the input from a keyboard and converts the input into its binary equivalent.

LOOKING AHEAD

This chapter has given a brief introduction to computer organization and computer languages, with emphasis on the Z80 microprocessor and its assembly language. The chapter has given an overview of the entire spectrum of computers, including their salient features and applications. The primary focus of this book is on the architectural details of the Z80 microprocessor and its industrial applications, and on assembly language programming in the context of these applications. In the microcomputer field, there is hardly any separation between hardware and software, especially in applications where assembly language is necessary. In designing a microprocessor-based product, hardware and software tasks are carried out concurrently because a decision in one area affects the planning of the other area. There are various functions that can be performed through either hardware or software, and a designer needs to consider both approaches. This book focuses on trade-off between the two approaches as a design philosophy.

ASSIGNMENTS

1. List the components of a computer.
2. Explain the functions of each component of a computer.
3. What is a microprocessor? What is the difference between a microprocessor and a CPU?
4. Explain the difference between a microprocessor and a microcomputer.
5. Explain the following terms: SSI, MSI, and LSI.
6. Define: bit, byte, word, and instruction.
7. How many bytes make a word of 32 bits?
8. Explain the difference between the machine language and the assembly language of the Z80 microprocessor.
9. What is an assembler?
10. What are low- and high-level languages?
11. Explain the difference between a compiler and an interpreter.
12. What are the advantages of an assembly language in comparison with high-level languages?

Microcomputer System: MPU, Memory, and I/O

A microcomputer system consists primarily of three components—the microprocessor unit (MPU), memory, and I/O (input/output). The MPU is the central player; it communicates with memory and I/O devices, processes data, and controls timing of all its operations. In this chapter, we will examine what the MPU does and what its requirements are. We then design a model for a generalized MPU that expands on the bus concept discussed in the previous chapter and shows signals necessary for the MPU to communicate with other devices. The model also describes the requirements for processing data and shows registers and logic circuits the MPU needs.

Memory and I/Os are integral parts of a microcomputer system. We will discuss memory in terms of its basic elements—latches and registers—and specify the requirements for a memory chip to store information and communicate with the MPU. Based on those requirements, we then develop the concepts of memory addressing and memory maps. We also discuss how the MPU addresses and communicates with I/Os.



2

OBJECTIVES

- List the four program-initiated operations performed by the MPU.
- Define the functions of the address bus, data bus, and control signals.
- List the externally initiated operations the MPU should respond to.
- Draw the model of a generalized MPU showing the necessary signals.
- List the types of registers the MPU needs to process data internally.
- Explain the internal organization of memory and the requirements of a memory chip to store information and communicate with the MPU.
- Explain the functions of the control signals: Chip Select (\overline{CS}), Read (\overline{RD}), and Write (\overline{WR}).
- Explain how memory addresses are assigned to a memory chip and recognize the memory map of a given chip.
- List the two techniques of addressing I/O devices.
- Draw a block diagram of a microcomputer system showing the MPU, memory, I/Os, and buses.

2.1

GENERALIZED MICROPROCESSOR UNIT (MPU)

The Microprocessor Unit (MPU) is a programmable logic device with a designed set of instructions. In this section, we will examine the functions and requirements of the MPU and derive a generalized model. From the previous chapter, we can recall what the MPU does. It reads or fetches each instruction, one at a time, from memory and performs data manipulation specified by the instruction; it also reads data from input devices, and writes (or sends) data to output devices.

When the MPU is executing a program, it communicates frequently with memory and I/O devices; the process consists of fetch, decode, and execute operations. However, the question is: Can it respond to unexpected events? For example, while printing a long program, can it stop printing temporarily and read any critical data that may arrive at the input? Can it be “interrupted”? Can it wait until a peripheral is ready? For example, when memory response is too slow, can the MPU wait until memory is ready? The answer to all these questions must be affirmative.

In addition to processing data according to the instructions written in memory, the MPU needs to respond to various situations described above. External devices should be able to interrupt and request the attention of the MPU. This communication process and related operations between the MPU and the external devices (memory, I/Os) can be classified into two main categories:

- Program-initiated operations
- Peripheral (or externally) initiated operations.

To perform these operations, the MPU requires a group of logic circuits, a set of signals to transfer information and control signals for timing, and clock circuitry; these constitute the architecture. Early microprocessors did not have the necessary circuitry on one chip; the complete units were made up of more than one chip. Therefore, we define here the term Microprocessor Unit (MPU) as a group of devices that can perform opera-

tions similar to those of the Central Processing Unit (CPU). For example, the 8080A MPU requires three chips to make it a functional unit. However, since later microprocessors include most of the necessary circuitry on a single chip, the terms MPU and microprocessor are often used synonymously.

2.11 Program-Initiated Operations and Buses

To communicate with memory and I/Os, the MPU performs four operations:

1. Memory Read: Reads instructions or data from memory.
2. Memory Write: Writes instructions or data into memory.
3. I/O Read: Accepts data from input devices.
4. I/O Write: Sends data to output devices.

Now the question is: how does the MPU identify a memory register or an I/O device? It does so the same way we identify a house; we give a number. Because it understands only the binary numbers, the MPU identifies each memory register or I/O by a binary number called an address. The next question is: how does the MPU inform the peripherals when it is ready to read or write data? It does so by sending out appropriate timing signals called control signals before it transfers data.

The steps in performing these MPU operations can be summarized as follows (not necessarily in the order listed):

1. Identify the memory location or the peripheral with its address.
2. Transfer binary data.
3. Provide timing or synchronization signal.

Therefore, the MPU requires three sets of communication lines called buses: the first group of lines, called the address bus, to identify the memory location; the second group, called the data bus, to transfer data; and the third group, called the control lines, for timing signals. In the previous chapter (Figure 1.3), all these different signal lines were grouped together and shown as the system bus. Now we shall describe them individually.

ADDRESS BUS

As mentioned earlier, the MPU identifies each peripheral or memory location with a binary address. Now the question is: how large is this address? The answer depends upon the internal design of the microprocessor and available pins on a chip; it can be eight, 16, 20, or more bits. If the address size is 12 bits, the microprocessor can identify 4,096 (2^{12}) different memory locations. The addressing is simply a numbering scheme to identify memory registers. For example, a two-digit decimal numbering scheme can identify only 100 items, from 00 to 99. On the other hand, a four-digit numbering scheme can identify 10,000 items, from 0000 to 9999. Thus, the number of bits (address lines) used for addressing by the MPU clearly determines the number of memory registers it can identify.

Figure 2.1 shows one group of lines as the address bus for our generalized MPU.

The arrow suggests that these lines are unidirectional—the signals flow from the MPU to peripherals because only the MPU sends out an address. The address lines are generally identified as A_0 to A_m , where m is the size of the address bus. Typically, earlier microprocessors such as the 8085, the Z80, and the 6800 have 16 address lines which are capable of addressing 65,536 (2^{16}) memory locations, commonly known as 64K memory. However, recent microprocessors such as the 8086 have 20 address lines, and the 68000 has 23 address lines.

DATA BUS

The second group of lines shown in Figure 2.1 is the data bus. These lines are used to transfer data and are bidirectional—data can flow either direction. These lines are identified as D_0 to D_n , where n signifies the size of the data bus. Again, the size of the data bus determines how large a binary number can be transferred and processed at a time and thus influences the microprocessor architecture considerably. The 8085, the Z80, and the 6800 have eight data lines and are thus called 8-bit microprocessors. On the other hand, the 8086, the Z8000, and the 68000 have 16 data lines and are called 16-bit microprocessors.

CONTROL SIGNALS (MPU INITIATED)

These are individual signal lines generated by the MPU to indicate its operations. The MPU generates a specific signal for each of its four operations—Memory Read, Memory Write, I/O Read, and I/O Write. These are timing signals that are used to enable, or activate, peripherals. For example, to fetch (or read) an instruction from a memory location, the MPU sends a timing pulse called Memory Read to enable the memory chip.

2.12 Externally Initiated Operations

There are various occasions when ongoing MPU operations need to be interrupted. For the MPU we are designing, we can classify these types of external interruptions or delays into four categories.

- Reset: Start again from the beginning. For example, if we are using a microprocessor as a timer, we should be able to reset the timer after each operation or in the middle of an operation and start again.
- Interrupt: Stop the ongoing process temporarily; do something now which is more critical, and then go back to the original process. For example, we should be able to stop printing temporarily and read data from a keyboard; then, when the MPU finishes reading that data, it can go back to printing.
- Wait: When memory response time is too slow to respond to the speed of the MPU, this signal can be used to delay the MPU operations.
- Bus Request: When the MPU operations are too slow compared to the speed of a peripheral, the peripheral can request the use of the buses. For example, when large amounts of data are to be transferred to memory, DMA (Direct Memory Access) controllers can transfer data much faster than can the MPU.

In our generalized MPU model (Figure 2.1), these externally initiated signals are shown as External Requests. To indicate its response to some of these external requests, the MPU needs additional signal lines shown as Request Acknowledge.

2.13 Clock Signals and Power

The MPU can be viewed as a complex timer. The timing is very critical in all its operations. The bits of a binary instruction are associated with the microprograms inside the chip; when the MPU executes an instruction, it releases a series of microprograms at precise time intervals. Therefore, the MPU needs circuits that generate clock signals. In addition, it needs electrical power to run all the operations.

Figure 2.1 shows all the signals necessary for our generalized MPU. Presently, because of LSI technology, most of the MPU requirements can be satisfied by single-chip microprocessors with slight variations. For example, the Z80 microprocessor has all the signals of the MPU except clock-generating circuitry, and some of its control signals need to be logically ANDed to generate the specific control signals shown in Figure 2.1.

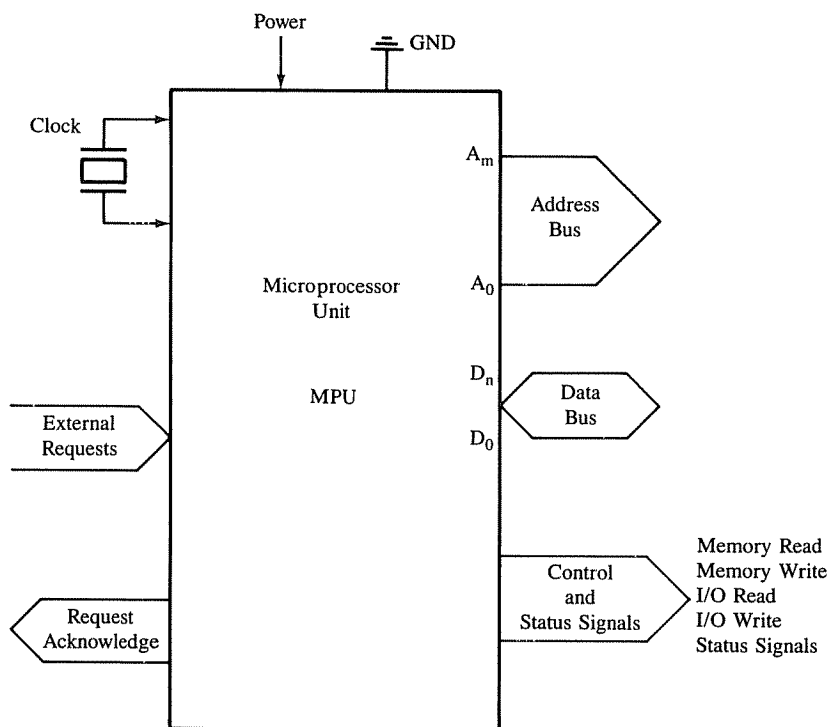


FIGURE 2.1
Generalized Microprocessor Unit (MPU)

However, the present microprocessors include all the data processing and timing circuitry on one chip; therefore, they can be viewed as MPUs. Now we shall examine what is inside the microprocessor to understand how it processes data.

2.14 Microprocessor as a Processing Unit

When the microprocessor executes instructions, it does so in a continuous sequence of fetch, decode, and execute operations. After examining these operations in more detail, we can describe the requirements of the internal architecture of our generalized microprocessor.

FETCHING AN INSTRUCTION

To fetch an instruction, the microprocessor places a memory address on the address bus and reads binary information using the data bus. Therefore, it needs a register that can hold memory addresses and increment these addresses after the fetching is completed, a sort of memory pointer.

DECODING AN INSTRUCTION

Once an instruction byte is fetched, it needs to be decoded to answer the following:

- ☐ Is it a complete instruction? If not, how many more bytes need to be fetched?
- ☐ What type of operation is required and on what data?

To perform these functions, the microprocessor needs an instruction decoder that can interpret the fetched binary information.

EXECUTING AN INSTRUCTION

The type of data manipulation the microprocessor can perform depends on its internal microprograms, that is, on its instruction set. These operations can be classified as data copy (transfer), arithmetic/logic operations, and decision making. For example, to subtract two numbers, both numbers must be loaded into registers. After the subtraction, it is necessary to indicate whether the result is positive, negative, or zero. This can be indicated by setting or resetting flip-flops called flags. To perform these arithmetic and logic operations, the microprocessor needs a group of logic circuits called Arithmetic/Logic Unit (ALU).

This description of the requirements of the microprocessor to process data can be summarized in a simplified block diagram shown in Figure 2.2. From this block diagram, we can derive a programming model for a specific microprocessor.

2.15 Review of Important Concepts

The description and the requirements of a generalized microprocessor unit can be summarized as follows (see Figure 2.3):

To communicate with memory and I/O devices, the MPU should have the following:

1. Address bus to send the address of a memory register or an I/O.

FIGURE 2.2
MPU Internal Structure

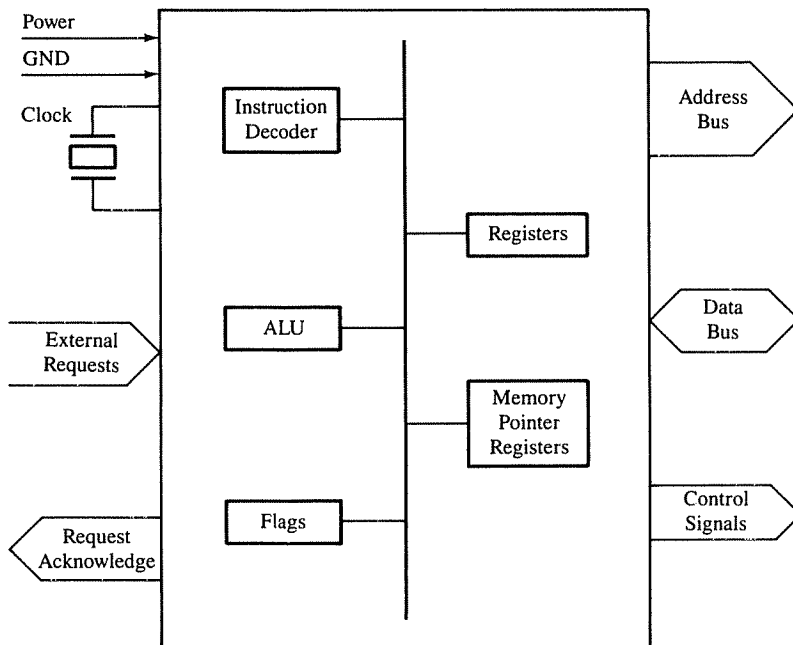
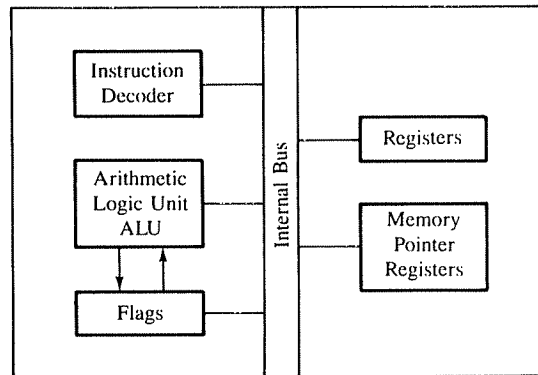


FIGURE 2.3
MPU Architecture

2. Data bus to transfer data between the MPU and memory and I/O devices.
3. Control signals to identify its operations and provide timing.
4. External Request signal lines to interrupt the MPU operations.
5. Request Acknowledge signals to respond to the requests by peripherals.
6. Clock signals to provide timing and power to operate circuits.

To process data internally, the MPU should include the following:

1. Instruction Decoder to decode the fetched binary information.
2. Registers to store binary data.
3. Registers as memory pointers for addressing memory registers.
4. ALU to perform arithmetic and logic operations.
5. Flags (flip-flops) to indicate data conditions for decision making.

2.2

MEMORY

Memory is an essential component of a microcomputer system; it stores binary instructions and data for the microprocessor. There are various types of memory, and they can be classified in two groups: prime (or main) memory and storage memory. In the last chapter, we saw two examples of prime memory: Read/Write Memory (R/WM) and Read-Only Memory (ROM). Magnetic tapes and disks can be cited as examples of storage memory. First, we will focus on prime memory and then briefly discuss storage memory when we examine various types of memory.

The R/W memory is made up of registers, and each register has a group of flip-flops or field-effect transistors that store bits of information. The user can use this memory to hold programs and store data. On the other hand, the ROM stores information permanently in the form of diodes; the group of diodes can be viewed as a register. In a memory chip, all registers are arranged in a sequence and identified by binary numbers called memory addresses. The MPU uses its address bus to send the address of a memory register and uses data and control buses to read from or write into that register. In the following sections, we examine the basic concepts related to memory—its structure, its addresses, and its requirements for communication with the MPU—and build a model for R/W memory. However, the discussion is equally applicable to ROM except for slight differences in Read/Write control signals.

2.21 Flip-Flop or Latch as a Storage Element

What is memory? It is a circuit that can store bits—generally high or low voltage levels representing 1 and 0. A flip-flop or a latch is a basic element of memory. To write or store a bit in the latch, we need an input data bit and an enable signal (Figure 2.4(a)). In this latch, the stored bit is always available on the output line. If a tri-state buffer is connected to the output of the latch (as shown in Figure 2.4(b)), the stored bit can be read only when the buffer is enabled. Similarly, we can also use a tri-state buffer on the input of the latch. Now we can write into the latch (Figure 2.4(c)) by enabling the input buffer and read from it by enabling the output buffer. This latch, which can store one binary bit, is called a memory cell. Figure 2.5(a) shows four such cells or latches grouped together to form a register which has four input lines and four output lines and can store four bits. The size of this register is specified as either 4-bit or 1×4 bit, which indicates one register with four cells or four I/O lines. The number of bits stored in a register is called a memory word. Figures 2.5(b) and (c) show simplified block diagrams of the 4-bit register.

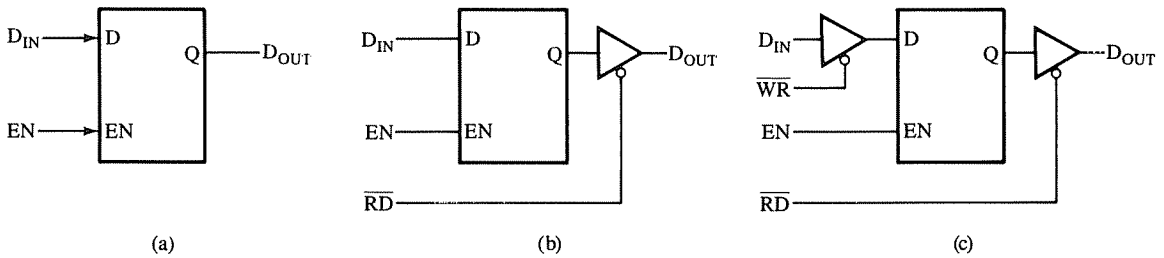


FIGURE 2.4
Latches as Storage Elements

In Figure 2.6(a), four registers with eight cells (or 8-bit memory word) are arranged in a sequence. To write into or read from any one of the registers, a specific register should be identified or enabled. This is a simple decoding function; a 2-to-4 decoder can perform that function. However, two more input lines A_1 and A_0 , called address lines, are required to the decoder. These two input lines can carry four different bit combinations (00, 01, 10, 11), and each combination can identify or enable one of the registers named as Register 0 through Register 3.

In Figure 2.6(a), the chip has an 8-bit memory word, and its size can be specified as 32 bits, 4×8 bits, or 4 bytes. If we have a memory chip with a 4-bit memory word, we can combine two such chips in parallel to make an 8-bit memory word as shown in Figure 2.6(b). The address lines and $\overline{RD}/\overline{WR}$ control signals ($\overline{}$ indicates active low) will be connected in parallel, but the memory word will consist of 4 bits from each chip as shown.

Now we can expand the number of registers. If we have eight registers on one chip, we need three address lines and a 3-to-8 decoder. An interesting problem is how to deal with two chips with four registers each. We have a total of eight registers; therefore, we need three address lines. One address line, A_2 , is used to select a chip, and the address lines A_1 and A_0 are connected to both chips. Figure 2.7(b) shows that the Chip Select signal \overline{CS} is active low, so that when A_2 is 0 (low), Chip M_1 is selected and when A_2 is 1 (high), Chip M_2 is selected. The addresses on A_1 and A_0 will determine the registers to be selected; thus, by combining the logic on A_2 , A_1 , and A_0 , the memory addresses range from 000 to 111. The concept of the Chip Select signal gives us more flexibility in designing chips and allows us to expand memory size by using multiple chips.

Now let us examine the problem from a different perspective. Assume that we have available four address lines and two memory chips with four registers each as before. Four address lines are capable of identifying sixteen (2^4) registers; however, we need only three address lines to identify eight registers. What should we do with the fourth line? One of the solutions is shown in Figure 2.8. Memory chip M_1 is selected when A_3 and A_2 are both 0; therefore, registers in this chip are identified with the addresses ranging from 0000 to 0011 (0 to 3). Similarly, the addresses of memory chip M_2 range from 1000 to 1011 (8 to B); this chip is selected only when A_3 is 1 and A_2 is 0. In this example, we need three lines to

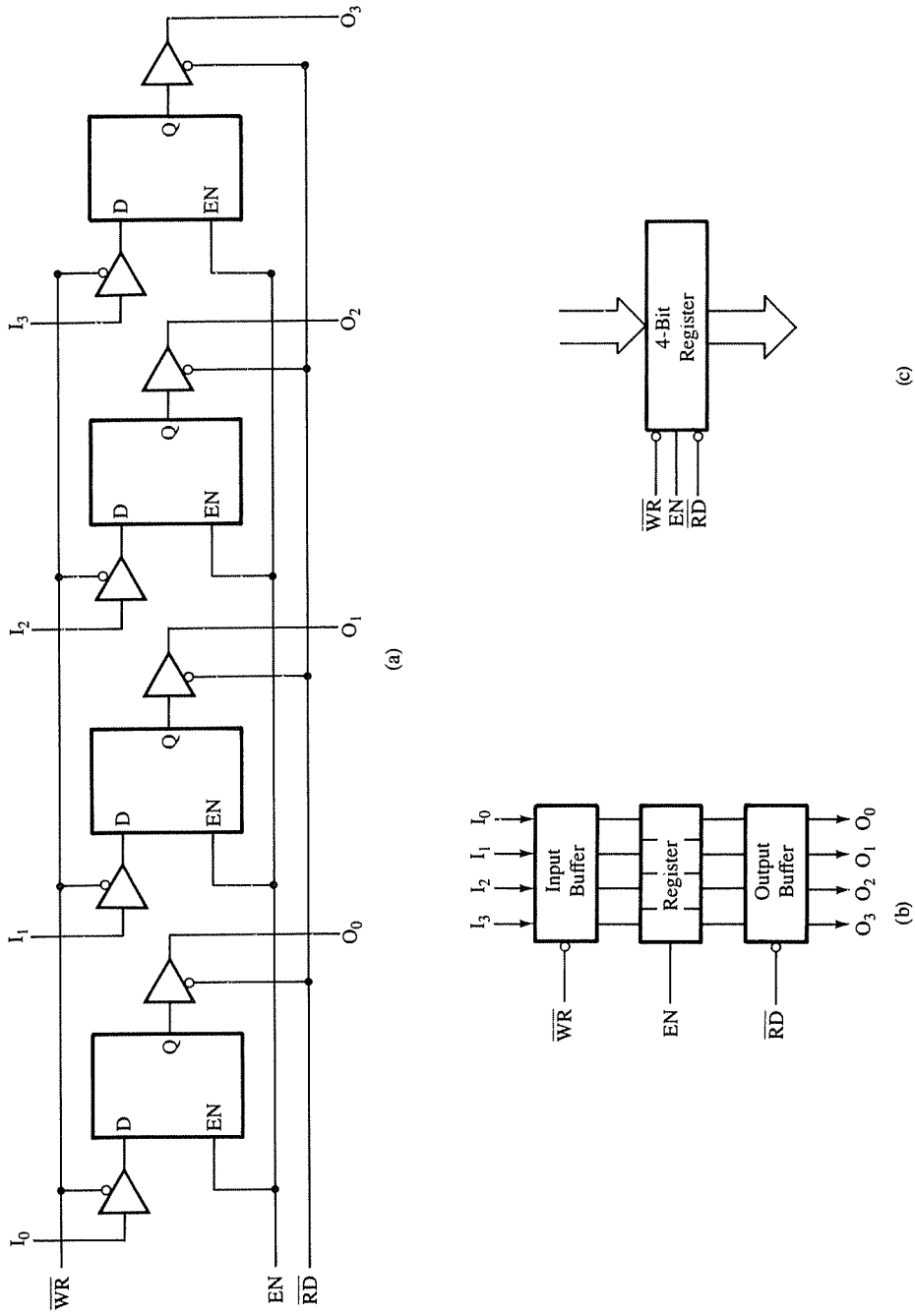


FIGURE 2.5
(a) Four Latches as a 4-Bit Register (b) and (c) Block Diagrams of a 4-Bit Register

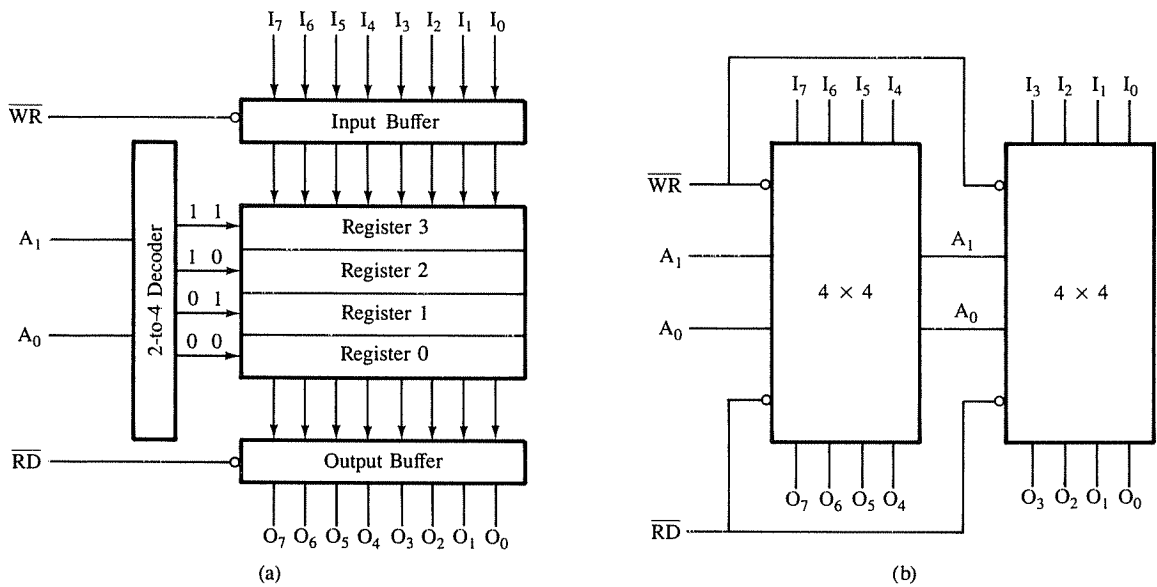


FIGURE 2.6
(a) 4×8 Bit Register (b) Two 4×4 Bit Registers

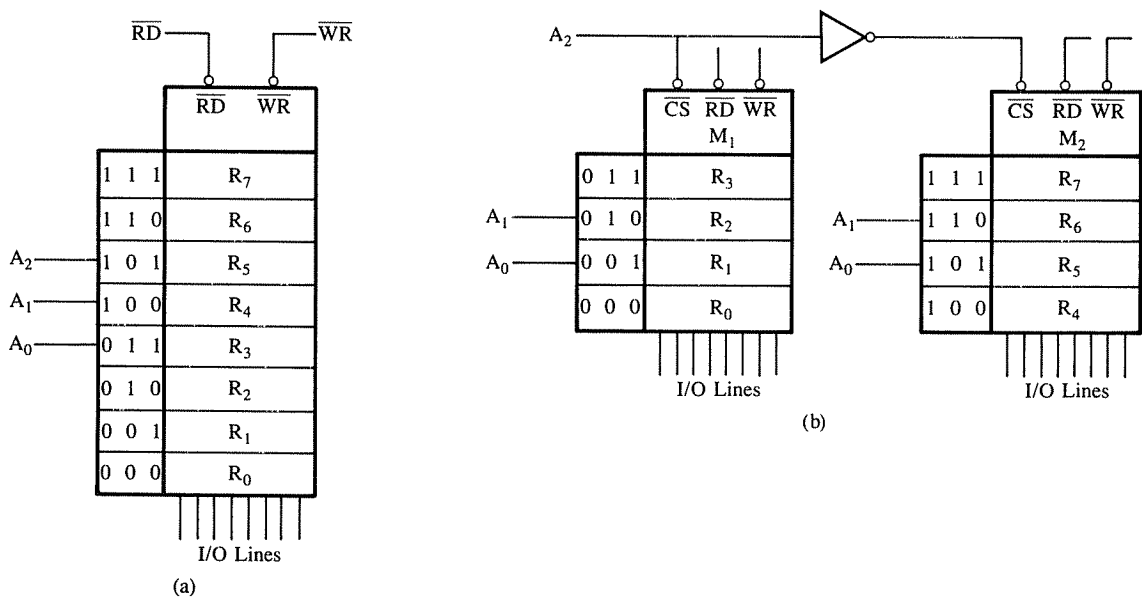
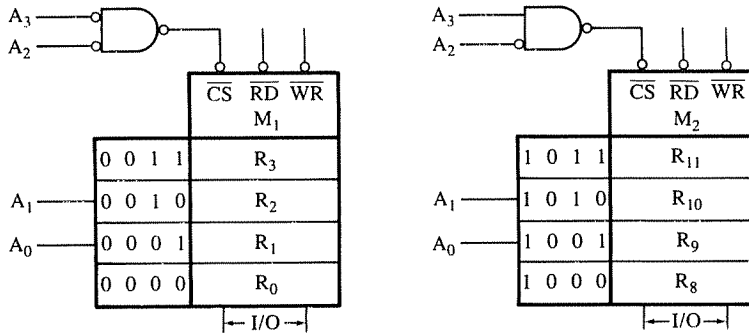


FIGURE 2.7
(a) Memory Chip with Eight Registers (b) Two Memory Chips with Four Registers Each

**FIGURE 2.8**

Addressing Eight Registers with Four Address Lines

identify eight registers, two for registers and one for Chip Select. However, we used also the fourth line for Chip Select. This is called complete or absolute decoding. Another option is to leave the fourth line as “don’t care”; we will further explore this concept later.

After reviewing the above explanation, we can summarize the requirements of a memory chip as follows:

1. A memory chip requires address lines to identify a memory register, a Chip Select \overline{CS} signal to enable the chip, and control signals to read from and write into memory registers.
2. The number of address lines required is determined by the number of registers in a chip ($2^n = \text{Number of registers where } n \text{ is the number of address lines}$).
3. If additional address lines are available in a system, they are used to enable the Chip Select \overline{CS} signal. The memory address of a register is determined by the logic levels (0/1) of all the address lines (including the address lines used for \overline{CS}).
4. The control signal Read (\overline{RD}) enables the output buffer, and data from the selected register are made available on the output lines. Similarly, the control signal Write (\overline{WR}) enables the input buffer, and data on the input lines are written into memory cells.

A model of a typical memory chip representing the requirements just stated is shown in Figure 2.9. Figure 2.9(a) represents the R/W memory and Figure 2.9(b) represents the Read-Only Memory; the only difference between the two as far as addressing is concerned is that ROM does not need a \overline{WR} signal. Internally, the memory cells are arranged in a matrix format (in rows and columns), because as the size increases the internal decoding scheme we discussed becomes impractical. For example, a memory chip with 1024 registers would require a 10-to-1024 decoder. If the cells are arranged in six rows and four columns, however, the internal decoding circuitry can be designed with two decoders, one for selecting a row and the other for selecting a column. The internal row and column arrangement does not affect our external interfacing logic.

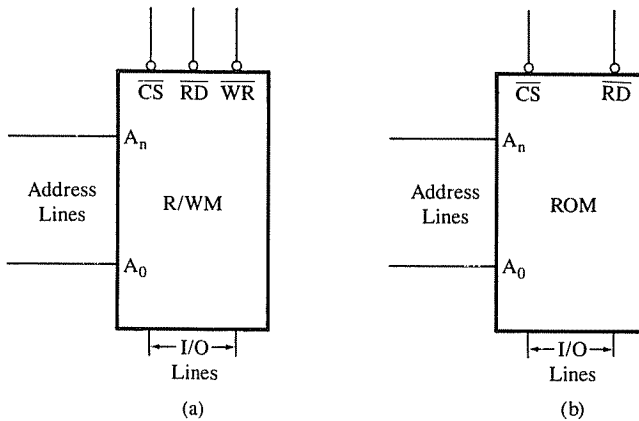


FIGURE 2.9
(a) R/W Memory Model (b) ROM Model

2.22 Memory Map

Typically, in an 8-bit microprocessor system, 16 address lines are available for memory. This means it is a numbering system of 16 binary bits and is capable of identifying 2^{16} (65,536) memory registers, each register with a 16-bit address. The entire memory addresses can range from 0000 to FFFF in Hex. Memory map is like a pictorial representation in which memory devices are located in the entire range of addresses. Memory addresses provide the locations of various memory devices in the system, and the interfacing logic defines the range of memory addresses for each memory device.

Now let us assume that we have a memory chip with 256 registers which needs only eight address lines ($2^8 = 256$). How can we assign 16-bit addresses to 256 registers? This can be accomplished by using the remaining eight lines for the Chip Select through appropriate logic gates as illustrated in the next example.

Illustrate the memory map of the chip with 256 bytes of memory, shown in Figure 2.10(a), and explain how the memory map can be changed by modifying the hardware of the Chip Select \overline{CS} line in Figure 2.10(b).

Example
2.1

Solution

Figure 2.10(a) shows a memory chip with 256 registers with 8 I/O lines; the memory size of the chip is expressed as 256×8 . It has eight address lines A_7-A_0 , one Chip Select \overline{CS} signal (active low) and two control signals Read (RD) and Write (WR). The eight address lines (A_7-A_0) of the microprocessor are required to identify 256 memory registers. The remaining eight lines ($A_{15}-A_8$) are connected to the Chip Select (\overline{CS}) line through inverters and the NAND gate. The memory chip is enabled or selected when \overline{CS} goes low. Therefore, to select the chip, the address lines $A_{15}-A_8$ should be at logic 0, which will cause the output of the NAND gate to go low. No other logic levels on the lines $A_{15}-A_8$ can select the chip. Once the chip is selected (enabled), the remaining address lines A_7-A_0

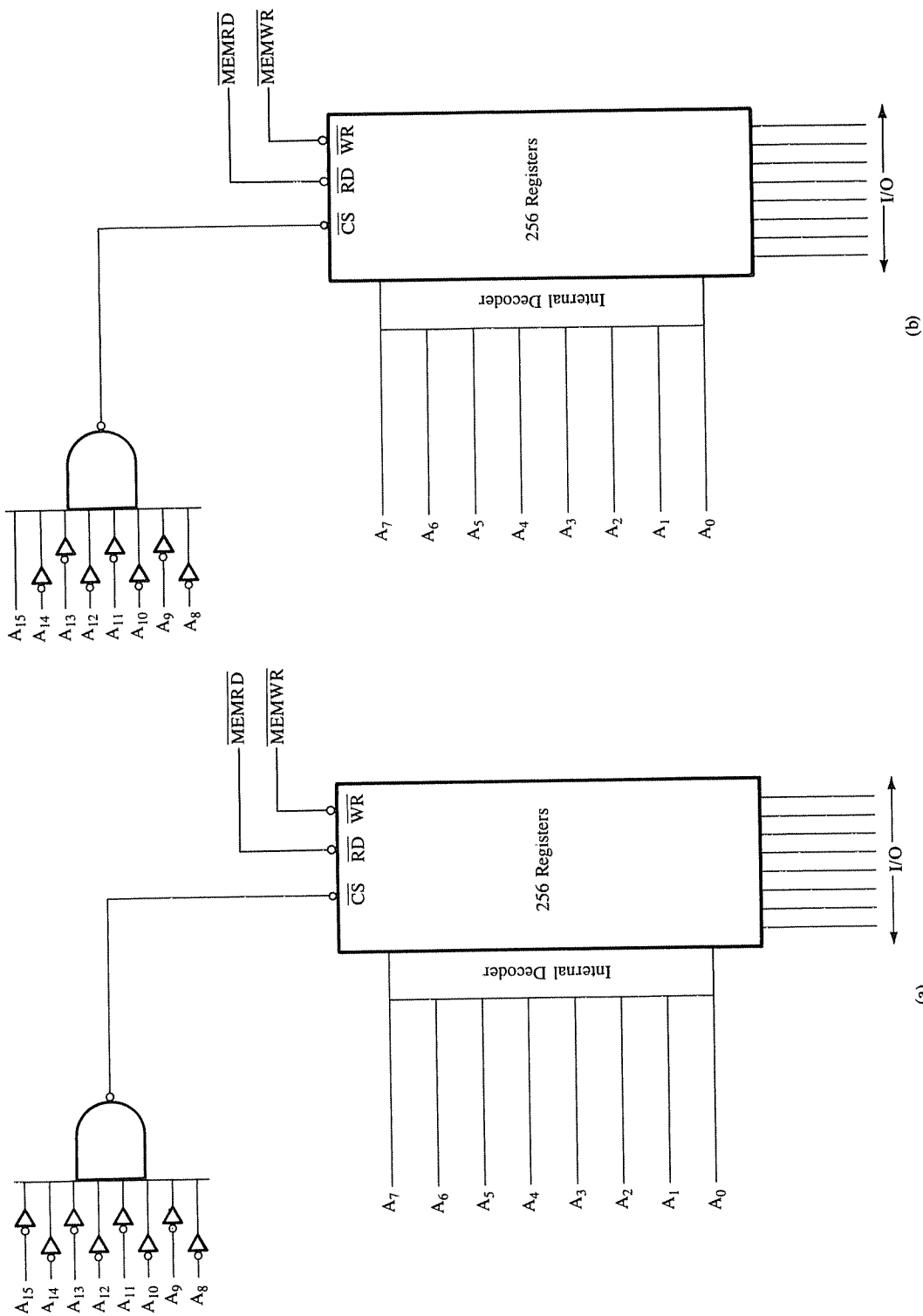


FIGURE 2.10
Memory Maps: 256 Bytes of Memory

can assume any combination from 00_H to FF_H , and identify any of the 256 memory registers through its decoder. Therefore, the memory addresses of the chip in Figure 2.10(a) will range from 0000_H to $00FF_H$ as shown below.

A_{15}	A_{14}	A_{13}	A_{12}	A_{11}	A_{10}	A_9	A_8	A_7	A_6	A_5	A_4	A_3	A_2	A_1	A_0	
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	$= 0000_H$
								↓							↓	
								1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	$= 00FF_H$
Chip Enable or Chip Select								Register Select								

The entire range of the memory addresses from 0000_H to $00FF_H$ is known as the memory map of the chip in Figure 2.10(a). The Chip Select addresses are determined by the hardware (the inverters and NAND gate); therefore, the memory map of the chip can be changed by modifying the hardware. For example, if the inverter on line A_{15} is removed as shown in Figure 2.10(b), the address required on A_{15} – A_8 to enable the chip will be as follows:

A_{15}	A_{14}	A_{13}	A_{12}	A_{11}	A_{10}	A_9	A_8	
1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	$= 80_H$

The memory map for Figure 2.10(b) will be 8000_H to $80FF_H$.

The memory chips in Figures 2.10(a) and (b) are the same chips. However, by changing the hardware of the Chip Select logic, the location of the memory in the map can be changed, and memory can be assigned addresses in various locations over the entire range of 0000 to $FFFF_H$.

In a memory system, a 16-bit address can be conceptually organized into two groups of Hex numbers. With two Hex digits, 256 registers can be numbered from 00_H to FF_H as shown in the previous example. This is defined as a page with 256 lines (registers) to read from or write on. Similarly, high-order Hex digits in an address can be used to number the pages from 00_H to FF_H ; thus the total range of 64K can be conceptually divided into 256 pages with each page having 256 lines. For example, the memory address $020F_H$ represents line (register) 15 on page 2, and the address $07FF_H$, represents register 255 on page 7. A memory chip with 1K (1,024) byte can be viewed as a chip with four pages. This is just a convenient way of thinking memory maps.

Another way of viewing a memory address is in terms of high-order and low-order addresses. The lines used for chip select are called high-order address lines, and the lines connected to memory address lines are called low-order address lines. Let us use an example of a four-digit (decimal) numbering system in a high-rise apartment building. Generally, the first two digits (high-order) represent a floor and the last two digits (low-order) represent an apartment number. To locate apartment 1241, we go first to the twelfth floor (similar to Chip Select in memory addressing), and then we look for the apartment 41 (similar to selecting a register). Now let us use the example of an apartment complex. Let

us assume the complex is divided into sections 1 to 9 and each section has up to 999 apartments. In this situation, the number 2451 would represent Section 2 and apartment number 451; the digit 2 is a high-order address and 451 is a low-order address. This is similar to memory addresses of 1K memory. The 1K memory chip will require 10 address lines, and the remaining six lines of the address bus will be used for the \overline{CS} . Thus, the group of six address lines will be high-order, and the remaining ten address lines will be low-order. The memory addresses will be determined by combining the logic levels of these address lines. If the number of address lines in a microprocessor is larger than 16, we will use a five-digit Hex numbering scheme.

2.23 How the MPU Writes into and Reads from Memory

To store (write) a byte into a memory location (Figure 2.11), the MPU

1. places the 16-bit address on the address bus of the memory location where a byte is to be stored. This address is decoded to select the memory chip, and the memory register is identified.
2. places the byte on the data bus.
3. sends the control signal Memory Write to enable the input buffers of the memory and then stores the byte.

To read from memory, the steps are similar.

1. The MPU places the 16-bit address on the address bus and sends the control signal Memory Read to enable the output buffer of the memory chip.

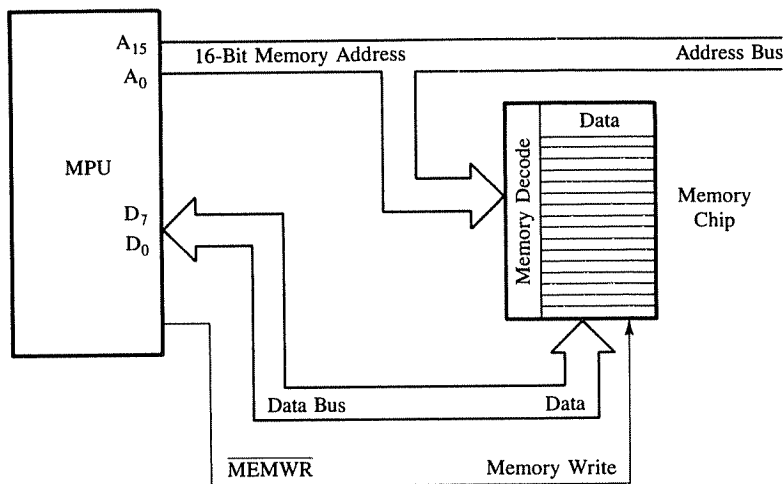


FIGURE 2.11
Memory Write Operation

2. The interfacing logic of the memory chip decodes the address and selects the appropriate memory register.
3. The memory chip places the data byte on the data bus, and the MPU reads the data byte.

2.24 Memory Classification

Memory can be classified into two groups: prime (or main) memory and storage memory. The R/WM and ROM discussed in the last section are examples of prime memory; this is the memory the microcomputer uses in executing and storing programs. This memory should be able to respond fast enough to keep up with the execution speed of the microprocessor. Therefore, it should be Random-Access Memory, meaning that the microprocessor should be able to access information from any register with the same speed (independent of its place in the chip).

Storage memory includes examples such as magnetic disks and tapes (see Figure 2.12). This memory is used to store programs and results after the completion of program execution. Information stored in these memories is nonvolatile, meaning information remains intact even if the system is turned off. Generally, these memory devices are not a part of any system; they are made part of the system only when stored programs need to be accessed. The microprocessor cannot execute or directly process programs stored in these devices; programs must be copied into the prime memory first. Therefore, the size of the prime memory (e.g., 64K or 128K) determines how large a program the system can process. The size of the storage memory is unlimited; when one disk or tape is full, another can be used.

Figure 2.12 shows two subdivisions of storage memory: secondary storage and backup storage. The secondary storage is similar to what you put on your shelf in your study, and the backup is similar to what you store in your attic. Storage memory includes such devices as disks, magnetic tapes, magnetic bubble memory, and charged-coupled devices (CCD). The primary features of all these devices are high capacity, low cost, and slow access. A disk is similar to a record; the access to the stored information in the disk is semi-random. The remaining devices shown in Figure 2.12 are serial: if information is stored in the middle of the tape, it can be accessed only after running half the tape. We will discuss some of these memory storage devices again in Chapter 7. In this chapter, we will focus on various types of prime memory.

Figure 2.12 shows that the prime memory is divided into two main groups: Read/Write Memory (R/WM) and Read-Only Memory (ROM), and each group includes several different types of memory.

R/WM (READ/WRITE MEMORY)

As the name suggests, the microprocessor can write into or read from this memory, and it is popularly known as Random-Access Memory (RAM). It is used primarily for information that is likely to be altered, such as writing programs or receiving data. This memory is volatile, meaning that when the power is turned off, all its contents are destroyed.

Two types of R/W memories—static and dynamic—are available. Static memory is

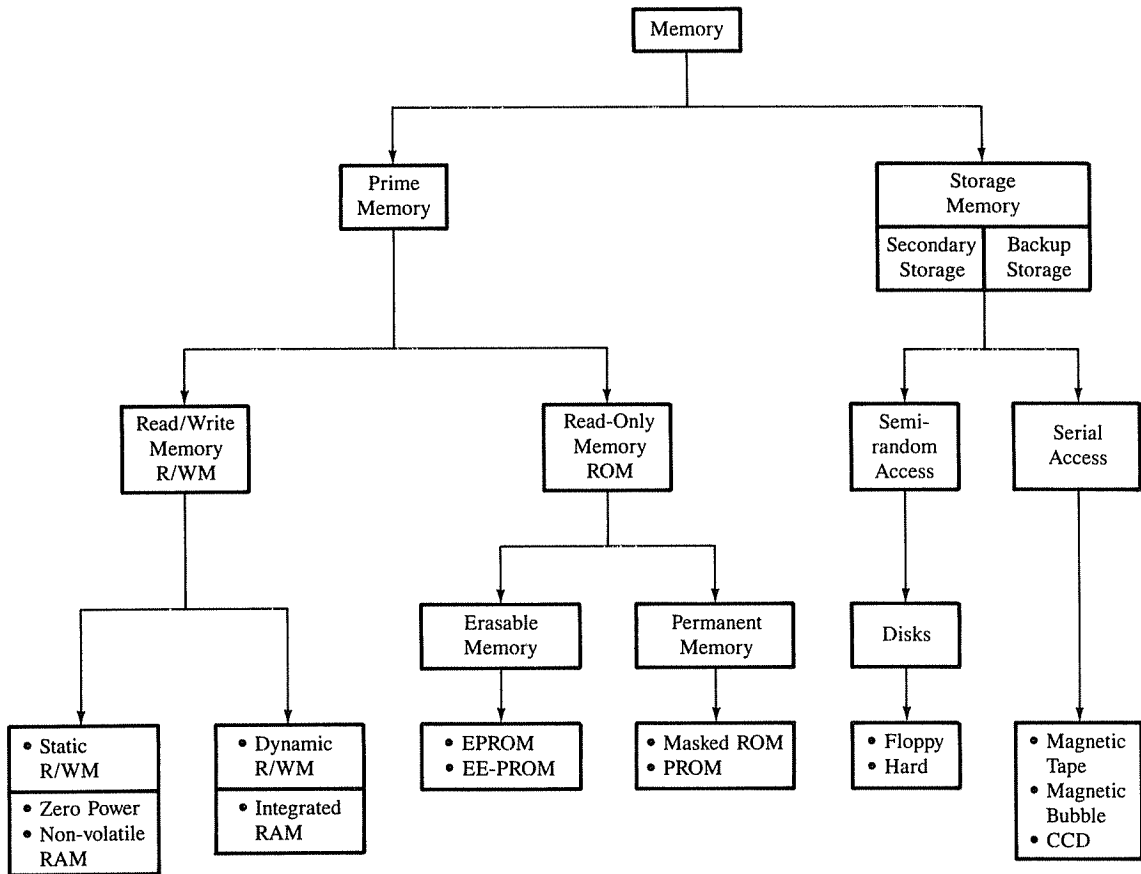


FIGURE 2.12
Memory Classification

made up of flip-flops, and it stores the bit as a voltage. Dynamic memory is made up of MOS transistor gates, and it stores the bit as a charge. The advantages of the dynamic memory are that it has higher density, lower power consumption, and is cheaper than the static memory. The disadvantage is that the charge (bit information) leaks; therefore, stored information needs to be read and written again every few milliseconds. This is called refreshing the memory, and it requires extra circuitry, which adds to the cost of the system. It is generally economical to use dynamic memory when the system memory size is larger than 16K; for smaller systems, the static memory is appropriate.

ROM (READ-ONLY MEMORY)

The ROM is a nonvolatile memory; it retains stored information even if the power is turned off. This memory is used for programs and data that need not be altered because, as the

name suggests, the information can be read only so that once a bit pattern is stored, it is permanent or at least semi-permanent. The permanent group includes two types of memory: masked ROM and PROM, and the semi-permanent group also includes two types of memory: EPROM and EE-PROM as shown in Figure 2.12.

MASKED ROM

In this ROM, a bit pattern is permanently recorded by the masking and metallization process, which memory manufacturers are generally equipped to do. It is an expensive and specialized process, but economical for large production quantities.

PROM (PROGRAMMABLE READ-ONLY MEMORY)

This memory has nichrome or polysilicon wires arranged in a matrix; these wires can be functionally viewed as diodes or fuses. This memory can be programmed by the user with a special PROM programmer that selectively burns the fuses according to the bit pattern to be stored. The process is known as “burning the PROM,” and the information stored is permanent.

EPROM (ERASABLE PROGRAMMABLE READ-ONLY MEMORY)

This memory stores a bit by charging the floating gate of a FET. Information is stored by using an EPROM programmer, which applies high voltages to charge the gate. All the information can be erased by exposing the chip to ultraviolet light through its quartz window, and the chip can be reprogrammed. Because the chip can be reused many times, this memory is ideally suited for product development, experimental projects, and college laboratories.

EE-PROM (ELECTRICALLY ERASABLE PROM)

This memory is functionally similar to EPROM, except that information can be altered by using electrical signals at the register level rather than erasing all the information. This has an advantage in field and remote control applications. In microprocessor systems, software update is a common occurrence. If EE-PROMs are used in the systems, they can be updated from a central computer by using a remote link via telephone lines. Similarly, in a process control in which timing information has to be changed, it can be done by sending electrical signals from a central place. This memory also includes a chip-erase mode whereby the entire chip can be erased in 10 ms as opposed to 15 to 20 minutes for an EPROM.

RECENT ADVANCES IN MEMORY TECHNOLOGY

Memory technology has advanced considerably in recent years. In addition to static and dynamic R/W memory, there are now more options available in memory devices. Recent examples include Zero Power RAM from MOSTEK, Non-Volatile RAM from Intel, and Integrated RAM from several manufacturers.

The Zero Power RAM is a CMOS Read/Write memory with battery backup built internally. It includes lithium cells and voltage-sensing circuitry. When the external power supply voltage falls below +3 V, the power switching circuitry connects the lithium

battery; thus, this memory provides the advantages of both R/W and Read-Only Memory.

The Non-Volatile RAM is a high speed static R/W Memory array backed up, bit for bit, by an EE-PROM array for nonvolatile storage. When the power is about to go off, the contents of R/W memory are quickly stored in the EE-PROM by activating a STORE signal on the memory chip, and the stored data can be read into the R/W memory segment when the power is turned on again. This memory chip combines the flexibility of static R/W memory with the nonvolatility of EE-PROM.

The Integrated RAM (iRAM) is a dynamic memory with the refreshed circuitry built on the chip. For the user, it is similar to the static R/W memory. The user can derive the advantages of the dynamic memory without having to build the external refreshing circuitry. At present, this memory is economical for a system with medium-sized memory (between 8K and 64K).

2.3

INPUT AND OUTPUT (I/O) DEVICES

Input/Output devices are the means through which the MPU communicates with “the outside world.” The MPU accepts binary data as input from devices such as keyboards and A/D converters and sends data to output devices such as LEDs or printers. There are two different methods by which an MPU can identify I/O devices: one uses an 8-bit address and the other a 16-bit address. These methods are described briefly in the following sections.

2.31 I/Os with 8-Bit Addresses (Peripheral-Mapped I/O)

In this type of I/O, the MPU uses eight address lines to identify an input or an output device; this is also known as peripheral-mapped I/O. The eight address lines can have 256 (2^8 combinations) addresses; thus, the MPU can identify 256 input devices and 256 output devices with addresses ranging from 00_H to FF_H . The input and output devices are differentiated by the control signals I/O Read for input devices and I/O Write for output devices. The entire range of I/O addresses from 00_H to FF_H is also known as I/O map, and individual addresses are also referred to as I/O device addresses or I/O port numbers.

If we use LEDs as output or switches as input, we need to resolve two issues: how to assign addresses and how to connect these I/O devices to the data bus. In a bus architecture, these devices cannot be connected directly to the data bus or the address bus; all connections must be made through tri-state interfacing devices so they will be enabled and connected to the buses only when the MPU chooses to communicate with them. In the case of memory, we did not have to be concerned with these problems because of the internal address decoding, Read/Write buffers, and availability of \overline{CS} and control signals of the memory chip. In the case of I/O devices, we need to use external interfacing devices.

The steps in communicating with an I/O device are similar to those in communicating with memory and can be summarized as follows:

1. The MPU places an 8-bit address on the address bus, which is decoded by the external decode logic (explained in Chapter 5).
2. The MPU sends a control signal (I/O Read or I/O Write) to enable the I/O device.
3. Data are transferred on the data bus.

2.32 I/Os with 16-bit Addresses (Memory-Mapped I/O)

In this type of I/O, the MPU uses 16 address lines to identify an I/O device; an I/O is connected as if it is a memory register. In memory-mapped I/O, the MPU uses the same control signals (Memory Read or Memory Write) and instructions as those of memory and follows the same steps as when it is accessing a memory register. In some microprocessors, such as the Motorola 6800, all I/Os have 16-bit addresses so that I/Os and memory share the same memory map (64K).

The peripheral- and memory-mapped I/O techniques will be discussed in detail in the context of interfacing I/O devices (see Chapter 5).

EXAMPLE OF A MICROCOMPUTER SYSTEM

2.4

In the last three sections, we discussed a generalized MPU model, prime memory and its organization model, and I/Os. The discussion can be summarized in the block diagram of a microcomputer system as shown in Figure 2.13. It includes a generalized MPU, two types of prime memory, and two I/O devices.

All address lines are used to address memory, and only the low-order address bus is used to identify I/O devices, indicating that they are connected as peripheral-mapped I/O (the details of Chip Select decoding are omitted here). The data bus is bidirectional and

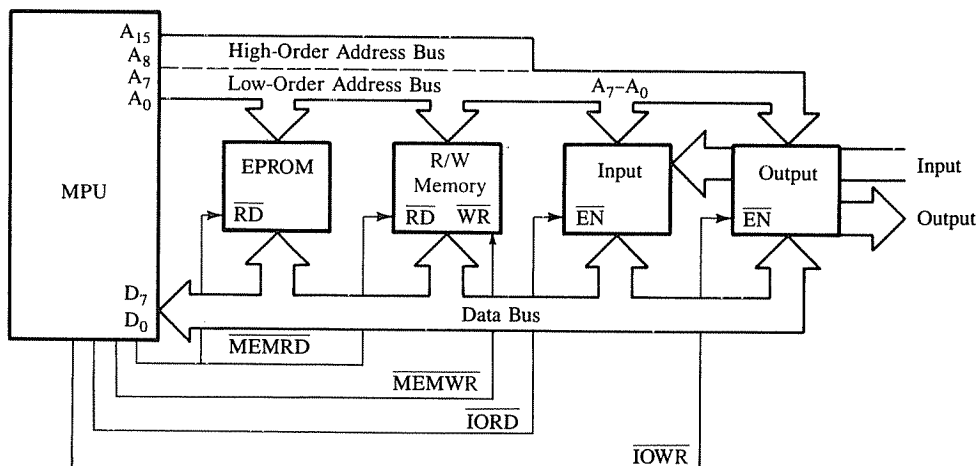


FIGURE 2.13
Example of a Microcomputer System

common to all devices. The four control signals generated by the MPU are connected to different peripherals, as shown in Figure 2.13.

HOW DOES THE SYSTEM WORK?

Let us assume that a simple program with three instructions is already written and stored in binary in R/W memory. Those instructions are

1. Read Input Port No. 20_H.
2. Display the Data at the Output Port 80_H.
3. Stop.

To execute these instructions, the MPU does the following:

1. Places the memory address bus of the instruction 1 and fetches the instruction using the control signal Memory Read ($\overline{\text{MEMRD}}$). (The MPU may have to fetch instruction codes more than once if the instruction has more than one byte.) It decodes the instruction.
 - ☐ Reads the input port by placing the address bus 20_H, reads data using the control signal I/O Read ($\overline{\text{IOR}}$), and stores the data in one of the registers.
2. Fetches the next instruction by placing the memory address of that instruction and the control signal $\overline{\text{MEMRD}}$. Then, it decodes the instruction.
 - ☐ Places the port address 80_H and transfers the data using the control signal I/O Write ($\overline{\text{IOWR}}$).
3. Again fetches the last instruction from memory as before, decodes it, and stops.

This is a simplified description of how the system works; it excludes the details about multi-byte instructions, machine cycles, and timing.

SUMMARY

In this chapter, we examined the requirements of the Microprocessor Unit (MPU) to communicate with memory and I/O devices and to process binary data. Based on those requirements, we designed a generalized model of the MPU. We discussed memory in terms of its storage elements, namely, latches and registers and techniques of assigning addresses. The steps required for the MPU to communicate with memory and I/Os were briefly described. The important concepts are summarized as follows.

- ☐ The MPU performs four primary operations: Memory Read, Memory Write, I/O Read, and I/O Write.
- ☐ To communicate with memory and I/Os, the MPU needs three types of buses: the unidirectional address bus to send memory and I/O addresses, the bidirectional data bus to transfer data, and control signals to enable the devices.

- ☐ The MPU should have signal lines to accept and to acknowledge external requests. These requests are Reset (go back to beginning), interrupt (stop the ongoing process and attend to something urgent), wait to synchronize with slow memory, and allow the use of buses to an external device because the MPU response time is slower than that of the external device.
- ☐ To process data, the MPU should include registers to store data, memory pointers to hold memory addresses, ALU to perform arithmetic and logic operations, and flags to indicate data conditions.
- ☐ Memory is a group of registers, arranged in a sequence, to store bits. The number of cells (latches) in a register determines the size of the memory word in a chip.
- ☐ A memory chip requires address lines to identify a memory register, Chip Select signal to select the chip, and control signals to read from and write into memory registers.
- ☐ The range of memory addresses assigned to a memory chip in a system is called the memory map. The assignment of memory addresses is done through the Chip Select logic.
- ☐ An I/O device can be identified either with an 8-bit address called the peripheral-mapped I/O or with a 16-bit address called the memory-mapped I/O.
- ☐ To communicate with memory or I/O, the MPU places the address of the device on the address bus, places data on the data bus, and sends the appropriate control signal.

LOOKING AHEAD

In this chapter, we examined the microprocessor as a programmable logic device and developed a generalized model. Similarly, we discussed memory as a storage element and constructed a memory model. We examined briefly the role of I/Os as channels of communication with “the outside world.” These three elements were interconnected through a bus architecture to form a model of a microcomputer system. Then we discussed how the MPU communicates with memory and I/Os.

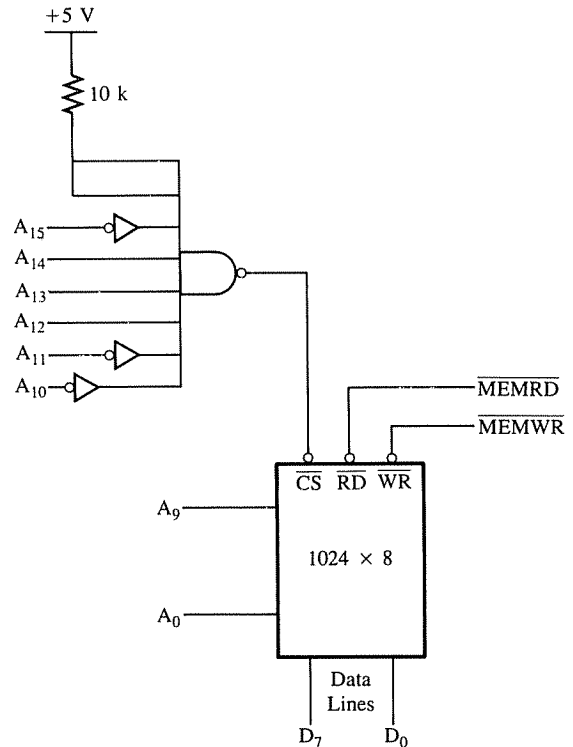
In the next three chapters, we will explore each component and its communication process separately with details and specific examples. In Chapter 3, we will examine the Z80 microprocessor in the context of our generalized model of a programmable logic device. Chapter 4 discusses memory and its interfacing, and Chapter 5 is devoted to interfacing I/O devices.

ASSIGNMENTS

1. List the four operations commonly performed by the MPU.
2. What is a bus?

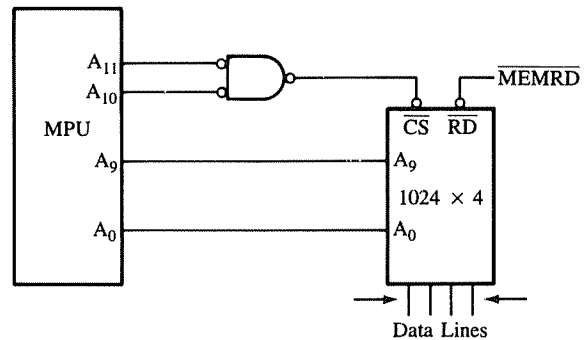
3. What is the function of the address bus?
4. How many memory locations can be addressed by the MPU with thirteen address lines?
5. How many address lines are necessary to address two megabytes (2048K) of memory?
6. What is the function of the interrupt signal and when is it used?
7. When is the bus request signal used?
8. Specify the number of registers and memory cells in a 128×4 memory chip.
9. How many bits are stored by a 256×4 memory chip? Can this chip be specified as 128-byte memory?
10. If the memory size is 1024×4 bits, how many chips are required to make up 1K-byte memory?
11. If the memory chip size is 1024×1 bits, how many chips are necessary to make up 4K (4,096) bytes of memory?
12. What is the function of the \overline{WR} signal on the memory chip?
13. How many address lines are necessary for the memory chip with 2048×8 size?

FIGURE 2.14
Identification of Memory Maps
for Assignments 17–18



14. How many address lines are necessary for the memory chip with 2048×4 size?
15. The memory map of a 4K(4,096)-byte memory chip begins at the location 8000_H . Specify the entire memory map and the number of pages in the map.
16. The memory address of the last location of an 8K-byte memory chip is $FFFF_H$. Find the starting address.
17. Identify the memory map in Figure 2.14. List the high-order and low-order address lines. How many pages of memory does the chip include?
18. In Figure 2.14, identify the memory map if the inverter of the address line A15 is eliminated and A15 is connected directly to the NAND gate.
19. Figure 2.15 shows an MPU with the address bus containing 12 address lines and the data bus with four data lines; it is interfaced with the 1K-byte memory chip. Find the memory map.
20. Specify the size of the memory word shown in Figure 2.15.

FIGURE 2.15
Identification of Memory Maps for
Assignments 19–20

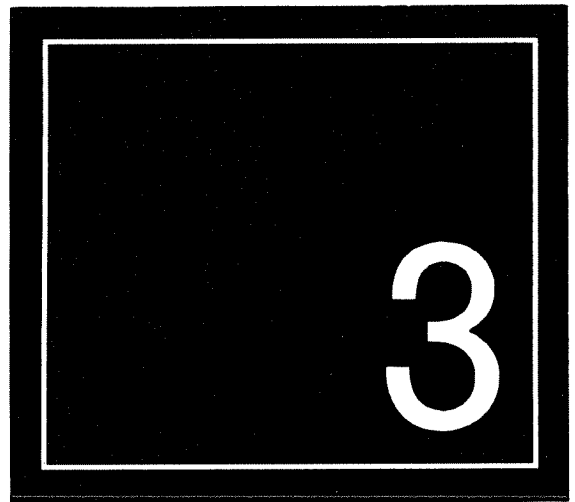


Z80 Microprocessor: Programming Model and Hardware Model

The Z80 is one of the most versatile and widely used 8-bit microprocessors, and many microcomputer systems are designed around the Z80. The Z80 chip includes most of the logic circuitry for performing computing tasks and necessary bus signals. This chapter discusses the Z80 architecture in terms of two models: the programming model and the hardware model derived from the generalized MPU discussed in the previous chapter.

We will describe the programming model first because it provides the overview of the Z80 architecture. This information is essential to hardware designers as well as programmers. The model describes the accumulator, internal 8-bit and 16-bit registers, and their functions during the execution of a program. The description also includes the details of the flags and data conditions under which they are set or reset, information very critical to the programmer.

The hardware model shows logic pinout of the chip and classifies the signals in various groups according to their functions. The model lists the operations the Z80 frequently performs and describes how the Z80 communicates with memory and I/Os by using various buses. These operations are illustrated in terms of machine cycles and logic levels of the buses in relation to the system clock.



Finally, the chapter includes the discussion of other contemporary 8-bit microprocessors in terms of the generalized model developed in the last chapter and compares them with the Z80.

OBJECTIVES

- Draw the Z80 programming model and identify the registers.
- Explain the functions of the accumulator, general-purpose registers, and alternate registers.
- Explain the functions of 16-bit registers and special-purpose registers.
- List the flags and explain the data conditions under which they are set or reset.
- List the functional groups of the Z80 signals.
- Define the address bus, the data bus, and the control signals, and explain their functions.
- List the types of external signals and explain their purposes.
- List three categories of the Z80's operations.
- Explain the terms instruction cycle, machine cycle, and T-state.
- List the steps the Z80 performs to execute the Opcode Fetch, the Memory Read, and the Memory Write cycles, and explain their functions.
- Show the bus contents and the appropriate control signals in reference to the system clock when these machine cycles are executed.
- Describe the 8085, the NSC800, and the 6800 microprocessors in terms of the generalized MPU and compare them with the Z80.

3.1 THE Z80 PROGRAMMING MODEL

In the last chapter, we developed a model to represent the internal structure of the MPU shown in Figure 2.3. We will now describe a similar model of the Z80 microprocessor; however, we will include only those components necessary for the programmer. Figure 3.1 shows such a model, which includes an **accumulator** and a **flag register**, **general-purpose register arrays**, registers used as **memory pointers**, and **special-purpose registers**. These registers and their functions are described in the following sections.

3.11 Accumulator

The accumulator is an 8-bit register that is part of the Arithmetic/Logic unit (ALU) and is also identified as register A. This register is used to store 8-bit data and to perform arithmetic and logic operations. The result of an operation performed in the ALU is also stored in the accumulator. For example, in an 8-bit addition, the instruction ADD always assumes that one of the numbers is the byte in the accumulator, and the result of the addition is stored in the accumulator by replacing the previous byte.

Figure 3.1 shows an additional accumulator called A' in the alternate register set. A' is not directly accessible to store a byte or perform an ALU operation, but the contents of A' are accessible by exchanging its contents with the contents of the accumulator A.

3.12 Flag Register

The ALU includes six flip-flops that are set or reset according to data conditions after an ALU operation, and the status of each flip-flop, also known as flags, is shown in the flag register F. The status of each of the six flags is stored in the 8-bit flag register so that they

Each of these four flags has two Jumps or Call instructions associated with it: one when the flag is set and the other when the flag is reset. These flags have critical importance in the decision making process; all decisions are based on the status of these flags. For example, the instruction JP C, 2050H (Jump on Carry to memory location 2050_H) is implemented to change the sequence of a program when the Carry flag is set.

The details of these flags are described below in the order of frequency of use. They will be discussed again in the context of illustrative programs. At the outset, the descriptions of these flags may appear quite complex. However, when we begin to write programs, we will see that, in general, most flags are ignored except one or two depending upon the operations being performed. For the time being, to understand their function, you should focus on three flags: C (Carry), Z (Zero), and S (Sign).

- **C—Carry flag:** If an arithmetic operation generates a carry (in addition) or a borrow (in subtraction), the Carry flag is set; otherwise it is reset.
It is important to remember that when an arithmetic operation does not generate a carry (or borrow), the flag is reset.
The flag is also affected by such other instructions as logic and shift instructions. The details will be discussed when specific instructions are explained.
The Z80 includes instructions SCF—Set Carry Flag—and CCF—Complement Carry Flag—that can set or complement this flag independent of the previous ALU operation.
- **Z—Zero flag:** If an 8-bit operation results in zero, the Z flag is set; otherwise it is reset.
In a bit testing operation, if the bit is zero, this flag is set; otherwise it is reset.
In comparing two numbers, the Z flag is set when they are equal; otherwise it is reset.
The Z flag is also affected by special input instruction, block I/O instructions, and counting instructions.
- **S—Sign flag:** After an ALU operation, if the most significant bit D₇ is 1, the sign flag is set; otherwise it is reset. When the flag is set, you do not necessarily have a negative result. The interpretation of the Sign flag depends upon the number system (unsigned number, signed magnitude, or 2's complement) being used by the programmer. This flag can, of course, be used to indicate negative numbers, but its usage can be confusing. Therefore, it is discussed in detail in the context of the appropriate instructions. This flag is also affected by special input instructions in the Z80 set.
- **P/V—Parity/Overflow flag:** This flag is used for two purposes: to check the parity (the number of 1s in a byte) and to check an overflow in dealing with signed numbers.
In the case of parity check after an operation, if the number of 1s in the result is even (even parity), this flag is set, and if the number of 1s is odd (odd parity), the flag is reset. For example, if the result, of ANDing two bytes is 0 0 0 0 0 1 1, the parity flag is set to indicate even parity (two 1s). In this example, the magnitude base-ten (3₁₀) is odd; however, the odd or even number has no relationship with the odd or the even parity.

In arithmetic operations of signed numbers where bit D_7 is used to indicate sign, this flag is set to indicate an overflow condition. For example, when bit D_7 is reserved for a sign, the magnitude of a number is represented by the remaining seven bits, the maximum being $0111111 (+127_{10})$. After an addition, if the sum goes beyond $+127$, bit D_7 changes to 1, a change that would indicate a negative result. In fact, this is an overflow condition and it is indicated by the overflow (V) flag.

This flag is also used for other functions such as block transfer, search, and interrupt.

- **H—Half-Carry flag:** In an arithmetic operation, this flag is affected by the carry or borrow between bits D_3 and D_4 . In addition, when there is a carry from bit D_3 to D_4 , the Half-Carry flag (H) is set; otherwise, it is reset. In a subtraction, when there is a borrow from bit D_4 to D_3 , this flag is set; otherwise, it is reset.
The flag is used internally for BCD (Binary Coded Decimal) operations, and there are no Jump or Call instructions associated with this flag.
- **N—Add/Subtract flag:** This flag is also used internally for BCD operations to distinguish between addition and subtraction. For BCD addition, this flag is 0 and for subtraction it is set to 1.

The **alternate flag register** F' is associated with the alternate accumulator A' as shown in Figure 3.1. The contents of this register can be accessed by using the exchange instruction.

3.13 General-Purpose and Alternate Registers

The Z80 microprocessor has six programmable general-purpose registers named B, C, D, E, H, and L, as shown in Figure 3.1. These are 8-bit registers used for storing data during the program execution. They can be combined as register pairs—BC, DE, HL—to perform 16-bit operations or to hold memory addresses.

The programmer can use these registers to *load* or copy data. For example, the instruction LD B, C copies the data from register C into register B. Conceptually, these registers can be viewed as memory locations, except that they are built inside the microprocessor and identified by specific names. Some microprocessors do not have this type of register; instead, they use memory as their registers.

In addition to the general-purpose registers, the Z80 includes a similar set of six **alternate registers** designated as B' , C' , D' , E' , H' , and L' . These are 8-bit registers used for exchanging data with the general-purpose registers. They are not directly available to the programmer, except through the exchange instructions.

3.14 16-Bit Registers as Memory Pointers

The Z80 microprocessor includes four 16-bit registers used to hold memory addresses; they are classified here as memory pointers. The primary function of memory is to store instructions and data, and the microprocessor needs to access memory registers to read these instructions and data. To access a memory register, the microprocessor identifies the register by using the addresses in these memory pointers.

INDEX REGISTERS (IX AND IY)

The Z80 has two 16-bit **index registers** called IX and IY. Each register is used to specify a memory address by the 16-bit address it holds and a displacement count. For example, if the IX register holds 2050_H, a higher memory address such as 2060_H can be specified by adding the displacement count of 10_H. Similarly, a lower memory address such as 2040_H can be specified by adding the negative of 10_H in 2's complement.

In addition to the index registers, the HL pair is frequently used as a memory pointer. Similarly, the BC and DE pairs can be used also as memory pointers in a limited way. However, no displacement byte can be added to the contents of these pairs.

STACK POINTER (SP)

The stack pointer is also a 16-bit register used to point to the memory location called the **stack**. The stack is a defined area of memory locations in R/W memory, and the beginning of the stack is defined by loading a 16-bit address into the stack pointer.

We will discuss the concept of the stack memory in detail when we introduce the topic of subroutines.

PROGRAM COUNTER (PC)

This register functions as a 16-bit counter. The microprocessor uses this register to sequence the execution of instructions. The program counter points to the memory address from which the next byte is to be fetched, and when the microprocessor places an address on the address bus to fetch the byte from memory, it then increments the program counter by one to point to the next memory location.

3.15 Special-Purpose Registers

The Z80 microprocessor includes two special-purpose registers generally not found in other 8-bit microprocessors. These registers are shown in Figure 3.1 as interrupt vector register (I) and the memory refresh register (R).

INTERRUPT VECTOR REGISTER (I)

This is an 8-bit register used in the interrupt process. When an external device interrupts the microprocessor with a request to do something else, the microprocessor should be directed to a 16-bit address in memory where it can find what to do next. The I register is used to store the high-order eight bits of the 16-bit address; the low-order eight bits must be supplied by the interrupting device. We will discuss the details and applications of this register in Chapter 12.

MEMORY REFRESH REGISTER (R)

The memory refresh register (R) is also an 8-bit register which is used as a 7-bit counter to provide an address of memory cells to be refreshed in dynamic memory. As mentioned in the previous chapter, information stored as a capacitive charge in dynamic memory leaks; therefore, bit information should be refreshed, meaning it should be read and stored again

every few milliseconds. Applications of the memory refresh register (R) will be discussed in detail with the topic of Interfacing Dynamic Memory.

3.16 Using the Programming Model

In this section, we will illustrate what happens to the contents of some of the registers in the microprocessor when a series of instructions is executed as shown in Example 3.1.

Write instructions in English-like statements to load the two data bytes 53_H and C9_H into registers A and B respectively. Add the two bytes. Illustrate the contents of registers affected in the programming model after the execution of each instruction and the status of the Carry and Zero flags.

Example 3.1

Solution

A	53	X	F
B	C9	X	C

(a)

A	1C	C = 1, Z = 0
B	C9	X

(b)

1. Load A with 53_H.

2. Load B with C9_H.

3. Add registers A and B.

FIGURE 3.3
Register Contents

Figure 3.3(a) shows the contents of registers A and B after the execution of the first two instructions. The next instruction adds the contents of registers A and B; the sum is 11C_H. Figure 3.3(b) shows the accumulator with 1C_H and the CY flag set in the flag register. Please note that the flags are not affected by the Load or Copy instructions.

Z80 HARDWARE MODEL

3.2

The Z80 hardware model described in this section represents the microprocessor unit (MPU) as defined in Chapter 2. The Z80 microprocessor almost qualifies as an MPU, except that an external oscillator circuit is required to provide the operating frequency and appropriate control signals need to be generated to communicate with memory and I/O. In

the following sections, we describe the Z80 microprocessor in relation to the model we developed in the previous chapter. Then we examine the timing involved in reading an instruction from memory and generate the necessary control signals by using appropriate logic gates.

3.21 The Z80 Microprocessor

The Z80 is a general-purpose 8-bit microprocessor with 16 address lines and requires a single +5 V power supply. It is housed in a 40-pin dual-in-line (DIP) package. The different versions of Z80 microprocessors such as Z80, Z80A, Z80B, and Z80H are rated to operate at various frequencies ranging from 2.5 MHz to 8 MHz. Even though the Z80 instruction set is upward compatible with the Intel 8080 set, neither of these microprocessors are pin compatible.

Figure 3.4 shows pin configuration of the Z80 microprocessor and its hardware model with logic signals. All the signals can be classified into six groups: (1) address bus, (2) data bus, (3) control signals, (4) external requests, (5) request acknowledge and special

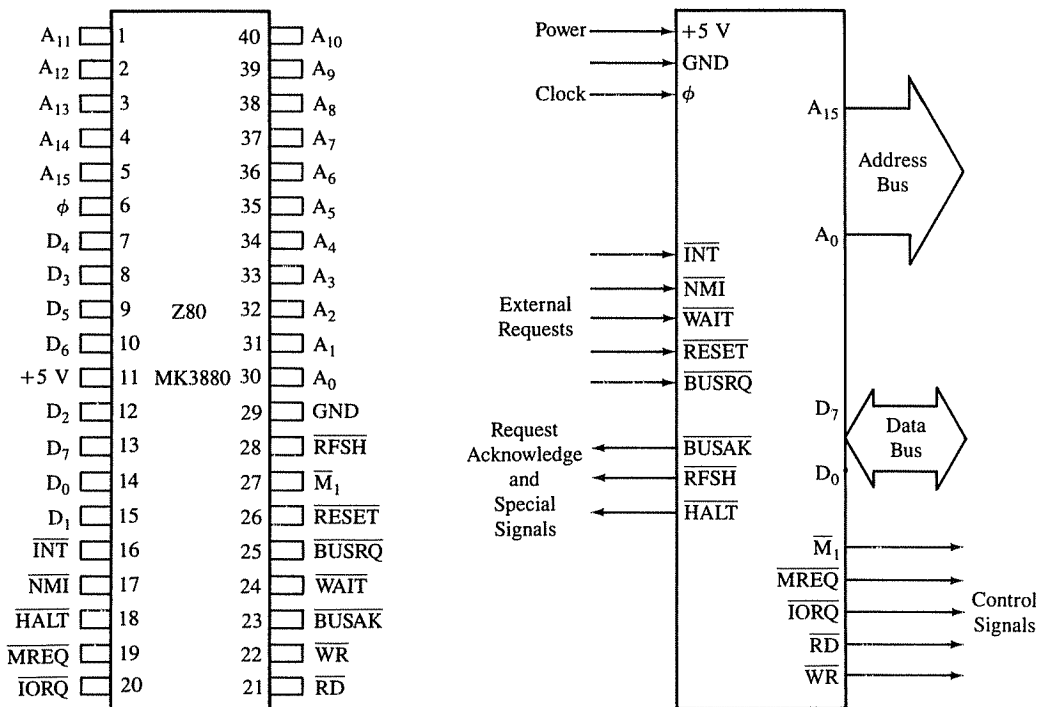


FIGURE 3.4
Z80 Microprocessor Pinout and Logic Signals

SOURCE: Courtesy of Mostek Corporation

signals, and (6) power and frequency signals. This Z80 hardware model matches the hardware model of the generalized MPU described in Chapter 2. The specific details of these signals follow.

ADDRESS BUS

The Z80 has 16 tri-state signal lines, A_{15} – A_0 , known as the address bus. These lines are unidirectional and capable of addressing 64K (2^{16}) memory. The address bus is used to send (or place) the addresses of memory registers and I/O devices.

DATA BUS

The data bus consists of eight tri-state bidirectional lines D_7 – D_0 and is used for data transfer. On these lines, data can flow in either direction—from the microprocessor to memory and I/Os or vice versa.

CONTROL SIGNALS

This group consists of five individual output lines: three can be classified as status signals indicating the nature of the operation being performed, and two as control signals to read from and write into memory or I/Os.

- \overline{M}_1 —Machine Cycle One: This is an active low signal indicating that an opcode is being fetched from memory. This signal is also used in an interrupt operation to generate an interrupt acknowledge signal, which will be explained in Chapter 12.
- \overline{MREQ} —Memory Request: This is an active low tri-state line. This signal indicates that the address bus holds a valid address for a memory read or write operation.
- \overline{IORQ} —I/O Request: This is an active low tri-state line. This signal indicates that the low-order address bus (A_7 – A_0) holds a valid address for an I/O read or write operation. This signal is also generated for an interrupt operation.
- \overline{RD} —Read: This is an active low tri-state line. This signal indicates that the microprocessor is ready to read data from memory or an I/O device. This signal should be used in conjunction with \overline{MREQ} for the Memory Read (\overline{MEMRD}) operation and with \overline{IORQ} for the I/O Read (\overline{IORD}) operation.
- \overline{WR} —Write: This is an active low tri-state line. This signal indicates that the microprocessor has already placed a data byte on the data bus and is ready to write into memory or an I/O device. This signal should be used in conjunction with \overline{MREQ} for the Memory Write (\overline{MEMWR}) operation and with \overline{IORQ} for the I/O Write (\overline{IOWR}) operation.

EXTERNAL REQUESTS

This group includes five different input signals to the microprocessor from external sources. These signals are used to interrupt an ongoing process and to request the microprocessor to do something else.

- \overline{RESET} —Reset: This is an active low signal used to reset the microprocessor. When \overline{RESET} is activated, the program counter (PC), the interrupt register (I), and the memory refresh register (R) are all cleared to 0. During the reset time, the address bus and

the data bus are in high impedance state, and all control signals become inactive. This signal also disables interrupt and refresh. The $\overline{\text{RESET}}$ signal can be initiated by an external key or switch and must be active at least for three clock periods to complete the reset operation.

- $\overline{\text{INT}}$ —Interrupt Request: This is an active low signal, initiated by an I/O device to interrupt the microprocessor operation. When the microprocessor accepts the interrupt request, it acknowledges by activating the $\overline{\text{IORQ}}$ signal during the M_1 cycle. The $\overline{\text{INT}}$ signal is maskable, meaning it can be disabled through a software instruction. The interrupt process will be fully discussed in Chapter 12.
- $\overline{\text{NMI}}$ —Nonmaskable Interrupt: This is a nonmaskable interrupt; it cannot be disabled. It is activated by a negative edge-triggered signal from an external source. This signal is used primarily for implementing emergency procedures. There is no signal or pin to acknowledge this signal; it is accepted provided the Bus Request signal is inactive.
- $\overline{\text{BUSRQ}}$ —Bus Request: This is an active low signal initiated by external I/O devices such as the DMA (Direct Memory Access) controller. An I/O device can send a low signal to $\overline{\text{BUSRQ}}$ to request the use of the address bus, the data bus, and the control signals. The external device can use the buses, and when its operations are complete, it returns the control to the microprocessor. This signal is used primarily for the direct memory access technique to be discussed in Chapter 16.
- $\overline{\text{WAIT}}$ —Wait: This is an active low signal and can be used by memory or I/O devices to add clock cycles to extend the Z80 operations. This signal is used when the response time of memory or I/O devices is slower than that of the Z80. When this signal goes low, it indicates to the microprocessor that the addressed memory or I/O device is not yet ready for data transfer. As long as this signal is low, the Z80 keeps adding cycles to its operation.

REQUEST ACKNOWLEDGE AND SPECIAL SIGNALS

Among the five external requests described above, only two of the requests need acknowledgement: Bus Request and Interrupt. The interrupt is acknowledged by the $\overline{\text{IORQ}}$ signal in conjunction with the M_1 signal. The Bus Request is acknowledged by a $\overline{\text{BUSAK}}$ (Bus Acknowledge). In addition, the Z80 has two special signals: $\overline{\text{HALT}}$ and $\overline{\text{RFSH}}$.

- $\overline{\text{BUSAK}}$ —Bus Acknowledge: This is an active low output signal initiated by the Z80 in response to the Bus Request signal. This signal indicates to the requesting device that the address bus, the data bus, and the control signals ($\overline{\text{RD}}$, $\overline{\text{WR}}$, $\overline{\text{MREQ}}$, and $\overline{\text{IORQ}}$) have entered into the high impedance state and can be used by the requesting device.
- $\overline{\text{HALT}}$ —Halt: This is an active low output signal used to indicate that the MPU has executed the $\overline{\text{HALT}}$ instruction.
- $\overline{\text{RFSH}}$ —Refresh: This is an active low signal indicating that the address bus A_6-A_0 (low-order seven bits) holds a refresh address of dynamic memory; it should be used in conjunction with $\overline{\text{MREQ}}$ to refresh memory contents.

POWER AND FREQUENCY SIGNALS

This group includes three signals as follows:

- ϕ —Clock: This pin is used to connect a single phase frequency source. The Z80 does not include a clock circuit on its chip; the circuit must be built separately.
- +5 V and GND—These pins are for a power supply and ground reference; the Z80 requires one +5 V power source.

MACHINE CYCLES AND BUS TIMINGS

3.3

The Z80 microprocessor is designed to execute 158 different instructions. Each instruction has two parts: **operation code** (known as **opcode**) and **operand**. The opcode is a command such as Add, and the operand is an object to be operated on, such as a byte or the contents of a register. Some instructions are 1-byte instructions and some are multi-byte instructions. To execute an instruction, the Z80 needs to perform various operations such as Memory Read/Write and I/O Read/Write. However, there is no direct relationship between the number of bytes of an instruction and the number of operations the Z80 has to perform. For example, the instruction to send the contents of the accumulator to the output port 10_H is a 2-byte instruction: OUT (10H), A.

- Byte 1: OUT → This is the opcode to output data.
- Byte 2: (10H*), A → This is the operand to specify that the byte should be sent from the accumulator to Port 10_H.

But the Z80 has to perform three operations: (1) read Byte 1 from memory, (2) read Byte 2 from memory, (3) send data to port 10_H.

In the previous section, numerous Z80 signals and their functions were described. Now we need to examine these signals in conjunction with execution of individual instructions and their operations. This task may appear overwhelming at the beginning; fortunately, all instructions are divided into a few basic operations called machine cycles, and these machine cycles are divided into precise *system clock periods*.

The microprocessor external communication functions can be divided into three basic categories:

1. Memory Read and Write.
2. I/O Read and Write.
3. Request Acknowledge.

These functions are further divided into various operations (machine cycles) as

*A hexadecimal number in an instruction is shown as a number followed by the letter H.

shown in Table 3.1. Each instruction consists of one or more of these machine cycles, and each machine cycle is divided into T-states.

To understand various operations, we need to define three terms: instruction cycle, machine cycle, and T-state.

Instruction cycle is defined as the time required to complete the execution of an instruction. The Z80 instruction cycle consists of one to six machine cycles or one to six operations.

Machine cycle is defined as the time required to complete one operation of accessing memory, accessing I/O, or acknowledging an external request. This cycle may consist of three to six T-states.

T-state is defined as one subdivision of the operation performed in one clock period. These subdivisions are internal states synchronized with the system clock, and each T-state is precisely equal to one clock period. The terms T-state and clock period are often used synonymously.

In this chapter, we focus on the first three operations listed in Table 3.1—Opcode Fetch, Memory Read, and Memory Write—and examine the signals on various buses in relation to the system clock. In the next chapter, we will use these timing diagrams to interface memory with the Z80 microprocessor. Similarly, we will discuss timings of other machine cycles in later chapters in the context of their applications. For example, I/O Read/Write machine cycles will be discussed in Chapter 5 and Interrupt Acknowledge will be discussed in Chapter 12.

3.31 Opcode Fetch Machine Cycle (\overline{M}_1)

The first operation in any instruction is opcode fetch. The microprocessor needs to get (fetch) this machine code from the memory register where it is stored before the microprocessor can begin to execute the instruction. The opcode fetch operation and its timing signals are illustrated in the example below.

TABLE 3.1
The Z80 Machine Cycles and Control Signals

Machine Cycle	\overline{M}_1	\overline{MREQ}	\overline{IORQ}	\overline{RD}	\overline{WR}
Opcode Fetch (\overline{M}_1)	0	0	1	0	1
Memory Read	1	0	1	0	1
Memory Write	1	0	1	1	0
I/O Read	1	1	0	0	1
I/O Write	1	1	0	1	0
Interrupt Acknowledge	0	1	0	1	1
Non-maskable Interrupt	0	0	1	0	1
Bus Acknowledge ($\overline{BUSAK} = 0$)	1	Z	Z	Z	Z

NOTE: Logic 0 = Active, Logic 1 = Inactive, Z = High Impedance

The accumulator of the Z80 microprocessor holds the data byte $9F_H$, and the code for instruction LD B, A (opcode) 0 1 0 0 0 1 1 1 (47_H) is stored in memory location 2002_H . This is a 1-byte instruction, and when this opcode is executed, the contents of the accumulator will be copied into register B. List the sequence of events that takes place to execute this machine code and illustrate the signals on various buses in relation to the system clock.

Example 3.2

Before the Z80 can execute the opcode, it needs to fetch the code from the memory location. To fetch the opcode, the Z80 performs the following steps:

Solution

1. The Z80 places the contents of the program counter (2002_H) on the address bus, and increments the program counter to the next address, 2003_H . The program counter always points to next byte to be executed.
2. The address is decoded by the external decoding circuit and the register 2002_H is identified.
3. The Z80 sends the control signals (\overline{MREQ} and \overline{RD}) to enable the memory output buffer.
4. The contents of the memory register (opcode 47_H) are placed on the data bus and brought into the instruction decoder of the microprocessor.
5. The Z80 decodes the opcode and executes the instruction, meaning it copies the contents of the accumulator into register B.

Figure 3.5 shows how the Z80 fetches the opcode using the address and the data buses and the control signal. Figure 3.6 shows the timing of the Opcode Fetch machine cycle in relation to the system's clock. The address bus in Figure 3.6 is shown as two parallel lines. This is a commonly used practice to represent logic levels of groups of lines; some lines are high and others are low, and the crossover of the lines indicates that a new address is being placed on the address bus. The high impedance state is shown by a straight line as in the data bus (D_7-D_0). The timing details of these signals are given below.

1. Figure 3.6 shows that the Opcode Fetch cycle is completed in four clock periods or T-states. This machine cycle is also identified as the M_1 cycle.
2. At the beginning of the first clock period T_1 , the control signal $\overline{M_1}$ goes low and the contents of the program counter (2002_H) are placed on the address bus.
3. After the falling edge of T_1 , the Z80 asserts two control signals— \overline{MREQ} and \overline{RD} , both active low. The \overline{MREQ} indicates that it is a memory related operation and \overline{RD} suggests that it is a Read operation. Both signals are necessary to read from memory.
4. The internal decoder of the memory and the Chip Select circuit (not shown in Figure 3.6) decode the address and identify register 2002_H . The control signals \overline{MREQ} and \overline{RD} are used to enable the memory output buffer. The data bus, which was in high impedance state, is activated as an input bus (to the microprocessor) shortly after the leading edge of T_2 . After the falling edge of T_2 , memory places its register contents (47_H) on the data bus.

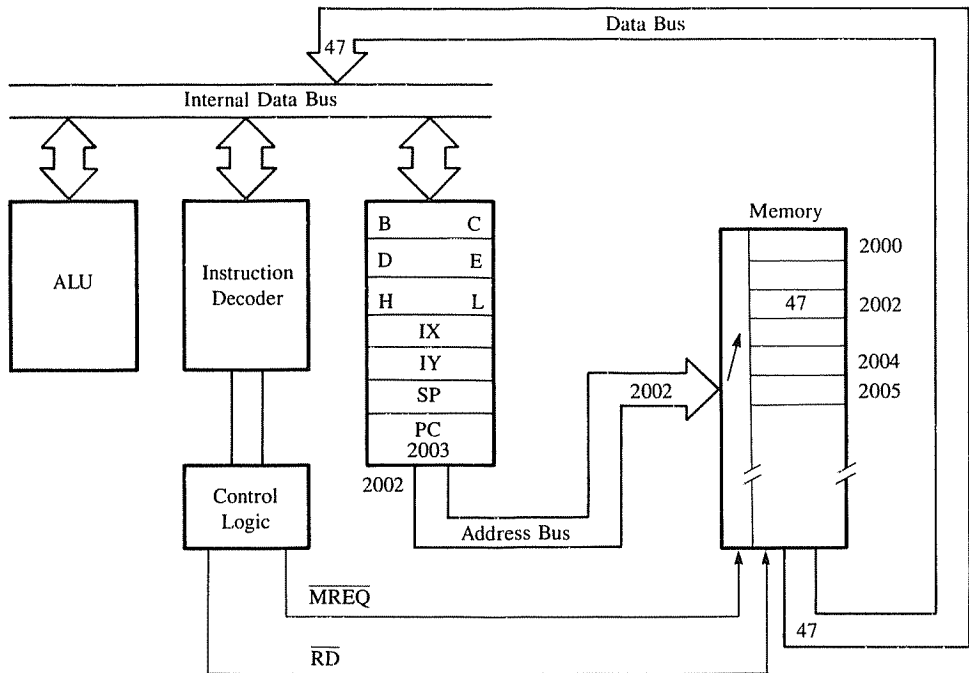


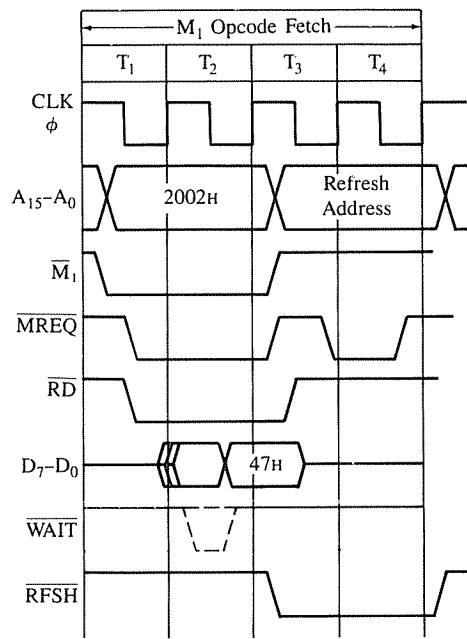
FIGURE 3.5
Z80 Memory Read Operation

5. At the leading edge of T_3 , the data on the data bus are read, and the control signals become inactive.
6. During T_3 and T_4 , the instruction decoder in the microprocessor decodes and executes the opcode. These are internal operations and cannot be observed on the data bus.

The following two steps are irrelevant to the present problem; however, they are included here as part of the M_1 cycle.

7. During T_3 and T_4 , when the Z80 is performing internal operations, the low-order address bus is used to supply a 7-bit address for refreshing dynamic memory. If the system includes dynamic memory, this operation simplifies its interfacing hardware. This aspect of the M_1 cycle will be discussed again when we illustrate interfacing of dynamic memory (Chapter 16).
8. Figure 3.6 shows the signal called $\overline{\text{WAIT}}$. The Z80 samples the Wait line during T_2 , and if it is forced low by an external device (such as memory or I/O), the Z80 adds Wait states (clock cycles) to extend the machine cycle and continues to add clock cycles until the Wait signal goes high again. This technique is used to interface memories with slow response time and will be discussed again in Chapter 16.

FIGURE 3.6
Z80 Opcode Fetch (M_1) and Bus Timings
SOURCE: Courtesy of Zilog Inc. (adapted).



3.32 Memory Read Machine Cycle

The second machine cycle we want to illustrate is Memory Read. As explained in the next example, this cycle is quite similar to the Opcode Fetch cycle.

Two machine codes— 00111110 ($3E_H$) and 10011111 ($9F_H$)—are stored in memory locations 2000_H and 2001_H respectively, as shown below. The first machine code ($3E_H$) represents the opcode to load a data byte into the accumulator, and the second code ($9F_H$) represents the data byte to be loaded into the accumulator. Illustrate the bus timings as these machine codes are executed, and calculate the time required to execute the Opcode Fetch and the Memory Read cycles and the entire instruction cycle if the clock frequency is 4 MHz.

Example 3.3

Address	Machine Code		Instruction	Comment							
2000 _H	<table border="1"><tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>0</td></tr></table>	0	0	1	1	1	1	0	→ 3E	LD A, 9FH	;Load 9FH in the accumulator
0	0	1	1	1	1	0					
2001 _H	<table border="1"><tr><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>1</td></tr></table>	1	0	0	1	1	1	1	→ 9F		
1	0	0	1	1	1	1					

This instruction consists of two bytes; the first is the opcode and the second is the data byte. The Z80 must first read these bytes from memory and thus requires at least two machine cycles. The first machine cycle is Opcode Fetch and the second machine cycle is

Solution

Memory Read, as shown in Figure 3.7. These cycles are described in the following list.

1. The first machine cycle (Opcode Fetch) is identical in bus timings with the machine cycle illustrated in Example 3.2, except for the bus contents. The address bus contains 2000_H and the data bus contains the opcode $3E_H$. When the Z80 decodes the opcode during the T_3 state, it realizes that a second byte must be read.
2. After the completion of the Opcode Fetch cycle, the Z80 places the address 2001_H on the address bus and increments the program counter to the next address, 2002_H . To differentiate the second cycle from the Opcode Fetch cycle, the M_1 signal remains inactive (high).
3. After the falling edge of T_1 of the Memory Read cycle, the control signals \overline{MREQ} and \overline{RD} are asserted. These signals along with the memory address are used to identify the register 2001_H and enable the memory chip.
4. After the leading edge of T_3 , the Z80 activates the data bus as an input bus; memory places the data byte $9F_H$ on the data bus, and the Z80 reads and stores the byte in the accumulator during T_3 .
5. After the falling edge of T_3 , both control signals become inactive (high), and at the end of T_3 , the next machine cycle begins.

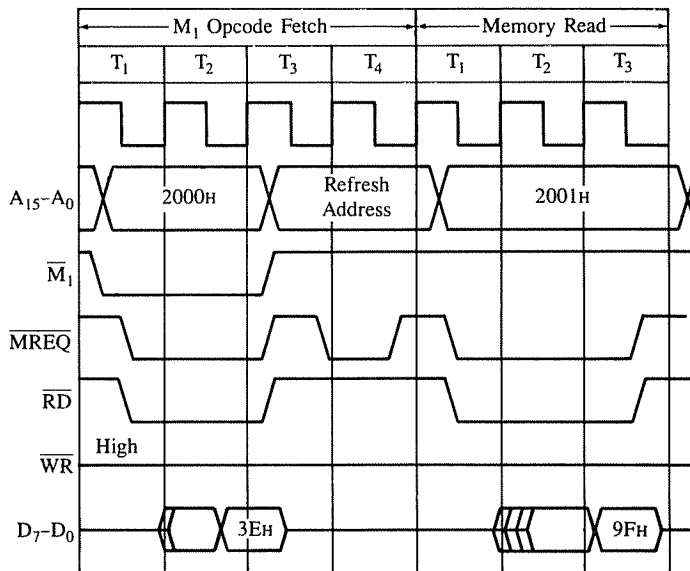


FIGURE 3.7
Memory Read Machine Cycle and Its Timings
SOURCE: Courtesy of Zilog Inc. (adapted).

The execution times of the Memory Read machine cycle and the instruction cycle are calculated as follows:

Clock Frequency $f = 4 \text{ MHz}$

T-state = Clock Period $(1/f) = 0.25 \text{ } \mu\text{s}$

Execution Time for Opcode Fetch: $(4 \text{ T}) \times 0.25 = 1.0 \text{ } \mu\text{s}$

Execution Time for Memory Read: $(3 \text{ T}) \times 0.25 = 0.75 \text{ } \mu\text{s}$

Execution Time for Instruction: $(7 \text{ T}) \times 0.25 = 1.75 \text{ } \mu\text{s}$.

3.33 Memory Write Cycle

Now we want to illustrate the third machine cycle: Memory Write. This machine cycle writes or stores data in a specified memory register as shown in the following example.

The HL register holds the address 2350_{H} , and the accumulator has the data byte 9F_{H} . The instruction code $0111 \ 0111$ (77_{H}) is stored in memory location 2003_{H} . When this code is executed, it stores the contents of the accumulator in the memory location indicated by the address in the HL register. Illustrate the bus contents and timings as this instruction is being executed.

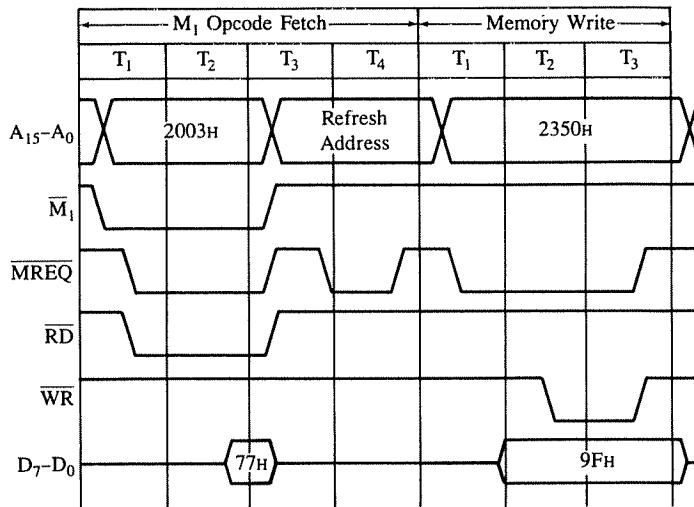
Example
3.4

Instruction: LD (HL), A ;Copy contents of the accumulator into memory location, the address of which is stored in HL register.

This is a one-byte instruction with two machine cycles: Opcode Fetch and Memory Write. In the first machine cycle, the Z80 fetches the code (77_{H}), and in the second machine cycle, it copies the byte 9F_{H} from the accumulator into the memory location 2350_{H} . The timings of these machine cycles are shown in Figure 3.8 and explained below.

Solution

1. In the Opcode Fetch machine cycle, the Z80 places the address 2003_{H} on the address bus and gets the code 77_{H} by using the control signals $\overline{\text{MREQ}}$ and $\overline{\text{RD}}$ as in the previous examples. The program counter is also incremented to the next address, 2004_{H} .
2. During the T_3 and T_4 states, the Z80 decodes the machine code 77_{H} and prepares for the memory write operation.
3. At the beginning of the next machine cycle (Memory Write), it places the contents (2350_{H}) of the HL register on the address bus. At the falling edge of T_1 , $\overline{\text{MREQ}}$ goes low and the data byte 9F_{H} from the accumulator is placed on the data bus.
4. After allowing one T-state (after $\overline{\text{MREQ}}$) to stabilize the address, the Z80 asserts the control signal Write ($\overline{\text{WR}}$), which is used to write the data byte at the address shown on the address bus.
5. After the falling edge of T_3 , both control signals become inactive, and one-half T-state later, the data bus goes into high impedance state.

**FIGURE 3.8**

Memory Write Machine Cycle and Its Timings

SOURCE: Courtesy of Zilog Inc. (adapted)

3.34 Review of Important Concepts

1. In each instruction cycle, the first operation is always Opcode Fetch, and it is indicated by the active low $\overline{M_1}$ signal. This cycle can be four to six T-states in duration.
2. The Memory Read cycle is in many ways similar to the Opcode Fetch cycle. Both use the same control signals (\overline{MREQ} and \overline{RD}) and read contents from memory. However, the Opcode Fetch reads opcodes and the Memory Read reads 8-bit data or addresses; the two machine cycles are differentiated by the $\overline{M_1}$ signal.
3. The control signals \overline{MREQ} and \overline{RD} , are both necessary to read from memory.
4. In the Memory Write cycle, the Z80 writes (stores) data in memory using the control signals \overline{MREQ} and \overline{WR} .
5. In the Memory Read cycle, the Z80 asserts the \overline{MREQ} and \overline{RD} signals to enable memory, and then the addressed memory places data on the data bus; on the other hand, in the Memory Write cycle, the Z80 asserts the \overline{MREQ} , places data byte on the data bus, and then asserts the \overline{WR} signal to write into the addressed memory.
6. Generally, the Memory Read and Write cycles consist of three T-states; however, they can take four T-states in some instructions. The Memory Read and Write cycles will not be asserted simultaneously; the microprocessor cannot read and write at the same time.

3.35 Generating Control Signals

After examining the concepts summarized at the end of the previous section, we may need to generate additional control signals.

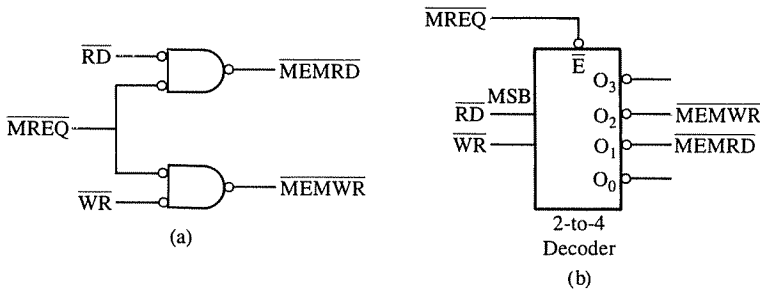


FIGURE 3.9
Generating Memory Control Signals

1. To read from memory, the $\overline{\text{MREQ}}$ and the $\overline{\text{RD}}$ signals are necessary, and to read from an input device, the $\overline{\text{IORQ}}$ and the $\overline{\text{RD}}$ are necessary; all these signals are active low. As a design practice, the $\overline{\text{MREQ}}$ is generally combined with a decoded address (discussed in Chapter 4) and $\overline{\text{RD}}$ is connected directly to the memory chip. However, control signals $\overline{\text{RD}}$ and $\overline{\text{WR}}$ can also be combined with $\overline{\text{MREQ}}$ and $\overline{\text{IORQ}}$ to generate additional signals. We can generate active low Memory Read ($\overline{\text{MEMRD}}$) signal either by ANDing these signals in a negative NAND gate as shown in Figure 3.9(a) or by using a 2-to-4 decoder as shown in Figure 3.9(b). The decoder is enabled by the $\overline{\text{MREQ}}$ and has $\overline{\text{RD}}$ and $\overline{\text{WR}}$ signals as input. Both inputs cannot be active at the same time; when one is low, the other will remain high. When $\overline{\text{RD}}$ is active low, the input is 0 1, and the output O_1 goes active as $\overline{\text{MEMRD}}$.
2. To write into memory, the $\overline{\text{MREQ}}$ and the $\overline{\text{WR}}$ signals are necessary, and to write a data byte to an output device the $\overline{\text{IORQ}}$ and $\overline{\text{WR}}$ signals are necessary; all these signals are active low. If necessary, we can generate active low Memory Write ($\overline{\text{MEMWR}}$) signal by ANDing $\overline{\text{MREQ}}$ and $\overline{\text{WR}}$ signals in a negative NAND gate as shown in Figure 3.9(a) or by using the decoder as shown in Figure 3.9(b). Similarly, $\overline{\text{IORD}}$ (I/O Read) and $\overline{\text{IOWR}}$ (I/O Write) signals can be generated; this is discussed in Chapter 5.

SOME PUZZLING QUESTIONS AND THEIR ANSWERS

3.4

After reading the previous sections, the reader may have many unanswered questions. One of the primary reasons for this predicament is that the microprocessor is a programmable and complex device. It interacts with external devices such as memory and I/Os, and some questions cannot be answered until we discuss these other devices. Similarly, some questions will remain unanswered until we start using instructions and writing programs. However, there are some questions which we should answer immediately.

1. *How does the Z80 microprocessor know where to begin after the power is turned on?*

Most microcomputer systems have built-in power-on *reset circuits*, meaning that when the power is turned on, the microprocessor is reset and its program counter is cleared to the address 0000_H. The address 0000_H is placed on the address bus, and the instruction stored at that location determines what happens next.

2. *How does the Z80 know what operation to perform first (Memory Read/Write or I/O Read/Write)?*

The first operation is always an Opcode Fetch.

3. *How does the microprocessor differentiate between an opcode and a data byte?*

When the first opcode is fetched and decoded in the instruction register, the microprocessor recognizes the number of bytes that must be read from memory for the complete instruction. The instructions can range from 1-byte to 4-byte in length. Figure 3.7, for example, contains a 2-byte instruction (3E and Data), and the second byte is always considered Data. If that second byte is omitted by mistake, the Z80 will interpret whatever is in that memory location as Data. The byte after the Data will be treated as the next instruction. The microprocessor is a sequential machine; it goes from one memory location to the next unless instructed to do otherwise.

4. *What is the use of the \overline{M}_1 signal? It looks as if it will not be connected to any device.*

This signal serves two purposes: (1) it differentiates the Opcode Fetch cycle from other operations, and (2) it can be used to generate the Interrupt Acknowledge signal.

5. *If flags are individual flip-flops, can they be observed on an oscilloscope?*

No, they cannot be observed on an oscilloscope; these flip-flops are internal and not connected to any of the external pins. However, they can be examined by storing them on the *stack memory* (see Chapter 10).

6. *Is the number of T-states required for a given machine cycle constant?*

No. But most Opcode Fetch machine cycles require four T-states, and Memory Read/Write and I/O Read/Write machine cycles, generally, take three or four T-states. However, there are some exceptions.

7. *How does one recognize the machine cycles in a given instruction?*

The number of machine cycles and the T-states required for those machine cycles are listed in the instruction set. There is a repetitive pattern, and one can use the following guidelines.

- The number of machine cycles in an instruction indicates how many times the microprocessor must access memory or I/O.
- The first machine cycle in an instruction is always Opcode Fetch.
- The microprocessor must read all the bytes (codes) from memory before it can execute an instruction.

For example, a 3-byte instruction requires at least three machine cycles. The unconditional Jump instruction is a 3-byte instruction with 10 (4, 3, 3) T-states; it consists of one opcode and a 16-bit address of the jump location. Therefore, by examining the number of T-states, we can easily classify the machine cycles of the Jump instruction as one Opcode Fetch and two Memory Read.

Another example is ADD A, 32H (add a byte 32_H to the contents of the accumulator). This is a 2-byte instruction with 7 (4, 3) T-states. By examining the number of bytes and the number of T-states, we can conclude that it must have two machine cycles—the first is Opcode Fetch and the second is Memory Read. The addition is performed inside the processor, and it does not need any additional information from memory or I/O.

8. *How does one recognize machine cycles in an instruction when the number of bytes is not the same as the number of machine cycles?*

One has to examine the number of bytes, T-states, and the operation being performed. For example, the instruction **LD (2050H), A** has three bytes and 13 (4, 3, 3, 3) T-states; it copies the contents of the accumulator into the memory location 2050_H. The processor must read the entire instruction first; therefore, the first must be Opcode Fetch, followed by two Memory Read cycles. This accounts for ten T-states. In the remaining three states, the processor must write (copy) the contents of the accumulator into the memory location 2050_H; therefore, it must be the Memory Write cycle.

ARCHITECTURE OF CONTEMPORARY 8-BIT MICROPROCESSORS

3.5

The primary reasons to discuss other 8-bit contemporary microprocessors are to examine how the MPU model developed in the last chapter matches with various microprocessors and to confirm that the underlying basic concepts remain similar even though specific details may vary from one chip to another. At present, a large number of 8-bit general-purpose microprocessors is available in the market. We will focus on three: the Intel 8085, the National Semiconductor NSC 800, and the Motorola 6800. These microprocessors are selected to illustrate various strategies used in designing the microprocessor. The recent trend in 8-bit microprocessors can be illustrated by so-called 8-bit super chips, such as the Hitachi HD64180 and the Zilog Z280. These are discussed in Chapter 18.

3.51 The Intel 8085

The Intel 8085 and its predecessor the 8080 are the most widely used 8-bit microprocessors. The 8080 MPU is composed of three chips—the 8080 microprocessor, the clock generator, and the system driver—and it needs three power supplies (+5 V, -5 V, +12 V). The 8085 is an upgraded version of the 8080; it operates with one +5 V power supply, and one chip replaces the 8080's three chips. The 8085 is upward software compatible with the 8080; it has only two more instructions than the 8080. The programming models of both microprocessors are identical; however, the 8085 hardware model differs

significantly not only from the 8080 but also from other contemporary 8-bit microprocessors. The 8085 has a multiplexed bus (8 lines), which is used as both the 8-bit data bus and the low-order address bus. This feature allows Intel to provide additional interrupt lines.

THE 8085 HARDWARE MODEL

Figure 3.10 represents the hardware model with the logic pinout of the 8085. The six categories of the signals are address bus, data bus, control (and status) signals, external requests, request acknowledge, and power and frequency signals. In addition, the 8085 has two signals for serial I/O.

The 8085 has a 16-bit address bus; however, its low-order address bus is multiplexed with the data bus. These eight lines are time-shared by two functions; in the earlier part of a machine cycle, they are used for a low-order address, and in the later part for data. To

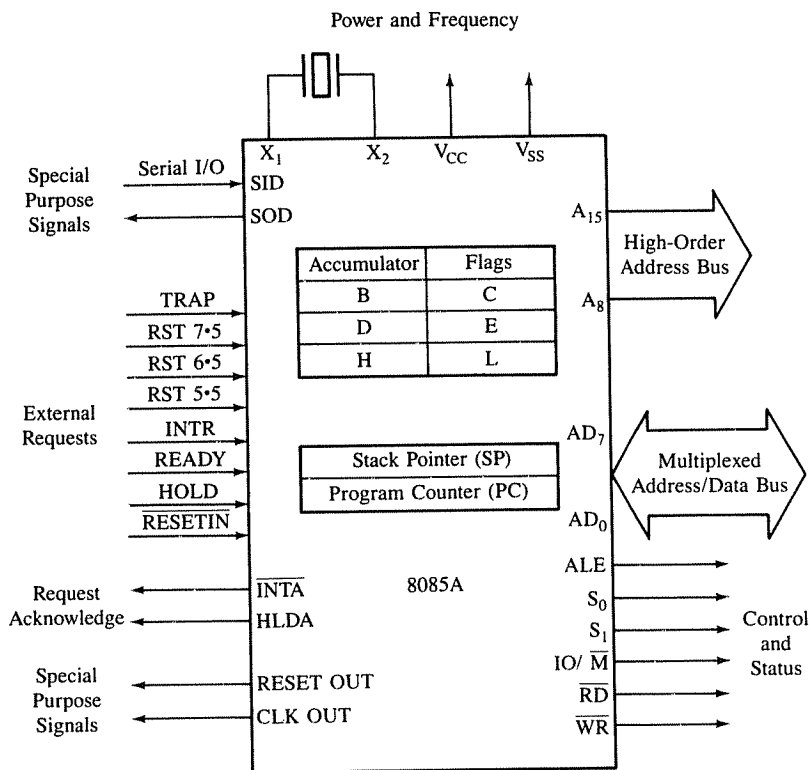


FIGURE 3.10

The Intel 8085 Microprocessor Model

SOURCE: Courtesy of Intel Corporation

interface this chip with memory (without any special features), these lines need to be demultiplexed (separated). The 8085 has a signal called ALE (Address Latch Enable), which can be used to demultiplex the bus, as shown in Figure 3.11. The ALE is asserted at the beginning of each machine cycle, when the bus has an address. Figure 3.11 shows that the ALE is used to latch the address, thus creating a separate low-order bus A_7-A_0 . The Z80 does not need this signal because it has separate lines for the data and the address buses.

The 8085 has two status signals S_0 and S_1 to identify various machine cycles, and an $\text{IO}/\overline{\text{M}}$ signal to differentiate between an I/O operation and a memory operation. In contrast, the Z80 identifies the Opcode Fetch cycle by asserting $\overline{\text{M}}_1$ and has two separate signals ($\overline{\text{MREQ}}$ and $\overline{\text{IORQ}}$) to identify memory and I/O operations. In the 8085, the control

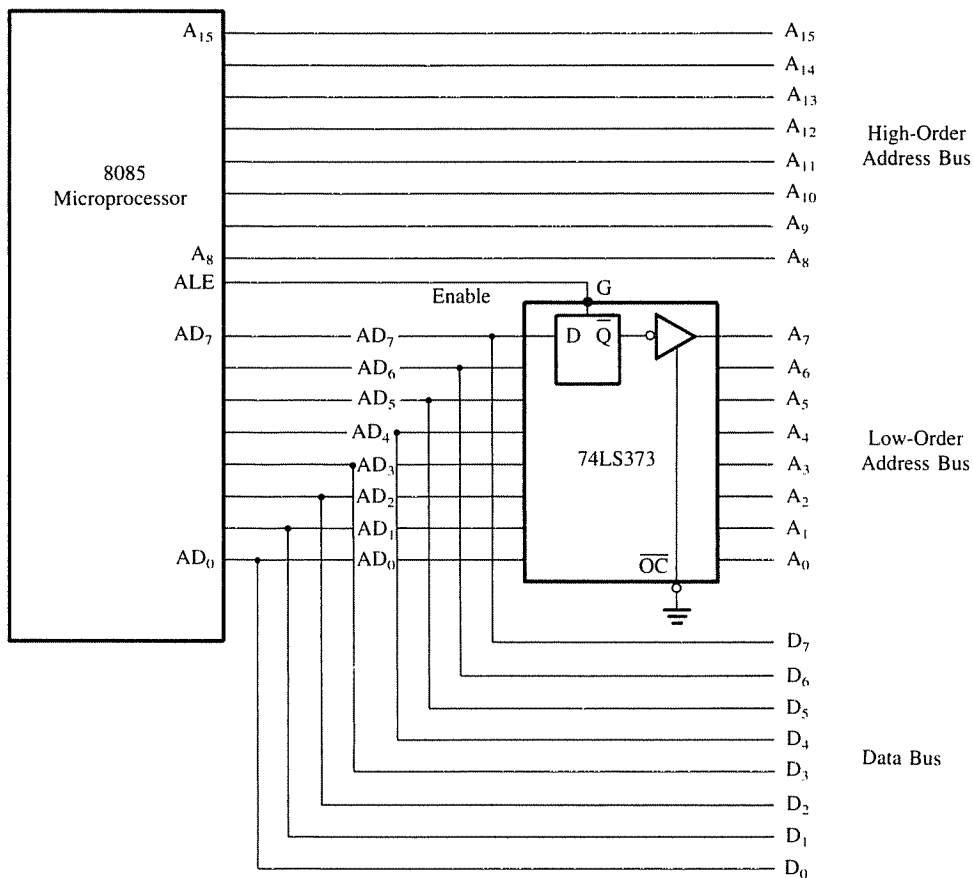


FIGURE 3.11
Demultiplexing the 8085 Bus

signals Memory Read/Write and I/O Read/Write are generated by ANDing $\overline{IO/\overline{M}}$ and control signals \overline{RD} and \overline{WR} .

Figure 3.10 shows that the 8085 provides five interrupt lines as external requests, out of which the TRAP is equivalent to the Z80 non-maskable interrupt. The Z80 provides various additional interrupt modes through software.

THE 8085 SOFTWARE MODEL

Figure 3.10 also shows the software model of the 8085. It includes one accumulator, a flag register, a general-purpose register array, and two 16-bit registers as memory pointers (program counter and stack pointer). This model matches very well with the requirements of the microprocessor as a processing unit (Figure 2.2). The Z80 includes all the 8085 registers in addition to an alternate set of registers, index registers, and special-purpose registers.

3.52 The National Semiconductor NSC800

The NSC800 is an 8-bit microprocessor manufactured by National Semiconductor. It is a low-power CMOS device that combines features of the 8085 and the Z80. Because its power consumption is 5 percent of that of NMOS devices, it is ideally suited for low-power or battery-operated applications.

The NSC800 has a bus structure similar to that of the 8085: a multiplexed bus with the status signals S_0 , S_1 , and IO/\overline{M} . It has a powerful interrupt scheme that combines the 8085 signals and the Z80 interrupt modes. Its software model, instruction set, and mnemonics are identical with those of the Z80.

In summary, the NSC800 combines the software capability of the Z80 with the bus structure of the 8085; its hardware and software models match with the generalized model we developed in the previous chapter.

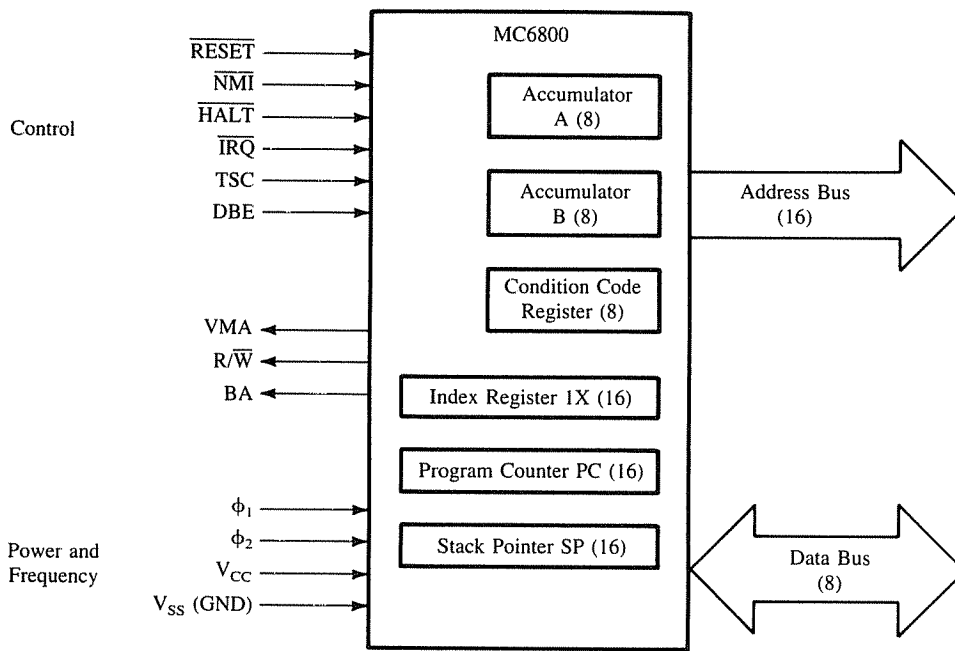
3.53 The Motorola MC6800

The MC6800 was developed at about the same time as the Intel 8080. The hardware model of this processor is similar to any other processor we have discussed, but it has a different internal architecture.

Figure 3.12 represents the 6800's architecture. It has 16 address lines, 8 data lines and fewer control (and status) signals than the Z80. The fewer control signals result from not having peripheral-mapped I/O; all I/Os are interfaced as memory-mapped I/Os. Therefore, the control signals in this processor need not differentiate between memory and I/O operations.

The other significant difference is in its internal architecture; it has two accumulators, one flag register shown as the Condition Code Register, but no general-purpose registers. This processor uses external memory for storing interim calculations and data bytes; it makes extensive use of memory referencing in its operations. The 6800 has simple timing and control signals; the clock period is the same as the machine cycle.

The 6809 is the latest improved version of the 6800 family; however, its machine code is not compatible with that of the 6800. Its internal architecture is similar to that of the

**FIGURE 3.12**

The Motorola 6800 Microprocessor Model

SOURCE: Courtesy of Motorola, Inc.

6800, except it has an additional stack pointer, an additional index register, and a register to be used for referencing memory. The basic design philosophy is the same as that of the 6800, but it has eliminated some limitations of the 6800.

3.54 Review of 8-bit Microprocessors

In the last section, we examined the architectures of three microprocessors and occasionally compared them with the Z80. Now we can easily conclude that the architectures of various 8-bit microprocessors have similar patterns and can be represented by the hardware and the software models developed in the last chapter. We can classify these processors into two categories: one group, including the Z80, the 8085, NSC800, is register-oriented; the group including the 6800 and the 6809 is memory-reference-oriented.

SUMMARY

- ☐ The Z80 microprocessor has six general-purpose 8-bit registers (B, C, D, E, H, and L) as a primary set. In addition, it includes the alternate set of these registers,

all of which can be used to exchange information with the primary set. The registers B and C, D and E, and H and L can be combined to perform some 16-bit operations.

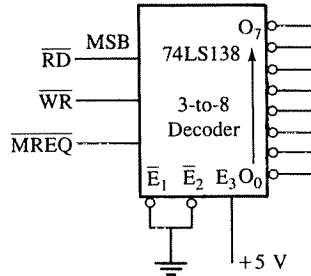
- ☐ The ALU section of the Z80 includes accumulator A and the flag register to indicate six different data conditions. It also includes the alternate accumulator A' and flag register F', which can be used to exchange information with A and F respectively.
- ☐ Four flags—Sign, Zero, Carry, and Parity/Overflow—can be used for decision making and tested in conjunction with Jump, Call and Return instructions. Two flags—Half-Carry and Add/Subtract—are used internally for BCD operations and not available for the programmer.
- ☐ The Z80 has four 16-bit registers—IX, IY, SP, and PC—used as memory pointers. Two index registers IX and IY can be used to point to any memory location, and an address and the direction (backward or forward) can be specified with a displacement byte. The stack pointer (SP) is used to specify memory locations in a defined R/W memory segment called the stack. The program counter (PC) is used to sequence the program execution; it points to the next memory address from which the machine code is to be fetched.
- ☐ The Z80 includes two 8-bit special-purpose registers: Interrupt Vector (I) and Memory Refresh (R). The I register provides the high-order 8 bits of a 16-bit address to which the program is to be directed after an interrupt. The R register is a 7-bit counter and supplies an address for refreshing memory cells of a dynamic memory.
- ☐ The Z80 signals can be classified into six groups: address bus, data bus, control signals, external requests, request acknowledge, and power and frequency signals (see Section 3.2 for definitions of these signals).
- ☐ The Z80 is designed to execute 158 instructions, and each instruction can be divided into a few basic operations called machine cycles.
- ☐ The frequently used machine cycles are Opcode Fetch, Memory Read and Write, and I/O Read and Write.
- ☐ The Opcode Fetch and Memory Read are operationally similar; the Z80 reads from memory in both machine cycles. However, the Z80 reads opcode during the Opcode Fetch cycle, and it reads 8-bit data during the Memory Read cycle. In the Memory Write cycle, the Z80 writes data into memory.
- ☐ The memory operations are differentiated from I/O operations by two control signals: $\overline{\text{MREQ}}$ and $\overline{\text{IORQ}}$. The signal $\overline{\text{MREQ}}$ is combined with $\overline{\text{RD}}$ and $\overline{\text{WR}}$ signals to generate $\overline{\text{MEMRD}}$ and $\overline{\text{MEMWR}}$ control signals.
- ☐ The Z80 performs three basic steps in any of these machine cycles: It places an address on the address bus, sends appropriate control signals, and transfers data via the data bus.
- ☐ The contemporary 8-bit microprocessors can be classified into two categories: One group is register-oriented, and the other is memory-reference-oriented.

ASSIGNMENTS

1. How is the accumulator different from the 8-bit general-purpose registers of the Z80 microprocessor?
2. Explain the function of the alternate registers.
3. What is a flag and what is its function?
4. If the Z80 adds 87_H and 79_H , specify the contents of the accumulator and the status of the S, Z, and CY flags.
5. If the Z80 is an 8-bit microprocessor, why are the program counter and the stack pointer 16-bit registers?
6. If the Z80 has fetched the machine code located at the memory location $205F_H$, specify the contents of the program counter.
7. The index register IX holds the address 2058_H . Specify the value of the displacement byte needed to make the effective address 2097_H .
8. The index register IY holds the address 2070_H . Specify the value of the displacement byte in 2's complement needed to make the effective address 2050_H .
9. The MOS Technology 6501 microprocessor chip has 13 address lines. Specify the memory registers it is capable of addressing.
10. If the Intel 8086 microprocessor has 20 address lines, what is its capacity of memory addressing?
11. If the clock frequency is 4 MHz, how much time is required to execute an instruction of 21 T-states?
12. The instruction LD IX, (2050_H) loads 2050_H into the index register. Specify the number of bytes, machine cycles, and T-states of this instruction by checking the instruction set. Calculate the time required to execute the instruction if the system clock frequency is 6 MHz.
13. List the sequence of events that occurs when the Z80 reads from memory.
14. In the Opcode Fetch cycle, what are the control signals required to enable the memory buffer?
15. When is the data byte placed on the data bus in the Memory Write cycle?
16. The memory location 2065_H holds the opcode $F9_H$. If the Z80 begins the Opcode Fetch cycle by placing the address 2065_H on the address bus, specify the contents of the data bus after the falling edge of the T_2 state.
17. The instruction LD B, (HL) copies the contents of the memory location specified by the 16-bit contents in the HL register. It is a 1-byte instruction with two machine cycles. Identify the second machine cycle and its control signals.
18. Figure 3.13 shows a 3-to-8 decoder with \overline{MREQ} , \overline{RD} , and \overline{WR} as input signals. Identify the control signals that can be generated at the outputs of the decoder.
19. Figure 3.14 shows the timings of three machine cycles. Identify the types of operations.

FIGURE 3.13

Generating Control Signals Using
a 3-to-8 Decoder: Assignment 18



20. Do the three machine cycles in Figure 3.14 represent a complete instruction? Explain.
21. Examine the machine cycle M_b in Figure 3.14 and specify the memory being accessed and its contents.
22. Does the byte on the data bus in the machine cycle M_a in Figure 3.14 represent an opcode?
23. Explain what is being done in machine cycle M_c (Figure 3.14).
24. Identify the machine cycles M_a and M_b in Figure 3.15.
25. Identify the machine cycles in the following instructions:

SUB B	: 1-byte, 4 T-states
	: Subtract the contents of register B from the accumulator
AND 47H	: 2-byte, 7 (4, 3) T-states
	: Logically AND 47H with the contents of the accumulator
LD A, (2050H)	: 3-byte, 13 (4, 3, 3, 3) T-states
	: copy the contents of the memory location 2050H into the accumulator
PUSH BC	: 1-byte, 10 (4, 3, 3) T-states
	: copy the contents of BC register into two stack memory locations

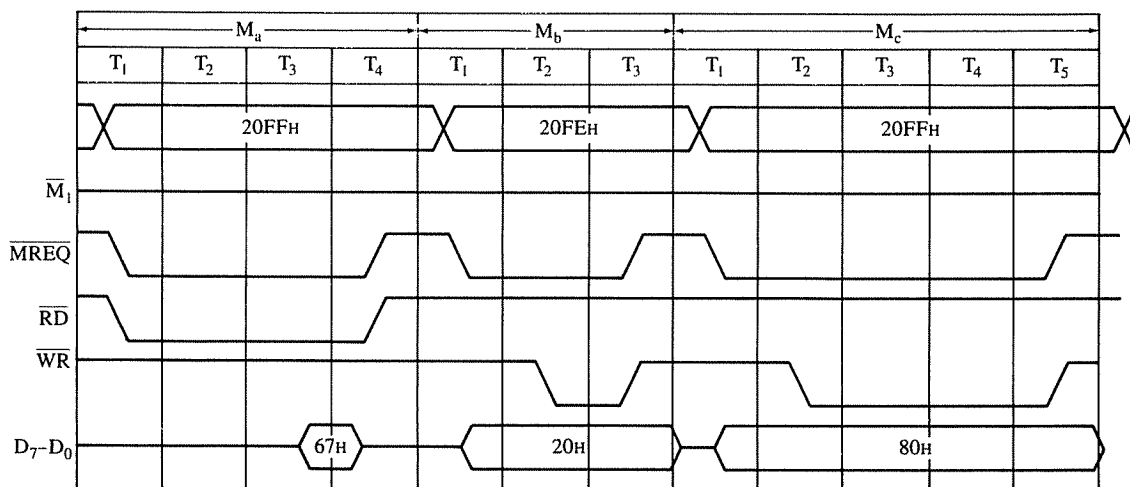


FIGURE 3.14
Machine Cycles for Assignments 19–23

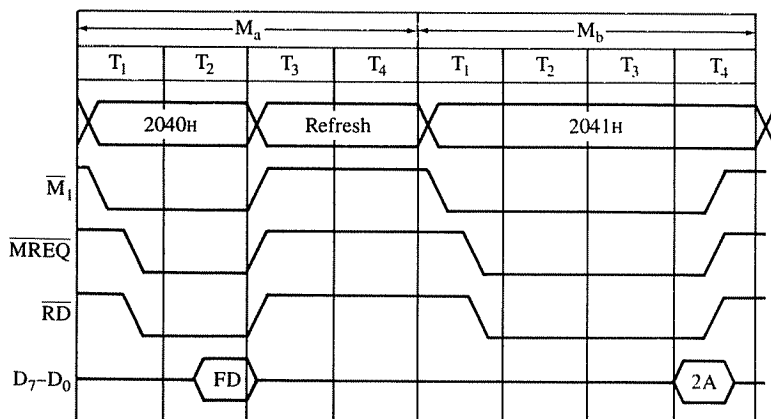


FIGURE 3.15
Machine Cycles for Assignment 24

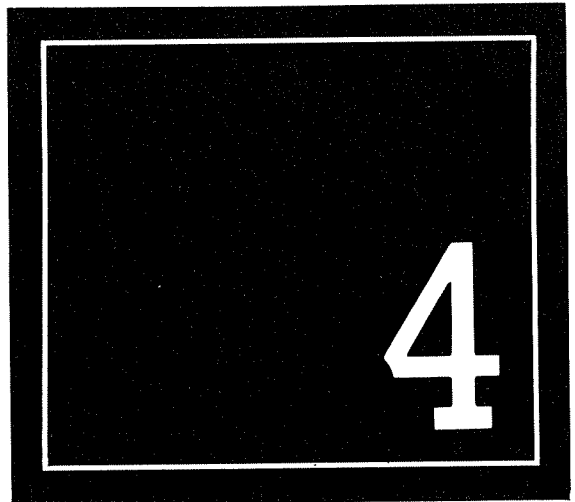
Memory Interfacing

Memory is an integral part of a microcomputer system, and in this chapter our focus will be on how to interface a memory chip with the microprocessor. We will examine memory structure and requirements to read from it and write into it. We then compare those requirements with those of the Z80 Memory Read and Write machine cycles. From that comparison, we will derive the basic steps necessary to interface memory.

This chapter illustrates two examples of interfacing memory chips, one EPROM and the other static R/W memory. The discussion includes analyses of the following: **decoding circuits**, **memory maps**, the concept of **foldback memory**, and **linear decoding** versus **absolute decoding**. Finally, an example of memory design is illustrated to synthesize the interfacing concepts.

OBJECTIVES

- List the requirements to read from memory.
- List the steps initiated by the Z80 to read from and write into memory.
- List the steps required to interface a memory chip with the Z80.
- Analyze given EPROM and static R/W memory interfacing circuits and specify their memory maps.
- Explain the terms absolute decoding, linear decoding, and foldback memory.
- Design a circuit to interface EPROM and R/W memory with the Z80 for given memory maps.



4.1

INTERFACING MEMORY

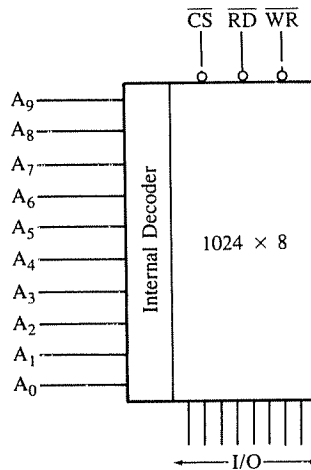
While executing a program, the microprocessor needs to access memory frequently to read instruction codes and data stored in memory, and the *interfacing circuit* enables that access. Memory has certain signal requirements for writing into and reading from its registers. Similarly, the microprocessor initiates a set of signals when it wants to communicate with memory. The interfacing process involves designing a circuit that will match the memory requirements with the microprocessor signals. In the following section, we examine memory structure and its requirements and also the Z80 Memory Read and Write machine cycles. Then we derive the basic steps necessary to interface memory with the Z80.

4.11 Memory Structure and Its Requirements

Read/Write Memory (R/WM) is a group of registers to store binary information. Figure 4.1 shows a typical R/W memory chip; it has 1024 registers, each of which can store eight bits indicated by eight I/O lines. The chip has ten address lines A_9 – A_0 , one Chip Select \overline{CS} , and two control lines: Read (\overline{RD}) to enable the output buffer and Write (\overline{WR}) to enable the input buffer. Figure 4.1 also shows the internal decoder to decode the address lines. We may recall from Chapter 2 that to read from or write into one of the memory registers certain requirements have to be met. They are as follows:

1. An address should be placed on the address lines. The low-order address lines are decoded by the internal decoder of the memory chip, and the addressed register is identified.

FIGURE 4.1
Logic Diagram: A Typical 1K
Memory Chip



2. The high-order address should be decoded to generate a Chip Select signal, and the memory chip is selected by asserting the $\overline{\text{Chip Select CS}}$ low.
3. To read from the addressed register, the $\overline{\text{RD}}$ should be asserted low to enable the output buffer, and then the data byte from the register will be placed on the I/O lines.
4. To write into the addressed register, the $\overline{\text{WR}}$ should be asserted low to enable the input buffer, and then data bits from the data lines are stored into the register.

To interface this memory with the Z80 microprocessor, we need to examine the signals the microprocessor asserts when it attempts to communicate with memory.

4.12 How does the Z80 Read from or Write into Memory?

In Chapter 3, we showed the timing diagrams and the Z80 bus contents when an opcode or a data byte is fetched from memory. To read from memory, the Z80 performs the following steps, as shown in Figure 4.2(a):

1. places a 16-bit address on its address bus (shown as high- and low-order addresses).
2. asserts the $\overline{\text{MREQ}}$ to indicate that the address bus holds a valid address.
3. asserts the $\overline{\text{RD}}$ signal low to indicate that it wants to read.

To write into memory, the Z80 performs the following steps, as shown in Figure 4.3:

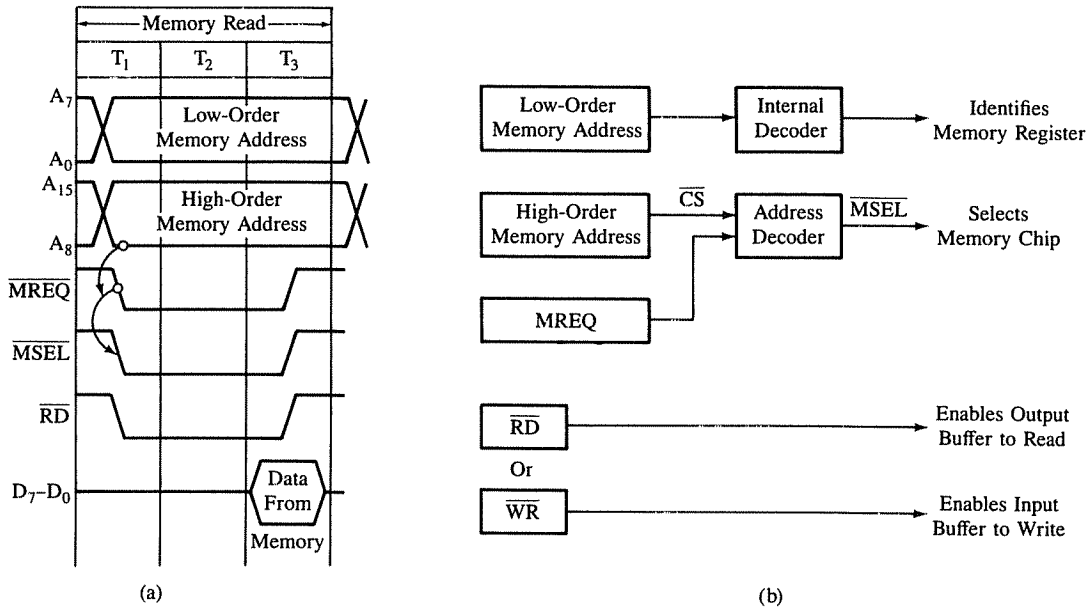
1. places a 16-bit address on the address bus.
2. asserts $\overline{\text{MREQ}}$ and places data on the data bus.
3. asserts $\overline{\text{WR}}$ signal.

To understand and design an interface circuit, we need to match the memory requirements with the Z80 read/write operations.

4.13 Basic Concepts in Memory Interfacing

The primary function of memory interfacing is to allow the microprocessor to read from and write into a given register of a memory chip. To perform these operations, the microprocessor should

1. be able to select the chip.
2. identify the register.
3. enable the appropriate buffer.

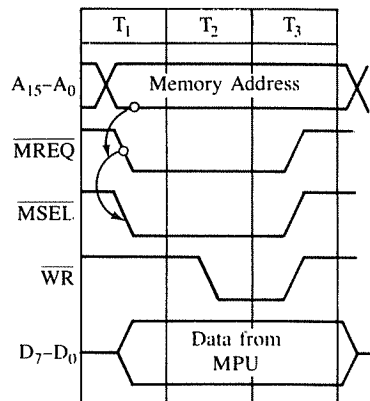
**FIGURE 4.2**

(a) Memory Read Timing Diagram (b) Block Diagram: Address Decoding and Memory Read/Write Operations

SOURCE: Courtesy of Zilog, Inc. (adapted)

FIGURE 4.3

Writing into Memory Register



Let us examine the timing diagram of the Memory Read operation—Figure 4.2(a)—in order to understand how the Z80 can read from memory. In Figure 4.2(a), the address bus is divided into two segments, low-order and high-order, to explain the decoding concepts.

1. The Z80 places a 16-bit address on the address bus, and with this address only one

register should be selected. For the memory chip in Figure 4.1, only ten address lines are required to identify 1,024 registers. Therefore, we can connect the low-order address lines A_9 – A_0 of the Z80 address bus to the memory chip. The internal decoder of the memory chip will identify and select the register, as shown in Figure 4.2(b).

2. The remaining Z80 address lines (A_{15} – A_{10}) should be decoded to generate a Chip-Select (\overline{CS}) signal unique to that combination of address logic.
3. The Z80 provides two signals: \overline{MREQ} and \overline{RD} . The \overline{MREQ} can be combined with the decoded address pulse (\overline{CS}) to generate a Memory Select (\overline{MSEL}) to select the memory chip.
4. The microprocessor asserts the control signal \overline{RD} , enables the output buffer of memory, and reads the data byte. Figure 4.2(a) also shows that memory must place the data byte on the data bus at the beginning of T_3 .

To write into a register, the microprocessor performs similar steps. Figure 4.3 shows the Memory Write cycle. In the Write operation, the Z80 places the address and data, and asserts the \overline{MREQ} signal. After allowing sufficient time for data to become stable, it asserts the Write (\overline{WR}) signal. The \overline{WR} signal enables the input buffer of the memory chip and stores the byte in the selected register.

An alternative to generating the \overline{MSEL} signal (Step 3 in Memory Read) to select the memory chip is to generate the control signals \overline{MEMRD} and \overline{MEMWR} by combining the \overline{MREQ} , \overline{RD} , and \overline{WR} as shown in Figure 4.4(a). The \overline{MEMRD} can be used to enable the output buffer to read from memory; the \overline{MEMWR} can be used to enable the input buffer to write into memory, and the decoded address pulse (\overline{CS}) can be used to select the chip as shown in Figure 4.4(b).

To interface memory with the microprocessor, we can summarize the above steps as follows:

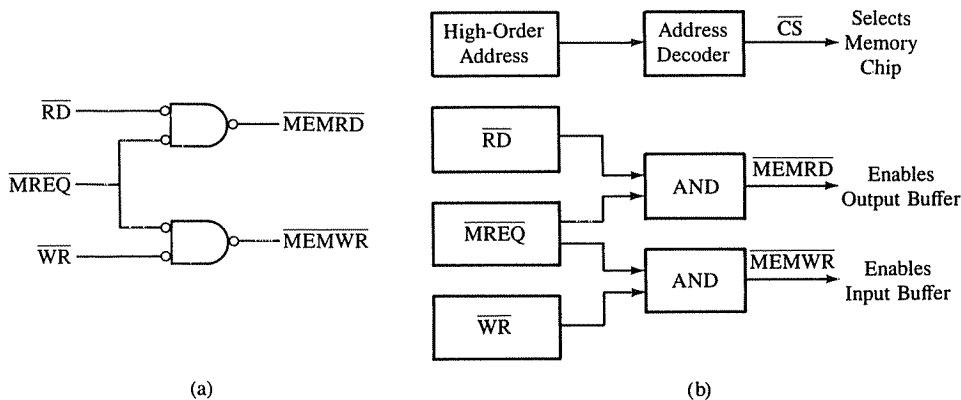


FIGURE 4.4

(a) Generating Control Signals (b) Block Diagram: Alternative Approach to Memory Read/Write Operations

1. Connect the required address lines of the address bus to the address lines of the memory chip.
2. Decode the remaining address lines of the address bus to generate the Chip Select signal, as discussed in the next section (4.14).
3. Generate the signal Memory Select ($\overline{\text{MSEL}}$) by combining the decoded address pulse $\overline{\text{CS}}$ and the $\overline{\text{MREQ}}$, and use the $\overline{\text{MSEL}}$ to select the memory chip.
4. Connect the Z80 $\overline{\text{RD}}$ and $\overline{\text{WR}}$ control signals to the $\overline{\text{RD}}$ and $\overline{\text{WR}}$ memory signals to enable memory buffers.
5. An alternative procedure is to generate control signals $\overline{\text{MEMRD}}$ and $\overline{\text{MEMWR}}$ by combining $\overline{\text{RD}}$ and $\overline{\text{WR}}$ signals with the $\overline{\text{MREQ}}$ and to use them to enable appropriate buffers. The decoded address pulse ($\overline{\text{CS}}$) is used to select the memory chip.

4.14 Address Decoding

The process of **address decoding** should result in identifying a register with a given address; we should be able to generate a unique pulse for that address. For example, in Figure 4.5(a), the output of the NAND gate goes low (active) only when the address on the address lines is F7H ; no other address can cause the output of the gate to go low. This process is called decoding the address. We can also use a decoder for address decoding, as discussed below, or a PROM (Programmable Read-Only-Memory), as discussed in Chapter 16.

Figure 4.5(b) shows a 3-to-8 decoder and a 4-input NAND gate. The decoder has three enable lines—one active high and two active low. The enable line $\overline{\text{E}}_1$ is connected to address line A_3 , and $\overline{\text{E}}_2$ is connected to address lines A_4 – A_7 through the NAND gate. Address lines A_2 , A_1 , and A_0 are inputs to the decoder, and the enable line E_3 is tied high and is not being used here for decoding.

In this decoder circuit, three input lines can have eight different logic combinations

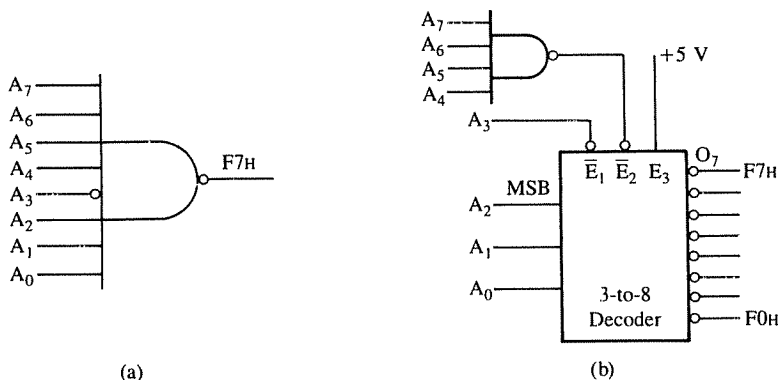
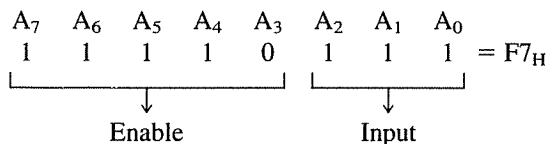


FIGURE 4.5
Address Decoding

from 000 to 111; each input combination can be identified by the corresponding output line if enable lines are active. For example, if the input is 0 0 0, O_0 goes low (others remain high), and if the input is 1 1 0, O_6 goes low. To activate the enable line \bar{E}_1 , A_3 should be low, and to activate \bar{E}_2 , address lines A_7 – A_4 should be high causing the output of the NAND gate to go low. If the input to the decoder is 1 1 1, the output line O_7 of the decoder will go low, thus decoding the address $F7_H$.



This 3-to-8 decoder can identify or decode eight addresses from $F0_H$ to $F7_H$ as shown in Figure 4.5(b). We will use this address decoding scheme for interfacing memory chips in the following illustrations (Sections 4.2 and 4.3).

ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLE 1: INTERFACING 2732 EPROM

4.2

In this section we illustrate memory interfacing with the Z80 microprocessor by using an actual chip: 2732 EPROM (Erasable Programmable Read-Only Memory). This is a memory chip commonly used in industry to develop microprocessor-based products. In this illustration, we assume that the chip has been already programmed—that is, the binary patterns representing Z80 instructions are stored in it—and we only read from it. We focus only on the interfacing concepts, interfacing logic circuit, and memory maps.

4.21 2732 EPROM

This is a 4K (4096×8) memory chip with eight data lines housed in a 24-pin package; Figure 4.6 shows the logic pinout and the pin configuration. It has twelve address lines A_{11} – A_0 to identify 4096 registers, one Chip Select signal shown as Chip Enable (\overline{CE}), and one Output Enable (\overline{OE}) signal to enable the output buffer. It operates from a single +5 V power supply in the Read mode and requires a +25 V pulse V_{pp} to program it. The signals \overline{OE} and V_{pp} are multiplexed at pin 20; in the Read mode, pin 20 is used as \overline{OE} and in the programming mode, it is used as V_{pp} .

The chip has a quartz window, and the information stored in this memory can be erased by exposing the window to ultraviolet light for 15 to 20 minutes. To avoid accidental erasures from direct sunlight or fluorescent lights, the window should be covered with an opaque label. Once it is erased, the chip can be used again to store a new program. The programming is done by using a circuit called EPROM programmer, which can store bits in memory registers by providing a 25 V pulse to V_{pp} .

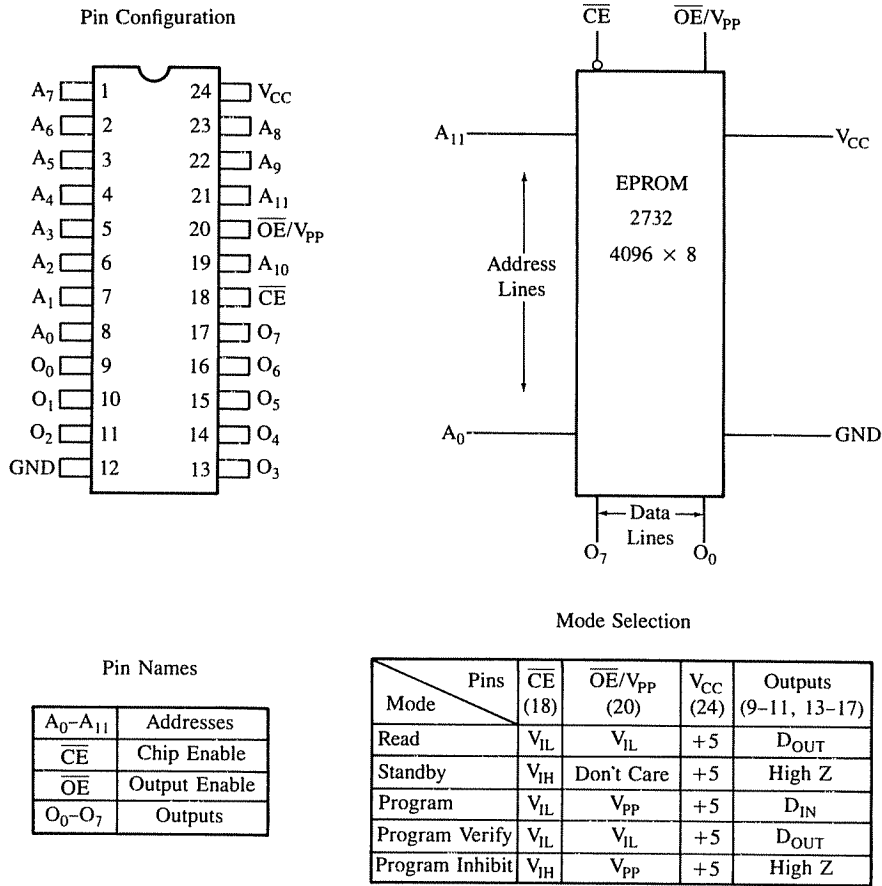


FIGURE 4.6
2732 EPROM: Pin Configuration and Logic Symbol
SOURCE: Courtesy of Intel Corporation.

4.22 Interfacing Circuit

Figure 4.7 shows a complete schematic of interfacing the 2732 with the Z80 microprocessor. We will describe this circuit in terms of the four steps required for interfacing as listed in the previous section.

Step 1: Connect the necessary address lines to the memory chip.

Figure 4.7 shows that the address lines A₁₁-A₀ are connected to the memory chip to identify 4,096 registers.

Step 2: Decode the remaining address lines and combine the \overline{MREQ} with the decoded & pulse to generate the Memory Select (MSEL) pulse.

Step 3:

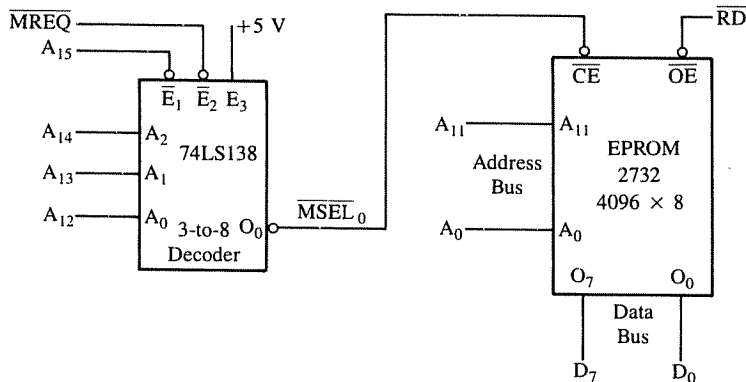


FIGURE 4.7
Schematic of Interfacing 2732 EPROM

In this schematic, two steps—the decoding of the address and generating of the Memory Select ($\overline{\text{MSEL}}_0$)—are combined by using the 74LS138 3-to-8 decoder. The decoder has three inputs, three enable lines, and eight output lines. Two enable lines are active low and one is active high. Once the decoder is enabled, only one output line, corresponding to the input combination, goes active (low).

In Figure 4.7, the output O_0 of the decoder is shown as Memory Select ($\overline{\text{MSEL}}_0$), which is connected to the Chip Enable ($\overline{\text{CE}}$) of the memory, and O_0 goes active low when the address lines A_{15} – A_{12} and the $\overline{\text{MREQ}}$ are all at logic 0. The address line A_{15} and the $\overline{\text{MREQ}}$ are used to enable the decoder (active low); the address lines A_{14} , A_{13} , and A_{12} are used as input to the decoder, and the enable line E_3 is connected to +5 V. No other logic level on these address lines can assert the $\overline{\text{MSEL}}_0$ signal.

Step 4: Connect the Z80 control signal to enable an appropriate buffer.

Figure 4.7 shows that the Z80 Read ($\overline{\text{RD}}$) is connected to the $\overline{\text{OE}}$ signal of the memory chip. When the $\overline{\text{RD}}$ signal is asserted, the output buffer is enabled and the data byte from the selected register is placed on the data bus.

4.23 Memory Map

We can obtain the address range of this memory chip by analyzing the possible logic levels on the 16 address lines. The logic levels on the address lines A_{15} – A_{12} have to be 0 to assert the Chip Enable, and the address lines A_{11} – A_0 can assume any combinations from all 0s to all 1s. Therefore, the memory map of this chip ranges from 0000_{H} to 0FFF_{H} .

A_{15}	A_{14}	A_{13}	A_{12}	A_{11}	A_{10}	A_9	A_8	A_7	A_6	A_5	A_4	A_3	A_2	A_1	A_0	
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	$= 0000_{\text{H}}$
				↓											↓	
				$\overline{\text{MSEL}}_0$	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	$= 0\text{FFF}_{\text{H}}$

We can verify the memory map in terms of our analogy of page and line numbers. The chip's 4,096 bytes of memory can be viewed as 16 pages with 256 lines each. Let us examine the high order Hex digits of the map; they range from 00 to 0F, indicating 16 pages—0000 to 00FF and 0100 to 01FF, for example.

4.3

ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLE 2: INTERFACING STATIC R/W MEMORY

In this example, we will use the MOSTEK MK4802 memory chip to demonstrate both Read and Write operations. To simplify the discussion, we will use the same decoding circuit as in Figure 4.7, except that the $\overline{\text{MSEL}}_4$ signal is used as the Chip Enable. This chip has 2K memory; therefore, one address line (A_{11}) will be left as “don't care” in order to use the previous circuit. Because of the “don't care” address line, the memory registers will have multiple addresses, and the memory chip will occupy more memory space than necessary, as explained later.

4.31 MOSTEK MK4802 Static R/W Memory

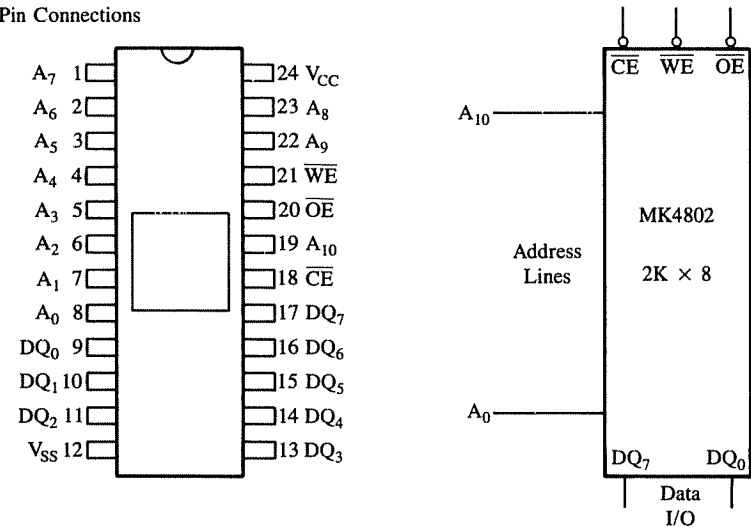
This is a 2K static R/W memory chip, organized in a 2048×8 format. It has eleven address lines (A_{10} – A_0), eight data lines, and three control signals: $\overline{\text{CE}}$, $\overline{\text{OE}}$, and $\overline{\text{WE}}$. We are already familiar with the first two control signals; the third signal $\overline{\text{WE}}$ (Write Enable) is active low and used to enable the input buffer of the memory. The logic pinout and the pin configuration are shown in Figure 4.8.

4.32 Interfacing Circuit

Figure 4.9 shows the interfacing circuit using the MK4802 memory chip. The decoding circuit is the same as in Figure 4.7. We will analyze this circuit in terms of the same four steps outlined previously.

- Step 1:** The Z80 address lines A_{10} – A_0 are connected to pins A_{10} – A_0 of the memory chip to address 2048 registers; the address line A_{11} is not necessary for the chip. The address line A_{11} can be connected to the decoder by modifying the circuit, but we have left it “don't care” to observe its effects on the memory map.
- Step 2:** The Memory Select $\overline{\text{MSEL}}_4$ line (the output 0₄ of the decoder) is used as the & Chip Enable ($\overline{\text{CE}}$). The $\overline{\text{CE}}$ is asserted only when the address on A_{15} – A_{12} is
- Step 3:** 0 1 0 0.
- Step 4:** In the case of a R/W memory, we need two control signals: Read ($\overline{\text{RD}}$) and Write ($\overline{\text{WR}}$), both active low. The $\overline{\text{RD}}$ is connected to $\overline{\text{OE}}$, as in the previous illustration, to enable the output buffer. The $\overline{\text{WR}}$ is connected to $\overline{\text{WE}}$ (Write Enable) of the memory chip, and when $\overline{\text{WR}}$ is asserted low, the input buffer of the memory chip is enabled, allowing data to be written into the selected memory register.

Pin Connections



Pin Names			
A ₀ -A ₁₀	Address Inputs	V _{CC}	Power (+5 V)
\overline{CE}	Chip Enable	\overline{WE}	Write Enable
V _{SS}	Ground	\overline{OE}	Output Enable
DQ ₀ -DQ ₇	Data In/Data Out		

FIGURE 4.8
MK4802 Static R/W Memory Pin Configuration and Logic Symbol
SOURCE: Courtesy of Mostek Corporation

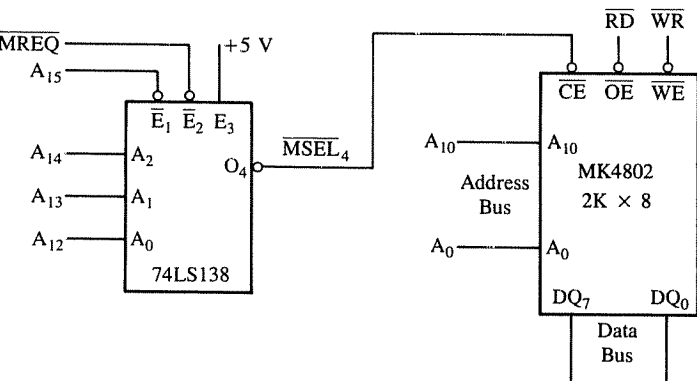


FIGURE 4.9
Schematic of Interfacing Static R/W Memory MK4802

4.33 Memory Map

Assuming the “don’t care” address line A_{11} at logic 0, the memory map of this memory chip ranges from 4000_H to $47FF_H$.

A_{15}	A_{14}	A_{13}	A_{12}	A_{11}	A_{10}	A_9	A_8	A_7	A_6	A_5	A_4	A_3	A_2	A_1	A_0	
0	1	0	0	X	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	$= 4000_H$
					↓										↓	
				\overline{MSEL}_4	X	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	$= 47FF_H$

If we assume A_{11} at logic 1, the memory map ranges from 4800_H to $4FFF_H$ as shown below:

A_{15}	A_{14}	A_{13}	A_{12}	A_{11}	A_{10}	A_9	A_8	A_7	A_6	A_5	A_4	A_3	A_2	A_1	A_0	
0	1	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	$= 4800_H$
				↓											↓	
				\overline{MSEL}_4	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	$= 4FFF_H$

The entire memory map appears to be from 4000_H to $4FFF_H$ (4K memory). In reality, we have only 2K memory occupying the memory space of 4K. Because of the one “don’t care” line, each register can have two addresses. For example, the addresses 4000_H and 4800_H will select the same register. The duplicate or redundant range of the memory addresses (4800_H to $4FFF_H$) is generally known as the **foldback memory**; this memory space cannot be used by any other memory chip.

4.34 Absolute versus Linear Decoding

In Illustrative Example 1 (Figure 4.7), all the high-order address lines A_{15} – A_{12} were decoded to select the memory chip, and the memory chip is selected only for the specified logic levels (all 0s) on these high-order address lines; no other logic levels can select the chip. This is called absolute decoding, a desirable design practice commonly used in large memory systems. In Illustrative Example 2 (Figure 4.9), high-order address lines were partially decoded, resulting in multiple addresses. In small systems, hardware for the decoding logic can be eliminated by using individual high-order address lines to select memory chips. For example, in Figure 4.9, A_{15} can be directly connected to the memory chip, thus eliminating the decoder, and the chip is selected whenever $A_{15} = 0$. This is called linear decoding. The scheme can reduce cost, but has the drawback of multiple addresses. The linear decoding can be used in small systems, such as a microwave oven, where memory requirements are limited and further expansion is unlikely.

4.4

ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLE 3: DESIGNING MEMORY

In this section, we will approach the question of memory interfacing from a design point-of-view. In the previous examples, we analyzed the given schematics of memory interfacing; now we will design an interfacing circuit for given specifications.

4.41 Problem Statement

Given a 2K R/W (2048×8) static memory chip and one 3-to-8 decoder, design memory for the beginning address 2800_H . Use the \overline{MREQ} signal to enable one of the decoder lines, and the \overline{RD} and \overline{WR} control signals can be directly connected to the memory chip.

4.42 Problem Analysis

1. The 2K memory requires 11 address lines ($A_{10}-A_0$), and the remaining five address lines $A_{15}-A_{11}$ can be used to generate the Memory Select signal.
2. The 74LS138 decoder has three input lines and three enable lines: two active low and one active high. Out of the five address lines, three lines can be used as input to the decoder, and two address lines and the \overline{MREQ} can be used to enable the decoder.
3. The Z80 control signals \overline{RD} and \overline{WR} should be connected to the Output Enable (\overline{OE}) and Write Enable (\overline{WE}) of the memory chip, respectively.
4. To assign the starting address 2800_H . The address lines should have the following logic levels:

A_{15}	A_{14}	A_{13}	A_{12}	A_{11}	A_{10}	A_9	A_8	A_7	A_6	A_5	A_4	A_3	A_2	A_1	A_0	
0	0	1	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	$= 2800_H$
\overline{MSEL}_1																

These logic level requirements dictate that A_{13} and A_{11} should be 1, and that A_{15} , A_{14} , and A_{12} , should be 0. We can connect A_{13} to the active high enable line (E_3), and A_{15} and \overline{MREQ} to the active low enable lines (\overline{E}_1 and \overline{E}_2) of the decoder, respectively, and by connecting the output O_1 of the decoder to \overline{CE} , we can ensure that the memory chip is selected when $A_{11} = 1$.

4.43 Circuit Analysis

Figure 4.10 shows the schematic of the interfacing circuit based on the problem analysis.

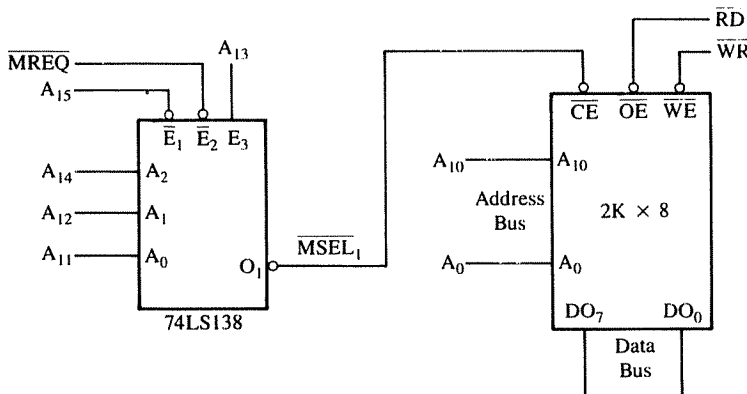


FIGURE 4.10
Schematic of 2K Memory Design

1. The output line O_1 of the decoder is connected to the Chip Enable (\overline{CE}) of the memory chip. The decoder is enabled when $A_{15} = 0$, $A_{13} = 1$, and \overline{MREQ} is asserted low. The output line O_1 of the decoder is asserted only when input lines are at logic 0 0 1. The logic levels on these address lines will assign the starting address as 2800_H .
2. In this design example, the \overline{MREQ} is used to enable the decoder. The output of the decoder goes low only when the \overline{MREQ} is asserted; thus, the chip is enabled when the \overline{MREQ} is low. The output and the input buffers of the memory chip are enabled directly by the control signals \overline{RD} and \overline{WR} .

4.5

TESTING AND TROUBLESHOOTING INTERFACING CIRCUITS

In the last section, we discussed how to design or interface memory for a given address. The next step is to test and verify that we can store a byte at a memory location within the address range of the memory chip and read the byte. At this point, we need to make an assumption that we have a working microcomputer system, and the memory design is an expansion of the existing system. If we are designing a system, we may need to use an in-circuit emulator to test the memory; this is discussed in Chapter 17.

To test the memory, we can simply access an address such as 2800_H through the system keyboard, store a byte, and check the address location again to verify the byte. If there is any fault in the interfacing circuit, the system is likely to show an error message, or a different byte from the one we stored will be displayed. Now we need to troubleshoot the interfacing circuit. The question is: Where do we begin? The obvious step is to check the wiring and the pin connections. After this preliminary check, most traditional methods used in checking analog circuits (such as an amplifier) are ineffective because the logic levels on the buses are dynamic; they constantly change depending upon the operation being performed at a given instant by the microprocessor. In troubleshooting analog circuits, a commonly used technique is signal injection, whereby a known signal is injected at the input, and the output signal is verified against the expected outcome. To use this concept, we need to generate a constant and identifiable signal and check various points in relation to that signal. We can generate such a signal by asking the processor to execute a continuous loop, called a **diagnostic routine**, as shown.

Diagnostic Routine

START: LD A, F7H ;Load F7H into the accumulator

LD (2800H), A ;Store accumulator contents in location 2800H

JP START ;Jump back to beginning and repeat

This routine has three instructions. The first instruction loads $F7_H$ into the accumulator, and the second instruction stores the byte in the memory location 2800_H . The third instruction is a Jump instruction that takes the program control at the beginning, and these three instructions are repeated continuously. Now we need to examine the machine cycles of these instructions to find an identifiable signal that is repeated at a certain interval. We

can analyze the loop in the machine cycles as follows (it will be helpful to have read Chapter 6 to understand the diagnostic routine):

Instruction	Bytes	T-states	Machine Cycles			
			M ₁	M ₂	M ₃	M ₄
LD A, F7H	2	7 (4, 3)	Opcode Fetch	Memory Read		
LD (2800H), A	3	13 (4, 3, 3, 3)	Opcode Fetch	Memory Read	Memory Read	Memory Write
JP START	3	10 (4, 3, 3)	Opcode Fetch	Memory Read	Memory Read	

This loop has 30 T-states and nine operations. To execute the loop once, the microprocessor asserts the \overline{RD} signal eight times (the Opcode Fetch is also a Read operation) and the \overline{WR} signal once. Assuming the system clock frequency is 2 MHz, the loop is executed in 15 μ s, and the \overline{WR} signal, repeated every 15 μ s, can be observed on a scope. If we sync the scope on the \overline{WR} pulse from the Z80, we can check \overline{M}_1 , the output of the decoder \overline{MSEL}_1 and memory signals \overline{CE} , \overline{WR} , and \overline{RD} ; three of these signals are in Figure 4.11.

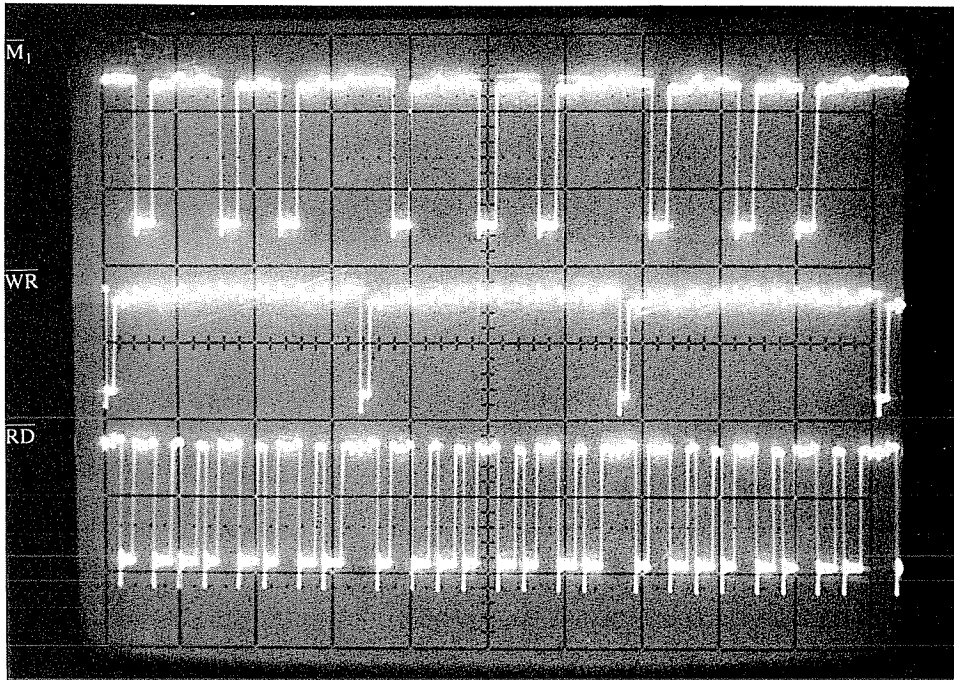


FIGURE 4.11
Timing Signals of Diagnostic Routine
SOURCE: Photograph by Gregg Texido

When the Z80 asserts the $\overline{\text{WR}}$ signal, the high-order address $A_{15}-A_{11}$ must be 0 0 1 0 1, and MSEL_1 must be asserted low. If MSEL_1 is high, it indicates that the address lines $A_{15}-A_{11}$ or MREQ are improperly connected or the decoder chip is faulty.

If MSEL_1 is low, it confirms that the decoding circuit is functioning properly. Now if we check the entire address bus and the data bus in relation to the $\overline{\text{WR}}$ signal, one line at a time, we must read the address 2800_{H} and the data F7_{H} . If we check the $\overline{\text{RD}}$ signal, it must be high when the $\overline{\text{WR}}$ is asserted, and we will observe eight $\overline{\text{RD}}$ signals between every two $\overline{\text{WR}}$ signals, as shown in Figure 4.11.

4.6

SOME QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS

In the above discussion of memory interfacing, we focused on certain aspects of the communication process between the Z80 and memory. However, in order to avoid distraction from basic concepts, we did not address several important issues. Now we will attempt to answer those questions briefly or provide references for them.

1. *How do you determine whether a memory chip is too slow for a given Z80 system?*

The response time of a memory chip is defined in terms of *Access Time*. This is the time delay between when the microprocessor places a memory address on the address bus and when memory places a data byte on the data bus. Typically, Access Time is 50–450 ns for static R/W memory. Similarly, the microprocessor has a timing specification: the time delay after the Z80 places an address on the address bus to when it begins to read data on the data bus. The memory access time must be less than this microprocessor time delay. This will be discussed when we consider advanced topics in memory interfacing.

2. *How do you interface a memory chip with slow response time?*

If the memory response time is slower than the microprocessor read time, the Memory Read cycle can be extended by using the WAIT signal. During the T_2 state of the Memory Read cycle, the Z80 samples the WAIT signal, and if it is low, the Z80 adds Wait states until the signal goes high again. Typically, one Wait state (one clock cycle) provides sufficient time for memory to place data on the data bus. Extra circuitry is necessary for adding Wait states; this is discussed in Chapter 16.

3. *Why did you not include an illustrative example of dynamic memory?*

The dynamic memory stores information as a capacitive charge; therefore, information needs to be refreshed every few milliseconds. In the latter part of the Opcode Fetch

cycle, the Z80 uses the low-order bus for refresh addresses. To interface the dynamic memory, additional refresh circuits that can use the refresh addresses from the Opcode Fetch cycle are necessary. This will also be discussed in Chapter 16.

SUMMARY

- To read from memory, the address of the register to be read from should be placed on the address lines, and the Chip Enable \overline{CE} and \overline{RD} signals must be asserted low to enable the output buffer.
- To write into memory, the address of the register to be written into should be placed on the address lines; a data byte should be placed on the data lines, and the Chip Enable \overline{CE} and \overline{WR} signals must be asserted low to enable the input buffer.
- The Z80 identifies memory operations by initiating the \overline{MREQ} signal. This signal is combined with the decoded address pulse (\overline{CS}) to generate Memory Select (\overline{MSEL}), which is connected to Chip Enable (\overline{CE}) signal of the memory chip. Another alternative is to use the decoded address pulse \overline{CS} to enable the memory chip and generate Memory Read (\overline{MEMRD}) and Memory Write (\overline{MEMWR}) signals by combining \overline{MREQ} , \overline{RD} , and \overline{WR} signals.
- To interface a memory chip with the Z80, the necessary low-order address lines of the Z80 address bus are connected to the address lines of the memory chip. The high-order address lines and the \overline{MREQ} are used to generate the \overline{MSEL} signal, which enables the chip. The \overline{RD} signal is used to enable the output buffer, and the \overline{WR} signal is used to write into memory by enabling the input buffer.
- In the absolute decoding technique, all the address lines not used by a memory chip to identify a memory register must be decoded; thus, the Chip Select can be asserted by only one address. In the linear decoding technique, one address line can be used for \overline{CS} , and others can be left “don’t care.” This technique saves on hardware, but generates multiple addresses, which result in foldback memory space.
- To troubleshoot an interfacing circuit, a constant and identifiable signal must be generated by writing a continuous loop.

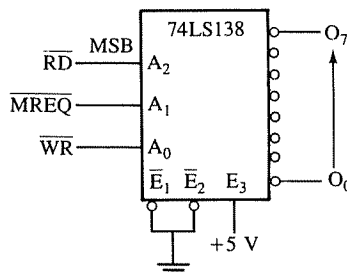
ASSIGNMENTS

1. If a memory chip is organized in a 4096×1 format, specify the number of registers in the chip and the number of bits stored by each register.
2. If $16K \times 1$ memory chips are used in a memory design, how many chips are required to design 64K-byte memory?
3. Specify the number of chips necessary to design 8K-byte memory with 1024×4 memory chips.

4. In Figure 4.7, generate the Chip Select (\overline{CS}) signal by using a 4-input NAND gate (and inverters) to decode the address lines A_{15} – A_{12} and combine \overline{CS} with the \overline{MREQ} using an appropriate gate to generate the equivalent \overline{MSEL} signal.
5. Generate the signal equivalent to the \overline{MSEL} signal in Figure 4.7 using the 74LS139, which has two 2-to-4 decoders in the package.
6. If the first address of the $8K \times 8$ memory chip is 0800_H , what is the address of the last register?
7. In Figure 4.7, if we connect the output line O_4 (instead of O_0) of the decoder to the \overline{CE} signal, what will be the memory map of the circuit?
8. In Figure 4.7, if we use all the output lines (O_7 – O_0) of the decoder to select 8 memory chips of the same size as the 2732, what is the total range of the memory map?
9. In Figure 4.9, replace the address line A_{15} with A_{11} and find the range of the foldback memory.
10. In Figure 4.9, replace the MK4802 with a $1K \times 8$ memory chip and leave address lines A_{11} and A_{10} as “don’t care.” Find the memory map of the chip and the range of the foldback memory.
11. By examining the range of the foldback memory in Figure 4.9, and in Assignment 10, specify the relationship between the range of foldback memory and the number of “don’t care” lines.
12. In Figure 4.12, the control signals \overline{RD} , \overline{MREQ} , and \overline{WR} are used as inputs to the 3-to-8 decoder, and the decoder is enabled. Specify the output lines that can be used as \overline{MEMRD} and \overline{MEMWR} control signals.
13. In Figure 4.12, explain why the output line O_0 cannot be asserted low.
14. In Figure 4.13, specify the memory maps of ROM1, ROM2 and R/WM1.
15. Is there a foldback memory for any one of the chips in Figure 4.13?
16. Sketch the memory map in Figure 4.13.
17. Figure 4.14 illustrates an example of linear decoding. Specify the memory map of each chip without accessing more than one chip at a time.
18. Given a $1K$ (1024×8) EPROM memory chip and one 3-to-8 decoder, design an interfacing circuit to assign the beginning address at 0400_H . Use the 74LS32 OR gate to generate the control signal \overline{MEMRD} .
19. You are given the 74LS139 (two 2-to-4 decoders) and $8K$ static R/W memory.

FIGURE 4.12

Generating Control Signals
Using the 3-to-8 Decoder



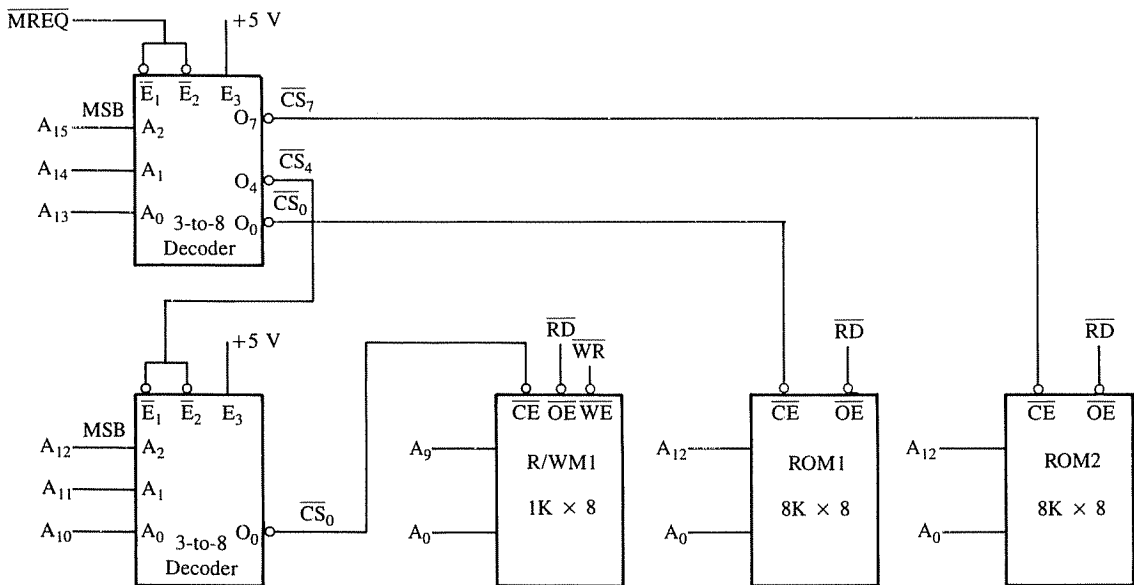


FIGURE 4.13
Schematic for Assignments 14–16

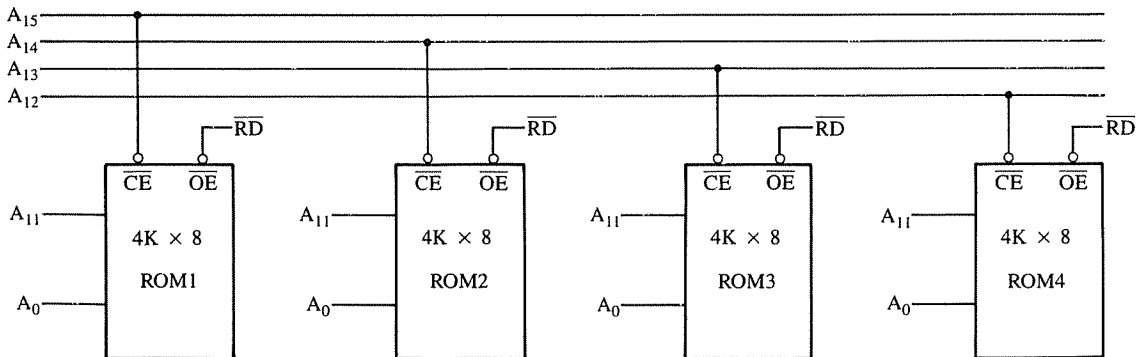


FIGURE 4.14
Memory Map with Linear Decoding

Use one decoder to assign the memory map with the starting address at 8000_H and use the other decoder to generate the \overline{MEMRD} and \overline{MEMWR} control signals.

20. In Section 4.5, if the diagnostic routine is executed on a system with the clock frequency 4 MHz, specify the time interval between two \overline{WR} pulses.

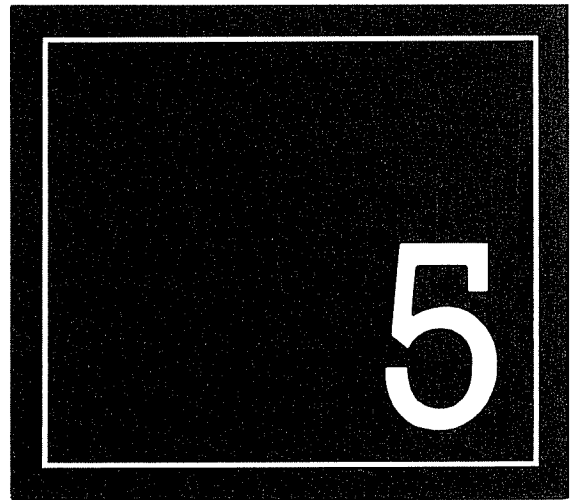
21. In the diagnostic routine, how many times is the $\overline{\text{MREQ}}$ signal asserted in one loop?
22. Specify the logic levels of the address lines A_{15} and A_{13} and the data lines D_7 and D_3 when the $\overline{\text{WR}}$ signal is asserted during the diagnostic routine.
23. How many times is the \overline{M}_1 signal asserted during the execution of the diagnostic routine?
24. Sketch the waveforms of $\overline{\text{MSEL}}_1$ signals in one loop.

Interfacing I/O Devices

The I/O (Input/Output) is the third component of a microcomputer system. I/O devices, such as keyboards and displays, are the ears and eyes of the MPUs; they are the communication channels to the “outside world.” Data can enter or exit in groups of eight bits using the entire data bus; this is called the **parallel I/O mode**. The other mode is the **serial I/O**, whereby one bit is transferred using one data line; typical examples include peripherals such as CRT terminals or cassette tapes. In this chapter, we focus on interfacing I/O devices in the parallel mode; the serial mode will be discussed in Chapter 15.

In the parallel I/O mode, devices can be interfaced using two techniques: peripheral-mapped I/O and memory-mapped I/O. In peripheral-mapped I/O, a device is identified with an 8-bit address and enabled by I/O-related control signals. In memory-mapped I/O, a device is identified with a 16-bit address and enabled by memory-related control signals. The process of data transfer in both is identical. Each device is assigned a binary address through its interfacing circuit. When the Z80 is programmed to transfer data, it places the appropriate address on the address bus, sends the control signals, enables the interfacing device, and transfers data. The interfacing device is like a gate for data bits, which is opened by the MPU whenever it intends to transfer data.

To grasp the essence of interfacing techniques,



we first examine the machine cycles of I/O instructions to determine the timings for I/O data arriving on the data bus, and then latch (or catch) that information. We derive the basic concepts of peripheral-mapped and memory-mapped I/O from the machine cycles. The peripheral-mapped I/O concepts are illustrated with two examples: interfacing LEDs as an output device and switches as input device. The memory-mapped I/O technique is illustrated with an example of appliance control. The chapter also includes additional interfacing examples that occur frequently in microprocessor-based products.

OBJECTIVES

- Illustrate the Z80 bus contents and control signals when OUT and IN instructions are executed.
- Explain the necessity of Wait states in I/O machine cycles.
- Recognize the device (port) address of a peripheral-mapped I/O by analyzing the associated logic circuit.
- Recognize the device (port) address of a memory-mapped I/O by analyzing the associated logic circuit.
- Explain the differences between the peripheral-mapped and memory-mapped I/O techniques.
- Interface an I/O device to a microcomputer for a specified device address by using logic gates and such MSI chips as decoders, latches, and buffers.
- Explain the concepts in interfacing analog devices such as sensors and motors.

5.1

INTERFACING OUTPUT DEVICES

In peripheral-mapped I/O, a device is identified with an 8-bit address, and I/O-related control signals are used to enable the device. The process of data transfer is in many ways similar to that of reading from or writing into a memory register. The Z80 uses the instruction IN to read (input) data from an input device and uses the instruction OUT to write (send) data to an output device. To understand interfacing of I/O devices, we need to examine the execution and machine cycles of these input/output instructions. In the next section, we will examine the execution of the OUT instruction and discuss the interfacing of output devices, and in Section 5.3, we will examine the IN instruction and discuss the interfacing of input devices.

5.11 OUT Instruction

The Z80 microprocessor has several output instructions to send (copy or write) data to an output device. It can send data from the accumulator, internal general-purpose registers, or memory registers to an output device. The Out instructions include the 8-bit address of a device as an operand. Therefore, the address can be any of the 256 8-bit binary combinations from 00_H to FF_H. Thus, an output device can be assigned any 8-bit address between 00_H and FF_H through an appropriate interfacing circuit. The address range from 00_H to FF_H is called the I/O or peripheral map, and an address can be referred to as a device address, port address, or port number. Among the several Out instructions, we will examine the machine cycles and timing of the following instruction.

Opcode	Operand	Description
OUT	(8-bit), A	This is a 2-byte instruction with the hexadecimal opcode D3, and the second byte is the port address of an output device. This instruction transfers (copies) data from the accumulator to the output device.

Typically, to display the contents of the accumulator at an output device (such as

LEDs) with the address, for example, 07_H, the instruction will be written and stored in memory as follows:

Memory Address	Machine Code	Mnemonics	Memory Contents								
2050	D3	OUT (07H), A ; 2050	<table border="1"><tr><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>1</td></tr></table> = D3 _H	1	1	0	1	0	0	1	1
1	1	0	1	0	0	1	1				
2051	07	; 2051	<table border="1"><tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>1</td></tr></table> = 07 _H	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	1
0	0	0	0	0	1	1	1				

NOTE: The memory locations are chosen here arbitrarily for the illustration.

When the microprocessor reads and executes the machine codes written at memory registers 2050_H and 2051_H, it will transfer (copy) the byte from the accumulator to the LED port with address 07_H and display the byte. Now the question remains: How is the address 07_H assigned to the output port? To answer that question, we need to examine the machine cycles of this instruction, as shown in the next section.

5.12 Execution of OUT Instruction and Timing

The OUT instruction has three machine cycles: Opcode Fetch, Memory Read, and I/O Write. The Z80 reads the opcode and the port address from memory in the first two machine cycles and writes into the port in the third cycle. Figure 5.1 shows the timing of the OUT instruction with the port address 07_H illustrated in the previous section.

The first two machine cycles—Opcode Fetch and Memory Read—are similar to the machine cycles shown in Figure 3.7; however, in Figure 5.1, the low-order and high-order address buses are shown separately to illustrate the contents of the low-order bus in the third cycle. In the Opcode Fetch cycle, the Z80 places the address 2050_H on the address bus and fetches the opcode D3_H (1 1 0 1 0 0 1 1) via the data bus. When the Z80 decodes the opcode, it realizes that the instruction consists of two bytes, and that it must read the second byte. In the second machine cycle, the Z80 places the next address, 2051_H, on the address bus and reads the port address 07_H.

In the third machine cycle, M₃ (I/O Write), the following events occur:

- 1. The Z80 places the port address 07_H on the low-order address bus and the contents of the accumulator on the data bus.
- 2. During T₂, it asserts the $\overline{\text{IORQ}}$ and $\overline{\text{WR}}$ control signals; the assertion of $\overline{\text{IORQ}}$ indicates that it is an I/O operation.
- 3. The Z80 automatically inserts a single Wait state T_w after T₂ to allow sufficient response time for an I/O device; this Wait state is added regardless of the WAIT signal status.
- 4. During T₃, the control signals $\overline{\text{IORQ}}$ and $\overline{\text{WR}}$ become inactive.

To interface an output device, the information on the buses during the M₃ cycle is critical. From the beginning of T₂ until the end of T₃, we have the port address (07_H) on the low-order address bus and the data byte to be displayed on the data bus. The availability of this information is indicated by the control signals. Now what we must do is to latch

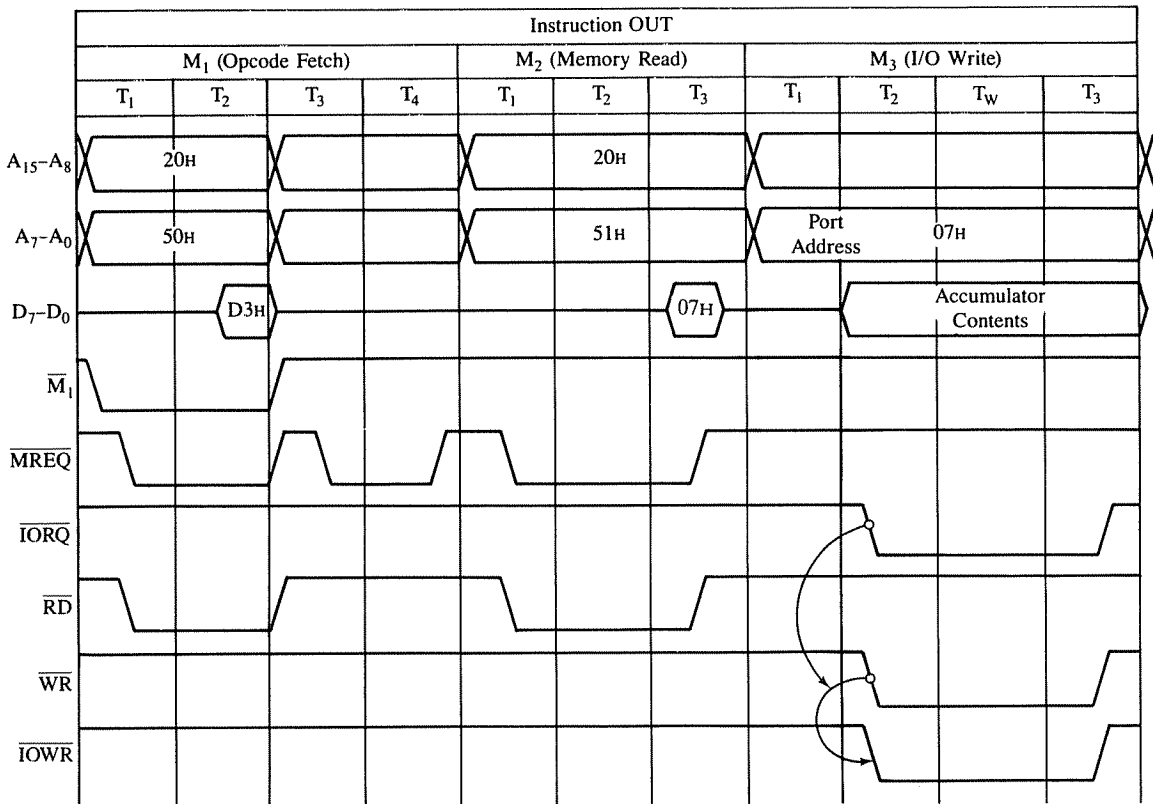


FIGURE 5.1
Z80 Timing for Execution of OUT Instruction

(catch) this information using the control signals before it disappears from the buses; we need to open the gate at that precise moment to let the data flow to the “outside world.” This is the essence of interfacing.

5.13 Basic Concepts in Interfacing Output Devices

The concepts in interfacing output devices are similar to those in interfacing memory. The steps can be listed as follows:

1. Decode the low-order address bus to generate a unique pulse corresponding to the port address on the bus; this is called the I/O address (IOADR) pulse.
2. Combine (AND) the I/O address pulse (\overline{IOADR}), \overline{IORQ} , and \overline{WR} to generate the IOSEL (I/O select) pulse (Figure 5.2(a)). Another approach is to generate the \overline{IOWR} (I/O Write) by combining \overline{IORQ} and \overline{WR} , and then combine \overline{IOWR} with the \overline{IOADR} (I/O Address) pulse to generate the IOSEL pulse (Figure 5.2(b)). The critical concept here is that the decoded address, \overline{IORQ} , and \overline{WR} are all necessary to latch the data at

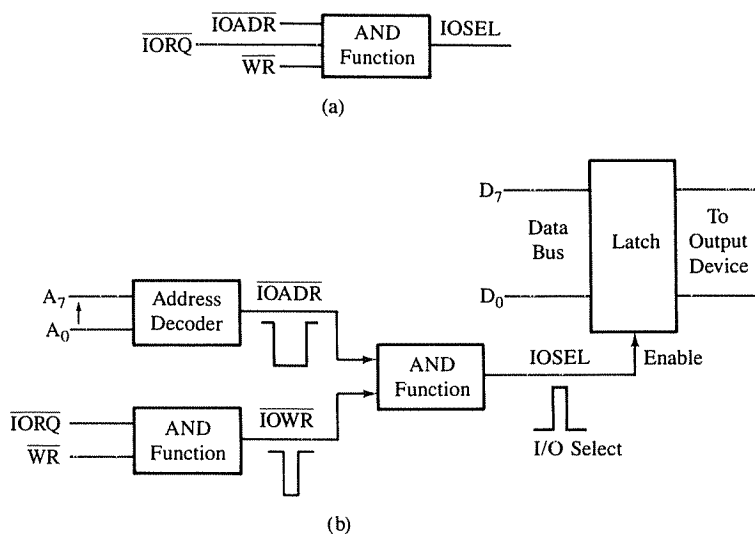


FIGURE 5.2
Block Diagram: Output Interfacing

the appropriate time; how these signals are combined is often dictated by availability of decoding devices (chips) in the system.

3. Use the IOSEL pulse to enable (activate) the output device.

Let us examine the significance of the I/O select pulse. This pulse is generated by ANDing the decoded address, $\overline{\text{IORQ}}$, and $\overline{\text{WR}}$ signals as shown in Figure 5.2(a); all these signals are active low. The assertion of this pulse indicates two pieces of information: (1) the low-order address bus has the port address (07_{H}), and (2) the data byte from the accumulator is on the data bus. Thus, this is the appropriate time to enable the latch (or open the gate for data). Figure 5.2(b) shows how these control signals are generally ANDed in a typical interfacing circuit to generate the IOSEL pulse and how the I/O select pulse is used to enable the output latch.

ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLE 1: INTERFACING LEDS

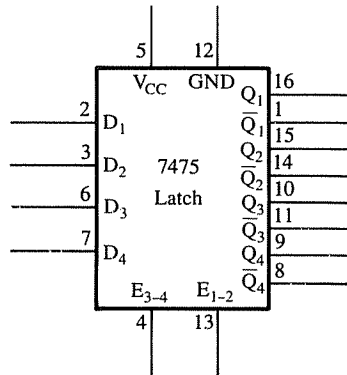
5.2

In this section, we will analyze an actual interfacing circuit with the port address 07_{H} to display binary data. A group of 8 LEDs will be used to indicate binary 1s and 0s and will be connected to the data bus using the 7475 latches.

5.2.1 Hardware

Figure 5.3 shows the logic symbols of the 7475 latch. It has four *bistable latches* controlled by the active high enable signals; E_{1-2} enables the first two latches and E_{3-4} enables

FIGURE 5.3
Logic Symbol. 7475 Latch



the remaining two. When E is high, data enter the latch and appear at the Q outputs, and Q outputs correspond to the input data. When E goes from high to low, data will be latched and will remain stable until E goes high again.

When Q output is high, it can supply (source) 400 μ A, and when it is low, it can sink 16 mA current. Since most LEDs require a 10–15 mA current to be properly illuminated, they are connected to \bar{Q} output of the latch so that when the input is high, \bar{Q} output is low and the LED is turned on.

5.22 Interfacing Circuit

Figure 5.4 shows an interfacing circuit for the LED output port with the address 07_H . We will analyze this circuit in terms of the three steps for interfacing output devices as outlined in Section 5.13.

1. An 8-input NAND gate with five inverters is used to decode the low-order address bus A_7-A_0 . The output of the NAND gate is asserted when the address is 0 0 0 0 0 1 1 1 (07_H); thus, the NAND gate performs the decoding function to generate the I/O address (\overline{IOADR}) pulse.
2. The control signals \overline{IORQ} and \overline{WR} are ANDed in a negative AND gate (physically, an OR gate) to generate the control signal \overline{IOWR} (active low). The \overline{IOWR} is again ANDed (through a NOR gate) with the I/O address pulse to generate the I/O select pulse (active high). This pulse is asserted only when the address is 07_H and the control signals \overline{IORQ} and \overline{WR} are low.
3. The I/O select pulse is used to enable the latches 7475. The data bus D_7-D_0 is connected to the D input and the LED cathodes are connected to the \bar{Q} output of the latch. The LED anodes are connected to the power supply + 5 V through the current-limiting resistors.

At the beginning of T_2 in the third machine cycle shown in Figure 5.1, the control signals \overline{IORQ} and \overline{WR} are asserted, and the I/O select pulse (Figure 5.4) goes high if the address is 07_H . When the I/O select pulse goes high, the data on the data bus enters the

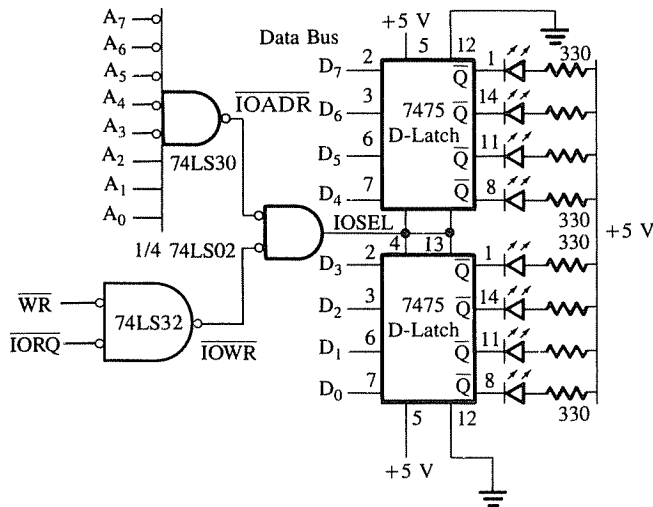


FIGURE 5.4
Schematic: Interfacing LED Output Port

latches. During T_3 , when the control signals become inactive, the I/O select pulse goes low, and the data are latched. The logic 1s on the data lines turn on the corresponding LEDs because when a data bit is high, the \bar{Q} output is low and the LED is turned on.

INSTRUCTIONS

To display data, for example 97_H , at this LED port, instructions are as follows:

LD A, 97_H ; Load accumulator with the specified byte

OUT (07_H), A ; Display the accumulator contents at port 07_H

The first instruction (LD A) stores the second byte 97_H in the accumulator, and the OUT instruction sends the byte (97_H) from the accumulator to the LED port 07_H . When the I/O select pulse is asserted, the byte 97_H enters the latch and is displayed by the LEDs. When it goes low (inactive), the byte is latched and continues to be displayed by the LEDs.

INTERFACING INPUT DEVICES

5.3

The interfacing of input devices is almost identical to that of interfacing output devices, but with some differences in bus signals and circuit components. In this discussion, we will assume that you are familiar with the basic concepts of interfacing (Section 5.13) and

describe only the additional details. First, we examine the execution and timing of the IN instruction and discuss the interfacing of input devices in relation to the timing diagram.

5.31 IN Instruction

The Z80 instruction set includes several instructions to read (copy) data from such input devices as switches, keyboards, and A/D data converters. These instructions can read an input device and place the data into the accumulator, Z80 registers, or memory registers. These are two-byte instructions; the first byte is the opcode, and the second byte specifies port address. Although there are numerous ways of specifying the port address, it is always eight bits long. Thus, the addresses for input devices can range from 00_H to FF_H. Among the several Input instructions available, we will examine the machine cycles and timing of the following instruction.

Opcode	Operand	Description
IN	A, (8-bit)	<p>This is a two-byte instruction with the hexadecimal opcode DB, and the second byte is the port address of an Input device.</p> <p>This instruction reads (copies) data from an input device and places the data byte into the accumulator.</p>

To read switch positions, for example, from an input port with the address 84_H, the instructions will be written and stored in memory as follows:

Memory Address	Machine Code	Mnemonics	Memory Contents
2065	DB	IN A, (84H) ; 2065	1 1 0 1 1 0 1 1 = DB _H
2066	84	; 2066	1 0 0 0 0 1 0 0 = 84 _H

NOTE: The memory locations 2065_H and 2066_H are selected arbitrarily for the illustration.

When the microprocessor is asked to execute these instructions, it will first read the machine codes (or bytes) stored at locations 2065_H and 2066_H, then read the switch positions at port 84_H by enabling the interfacing device of the port. The data byte indicating switch positions from the input port will be placed in the accumulator. To design an interfacing circuit with the port address 84_H, we now need to examine the machine cycles and execution timing of the IN instruction.

5.32 Execution of IN Instruction and Its Timing

The IN instruction has three machine cycles: Opcode Fetch, Memory Read, and I/O Read. In the first two machine cycles, the Z80 reads the opcode DB and the port address 84_H (see example in previous section). These cycles are identical to the first two machine cycles of

the OUT instruction shown in Figure 5.1. In the third machine cycle, the Z80 reads a data byte from the input port as follows (Figure 5.5):

1. The port address 84_H is placed on the low-order address bus at the beginning of the machine cycle M_3 (I/O Read).
2. During T_2 , the control signals $\overline{\text{IORQ}}$ and $\overline{\text{RD}}$ are asserted, and one Wait state is inserted automatically after T_2 .
3. During T_3 , the Z80 reads the data bus and then causes the control signals ($\overline{\text{IORQ}}$ and $\overline{\text{RD}}$) to go inactive.

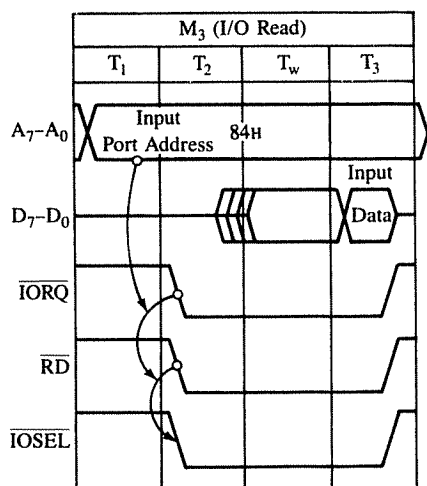
5.33 Basic Concepts in Interfacing Input Devices

To interface an input port with the address 84_H , we need to logically AND the information on the address bus with the control signals and enable the input port. The steps are as follows:

1. Decode the low-order bus to generate the I/O address pulse.
2. Combine the I/O address pulse with the control signals $\overline{\text{IORQ}}$ and $\overline{\text{RD}}$ to generate the signal I/O Select ($\overline{\text{IOSEL}}$, Figure 5.5). Another approach is to combine $\overline{\text{IORQ}}$ and $\overline{\text{RD}}$ to generate an $\overline{\text{IORD}}$ signal and then to combine the $\overline{\text{IORD}}$ with the I/O address pulse to generate the I/O select pulse.
3. Enable the input interfacing device using the I/O select pulse.

These steps are identical to those listed for interfacing output devices; the only differences are (1) the control signal is $\overline{\text{RD}}$ instead of $\overline{\text{WR}}$, and (2) data flow from an input port to the accumulator rather than from the accumulator to an output port.

FIGURE 5.5
Z80 Timing for Execution of IN Instruction



5.4

ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLE 2: INTERFACING INPUT SWITCHES

In this section, we will analyze the circuit used for interfacing eight DIP switches as shown in Figure 5.6. The circuit includes the 74LS138 3-to-8 decoder to decode the low-order bus and the tri-state octal buffer (74LS244) to interface the switches to the data bus. The port can be accessed with the address 84_H ; however, it also has multiple addresses.

5.41 Hardware

Figure 5.6 shows the 74LS244 tri-state octal buffer used as an interfacing device. The device has two groups of four buffers each, and they are controlled by the active low signal \overline{OE} . When \overline{OE} is low, the input data appear on the output lines, and when \overline{OE} is high, the output lines assume high impedance state.

5.42 Interfacing Circuit

Figure 5.6 shows that the low-order address bus (with the exception of lines A_4 and A_3) is connected to the decoder 74LS138; the address lines A_4 and A_3 are left in “don’t care” state. The output line O_4 of the decoder goes low when the address bus has the following address (we assume the “don’t care” lines are at logic 0):

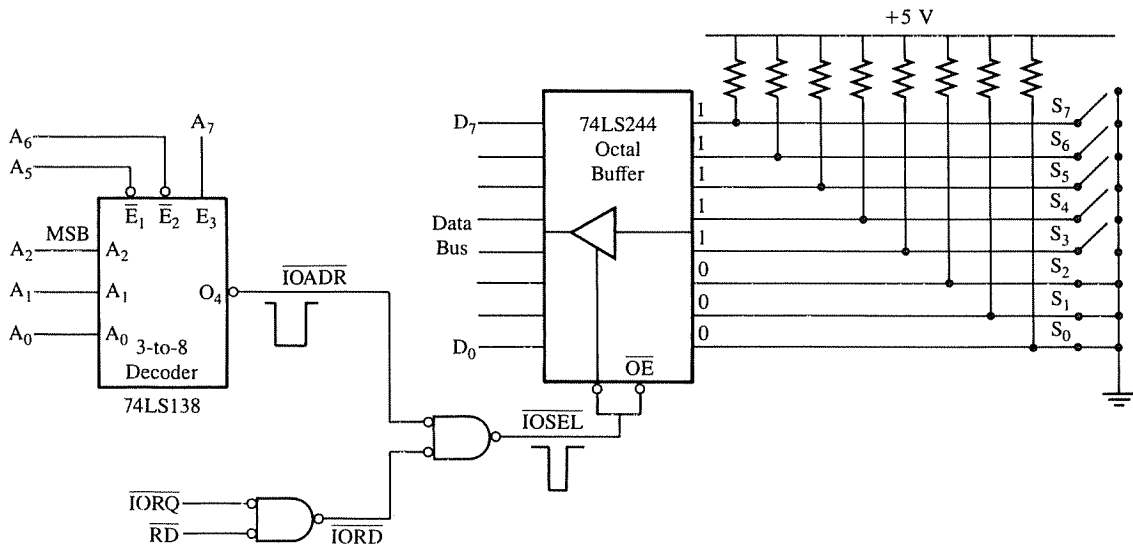
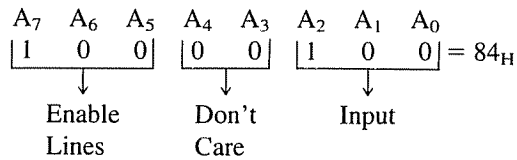


FIGURE 5.6
Schematic: Interfacing Input Switches



The control signal I/O Read ($\overline{\text{IORD}}$) is generated by ANDing the $\overline{\text{IORQ}}$ and $\overline{\text{RD}}$ in a negative NAND gate, and the I/O select pulse is generated by ANDing the output of the decoder with the control signal $\overline{\text{IORD}}$. When the address is 84_H and the control signals $\overline{\text{IORQ}}$ and $\overline{\text{RD}}$ are asserted, the I/O select pulse enables the tri-state buffer, and the logic levels of the switches are placed on the data bus. The Z80 then reads switch positions during T₃ (Figure 5.5) and places the data byte into the accumulator. When a switch is closed, it has logic 0, and when it is open, it is tied to +5 V, representing logic 1. Figure 5.6 shows that the switches S₇–S₃ are open and S₂–S₀ are closed; thus, the input reading will be F8_H.

5.43 Multiple Port Addresses

In Figure 5.6, the address lines A₄ and A₃ are not used by the decoding circuit; the logic levels on these lines can be either 0 or 1. Therefore, this input port can be accessed by four different addresses, as shown.

A ₇	A ₆	A ₅	A ₄	A ₃	A ₂	A ₁	A ₀	
1	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	= 84 _H
			0	1				= 8C _H
			1	0				= 94 _H
			1	1				= 9C _H

5.44 Instructions to Read Input Port

To read data from the input port shown in Figure 5.6, the instruction IN A, (84H) can be used. When this instruction is executed, the Z80 places the address 84_H on the low-order bus, asserts the control signals, and reads the switch positions.

MEMORY-MAPPED I/O

5.5

In memory-mapped I/O, the input and output devices are assigned and identified by 16-bit addresses. To transfer data between the microprocessor and I/O devices, memory-related instructions (such as LD A, (16-bit)) and memory control signals (such as MREQ) are used. The microprocessor communicates with an I/O device as if it were one of the memory locations.

5.51 Memory-Related Data Transfer Instructions

To understand the memory-mapped I/O technique, we need to examine how a data byte is transferred from the Z80 to a memory location or vice versa. For example, the following instruction will transfer (copy) the contents of the accumulator to the memory location 8000_H. It is assumed here that the instruction is stored in memory locations 2050_H, 51_H, and 52_H.

Memory Address	Machine Code	Mnemonics	Comments
2050	32	LD (8000H), A	;Store contents of accumulator in memory location 8000 _H
2051	00		
2052	80		

This is a 3-byte instruction; the first byte is the opcode, and the second and the third byte specify the memory address. However, the 16-bit address 8000_H is entered in the reverse order; the low-order byte 00 is stored in location 2051, followed by the high-order address 80_H (the reason for the reversed order will be explained in Section 5.7). In this example, if an output device instead of a memory register is connected at this address, the accumulator contents will be transferred to the output device. This is called the memory-mapped I/O technique.

Similarly, the instruction LD A, (4000H) will transfer the contents of the memory location 4000_H to the accumulator. To assign this address for a memory-mapped input port, we can interface an input device (for example, a keyboard) instead of memory by using the memory-related control signals ($\overline{\text{MREQ}}$ and $\overline{\text{RD}}$). When the processor executes the instruction, the accumulator receives data from the input device rather than from a memory register 4000_H.

5.52 Execution of Memory-Related Data Transfer Instructions

The execution of memory-related instructions discussed in the previous section is similar to the execution of I/O instructions (Sections 5.1 and 5.3), except that the memory-related instructions have 16-bit addresses.

Figure 5.7 shows the execution of the instruction LD (8000H), A. It has four machine cycles; in the first three machine cycles, the Z80 reads the three bytes. The fourth machine cycle M₄ (Memory Write) is similar to the machine cycle M₃ of the OUT instruction. In this machine cycle, the Z80 places the 16-bit address 8000_H on the address bus and the accumulator contents on the data bus. This is followed by the assertion of the control signals $\overline{\text{MREQ}}$ and $\overline{\text{WR}}$. The information available during M₄ can be used to interface a memory-mapped output port with the 16-bit address 8000_H.

In memory-mapped I/O, I/O selection and data transfer require steps similar to those required in peripheral-mapped I/O:

1. Decode the entire address bus A₁₅–A₀ (rather than just A₇–A₀).
2. Combine the control signals $\overline{\text{MREQ}}$, $\overline{\text{WR}}$, and the decoded pulse from Step 1 to gen-

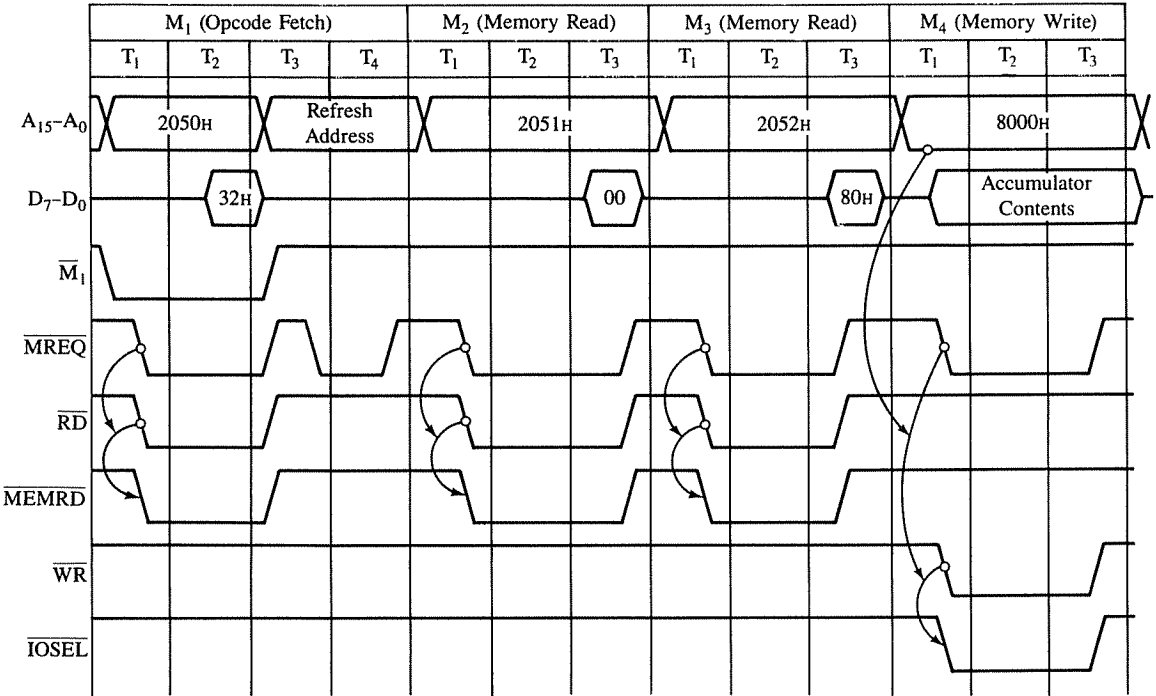


FIGURE 5.7
Z80 Timing for Execution of Instruction LD (8000H), A

erate a pulse similar to the \overline{MSEL} pulse, which will be used to select an I/O rather than memory.

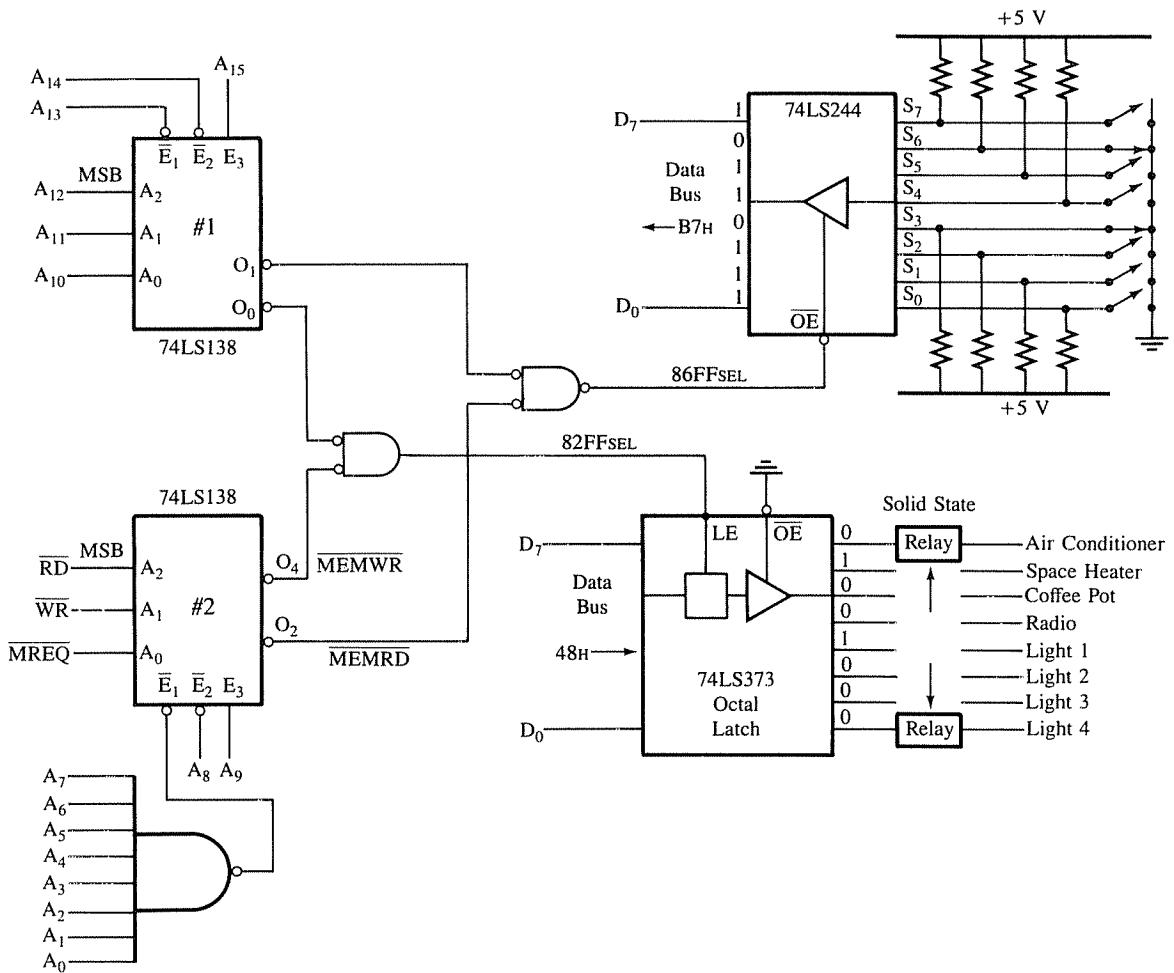
3. Use the I/O select pulse (actually \overline{MSEL}) to enable the I/O port.

To interface a memory-mapped input port, the steps are similar to those of the memory-mapped output port. We can use the instruction LD A, (16-bit), which reads data from an input port with the 16-bit address and places it in the accumulator. The instruction has four machine cycles; only the fourth machine cycle differs from M₄ in Figure 5.7. The control signal will be \overline{RD} rather than \overline{WR} , and data flow from the input port to the microprocessor.

ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLE 3: APPLIANCE CONTROL USING MEMORY-MAPPED I/O TECHNIQUE

5.6

Figure 5.8 shows a schematic of interfacing I/O devices using the memory-mapped I/O technique. The circuit includes one input port with eight DIP switches and one output port

**FIGURE 5.8**

Schematic: Interfacing I/O Devices with Memory-Mapped I/O

to control the appliances. The appliances are turned on and off by the microprocessor according to the corresponding switch positions. For example, the switch S_7 controls the air conditioner and the switch S_0 controls Light 4. All switch inputs are tied high; therefore, when a switch is open (off), it has +5 V, and when a switch is closed (on), it has logic 0. The circuit includes two 3-to-8 decoders and one 8-input NAND gate to decode the address bus and generate the control signals. The eight switches are interfaced using a tri-state buffer 74LS244, and the appliances are interfaced using an octal latch (74LS373) with tri-state output.

5.61 Control Signals

In a memory-mapped I/O circuit, the control signals required are $\overline{\text{MREQ}}$ (Memory Request) and Read ($\overline{\text{RD}}$) or Write ($\overline{\text{WR}}$). In this circuit (Figure 5.8), they are used as inputs to a 3-to-8 decoder (labelled #2) to generate additional control signals. The enable lines of the decoder are controlled by the address lines. Assuming the decoder is enabled by the appropriate address, we need to analyze the input and identify the output lines of the decoder that can be used as control signals.

To assert the Memory Write ($\overline{\text{MEMWR}}$) signal, the input should be $\overline{\text{MREQ}} = 0$, $\overline{\text{WR}} = 0$, and $\overline{\text{RD}} = 1$ ($\overline{\text{RD}}$ and $\overline{\text{WR}}$ cannot be active at the same time). With this input, the output line O_4 goes active and generates the $\overline{\text{MEMWR}}$ signal.

To assert the Memory Read ($\overline{\text{MEMRD}}$) signal, the input should be $\overline{\text{MREQ}} = 0$, $\overline{\text{WR}} = 1$, and $\overline{\text{RD}} = 0$. With this input to the decoder, the output O_2 goes active and generates the $\overline{\text{MEMRD}}$ signal.

5.62 Output Port and Its Address

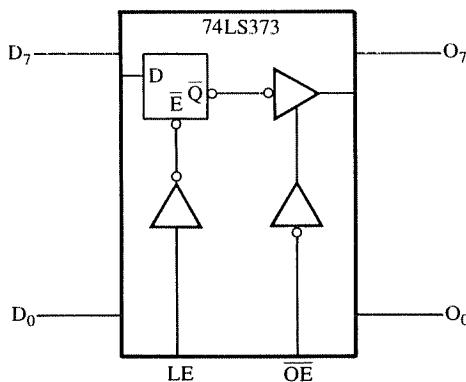
The appliances are connected to the data bus through the latch 74LS373 and solid state relays. If an output bit of the 74LS373 is high, it activates the corresponding relay and turns on the appliance, which remains on as long as the bit stays high. Therefore, to control the appliances, we need to supply the appropriate bit pattern to the latch.

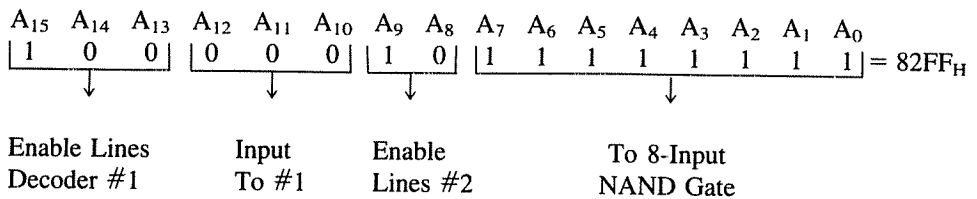
The 74LS373 is a latch followed by a tri-state buffer, as shown in Figure 5.9. The latch and the buffer are controlled independently by Latch Enable (LE) and Output Enable ($\overline{\text{OE}}$). When LE is high, the data enter the latch, and when LE goes low, data are latched. The latched data are available on the output lines of the 74LS373 if the buffer is enabled by $\overline{\text{OE}}$ (active low). If $\overline{\text{OE}}$ is high, the output lines go into high impedance state.

Figure 5.8 shows that the $\overline{\text{OE}}$ is connected to the ground; thus, the latched data will keep the relays on or off according to the bit pattern. The LE is connected to the device select pulse, which is asserted when the output O_0 of decoder #1 and the control signal $\overline{\text{MEMWR}}$ go low. Therefore, to assert the I/O select pulse, the output port address should be 82FF_H .

FIGURE 5.9

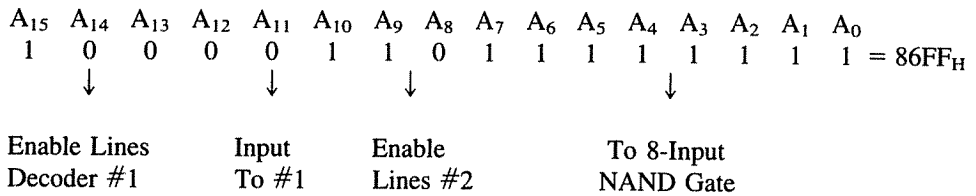
Logic Symbol: 74LS373 Octal Latch





5.63 Input Port and Its Address

The DIP switches are interfaced with the Z80 using the tri-state buffer 74LS244. The switches are tied high and are turned on by grounding as shown in Figure 5.8. The switch positions can be read by enabling the signal \overline{OE} , which is asserted when both the output O_1 of decoder #1 and the control signal \overline{MEMRD} go low. Therefore, to read the input port, the port address should be 86FF_H.



5.64 Instructions

To control the appliances according to switch positions, the microprocessor should read the bit pattern at the input port and send that bit pattern to the output port. The following instructions can accomplish this task.

READ: LD A, (86FFH)	;Read the switches
CPL	;Complement switch reading, convert "on" switch (logic 0) into logic 1 to turn on appliances
LD (82FF), A	;Send switch positions to output port and turn appliances on or off
JP READ	;Go back and read again

When this program is executed, the first instruction reads the bit pattern 1 0 1 1 0 1 1 1 (B7_H) at the input port 86FF_H and places that reading in the accumulator; this bit pattern represents the "on" position of switches S_6 and S_3 . The second instruction complements the reading; this instruction is necessary because the "on" position has logic 0, and logic 1 is necessary to turn on solid state relays. The third instruction sends the complemented accumulator contents (0 1 0 0 1 0 0 0 = 48_H) to the output port 82FF_H. The 74LS373 latches the data byte 0 1 0 0 1 0 0 0 and turns on the space heater and Light 1. The last instruction, JP READ, takes the program back to the beginning and repeats the loop continuously in order to monitor the switches.

ADDITIONAL ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLES: INTERFACING SENSORS AND MOTORS

5.7

In previous examples, we illustrated the interfacing of I/O devices that were primarily binary devices (on/off). We now extend the concepts to interface analog devices such as temperature sensors and motors. In interfacing analog devices, the basic procedure remains similar to that of interfacing binary devices; the MPU identifies the device through a binary port address and enables it with an appropriate control signal. However, we need to find a way to detect and to convert the analog signal into the binary format and vice versa. The analog signal is generally handled in two ways: one is to detect the signal when it reaches a predetermined level, and the other is to convert it into binary format proportional to its magnitude. The predetermined level of the analog signal can be detected by using a comparator circuit, and the binary equivalent can be obtained by using an **A/D (Analog-to-Digital) data converter**. In this section, we will focus on interfacing circuits that can detect the predetermined level of analog signals and defer the discussion of interfacing data converters to Chapter 13.

Figure 5.10 shows the interfacing of a temperature sensor. This circuit is designed to detect (through an input port) whether the temperature has risen to 100°C, and at that temperature it turns on the dc motor of a water pump. The dc motor is interfaced with the MPU through an output port.

5.71 Hardware: Temperature Sensor LM135 and Comparator LM311

Figure 5.10 shows the LM135 used as a temperature sensor, and its output is connected as one of the inputs to the comparator LM311. The LM135 is an integrated circuit, designed to sense changes in temperature; its output voltage changes 10 mV/°C. It is rated to operate over a temperature range from -55°C to +150°C, and the current range 400 μA to 5 mA. At 25°C, the output of the sensor is typically 2.98 V, and it increases 10 mV/°C; therefore, at 100°C, it can reach 3.73 V (2.98 V + 750 mV).

The LM311 is a voltage comparator that can be operated from a +5 V power supply. The comparator compares two voltages at its input terminals, and if the difference between the two voltages is less than or equal to -10 mV, its output remains at the saturation voltage of about 0.75 V; otherwise, the output is near the power supply voltage.

The output of the sensor is connected to the positive terminal of the comparator, and its negative terminal is set to 3.73 V. At temperatures lower than 100°C the output voltage of the sensor is less than 3.73 V; thus, the comparator output remains at 0.75 V (logic 0). When the temperature reaches 100°C, the output of the sensor is 3.73 V, and the comparator output goes to +4.5 V (logic 1). The output of the comparator is connected to the tri-state buffer 74LS244, which serves as an input port to the MPU.

5.72 Interfacing Circuit for the Sensor

Figure 5.10 shows that the 74LS138 (3-to-8) decoder is used for address decoding. This decoding circuit is identical to the circuit shown in Figure 5.6; thus, the outputs of the decoder are asserted for port addresses ranging from 80_H to 87_H ("don't care" lines are

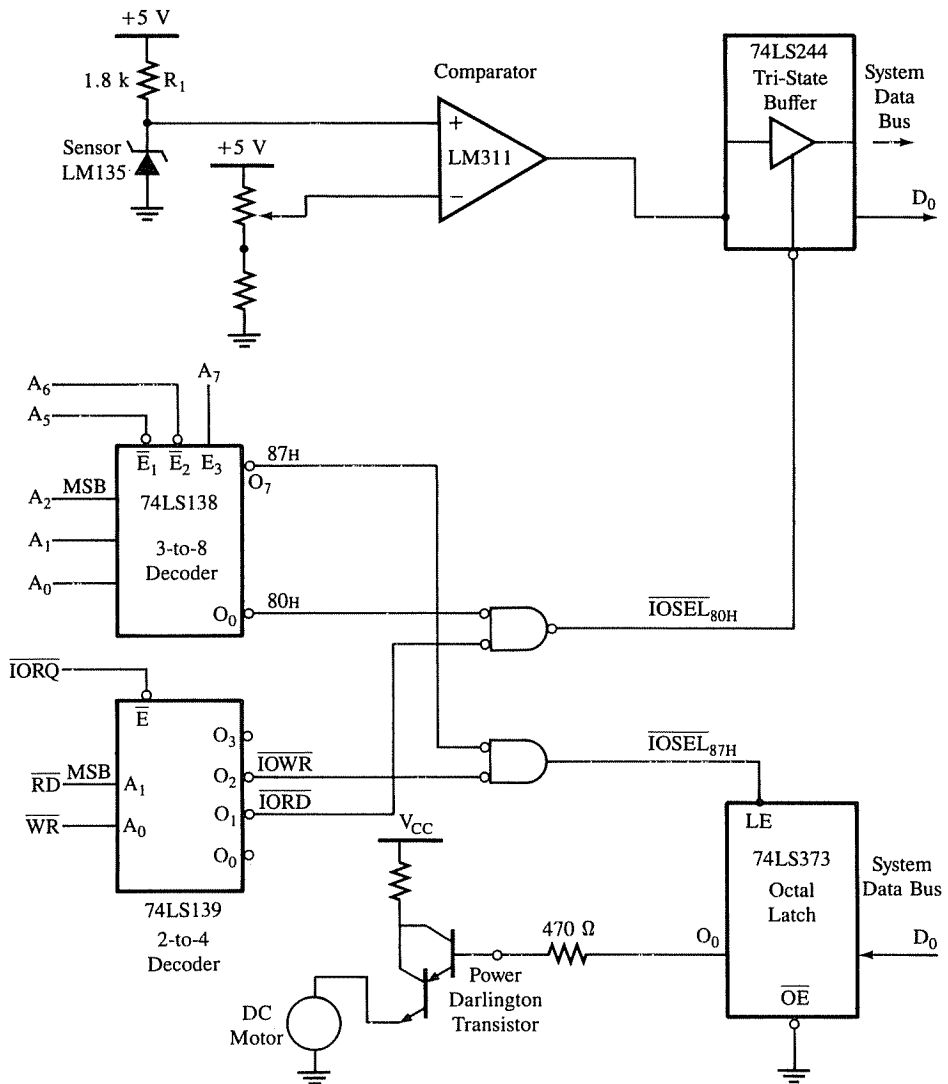


FIGURE 5.10
Interfacing Analog Signals

assumed to be at logic 0). The control signals $\overline{\text{IORD}}$ (I/O Read) and $\overline{\text{IOWR}}$ (I/O Write) are generated by using the 74LS139 (2-to-4) decoder; which is enabled by the $\overline{\text{IORQ}}$ signal. When the MPU intends to read, it asserts the $\overline{\text{IORQ}}$ and $\overline{\text{RD}}$ signals. The input of the 2-to-4 decoder becomes 01, and the output O_1 goes active low to assert the $\overline{\text{IORD}}$ (I/O Read) control signal. The $\overline{\text{IORD}}$ is logically ANDed with the decoded address 80_{H} to generate the

$\overline{\text{IOSEL}}_{80\text{H}}$ (I/O Select) signal, which enables the input buffer 74LS244 to read the output of the comparator. The output voltage of the comparator is connected to the data line D_0 through the buffer, and the MPU can monitor the temperature by monitoring the data line D_0 .

5.73 Interfacing Circuit for the DC Motor

The dc motor is interfaced with the MPU through the latch 74LS373; the output bit O_0 of the latch can drive the dc motor by turning on the transistor (Darlington pair). The logic level of bit O_0 of the latch is controlled by the data line D_0 . The port address of the latch (87_{H}) is determined by the 3-to-8 decoder; the output line O_7 of the decoder is ANDed with the control signal $\overline{\text{IOWR}}$ to generate the $\text{IOSEL}_{87\text{H}}$, which enables the latch 74LS373. When the temperature reaches 100°C , the MPU sends logic 1 to the latch (port 87_{H}) to turn on the motor, and when the temperature is less than 100°C , the motor is turned off by the logic 0.

5.74 Instructions

```
START: IN A, (80H)      ;Read the output of the comparator

        AND 00000001B  ;Save logic of  $D_0$  and eliminate  $D_1$  through  $D_7$ 

        OUT (87H), A    ;Turn on motor if  $D_0 = 1$  or turn off if  $D_0 = 0$ 

        JP START        ;Go back and read the output of the comparator
```

5.75 Program and Circuit Description

The first instruction IN A, (80H) enables the buffer 74LS244, reads the entire data bus D_7 – D_0 , and places the byte in the accumulator. However, we are interested in the logic level of only bit D_0 ; it has the output of the comparator. Therefore, the next instruction ANDs the contents of the accumulator with the byte 01_{H} in order to eliminate bits D_1 – D_6 and save the logic level of bit D_0 . When the temperature exceeds 100°C , the output of the comparator is about +5 V, and the MPU reads logic 1 on the data line D_0 . When the temperature is lower than 100°C , the comparator output is about 0.7 V, and the MPU reads logic 0 on the data line D_0 . The next instruction OUT turns on the transistor if $D_0 = 1$ or turns off the transistor if $D_0 = 0$. When the transistor is on, it supplies the necessary current for the motor to run, and when the transistor is off, the motor is turned off. The last instruction JP takes the program back to the beginning and continuously monitors the changes in the output of the comparator.

5.76 Additional Sensors and Output Devices

Figure 5.10 illustrates one example of interfacing a sensor and driving a dc motor. We can extend the same concepts to other sensing and output devices. In Figure 5.10, we used only one data line D_0 to monitor the output of the comparator. We can connect additional sensors such as light detectors, level detectors, and smoke detectors to the remaining data

lines, and instructions can monitor all the sensors in a sequence. Similarly, we can connect output devices such as speakers, alarms, and lights by using solid state relays to the remaining output lines of the latch.

5.8

TROUBLESHOOTING I/O INTERFACING CIRCUITS

In the last several sections, we discussed the interfacing of I/O devices and instructions to test them. In Illustrative Example 1 (Figure 5.4), the test program includes two instructions that load the byte 97_H into the accumulator and output the byte to port 07_H. If we execute these instructions and no change is observed at the output port, we must implement the troubleshooting technique similar to that which we used for troubleshooting memory interfacing circuits in the last chapter. After checking the wiring and the pin connections, we can write a diagnostic routine and execute it in a continuous loop to generate a constant and identifiable signal, and then check various points in relation to that signal.

DIAGNOSTIC ROUTINE AND MACHINE CYCLES

We can use the same instructions for the diagnostic routine that we used in Illustrative Example 1; however, to generate a continuous signal, we need to add a Jump instruction, as shown.

Instruction	Bytes	T-states	Machine Cycles		
			M ₁	M ₂	M ₃
START: LD A, 97H	2	7 (4, 3)	Opcode Fetch	Memory Read	
OUT (07H), A	3	11 (4, 3, 4)	Opcode Fetch	Memory Read	I/O Write
JP START	3	10 (4, 3, 3)	Opcode Fetch	Memory Read	Memory Read

This loop has 28 T-states and eight operations (machine cycles). To execute the loop once, the microprocessor asserts the \overline{RD} signal seven times (the Opcode Fetch is also a Read operation) and the \overline{WR} signal once. Assuming the system clock frequency is 2 MHz, the loop is executed in 14 μ s, and the \overline{WR} signal, repeated every 14 μ s, can be observed on a scope. If we sync the scope on the \overline{WR} pulse from the Z80, we can check the output of the 8-input NAND gate (\overline{IOADR}), \overline{IOWR} , and \overline{IOSEL} signals; \overline{WR} and \overline{IOSEL} signals of a working circuit are shown in Figure 5.11.

When the Z80 asserts the \overline{WR} signal, the port address 07H must be on the address bus A7–A0, and the output of the NAND gate must be low. Similarly, the \overline{IOWR} must be low and the \overline{IOSEL} must be high. Now if we check the data bus in relation to \overline{WR} signal, one line at a time, we must read the data byte 97H.

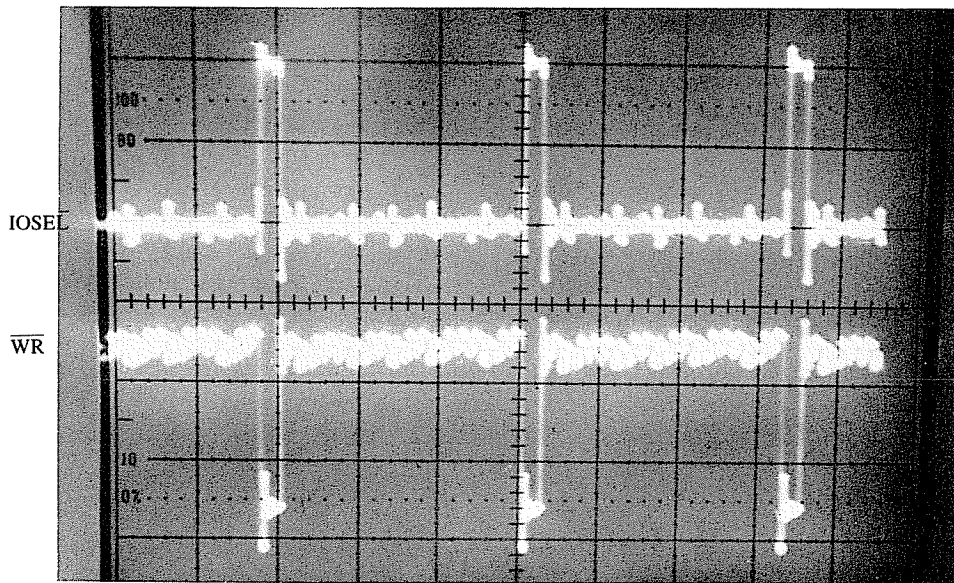


FIGURE 5.11
Timing Signals of Diagnostic Routine

SOME QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS

5.9

During the discussion of interfacing I/O devices, we focused on the basic concepts and avoided some details in order to simplify the presentation. We will now attempt to answer some of those questions.

1. *What are the other I/O instructions in the Z80 instruction set, and how do they differ from the I/O instructions discussed here?*

The Z80 instruction set includes six output instructions of which we discussed only one. The remaining five instructions perform various types of output functions: for example, output a byte from any of the registers or from a memory location, or output a block of memory. In these instructions, register C is used to specify the port address and register B can be used as a counter.

2. *What are the contents of the high-order bus (A_{15} – A_8) during the M_3 cycle of the IN/OUT instructions?*

The contents of the high-order bus during the M_3 cycle of the I/O instructions, illustrated in Sections 5.1 and 5.3, are generally irrelevant to the interfacing of I/O devices. For the I/O instructions discussed, the contents of the accumulator are placed on

the A_{15} – A_8 bus. However, in other I/O instructions where the contents of register C are used to specify a port address, the contents of register B are placed on the high-order bus.

3. Why is one Wait state automatically inserted when an I/O instruction is executed?

When an I/O instruction is being executed, the control signal \overline{IORQ} is asserted during T_2 of the M_3 cycle. This does not leave sufficient time for the Z80 to sample the WAIT line. Therefore, a slow-responding I/O device would not be able to decode its address and activate the WAIT line if necessary. Adding one Wait cycle allows the device to activate the WAIT signal for additional Wait states.

4. In a memory-mapped I/O, what is the reason for not automatically inserting a Wait state?

In the Memory Read/Write cycles, the \overline{MREQ} is asserted during T_1 ; therefore, there is sufficient time to sample the WAIT line during T_2 state.

5. In a memory-mapped I/O, how does the microprocessor differentiate between I/O and memory, and can an I/O device have the same address as a memory register?

In the memory-mapped I/O, the microprocessor cannot differentiate between an I/O device and memory; it treats an I/O device as if it is memory. Therefore, an I/O device and memory register cannot have the same address; the entire memory map (64K) of the system has to be shared between memory and I/O.

6. Why is a 16-bit address (data) stored in memory in the reversed order—the low-order byte first, followed by the high-order byte?

In the Z80 microprocessor, the instruction decoder and the associated microprogram are designed to recognize the second byte as the low-order byte in a 3-byte instruction.

SUMMARY

In this chapter, we have examined the machine cycles of the OUT and IN instructions and derived the basic concepts for interfacing peripheral-mapped I/Os. Similarly, we examined the machine cycles of memory-related data transfer instructions and derived the basic concepts for interfacing memory-mapped I/Os. These concepts were illustrated with three examples of interfacing I/O devices and one example of interfacing an analog signal. The interfacing concepts can be summarized as follows.

Peripheral-Mapped I/O

- The OUT is a 2-byte instruction and copies (transfers or sends) data from the accumulator to the addressed port.
- When the Z80 executes the OUT instruction, in the third machine cycle it places the

output port address on the low-order bus, places data on the data bus, and asserts the control signals $\overline{\text{IORQ}}$ and $\overline{\text{WR}}$.

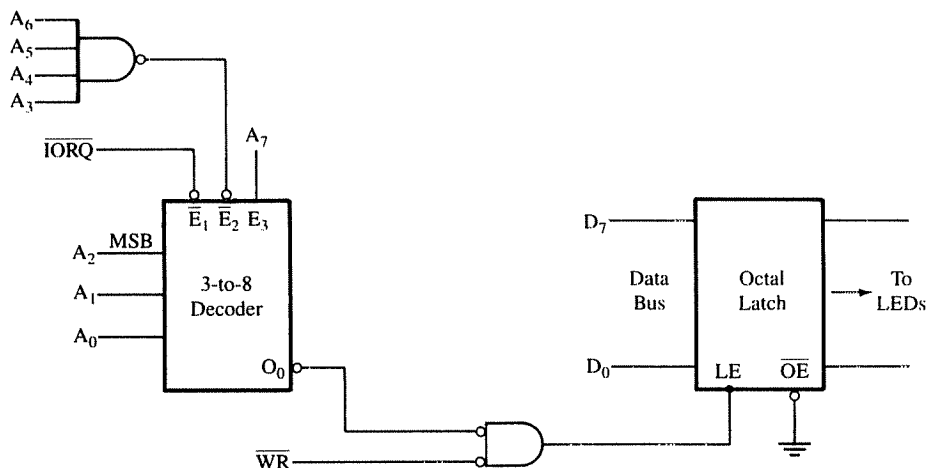
- A latch is generally used to interface output devices.
- The IN instruction is a two-byte instruction and copies (transfers or reads) data from an input port and places the data into the accumulator.
- When the Z80 executes the IN instruction, in the third machine cycle it places the input port address on the low-order bus, asserts the control signals $\overline{\text{IORQ}}$ and $\overline{\text{RD}}$, and transfers data from the port to the accumulator.
- A tri-state buffer is generally used to interface input devices.
- To interface an output or an input device, the low-order address bus needs to be decoded to generate the device address pulse, which must be combined with control signals $\overline{\text{IORQ}}$ and $\overline{\text{RD}}$ (or $\overline{\text{WR}}$) to select the device.

Memory-Mapped I/O

- Memory-related instructions are used to transfer data.
- To interface I/O devices, the entire bus must be decoded to generate the device address pulse, which must be combined with the control signals $\overline{\text{MREQ}}$ and $\overline{\text{WR}}$ or $\overline{\text{RD}}$ to generate the I/O select pulse. Data are transferred by using this pulse to enable the I/O device.

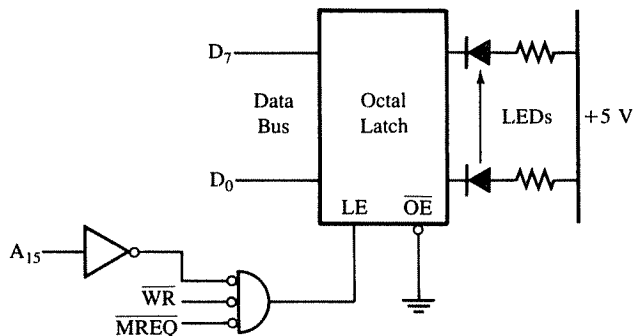
ASSIGNMENTS

1. Explain why the number of output ports in peripheral-mapped I/O is restricted to 256 ports?
2. In peripheral-mapped I/O, can an input port and an output port have the same port address?
3. If an output and input port can have the same 8-bit address, how does the Z80 differentiate between the ports?
4. Specify the two control signals required to latch data in an output port.
5. Specify the type of pulse required to latch data in the 7475.
6. Are data latched in the 7475 at the leading edge, during the level, or at the trailing edge of the enable (E) signal?
7. If the control signals $\overline{\text{WR}}$ and $\overline{\text{IORQ}}$ are asserted at the same time, can data be latched using only the control signal $\overline{\text{WR}}$?
8. If the answer to the previous question is yes, what are potential problems with the interfacing circuit?
9. In Figure 5.4, explain why the LED cathodes rather than anodes are connected to the latch.
10. Specify the control signals required to enable an input port.
11. Explain why a latch is used for an output port, but a tri-state buffer can be used for an input port.
12. What are the control signals necessary in memory-mapped I/O?
13. Can the microprocessor differentiate whether it is reading from a memory-mapped input port or from memory?

**FIGURE 5.12**

Schematic for Assignments 15–16

14. In Figure 5.10, connect the output of the comparator to data line D_7 and also drive the transistor with bit D_7 . Make the necessary changes in the instructions.
15. Identify the port address in Figure 5.12.
16. In Figure 5.12, if \overline{OE} is connected directly to the \overline{WR} signal and the output of the decoder is connected to the latch enable (through an inverter), can you display a byte at the output port? Explain your answer.
17. In Figure 5.13, determine whether it is the memory-mapped or the peripheral-mapped I/O.
18. In Figure 5.13, what is the port address if all the “don’t care” address lines are assumed to be at logic 0?

**FIGURE 5.13**

Schematic for Assignments 17–18

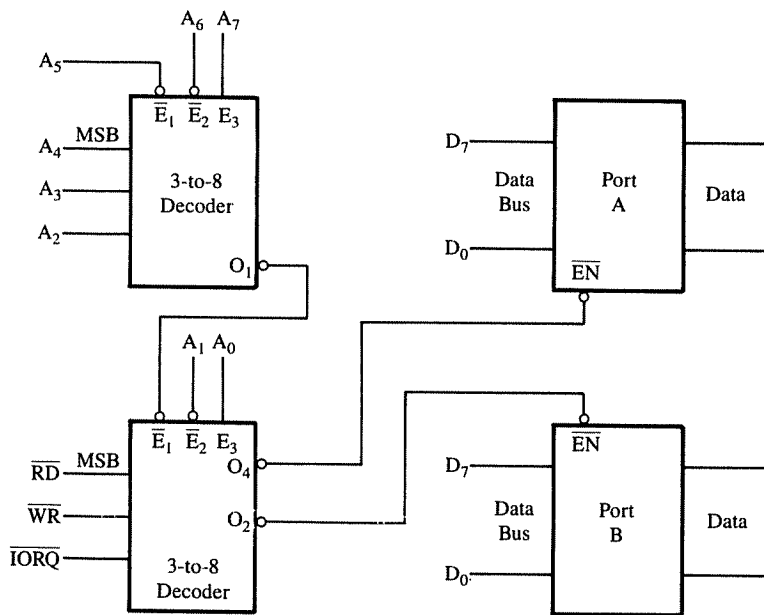


FIGURE 5.14
Schematic for Assignments 19–20

19. In Figure 5.14, are ports A and B input or output ports?
20. In Figure 5.14, what are the addresses of ports A and B?
21. In Figure 5.15, identify two output lines of decoder #2 that can be used as control signals and explain their functions. Explain why other output lines cannot be used as control signals.
22. In Figure 5.15, specify the I/O addresses.
23. In Figure 5.16, the decoder 74LS155 and an 8-input NAND gate are used to decode the address bus and generate the control signals. The decoder has two input lines A_1 and A_0 and four enable lines (pins 1, 2, 14, and 15). When pins 14 and 15 (active low) are enabled, the four output lines of the “b” group decode the input signal, and when pins 1 (active high) and 2 (active low) are enabled, the four output lines of “a” group decode the input signals. Identify the addresses that can assert the output lines of the decoder and specify their I/O functions.
24. Sketch the waveforms of the M_1 cycles in the diagnostic routine (Section 5.8).
25. Write a similar diagnostic routine to test the circuit in Figure 5.6.
26. Is there a \overline{WR} pulse in your diagnostic routine of 25? If the answer is no, what is the unique identifiable signal that can be used to sync the scope?

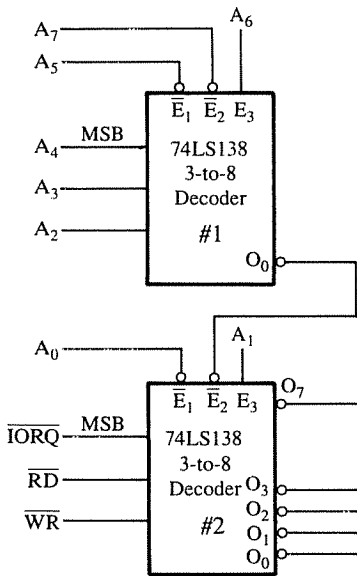


FIGURE 5.15
Schematic for Assignments 21–22

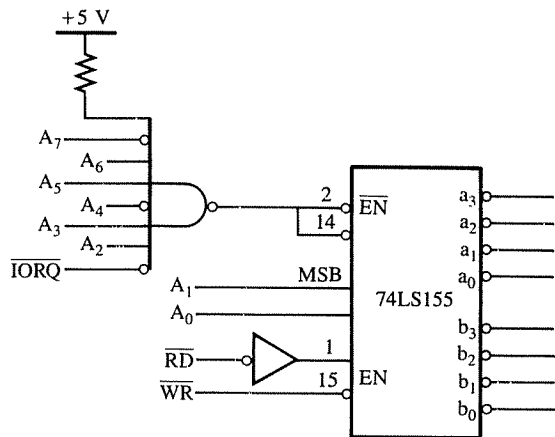


FIGURE 5.16
Schematic for Assignment 23

CHAPTER 6
Introduction to Z80 Assembly Language
Programming

CHAPTER 7
Software Development Systems and
Assemblers

CHAPTER 8
Introduction to Z80 Instructions and
Programming Techniques

CHAPTER 9
Logic and Bit Manipulation Instructions

CHAPTER 10
Stack and Subroutines

CHAPTER 11
Application Programs and Software Design

Part II of this book is an introduction to Z80 assembly language programming. It explains commonly used instructions, elementary programming techniques and their applications, and the modular approach to software design.

The content is presented in a format similar to one for learning a foreign language. One approach to learning a foreign language is to begin with a few words that can form simple, meaningful, and interactive sentences. After learning a few sentences, one begins writing paragraphs that can convey ideas in a coherent fashion; then, by sequencing a few paragraphs, one can compose a letter. Chapters 6 to 11 are arranged in similar fashion—from simple instructions to applications.

Chapter 6 provides an overview of the Z80 instruction set and its capability, and Chapter 7 presents software development systems and Z80 assemblers. Chapters 8 and 9 are concerned primarily with the Z80 instructions that occur most frequently. The instructions are not introduced according to the six groups as classified in Chapter 6; instead, a few instructions that can perform simple tasks are selected from each group. Chapter 8

II

Assembly Language Programming: The Z80

includes the discussion of instructions from three groups—data copy, arithmetic and branch—and their various applications. Chapter 9 introduces logic and bit manipulation instructions and their applications. Chapter 10 introduces the concepts of subroutine and stack, which provide flexibility and variety for program design. Chapter 11 synthesizes the programming concepts presented in earlier chapters by illustrating application programs and demonstrates the modular approach to software design.

PREREQUISITES

The reader is expected to know the following topics:

- The Z80 architecture, especially the programming registers.
- The concepts related to memory and I/Os.
- Logic operations, and binary and hexadecimal arithmetic.

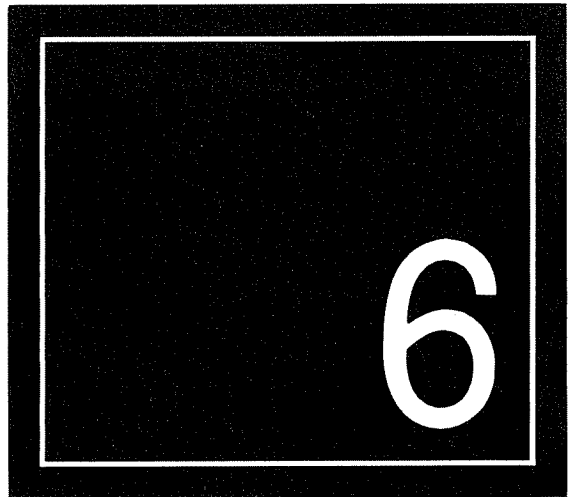
Introduction to Z80 Assembly Language Programming

An assembly language program is a set of instructions, written in the mnemonics of a given microprocessor, and in a sequence appropriate to a specified task. To write such programs, we should be familiar with the capabilities of the microprocessor and its instruction set. This chapter provides such an overview of the Z80 microprocessor.

The Z80 instruction set is classified into six categories, and each category is explained with examples. The chapter also discusses the instruction format and various addressing modes. Writing, assembling, and executing a program are illustrated by a simple problem of adding two Hex numbers. The **flowcharting** technique and symbols are discussed in the context of the illustrative program. The chapter concludes with a list of selected Z80 instructions.

OBJECTIVES

- Explain the terms operation code (opcode) and operand, and illustrate these terms by writing instructions.
- Classify the instructions in terms of their word size and specify the number of memory registers required to store the instructions in memory.
- List the six categories of the Z80 instruction set.
- Define and explain the term **addressing mode**.
- Write logical steps needed to solve a simple programming problem.
- Draw a **flowchart** from the logical steps of a given programming problem.
- Write mnemonics from the flowchart and convert the mnemonics into Hex code for a given programming problem.



6.1

OVERVIEW: Z80 INSTRUCTION SET

The instruction set of a microprocessor determines the capability of its operations, the power of its data manipulation, and the ease of programming it. For example, the Z80 instruction set includes an instruction that can copy contents from one block of memory locations to another. For most other 8-bit microprocessors, the programmer needs to write a program to perform the same function. Although it is necessary to have an overall view of the instruction set, our intent here is merely to acquaint you with the overall operations and capability of the Z80 microprocessor. As you progress through the chapters of Part II, you will be exposed to various instructions in more detail along with their applications.

The Z80 microprocessor has 158 instruction types; it includes all the instructions of the Intel 8080 microprocessor and all but two of the 8085. As discussed in Chapter 1, each instruction has two parts: one is the task to be performed (such as Load, Add, and Jump), called the operation code (opcode); and the second identifies the data to be operated on, called the operand. First, we will examine various formats of these instructions in terms of number of bytes and then their classification according to their function.

6.11 Instruction Format

An instruction is a command to the microprocessor to perform a given task on specified data. The size of Z80 instructions ranges from one to four bytes; thus, the number of memory registers (locations) required to write (or store) them varies. For example, to write a 3-byte instruction into memory requires three memory locations. Most opcodes (operation codes) are specified in one byte; however, some specialized opcodes require two bytes. The operand (or data) can be specified in the following ways: 8-bit data, 16-bit data, registers, register pairs, and memory addresses. The Z80 instruction set can be classified into four groups according to the length of an instruction: 1-byte to 4-byte instructions. Because the Z80 is an 8-bit microprocessor, the terms “byte” and “word” are used synonymously.

1-BYTE INSTRUCTIONS

In a 1-byte instruction, the opcode and the operand are included in the same byte as shown in the following examples.

Task	Opcode	Operand	Binary Code
Copy the contents of register B into the accumulator A.	LD	A, B	01 111 000 (78H)
Add the contents of register B to the contents of A.	ADD	A, B	10000 000 (80H)

These are 1-byte instructions performing two different tasks. In the first instruction, the opcode LD is specified by the first two bits (01) and the operand registers A and B are

specified by the remaining six bits. (The accumulator A is represented by 111 and register B by 000.) In the second instruction, the ADD is a 5-bit (10000) opcode, and the operand B is specified by the remaining three bits (000). These bits are associated with the internal microoperations of the microprocessor.

2-BYTE INSTRUCTIONS

In a 2-byte instruction, the first byte specifies the opcode and the second byte specifies the operand (with exceptions of some Z80 two-opcode instructions).

Task	Opcode	Operand	Binary Code	
Load register B with the hexadecimal number 32. (Opcode for LD B is 06H)	LD	B, 32H*	0000 0110 (06H)	Byte 1
			0011 0010 (32H)	Byte 2

3-BYTE INSTRUCTIONS

In a 3-byte instruction, the first byte specifies the opcode, and the following two bytes specify the 16-bit address or data in a reversed order: low-order byte followed by the high-order byte. For example:

Task	Opcode	Operand	Binary Code	
Copy data from memory address 2080 _H into the accumulator.	LD	A, (2080H)	0011 1010 (3AH)	Byte 1
			1000 0000 (80H)	Byte 2
			0010 0000 (20H)	Byte 3

4-BYTE INSTRUCTIONS

The descriptions given above for 2- and 3-byte instructions are valid for the instructions compatible with the 8080 instructions. The Z80 instruction set, however, includes numerous special-purpose instructions that are not compatible with the 8080 instruction set. An 8-bit microprocessor can have a maximum of 256 bit combinations; thus its instruction set is limited to 256 operation codes. The 8080 has already used 242 combinations for its 72 different instructions leaving only 14 combinations unused. However, the Z80 microprocessor needs many more combinations to use its additional registers (two index registers, alternate registers, interrupt vector, and refresh). This problem was resolved by designing 2-byte opcodes: unused opcodes combined with instruction opcodes. Z80 4-byte instructions are generally associated with index registers, as is the following example.

Task	Opcode	Operand	Binary Code	
Load index register IX with 16-bit address 2000 _H .	LD	IX, 2000H	1101 1101 (DDH)	Byte 1
			0010 0001 (21H)	Byte 2
			0000 0000 (00H)	Byte 3
			0010 0000 (20H)	Byte 4

Now we can discuss various instructions according to their functional classification.

*In an instruction, hexadecimal number is shown as the number followed by capital H, and in the text, the number is shown with the subscript _H.

6.12 Z80 Instruction Set

The Z80 instruction set can be divided into six major categories as follows:

1. Data Copy (Transfer) or Load Operations
2. Arithmetic Operations
3. Logic Operations
4. Bit Manipulation
5. Branch Operations
6. Machine Control Operations.

DATA COPY OR LOAD OPERATIONS

Copying data is one of the major functions the microprocessor needs to perform. The Z80 has numerous instructions that copy data from one location, called **source**, to another location, called **destination**, without modifying the contents of the source. In technical manuals, this function is quite often referred to as data transfer. However, since the term *data transfer* creates the impression that the contents of the source are destroyed, we prefer the term *data copy*. In this text, we have also used the terms Load, Read, and Write, all of which are data copy operations.

Figure 6.1 shows various categories of data copy operations. The Z80 has several instructions associated with each category, each of which, with its subdivisions, is listed below with examples of instructions.

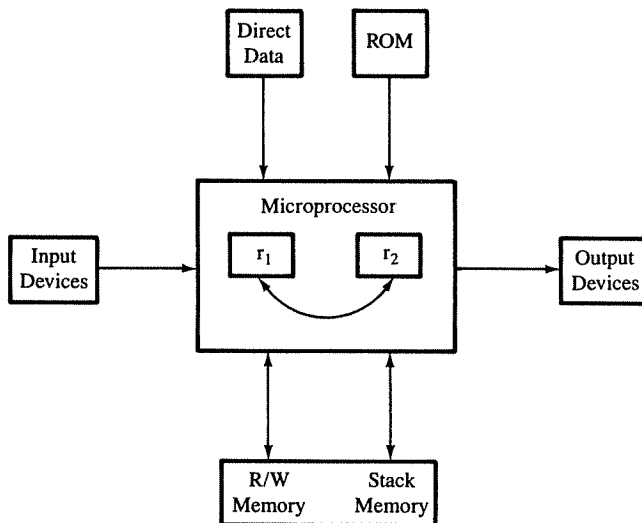


FIGURE 6.1
Types of Data Copy Operations

Data Copy Operations

1. From one register into another register.
2. (a) Specific data byte into a register or a memory location.

(b) Specific 16-bit data into a register pair.
3. From a memory location into a register or vice versa.
4. (a) From an input port into the accumulator.

(b) From the accumulator into an output port.
5. From microprocessor registers into stack memory locations and vice versa.
6. Exchange contents between registers. (This is a slightly different operation from data copy; this is a data exchange.)

Examples

Copy the contents of register B into the accumulator.

LD A, B; LD means Load

Load register B with the hexadecimal number 32.

LD B, 32H

Load register pair HL with hexadecimal number 2050.

LD HL, 2050H

Copy data from memory location 2080_H into the accumulator.

LD A, (2080H)

Read data from input port 01_H and copy into the accumulator.

IN A, (01H)

Write (send) the contents of the accumulator into port 07_H.

OUT (07H), A

Copy the contents of register pair BC into defined stack memory locations.

PUSH BC

Exchange the contents of general purpose registers (BC, DE, HL) with alternate registers.

EXX

General characteristics of these data copy instructions can be listed as follows:

1. In data copy operations, the contents of the source are copied into the destination without affecting the contents of the source (except in Exchange instructions).
2. In an operand, the destination is specified first, followed by the source. For example, in the instruction LD A, B the source is register B and the destination is the accumulator. This may appear backward because the flow is generally assumed to be from left to right.
3. The memory and I/O addresses are enclosed in parentheses.
4. In some instructions, operand is implicit (for example, EXX).
5. These instructions do not affect flags.

ARITHMETIC OPERATIONS

The Z80 instruction set includes four types of arithmetic operations: addition, subtraction, increment/decrement, and 1's and 2's complement. In 8-bit arithmetic operations, the

accumulator is generally assumed to be one of the operands (with the exception of increment/decrement instructions).

- **Addition.** Any 8-bit number, or the contents of a register, or the contents of a memory location can be added to the contents of the accumulator. The result of the addition is stored in the accumulator, and the flags are affected by the result. No two other 8-bit registers can be added directly; for example, the contents of register B cannot be added directly to the contents of register C.

Examples: Add the contents of register B to the contents of the accumulator. → ADD A, B
 Add the byte 97_H to the contents of the accumulator. → ADD A, 97H

- **Subtraction.** Any 8-bit number, or the contents of a register, or the contents of a memory location can be subtracted from the contents of the accumulator. The subtraction is performed in 2's complement, and the result is stored in the accumulator. The result modifies the flags, and if the result is negative, it is expressed in 2's complement. The following mnemonics indicate that the accumulator is implicitly assumed as one of the operands.

Examples: Subtract the contents of register C from the contents of the accumulator. → SUB C
 Subtract the byte 47_H from the contents of the accumulator. → SUB 47H

- **Increment/Decrement.** The 8-bit contents of a register (including the accumulator) or a memory location can be incremented or decremented by 1. Similarly, the 16-bit contents of a register pair (such as HL) can be incremented or decremented by 1. Unlike Add and Subtract, these operations can be performed in any of the registers. The instructions related to 8-bit contents affect flags (except Carry); on the other hand, instructions related to 16-bit contents do not affect any flags.

Examples: Increment the contents of register B. → INC B
 Decrement the contents of register pair BC. → DEC BC

- **1's and 2's Complement.** The contents of the accumulator can be complemented (1's or 2's complement), and the result is stored in the accumulator. Some flags are affected by the result. These instructions assume that the operand is the accumulator.

Examples: Complement the contents of the accumulator → CPL
 (this is equivalent to 1's complement).
 Subtract the contents of the accumulator from zero → NEG
 (this is equivalent to 2's complement).

LOGIC OPERATIONS

The instructions related to logic operations can be divided into three groups: logic functions (AND, OR, etc), bit rotations or shifts, and comparisons (less than, greater than, and equal to) of data bytes.

- **Logic Functions.** Any 8-bit number, the contents of a register, or the contents of a memory location can be ANDed, ORed, or Exclusive ORed with the contents of the accumulator. The result is stored in the accumulator, and the flags are affected by the result.

Examples: Logically AND the contents of register B with the → AND B
contents of the accumulator.

Exclusive OR the contents of register B with the → XOR B
contents of the accumulator.

- **Shift and Rotate.** Each bit in the accumulator, in the registers, or in memory can be shifted either left or right by one position.

Examples: Rotate the contents of the accumulator → RRA
right through Carry flag.

Rotate left the contents of register B. → RLC B

- **Compare.** Any 8-bit number, the contents of a register, or memory can be compared for equality, greater than, or less than with the contents of the accumulator. The result of the comparison is indicated by appropriate flags.

Examples: Compare the contents of register B with the → CP B
contents of the accumulator.

Compare the data byte 97_H with the contents → CP 97H
of the accumulator.

BIT MANIPULATION

The bit manipulation instructions can be classified into two groups: bit test and bit set/reset.

- **Bit Test**—Any one of the eight bits in a register, accumulator, or memory can be verified as 0 or 1, and the Z flag will be modified accordingly.

Example: Check bit D₇ in register B. → BIT 7, B

- **Bit Set/Reset**—Any one of the eight bits in a register, accumulator, or memory can be set or reset.

Examples: Set bit D₅ in the accumulator. → SET 5, A

Reset bit D₂ in register B. → RES 2, B

BRANCHING OPERATIONS

This group of instructions alters the sequence of program execution either conditionally or unconditionally.

- **Jump.** The sequence of program execution can be altered either conditionally or unconditionally. When a conditional Jump instruction is used, the microprocessor checks the specified flag, and if the condition is true, the execution sequence is altered; otherwise, the next instruction is executed. The destination location to which the program should be directed can be specified directly or relative to the contents of the program counter. These instructions are critical to the decision making process in programming.

Examples: After an operation (such as an addition), → JP C, 2050H
 if CY flag is set, jump to location 2050_H.
 If Zero flag is not set, jump forward → JR NZ, 0FH
 by 15 locations.

- **Call/Return.** These instructions change the sequence of a program by calling a subroutine or returning from a subroutine. The conditional Call and Return instructions check for appropriate flags.

Examples: Go to subroutine located at 2050_H. → CALL 2050H
 Go to Subroutine located at 2070_H → CALL Z, 2070H
 if Z flag is set.

- **Restart.** These instructions are used to change the program sequence to one of eight restart locations on memory page 00. The instructions are generally used with interrupts.

Example: Call location 0028_H. → RST 28H

MACHINE CONTROL OPERATIONS

These instructions control microprocessor operations such as Halt and Interrupt.

Examples: Suspend execution of instruction. → HALT
 Disable interrupts by resetting the → DI
 Interrupt Enable flip-flops.

6.13 Review of Important Concepts

Our intent here is to give you an overall view of the instruction set and the capability of the Z80 microprocessor. The Z80 has 158 instructions with 694 opcodes. These numbers can be overwhelming and intimidating to a beginner. Fortunately, as you begin to use instructions, a logical pattern will begin to emerge. At this point, the important concepts to remember are as follows:

1. Each instruction has two parts: opcode and operand. The opcode specifies the task, and the operand specifies either data or where data are located.

2. Instructions can be classified into four groups according to their word length: one to four bytes.
3. In an instruction, when the data source and the destination are explicitly specified, the destination is shown first and the source second.
4. When an operand is a 16-bit address (or data), it is stored in memory in a reversed order: the low-order byte first, followed by the high-order byte.
5. Instructions are stored in memory in binary format; the microprocessor neither reads nor understands mnemonics or hexadecimal numbers.
6. The number of memory locations required to store an instruction is determined by the word length. For example, a 3-byte instruction would require three memory locations.

ADDRESSING MODES

6.2

The addressing mode is a way of specifying an operand or pointing to a data location. The Z80 microprocessor has ten addressing modes, as shown in Table 6.1. The first three are explained here as illustrations, and the others will be explained in later chapters.

In Section 6.12, we listed various categories of data copy operations. Data can be loaded directly into registers (or memory) or can be copied from registers and memory, including I/O ports. Here are the addressing modes of these data copy operations.

Addressing Modes	Examples
1. Immediate	In this mode, the byte following the opcode is the operand. Example: LD A, 32H → Load 32 _H into the accumulator <div style="margin-left: 100px;"> 3E Opcode 32 Operand </div>
2. Immediate Extended	In this mode, two bytes following the opcode constitute the operand; the second byte is low-order and the third byte is high-order. Example: LD HL, 2050H → Load 2050 _H into the HL pair. <div style="margin-left: 100px;"> 21 Opcode 50 Operand: Low-order 20 Operand: High-order </div>
3. Register	In this mode, a data byte is copied from one register to another register, and both registers are specified in the instruction. Example: LD A, B → Copy the contents of register B into A.

At this point, you are not familiar with the instructions set; therefore, you should avoid the details of the addressing modes given in Table 6.1. As we begin to use various

TABLE 6.1

Z80 Addressing Modes	Explanation	Example
1. Immediate :	The byte following the opcode is the operand. This mode is used to load 8-bit data into a register. Load 97 _H into register B	LD B, 97H
2. Immediate : Extended	The two bytes following the opcode are the operands. This mode is used to load 16-bit data or address into a register pair. Load 8045 _H into register pair BC	LD BC, 8045H
3. Register :	The operand register is included as a part of the opcode. This mode is used to copy data from one Z80 register into another register. Copy data from register A into B	LD B, A
4. Implied :	This refers to operations in which the opcode implies one or more Z80 registers as containing the operands. For example, instructions for logic operations imply that the accumulator is one of the operands and that the result is stored in the accumulator. Logically AND register B with A	AND B
5. Register : Indirect	This mode is used to copy data between the MPU and memory; the 16-bit contents in a register pair are used as a memory pointer. Copy the contents of memory location 2060 _H into register B. Register HL contains the address 2060 _H .	LD, B, (HL)
6. Extended :	The two bytes following the opcode specify the jump location. Jump to location 2080 _H .	JP 2080H.
7. Relative :	In this mode, the second byte specifies the displacement value in a signed 2's complement for a jump location. Jump forward 20 locations from the address of the next instruction.	JR 14H
8. Indexed :	In this mode, the byte following the opcode specifies a displacement value that is added to one of the index registers to form a memory pointer. The index register IX contains 2060 _H ; increment the contents of memory location 2070 _H .	INC (IX + 10H)
9. Bit :	This mode is used for bit operation (manipulation). In this mode, instruction specifies a bit from a register or a memory location using one of the three addressing modes (register, register indirect, or indexed). Set bit D ₇ in register B.	SET 7, B
10. Page Zero :	The instruction set includes eight restart (one-byte call) instructions on memory page zero. In this mode, the memory location can be specified by using the low-order byte, and the high-order byte is assumed to be 00 _H . Call restart memory location 0028 _H .	RST 28H

instructions in following chapters, we will discuss the appropriate addressing modes. As you become more familiar with the instruction set, you will be able to choose an appropriate addressing mode for a given task.

HOW TO WRITE, ASSEMBLE AND EXECUTE A SIMPLE ASSEMBLY LANGUAGE PROGRAM

6.3

An assembly language program is a sequence of instructions written in mnemonics to perform a specific task. These instructions are selected from the instruction set of the microprocessor being used. To write a program, we need to divide a given problem into small steps and translate these steps into the operations the Z80 can perform. For example, the Z80 does not have an instruction that can multiply two binary numbers, but it can add. Therefore, the multiplication problem can be written as a series of additions.

After writing the instructions in mnemonics, you should translate them into binary machine code; this process of translation is called **assembling the code**. Quite often, this process involves intermediate steps, such as translating mnemonics into Hex code and then into binary code. The code assembly can be done manually, as described in this chapter, or using an assembler (a program that translates mnemonics into machine code), as described in the next chapter.

To execute a program, the binary code should be entered and stored in the R/W memory of a microcomputer so that the microprocessor can read and execute the binary instructions written in memory. In a single-board microcomputer the instructions are, generally, entered using a Hex keyboard. This is one of the reasons why we translate mnemonics into Hex code as an intermediate step rather than into binary code directly. When the Hex code is entered, the keyboard program, residing in the microcomputer system, translates the Hex code into binary code. The steps required to write, assemble, and execute a program are illustrated in the next section.

6.31 Illustrative Program: Adding Two Hexadecimal Numbers

PROBLEM STATEMENT

Write instructions to load the two hexadecimal numbers 32_H and $A2_H$ into registers B and C respectively. Add the numbers, and display the sum at the LED output port PORT1.

PROBLEM ANALYSIS

Even though this is a simple problem, it is necessary to divide the problem into small steps in order to examine the process of writing programs. The wording of the problem provides sufficient clues for the necessary steps. They are as follows:

1. Load the numbers into the registers.
2. Add the numbers.
3. Display the sum at the output port PORT1.

FLOWCHART

The steps listed in the problem analysis and the sequence can be represented in a block diagram, called a flowchart. Figure 6.2 shows such a flowchart representing those steps. This is a simple flowchart, and the steps are self-explanatory. We will discuss flowcharting in the next section.

ASSEMBLY LANGUAGE PROGRAM

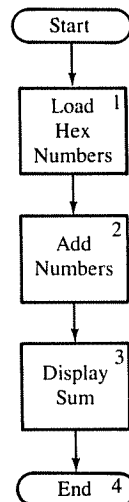
To write an assembly language program, we need to translate the blocks shown in the flowchart into Z80 operations and then into mnemonics. By examining the blocks, we can classify them into three types of Z80 operations: Blocks 1 and 3 are copy operations; Block 2 is an arithmetic operation; and Block 4 is a machine control operation. The translation of each block into mnemonics with comments is shown below.

Block 1:	LD B, 32H	;Load register B with 32H.
	LD C, A2H	;Load register C with A2H.
	LD A, C	;Copy contents of C into accumulator to perform addition. B and C cannot be added directly.
Block 2:	ADD A, B	;Add two bytes and save the sum in A.
Block 3:	OUT (01H), A	;Display accumulator contents at port 01H.
Block 4:	HALT	;End

FROM ASSEMBLY LANGUAGE TO HEX CODE

To convert the mnemonics into Hex code, we need to look up the code in the Z80 instruction set; this is called either manual or hand assembly. The Hex code is as follows:

FIGURE 6.2
Flowchart for Adding Two Numbers



Mnemonics	Hex Code	
LD B, 32H	06 32	2-byte instruction
LD C, A2H	0E A2	2-byte instruction
LD A, C	79	1-byte instruction
ADD A, B	80	1-byte instruction
OUT (01H), A	D3 01	2-byte instruction
HALT	76	1-byte instruction

STORING IN MEMORY AND CONVERTING FROM HEX CODE TO BINARY CODE

To *store* the program in R/W memory of a single-board microcomputer and display the output, we need to know the memory map and the output port address. Let us assume that R/W memory ranges from 2000_H to 20FF_H, and the system has an LED output port with the address 01_H. To enter the program, the following steps are necessary:

1. Reset the system by pushing the RESET key.
2. Using Hex keys, enter the first memory address at which the program should be stored. Let us assume it is 2000_H.
3. Enter each machine code by pushing Hex keys. For example, to enter the first machine code push 0, 6, and STORE keys. (The STORE key may be labelled differently in different systems.) When you push the STORE key, the program will store the machine code in memory location 2000_H and upgrade the memory address to 2001_H.
4. Repeat Step 3 until the last machine code 76_H.
5. Reset the system.

Now the question is: How does the Hex code get converted into binary code? The answer lies with the Monitor program stored in the Read-Only Memory (or EPROM) of the microcomputer system. An important function of the Monitor program is to check the keys and convert Hex code into binary code. The entire process of manual assembly is shown in Figure 6.3.

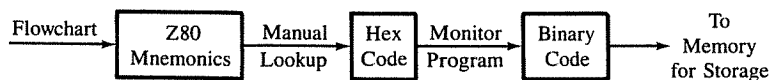


FIGURE 6.3
Assembling the Code

In this illustrative example, the program will be stored in memory as shown:

Mnemonics	Hex Code	Memory Contents	Memory Address
LD B, 32H	06	0 0 0 0 0 1 1 0	2000
	32	0 0 1 1 0 0 1 0	2001
LD C, A2H	0E	0 0 0 0 1 1 1 0	2002
	A2	1 0 1 0 0 0 1 0	2003
LD A, C	79	0 1 1 1 1 0 0 1	2004
ADD A, B	80	1 0 0 0 0 0 0 0	2005
OUT (01H), A	D3	1 1 0 1 0 0 1 1	2006
	01	0 0 0 0 0 0 0 1	2007
HALT	76	0 1 1 1 0 1 1 0	2008

This program has nine machine codes and will require nine memory locations to store the program. The critical concept to be emphasized here is that the microprocessor can understand and execute only the binary instructions (or data); everything else (mnemonics, Hex code, comments) are for the convenience of those who write and use the assembly language programs.

EXECUTING THE PROGRAM

To execute the program, we need to tell the microprocessor where the program begins by entering the memory address 2000_H. Then, we can push the Execute key (or the key with a similar label) to begin the execution. As soon as the Execute function key is pushed, Z80 loads 2000_H into the program counter, and the program control is transferred from the Monitor program to our program.

The microprocessor begins to read one machine code at a time, and when it fetches the complete instruction, it executes that instruction. For example, it will fetch the machine codes stored in memory locations 2000_H and 2001_H and execute the instruction LD B, 32H; thus it will load 32_H into register B. It continues to execute instructions until it fetches the HALT instruction.

6.32 Program Documentation Or Writing Format

Program documentation is an important aspect of writing programs. The documentation should be able to communicate what the program does and the logic underlying the program, so that it can be debugged and modified if necessary. For our illustrative program, a writing format based on assembler files (discussed in the next chapter) is shown here.

Memory Address	Hex Code	Label	Instruction (Opcode) (Operand)		Comments
2000	06	START:	LD	B, 32H	; Load first byte
2001	32				
2002	0E		LD	C, A2H	; Load second byte to be added
2003	A2				
2004	79		LD	A, C	; Copy one of the bytes into A
2005	80		ADD	A, B	; Add two bytes
2006	D3		OUT	(01H), A	; Display the result
2007	01				
2008	76		HALT		; End

This writing format has five columns: Memory Address, Hex Code, Label, Instruction (Opcode and Operand), and Comments. Each column is described below in the context of a single-board computer.

Memory Addresses These are 16-bit addresses of the system's R/W memory in which the binary code of the user program is stored. In the illustration, we assumed that the R/W memory in our system begins at the address 2000_H, and we chose to store the program starting at the location 2000_H; we could have chosen any other available memory block to store our program.

Hex Codes These are the hexadecimal codes of the Z80 mnemonics we looked up in the instruction set; they were entered in memory using the Hex keyboard of the single-board microcomputer system. The key monitor program of the system translates these Hex codes and stores the binary equivalents in the proper memory locations.

Labels They are used to identify a memory location. The program has one label: START. This label is used for documentation; it indicates the beginning of the program. The labels are used to identify memory locations and will be especially useful for Jump instructions when we use assemblers to write programs (discussed in the next chapter).

Instructions These are the Z80 mnemonics representing the microprocessor operations. Each instruction is divided into two parts: opcode and operand.

Comments The comments are written as a part of the proper documentation of a program to explain or elaborate the purpose of the instruction used. They thus play a critical role in the user's understanding of the logic behind a program. Because the illustrative program is very simple, the comments shown are either redundant or trivial, but in general comments should not merely describe the meaning of mnemonics.

FLOWCHARTING

6.4

A flowchart is a graphic representation of the logic and sequence of tasks to be performed. A flowchart should assist in clarifying one's thinking process and communicate the programmer's approach and logic in writing the program.




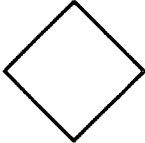

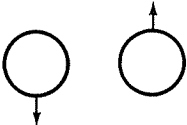
Symbol	Meaning
	Oval: Indicates the beginning or end of a program.
	Arrow: Indicates the direction of the program execution.
	Rectangle: Represents a process or an operation.
	Diamond: Represents a decision-making block.
	Double-sided Rectangle: Represents a predefined process such as a subroutine.
	Circle with an Arrow: Represents continuation (an entry or exit) to a different page.

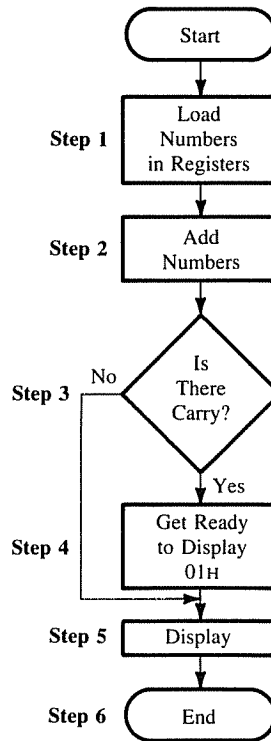
FIGURE 6.4
Flowcharting Symbols

Flowcharting is an art; how much detail it should include requires a subjective decision. At one level, the flowchart includes only the functions to be performed without any reference to a particular microprocessor; at another level the functions of registers being used are specified in detail. However, it should not duplicate the instructions in the program in a graphic format; this would defeat the whole purpose of drawing the flowchart. It should simply represent a logical approach and sequence of steps in solving the problem.

The six symbols commonly used in flowcharting are shown in Figure 6.4. We have already used three symbols in Figure 6.2. The fourth symbol, shown by the diamond shape, represents the decision-making block. It is used when data conditions need to be checked and the program sequence has to be altered. This symbol is illustrated in Figure

FIGURE 6.5

Flowchart: Adding Two Hex Numbers and Checking Carry



6.5. The fifth symbol, a double-sided rectangle, represents a predetermined process such as a subroutine (discussed in Chapter 10). The last symbol, a circle with an arrow, is used to show continuation of the flowchart to a different column or to a different page.

Draw a flowchart to represent the following problem. Load two Hex bytes into Z80 registers and add the bytes. If the sum is larger than 8 bits, display 01_H as the overload condition at port PORT7; otherwise, display the sum at the output port.

Example
6.1

The problem can be divided into the following steps.

Solution

1. Load bytes into Z80 registers.
2. Add the bytes.
3. Check the sum.
4. If the sum > FF_H, display 01_H at the output port.
5. If the sum < FF_H, display the sum at the output port.

The steps listed in Example 6.1 and the sequence can be represented by the flowchart shown in Figure 6.5. The first two blocks can be easily understood. The third block, shown by the diamond shape, is a decision-making block. In this block the result is checked by examining the CY flag, and the program execution is altered accordingly. If the CY flag is set, the result is larger than FF_H and the program execution goes to the next block. It loads 01_H and displays it at the output port. If the answer to the question in the decision block is “No,” the sum is less than FF . The program sequence is then altered; it bypasses Block 4 and displays the sum at the output port.

An interesting question is: Can we interchange the answers “Yes” and “No” at the decision-making block? That is, can the program sequence be changed if CY is set? This is given as a problem at the end of the chapter; you may find that the resulting flowchart will have two end points.

6.5

LIST OF SELECTED Z80 INSTRUCTIONS

The Z80 instruction set includes 158 instructions resulting in 694 machine codes. The following list is a representative sample of each group described in Section 6.1. The purpose of the list is to show you the overall capability of the Z80 and some logical patterns in its instruction. You should not study these instructions in detail; instead, you should search for logical patterns. Once you recognize logical patterns, you will be able to recognize the function of an instruction even if you have not seen it before.

Most instructions are compatible with the 8080 instruction set, with a few exceptions. Notations used in the description of the instructions include

r = Z80 8-bit Register	rp = Register Pair
r_s = Register Source	rx = Index Registers
r_d = Register Destination	d = Displacement Byte
m = Memory	b = Bit
$()$ = contents of 16-bit Memory Address or 8-bit I/O Address	

1. Data Copy (Load) Instructions

Mnemonics	Bytes	Tasks
<i>Data (8 bits and 16 bits) copy or load in registers</i>		
LD r_d, r_s	1	Copy data from source register r_s into destination register r_d .
LD $r, 8\text{-bit}$	2	Load 8-bit into a register.
LD $rp, 16\text{-bit}$	3	Load 16-bit into register pair.
LD $rx, 16\text{-bit}$	4	Load 16-bit data into index register.

Data copy between registers and memory

LD A, (16-bit)	3	Load accumulator from memory; the address is specified by 16-bit operand.
LD (16-bit), A	3	Load memory from accumulator; the memory address is specified by 16-bit operand.
LD A, (rp)	1	Load accumulator from memory; the memory address is specified by contents of register pair.
LD (rp), A	1	Load memory from accumulator; the memory address is given by the contents of register pair.
LD r, (HL)	1	Load register from memory; the address is specified by 16-bit contents in HL.
LD (HL), r	1	Load memory from register; the address is specified by 16-bit contents in HL.
LD r, (rx + d)	3	Copy memory contents into register r; the memory address is obtained by adding the contents of index register and the displacement byte d.
LD (rx + d), r	3	Copy register contents into memory address shown by index register and the displacement (rx + d)

2. Arithmetic Instructions*

ADD A, r	1	Add register contents to accumulator.
ADD A, 8-bit	2	Add 8-bit data to accumulator.
ADD A, (HL)	1	Add memory contents to accumulator; the memory address is specified by the contents in HL.
SUB r	1	Subtract contents of register from accumulator.
SUB 8-bit	2	Subtract 8-bit data from accumulator.
SUB (HL)	1	Subtract memory contents from accumulator; the memory address is specified by the contents of HL.
INC r	1	Increment the contents of a register.
INC (HL)	1	Increment the contents of memory; the memory address is specified by the contents of HL.
INC rp	1	Increment 16-bit contents in a register pair.
DEC r	1	Decrement the contents of a register.
DEC (HL)	1	Decrement the contents of memory; the memory address is specified by the contents of HL.
DEC rp	1	Decrement 16-bit contents in a register pair.

*Instructions used for 16-bit addition and subtraction are not shown here.

3. Logic Instructions*

AND r	1	Logically AND the contents of a register with the accumulator.
AND 8-bit	2	Logically AND 8-bit data with accumulator.
AND (HL)	1	Logically AND the contents of memory with accumulator; the memory address is specified by the contents of HL.
CP r	1	Compare the contents of register with accumulator for less than, equal to, or greater than.
CP 8-bit	1	Compare 8-bit data with accumulator for less than, equal to, or greater than.
CP (HL)	1	Compare the contents of memory with accumulator for less than, equal to, or greater than. The memory address is specified by the contents of HL.

4. Bit Rotation

RLCA	1	Rotate each bit in the accumulator to the left position.
RLA	1	Rotate each bit in the accumulator including the carry C to the left position.
RRCA	1	Rotate each bit in the accumulator to the right position.
RRA	1	Rotate each bit in the accumulator including the carry C to the right position.

5. Branch Instructions†

JP 16-bit	3	Change the program sequence (Jump) to memory location specified by the 16-bit address.
JP Z, 16-bit	3	Change the program sequence (Jump) to memory location specified by the 16-bit address if the Zero (Z) flag is set.
JP NZ, 16-bit	3	Change the program sequence (Jump) to memory location specified by the 16-bit address if the Zero (Z) flag is reset.
JP C, 16-bit	3	Change the program sequence (Jump) to memory location specified by the 16-bit address if the Carry (C) flag is set.
JP NC, 16-bit	3	Change the program sequence (Jump) to memory location specified by the 16-bit address if the Carry (C) flag is reset.
CALL 16-bit	3	Change the program sequence to the location of the subroutine.
RET	1	Return to the calling program after completing the subroutine sequence.

*The Z80 instruction set includes similar instructions for logically ORing and Exclusive ORing with mnemonics OR and XOR respectively.

†The Z80 set also includes conditional Call and Return instructions.

6. Machine Control Instructions

HALT	1	Suspend execution and wait.
NOP	1	Do not perform any operation.

7. Bit Rotation*

RLC r	2	Rotate each bit in register r to the left.
RL r	2	Rotate each bit in register r to the left, including Carry flag.
SLA r	2	Shift each bit in register r to the left.

8. Bit Manipulation†

BIT b, r	2	Test bit b in register r, affecting the Z flag.
SET b, r	2	Set bit b in register r. ("b" represents bit position 0 to 7)
RES b, r	2	Reset bit b in register r.

9. Z80 Special (Conditional) Repetitive Instructions. The Z80 instruction set includes several instructions that are automatically repeated until a specified register becomes zero. These instructions are quite efficient in dealing with block transfer or counter applications. Some of these instructions are as follows:

CPDR	2	Compare memory contents specified by HL with the accumulator. Increment HL, decrement BC, and repeat until BC = 0. or A = contents of memory specified by HL.
DJNZ d	2	Decrement B, and if B ≠ 0, jump to memory address obtained by adding displacement byte to the program counter.
INDR	2	Read input port indicated by the C register, and store the byte in memory specified by HL register. Decrement B and HL, and continue until B = 0.
OTDR	2	Output the contents of memory specified by HL to port indicated by the C register. Decrement B and HL, and continue until B = 0.

SUMMARY

This chapter has provided an overview of the Z80 instruction set and the capability of the Z80 microprocessor. The important concepts and topics discussed in this chapter can be summarized as follows:

*The Z80 set includes similar instructions to shift right as well as to rotate bits in any memory location.

†Similarly, any bit in a memory location can be set or reset.

- The Z80 microprocessor operations are classified into six major groups: data copy (load), arithmetic, logic, bit manipulation, branch and machine control.
- An instruction has two parts: opcode (operation to be performed) and operand (data to be operated on). The operand can be 8- or 16-bit data, an address, register, register pair, or it can be implicit.
- The method of specifying an operand is called the addressing mode.
- The instruction set is classified into four groups according to the word size: 1-, 2-, 3-, and 4-byte instructions.
- To write a simple assembly language program, the problem should be divided into small steps in terms of microprocessor operations, and these steps should be translated into Z80 mnemonics. Then, the Hex code is assembled by looking up the code in the instruction list; this is called either hand or manual assembly.
- To enter a program in memory of a single-board microcomputer, Hex keys are used to enter the code, which is converted into binary code by the Key Monitor program of the system and stored in R/W memory. This binary code can then be read and executed by the microprocessor.

ASSIGNMENTS

1. List the six types of operations the Z80 performs.
2. Define opcode and operand, and specify the opcode and the operand in the instruction LD A, B.
3. Explain the instruction LD A, B. Specify the data source and destination.
4. If the instruction LD A, B is stored in memory location 2005_H, what are the contents of the memory register?
5. Explain the instruction SUB H. List the operand implicit in the instruction.
6. Write mnemonics to load F8_H into register C and show the Hex codes with the memory address starting at 1800_H.
7. Write logical steps to load the following three Hex numbers (2F, 47, and 7A) into Z80 registers B, C, and D, respectively. Add the numbers and save the sum in register H.
8. Translate the steps in the previous question into Z80 assembly language.
9. Redraw the flowchart in Figure 6.5 by interchanging the answers of the decision block. For example, the program sequence will be altered if the answer is "Yes." (Hint: The flowchart can have two End statements.)
10. Draw a flowchart to represent the following problem. Load two numbers into Z80 registers, and subtract the second number from the first number. If the result generates a borrow, display FF_H at the output port of the system; otherwise display the second number.

Software Development Systems and Assemblers

A **software development system** is a computer that enables the user to develop programs (**software**) with the assistance of other programs. The development process includes writing, modifying, testing, and debugging of the user programs. In the previous chapter, we discussed how to write a simple assembly language program and translate its mnemonics into Hex code manually. In this chapter, we will develop assembly language programs with the help of four other programs: Editor, Assembler, Linking Loader, and Debugger. These programs enable the user to write programs in mnemonics, translate mnemonics into Hex and binary code, and debug the code. All the activities of the computer—hardware and software—are directed by another program, called the **operating system**.

This chapter describes a microprocessor-based software development system, its hardware, and related programs. It also describes such widely used operating systems as CP/M and MS-DOS, and illustrates the use of the assembler to write assembly language programs.



7

OBJECTIVES

- Describe the components of a software development system.
- List various types of floppy disks, and explain how information is accessed from the disk.
- Define the operating system of a microcomputer, and explain its function.
- Explain the functions of these programs: Editor, Assembler, Linking Loader, and Debugger.
- List the advantages of the assembler over manual assembly.
- List the assembler directives, and explain their functions.
- Write assembly language programs with appropriate directives.

7.1

MICROPROCESSOR-BASED SOFTWARE DEVELOPMENT SYSTEMS

A software development system is simply a computer that enables the user to write, modify, debug, and test programs. In a microprocessor-based development system, a microcomputer is used to develop software for a particular microprocessor. Generally, the microcomputer has a large R/W memory (64K or higher), disk storage, and a video terminal with a typewriter-like keyboard. The keyboard enables the user to write programs in alphanumeric (alphabet and number) characters, which are translated into ASCII (American Standard Code for Information Interchange) binary code; the keyboard (or the terminal) is known as ASCII keyboard (or terminal). The system includes programs that enable the user to develop software in either assembly language or high-level languages. This text will focus on developing programs in the **Z80 assembly language**.

Conceptually, this type of microcomputer is similar to a single-board microcomputer except that it has additional features that can assist in developing large programs. Programs are accessed and stored under a file name (title), and they are written by using such other programs as text editors and assemblers. The system (I/Os, files, programs, etc.) is managed by a program called the operating system. The various hardware and software features of a typical software development system are described in the next sections.

7.11 System Hardware and Storage Memory

Figure 7.1 shows a typical software development system; it includes an ASCII keyboard, a CRT terminal, an MPU board with at least 64K R/W memory and disk controllers, and two disk drives. The disk controller is an interfacing circuit through which the MPU can access a disk and provide Read/Write control signals. The disk drives have Read/Write elements that are responsible for reading and writing data on the disk. Three types of floppy disks are in use: 8-inch, 5¼-inch, and 3½-inch; at present, systems with 5¼-inch disks seem to be the most commonly used. A 5¼-inch single-density disk can store about 90K bytes of data; the storage capacity can be doubled by using double-density disks, and quadrupled (to 360K) by using both sides of the disks. Recently, manufacturers have improved on storage density, and now 5¼-inch high-density disks with 1.2 megabyte storage capacity are available.

FIGURE 7.1

A Typical Software Development
System: AT&T PC 6300 Plus

SOURCE: Photograph Courtesy of AT&T



FLOPPY DISK

A **floppy disk**—Figure 7.2 (a)—is made of a thin magnetic material (iron oxide) that can store logic 0s and 1s in the form of magnetic directions. The surface of the disk is divided into a number of concentric tracks, each track divided into sectors, as shown in Figure 7.2(b). The large hole in the center of the disk is locked by the disk drive when it spins the disk. The small hole shown in Figure 7.2(a) is known as the indexing hole. The disk drive uses this hole as a reference to count the sectors. The oblong cutout, called the head slot, is the reading/recording segment; this is the only segment of the surface that comes in contact with the R/W head. At the edge of the disk, near the head slot, is a notch called the Write Protect notch. In the 5¼-inch disk, if this notch is covered, data cannot be written on the disk; the disk is then “Write Protected.”

Floppy disks are further classified as either soft-sectored or hard-sectored. The disk shown in Figure 7.2(b) is a soft-sectored disk; it has one hole as a reference to the first sector, and the other sectors are formatted by using software. In the hard-sectored disk, now almost obsolete, each sector is identified with a separate hole.

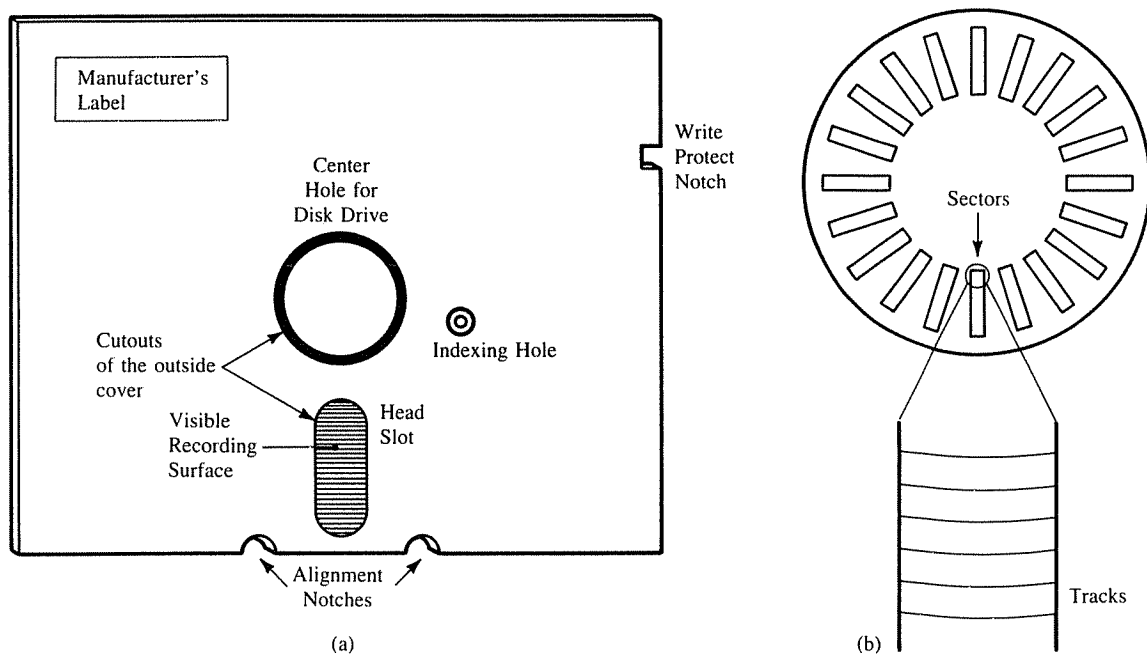


FIGURE 7.2
(a) A Typical 5 $\frac{1}{4}$ -Inch Floppy Disk and (b) Its Sectors and Tracks

Each sector and track is assigned a binary address. The MPU can access any information on the disk with the sector and the track addresses; however, the access is semi-random. To go from one track to another, the access is random. Once the track is found, the system waits for the index hole and then locates the sector serially by counting the sectors. Once data bytes are located, they are transferred to the system's R/W memory. These data transfer functions between a floppy disk and the system are performed by the **disk controller** and controlled by the **operating system**, also known as the Disk Operating System (DOS), described in Section 7.12.

HARD DISK

Another type of storage memory used with computers is called a **hard disk** or **Winchester disk**. The hard disk is similar to the floppy disk except that the magnetic material is coated on a rigid aluminum base and enclosed in a sealed container. While it is highly precise and reliable, the hard disk requires sophisticated controller circuitry; it is thus relatively expensive. However, its storage capacity is quite large. Hard disks are available in various sizes; 3 $\frac{1}{2}$ -inch, 5 $\frac{1}{4}$ -inch, 8-inch, and 14-inch. Storage capacity can range from several megabytes to several gigabytes.

7.12 Operating Systems and CP/M

The operating system of a computer is a group of programs that manages or oversees all the operations of the computer. The computer transfers information constantly among such peripherals as a floppy disk, printer, keyboard, and video monitor. It also stores user programs under file names on a disk. (A **file** is defined as related instructions or records stored as a single entity.) The operating system is responsible primarily for managing the files on the disk and the communication between the computer and its peripherals. The functional relationship between the operating system and the computer's various subsystems is shown in Figure 7.3.

Each computer has its own operating system. CP/M (Control Program/Monitor for Microcomputers) is by far the most widely used operating system for the microcomputers designed around the Z80 and the 8085/8080 microprocessors. The CP/M design is, for the most part, independent of the machine, so that microcomputer manufacturers can adapt it to their own designs with minimum changes. To illustrate the operation of a software development system, CP/M is briefly described here in reference to a system with 64K R/W memory.

CP/M

This operating system is divided into three components: BIOS (Basic Input/Output System), BDOS (Basic Disk Operating System), and CCP (Console Command Processor).

BIOS This program consists of input/output routines; it manages data transfer between the microprocessor and various peripherals. This section of CP/M is accessible to the user. Each manufacturer writes a BIOS specifically to the hardware design in a particular system.

BDOS This program directs the activities of the disk controller and manages the file allocation on the disk. The BDOS program allocates memory space under a file name.

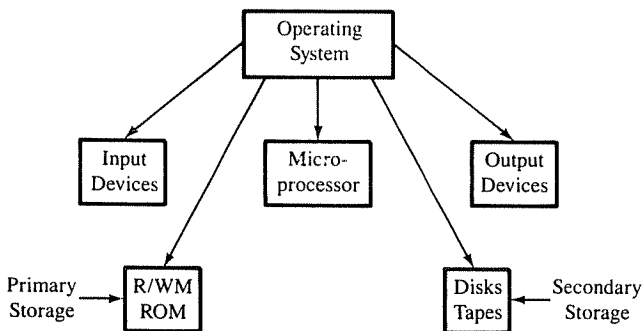


FIGURE 7.3

Operating System and Its Functional Relationship with Various Components of a Computer System

CCP This program reads and interprets the CP/M commands from the keyboard. These commands include such operations as listing the programs on the disk, copying, erasing, and renaming a file. CCP also transfers the program control from CP/M to user or other programs.

When CP/M is loaded into a system's R/W memory, it occupies 6K to 12K of memory at the highest available locations, as shown in Figure 7.4. In addition, the first 256 locations (from 0000 to 00FF_H) are reserved for system parameters. The rest of the R/W memory (approximately 52K to 58K) is available for the user. Once the operating system is loaded into R/W memory, the user can write, assemble, test, and debug programs by using utility programs, which are described in the next section.

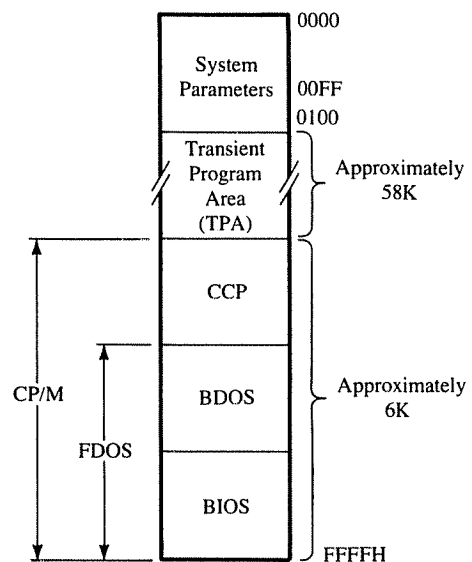
7.13 Tools for Developing Assembly Language Programs

The CP/M operating system includes programs called **utility programs**. These programs can be classified in two categories: (1) file management utilities, and (2) program development utilities. The file management utilities are programs that enable the user to perform such functions as copying, printing, erasing, and renaming files. The program development utilities enable the user to write, assemble, and test assembly language programs; they include programs such as Editor, Assembler, Linking Loader, and Debugger.

EDITOR

The Editor is a program that allows the user to enter, modify, and store a group of instructions or text under a file name. To write text, the user must call the Editor under CP/M control. As soon as the Editor program is transferred from the disk to the system memory, the program control is transferred from CP/M to the Editor program. The Editor

FIGURE 7.4
CP/M Memory Map with 64K
R/W Memory



has its own commands, with which the user can enter and modify text. Some Editor programs such as “Word Star,” “Word Perfect,” and “Tele Write” are easy to use. At the completion of writing a program, the exit command of the editor will save the program on the disk under the file name, and will transfer the program control back to CP/M. This file is known as a source file or a source program.

The Editor program is not concerned with whether one is writing a letter or an assembly language program. If the source file is intended to be a program in the Z80 assembly language, the user should follow the syntax of the assembly language and the rules of the assembler.

Z80 ASSEMBLER

Several Assemblers are available commercially as Z80 Assemblers. The following description is accurate for the Microsoft M80 Assembler. The assembler is a program that translates the source file into modules of the Z80 code and generates two files: one is called the print (PRN) or listing file and the other is called the relocatable (REL) file. In addition to translating mnemonics, the Assembler performs such functions as error checking and memory allocations.

The print file includes the source file plus the memory addresses and the Hex code of each instruction. This file is used primarily for documentation and may look like the hand-assembled file shown in the last chapter. The relocatable file is an intermediate file, generated to create two more files: a Hex file and an object file, which is necessary to combine different modules (or programs) and relocate the modules from one block of memory to another. The Assembler is described in more detail in Section 7.2.

LINKING LOADER

The Linking Loader is a program that uses the REL file generated by the Assembler to generate a binary code file called the COM file or object code; it can also generate a Hex file. The COM file is the only file that can be executed by the microcomputer. To execute the program, the COM file is called under CP/M control and executed. The HEX file is used for debugging the code and transferring files from one system to another. This transfer of files among different systems is called either downloading or uploading of files.

DEBUGGER

The Debugger is a program that allows the user to test and debug the object file. The user can employ this program to perform the following functions:

- ☐ Make changes in the object code.
- ☐ Examine and modify the contents of memory.
- ☐ Set breakpoints, execute a segment of the program, and display register contents after the execution.
- ☐ Trace the execution of the specified segment of the program, and display the register and memory contents after the execution of each instruction.
- ☐ Disassemble a section of the program; for example, convert the object code into the source code or mnemonics.

In the M80 Assembler, translating mnemonics into binary code is a two-step process: first, the source file is converted into the REL (Relocatable) file by the Assembler program; then, the REL file is converted into the binary object (COM) file by the Linking Loader program. This is called **program assembly**. Additional files, such as Hex and PRN files, can be also generated using these programs. In addition, the Editor generates the back-up (BAK) file. The BAK file is generated when the user calls the source file for reediting; the BAK file is the copy of the previous file before the user begins to reedit. The BAK file is generated as a precautionary measure, in the event that the user may wish to go back to the previous file. At the completion of the assembly process, the CP/M user will have the following files:

- Source File: This is the source file written by the user. Under CP/M, a filename can be one to eight characters long with an extension of a maximum three characters. The filename and the extension are separated by a dot. For example, the file name can be DELAY1.ASM; the extension ASM suggests that it names an assembly language file.
- REL File: This is a relocatable binary file generated by the assembler without any specific reference to the user memory. This file is used to generate a COM file and relocate the entire program for storage to specified memory locations.
- PRN File: This is the print file generated by the assembler program for documentation purposes. It contains memory locations, Hex code, mnemonics, and comments.
- HEX File: this is generated by the loader program and contains program code in hexadecimal notations. This file can be used for debugging the program and transferring files from one system to another.
- COM File: This is the executable file generated by the linking loader program, and it contains binary code.
- BAK File: When the source file is called for reediting, the previous file is saved as the BAK file.

7.14 MS-DOS Operating System

The CP/M operating system is designed for 8-bit microprocessors; however, recent disk-based microcomputers, such as the IBM PC, XT, and AT, are designed around 16-bit microprocessors. In these microcomputers, the **MS-DOS** (Microsoft Disk Operating System) is so widely used that it has become the industry standard. The MS-DOS is in many ways similar to the CP/M, except that it is capable of handling 16-bit data words and large size (1 Megabyte) system memory. Similarly, it is designed to handle disks with quad (high) density disk format with memory capacity of 720K and 1,200K. The latest version of MS-DOS is geared towards handling communication between multi-user systems.

The MS-DOS operating system, installed on IBM PCs, is divided into four components: ROM-BIOS, IBMBIO, IBMDOS, and COMMAND; these are COM files. In a typical 1Mbyte (1,024K-byte) system, the memory space is divided into 16 blocks from 0 to F, each being 64K memory; the Hex address ranges from 00000 to FFFFF_H. Generally, the lowest addresses in the 0 block are reserved for system software, the highest block F is

used for ROM-BIOS, and approximately ten blocks (640K) are reserved as the user memory. The remaining blocks are used for such varied purposes as video display and BIOS extensions.

ROM-BIOS This program is functionally similar to BIOS in the CP/M; it is called ROM-BIOS because it is generally installed in Read-Only Memory. The primary function of this program is to communicate with I/O devices when it receives commands from a user's program. The IBMBIO program is an extension of the ROM-BIOS; the IBMBIO program allows modifications in the BIOS programs and additions of new peripherals.

IBMDOS This program directs the activities of the disk controller and also contains DOS service routines; these service routines include such programs as DIR (Directory), FORMAT (Formatting disk), and COPY (Copying files). These programs are also included in CP/M, but they are generally stored on a disk, and are not part of the system.

COMMAND This program reads and interprets the commands from the keyboard and differentiates between the DOS services (such as COPY) and the utility programs such as DEBUG.

In summary, the DOS operating system is conceptually similar to the CP/M operating system, but it is capable of handling large memory size, large word size, and many more functions than the CP/M.

MS-DOS AND CROSS-ASSEMBLERS

The MS-DOS is an operating system designed primarily for 16-bit microprocessors. Now the question is: Why are we discussing it in the context of an 8-bit microprocessor such as the Z80? The answer lies with the widespread use of IBM PCs or their compatibles on college campuses. A 16-bit microprocessor is not ideally suited for learning about microprocessors; they are too complex for the control type applications. But we can use these 16-bit machines to develop (write) Z80 assembly language programs by using a program called cross-assembler. This program translates Z80 mnemonics into appropriate Z80 machine codes. From the user's point of view, it makes no difference whether he/she uses a Z80-based system or any other system with a Z80 cross-assembler. After assembling a program, the Hex file can be directly transferred to R/W memory of your Z80 single-board microcomputer by using a download program. Thus, hardware related laboratory experiments can be easily performed.

ASSEMBLERS

7.2

The assembler, as defined before, is a program that translates assembly language mnemonics or source code into binary executable code. Here, we are using the term **assembler** to include all the utility programs (such as Assembler, Linker Loader) necessary for the

assembly process. This translation process requires that the source program be written strictly according to the specified syntax of the assembler. The assembly language source program includes three types of statements:

1. The *program statements* in Z80 mnemonics, which are to be translated into binary code.
2. *Comments*, which are reproduced as a part of the program documentation.
3. *Directives* to the assembler that specify such items as starting memory locations, label definitions, and required memory spaces for data.

The first two types of statements have been used in the program of adding two Hex numbers in the last chapter. The format of these statements as they appear in an assembly language source program is identical to the format used here. The third type—directives—and their functions will be described in Section 7.22.

7.21 Assembly Language Format

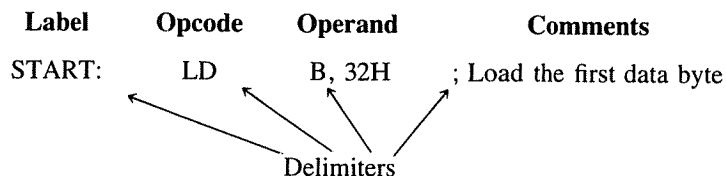
A typical assembly language programming statement is divided into four parts, called **fields**: *label*, *operation code* (opcode), *operand*, and *comments*. These fields are separated by **delimiters** for the CP/M assembler, as shown in Table 7.1.

TABLE 7.1
Delimiters Used in Assembler
Statements

Delimiter	Placement
Colon	After label
Space	Between an opcode and an operand
Comma	Between two operands*
Semicolon	Before the beginning of a comment

*Some assemblers may not tolerate space between comma and the operand.

The **assembler statements** have a free-field format, which means that any number of blanks can be left between fields. Comments are optional but are generally included for good documentation. A label for an instruction is also optional, but its use greatly facilitates specifying jump locations. As an example, a typical assembly language statement is written as follows:



Delimiters include the colon following START, the space following LD, the comma following B, and the semicolon preceding the comment.

7.22 Assembler Directives

The **assembler directives** are the instructions to the assembler concerning the program being assembled; they are also called *pseudo operations* or *pseudo-ops*. These instructions are neither translated into machine code nor assigned any memory locations in the object file. Some of the important assembler directives for the Z80 assembler are listed and described here.

Assembler Directives	Example		Description
1. ORG (Origin)	ORG	0100H	The next block of instructions should be stored in memory locations starting from 0100 _H .
2. END	END		End of assembly. The HALT instruction suggests the end of a program, but that does not necessarily mean the end of assembly.
3. EQU (Equate)	PORT1	EQU 01H	The value of the term PORT1 is equal to 01 _H . Generally, this means the PORT1 has the port address 01 _H .
	INBUF	EQU 2099H	The value of the term INBUF is 2099 _H . This may be the memory location used as input buffer.
	OUTBUF	EQU INBUF + 4	The equate can be expressed by using the label of another equate. This example defines the OUTBUF memory location in terms of INBUF.
4. DB (Define Byte)	DATA:	DB A2H, 9FH	Initializes an area byte by byte. Assembled bytes of data are stored in successive memory locations until all values are stored. This is a convenient way of writing a data string. The label is optional.
5. DW (Define Word)	DW	2050H	Initializes an area of two bytes at a time. This statement reserves two locations for 2050 _H .

6. DS (Define Storage)	OUTBUF: DS 4	Reserves a specified number of memory locations. In this example, four memory locations are reserved for OUTBUF.
------------------------------	--------------	--

7.23 Advantages of the Assembler

The assembler is a tool for developing programs with the assistance of the computer. Assemblers are absolutely essential for writing industry-standard software; manual assembly is quite time-consuming for programs larger than 50 instructions. The assembler performs many functions in addition to translating mnemonics, and it has several advantages over manual assembly. The salient features of the assembler are as follows:

1. The assembler translates mnemonics into binary code with speed and accuracy, thus eliminating human errors in looking up the codes.
2. The assembler assigns appropriate values to the symbols used in a program. This facilitates specifying jump locations.
3. It is easy to insert or delete instructions in a program; the assembler can quickly reassemble the entire program with new memory locations and modified addresses for jump locations. This avoids rewriting the program manually.
4. The assembler checks syntax errors, such as wrong labels and expressions, and provides error messages. However, it cannot check logic errors in a program.
5. The assembler can reserve memory locations for data or results.
6. The assembler can provide files for documentation.
7. A Debugger program can be used in conjunction with the assembler to test and debug an assembly language program.

7.3

WRITING PROGRAMS USING AN ASSEMBLER

This section deals primarily with writing programs using an assembler. The illustrative example is simple and has been selected to demonstrate the use of assemblers. An assembler source program is identical to a program the user writes with paper and pencil, except that the assembler source program includes assembler directives.

To illustrate how to write a source program, we selected the Z80 assembler called MACRO-80 (M80), developed by Microsoft. The example is taken from the last chapter, where it was assembled using manual assembly. The source program is written using an Editor under the file name PROGRAM1.MAC. To assemble the program using the assembler M80, the file name must have the extension .MAC and it should include the pseudo-op .Z80 at the beginning.

7.31 Illustrative Program: Addition of Two Hexadecimal Numbers

This illustrative program is the same one we discussed in the last chapter. The problem statement is repeated here for convenience; refer to Section 6.31 for analysis.

PROBLEM STATEMENT

Write instructions to load the two hexadecimal numbers 32_H and A2_H into registers B and C, respectively. Add the numbers, and display the sum at the LED output port PORT1.

SOURCE PROGRAM

;This program adds two Hex bytes and displays the sum.

```

                .Z80
                ORG 2000H           ;Begin assembly at 2000H
PORT1 EQU 01H           ;Output port address
START: LD B, 32H          ;Load first byte
        LD C, 0A2H*       ;Load second byte to be added
        LD A, C           ;Copy one of the bytes into A
        ADD A, B          ;Add two bytes
        OUT (PORT1), A    ;Display the result
        HALT             ;End
        END

```

This program illustrates the following assembler directives:

□ **ORG**

The object code will be stored starting at the location 2000_H.

□ **EQU**

The program defines one equate: PORT1. In this program it would have been easier to write the port address directly with the instructions. However, equates are essential in development projects where hardware and software design are done concurrently, and they are also useful in long programs because they make it easy to change or redefine port addresses.

□ **Label**

The program illustrates one label: START. This label represents the memory location 2000_H. In this illustration, the label is not particularly useful; generally, labels are used to specify Jump and Call addresses. In writing assembly language programs, it is convenient to identify a Jump or Call address by a label because absolute addresses are not known in the beginning. This is especially true when programmers in a team are assigned various tasks. Also, if any changes (deletions and additions) are made in the source program, the assembler will reassign all label addresses when it is reassembled. In manual assembly, the entire program must be rewritten with new addresses if any changes are to be made.

□ **End**

The end of assembly.

*Any Hex number that begins with A through F must be preceded by zero.

TWO-PASS ASSEMBLER

To assemble the program, the assembler scans through the program twice; this is known as a **two-pass assembler**. In the first pass, the first memory location is determined from the ORG statement, and the counter known as the location counter is initialized. Then the assembler scans each instruction and records locations in the address column of the first byte of each instruction; the location counter keeps track of the bytes in the program. The assembler also generates a symbol table during the first pass. When it comes across a label, it records the label and its location. In the second pass, each instruction is examined, and mnemonics and labels are replaced by their machine codes.

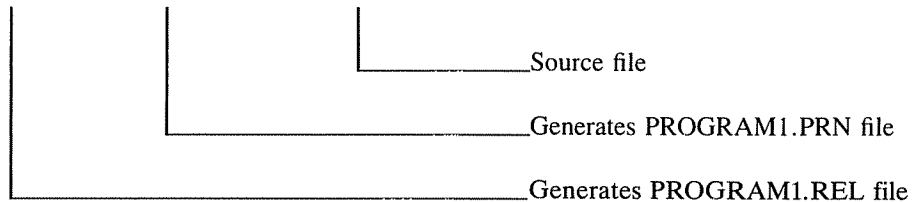
ASSEMBLED PRINT FILE

To create the REL file and the PRN file from a source file, the following command format is necessary when the prompt * appears after calling M80:

RELFILE, PRNFILE = SOURCE FILE

Therefore, to generate the relocatable object file and the print file from the source file PROGRAM1.MAC, the command is

```
PROGRAM1,PROGRAM1 = PROGRAM1
```



In this command, any file names can be given to the REL and the PRN files. For example, if we were to substitute TEST1 for the first word PROGRAM1, the assembler will generate a TEST1.REL file from the PROGRAM1 source file.

The PRN file generated from the source program has five columns: memory addresses, Hex codes, labels, mnemonics and comments. It lists the memory addresses of the first byte of each instruction with its Hex codes on the same line. For example, the listing shows that the first memory address is 2000 and the first two Hex codes are 06 32; the next address is 2002. The memory address 2001, then, holds the Hex byte 32. In addition to the program listing, the PRN file includes the list of symbols, equates, and error messages.

Error Messages In addition to translating the mnemonics into object code, the assembler also gives error messages. These messages are of two types: *terminal error messages* and *source program error messages*. In the first case, the assembler is not able to complete the assembly. In the second case, the assembler lists the errors, but it is able to complete the assembly.

PRINT (PRN) FILE

;This program adds two Hex bytes and displays the sum.

```

                                .Z80
                                ORG 2000H      ; Begin assembly at 2000H
0001      PORT1 EQU 01H          ; Output port address
2000' 06 32  START: LD B, 32H    ; Load first byte
2002' 0E A2      LD C, 0A2H     ; Load second byte to be added
2004' 79          LD A, C       ; Copy one of the bytes into A
2005' 80          ADD A, B      ; Add two bytes
2006' D3 01      OUT (PORT1), A ; Display the result
2008' 76          HALT          ; End
                                END

```

Macros:

Symbols:

PORT1 0001 START 2000'

No Fatal error(s)

GENERATING COM AND HEX FILES

The Linking Loader program (L80) generates COM and HEX files. To create the COM file and the HEX file from the PROGRAM1.REL file, the following command format must be used after calling L80:

PROGRAM1, PROGRAM1/N/X/E

This command will generate PROGRAM1.COM and PROGRAM1.HEX files, save them on the disk, and exit to the operating system.

Precautions in Writing Programs Assembler programs are available from various software companies, and for the most part, they follow a similar format. However, we suggest the following precautions in writing assembly language programs.

1. The M80 Assembler allows the free format in writing the source code; however, some assemblers (especially cross-assemblers) do not allow free format, meaning the unnecessary spaces are not tolerated.
2. The letter following a number specifies the type of a number. A hexadecimal number is followed by the letter "H," an octal by letter "O," a binary by letter "B." A number without a letter is interpreted as a decimal number.
3. Any Hex number that begins with A through F must be preceded by zero; otherwise, the assembler interprets the number as a mnemonic and gives an error message because it does not understand the mnemonic.
4. Some assemblers require a colon after a label.
5. When a 16-bit address is used in a mnemonic (such as Jump to 2050H), the M80 prints the address as 2050; however, it is stored in the reversed order in memory. Some assemblers print the address as 50 20.

SUMMARY

A software development system and an assembler are essential tools for writing large assembly language programs. These tools facilitate the writing, assembling, testing, and debugging of assembly language programs.

A disk-based microcomputer, its operating system, and assembler programs can serve as a development system. All the operations of the computer are managed and directed by the operating system of the computer. The Assembler and other utility programs assist the user in developing software. The Editor allows the user to enter text, and the Assembler translates mnemonics into machine code and provides error messages. The Debugger assists in debugging the program.

The program thus assembled is in many ways similar to that of the hand assembly program except that the program written for the assembler includes assembler directives, which are instructions concerning how to assemble the program. The assembler has many advantages over manual assembly; without the assembler, it would be extremely difficult to develop industry-standard software.

ASSIGNMENTS

Check the appropriate answer in **1–10**.

1. The process of accessing information on a floppy disk is
 - a. random.
 - b. serial.
 - c. semi-random.
2. The operating system of a computer is defined as
 - a. hardware that operates the floppy disk.
 - b. a program that manages files on the disk.
 - c. a group of programs that manages and directs hardware and software in the system.
3. The Editor is
 - a. an assembly language program that reads and writes information on the disk.
 - b. a high-level language program that allows the user to edit programs.
 - c. a program that allows the user to write, modify, and store text in the computer system.
4. The Assembler is
 - a. a compiler that translates statements from high-level language into assembly language.
 - b. a program that translates mnemonics into binary code.
 - c. an operating system that manages all the programs in the system.

5. A file is
 - a. a group of related records stored as a single entity.
 - b. a program that transfers information between the system and the floppy disk.
 - c. a program that stores data.
6. The COM file
 - a. consists of Hex digits and is used for communication.
 - b. is the only file that can be interpreted and executed by the microprocessor.
 - c. consists of Z80 mnemonics.
7. The Hex file generated by the M80 Assembler is used primarily
 - a. to reduce the memory requirement for storing files.
 - b. to transfer a file from one system to another.
 - c. to transfer a file between a floppy disk and the system's R/W memory.
8. A hard-sectored disk is
 - a. a floppy disk in which each sector is identified with a hole.
 - b. a hard disk that stores information on an aluminum-based magnetic surface.
 - c. a double-density, double-sided floppy disk.
9. A disk controller is
 - a. a program that manages the files on the disk.
 - b. a circuit that interfaces the disk with the microcomputer system.
 - c. a mechanism that controls the spinning of the disk.
10. The MS-DOS is
 - a. an operating system that is designed primarily to handle the communication between the 16-bit microprocessor and its peripherals.
 - b. an updated version of the CP/M operating system.
 - c. an application program that handles communication between various systems.
11. Assemble the following program with the starting address 0100_H, and print the PRN file. The address of the output port PORT7 is 07_H.

```

START: LD B, 32H           ;Load B with first data byte

        LD C, 0A2H         ;Load C with second data byte

        LD A, C            ;Copy (C) into A for addition

        ADD A, B           ;Add two bytes

        JP NC, DSPLAY      ;If sum < FFH, display sum at PORT7

        LD A, 01H          ;If sum > FFH, load 01 to display
                          ; as over load
DSPLAY: OUT (PORT7), A     ;Display result at PORT7

        HALT

        END

```


Introduction to Z80 Instructions and Programming Techniques

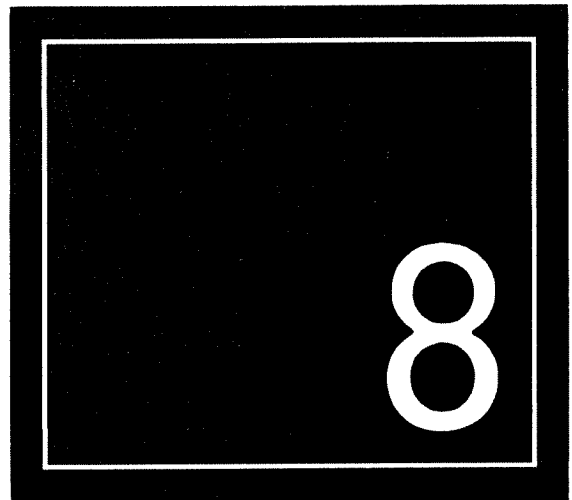
When a microcomputer is asked to execute a program stored in its memory, it reads one instruction at a time and performs the task specified by the instruction. Each instruction in the program is a command, in binary, to the microprocessor to perform an operation. In Chapter 6, we examined briefly the Z80 instruction set and its capability. In this chapter, we will introduce a few selected instructions and illustrate them with examples. These instructions are selected from three groups: data copy, arithmetic, and branch operations.

A computer is at its best, relative to human capability, when it is asked to repeat such simple tasks as adding or copying. The programming techniques—such as **looping**, **indexing**, and **counting**—necessary to perform such tasks are introduced and illustrated with two programs. This chapter also includes a brief discussion of debugging programs.

Finally, a group of special Z80 instructions that perform multiple tasks are introduced with illustrative examples.

OBJECTIVES

- Explain the functions of data copy instructions and how the contents of the source register and the destination registers are affected.
- List four types of data copy operations and explain the term *addressing mode*.
- Explain how a memory address is specified to copy data from and to a memory register.



- Explain how data are transferred from and to I/O devices.
- Explain the functions of arithmetic instructions (ADD, SUB, INC, DEC) and how flags are affected by these instructions.
- Write a set of commands using data copy and arithmetic instructions to perform a given task.
- Explain the functions of unconditional and conditional jump instructions and how they are used for decision making.
- Draw a flowchart of a conditional loop to illustrate the indexing and counting techniques.
- List the seven blocks of a generalized flowchart illustrating data acquisitions and data processing.
- Write a program to copy data from one block of memory to another block including the case of overlapping blocks.
- Write a program to perform arithmetic operations on given data stored in memory.
- List the types of errors that frequently occur in writing assembly language programs and in hand assembling the code. Recognize the errors in a given program.
- List Z80 special instructions and explain how they provide more flexibility and improve efficiency in writing Z80 programs.
- Modify the previously written programs using the Z80 special instructions.

8.1

DATA COPY (LOAD) OPERATIONS

In this section, we focus on three types of **data copy operations**: data copy related to internal registers, memory, and I/Os. Instructions frequently used are illustrated below, and the Z80 block transfer instruction will be discussed later in the chapter. In addition, one machine control instruction—HALT—is introduced; this instruction is necessary to indicate the end of a program.

8.11 Data Copy (Load) among Registers

In this group, we have three types of instructions: data copy from one register to another, loading 8-bit data into a register and loading 16-bit data into a register pair.*

Opcode	Operand	Bytes	Addressing Mode	Description
LD	rd, rs	1	Register	Copy data from source register rs to destination register rd. In this mode, the operand is a part of the opcode.
LD	r, 8-bit	2	Immediate	Load 8-bit data of the second byte into the specified register. In this mode, the second byte is the operand.

*Appendix A includes complete descriptions of these instructions in alphabetical order with illustrative examples.

LD	rp, 16-bit	3	Immediate Extended	Load 16 bits into the specified register pair. In this mode, two bytes following the opcode are the operands.
LD	rx, 16-bit	4	Immediate Extended	Load 16 bits into the specified index register.
HALT		1		This is a machine control instruction. The processor stops executing and enters into Wait state.

General Characteristics

1. Copy (Load) instructions do not affect flags.
2. The operands of copy instructions specify a destination register first, followed by a source register; they are separated by a comma.
3. The data byte is copied without modifying the contents of a source register.
4. A 16-bit operand is stored in two consecutive memory locations in the reversed order: the low-order byte first, followed by the high-order byte.
5. The instructions related to the index registers IX and IY have two-byte opcodes.

Write instructions to load 97_H into the accumulator, 2050_H into HL registers, and 2075_H into the index register IX. Copy the contents of the accumulator into register C and the contents of register H into register B. Write the HALT instruction at the end of the sequence. Enter the machine codes of these instructions in R/W memory starting from 2000_H, and show the contents of each register after the execution.

Example 8.1

Solution

Memory Address	Hex Code	Opcode	Operand	Register Contents
2000	3E	LD	A, 97H	<p>(a)</p>
2001	97			
2002	21	LD	HL, 2050H	
2003	50			
2004	20			
2005	DD	LD	IX, 2075H	
2006	21			<p>(b)</p>
2007	75			
2008	20			
2009	79	LD	C, A	
200A	44	LD	B, H	
200B	76	HALT		

FIGURE 8.1

Instructions and Register Contents

Description

1. The first instruction LD A, 97_H is a 2-byte instruction; the opcode 3E and the operand 97 are stored in the first two memory locations. This instruction loads 97_H into the accumulator (Figure 8.1(a)).
2. The second instruction is a 3-byte instruction that loads 16-bit data (2050_H) into the HL registers (Figure 8.1(a)). The low-order byte (50_H) is stored first in memory location 2003_H, followed by the high-order byte (20_H).
3. The third instruction (IX, 2075_H) is a 4-byte instruction; it has a 2-byte opcode (DD and 21). This instruction loads 16-bit data (2075_H) into the index register IX.
4. The remaining two instructions are 1-byte instructions; they copy data from one register to another as shown in Figure 8.1(b). It is important to note that the copy operations do not destroy the contents of the source registers. Figure 8.1 shows that registers A and H retain their contents after the copy operations.
5. The last instruction (HALT) is a machine control instruction; it forces the machine into the Wait state.

8.12 Data Copy Between Z80 Registers and Memory

To copy data from and into memory, the 16-bit address of a selected memory register must be specified, and this memory address can be specified in various ways: for example, using the HL register, register pairs, or a direct 16-bit address. Methods using index registers are discussed after the discussion of 2's complement arithmetic because the index registers include a displacement byte, which is expressed as a signed 2's complement number. In Z80 mnemonics, the memory address is enclosed in parentheses, as shown in the following list.

Opcode	Operand	Bytes	Addressing Modes	Description
LD	r, (HL)	1	Register Indirect	Copy contents of memory into register r. The memory address is specified indirectly by the number in the HL register; therefore, this is called register indirect addressing.
LD	(HL), r	1	Register Indirect	Copy contents of register r into memory.
LD	(HL), 8-bit	2	Register Indirect & Immediate	Copy 8-bit data into memory. This mode is combination of indirect and immediate addressing.

Note: In these three instructions, the memory address is specified by the contents of register HL, and register r can be any one of the general-purpose registers.

LD	A, (rp)	1	Register Indirect	Copy contents of memory into accumulator.
LD	(rp), A	1	Register Indirect	Copy contents of accumulator into memory.

Note: In the preceding two instructions, the memory address is shown by the contents of a register pair (BC or DE). However, these instructions can copy data from and into the accumulator only.

LD	A, (16-bit)	3	Extended	Copy contents of memory into accumulator.
LD	(16-bit), A	3	Extended	Copy contents of accumulator into memory.

Note: In these instructions, the memory address is the 16-bit operand, and these instructions can copy data from and into the accumulator only.

General Characteristics

1. No flags are affected by these data copy operations.
2. Memory-related data copy operations can be recognized by the parentheses around the operand.
3. Register HL is a versatile memory pointer; a data byte can be copied from any memory location to any general-purpose register and vice versa. In addition, HL can be used to load a byte directly into memory.
4. A 16-bit direct address and other register pairs (BC and DE) can be used as memory pointers to copy data from a memory location into the accumulator and vice versa. However, these memory pointers cannot be used to copy data between general-purpose registers and memory.

The memory location 2050_H contains the data byte 37_H. Write instructions to copy the byte from the memory location into the accumulator. Illustrate three different ways of transferring the byte from memory to the microprocessor and list the associated machine codes.

Example 8.2

Solution

1. The first method of copying a byte from memory into the microprocessor is by using HL register as a memory pointer; this is an illustration of indirect addressing. First, we need to load the memory address into the HL register and then use the contents of HL as a memory pointer (Figure 8.2(a)).
2. The second method of copying a byte from memory into the microprocessor is by using BC or DE as a memory pointer; this is also the indirect addressing (Figure 8.2(b)).
3. The third technique is to use the direct extended addressing (Figure 8.2(c)).

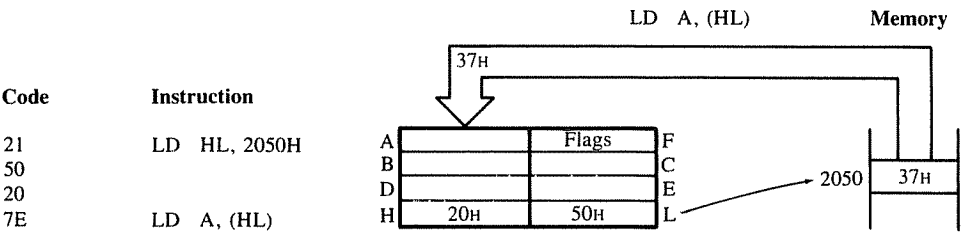


FIGURE 8.2
(a) Indirect Addressing Using HL

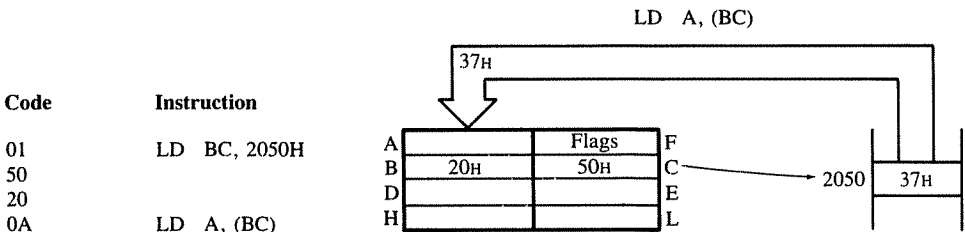


FIGURE 8.2
(b) Indirect Addressing Using BC

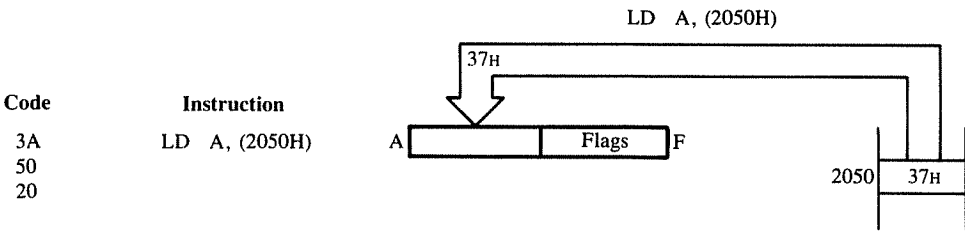


FIGURE 8.2
(c) Extended Addressing

Example 8.3

The memory location 2040_H contains the data byte F2_H. Copy the data byte F2_H from the memory location 2040_H into 2070_H using memory pointers. Then, clear the memory location 2040_H. Enter the machine codes of these instructions in memory locations starting from 2000_H. Describe how data copy operations are performed.

Solution

Memory Address	Hex Code	Opcode	Operand	Comments
2000	21	LD	HL, 2040H	; Set up HL as memory pointer for 2040H
2001	40			
2002	20			

2003	01	LD	BC, 2070H	; Set up BC as memory pointer for 2070H
2004	70			
2005	20			
2006	7E	LD	A, (HL)	; Copy data (F2H) into accumula- tor
2007	02	LD	(BC), A	; Copy data into memory (2070H)
2008	36	LD	(HL), 00	; Clear location 2040H
2009	00			
200A	76	HALT		

Description

1. The first two instructions load registers HL and BC with the numbers 2040_H and 2070_H respectively. These are not memory-related data copy instructions because the operands do not have any parentheses.
2. The next two instructions copy the data byte (F2_H) stored in memory location 2040_H into the accumulator and from the accumulator into location 2070_H (see Figure 8.3).
3. The next instruction LD (HL), 00 is a 2-byte instruction; it clears the memory location 2040_H by loading 00 into the memory location pointed to by the HL register.

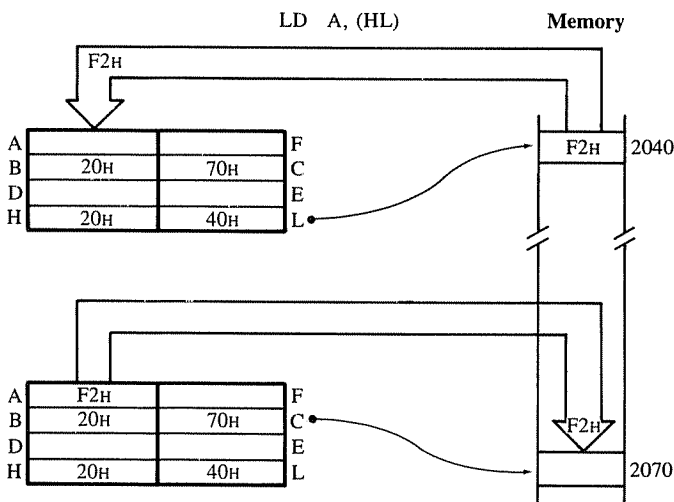


FIGURE 8.3

Data Copy between Microprocessor and Memory

8.13 Data Copy Between Accumulator and I/Os

In the Z80 instruction set, input and output devices are identified by 8-bit addresses. The set includes several instructions that can read data from an input device (also known as input port) and write data into an output device (or output port). Two of these I/O instructions are described here:

Opcode	Operand	Bytes	Description
IN	A, (8-bit)	2	Read data from an input port into the accumulator.
OUT	(8-bit), A	2	Write data to an output port from the accumulator.

General Characteristics

1. These I/O instructions do not affect flags. (Some Z80 I/O instructions do affect flags; they are discussed later.)
2. The I/O instructions have 8-bit operands; thus, the Z80 is capable of addressing 256 input and 256 output ports.
3. The 8-bit I/O addresses are enclosed in parentheses similar to those of memory addresses.

Example 8.4 Read the switches connected to the input port 01_H (Figure 8.4). Display the reading at the LED output port 07_H and store it in memory location 2060_H.

Solution Instructions are as follows:

Opcode	Operand	Comments
IN	A, (01H)	; Read input switches
OUT	(07H), A	; Display switch reading at output port
LD	(2060H), A	; Store switch reading in memory
HALT		

Description

1. Figure 8.4 shows that the switch positions at the input port 01_H provide the reading 0 1 0 0 1 1 1 1 (4F_H). The first instruction reads the switch positions and places the reading in the accumulator.
2. The OUT instruction sends the accumulator contents to the output port 07_H and displays the corresponding LEDs (Figure 8.4).
3. The last instruction stores the accumulator contents in memory location 2060_H.

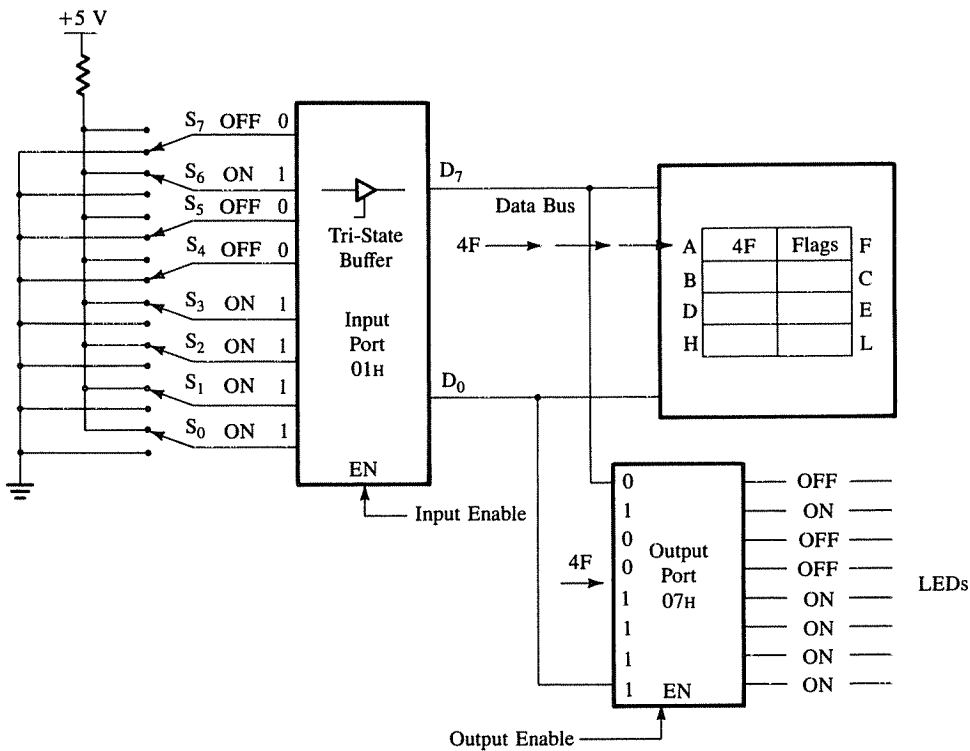


FIGURE 8.4
Reading Data at Input Port and Sending Data to Output Port

ARITHMETIC OPERATIONS

8.2

The Z80 microprocessor performs various **arithmetic operations** such as *addition*, *subtraction*, *increment/decrement*, and *1's and 2's complement*. Most of these operations are concerned with 8-bit operands. The instruction set also includes some 16-bit operations which will be discussed in later chapters. (See Appendix A for complete alphabetical listing of the Z80 instruction set and how flags are affected by the instructions.)

8.2.1 Addition and Subtraction

The addition and subtraction operations are performed in relation to contents of the accumulator. We focus here on three types of operands: register contents, 8-bit data, and memory contents.

Opcode	Operand	Bytes	Description
ADD	A, r	1	Add contents of register r to the contents of the accumulator, and store the result in the accumulator.
ADD	A, 8-bit	2	Add 8-bit data directly to the accumulator.
ADD	A, (HL)	1	Add memory contents to the accumulator.
SUB	r	1	Subtract contents of register r from the accumulator.
SUB	8-bit	2	Subtract 8-bit data from the accumulator.
SUB	(HL)	1	Subtract memory contents from the accumulator.

General Characteristics:

These Arithmetic Instructions

1. assume that the accumulator is one of the operands.
2. modify all the flags according to the result of the operation.
3. place the result in the accumulator.
4. do not affect the contents of the operand register or memory.

8.22 Increment/Decrement Instructions

The following instructions are a special type of arithmetic instructions; they increment or decrement the contents of the operand by one. These instructions are generally used in counting and indexing.

Opcode	Operand	Bytes	Description
INC	r	1	Increment the contents of register r.
INC	(HL)	1	Increment the contents of memory.
INC	rp	1	Increment the contents of register pair rp (Register pairs are BC, DE, HL, and SP).
DEC	r	1	Decrement the contents of register r.
DEC	(HL)	1	Decrement the contents of memory.
DEC	rp	1	Decrement the contents of register pair rp.

General Characteristics

1. In these instructions, the operand can be any of the 8-bit registers r, memory, or register pairs r_p . The result is stored back into the same operand register.
2. The instructions dealing with 8-bit registers affect all the flags except the Carry (CY) flag.
3. The instructions dealing with register pairs do not affect any flags. This is important to remember when a register pair is used as a 16-bit counter.

8.23 1's and 2's Complement Instructions

The Z80 instruction set includes the following instructions that perform complement operations with the contents of the accumulator. The addressing mode is implied; the accumulator is implied as the operand.

Opcode	Operand	Bytes	Description
CPL		1	Invert each bit of the accumulator. This can also be classified as the NOT function. No flags (except H and N) are affected.
NEG		2	Subtract the contents of the accumulator from 00; this is equivalent to taking 2's complement of the number in the accumulator. This instruction affects all the flags.

Load two unsigned numbers $F2_H$ and 68_H in registers B and C respectively, and store $A2_H$ in memory location 2065_H , using the HL register as a memory pointer. Subtract 68_H from $F2_H$, complement the result, and add $A2_H$ from memory. Store the final answer in memory location 2066_H . Show register contents and the status of S (Sign), Z (Zero), and CY (Carry) flags as each instruction is being executed.

Example 8.5

Solution

Instructions		Register Contents					Flags		
Mnemonics		A	B	C	H	L	S	Z	CY
1. LD BC, F268H		X	F2	68	X	X	No change		
2. LD HL, 2065H		X			20	65			
3. LD (HL), A2H	<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">A2</div> 2065	X					↓	↓	↓
4. LD A, B		F2					↓	↓	↓
5. SUB C (F2 - 68) →		8A					1	0	0
6. CPL (Invert 8A) →		75					No change		
7. ADD A, (HL) (75 + A2)		17					0	0	1
8. INC HL		↓			20	66	No change		
9. LD (HL), A	<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">17</div> 2066	↓			↓	↓	↓	↓	↓
HALT		17	F2	68	20	66	0	0	1

Description

1. The first instruction loads register BC with the given bytes. This could be achieved by using two separate load instructions for each register, but loading a register pair is slightly more efficient.
2. The second instruction sets up HL as a memory pointer for location 2065_H , and the third instruction loads $A2_H$ into the memory location indicated by HL.

3. To subtract C from B, it is necessary to copy the contents of B into the accumulator (Instruction 4).
4. Instructions 1 through 4 are all data copy instructions; they do not affect flags. All the flags will remain in their initial conditions before the program is executed.
5. Instruction 5 performs the subtraction in 2's complement and places 8A_H in the accumulator as shown below. The subtraction method using 2's complement involves three steps: (1) Find 2's complement of the subtrahend, (2) Add the 2's complement to the minuend, and (3) Complement CY. (Refer to Appendix B if you are unfamiliar with the technique.)

$$\begin{array}{rcl}
 \text{Register C} = 68_{\text{H}} \rightarrow & 0\ 1\ 1\ 0\ 1\ 0\ 0\ 0 & \text{Subtrahend} \\
 \\
 \text{2's Com. of } 68_{\text{H}} \rightarrow & 1\ 0\ 0\ 1\ 1\ 0\ 0\ 0 \} & \text{2's Complement of Subtrahend} \\
 \text{Accumulator} = \text{F2}_{\text{H}} \rightarrow & +\ 1\ 1\ 1\ 1\ 0\ 0\ 1\ 0 \} & \text{Minuend} \\
 & \hline & 1\ 1\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 1\ 0\ 1\ 0 & \text{Sum} \\
 \text{Complement CY} \rightarrow & 0\ 1\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 1\ 0\ 1\ 0 \rightarrow 8\text{A}_{\text{H}} & \text{Final Result} \\
 & \text{Flags: S} = 1, \text{Z} = 0, \text{and CY} = 0 &
 \end{array}$$

The result of this subtraction sets the Sign flag and resets the Zero and Carry flags. However, the result is not a negative number. After an arithmetic operation, if bit D₇ = 1, the Sign flag is set. In this subtraction, the Sign flag should be ignored because data bytes are not signed numbers (see further discussion in Section 8.24).

6. The instruction CPL inverts the contents of the accumulator 8A_H; the result is 75_H. This instruction does not affect any flags, so the flags set by the previous instruction are preserved.

$$1\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 1\ 0\ 1\ 0\ (8\text{A}_{\text{H}}) \rightarrow 0\ 1\ 1\ 1\ 0\ 1\ 0\ 1\ (75_{\text{H}})$$

7. Instruction 7 adds A2_H from the memory location pointed to by HL to the accumulator contents (75_H). The result is 117_H. The instruction places 17_H into the accumulator, sets the CY flag, and resets the S and Z flags.

$$\begin{array}{rcl}
 \text{Accumulator} = 75_{\text{H}} \rightarrow & 0\ 1\ 1\ 1\ 0\ 1\ 0\ 1 & \\
 \text{Memory (2065}_{\text{H}}) = \text{A2}_{\text{H}} \rightarrow & +\ 1\ 0\ 1\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 1\ 0 & \\
 & \hline & C \rightarrow 1\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 1\ 0\ 1\ 1\ 1 \rightarrow 117_{\text{H}} & \\
 & \text{Flags: S} = 0, \text{Z} = 0, \text{CY} = 1 &
 \end{array}$$

8. Instruction 8 increments HL to point to the next location 2066_H, and the next instruction stores the result in the memory location 2066_H.

8.24 Flags and Decision Making

As described in Chapter 3, the Z80 architecture includes six flags, which are flip-flops that are set or reset after the execution of arithmetic and logic operations, with some exceptions. Four of the flags (S, Z, P/V, CY) can be used by the programmer for decision

making in conjunction with Jump and Call instructions; the remaining two (H, N) are used internally by the microprocessor for BCD arithmetic. The thorough understanding of flags is critical to writing assembly language programs.

In many ways the flags are like signs on an interstate highway that help drivers in decision making. A driver sees one or more signs at a time, but continues along the highway ignoring the signs until the appropriate sign is found, and then he or she changes direction or takes an exit. Flags function similarly as signs of data conditions. After an operation, one or more flags is set (or reset) and can be used to change the direction of program sequence by using Jump instructions (discussed in the next section). The following illustrations from Example 8.5 may clarify some of the critical issues.

1. In Example 8.5, Instruction 5 sets the Sign flag and resets the other flags. However, the sign flag can be ignored because the numbers loaded into registers are unsigned numbers. The Sign flag should be considered only when the programmer is dealing with signed numbers.
2. Instruction 7 sets the Carry flag and resets the other flags. If the programmer is adding numbers and is interested in finding the total, the Carry flag must be used to test for a sum larger than an 8-bit number.
3. Another important observation that can be made after the execution of Instruction 7 is that the flags set by Instruction 5 are altered by Instruction 7. Thus, if the programmer is interested in making a decision based on the Sign flag, it should be made before that flag is altered by another operation.

8.25 Signed Numbers and Flags

The microprocessor is incapable of understanding a + or - sign unless the sign is represented in the form of binary digits. Therefore, in 8-bit microprocessors, bit D_7 is reserved for the sign by the user when signed numbers are used in arithmetic operations. For a positive number, bit D_7 is 0, and for a negative number, D_7 is set to 1; the remaining seven bits represent the magnitude of a number. If a number is negative, it is represented in 2's complement. In an 8-bit microprocessor, the largest positive number is 0111 1111 ($7F_H = +127_{10}$), and the largest negative number is 1000 0000 ($80_H = -128_{10}$).

The Z80 microprocessor has two flags to indicate the status of the arithmetic results in signed numbers: Sign and Overflow. After an arithmetic (or logical) operation, if bit $D_7 = 1$, the Sign flag is set, and if $D_7 = 0$, the Sign flag is reset. However, this flag can be misleading when the result of an addition exceeds the magnitude $7F_H$ or that of the subtraction exceeds 80_H . These conditions are known as overflow and are indicated by the P/V flag.

The P/V flag is a dual-purpose flag; in logical operations it indicates the parity, and in arithmetic operations it indicates the overflow (we have discussed this flag in Chapter 3). In arithmetic operations, the P/V flag is used to indicate an overflow. If the sum of an addition of two positive numbers exceeds $7F$, bit D_7 becomes 1, indicating a negative number. However, the Z80 sets the P/V flag to indicate the error in the result. The critical point to remember is that the Z80 does not know whether the numbers are signed, unsigned, or just individual digits. The interpretation of the flags is the responsibility of the user.

**Example
8.6**

Add two signed numbers: $+29_H$ and $+76_H$. Indicate the status of the flags S, P/V, and CY if the operation is performed by the Z80 microprocessor. Explain how the flags are affected if the numbers are unsigned.

Solution

$$\begin{array}{r}
 +29_H = \quad 0010 \quad 1001 \\
 \quad \quad + \\
 +76_H = \quad 0111 \quad 0110 \\
 \hline
 +9F_H = \quad 1001 \quad 1111
 \end{array}$$

CY = 0 because the sum is less than FF_H ,

S = 1 because $D_7 = 1$, and

P/V = 1 because the sum exceeds $7F_H$.

In this addition of two positive numbers, the sign flag erroneously indicates that the sum is negative; however, the overflow flag (P/V) suggests that the result has an overflow from bit D_6 and that the result is therefore inaccurate. The user must check the P/V flag and correct the sum.

If these numbers were unsigned numbers, the result and the status of the flags would not be altered. The interpretation of the result would therefore be different; the user should ignore the S and P/V flags and check for the CY flag. In this example, the sum is $9F_H$ with no carry.

8.3

BRANCH OPERATIONS

The **branch instructions** and their associated flags are the key to the power of a computer or its microprocessor. These instructions can change the sequence of execution based on certain data conditions indicated by the flags; thus, they are decision-making instructions.

The branch instructions are classified into three categories, as listed in Chapter 6: (1) *Jump instructions*, (2) *Call and Return instructions*, and (3) *Restart instructions*. In this chapter, we concentrate on Jump instructions.

8.31 Jump Instructions

The Jump instructions can be divided into two groups: *absolute jump* and *relative jump*. In case of absolute jump, the operand specifies the 16-bit address to which the program sequence should be transferred; these are 3-byte instructions. The relative jump instruc-

tions are 2-byte instructions and contain an operand that specifies 8-bit displacement, forward or backward (in 2's complement), in relation to the address of the Jump instruction; these instructions are discussed in the next Section.

The absolute jump instructions can be further classified into two groups: *unconditional* and *conditional jump*. The conditional jump instructions are implemented based on the status of four flags: S (Sign), Z (Zero), CY (Carry), and P/V (Parity/Overflow). Two instructions are associated with each flag: one for when the flag is set and the other for when it is reset. The list of Jump instructions is as follows:

Opcode	Operand	Bytes	Description
JP	16-bit	3	Jump unconditional to memory location specified by the 16-bit operand.
JP	C, 16-bit	3	Jump on carry to 16-bit address (CY = 1).
JP	NC, 16-bit	3	Jump on no carry to 16-bit address (CY = 0).
JP	Z, 16-bit	3	Jump on zero to 16-bit address (Z = 1).
JP	NZ, 16-bit	3	Jump on no zero to 16-bit address (Z = 0).
JP	M, 16-bit	3	Jump on minus to 16-bit address (S = 1).
JP	P, 16-bit	3	Jump on positive to 16-bit address (S = 0).
JP	PE, 16-bit	3	Jump on parity even to 16-bit address (P/V = 1).
JP	PO, 16-bit	3	Jump on parity odd to 16-bit address (P/V = 0).

General Characteristics

1. The Jump (JP) instructions are 3-byte instructions. The second byte specifies the low-order address and the third byte specifies the high-order address.
2. A conditional jump instruction checks for the appropriate flag. If the condition is true, the program sequence is changed to the memory location specified by the operand; otherwise, the execution continues to the next instruction.
3. The Jump instructions do not affect any flags.

Write instructions to load two Hex bytes BYTE1 and BYTE2 into registers B and C, respectively, and add the bytes. If the sum is larger than 8 bits, display 00H as the overload condition at output port PORT1 and clear the memory location OUTBUF; otherwise, store the sum in memory location OUTBUF. Draw a flowchart and assemble the program starting at location 2000_H. The data bytes and the labels are defined as follows:

**Example
8.7**

BYTE1 = 9A_H, BYTE2 = A7_H, PORT1 = 01_H, and OUTBUF = 2050_H

This problem is similar to Example 6.1 with some variations in display and data storage. A flowchart and instructions are as follows:

Solution

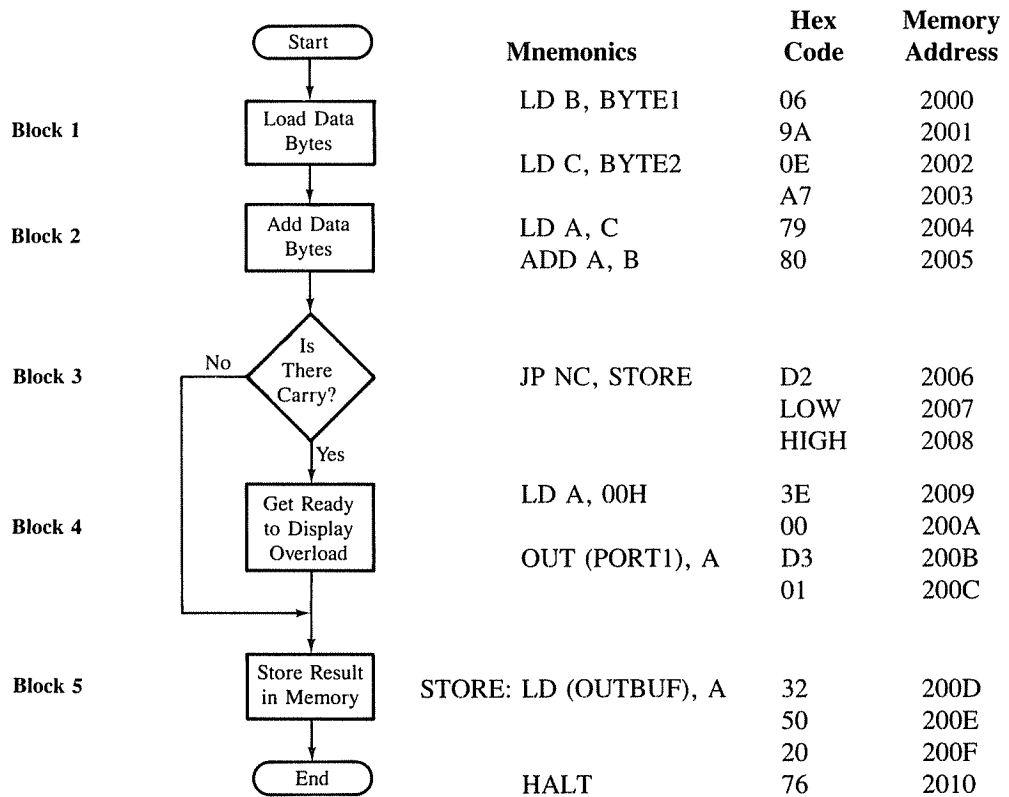


FIGURE 8.5
Flowchart

Program Description

1. The first four instructions (Block 1 and 2) are similar to those we used previously and do not need any additional explanation.
2. Block 3 is concerned with decision making, and it is important to understand how this block is translated into Hex code. Initially, to assemble the decision-making block (JP NC, STORE), we do not know the address of the jump location. Therefore, we just label the address as STORE and leave the two memory locations (2007_H and 2008_H) for the address to be filled in later.
3. Now we can assemble the straight line segment of the flowchart (Block 4 and Block 5), the instructions shown in these blocks are self-explanatory. The critical point to remember in entering memory addresses is that the 16-bit number is entered in the reversed order—low-order byte first, followed by the high-order byte.
4. After completing the translation of Blocks 4 and 5, we can specify the address of the Jump location STORE (200D_H), and fill in the blanks for LOW and HIGH bytes; 0D_H is entered in location 2007_H and 20_H in location 2008_H.

Write instructions to read incoming data from input port INPORT, count the number of readings, and add the readings. When the sum exceeds FF_H, stop reading the port, store the number of readings added in memory location OUTBUF, and display 01 at the output port OUTLED to indicate the overload.

Example
8.8

Solution

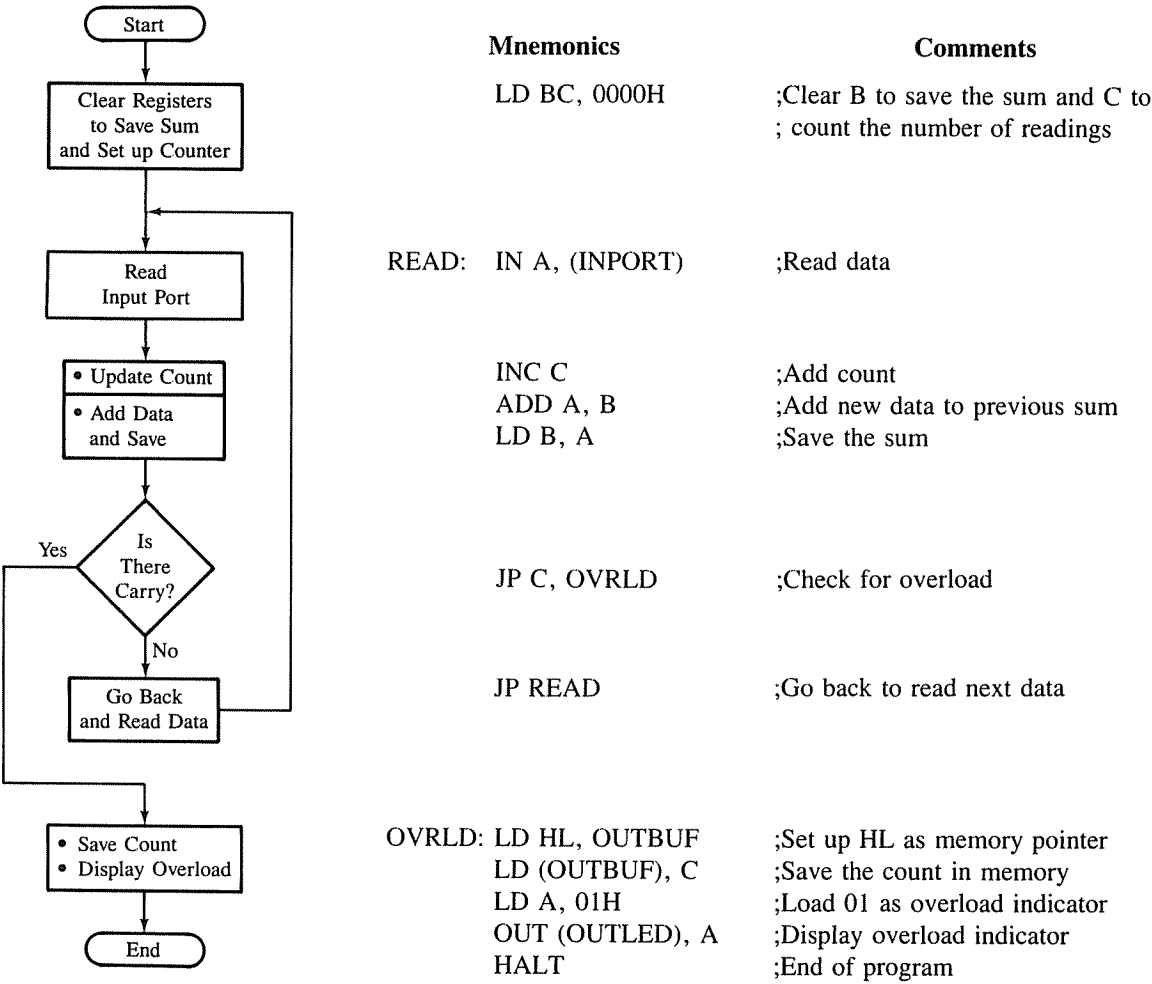


FIGURE 8.6
Flowchart

Program Description

1. This program uses two labels—READ AND OVRLD—to specify jump memory locations. Similarly, I/O ports are shown with labels: INPORT and OUTLED. To assemble this program, these labels must be replaced by appropriate addresses.
 2. Register B is used to save the sum and register C is used to count the number of readings added.
 3. Initially, registers B and C are cleared. If they are not cleared in the first operation the sum and the count will have the residual contents of registers B and C.
 4. The IN instruction reads the input port, and register C counts the number of data bytes read. The two following instructions add the data bytes and save the result in register B.
 5. If the addition does not generate a carry, the READ loop is repeated. When the addition generates a carry, the microprocessor sets the CY flag to indicate an overload. The program jumps to location OVRLD, whereby the count is saved in memory location OUTBUF, and the overload is indicated by displaying 01_H at the output port.
-

8.32 Relative Jump Instructions

The Z80 instruction set includes two types of relative jump instructions: *unconditional* and *conditional*. The new address to which the program sequence is redirected is specified by an 8-bit offset (displacement) value relative to the Jump instruction. The displacement can be positive (**forward jump**), specified by the seven bits D₆-D₀ (the MSB D₇ = 0), or negative (**backward jump**) specified in 2's complement. The total offset values range from -126 to +129 bytes (explained in Example 8.9). The list of relative Jump instructions is as follows (d = displacement).

Mnemonics	Bytes	Description
JR d	2	;Jump relative unconditionally
JR Z, d	2	;Jump relative if Z = 1
JR NZ, d	2	;Jump relative if Z = 0
JR C, d	2	;Jump relative if CY = 1
JR NC, d	2	;Jump relative if CY = 0

Note: There are no Relative Jump instructions based on Sign and Parity flags.

General Characteristics

1. These are 2-byte instructions, therefore more efficient than 3-byte absolute jump instructions in terms of memory space and, in some situations, execution time.
2. Relative jumps are limited to 256 memory locations.
3. No flags are affected by these instructions.

The unconditional relative jump instruction is stored in memory locations 2100 and 2101_H, as shown below. Find the memory address of the forward jump location if the displacement byte is 7F_H, and find the memory address for the backward jump if the displacement byte is 9C_H.

Example
8.9

2100	18	JR d ;Jump relative to given offset
2101	Offset d	
2102	Next Opcode	

Solution

1. When the jump instruction is executed, the program counter (PC) contains the address 2102 (PC always points to the next machine code to be fetched). By adding the displacement byte to the program counter, the address of the jump location becomes $(2102_H + 7F_H = 2181_H)$.

For an 8-bit displacement byte, 7F_H is the largest offset value for a forward jump. Therefore, relative to the memory location of the first code of the jump instruction, the maximum displacement is 7F_H plus two memory locations of the instruction. The decimal equivalent of 81_H (7F + 2) is 129; thus, the positive range extends to 129 memory locations.

2. If the displacement byte is 9C_H, it must be in 2's complement because D₇ = 1. The memory address for the jump location is calculated by adding the displacement byte to the program counter using the 2's complement procedure.

Program Counter:	2	1	0	2
Displacement Byte			+	9 C
in 2's Complement:				
				9 E
Complement Cy and			1	9 E
subtract from 21 _H :	2	0	9	E

Memory address of the jump location is 209E_H.

Z80 Instructions Related To Index Registers

8.4

The Z80 microprocessor includes two 16-bit index registers IX and IY, and they are used primarily as memory pointers. In the previous sections, we discussed instructions concerning data copy, arithmetic, and branch operations. The Z80 can perform these operations with the contents of memory registers using the index registers.

The following group shows data copy, arithmetic, and unconditional jump instructions related to the IX registers; there is an identical set for the IY register.

Opcode	Operand	Bytes	Description
LD	IX, 16-bit	4	Load 16-bit data into IX register (this instruction was discussed in Section 8.11)
LD	(IX + d), 8-bit	4	Load 8-bit into memory location IX + d*
LD	r, (IX + d)	3	Copy from memory IX + d into register r
LD	(IX + d), r	3	Copy from register r into memory IX + d
ADD	A, (IX + d)	3	Add contents of memory IX + d to A
SUB	(IX + d)	3	Subtract contents of memory IX + d from A
INC	IX	2	Increment 16-bit contents of IX
INC	(IX + d)	3	Increment contents of memory IX + d
DEC	IX	2	Decrement 16-bit contents of IX
DEC	(IX + d)	3	Decrement contents of memory IX + d

General Characteristics

1. Index registers IX and IY are used as memory pointers. The memory address is calculated by adding the displacement byte (also known as offset) to the contents of the index register. The displacement byte is an 8-bit number; it can be either positive or negative. The magnitude of a positive offset is specified by the seven bits D₆-D₀, and the positive sign is indicated by bit D₇ being 0. For a negative offset, the displacement byte is expressed in 2's complement (illustrated in Example 8.10). The total offset ranges from + 127 to - 128 memory locations.
2. When the operand is memory, it is specified by enclosing the memory address in the parentheses (as in any other memory-related instructions), and when the operand is the index register, it is written without parentheses.
3. The instructions listed above follow the same pattern as discussed in the previous sections.
4. These instructions have 2-byte opcodes; therefore, the number of bytes in index-related instructions ranges from two to four bytes.

Example 8.10

Set up index registers IX and IY as memory pointers to locations 2050_H and 2150_H respectively. Load data bytes 32_H into location 2090_H and 97_H into 2110_H using the index registers. Add the bytes and save the sum in the accumulator.

Solution

Mnemonics	Descriptions
LD IX, 2050H	;Point index IX to location 2050H
LD IY, 2150H	;Point index IY to location 2150H

*d is an offset value added to the contents of the index register to obtain in the memory location (see Example 8.10)

```
LD (IX + 40H), 32H      ;Load byte into location (2050H + 40H) = 2090H
LD (IY + C0H), 97H      ;Load byte into location 2110H
                        ;Offset is (2110H - 2150H) 40H locations
                        ;backward. 2's complement of 40H = C0H.
LD A, (IX + 40H)        ;Copy first byte (32H) into A
ADD A, (IY + C0H)        ;Add second byte
HALT
```

The memory addresses are calculated by adding the offset to the low-order byte of the index register.

$$\begin{array}{rcl}
 \text{IX} + 40 = 20 & 50 & \\
 + & 40 & \\
 \hline
 & 90_{\text{H}} & \rightarrow 2090_{\text{H}}
 \end{array}
 \qquad
 \begin{array}{rcl}
 \text{IY} + \text{C0} = 21 & 50 & \\
 + & \text{C0} & \\
 \hline
 & 110_{\text{H}} & \rightarrow 2110_{\text{H}}
 \end{array}$$

Because the second operation is a 2's complement addition, the carry is complemented.

PROGRAMMING TECHNIQUES: LOOPING, COUNTING, AND INDEXING

8.5

The examples illustrated in the previous sections are simple and can be solved manually. However, a computer is at its best, surpassing human capability, when it has to repeat such tasks as adding a large set of numbers or copying bytes from one block of memory locations to another. It is fast and accurate.

To perform a given repetitive task, commonly used techniques are looping, counting, and indexing. To add data bytes stored in memory, for example, the following steps are necessary.

1. Define the task to be repeated: **looping**.

A loop is set up by using either a conditional Jump or an unconditional Jump as illustrated in Examples 8.7 and 8.8.

2. Specify how many times the task is to be repeated: **Counting**.

The counter is set by loading a count (number of times the task is to be repeated) into a register or a register pair, and the counting is done by decrementing the count every time the loop is repeated. The counter can also be set up to count from 0 to the final count using increment instructions.

3. Specify the location of the data: **Indexing**.

The starting location of the data can be specified by loading the memory address into a register pair and using the register pair as a memory pointer or index.

4. Indicate the end of the repetitive task: **Setting Flags**.

The end of repetition is indicated by the flag of the conditional jump instruction. When the condition is true, the loop is repeated, and when the condition is false, the loop execution is terminated, and the execution goes to the next instruction in memory.

These steps are further clarified in Example 8.11.

Example 8.11 Draw a general flowchart to add ten bytes of data stored in memory starting at a given location, and display the sum. Explain the blocks in the flowchart.

Solution To draw a flowchart, the problem must be divided into steps as follows:

1. Set up a counter to count the number of bytes.
Set up a memory pointer (index) to locate where data bytes are stored.
Clear a register if necessary (either to store partial results or count the number of carries).
2. Transfer data from memory to the microprocessor.
3. Perform addition, checking for carry.
4. Save the partial result.
5. Update the counter and the memory pointer for the next operation.
6. Check the flag to indicate the completion of the task. If the condition is true, repeat the task; otherwise go to the next instruction.
7. Display or store the result.

These steps and their sequence can be represented in the form of a flowchart as shown in Figure 8.7.

Blocks

1. Initialization

This is a planning stage where all initial conditions and requirements are defined. In our example, this block should set up a counter, memory index (pointer), carry register, and temporary storage register.

2. Data Acquisition

Data are generally stored in memory or read from an input port. This step is concerned with bringing data into the microprocessor.

3. Data Processing

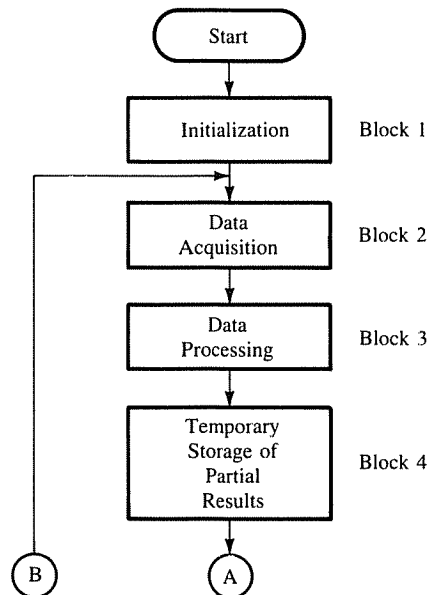
This step involves data manipulation, such as arithmetic or logical operations. In the example, we add a data byte, check for a carry, and update carry register if necessary.

4. Temporary Storage

This step involves storing of partial results so that the previous result will not be destroyed by the next data processing operation.

FIGURE 8.7

Generalized Programming Flowchart



5. Getting Ready for Next Operation

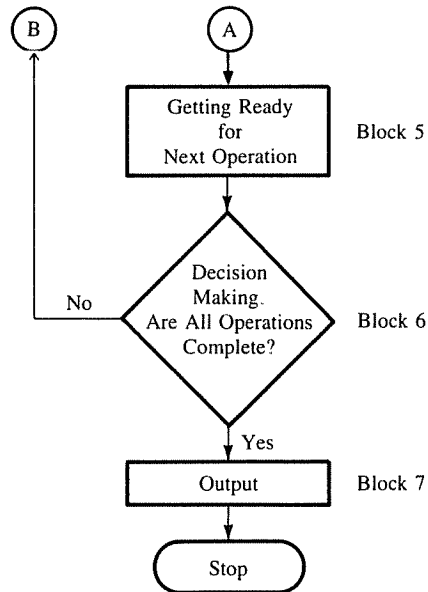
Before we can check whether the task is completed, we need to update the initial conditions; the index and the counter should be incremented or decremented.

6. Decision Making

In this step, the flag is checked. if the condition is true, the loop is repeated; otherwise, the program goes to the next block to display the result.

7. Output

In this Block, the result is either sent to an output port or stored in memory.



LOOKING AHEAD

In the previous sections, we introduced three groups of instructions: data copy, arithmetic, and branching. These instructions were illustrated with examples. In the last section, we discussed the programming techniques with the generalized flowchart (Figure 8.7). Now we will illustrate two programs using the instructions and the programming techniques that were introduced and discussed. We will attempt to analyze the programming problems in terms of the blocks shown in Figure 8.7 and modify these blocks if necessary.

ILLUSTRATIVE PROGRAM 1: BLOCK TRANSFER OF DATA BYTES

8.6

In practical applications, data transfer from one memory block to another is a common occurrence. This illustrative program demonstrates how to copy data bytes from one block of memory to another using the instructions discussed previously.

8.61 Problem Statement

One hundred bytes of data are stored in a block of memory with the starting location labelled as SOURCE. Transfer all data to a new block starting with the location labelled as OUTBUF (Output Buffer). When the data transfer is complete, display 01 at the output port PORT0.

8.62 Problem Analysis

We can analyze this problem in terms of the generalized flowchart (Figure 8.7).

1. *Initialization:* In this problem, we need one counter to count 100 bytes and two memory pointers: one for SOURCE memory and the other for OUTBUF memory.

2. *Data Acquisition:* In this problem, when a data byte is transferred from memory to the microprocessor, it is immediately transferred to a new memory location. There is no data processing; thus, we can eliminate Blocks 3 and 4.

The flowchart is shown in Figure 8.8; Blocks 5, 6 and 7 are identical to the blocks shown in Figure 8.7.

8.63 Program and Flowchart

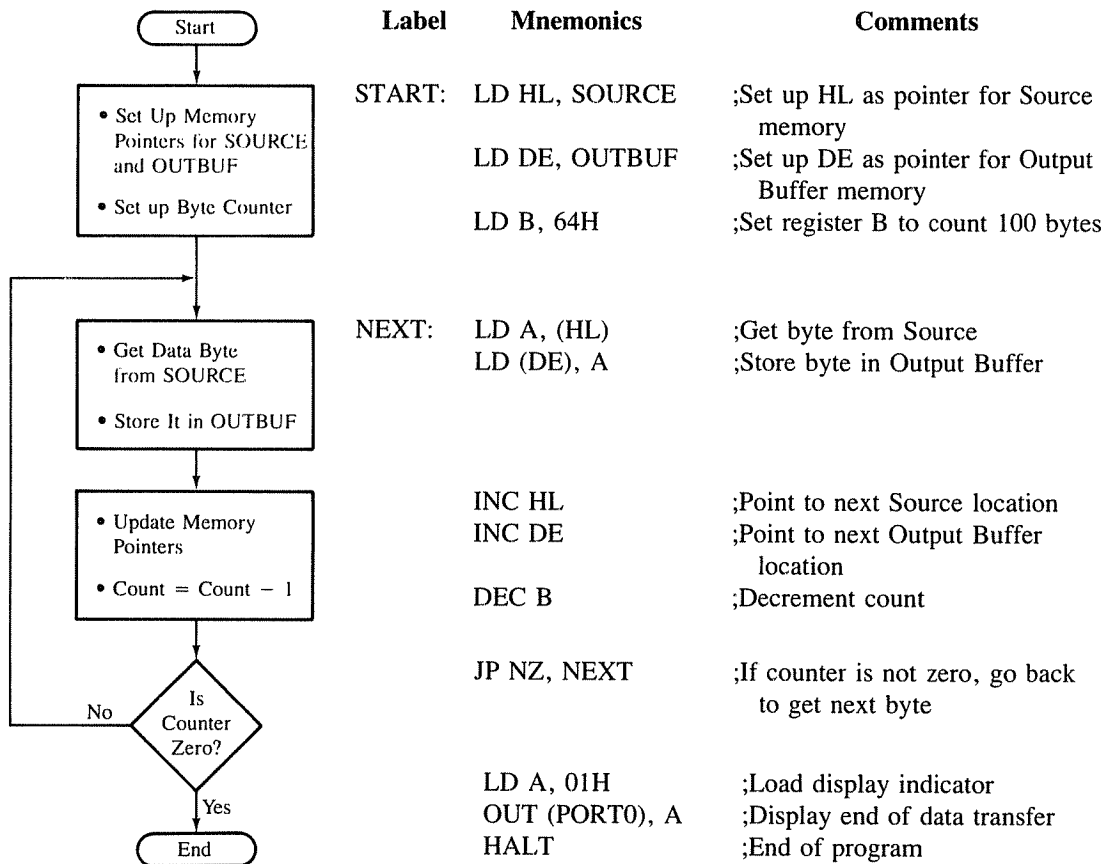


FIGURE 8.8
Flowchart: Block Transfer of Data Bytes

8.64 Program Description and Execution

In this program, several labels are used to specify memory locations and I/O ports; this is a common industrial practice. When an assembler is used to write programs, labeling provides convenience and flexibility. In manual assembly, labels make it easy to read a

program. In this problem, we need to specify or define absolute values of the labels SOURCE, OUTBUF, AND PORT0, as well as the label START, the location where the program begins. The memory address of the label NEXT depends on the starting address of the program, and in manual assembly, it can be calculated by counting the number of bytes of each instruction written before NEXT. If we assume the starting address of the program is 2000_H, the memory address of NEXT will be 2008_H.

The flowchart in Figure 8.8 is similar to the generalized flowchart of Figure 8.7. In the first block, registers HL and DE are used as memory pointers and register B as a counter to count 100 bytes. In the next block, a byte is transferred from SOURCE memory to the accumulator using HL as the memory pointer, and the same byte is stored in OUTBUF memory using DE as the memory pointer.

The statements shown in the next block update the memory pointers and the counter. These statements may appear strange as algebraic equations; in fact, they are not algebraic statements but value assignments. The statement $\text{Count} = \text{Count} - 1$ means the new value is obtained by decrementing the previous value at the completion of one loop. It is important to remember that updating should be done before the decision making because once the Jump instruction finds the Zero flag not set, the program execution will go back to location NEXT. This loop is repeated until the counter $B = 0$, and then the data transfer is indicated by displaying 01 at PORT0: this is shown as End in the flowchart.

When you execute the program on a single-board system, the successful completion of data transfer can be checked by verifying the contents of some locations in SOURCE memory and the corresponding memory locations in OUTBUF memory.

ILLUSTRATIVE PROGRAM 2: ADDITION WITH CARRY

8.7

The following program adds the number of bytes stored in memory and counts the number of carries generated. The maximum sum can be up to 16-bit.

8.71 Problem Statement

Add the following ten data bytes stored in memory with the starting address INBUF (Input Buffer). Store the sum in two memory locations; the low-order byte of the sum should be stored in OUTBUF and the high-order byte in OUTBUF + 1.

Data (H): A2, 37, 4F, 97, 22, 6B, 75, 8E, 9A, C7.

8.72 Problem Analysis

This problem is similar to Example 8.11 and can be very easily analyzed in terms of the blocks shown in the generalized flowchart in Figure 8.7.

1. In the initialization block, we need to set up a counter to count ten bytes, a memory pointer for INBUF, and registers to save the partial sum and carries. We use the accumulator for addition. The memory pointer for OUTBUF is not necessary until the data processing is completed; thus, the memory pointer used for INBUF can be also used for OUTBUF.

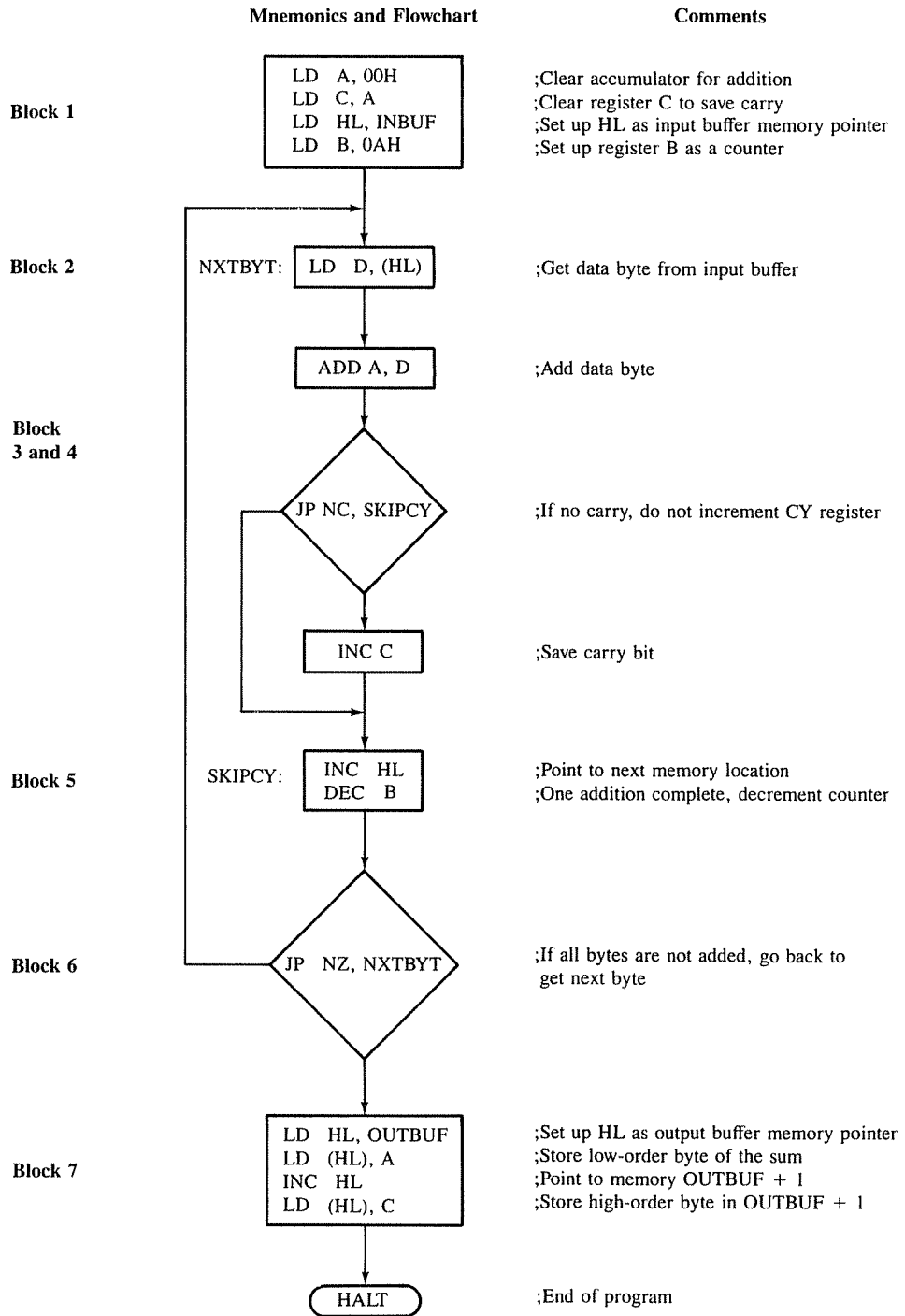


FIGURE 8.9
Adding Ten Bytes: Program and Flowchart

2. In this problem, the data processing block needs to be expanded because of the carries. Whenever a carry is generated after an addition, the carry register will be incremented; thus, the high-order byte of the sum will be saved in the carry register and the low-order byte will be in the accumulator.

8.73 Program Description and Execution

The comments written in the program (see Figure 8.9) explain the function of each instruction, and the flowchart drawn around the instructions shows the sequence of execution.

In the initialization block, the accumulator and register C are cleared for use in arithmetic operations; otherwise, residual data would cause erroneous results. However, register D need not be specifically cleared because the first load instruction replaces its residual data.

This program has two types of loops; one loop repeats the addition-related instructions if the counter is not zero, and the second loop skips the carry counter if there is no carry. The instruction ADC (Add with Carry) is inappropriate for this problem; this instruction can be used for 16-bit addition (See Appendix A).

In the output block, the HL register is used again as a memory pointer for the output buffer memory. After all bytes have been added, the low-order byte of the result, which is in the accumulator, is stored in the memory location OUTBUF, and the high-order byte (carries) in register C is stored in the next memory location OUTBUF + 1.

DEBUGGING A PROGRAM

8.8

Debugging a program is similar to troubleshooting hardware, but is much more difficult and cumbersome. When a program does not work, very few clues alert you to what exactly went wrong. Therefore, it is essential to search carefully for the errors in the program logic, machine code, and execution.

The debugging procedure can be divided into two parts: **static debugging** and **dynamic debugging**. Static debugging is similar to visual inspection of a circuit board; it is the paper-and-pencil check of a flowchart and machine code. Dynamic debugging involves observing outputs, register contents, and flags following the execution of either instruction (the single-step technique) or a group of instructions (the breakpoint technique).

8.81 Static Debugging of Machine Code

Translating the assembly language into the machine code is similar to building a circuit from a schematic, in that the machine code will have errors just as would the circuit board. If an assembler is used to translate the code, most of the errors involved in hand assembly can be eliminated. The following errors are common in manual assembly:

1. Selecting a wrong code.
2. Forgetting the second byte or third byte of an instruction.

3. Specifying the wrong jump location.
4. Not reversing the order of high and low bytes in a Jump instruction.
5. Writing memory addresses in decimal, thus specifying wrong jump locations.

The debugging problems given in the Assignments section at the end of the chapter will illustrate some of these errors.

8.82 Dynamic Debugging

Dynamic debugging is concerned with observations of data after executing an instruction or set of instructions. These observations may include verifying output displays, checking flags, examination of register contents, and tracing execution flow. The process is similar to that of the signal-injection technique in troubleshooting hardware, which involves injecting a signal into a hardware system and checking signals at various points against the expected outputs. Similarly, in debugging programs, we execute a few instructions and check register contents or outputs against the expected results. The commonly used techniques and tools are (1) **Single Step**, (2) **Register Examine**, and (3) **Breakpoint**.

SINGLE STEP

The single step technique allows us to execute one instruction at a time and to observe the results following each instruction. As we advance through each instruction, we will be able to observe memory addresses and codes as they are executed. With the single step technique, we can spot

- ☐ Incorrect addresses.
- ☐ Incorrect jump locations for loops.
- ☐ Incorrect data or missing codes.

This technique is generally used in conjunction with the Register Examine facility (described below), and it is very useful for short programs (50-100 machine codes). For larger programs, the technique is cumbersome and time consuming.

REGISTER EXAMINE

The Register Examine facility allows us to examine the contents of the microprocessor registers and the flags. We can examine registers after the execution of each instruction or after the execution of a group of instructions and compare the contents with the expected outcomes.

BREAKPOINT

The breakpoint technique allows us to check the program in segments. We can set a breakpoint at the end of a program segment or multiple breakpoints at various memory locations. When the microprocessor is asked to execute the program, it executes the codes until it comes across the first breakpoint, where it returns the control to the breakpoint subroutine in the system. At this point, we can examine the registers for expected results. If the segment of the program is found satisfactory, the program can be executed up to the next breakpoint. With the breakpoint technique, we can isolate the segments of the pro-

grams with errors and debug those segments with the single step technique. The breakpoint technique is generally used to check out timing loops, I/O sections, and interrupts.

COMMON SOURCES OF ERRORS

In addition to the errors mentioned in Section 8.81, here is a list of errors of common occurrence in the types of programs discussed in this chapter.

- Failure to clear the accumulator when it is used to add data.
- Failure to clear registers when they are used to store partial results or carries.
- Failure to update an index or a counter.
- Failure to set a flag before using a conditional Jump instruction or use of an inappropriate flag.
- Inadvertently changing a flag before using a Jump instruction.

Z80 SPECIAL INSTRUCTIONS

8.9

The Z80 instruction set includes some instructions that perform more than one task. These instructions improve programming efficiency considerably. Some of these instructions are as follows:

Mnemonics	Description
DJNZ d	Decrement B and Jump Relative on no zero ($Z = 0$) The instruction decrements register B, and if $B \neq 0$, it jumps to memory address specified by the offset value d.
LDI	Load and Increment The instruction copies a data byte from the memory location shown by HL into the memory location pointed to by DE. Registers HL and DE are incremented and BC is decremented.
LDIR	Load, Increment, and Repeat This is similar to the instruction LDI, except that it is repeated until $BC = 0$.
LDD	Load and Decrement The instruction copies a data byte from the memory location shown by HL into the memory location pointed to by DE. Registers HL, DE, and BC are decremented.
LDDR	Load, Decrement, and Repeat This instruction is similar to LDD, except that it is repeated until $BC = 0$.

Example 8.12 Modify the illustrative program Addition With Carry (Section 8.7) using the instruction DJNZ and the offset value.

Solution The following mnemonics are repeated from a segment of the program in Figure 8.9; we assume that the segment is stored in memory locations starting from 2008_H.

Location	Label	Mnemonics	Comments
2008	NXTBYT:	LD D, (HL)	;Get data byte from input buffer
2009		ADD A, D	;Add data byte
200A		JP NC, SKIPCY	;If no carry, do not save CY
200D		INC C	;Save carry bit
200E	SKIPCY:	INC HL	;Point to next memory location
200F		DJNZ F7H	;Decrement counter B, and if B ≠ 0, jump to location 2008 to get the next byte

Program Description and Calculation of the Offset Value In this program, the instruction DJNZ replaces two instructions—DEC B and JP NZ, NXTBYT—from the program in Figure 8.9. The instruction DJNZ assumes that register B is used as a counter. When the Z80 executes the 2-byte instruction DJNZ, the program counter holds the address 2011_H. The offset value for the jump location NXTBYT (2008_H) is obtained as follows:

$$\begin{array}{r}
 \text{Program Counter: } 2011 \\
 \text{Jump Location: } 2008 \\
 \hline
 09_{\text{H}} \text{ (0 0 0 0 1 0 0 1)} \\
 \text{2's Complement of } 09_{\text{H}}: \text{ F7}_{\text{H}} \text{ (1 1 1 1 0 1 1 1)}
 \end{array}$$

8.10 ILLUSTRATIVE PROGRAM 3: BLOCK TRANSFER OF DATA BYTES USING Z80 SPECIAL INSTRUCTIONS

This program transfers data from one memory block to another using the Z80 instruction LDIR.

8.101 Problem Statement

Modify the illustrative program (Section 8.63) using the instruction LDIR. The problem statement from the previous program is as follows: Transfer 100 bytes from the memory block SOURCE to the memory block OUTBUF and indicate the end of data transfer by displaying 01 at PORT0.

8.102 Problem Analysis

To use the instruction LDIR, the HL register should be used to point to memory SOURCE and the DE register to the destination OUTBUF. Even if the total number of bytes to be transferred is an 8-bit number (64_H), the register BC should be used as the counter with the 16-bit count (0064_H).

8.103 Program

Label	Mnemonics	Comments
START:	LD HL, SOURCE	;Set up HL as pointer for SOURCE memory
	LD DE, OUTBUF	;Set up DE as pointer for OUTBUF memory
	LD BC, 0064H	;Specify the number of bytes in BC
	LDIR	;Transfer data byte from SOURCE to OUTBUF and repeat until BC = 0
	LD A, 01H	;Load display indicator
	OUT (PORT0), A	;Display end of data transfer
	HALT	;End of program

8.104 Program Description

In this program, the instruction LDIR is the workhorse; it replaces several instructions from the illustrative program in Section 8.63. The instruction performs three operations: (1) copies a data byte from the memory location pointed to by the HL register into the memory location indicated by the DE register, (2) updates memory pointers (HL and DE) and the counter (BC), and (3) makes the decision to repeat or terminate the loop based on the count in the BC register. When all 100 bytes are copied into new locations, the counter BC becomes zero, and the program goes on to display 01 at PORT0.

SUMMARY

In this chapter, we illustrated a group of instructions from the Z80 set frequently used in writing programs. Instructions were selected from three groups: data copy, arithmetic, and branch. These instructions range from 1-byte to 4-byte in length. General characteristics of these instructions are as follows:

1. The data copy and load instructions copy the contents of the source into the destination without affecting the source contents. They do not affect the flags.
2. The arithmetic instructions (with some exceptions) assume one of the operands is the accumulator, and the result of an operation is usually stored in the accumulator. Most of these instructions affect the flags.
3. The conditional Jump instructions are decision-making instructions and executed according to the status of the flags. Not all instructions affect the flags; in particu-

7. Write instructions to read the input port 80_H and output the reading to the port 05_H (See Figure 8.10). What appliances will be turned on with this output?
8. Write comments to explain the functions of the following instructions:

```
LD HL, 2065H
LD (HL), 00H
HALT
```

Section 8.2

9. What are the contents of the accumulator after the execution of the instruction SUB A? Specify the status of the Z and CY flags.
10. Write the instructions to load FF_H into the accumulator and increment A. Specify the status of the S, Z, and CY flags after the execution of the increment instruction.
11. In the previous assignment (#10), replace the increment instruction with the instruction ADD A, 01H and explain how the flags S, Z, and CY are affected after the addition.

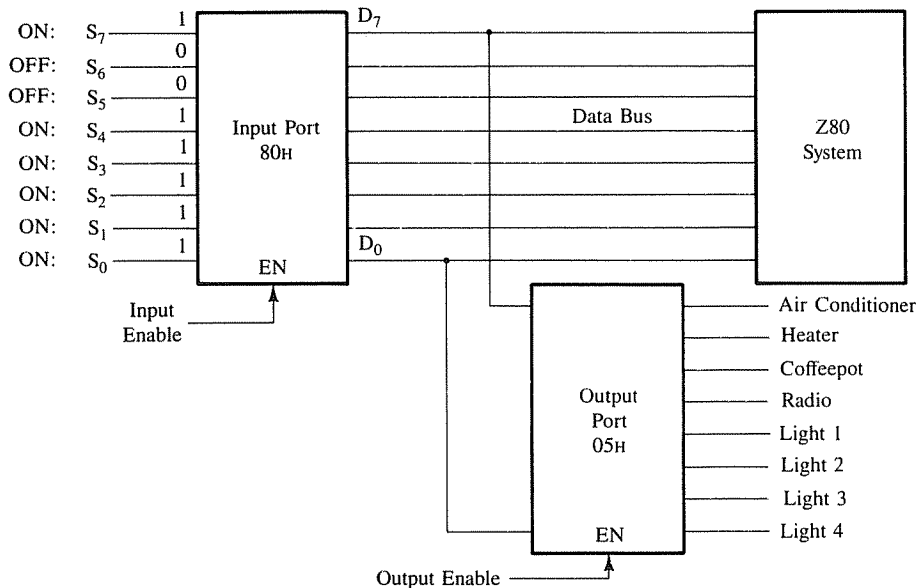


FIGURE 8.10
Appliance Control

12. Specify the register contents and the flag status after the execution of the following instructions. What is being displayed at PORT1?

Register Contents			Flags		
A	B	C	S	Z	CY
FF	77	89	1	0	1 (Initial Conditions)

SUB A
LD B, A
ADD A, A9H
LD C, 57H
ADD A, C
DEC A
OUT (PORT1), A
HALT

13. Write instructions to load 40FF_H into register HL and increment HL. Specify the contents of register HL.
14. Register HL contains 20FF_H. What are the contents of register HL if the byte 01_H is added (not incremented) to register L? What are the statuses of the S, Z, and CY flags after the addition?
15. Write instructions to perform the operations listed in 14, and assemble the code showing memory addresses.
16. Show the contents of the registers and the memory locations that are affected after the execution of the following instructions. Explain the difference between the two INC instructions shown below.

```
LD (209FH), FFH
LD HL, 209FH
INC (HL)
INC HL
HALT
```

17. Find the results of the following operations and explain the difference between the two results.

SUB A	SUB A
LD HL, 971FH	LD HL, 971FH
LD BC, 8F9CH	LD BC, 8F9CH
ADD A, L	ADD A, L
ADD A, C	ADD A, C
ADD A, B	SUB H
SUB H	ADD A, B
HALT	HALT

Section 8.3

18. Load 48A2_H into register BC. Subtract the contents of C from B. If the answer is in 2's complement, display 01_H at PORT1; otherwise, display the result. Assemble the code and execute the program.
19. Execute the program in 18 by loading F247_H in register BC.
20. Three data bytes are stored in memory locations 2050, 2051, and 2052_H. Write instructions to subtract the bytes stored in memory locations 2050 and 2051 from the byte stored in location 2052_H. If the answer is in 2's complement, display FF_H at PORT1; otherwise, display the answer. Execute the instructions with the following set of data in Hex.

Set 1: 2050 = 32, 2051 = 78, 2052 = F9

Set 2: 2050 = 67, 2051 = 98, 2052 = F9

21. The Relative Jump instruction JR NZ, 68H is stored in memory locations 20A7_H and 20A8_H. Calculate the jump location.
22. If the opcode of the Relative Jump instruction JR NC, 8FH is located at memory location 2050_H, calculate the jump location.
23. Assemble the code in Illustrative Program 1 (Section 8.63) and replace the instruction JP NZ, NEXT with the appropriate Relative Jump instruction and offset.
24. In Illustrative Program 2 (Figure 8.9), assemble the code and replace the Jump instructions JP NC, SKIPCY; and JP NZ, NXTBYT with the appropriate Relative Jump instructions and their offsets.

Section 8.4

25. Rewrite the instructions in Figures 8.2 (a), (b), and (c) using the index registers IX and IY as memory pointers.
26. Write instructions to load 2070_H into the IY index register. Using the register IY as a memory pointer with appropriate offsets, store the bytes A2_H and 32_H in memory locations 204F_H and 209F_H, respectively.
27. Calculate the value of the memory pointer if register IX contains 2000_H with the displacement byte 80_H.
28. Calculate the values of two memory pointers if register IY contains 20FF_H and it is combined with the displacement bytes 7F_H and 8F_H.
29. Assuming the index register IX contains 2050_H, explain the difference between the instructions INC IX and INC (IX + 0).
30. Rewrite Illustrative Program 1 (Section 8.6), Block Transfer of Data Bytes, using the index registers as memory pointers.

Section 8.5

31. Draw a flowchart to add the numbers stored in memory location INBUF (Input Buffer). When the result generates a carry, subtract the last byte and display the sum.

32. Modify the above program to count and display the number of bytes added (excluding the last one).
33. You are given a long grocery list and asked to buy the items from number 20 to 47. Any item that costs more than \$10.00 should be excluded. Add up the total cost and show the total expenses. Draw a flowchart for performing these tasks.
34. Modify the above flowchart to include a ceiling of \$100 on total expenses.
35. Draw a flowchart to add the string of numbers stored in memory locations BUFFER. The end of the string is indicated by the number 00. Display the sum.

Section 8.6

36. The following block of data is stored in memory locations INBUF. Transfer the data to the locations OUTBUF in the reverse order.
Data (H) 47, 97, F2, 9C, A2, 98
37. Ten bytes are stored in memory locations starting from INBUF. To insert an additional five bytes at the beginning locations, it is necessary to shift the first ten bytes by five locations. Write a program to shift the data string by five memory locations.
38. Ten 16-bit readings are stored in memory locations SOURCE; the low-order byte is stored first, followed by the high-order byte. Write a program to copy the low-order bytes only to a new location BUFFER.
39. Given the initial conditions in 38, eliminate the high-order readings and store the low-order readings in consecutive memory locations SOURCE.

Section 8.7

40. Draw a flowchart to modify Illustrative Program 2 (Section 8.7) to include the instruction Jump On Carry instead of Jump On No Carry (JP NC, SKIPCY). You may have to use an additional Jump instruction, and the flowchart may have to be altered significantly.
41. Modify Illustrative Program 2 (Section 8.7) using the DE register as a memory pointer instead of HL.
42. Modify Illustrative Program 2 (Section 8.7) using the DE register as a memory pointer and a memory location as a counter (instead of register B).
43. Write a program to add the following string of data bytes until a carry is generated. When the Carry flag is set, subtract the last byte added and display the sum at PORT1.
Data (H) 89, 32, 2B, 7A, B5, 68, 2F, . . .
44. Modify the previous program to count the number of bytes added (excluding the byte that generates the carry) and display the count at PORT2.
45. Ten 16-bit readings are stored in memory locations SOURCE; the low-order byte first, followed by the high-order byte. Write a program to add the low-order bytes. Display the sum at two different ports and store the sum in two memory locations OUTBUF and OUTBUF + 1.
46. Two sets of data, ten bytes each, are stored in memory locations INBUF1 and

INBUF2. Subtract each data byte stored at INBUF2 from the corresponding data byte at INBUF1. Add the remainders, and if the sum of the remainders generates a carry, display FFH at PORT1; otherwise, display the sum at PORT1.

Section 8.8

47. Find the errors in the following instructions.

- a. The following instructions add two Hex bytes (06 and 52) and display the sum at PORT7.

2000	06	LD B, 06H	;Load data bytes
2001	06		
2002	0E	LD C, 52H	
2003	52		
2004	80	ADD A, B	;Add data bytes
2005	81	ADD A, C	
2006	D3	OUT (07H), A	;Display the sum
2007	76	HALT	

- b. The following instructions add five bytes stored in memory locations starting from 2050_H. The sum will be less than FF_H.

2000	9F	SUB A	;Clear A
2001	21	LD HL, 2050H	;Set up HL as memory index
2002	20		
2003	50		
2004	78	LD B, 05H	;Set up B as a counter
2005	05		
2006	86	ADD A, (HL)	;Add byte
2007	23	INC HL	;Point to next byte
2008	05	DECB	;Reduce count
2009	D2	JP NZ, 2004H	;If B \neq 0, get next byte
2010	04		
2011	20		
2012	76	HALT	;End of program

- c. The following program transfers a 100_H bytes of data starting from the memory location 2100_H to a new location starting from 2800_H.

	LD HL, 2100H	;Set up HL as index for Source
	LD BC, 2800H	;Set up BC as index for new memory
	LD DE, 0100H	;Set up DE as counter
NEXT:	LD A, (HL)	;Get byte

LD (BC), A	;Transfer byte to new memory
INC HL	;Update indexes and counter
INC BC	
DEC DE	
JP NZ, NEXT	;If transfer is not complete, go back and get next byte
HALT	;End of data transfer

Section 8.9

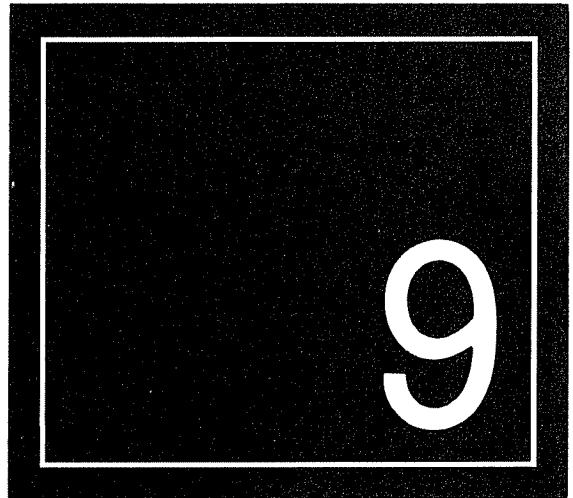
48. A data set with 512 bytes is stored in memory locations with the starting address INBUF1 (2100_H). Shift the entire data set by 256 locations with the starting address INBUF2 on the next page (2200_H). Use the instruction LDDR.
49. Rewrite Illustrative Program 2 (Section 8.7) using the instructions DJNZ and JR NC.
50. Rewrite Illustrative Program 1 (Section 8.6) using the index registers IX and IY as memory pointers and the instruction DJNZ.

Logic and Bit Manipulation Instructions

The microprocessor is a programmable logic device; it can perform all the logic functions of hardware gates, such as AND, OR, and Ex-OR (exclusive-OR). It can compare two bytes and indicate the comparison (less than, equal to, or greater than) by setting appropriate flags. In addition, it can rotate and shift bytes, and manipulate individual bits.

In this chapter, Z80 instructions related to logic and compare operations and bit manipulation are introduced. These instructions are illustrated with examples, and their applications are shown in two illustrative programs, one of which demonstrates how to design time delays using software instructions. This chapter also includes a section on debugging, which lists errors that commonly occur in writing these types of programs and suggests debugging techniques using a counter program.

Finally, this chapter introduces Z80 special instructions related to the compare operations. These special instructions perform multiple tasks such as comparing two bytes, updating registers that are used as memory pointers and a counter, and making a decision to change the program sequence. For example, one of the Compare instructions can search for a specific byte in a given memory block.



OBJECTIVES

- Explain how logic instructions (AND, OR, and XOR) perform their operations and how flags are affected by these instructions.
- Write a set of instructions to illustrate logic operations and explain how these instructions are used in masking, setting, and resetting bits.
- Explain how the Compare instructions perform a comparison and modify flags to indicate the comparison of two bytes.
- Explain the Rotate instructions and their effects on the contents of the accumulator and the CY flag.
- Write a set of instructions (programs) to illustrate the use of Compare and Rotate instructions.
- Explain how a specific bit in a register or memory can be checked and set or reset by using bit manipulation instructions.
- Write a program to set/reset specific bits at a given interval.
- Explain the Z80 special instructions related to search and compare operations.
- Write a set of instructions to illustrate these Z80 special instructions and explain their advantages.

9.1

LOGIC AND COMPARE OPERATIONS

The microprocessor is basically a programmable logic chip. It can perform all the logic functions of the hard-wired logic through its instruction set. However, the logic operations are slightly different from the hard-wired logic. The AND gate shown in Figure 9.1(a) has two inputs and one output. On the other hand, in an 8-bit microprocessor, the AND instruction simulates eight 2-input AND gates. Figure 9.1(b) shows ANDing the contents of register B with the contents of the accumulator. Register B contains 77_H and the accumulator has 81_H . After ANDing, the result (01_H) is stored back into the accumulator. The other logic functions are performed similarly. In the following sections, we discuss instructions related to AND, OR, and XOR logic functions; the instruction related to the NOT function was discussed as 1's complement in the last chapter.

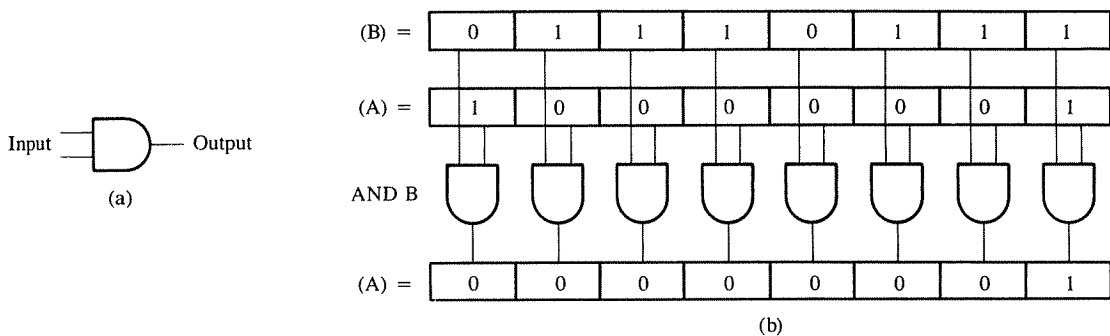


FIGURE 9.1

(a) AND Gate, and (b) a Simulated AND Instruction

9.11 Logic AND, OR, and XOR Instructions

Logic instructions are examples of implied addressing; the implied operand is the 8-bit word of the accumulator. The other operand can be an 8-bit data word or the contents of a register or memory. When the second operand is a memory location, it can be specified either by the 16-bit number in the HL register or the 16-bit number in an index register with an offset byte. (See Appendix A for complete descriptions with examples of these instructions.)

Opcode	Operand	Bytes	Description
AND	r	1	AND contents of a register with the accumulator
AND	8-bit	2	AND 8-bit data with the accumulator
AND	(HL)	1}	AND contents of memory with the accumulator
AND	(IX + d)*	3}	
OR	r	1	OR contents of a register with the accumulator
OR	8-bit	2	OR 8-bit data with the accumulator
OR	(HL)	1}	OR contents of memory with the accumulator
OR	(IX + d)*	3}	
XOR	r	1	Exclusive OR contents of a register with the accumulator
XOR	8-bit	2	Exclusive OR 8-bit data with the accumulator
XOR	(HL)	1}	Exclusive OR contents of memory with the accumulator
XOR	(IX + d)*	3}	

General Characteristics

These logic instructions

1. implicitly assume that the accumulator is one of the operands.
2. reset (clear) Carry (CY) flag and modify S, Z, and P/V flags according to the data conditions of the result.
3. place the result in the accumulator.
4. do not affect the contents of the operand register or memory.

Figure 9.2 shows an input port (PORT1) with three switches connected to data lines D₀, D₁, and D₂; when a switch is on, it provides logic 1 to the respective data line. Write instructions to read the port and save the reading in memory location INBUF.

Example
9.1

Solution

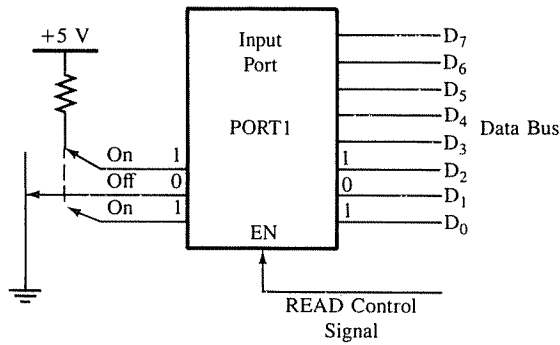
```

IN A, (PORT1)    ;Read the switch positions
AND 07H          ;Mask data bits D3-D7
LD (INBUF), A    ;Store the reading in memory INBUF
HALT

```

*The similar instructions related to the index register IY are not shown here.

FIGURE 9.2
Reading Switches from an Input Port



The first instruction reads the switch positions at PORT1. Even if only three switches are connected, the reading will be 8-bit data; bits D₃-D₇ will be random. Therefore, bits D₃-D₇ should be masked or eliminated without affecting the switch positions. This is accomplished by ANDing the input reading with an appropriate masking byte (07_H). The masking byte is obtained by placing 0s in bit positions that are to be masked and by placing 1's in bit positions where switches are connected. The masking is performed as follows, and the switch positions (1 0 1) are stored in memory INBUF.

		D ₇	D ₆	D ₅	D ₄	D ₃	D ₂	D ₁	D ₀
Input Reading in Accumulator:		X	X	X	X	X	1	0	1
Masking Byte (07 _H):	AND	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	1
Result in Accumulator:		0	0	0	0	0	1	0	1
Flag Status:		S = 0, Z = 0, CY = 0							

Example 9.2

A microcomputer with two input ports and one output port is designed to monitor various processes (conveyor belts) on the floor of a manufacturing plant (Figure 9.3). The input port F1_H with seven switches is located at the north end of the floor, and the input port F2_H, also with seven switches, is located at the south end of the floor. The port F1_H is used to start and stop the conveyor belts in a normal situation, and if necessary, a belt can be stopped or prevented from starting by sending logic 1 through the corresponding switch at port F2_H. (The data line D₇ of the output port is connected to an emergency signal and is not a part of this example.)

Write instructions to

1. Turn on and off the seven conveyor belts according to ON/OFF positions of switches S₆-S₀ at port F1_H.
2. Stop the conveyor belt if the corresponding switch is on at port F2_H.
3. Monitor the switches continuously.

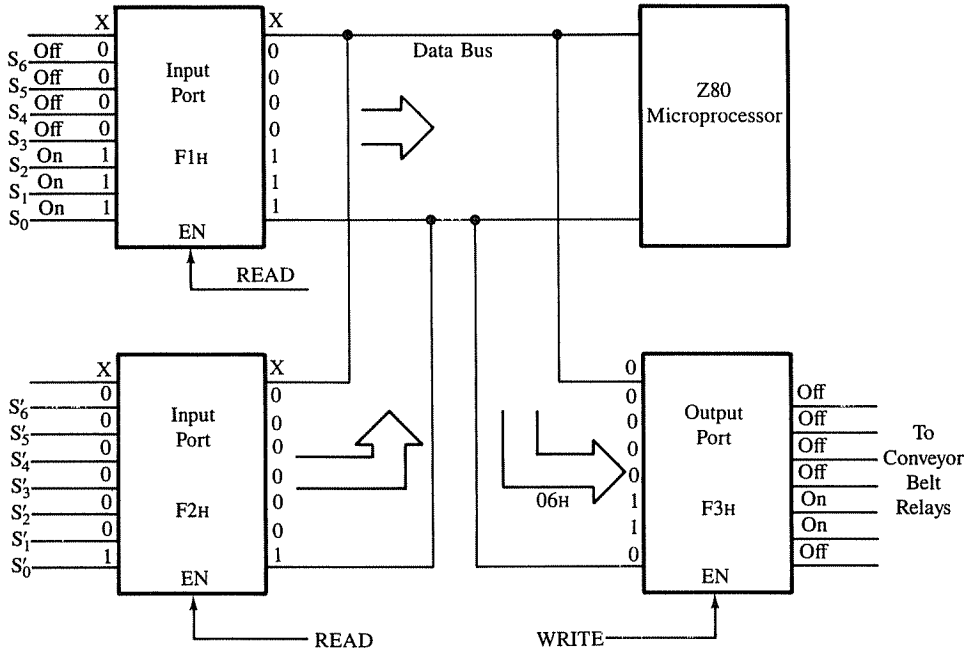


FIGURE 9.3
Microprocessor-Controlled Conveyor Belts

Solution

START: IN A, (F1H)	;Read switches at F1H	X 0 0 0 0 1 1 1 (A)
AND A, 7FH	;Mask bit D ₇	0 1 1 1 1 1 1
LD B, A	;Save reading from F1H	0 0 0 0 0 1 1 1 (A) → (B)
IN A, (F2H)	;Read switches at F2H	X 0 0 0 0 0 0 1 (A)
AND A, 7FH	;Mask bit D ₇	0 1 1 1 1 1 1
XOR B	;Check switches that are on at F1 and F2	0 0 0 0 0 0 1 (A)
OUT (F3H), A	;Turn on/off appropriate conveyor belts	0 0 0 0 0 1 1 1 (B)
		0 0 0 0 0 1 1 0 (A)

```

JP START      ;Go back and
               read switches
               again

```

The three switches S_0 , S_1 , and S_2 at port $F1_H$ are turned on as shown in Figure 9.3. Initially, these switch positions are read, bit D_7 is masked, and the reading is saved in register B. In port $F2_H$, the switch S_0' is on, which means somebody from the south end of the floor wants to stop the belt connected to line D_0 . This reading, after bit D_7 is masked again, is Exclusive-ORed with the reading from the port $F1_H$. Because the switch S_0' is on, the output at port $F3_H$ is 0 0 0 0 0 1 1 0, which turns off the first conveyor belt.

9.12 Compare Instructions

The Compare instructions test a byte for less than, equal to, or greater than the contents of the accumulator, and the comparison is indicated by the flags without affecting the operands. The instructions can test the contents of a register, memory, or 8-bit data against the contents of the accumulator. The instructions are as follows:

Opcode	Operand	Bytes	Description
CP	r	1	Compare the contents of a register with the accumulator
CP	8-bit	2	Compare 8-bit data with the accumulator
CP	(HL)	1}	Compare the contents of memory with the accumulator
CP	(IX + d)	3}	

General Description These instructions compare the operand (data byte, register contents, or memory contents) with the contents of the accumulator by subtracting the operand from the accumulator. However, no contents are modified; the comparison is indicated by setting the flags.

1. If $(A) < \text{operand}$, the Carry flag is set and the Zero flag is reset.
2. If $(A) = \text{operand}$, the Zero flag is set and the Carry flag is reset.
3. If $(A) > \text{operand}$, the Carry and Zero flags are reset.
4. Other flags are also affected according to the result of the subtraction.
5. When the operand is memory, the address is specified by the contents of HL register or index registers with an offset byte.

Example 9.3

Write instructions to compare the byte in memory location 2050_H with 80_H . If the byte is equal to 80_H , jump to location CHECK, and if it is higher than 80_H , jump to OVRLD to indicate the circuit overload.

Solution

```
LD  HL, 2050H    ;Set up HL as memory pointer
LD  A, 80H        ;Load comparison byte
CP  (HL)          ;Compare memory byte with 80H
JR  Z, CHECK      ;If memory byte = 80H, begin CHECK procedures
JR  C, OVRLD      ;Indicate overload
```

A Relative Jump instruction can be used with a label; the assembler will automatically calculate the offset value. However, in manual assembly, the magnitude of the offset must be calculated by the user.

ROTATE (SHIFT) OPERATIONS AND BIT MANIPULATION

9.2

The rotate instructions shift each bit either to the right or to the left. These instructions are used primarily for mathematical operations and serial I/O, where one bit is transmitted over a single line. The Z80 has a set of rotate instructions that can rotate bits not only in the accumulator but in any register and memory location.

Another group of instructions that makes the Z80 one of the most attractive microprocessors in control applications is bit manipulation. The Z80 can test, set, or reset any bit in an 8-bit register or memory. In other microprocessors, the user must write a set of instructions to test a bit in a register or memory.

In this section, we first introduce the Rotate instructions dealing with the accumulator bits and then discuss the Rotate instructions dealing with registers and memory. Finally, we examine the bit manipulation instructions.

9.21 Rotate Instructions (Accumulator)

The following Rotate instructions deal with the bits in the accumulator. The rotate operations can be classified into two groups: Rotate Left and Rotate Right. Each group can be further classified into (1) 8-bit rotation and (2) 9-bit rotation through Carry. In 8-bit rotation, each bit of the accumulator is shifted to the adjacent position. In this operation, the Carry flag is affected by the rotation, but it is not a part of the rotation. On the other hand, in 9-bit rotation, the C flag is one of the bits in the rotation. These instructions are shown in Figure 9.4.

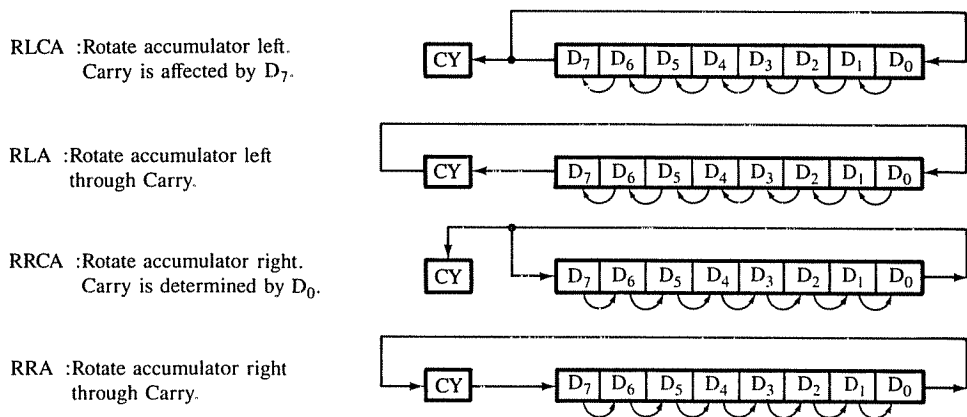


FIGURE 9.4
Rotate Instructions

**Example
9.4**

The accumulator contains 81_H with the Carry flag reset. Illustrate the contents of the accumulator and the status of the Carry flag after the execution of each rotate instruction.

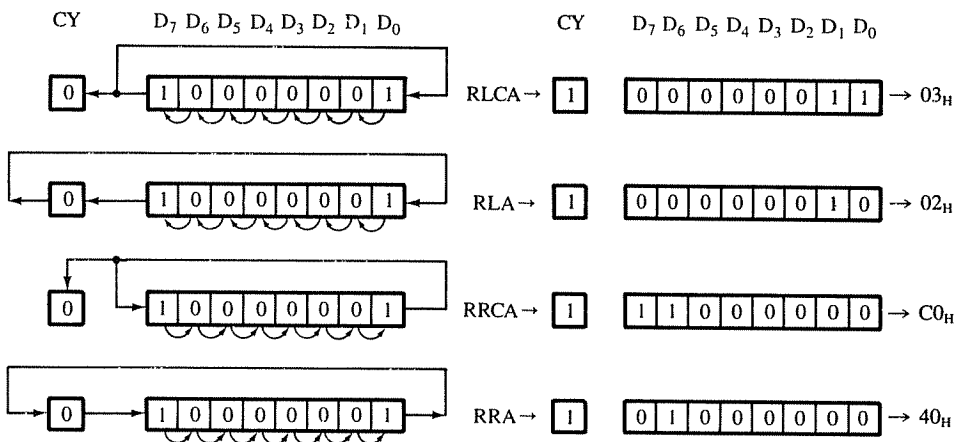


FIGURE 9.5
Rotate Instructions and Accumulator Contents

Solution

Figure 9.5 shows how the byte 81_H in the accumulator is changed after various rotate instructions. The first two instructions rotate bits to the left; however, RLCA is an 8-bit rotation and RLA is a 9-bit rotation. In instruction RLCA, bit D₇ is rotated into bit D₀; yet, in instruction RLA, CY is rotated into bit D₀. Both instructions modify the CY flag according to bit D₇. Similarly, RRCA is an 8-bit and RRA a 9-bit rotate right instruction.

The memory location 2050_H contains a 4-bit number. Write instructions to multiply the number by ten and store the result in the same memory location.

Example
9.5

Solution

```
LD HL, 2050H    ;Set up memory pointer
LD A, (HL)      ;Get the number
RLCA            ;Multiply by 2
LD B, A         ;Save result to use it later
RLCA            ;Multiply by 4
RLCA            ;Multiply by 8
ADD A, B        ;To multiply by 10, add multiply-by-2
LD (HL), A      ;Save result in memory
HALT
```

Rotating bits to the left by one position is equivalent to multiplying the number by two, and rotating to the right is equivalent to dividing by two. For example, if the number is 01_H, the instruction Rotate Left makes it 02_H. This technique is valid until bit D₇ does not rotate 1 into bit D₀. For example, rotating the number 80_H left makes it 01_H. However, this number can be divided by two by rotating it right.

In the above instructions, the number is multiplied by eight by rotating the accumulator contents three times. Adding the result of multiply-by-two to the result of multiply-by-eight is equivalent to multiply-by-ten.

9.22 Rotate and Shift Instructions (Registers and Memory)

The Z80 instruction set has several rotate instructions; these instructions can rotate bits in a register or memory. This is unlike the 8080 set, which restricts rotation to the accumulator. In addition, the Z80 has shift instructions which shift bits in a given direction. In the following instructions, *r* represents any register (A, B, C, D, E, H, or L), and *m* stands for a memory location in R/W memory. In these instructions, a memory location can be specified by HL or an index register. The instructions are as follows:

Opcode	Operand	Description
RLC	<i>r</i> or <i>m</i>	Rotate bits left in a register or memory.
RL	<i>r</i> or <i>m</i>	Rotate bits left through Carry in a register or memory.
RRC	<i>r</i> or <i>m</i>	Rotate bits right in a register or memory.
RR	<i>r</i> or <i>m</i>	Rotate bits right through Carry in a register or memory.
SLA	<i>r</i> or <i>m</i>	Shift bits left through CY in a register or memory and insert 0 in bit position D ₀ .
SRL	<i>r</i> or <i>m</i>	Shift bits right through CY in a register or memory and insert 0 in bit position D ₇ .

The set also includes the instructions SRA, RLD, and RRD. (See Appendix A for their complete description.)

General Characteristics

1. In these instructions, the memory address can be specified either by using the HL register or an index register with an offset.
2. Flags S, Z, and P/V are modified according to data conditions. The CY flag is determined by D₇ in left rotation (or shift) and by D₀ in right rotation (or shift).
3. The Shift instructions (SLA and SRA) differ from the rotate instructions in their operations. In Shift instructions, bits are shifted into the next position and 0s are inserted from the other direction. (See Appendix A for complete discription of these instructions.)

Example 9.6

In a Key Monitor program, register B is used to store binary codes of data keys of the Hex keyboard. When a key is pressed, the accumulator receives the 4-bit binary code, and it is stored as the low-order four bits in register B. When a new key is pressed, the previous 4-bit code in register B is shifted to the left and the new key code is stored as the low-order four bits. Write instructions to store a new key code in register B.

Solution

```
SLA B      ;Shift low-order key code to left
SLA B      ;and clear bit positions D3–D0 in B
SLA B
SLA B
OR  B      ;Store new key code as low-order bits
LD B, A
```

9.23 Bit Manipulation

The bit manipulation group has three types of instructions: Bit Test, Bit Set, and Bit Reset. These instructions can test, set, or reset a bit in a register or memory. The instructions are as follows:

Opcode	Operand	Description
BIT	b, r or m	Test bit b in register or memory. If bit is 0, set Z flag, and if it is 1, reset Z flag.
SET	b, r or m	Set bit b in register or memory.
RES	b, r or m	Reset bit b in register or memory.

General Characteristics

1. The operand “b” represents any bit from D₇ to D₀; it is specified as a number between 0 and 7.
2. The memory address can be specified by using either the HL register or an index register.
3. The Set/Reset instructions do not affect any flags.

Write instructions to read a byte from PORT1, reset bit D₇ and store the reading in memory INBUF.

Example
9.7

Solution

```
IN A, (PORT1)    ;Read PORT1
RES 7, A         ;Eliminate the parity bit
LD (INBUF), A    ;Store reading in memory
```

To cite a practical use for these instructions, bit D₇ is used to indicate the parity in ASCII characters; therefore, to process these characters, bit D₇ must be eliminated (this will be discussed in Chapter 15).

ILLUSTRATIVE PROGRAM 1: SEARCHING FOR A MAXIMUM NUMBER

9.3

This program searches for a maximum number in a given set of data bytes stored in memory. It compares two numbers at a time, saves the higher number, and continues the process until the end of the data set.

9.31 Problem Statement

A set of ten readings is stored in memory locations starting from INBUF. Write a program to find the highest reading in the set, and store that reading in memory OUTBUF.

9.32 Problem Analysis

1. Initialization: In this problem, we need one counter to count ten readings and a memory pointer for the INBUF memory. In addition, we need one register and the accumulator for comparison.
2. Data Processing: This block involves comparing two numbers and saving the larger one for the next comparison. This process is continued until the counter is zero.

9.33 Program

```
START:  XOR A           ;Begin with minimum reading (00)
        LD B, 0AH       ;Set up register B as a counter
        LD HL, INBUF    ;Set up HL as memory pointer for INBUF
NEXT:   CP (HL)         ;Compare memory reading with accumulator
        JP NC, SKIP     ;If reading is lower, do not save
        LD A, (HL)      ;Save reading
        SKIP: INC HL    ;Point to next memory location
        DEC B          ;One comparison complete, decrement count
        JP NZ, NEXT    ;Get next reading if counter ≠ 0
```

LD HL, OUTBUF	;Set up HL as memory pointer for OUTBUF
LD (HL), A	;Save the highest reading
HALT	;End of program

9.34 Program Description

In this program, the new concept is a comparison of two numbers; otherwise, the remaining program is similar to the programs in the previous chapter.

This program begins by clearing the accumulator and then compares the reading in memory INBUF with the accumulator. If the data byte in the accumulator (A) is larger than the data byte in memory (HL), the CY flag is reset, and the program does not save the byte. If the data byte in memory is larger than (A), the CY flag is set, and the byte is saved for the next comparison. This process is continued until all the readings are compared.

9.4

ILLUSTRATIVE PROGRAM 2: GENERATING SQUARE WAVE PULSES

The microprocessor can be used as a **function generator** to produce various types of waveforms using time delays and appropriate hardware. This program generates a square wave for a given frequency by turning a bit of an output port on or off at the specified time interval.

9.41 Problem Statement

Write a program to generate a square wave with period of 500 μ s if the system frequency is 2 MHz. Use bit D₀ of the output port PORT1 to display the waveform.

9.42 Problem Analysis

This problem is somewhat different from the previous data transfer or arithmetic programs. It involves turning bit D₀ on or off every 250 μ s; Figure 9.6 shows the flowchart.

The initialization block is simple; it includes the loading of bit pattern into the accumulator, but does not even require a counter or a memory pointer. The bit manipulation block is similar to the data processing block; it gets ready appropriate bits for an output, and the output block turns bit D₀ on or off. The time delay block provides appropriate delay for the output pulse.

TIME DELAYS

A **time delay** is generated by loading a general-purpose register with an appropriate count and setting up a loop to decrement the count until it reaches zero. The delay is determined by the clock period of the system, the number of instructions in the loop, and the number of times the loop is repeated. A typical set of instructions representing the time delay is shown here, and Figure 9.7 shows the flowchart for these instructions.

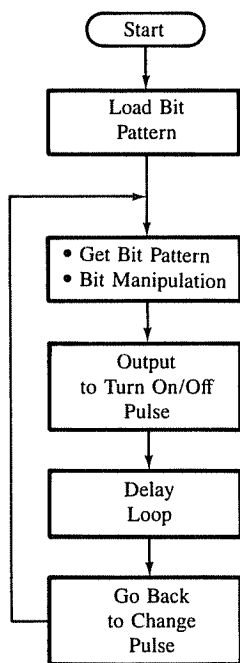


FIGURE 9.6
Flowchart: Square Wave Generation

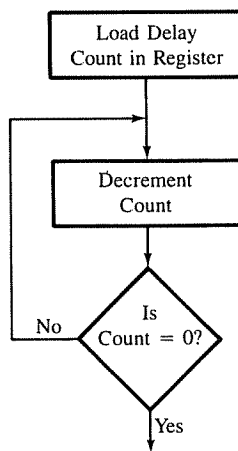


FIGURE 9.7
Flowchart: Time Delay

Mnemonics	T-states	Comments
LD B, 64H	7	;Delay Count
LOOP:DEC B	4	;Delay Loop
JP NZ, LOOP	10	

To calculate the time delay in this loop, we need to examine the T-states in the loop; one T-state is equivalent to one clock period of the system. For example, the instruction DEC B has four T-states, so the Z80 executes the instruction in four clock periods. The loop includes two instructions with 14 T-states, and the loop is repeated 100 ($64_H = 100$) times; the first instruction LD B, 64H is not part of the loop. Therefore, the loop delay, T_L , is calculated by the formula $T_L = (T_C \times L_T \times N_{10})$. In our example,

$$\begin{aligned}
 T_C &= \text{System clock period (} f = 2 \text{ MHz; } T = 1/f = 0.5 \text{ } \mu\text{s)} \\
 L_T &= \text{Loop T-states (14)} \\
 N_{10} &= \text{Count in decimal (} 64_H = 100) \\
 T_L &= (0.5 \times 10^{-6} \times 14 \times 100) \\
 &= 700 \text{ } \mu\text{s.}
 \end{aligned}$$

To calculate the total delay, we need to include the execution time outside the loop. In this example, one instruction (LD B, 64H) is outside the loop. It has seven T-states and will require 3.5 μ s.

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Total Delay } T_D &= T_o + T_L \\ \text{where } T_o &= \text{Delay outside the loop} \\ T_L &= \text{Loop delay} \\ T_D &= 700 \mu\text{s} + 3.5 \mu\text{s} \\ &= 703.5 \mu\text{s}\end{aligned}$$

In most applications, the delay outside the loop is insignificant and can be ignored. However, in our illustrative program, the delay outside the loop is quite significant, as discussed in Section 9.44. We can now write the program for generating square wave.

9.43 Program

	Mnemonics	T-states	Comments
1.	START: LD C, 01010101B		;Load bit pattern
2.	ROTATE: LD A, C	(4)	;Place bit pattern in A
3.	RLCA	(4)	;Change bit pattern for next output
4.	LD C, A	(4)	;Save bit pattern
5.	AND 01H	(7)	;Mask bits D ₇ –D ₁
6.	OUT (PORT1),A	(11)	;Change pulse voltage
7.	LD B, COUNT	(7)	;Load register B with a delay count
8.	LOOP: DEC B	(4)	;Set up delay loop
9.	JP NZ, LOOP	(10)	
10.	JP ROTATE	(10)	;Go back to change pulse voltage

9.44 Program Description

The bit pattern is selected for this program in such way that when it is rotated, it provides logic 0 and 1 alternately at bit D₀. The bit pattern is masked by ANDing with the byte 01 to eliminate bits D₇–D₁. Bit D₀ is turned on and off at the interval of 250 μ s to generate a square wave with the period of 500 μ s. In this program, we are concerned with the delay between two consecutive outputs and not just the delay in the loop. The loop count for the total delay of 250 μ s is calculated as follows:

1. The delay loop consists of two instructions (8 and 9) with a total of 14 T-states; however, the number of times the loop is repeated (COUNT) needs to be calculated.

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Delay in the loop } T_L &= (0.5 \times 10^{-6} \times 14 \times \text{Count}) \\ &= 7 \times 10^{-6} \times \text{Count}\end{aligned}$$

2. In this problem, we are concerned with not just the delay in the loop, but how long the pulse stays on. After the execution of the OUT instruction (6), all the delay caused by the instructions in addition to the delay loop should be accounted for until the OUT instruction is executed again. The instructions that are executed once are 2 through 7 and 10. Therefore,

$$T\text{-states outside the loop} = 47.$$

$$\text{Delay outside the loop } T_O = (0.5 \times 10^{-6} \times 47) = 23.5 \mu\text{s}$$

3. Total delay $T_D = T_O + T_L$

$$250 \mu\text{s} = 23.5 + 7 \times 10^{-6} \times \text{Count}$$

$$\text{Count} = (250 - 23.5)/7 \approx 32$$

In this program, the delay outside the loop is quite significant, ten percent of the total delay. The loop will be repeated 32 (20_H) times.

DEBUGGING PROGRAMS

9.5

The debugging techniques discussed in the previous chapter can be used to check errors in programs similar to those discussed in this chapter. Common sources of errors in these types of programs are as follows:

1. Failure to update a memory pointer or a counter.
2. Failure to set a flag before using a conditional Jump instruction. This is especially true with 16-bit increment/decrement instructions.
3. Failure to save partial results.
4. Specifying Jump instruction on a wrong flag. This error occurs frequently with the Compare instructions.
5. Use of wrong Rotate instruction or improper combination of Rotate instructions.
6. Errors in counting T-states in a delay loop. Typically, the first instruction—to load a delay register—is mistakenly included in the loop.
7. Errors in recognizing how many times a loop is repeated.
8. Failure to convert a delay count from a decimal number into its hexadecimal equivalent or vice versa.
9. Conversion error from decimal to hexadecimal number or vice versa.
10. Specifying wrong jump location, thus possibly setting up an infinite loop.

9.51 Illustrative Program for Debugging

The following program is designed as a Hex counter to

1. Count from 00 to 20_H continuously.
2. Provide 450 ms delay between two consecutive counts.
3. Illustrate the loop within the loop technique. The inner loop LOOP1 provides 2.25 ms of delay.

The program includes several errors. Recognize the errors by answering the questions below. After correcting those errors, execute the program. If the program still does not give you the expected output, debug the program using the single-step and the break point techniques. For delay calculations, the system's clock is assumed to be 2 MHz.

	Mnemonics	T-states	Comments
1.	START: LD A, 00H		;Load initial count
2.	DSPLAY: OUT (PORT1), A	(11)	;Display count
3.	LOOP2: LD B, C7H	(7)	;Load count for outer loop
4.	LD C, COUNT1	(7)	;Load count for inner loop
5.	LOOP1: DEC C	(4)	;Decrement COUNT1
6.	NOP	(4)	;Add T-states for delay
7.	JP NZ, LOOP1	(10)	;Repeat LOOP1 until C = 0
8.	DEC B	(4)	;Decrement count in outer loop
9.	JP Z, LOOP2	(10)	;Repeat LOOP2 until B = 0
10.	INC A	(4)	;Next Hex count
11.	CP 20H	(7)	;Is Hex count = 20 _H ?
12.	JP NC, DSPLAY	(10)	;Go back to display count
13.	JP DSPLAY		;Start again

DEBUGGING QUESTIONS

1. Is the jump location for instruction 7 appropriate?
2. The COUNT1 for LOOP1 is as follows:

$$\begin{aligned}
 T_{IL} &= T_c \times (\text{T-states}) \times \text{COUNT1} \\
 2.25 \text{ ms} &= 0.5 \mu\text{s} \times 25 \times \text{COUNT1} \\
 \text{COUNT1} &= 180
 \end{aligned}$$

Find the error in the calculations, and recalculate COUNT1.

3. The total delay (T) between two consecutive outputs is the sum of the initial delay (T_I), the outer loop delay (T_{OL}), and the inner loop delay (T_{LI}). The inner loop (LOOP1) is repeated 199 ($C7_H$) times because of the outer loop. Thus:

$$T_{LI} = 199 \times 2.25 \text{ ms} = 447.75 \text{ ms}$$

The instructions in the outer loop are **3, 4, 8, and 9**, which require a total of 28 T-states. Since these instructions are repeated 199 times:

$$T_{OL} = (0.5 \mu\text{s}) \times 28 \times 199 = 2.78 \text{ ms}$$

The instructions executed once before the next display are **2, 3, 10, 11, and 12**—a total of 39 T-states.

$$T_I = 0.5 \mu\text{s} \times 39 = 19 \mu\text{s}$$

Is there any error in these calculations, assuming the appropriate COUNT1?

4. Is the jump location for instruction 9 appropriate? What is the effect of the present location on LOOP2?
5. Execute the program, and observe the output. Write your educated guesses about the output.
6. Set up a breakpoint after instruction 8 and execute the program. Examine the registers.
7. Single-step the remaining instructions and examine the contents of registers if necessary. Explain your observations.
8. Correct the errors and run the program again.

Z80 SPECIAL INSTRUCTIONS

9.6

In this section, we introduce additional Z80 special instructions. The Z80 has Compare instructions that are capable of searching for a given byte in memory; some instructions can search through 64K bytes of memory.

Instructions

CPI	<p>Compare and Increment</p> <p>This instruction compares the contents of the memory location specified by register HL with the contents of the accumulator. Register HL is incremented and register BC is decremented.</p>
CPIR	<p>Compare, Increment, and Repeat</p> <p>This instruction is similar to the previous instruction CPI, except that the instruction is repeated until BC = 0 or the contents of memory are equal to the contents of the accumulator.</p>
CPD	<p>Compare and Decrement</p> <p>This instruction compares the contents of the memory location specified by register HL with the contents of the accumulator. Registers HL and BC are decremented.</p>
CPDR	<p>Compare, Decrement, and Repeat</p> <p>This instruction is similar to the previous instruction CPD, except that the instruction is repeated until BC = 0 or the contents of memory are equal to the contents of the accumulator.</p>

General Characteristics

1. These are 2-byte instructions.
2. The Zero (Z) flag is set when a match is found, meaning the memory byte is the same as the accumulator byte.
3. The Sign (S) flag is set if the memory byte is larger than the accumulator byte.
4. The Parity/Overflow (P/V) flag is reset when BC = 0.
5. The Carry flag is not affected.

**Example
9.8**

The input buffer memory (INBUF) contains 256 bytes of data. Search for the byte (character) 24H in the input buffer. If it is found, jump to location START; otherwise, jump to location ERROR.

Solution

```
LD HL, INBUF    ;Set up HL as memory pointer
LD BC, 0100H    ;Set up BC as a counter
LD A, 24H       ;Load the byte to be searched
CPIR            ;Search for 24H in the input buffer
JR Z, START     ;Character found, start the process
JR ERROR        ;Display error message
```

The instruction CPIR will be repeated until it finds the character 24_H. When it finds the character, the Z flag is set, the loop is terminated, and the program jumps to location START. If there is no match, the instruction is repeated until BC = 0, and the P/V flag is reset. This flag can be used for decision making if necessary. (The P/V flag is not used in this example.)

9.7

ILLUSTRATIVE PROGRAM 3: SEARCHING FOR A MAXIMUM NUMBER USING THE INSTRUCTION CPI

This program searches for a maximum number in a given set of data bytes stored in memory; this is similar to Illustrative Program 1 in Section 9.3. It compares two numbers at a time using the instruction CPI and saves the higher number, and the process is continued until the end of the data set.

9.71 Problem Statement

A set of ten readings is stored in memory locations starting from INBUF. Write a program to find the highest reading in the set, and store that reading in memory OUTBUF.

9.72 Problem Analysis

1. Initialization: To use the multi-tasking instruction CPI (Compare and Increment), BC should be used as a 16-bit counter even if the number of readings is not higher than 255, and HL should be used as the memory pointer for the INBUF memory.
2. Data Processing: This block involves comparing two numbers and saving the larger one for the next comparison. This process is continued until the counter is zero.

9.73 Program

```
START: XOR A          ;Begin with minimum reading (00)
      LD BC, 000AH    ;Set up register B as a counter
      LD HL, INBUF    ;Set up HL as memory pointer for INBUF
```

NEXT:	CPI	;Compare memory reading with accumulator
	JP P, SKIP	;If new reading is lower, do not save
	LD A, (HL)	;Save this reading for next comparison
SKIP:	JP PE, NEXT	;Get next reading if counter $\neq 0$
	LD HL, OUTBUF	;Set up HL as memory pointer for OUTBUF
	LD (HL), A	;Save the highest reading
	HALT	;End of program

9.74 Program Description

This program is similar to the program given in Section 9.3, except that it uses the instruction CPI, which eliminates the need to update the memory pointer and the counter. The other significant differences are in flags. The S flag is used to jump to location SKIP (JP P, SKIP) instead of the Carry flag (JP NC), and the P/V flag is used to go to location NEXT instead of the Z flag. These changes are necessary because the CPI instruction does not affect the Carry flag, and it sets the Z flag when a match is found in comparing two bytes.

To compare two bytes, the instruction CPI subtracts the contents of the memory location pointed to by the HL register from the accumulator. If the number in the accumulator is smaller than the number in the memory location, it sets the S (Sign) flag to indicate the negative result; otherwise, it resets the S flag to indicate the positive result. The contents of the accumulator or memory are not affected in this comparison. The jump instructions associated with the Sign flags are JP M (Jump On Minus, S = 1) and JP P (Jump On Positive, S = 0). In our illustration, if the number in the accumulator is larger than the number in the memory location, S = 0, and the instruction JP P, SKIP does not save the new byte from memory.

SUMMARY

In this chapter, instructions related to logic (AND, OR, XOR) operations, compare operations, bit rotation, and bit manipulation were introduced. The chapter is concluded with the illustrations of Z80 special instructions related to compare operations. General characteristics of these instructions are as follow:

1. Logic operations can be performed with the contents of the accumulator and the contents of a register, memory, or 8-bit data. The AND, OR, and XOR instructions reset the CY flag and modify other flags according to the result of an operation.
2. A byte can be compared with the contents of the accumulator; the byte can be direct 8-bit data or from a register or memory. The Compare instructions perform the comparison by subtracting the byte from the accumulator, and the comparison is indicated by setting appropriate flags without affecting the contents. When $(A) < \text{the byte}$, the CY flag is set; when $(A) = \text{the byte}$, the Z flag is set,

and when $(A) > \text{the byte}$, the CY and Z flags are reset. All other flags are affected according to the result of the subtraction.

3. The rotate instructions can rotate bits in the accumulator, register, or memory either left or right by one position. Bit rotations can be performed either for eight bits or for nine bits including the CY flag. In either rotation, the status of the CY flag is determined by D_7 in the left rotation and by D_0 in the right rotation.
4. The shift instructions can shift each bit in the accumulator, register, or memory either left or right by one position. When bits are shifted to the left, bit D_7 is placed into the CY flag and 0 is inserted into bit D_0 . When bits are shifted to the right, bit D_0 is placed into the CY flag and 0 is inserted into bit D_7 .
5. Bit manipulation instructions can test, set, or reset any bit in a register or memory.

Two applications programs—searching for a maximum number in a data set and generating a square wave—were illustrated. The square wave program also illustrated how to design time delays. Errors that commonly occur in writing these programs were listed, and debugging techniques were suggested in the context of a counter program.

Finally, the Z80 special instructions related to block compare operations were illustrated. These Compare instructions can be used for searching a byte in memory.

ASSIGNMENTS

Section 9.1

1. Write instructions to load 80_H and $7F_H$ into registers B and C respectively. Logically AND the bytes and save the answer in memory INBUF. Specify the status of the S, Z, and CY flags after ANDing the bytes.
2. If the bytes in 1 are ORed instead of ANDed, specify the contents of the accumulator and the flag statuses (S, Z, CY).
3. Specify the contents of the accumulator and the flag statuses (S, Z, CY) after executing the instruction XOR A.
4. Write instructions to read PORT1. If the reading is 00_H , set the Z flag and jump back to read the port again. What is the reason to set the Z flag when the input reading is 00_H ? Specify a 1-byte logic instruction that can set the Z flag without affecting the input reading.
5. In 4, is AND A an appropriate instruction to set the Z flag? Explain your answer.
6. Write instructions to read the input port (INPORT) and mask bit D_7 .
7. Load bit pattern 97_H into register D and mask high-order bits D_7-D_4 .
8. Write instructions to load BYTE1 and BYTE2 into registers D and E respectively. Check bit D_0 in both bytes, and if either one is at logic 1, turn on the indicator connected to bit D_0 at the output port OUT1.

9. Eight lights are connected to output port OUT1. These can be turned on from the corresponding switches from either of the input ports INPUT1 or INPUT2. Write instructions to read INPUT1 and INPUT2. If all the switches are off in both ports, continue to read the input ports. When a switch (or switches) is on in either port, turn on the corresponding light(s) at OUT1.
10. Write instructions to load 37_H into the accumulator and 6F_H into register B. Compare the two bytes and specify the statuses of the S, Z, and CY flags.
11. When BYTE2 in register B is compared with BYTE1 in the accumulator, the CY flag is reset. Explain the significance of the CY flag status.
12. The following instructions read the switches S₇–S₀ from port INPUT1 and S₇'–S₀' from port INPUT2. When a switch is ON, it provides logic 1 to the corresponding data line (for example, S₇ to D₇). The readings are processed and used for decision making. Read the instructions, and answer the questions following.

```

START: LD HL, 2065H
      LD (HL), 80H
      READ: IN A, (INPUT1)
            LD B, A
            IN A, (INPUT2)
            AND B
            JP Z, READ
            LD B, A
            AND 80H
            CP (HL)
            JP Z, URGENT
            OUT (OUT1), A
            Continue——

```

- a. What is the output at OUT1 when switches S₀, S₁, S₃', and S₇' are turned ON? Explain your answer.
- b. Does the program jump to location URGENT when switches S₇, S₇', and S₀ are ON, or does it go back to READ?
- c. Specify the output if switches S₇, S₆, S₅, S₁, S₀ from INPUT1 and S₅', S₄', S₁', and S₀' from INPUT2 are ON.

Section 9.2

13. The accumulator contains the byte 77_H. What is the byte in the accumulator and the CY flag status after the execution of the instruction RRCA?
14. The accumulator contains the data byte C1_H, and the CY flag is 0. Specify the contents of the accumulator and the status of the CY flag if the instruction RLCA is executed twice.
15. In 14, specify the contents of the accumulator and the status of the CY flag if the instruction RLA is used instead of the instruction RLCA.
16. What is in the accumulator and the CY flag after the execution of the following instructions?

```
LD A, F3H
OR A
RLA
RRCA
```

17. Register B holds the byte 3F_H, representing the values of two Hex keys, 3 and F. The accumulator holds 02_H, representing a new key. Specify the contents of register B after the execution of the following instructions and explain the function of the instruction OR A.

```
LD L, A      ;Save new key in register L
LD C, 04H    ;Set up C as a counter
LD A, B      ;Get previous two keys
SHIFT: OR A   ;The next four instructions shift low-order
          RLA  ;four bits of register B (now in A) into high-
          DEC C ;order positions D7–D4 and clear D3–D0
          JP NZ, SHIFT
          OR L  ;Place bits of new key into D3–D0
          LD B, A ;Save key bits in B
```

18. Write instructions using the masking technique and four RLCA instructions to perform the same shift function as in 17.
19. Write instructions to shift high-order bits D₇–D₄ of the byte in the accumulator into low-order position D₃–D₀, and multiply the bits by eight.
20. In 19, mask the low-order bits D₃–D₀ and shift the remaining bits to the right by one position. Is the result the same as in 19?
21. Mask the high-order bits D₇–D₄ of the accumulator and add the remaining bits D₃–D₀ four times using the instruction ADD A, A. Explain the result.
22. Can you achieve the same result as in 21 by using the shift instruction?
23. Write instructions to reset the bit D₇ in the accumulator and check whether the number is odd. If it is odd, jump to the REJECT routine; otherwise continue.
24. Write instructions to check bits D₇ and D₀ in the accumulator, and if both bits are high, jump to the URGNCY routine.

Section 9.3

25. Rewrite Illustrative Program 1 (Section 9.3) to find the minimum number in a given data set.
Data (H) 32, F8, 6A, 47, 1F, AF, 97, 20, 2F, C2
26. A set of ten readings is stored in memory DATA. Write a program to check whether the byte 30_H exists in the set. If it does, stop checking, and display its memory location; otherwise output FFH.
Data (H) 48, 8F, C7, 68, 9F, 9C, 30, 33, B8, D9
27. A set of ten readings, representing the power consumption in watts of each

house in the area, is stored in memory INBUF. The limit on consumption per house is set at 200_{10} watts. Check each reading and count all the readings that exceed the limit and display the number.

Data (H) A9, B3, 98, C8, C7, F5, C8, 89, D2, E7

28. A set of eight current readings is stored in memory INBUF. The readings are expected to be positive ($<128_{10}$). Write a program to check each reading, reject the negative readings, and add the positive readings. Display the answer at the output port or store it in the output buffer memory OUTBUF.

Data (H) 74, 6F, A1, 7F, 76, 87, 5B, 8C

29. In 28, modify the program to add the positive readings until the sum exceeds FFH. If the addition generates a carry, stop the addition and display 01H at the output port; otherwise, display the sum.

Data (H) 27, A1, 2A, 1F, 38, 81, 19, 9A

Data (H) 87, 22, 5F, 3A, 47, 52, 35, 81

30. A data string is stored in memory INBUF, and the end of data string is indicated by the data byte 00H. Copy the data string into new memory OUTBUF.

Data (H) 67, 89, 7F, F5, C8, 9A, 4B, 00, F8, F8

Section 9.4

31. Calculate the period of the square wave in Illustrative Program 2 if the COUNT in the delay loop is changed to 44_H .
32. Write a program to generate a square wave with the period of $750\ \mu\text{s}$. Use bit D_7 to output the square wave.
33. Write a program to generate a rectangular wave with a $300\ \mu\text{s}$ on-period and $500\ \mu\text{s}$ off-period.
34. In the following instructions, calculate the delay in LOOP2, LOOP1 (exclusive of LOOP2), and the total delay if the system clock is 4 MHz.

Instructions	T-states
START: LD B, 64H	7
LOOP1: LD C, FAH	7
LOOP2: NOP	4
NOP	4
DEC C	4
JP NZ, LOOP2	10
DEC B	4
JP NZ, LOOP1	10

35. The following instructions use two memory locations MEM1 and $\text{MEM1} + 1$ as counters to set up delay loops. Calculate the delay in LOOP1, LOOP2 (exclusive of LOOP1), and the total delay (clock period = $0.5\ \mu\text{s}$).

Instructions	T-states	Comments
START: LD HL, MEM1		;Set up HL as memory pointer
LD (HL), 32H		;Load MEM1 with count for LOOP1
LOOP1: INC HL	6	;Point to MEM1 + 1
LD (HL), F8H	10	;Load count for LOOP2
LOOP2: DEC (HL)	11	;Begin LOOP2
JP NZ, LOOP2	10	;Go back if MEM1 + 1 \neq 0
DEC HL	6	;Point to MEM1
JP NZ, LOOP1	10	;Go back if MEM1 \neq 0

Section 9.5

36. The following program checks eight numbers stored in memory INBUF, rejects the negative numbers, and adds the positive numbers. If the sum generates a carry, it displays 01_H for an overload condition; otherwise, it displays the sum. However, it appears that the program works only for certain data sets. Debug the program and execute it for the given three data sets. After debugging the program, when it works for Set 2, make sure that it also works for Set 3.

Set 1 (H) 77, 8F, 68, 32, 47, 92, 89, 6C	Expected Output: 01 _H
Set 2 (H) 32, 10, 2A, 8A, A2, B5, 22, 15	Expected Output: A3 _H
Set 3 (H) 87, 2C, 19, 22, CF, F2, 41, D3	Expected Output: A8 _H

PROGRAM

START:	LD HL, INBUF	;Set up HL as memory pointer
	LD C, 08H	;Set up register C as a counter
	LD B, 00H	;Clear B to save partial results
NEXT:	LD A, (HL)	;Get the byte
	RLA	;Place D ₇ in CY
	JP C, REJECT	;If D ₇ = 1, reject number
	RRCA	;If number is positive, restore it
	ADD A, B	;Add the previous sum
	JP C, OVRLOD	;If sum > FFH, it is overload
	LD B, A	;Save the sum
REJECT:	INC HL	;Point to the next number
	DEC C	;Update counter
	JP NZ, NEXT	;If all numbers are not checked, go back and get the next number
	OUT (PORT1), A	;Display the sum
	HALT	;End
OVRLOD:	LD A, 01H	;Load overload indicator
	OUT (PORT1), A	;Display overload signal
	HALT	;End

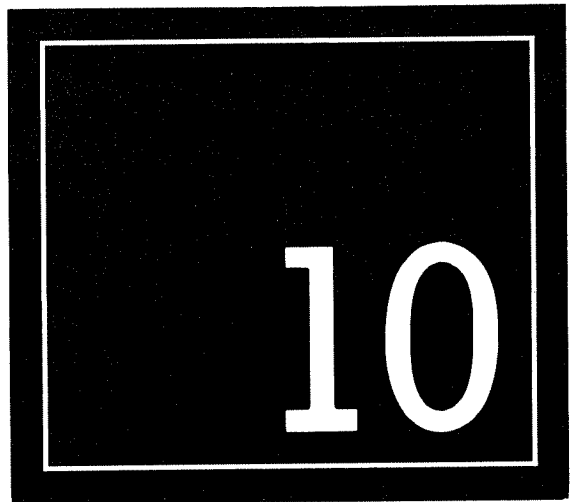
Sections 9.6 and 9.7

37. Write a program to transfer a block of data from memory INBUF to new memory locations OUTBUF. The end of the data string is indicated by 00_H. The suggested Z80 special instructions to be used are LDI (Load and Increment) and JR (Jump Relative).
38. Rewrite Illustrative Program 3 to find the minimum number in a given data set of ten readings.

Stacks and Subroutines

The **stack** is a group of memory locations in a system's R/W memory that is used to store register contents and memory addresses temporarily during the execution of a program. The starting location of the stack is defined by loading a 16-bit address into the stack pointer, and space is reserved, usually at the high end of the memory map. This method of information storage resembles the process of stacking books, one above another, so that information is always retrieved from the top of the stack; hence, the particular group of memory locations is called the stack. In this chapter, the processes of information storage into the stack and retrieval from the stack and associated instructions are introduced. An illustrative program demonstrates how to use these instructions to examine and manipulate the flags.

The latter part of the chapter deals with the subroutine technique. A **subroutine** is a group of instructions that performs a subtask (for example, time delay) that is required repeatedly in a program. The subroutine is written as a separate unit, apart from the main program, and can be called whenever it is necessary. When a main program calls a subroutine, the program execution is transferred to the subroutine, and after the completion of the subroutine, the program execution returns to the main program. The microprocessor uses the stack to store the return address.



The subroutine and the stack offer a great deal of flexibility in writing programs. The subroutine technique eliminates the need to repeat the instructions for a subtask; thus, memory is used efficiently and programs can be written concisely. The use of a stack can provide a practically unlimited number of microprocessor registers. When a subroutine is written, the contents of the registers being used by the calling program can be stored on the stack, and the registers can be reused in the subroutine to perform

the subtask. At the end of the routine, the register contents of the calling program can be retrieved. The illustrative program, Traffic Signal Controller, demonstrates the use of the subroutine technique.

In the industrial environment, a large software project is generally divided into subtasks called modules. These modules can be developed and

tested independently as subroutines by different programmers. This **modular approach to software design** provides flexibility and ease in writing programs. The modular approach is demonstrated by designing a BCD counter and its seven-segment display, and techniques are suggested for debugging modular programs.

OBJECTIVES

- Define the stack and initialize it at a given memory location using the stack pointer (register).
- Explain how information is stored and retrieved from the stack using the instructions PUSH and POP and the stack pointer (register).
- Demonstrate how the contents of the flag register can be examined and how a given flag can be set or reset.
- Define the subroutine and explain its uses.
- Explain the sequence of program execution when a subroutine is called and executed.
- Explain how information is exchanged between the program counter and the stack, and identify the contents of the stack pointer (register) when the CALL and RET (Return) instructions are executed.
- Write a subroutine for a given task.
- List and explain conditional Call and Return instructions.
- Explain multiple call, nested, and multiple ending subroutines.
- Explain the modular programming technique and demonstrate the technique by writing a program.

10.1 STACK

The stack is a group of memory locations in R/W memory, defined by loading a memory address into the *stack pointer (register)*.* The stack is used to store binary information temporarily during the execution of a program. Theoretically, the size of the stack is unlimited, restricted only by the available R/W memory in a microcomputer system.

In Z80 systems, the beginning of the stack is defined in the program by using the instruction LD SP, 16-bit (Load Stack Pointer), which loads the 16-bit address into the stack pointer (register). The contents of register pairs (BC, HL, for example, but not just a single register) can be stored in two consecutive stack memory locations by using the instruction PUSH and can be retrieved from the stack into register pairs by using the instruction POP. The microprocessor keeps track of the stack by incrementing or decrementing the address in the stack pointer (register). The address in the stack pointer (register) always points to the top of the stack and indicates that the next memory location (SP - 1) is available to store information.

Once the stack pointer is loaded with a 16-bit address—for example, 2099_H—the storing of information begins at the next location SP - 1 (2098_H) in the decreasing order. The contents of a register pair are stored at SP - 1 and SP - 2 (2098_H and 2097_H), and the

*Initially, we are using the term *stack pointer (register)* to emphasize the difference between the stack as memory and the stack pointer as a 16-bit register.

stack pointer is decremented by two from 2099_H to 2097_H. The storing of information can continue in the reversed numerical order (decreasing memory addresses). Therefore, as a general practice, the stack is initialized at the highest possible memory location to prevent the user program from being destroyed by the stack information. The process of information retrieval from the stack is opposite to the storing process; it begins at the location pointed to by the stack pointer whenever a POP instruction is executed, and the stack pointer is incremented twice. This process will be further clarified in Example 10.1.

The stack is shared by the programmer and the microprocessor to store information. The programmer can store and retrieve the contents of register pairs by using PUSH and POP instructions. Similarly, the microprocessor can automatically store and retrieve the contents of the program counter when a subroutine is called (discussed later in the chapter).

10.11 Stack Instructions

The instructions used to store and retrieve information to and from the stack are listed here.

Opcode	Operand	Description
LD	SP, 16-bit	Load 16-bit address into the stack pointer register. This is a load instruction, similar to other 16-bit load instructions discussed previously.
PUSH	rp	This is a 1- or 2-byte instruction and copies the contents of the specified register pair or index register onto the stack as described below. Instructions for four register pairs and index registers are listed here. The instruction first decrements the stack pointer (register) and copies the high-order byte of the register pair or the index register on the stack location SP - 1. Then it again decrements the stack pointer and copies the low-order byte of the register pair or the index register onto the stack location SP - 2.
PUSH	rx	
PUSH	AF	
PUSH	BC	
PUSH	DE	
PUSH	HL	
PUSH	IX	This is a 1- or 2-byte instruction and copies the contents of the top two locations of the stack into the specified register pair. First, the instruction copies the contents of the stack pointed to by SP into the low-order register (for example, register C of the BC pair) or as a low-order byte into the index register and then increments the stack pointer to SP + 1. It copies the contents of the SP + 1 location into the high-order register (for example, register B of the BC pair) or as a high-order byte into the index register and increments the stack pointer to SP + 2.
PUSH	IY	
POP	rp	
POP	rx	
POP	AF	
POP	BC	
POP	DE	
POP	HL	
POP	IX	
POP	IY	

The Z80 instruction set includes six PUSH and six POP instructions associated with six register pairs (AF, BC, DE, HL, IX, and IY), and these instructions belong to the data copy group; thus, the contents of the stack (source) are not modified, and no flags are affected, but the stack pointer is adjusted according to the instructions.

**Example
10.1**

The R/W Memory of the system ranges from 2000_H to 23FF_H. A program is stored in memory locations from 2000_H to 2055_H, and the stack is initialized at the location 2400_H. Two segments of the program are shown below.

1. Explain why the stack is initialized at 2400_H when, in fact, the R/W memory extends up to 23FF_H.
2. Explain the data transfer between the registers and the stack when PUSH and POP instructions are executed.
3. Modify the instructions to exchange the contents of BC and HL when the contents are retrieved from the stack.

PROGRAM

```

2000    LD SP, 2400H
2003    LD HL, 22A2H
2006    LD BC, 2110H
2009    LD A, (HL)
200A    OR A
200B

```



```

2010    PUSH BC
2011    PUSH HL
2012    PUSH AF

```



```

2035    POP AF
2036    POP HL
2037    POP BC

```



```

2055

```

Solution

1. Because the stack pointer is initialized at 2400_H , the first available stack memory location for storage is $23FF_H$; the location 2400_H will never be used to store information with a PUSH instruction. This is an efficient way of using R/W memory.
2. The first three instructions load the contents as shown in Figure 10.1. The instruction at location 2010_H (PUSH BC) decrements the stack pointer to $SP-1$ and stores the contents of B (21_H) in location $23FF_H$. It then decrements the stack pointer to $SP-2$ ($23FE_H$) and stores the contents of C (10_H) in the location $23FE_H$. Figure 10.2 shows

FIGURE 10.1

Register Contents

A		F
B	21	C
D		E
H	22	L
SP	2400	

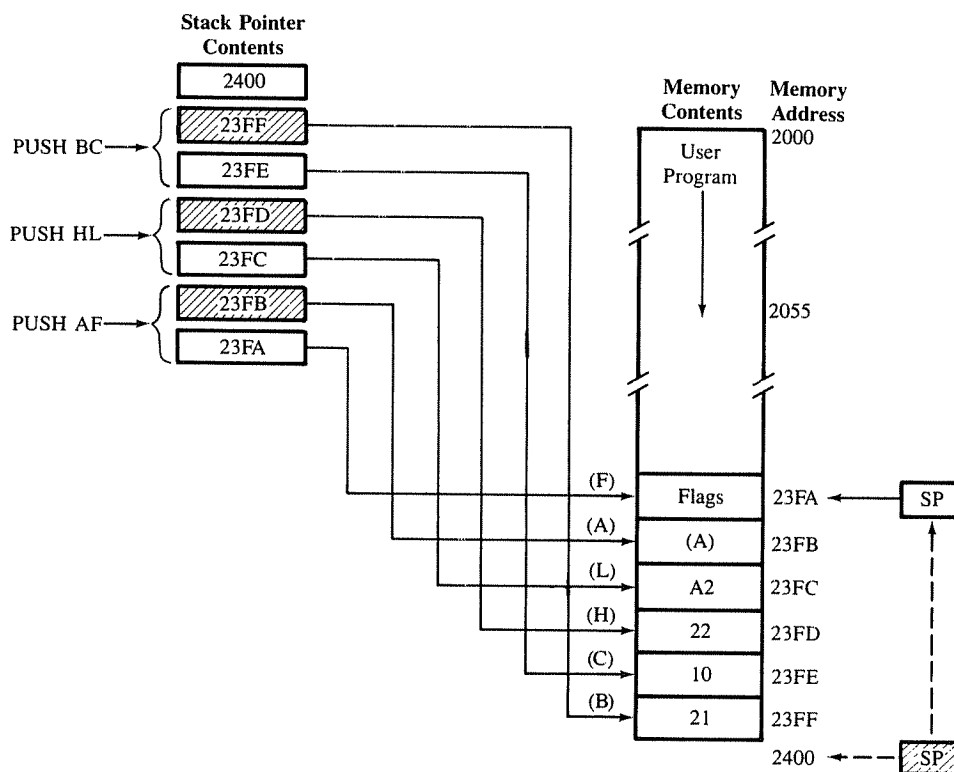
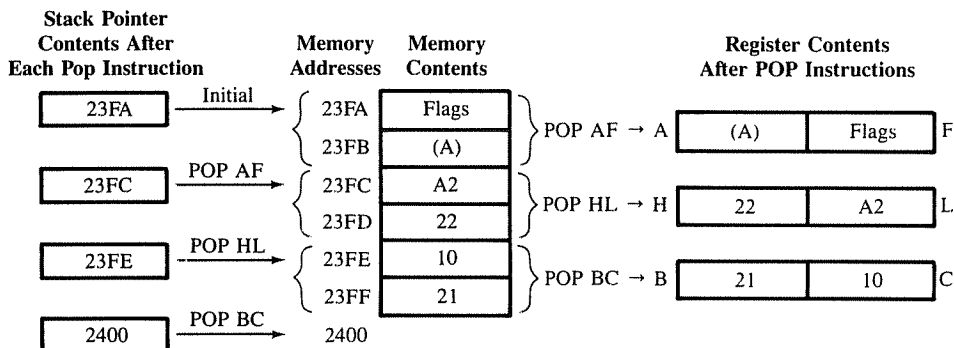


FIGURE 10.2

Contents of Stack Pointer and Stack After Execution of PUSH Instructions

**FIGURE 10.3**

Register Contents After Execution of POP Instructions

the stack contents after the execution of three PUSH instructions; the stack pointer is at location 23FA_H.

- Figure 10.3 shows how the contents are retrieved to their respective registers by POP instructions in the Last-In-First-Out (LIFO) sequence. By examining the sequence of PUSH and POP instructions, you may notice that the contents are placed on the stack in BC, HL, and AF sequence and retrieved in reversed order: AF, HL, and BC. This retrieval sequence is necessary to retrieve the original register contents.

The last two bytes placed on the stack by the instruction PUSH AF are on the top of the stack, and the stack pointer points to the top location (23FA_H). The instruction POP AF places the contents of the top location into the flag register, increments the stack pointer to 23FB_H, places the contents of 23FB_H into the accumulator, and again increments the stack pointer to 23FC_H. The process is repeated for the next two POP instructions, and the stack pointer returns to its original address, 2400_H.

- To exchange the contents of BC and HL registers during the retrieval of information from the stack is a simple task that can be accomplished by exchanging the positions of POP BC with the POP HL in the program. The critical aspect to remember about the POP instructions is that they copy the top of the stack into the specified register pair irrespective of how the bytes were stored on the stack.

10.12 Review of Important Concepts

The following points can be summarized from the above example:

- Memory locations in R/W Memory can be employed as temporary storage during the execution of a program by loading a 16-bit address (initializing) into the stack pointer (register). The contents of register pairs can be stored beginning from the next location (SP - 1).
- The stack space grows upward in the numerically decreasing order of memory addresses.
- The stack can be initialized anywhere in the user memory map. However, as a general

practice, the stack is initialized at the highest user memory location so that it will be less likely to interfere with a program.

4. The PUSH instructions are used to store contents of register pairs on the stack, and the POP instructions are used to retrieve the information from the stack. The address in the stack pointer (register) always points to the top of the stack, and the address is decremented or incremented as information is stored or retrieved, respectively.
5. The storage and retrieval of data bytes on the stack should follow the LIFO (Last-In-First-Out) sequence.
6. Information in the stack locations is not destroyed until new information is stored in those locations.

10.13 Additional Instructions: Exchange

The Z80 includes an alternate set of registers, and these registers can be used to store the contents of general-purpose registers, the accumulator, and the flags. The contents can be saved by using Exchange instructions. The alternate registers serve a function similar to that of the stack. The following list also includes exchange instructions that exchange contents between an index register or the HL register and the stack.

Instruction	Description
EXX	Exchange the contents of general-purpose registers (BC, DE, HL) with the contents of their corresponding alternate registers.
EX AF, AF'	Exchange contents of the accumulator and the flag register with the contents of the corresponding alternate registers.
EX (SP), IX	Exchange the contents of an index register or HL register with the contents of the two top locations of the stack.
EX (SP), IY	
EX (SP), HL	
EX DE, HL	Exchange the contents of the DE register with the contents of HL register.

General Characteristics

1. These are 1-byte instructions (except instructions EX (SP), IX and EX (SP), IY) and are similar to copy instructions, except that the copying is performed both ways—from the source to destination and vice versa.
2. These instructions do not affect the flags.
3. The Exchange instructions related to the alternate registers can be used in place of PUSH and POP instructions for efficient execution.

ILLUSTRATIVE PROGRAM 1: EXAMINING AND MANIPULATING FLAGS

10.2

The following program demonstrates that the flags can be examined and manipulated if necessary. The program clears all the flags and shows that the increment instruction does not set the CY flag but does affect the other flags.

10.21 Problem Statement

Write a program to perform the following functions:

- 1. Clear the accumulator and all the flags.
- 2. Load FF_H into the accumulator, increment the contents of the accumulator, and display how the S, Z, and CY flags are affected by the increment instruction.

10.22 Problem Analysis

The problem is concerned with clearing the flags and examining the flags after the increment instructions. There are no instructions in the set that can change the contents of the flag register directly. However, the flags can be examined and modified by storing the flags on the stack and retrieving them in any one of the general-purpose registers.

10.23 Program

```
START: LD SP, STACK      ;Initialize the stack
      LD DE, 0000H      ;Load register DE with 00 to clear A and F registers
      PUSH DE           ;Place (DE) on stack
      POP AF            ;Clear accumulator and flags
      LD A, FFH         ;Load the given byte in A
      INC A             ;Increase (A) beyond FFH
      PUSH AF           ;Place flags on stack
      POP DE            ;Retrieve flags in register E
      LD A, E
      AND 11000001B     ;Mask all flags except S, Z, and CY
      OUT (PORT1), A    ;Display flags
      HALT              ;End of program
```

10.24 Program Description

After initializing the stack, register DE is cleared and the contents of DE placed on the stack. Assuming the stack is initialized at 2099_H, the instruction PUSH DE clears the locations 2098_H and 2097_H, and the stack pointer points to 2097_H. The next instruction POP AF copies the top of the stack into the flag register and clears the accumulator and the flags. (In this problem, we are not particularly interested in the contents of registers D and A.)

After loading the byte FF_H into the accumulator and incrementing it, the flags are placed on the stack and retrieved in register E. The masking instruction saves the status of S, Z, and CY flags and eliminates the others. The increment instruction increases the accumulator contents to 00; however, it does not affect the CY flag. Therefore, the output will be 40_H, indicating Z flag set and S and CY reset as shown:

		S	Z	H		P/V	N	CY		
Flags		0	1	0	0	0	1	0		
AND										
Masking Byte		1	1	0	0	0	0	0	1	(C1 _H)
		0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	(40 _H)

SUBROUTINE

10.3

A **subroutine** is a group of instructions written separately from the main program to perform a function that can be used repeatedly in the main program. For example, if a time delay is required between three successive events, a time delay subroutine can be written once, instead of three times. The subroutine is written separately from the main program, and is called by the main program when needed. The subroutine technique enables an efficient use of memory.

A subroutine is implemented with two associated instructions: Call (call a subroutine) and Return (return from the subroutine). The Call instruction is written in the main program (except in the nested subroutines) to call a subroutine, and the Return instruction is written in the subroutine to return to the main program.

When a subroutine is called, the contents of the program counter, which is the address of the instruction following the Call instruction, are stored on the stack, and the program execution is transferred to the subroutine address. When the Return instruction is executed at the end of the subroutine, the memory address stored in the stack is retrieved and the sequence of execution is resumed in the main program. The procedure is demonstrated in Examples 10.2 and 10.3.

10.31 Subroutine Instructions

The Z80 microprocessor has two groups of instructions to implement the subroutine technique: unconditional and conditional.

Opcode	Operand	Description
CALL	16-bit	Call subroutine unconditionally located at the memory address specified by 16-bit operand. This instruction places the address of the next instruction on the stack and transfers the program execution to the subroutine address.
RET		Return unconditionally from the subroutine. This instruction locates the return address on the top of the stack and transfers the program execution back to the calling program.

Conditional Call and Return

CALL	Z, 16-bit	Call subroutine if Z flag is set (Z = 1)
CALL	NZ, 16-bit	Call subroutine if Z flag is reset (Z = 0)
CALL	C, 16-bit	Call subroutine if CY flag is set (C = 1)
CALL	NC, 16-bit	Call subroutine if CY flag is reset (C = 0)
CALL	M, 16-bit	Call (On Minus) if S flag is set (S = 1)
CALL	P, 16-bit	Call (On Plus) if S flag is reset (S = 0)
CALL	PE, 16-bit	Call (On Parity Even) if P/V flag is set (P/V=1)
CALL	PO, 16-bit	Call (On Parity Odd) if P/V flag is reset (P/V=0)

RET	Z	Return if Z flag is set ($Z = 1$)
RET	NZ	Return if Z flag is reset ($Z = 0$)
RET	C	Return if CY flag is set ($C = 1$)
RET	NC	Return if CY flag is reset ($C = 0$)
RET	M	Return (On Minus) if S flag is set ($S = 1$)
RET	P	Return (On Plus) if S flag is reset ($S = 0$)
RET	PE	Return (On Parity Even) if P/V flag is set ($P/V = 1$)
RET	PO	Return (On Parity Odd) if P/V flag is reset ($P/V = 0$)

General Characteristics

1. The Call instructions are 3-byte instructions; the second byte specifies the low-order byte and the third byte specifies the high-order byte of the subroutine address.
2. The Return instructions are 1-byte instructions.
3. A Call instruction must be used in conjunction with a Return instruction (conditional or unconditional) in the subroutine.

Example 10.2

The main program begins at 2000_H and has a Call instruction at location 2025_H . The subroutine is located at 2050_H ; it ends at location 2065_H with a Return instruction. Explain the flow of program execution.

Solution

The Call instruction is a 3-byte instruction and is stored in locations 2025_H , 2026_H , and 2027_H , and the subroutine is located from 2050_H to 2065_H (Figure 10.4).

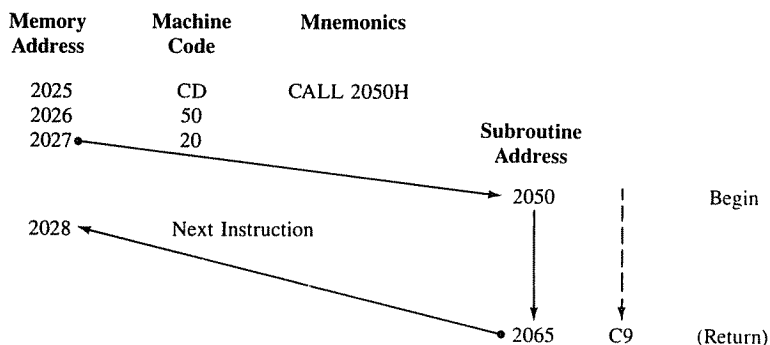


FIGURE 10.4

Program Flow in Call Execution

When the Z80 fetches the complete 3-byte instruction, the program counter holds 2028_H , always one address ahead of the execution. When the instruction is decoded, the Z80 recognizes that it is a Call instruction. It places the contents of the program counter (2028_H) onto the stack then transfers the program execution to location 2050_H as shown in Figure 10.4. At the end of the subroutine, when the Z80 decodes the Return instruction, it retrieves the address (2028_H) from the top of the stack and returns the execution back to the main program at 2028_H . The Return instruction can be functionally interpreted as Jump to a memory location, the address of which is stored on the top of the stack; however, the Jump instruction would not increment the address in the stack pointer.

Assuming the stack is initialized at 2099_H , explain the machine cycles showing the bus and register contents during the execution of the CALL instruction in Example 10.2.

**Example
10.3**

The CALL instruction, located at $2025-27_H$, has five machine cycles with 17 T-states. Because it is a 3-byte instruction, the first three machine cycles are concerned with fetching or reading the three machine codes of the Call instruction. Before the program is transferred to the subroutine location, the Z80 writes the contents of the program counter onto the stack; thus, the remaining two machine cycles deal with Memory Write operations. The sequence of events in each machine cycle is as follows:

Solution

1. M_1 —Opcode Fetch: In this machine cycle, the contents of the program counter (2025_H) are placed on the address bus; the program counter is incremented to 2026_H , and the instruction code CD is fetched using the data bus. After the instruction is decoded and executed, the stack pointer is decremented by one to 2098_H (see Figure 10.5).
2. M_2 and M_3 —Memory Read: These are two Memory Read operations during which the 16-bit address of the subroutine (2050_H) is fetched. The low-order address (50_H) is fetched during M_2 and placed into the internal register Z. The high-order address (20_H) is fetched during M_3 and placed into register W. The program counter is incremented once each machine cycle, to 2027_H and then to 2028_H , pointing to the next instruction (Figure 10.5).
3. M_4 and M_5 —Storing of Program Counter: Because this is a Call instruction, the contents of the stack pointer (2098_H) are placed onto the address bus in M_4 . The high-order byte of the program counter ($PCH = 20$) is placed onto the data bus and stored in the stack location 2098_H , and the stack pointer is decremented to 2097_H .

During machine cycle M_5 , the address (2097_H) from the stack pointer is placed onto the address bus, and the low-order byte (28_H) of the program counter is placed onto the data bus and stored on the stack at 2097_H . At the same time, the contents (2050_H) of the W and Z registers are placed onto the address bus, and the program execution is transferred to the subroutine. Figure 10.5 shows the bus and register contents during the execution of these five machine cycles.

Instruction: CALL 2025H

Memory Address	Code	Mnemonics
2025	CD	CALL 2050H
2026	50	
2027	20	

Machine Cycles	Stack Pointer 2099	Address Bus (AB)	Program counter (PCH) (PCL)	Data Bus (DB)	Internal Registers (W) (Z)
M ₁ Opcode Fetch	2098 (SP-1)	2025	2026	CD Opcode	—
M ₂ Memory Read	2098	2026	2027	50 Operand	(50)
M ₃ Memory Read		2027	2028	20 Operand	(20)
M ₄ Memory Write	2097 (SP-2)	2098	2051	20 (PCH)	
M ₅ Memory Write		2097		28 (PCL)	(20) (50)
M ₁ Opcode Fetch of Next Instruction		2050 (W) (Z)	2051		2050

FIGURE 10.5
Register and Bus Contents During Execution of CALL Instruction

Example
10.4

Explain the machine cycles of the Return instruction located at 2065H in Example 10.2. Show the bus and register contents.

Solution

In Example 10.2, the RET instruction is stored at the end of the subroutine in memory 2065H. This is a 1-byte instruction and has three machine cycles. The contents of registers and buses during the execution of these machine cycles are shown in Figure 10.6.

M₁ is a normal Opcode Fetch cycle that fetches the code C9 and increments the program counter to 2066H. However, during M₂ the normal operation is suspended, and the address in the stack pointer (2097H) is placed onto the address bus in place of the

Instruction: RET

Memory Address	Code	Mnemonics	Stack Pointer	Contents of Stack Memory
2065	C9	RET	2097	2097 28 2098 20

Machine Cycles	Stack Pointer	Address Bus (AB)	Program Counter	Data Bus (DB)	Internal Registers (W) (Z)
M ₁ Opcode Fetch	2097	2065	2066	C9 Opcode	
M ₂ Memory Read	2098	2097		28 (Stack)	28
M ₃ Memory Read	2099	2098		20 (Stack-1)	20
M ₁ Opcode Fetch of Next Instruction		2028 (W) (Z)	2029		2028 (W) (Z)

FIGURE 10.6

Register and Bus Contents During Execution of RET Instruction

contents of the program counter. At the top of the stack, the return address (2028_H) is stored. During M₂ the low-order byte (28_H) is fetched and placed into the internal register Z, and during M₃ the high-order byte (20_H) is fetched and placed in register W. The stack pointer returns to its original address, 2099_H.

In the first cycle of the next instruction, the contents of the W and Z registers (2028_H) are placed onto the address bus, and the program sequence is transferred back to the main program at 2028_H.

ILLUSTRATIVE PROGRAM 2: TRAFFIC SIGNAL CONTROLLER

10.4

This program controls the traffic signal lights by turning them on or off at a specified interval. The subroutine technique is used to write the delay routine, and a register pair is used as a delay register. The significance of using the register pair is that the increment/decrement instructions do not affect any flags. Thus, a procedure needs to be built in to set the zero flag when the delay count in the register pair reaches zero.

10.41 Problem Statement

Write a program to provide the specified on/off time to three traffic lights (Green, Yellow, and Red) and two pedestrian signs (WALK and DON'T WALK). The signal lights and signs are turned on and off by the data bits of an output port as shown.

Lights	Bit	Time
1. Green	D ₀	15 seconds
2. Yellow	D ₂	5 seconds
3. Red	D ₄	20 seconds
4. WALK	D ₆	15 seconds
5. DON'T WALK	D ₇	25 seconds

The traffic and pedestrian flow are in the same direction; the pedestrian should cross the road only when the Green light is on.

10.42 Problem Analysis

The problem is primarily concerned with providing various time delays for a complete sequence of 40 seconds. The lights and signs can be turned on by providing logic 1s and turned off by providing logic 0s to appropriate data bits of the output port. The on/off times for the traffic signals and pedestrian signs are as follows:

Time Sequence in Seconds	DON'T WALK D ₇	WALK D ₆	D ₅	Red D ₄	D ₃	Yellow D ₂	D ₁	Green D ₀	Hex Code
0									
(15) ↓	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	1	= 41H
15									
(5) ↓	1	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	= 84H
20									
(20) ↓	1	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	= 90H
40									

The output needs three different codes at three different intervals as shown above. Three different delays (15, 5, and 20 seconds) can be conveniently obtained by writing a half-second delay subroutine and specifying the delay instructions as necessary. This is known as **parameter passing** (discussed in Section 10.5).

10.43 Program

```

LD SP, STACK      ;Initialize stack pointer
START: LD A, 01000001B ;Load bit pattern for Green light
                                ;and WALK sign
OUT (PORT1), A     ;Turn on Green light and WALK sign

```

```

LD B, 30          ;Set up B to count 15 seconds
                  ;Pass this information to DELAY routine
CALL DELAY        ;Wait for 15 seconds
LD A, 10000100B   ;Load bit pattern for Yellow light and
                  ;DON'T WALK sign
OUT (PORT1), A    ;Turn on Yellow and DON'T WALK and turn
                  ;off Green and WALK
LD B, 10          ;Set up B to count 5 seconds
CALL DELAY        ;Wait for 5 seconds
LD A, 10010000B   ;Load bit pattern for Red and DON'T WALK
OUT (PORT1), A    ;Turn on Red, keep DON'T WALK on, and turn
                  ;off Yellow light
LD B, 40          ;Set up B to count 20 seconds
CALL DELAY        ;Wait for 20 seconds
JP START          ;Go back to repeat the sequence

DELAY ;This is 0.5 second delay routine and provides delay
      ;according to the count in register B
      ;Input:  Appropriate delay count is specified in B; it is twice the number of
                ;desired seconds
      ;Output:  None
      ;Registers Modified:  B
      PUSH DE          ;Save contents of DE and AF
      PUSH AF
WAIT:  LD  DE, COUNT    ;Load DE for 0.5 second delay
LOOP:  DEC  DE
      LD  A, D          ;Place (D) in A for flag checking
      OR  E            ;Set Z flag if (D) and (E) are both zero
      JP  NZ, LOOP      ;Repeat if COUNT ≠ 0
      DEC B            ;End of 0.5 second delay, decrement B
      JR  NZ, WAIT      ;Is it sufficient delay? If not, go back
                        ;to WAIT
      POP AF           ;Retrieve contents of saved registers
      POP DE
      RET              ;Go back to main program

```

10.44 Program Description

Figure 10.7 shows the flowchart of this program; it includes the symbol of the predetermined process used for the delay subroutine. As shown in the flowchart (Figure 10.7), the main program turns on the specified lights and calls the delay routine. The program begins with loading the stack pointer; the initialization of the stack is essential to use Call instructions. The program loads the appropriate bit pattern into the accumulator, sends it to the output port, specifies the total delay in register B, and calls the delay routine. Register B is

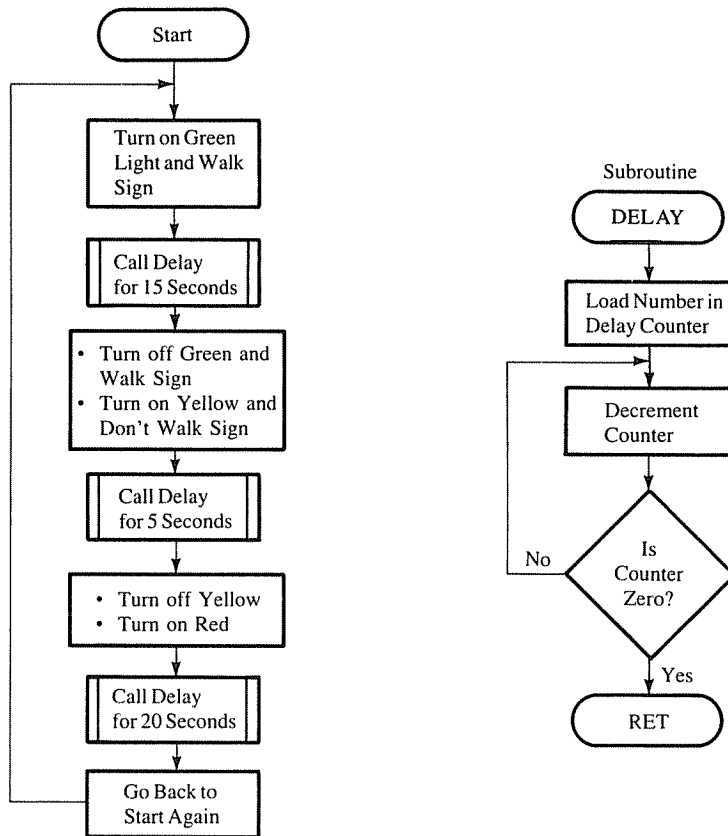


FIGURE 10.7
Flowchart for Traffic Signal Controller

loaded with a delay count in the main program, but the information in B is used in the subroutine.* This is called parameter passing.

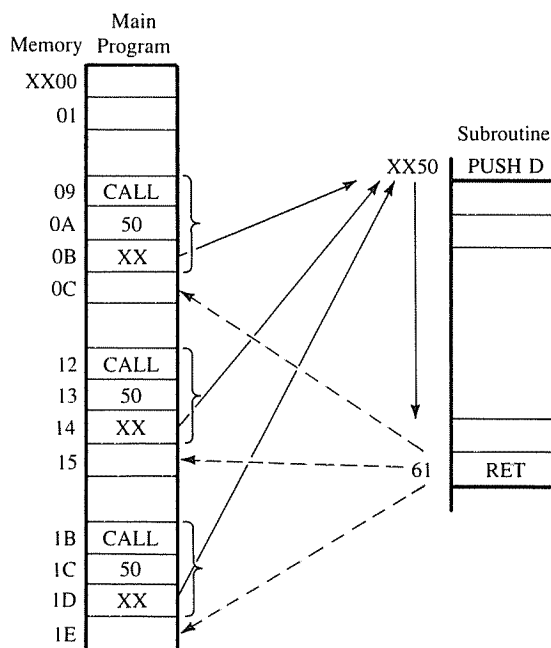
The DELAY subroutine is similar to delays discussed in the previous chapter. However, this routine has four additional features:

1. At the beginning of the subroutine, the registers being used (A, D, and E) for the delay loop are saved on the stack and retrieved before the end of the routine.
2. The subroutine ends with the Return instruction.
3. The delay loop uses register pair DE; however, the decrement instruction for register pairs does not affect any flags. When COUNT is decremented to 0, the Z flag needs to

*In this program, the delay counts are shown in decimal and the bit patterns are shown in binary; these numbers must be converted into Hex numbers for manual assembly. This is a standard industrial practice if you are using an assembler.

FIGURE 10.8

Multiple Call Subroutine



be set. To set the flag, the contents of register D are placed in A and logically ORed with the contents of E. The OR instruction sets the Z flag when both bytes, in D and E, are equal to 0; otherwise, the loop is repeated.

4. The WAIT loop includes a conditional relative Jump instruction, which requires 12 T-states if the specified condition is met; otherwise it takes seven T-states. In this example, when the Z flag is not set, the Jump instruction takes 12 T-states and the loop is repeated. When register B goes to zero, the Z flag is set and the Jump instruction takes seven T-states and the program proceeds to the next instruction. In general, the difference in execution time of these two conditions is insignificant.

The main program calls the subroutine three times as shown in Figure 10.8; this is known as a **multiple call subroutine**. In this subroutine, only two memory locations are needed for the stack. When a subroutine is called, the stack pointer is decremented by two, and when the program returns, the stack pointer is incremented by two; thus, the stack pointer returns to the initialization address.

SUBROUTINE DOCUMENTATION AND PARAMETER PASSING

10.5

In a large program, subroutines are scattered all over the memory map and are called from many locations. Information may be passed between a calling program and a subroutine, a

procedure called **parameter passing**. Typically, software design and implementation are performed by a team. Since subroutines and calls may be written by different team members, it is important to document a subroutine clearly so that the team members will know the consequences of using a subroutine. The documentation should include at least

1. Functions of a subroutine
2. Input/Output parameters
3. Registers modified—often called “destroyed”
4. List of other subroutines called by this subroutine.

The DELAY subroutine in Traffic Signal Controller shows one example of subroutine documentation.

FUNCTIONS OF THE SUBROUTINE

This is a brief summary of the purpose of the subroutine and what functions it performs. The user should be able to understand whether it is an appropriate subroutine without going through its instructions.

INPUT/OUTPUT PARAMETERS

The parameters (information) passed on to a subroutine are listed as inputs, and the parameters returned to the calling program are listed as outputs. For example, in the DELAY subroutine, how many times the loop is repeated is dependent on the count in register B. This parameter is supplied by the main program and used by the subroutine. Therefore, the count in register B becomes an input to the subroutine. However, this subroutine passes no information back to the main program, so there is no output.

When many parameters must be passed, R/W Memory locations are frequently used to store them, and memory pointers (HL or index registers) are used to point to those locations. The stack can also be used to store and pass parameters.

REGISTERS MODIFIED OR DESTROYED

Registers used in a subroutine may have been used by the calling program. Therefore, it is necessary to save the register contents of the calling program on the stack at the beginning of the subroutine and to retrieve the contents before returning to the calling program.

In the DELAY routine, the contents of DE and AF registers are saved on the stack at the beginning of the routine because these registers are used in the delay loop. Their contents are restored at the end of the routine using the LIFO method.

LIST OF SUBROUTINES CALLED

If a subroutine is calling other subroutines, the user should be provided with that information. This enables the user to check what parameters need to be passed to various subroutines and what registers are modified in the process.

ADVANCED SUBROUTINE CONCEPTS

10.6

Subroutines can be classified into various categories; commonly used categories include

1. Multiple Call
2. Nested
3. Multiple Ending

MULTIPLE CALL SUBROUTINE

This is a subroutine called from many locations in the main program. For example, the DELAY routine in Section 10.43 is a **multiple call subroutine**. These types of routines are easy to trace and need minimal stack space.

NESTED SUBROUTINE

A subroutine called by another subroutine is said to be **nested**. The extent of nesting is limited only by the number of available stack locations. When a subroutine calls another subroutine, all return addresses are stored on the stack.

Nested subroutines are shown in Figure 10.9. The main program calls Subroutine I from location 2050_H. The address of the next instruction, 2053_H, is placed on the stack, and the program is transferred to Subroutine I at 2090_H. Subroutine I calls Subroutine II from location 209A_H. The address 209D_H is placed onto the stack, and the program is transferred to Subroutine II. Figure 10.9 shows how the sequence of execution returns to the main program.

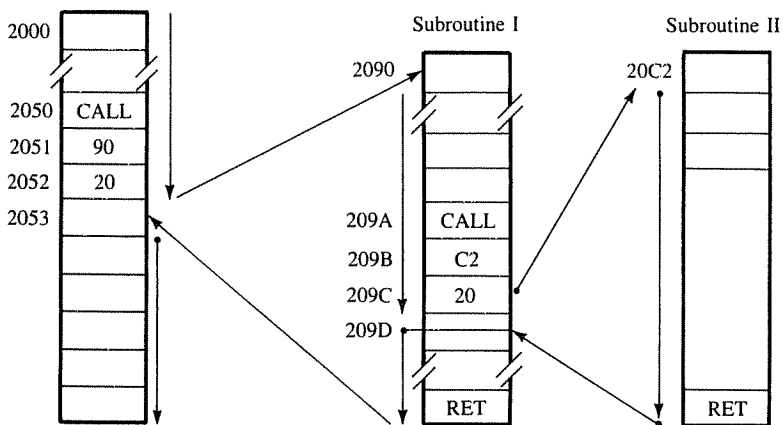
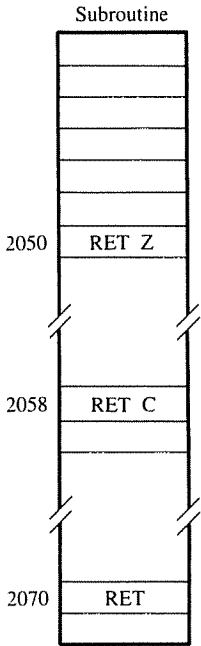


FIGURE 10.9
Nested Subroutines

FIGURE 10.10
Multiple Ending Subroutine



MULTIPLE ENDING SUBROUTINE

A subroutine that can be terminated at more than one place is called a **multiple ending subroutine** as shown in Figure 10.10. The subroutine has two conditional returns (RET Z—Return On Zero—and RET C—Return On Carry) and one unconditional return (RET). If the Z flag is set, the subroutine returns from location 2050_H, and if the CY flag is set, it returns from location 2058_H. If neither flag is set, the subroutine returns from location 2070_H.

10.7 ILLUSTRATIVE PROGRAM 3: BCD COUNTER AND ITS SEVEN-SEGMENT LED DISPLAY

This program is concerned with designing a BCD (Binary Coded Decimal) counter that counts in BCD and displays BCD digits at seven-segment LED output ports. This program demonstrates

- 1. How to adjust a binary number to a decimal number using the instruction DAA.
- 2. Table look-up technique to get seven-segment codes.
- 3. Nested and multiple ending subroutines.

10.71 Problem Statement

Design a BCD counter to count from 0 to 60_{BCD} and display each two-digit BCD count at two seven-segment LED ports (PORT0, PORT1); the time interval between each count

should be one second. The display should go up to 59, and when the count reaches 60, the counter should be reset to 00. The output ports have common cathode seven-segment LEDs, and the appropriate codes to display digits from 0 to 9 are stored in memory locations labelled as CODE.

10.72 Problem Analysis

This problem can be divided into three segments: (1) counting in BCD, (2) getting seven-segment LED code, and (3) creating a one-second delay. (See Section 11.5 for additional explanation on BCD numbers.)

COUNTING IN BCD

The designing of a binary (or Hex) counter using software instructions is a simple process; it involves clearing a register and incrementing the count at a given interval until the final count is reached. However, to count in BCD some adjustment is necessary; this is done by using the instruction DAA. The concepts underlying the DAA instruction are explained in the following paragraph.

The microprocessor is a binary machine; it does not recognize BCD numbers. In BCD, any number from A through F is invalid. When the count goes from digit 9 to A, it should be adjusted to 10 by adding 6 in binary as shown.

$$\begin{array}{r} 0\ A = 0\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 1\ 0\ 1\ 0 \\ +\ 0\ 6 = 0\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 1\ 1\ 0 \\ \hline 0\ 0\ 0\ 1\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 0 = 10 \end{array}$$

The microprocessor interprets this number as equivalent to 10 in Hex; however, we view the low-order four bits as 0 and the high-order four bits as 1, stored side by side in an 8-bit register. This is called **packed BCD**. To display 10_{BCD} , the low-order and high-order bits need to be separated (called **unpacking**) and displayed by two seven-segment LEDs. Now let us see how we can adjust a larger number by using the same technique of adding 6 when the digit goes beyond 9. For example, when the count goes from 99 to 9A, in BCD, it should be 100.

$$\begin{array}{r} 9\ A = 1\ 0\ 0\ 1\ 1\ 0\ 1\ 0 \\ \text{The value of low-order} \\ \text{four bits} > 9; \text{ add } 6 \end{array} \quad \begin{array}{r} + 0\ 1\ 1\ 0 \\ \hline 1\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 0 \end{array}$$

Because of CY, the value of high-order bits > 9 ; add 6 and CY to high order bits.

$$\begin{array}{r} + 0\ 1\ 1\ 0 \\ \hline 1\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 0 = 1\ 0\ 0_{\text{BCD}} \\ \text{CY} \qquad \qquad \qquad \text{CY} \end{array}$$

As expected, this becomes a three-digit BCD number requiring three LEDs. The above steps are performed internally by the DAA instruction.

INSTRUCTION

DAA : Decimal Adjust Accumulator

1. This is a 1-byte instruction. After an arithmetic operation, this instruction adjusts an 8-bit number in the accumulator to form two packed BCD numbers by using the process described above.
2. It uses the H and C flags to perform the adjustment.
3. In arithmetic addition, if there is a carry from bit D_3 to bit D_4 , the Half Carry flag (H) is set. Similarly, in subtraction, if there is a borrow from bit D_4 , the H flag is set. The DAA instruction uses the H and CY flags internally to adjust the result to BCD digits. The CY flag is used in 16-bit addition; this is discussed in the next chapter.

It must be emphasized that the instruction DAA

- Adjusts the result of a BCD addition or subtraction.
- Does not convert a binary number into BCD numbers.

GETTING SEVEN-SEGMENT LED CODES

When a BCD number is to be displayed by a seven-segment LED, it should be converted into its seven-segment code. The code is determined by hardware considerations such as common cathode versus common anode LED. For example, to display 0 in the common anode LED, six elements are turned on by supplying logic 0 and the center element is turned off by supplying logic 1. (See Section 13.54 for hardware details of seven-segment LEDs and related codes.)

The code has no direct relationship to binary numbers. The codes of BCD digits (0–9) are stored sequentially in memory and obtained using the **table look-up technique**. To use the technique, the BCD number must be unpacked. For example, the BCD number 28 must be converted into binary equivalents of 02_{BCD} and 08_{BCD} . Then, the conversion program locates the code of a digit based on its magnitude and copies the code into the accumulator (or register) to send out to the seven-segment LED port.

ONE-SECOND DELAY

A one-second delay can be generated by using a register pair, similar to the DELAY subroutine in Traffic Signal Controller (Section 10.4). However, there is no need to pass a parameter to repeat the delay loop from the main program; it can be written into the routine itself.

10.73 Program

This program consists of a main program and five subroutines: UNPACK, DSPLAY, LOOKUP, DELAY, and UPDATE.

MAIN: LD SP, STACK	;Initialize the stack
LD B, 00H	;Load initial BCD count
NEXT: CALL UNPACK	;Unpack BCD number and store digits
	in output buffer
CALL DSPLAY	;Get codes and display at ports
CALL DELAY	;Wait for one second
CALL UPDATE	;Go to next count and adjust for BCD
JP NEXT	;Continue

UNPACK: ;This subroutine unpacks the BCD number from the accumulator
 ; and stores two unpacked BCD digits in memory output buffers
 ; BUFF1 and BUFF2.
 ;Input: Packed BCD number in register B
 ;Output: BCD₁ in BUFF1 and BCD₂ in BUFF2
 ;Registers modified: Accumulator and HL

```
LD  HL, BUFF1      ;Set up HL as memory pointer for BUFF1
LD  A, B            ;Get BCD number
AND 0FH            ;Keep low-order 4 bits (BCD1)
LD  (HL), A         ;Store BCD1 in BUFF1
INC  HL             ;Point to BUFF2
LD  A, B            ;Shift BCD2 to D3–D0 and insert 0 from left
SRL A
SRL A
SRL A
SRL A              ;Store BCD2 in BUFF2
LD  (HL), A
RET
```

DSPLAY: ;This subroutine gets BCD digits from the output buffer,
 ; calls the LOOKUP routine, and displays digits at the
 ; output ports with appropriate codes.

```
;Input: Memory pointer to BUFF2 in HL registers
;Output: None
;Registers modified: HL registers
;Calls LOOKUP subroutine
LD  A, (HL)         ;Get BCD2 from BUFF2
CALL LOOKUP          ;Get seven-segment code
OUT (PORT2), A       ;Display BCD2 at PORT2
DEC HL               ;Move memory pointer to BUFF1
LD  A, (HL)         ;Get BCD1 from BUFF1
CALL LOOKUP          ;Get seven-segment code
OUT (PORT1), A       ;Display BCD1 at PORT1
RET                  ;Go back to main program
```

LOOKUP: ;This subroutine takes an unpacked BCD digit, updates the
 ; memory pointer, and gets the seven-segment code of the
 ; digit from memory.

```
;Input: Unpacked BCD digit in the accumulator
;Output: Seven-segment code in the accumulator
;Registers modified: Accumulator
PUSH HL              ;Save (HL) on the stack
LD  HL, CODE         ;Set up HL as memory pointer to LED code
```

```

        ADD  A, L           ;Add memory pointer to digit to be displayed
        LD   L, A           ;Update memory pointer to locate LED code
        LD   A, (HL)        ;Get LED code
        POP  HL             ;Retrieve from the stack
        RET                ;Return to the calling program
CODE: DB CODE0              ;The following ten locations store
        CODE1              ; seven-segment LED codes from 0 to 9
        CODE2
        CODE3
        CODE4
        CODE5
        CODE6
        CODE7
        CODE8
        CODE9

```

UPDATE: ;This subroutine updates the BCD count and adjusts for BCD
;number. When the BCD count reaches 60, it resets the
;counter.

```

;Input: Count in register B
;Output: Updated and BCD adjusted count in B
;Registers modified: Accumulator and register B
LD   A, B           ;Get the last count
ADD  A, 01H         ;Update the count
DAA                 ;Adjust for BCD
LD   B, A           ;Save the count
CP   60H            ;Is count 60?
RET  NZ             ;If not, go back to main program
LD   B, 00H         ;Reset the counter
RET

```

DELAY: ;This is a one-second delay routine

```

;Input/Output: None
;Registers Modified: None
PUSH DE             ;Save contents of DE, AF, BC
PUSH AF
PUSH BC
LD   B, 10           ;Load B to repeat loop ten times
WAIT: LD  DE, COUNT  ;Load DE for 100 ms delay
LOOP: DEC  DE
        LD   A,  D    ;Place (D) in A for flag checking
        OR   E        ;Set Z flag if (D) and (E) are both zero

```

JP	NZ, LOOP	;Repeat if COUNT \neq 0
DEC	B	;End of 100 ms delay, decrement B
JP	NZ, WAIT	;Is it one-second delay? If not, go back to WAIT
POP	BC	;Retrieve contents of saved registers
POP	AF	
POP	DE	
RET		;Go back to the calling program

10.74 Program Description

In this program, the problem is divided into various small tasks, each of which is assigned to a subroutine. The main program initializes the stack and the counter and calls subroutines in a sequence.

The first subroutine unpacks the BCD number and stores the unpacked digits in the output buffer BUFF1 and BUFF2. The unpacking is performed by separating the two digits and shifting the high-order digit into low-order bit positions D_3 – D_0 . For example, if the BCD number is 27, the digit 07 will be stored in BUFF1 and 02 will be stored in BUFF2, both in binary format.

The next subroutine DSPLAY is an example of the nested routines. It gets the BCD digits from the output buffer and calls the LOOKUP subroutine. In the LOOKUP routine, the seven-segment codes are stored sequentially from 0 to 9, and the HL register points to the first code. The DSPLAY subroutine supplies a digit in the accumulator which is added to register L, and the sum is saved in L. In effect, the memory pointer is moved to the location where the code of the digit is stored. For example, if the memory pointer is initially at the starting code location 2050_H and the digit is 02, the pointer is shifted after addition to 2052_H , where the code for the digit 2 is stored. Then the code is moved to the accumulator and passed back to the subroutine DSPLAY, which displays the code at the output port PORT2. The same process is repeated for BCD_1 . However, this technique will work properly only if the code is stored on the same memory page (see Assignment 13).

The UPDATE subroutine is an example of a multiple ending subroutine. This subroutine adds one to the previous count and adjusts for BCD using the instruction DAA. It compares the count with 60 and uses the conditional Return instruction to check for the Z flag. If Z is reset, the subroutine returns to the main program, and if it is set, it clears the register B to start the counter again.

MODULAR PROGRAMMING AND DEBUGGING

10.8

The program discussed in the last section is an example of industry-standard software even though it is a small program. The problem is divided into small tasks, and a subroutine is written for each task. The main program consists primarily of calling these subroutines. This is known as the **modular approach**.

The modular approach has several advantages. The approach provides flexibility in writing and modifying programs, especially in a team project. It is also easy to debug individual modules; each module can be tested separately for the expected outputs because each module has a specific task to perform. For example, the UNPACK subroutine is expected to accept a packed BCD number, unpack it, and store the digits in the output buffer. This can be written and tested separately independent of any other modules. Similar tests can be performed for the other modules. In addition, when all the modules are combined, the entire program can be debugged by setting breakpoints at the end of each module.

DEBUGGING MODULAR PROGRAMS

At the outset, it appears that if each module is tested individually, the whole program should work perfectly when they are combined, and the programmer can live happily ever after. But this almost never happens. As soon as the modules are combined, the interaction between the modules can cause quite a few trouble spots. Following is a list of common errors.

1. Mismatch between PUSH and POP instructions, the number of PUSH instructions being different from the number of POP instructions.
2. Improper sequence of PUSH and POP instructions (not following the LIFO sequence).
3. Destroying the contents in other modules.
4. Passing on wrong parameters or failure to pass parameters.
5. Failure to initialize the stack.
6. Failure to end a subroutine with a Return instruction.
7. Using a wrong flag for a conditional Call and Return instruction.

SUMMARY

- The stack is a group of memory locations in the system's R/W memory that is defined by loading an address into the stack pointer register.
- The programmer uses the stack to store and retrieve the contents of register pairs temporarily during the execution of a program, and the microprocessor uses the stack to store and retrieve the return address when a subroutine is called.
- The contents of register pairs are stored on the stack by using PUSH instructions, and retrieved by using POP instructions. The stack pointer tracks the storing and retrieving process by adjusting its address.
- When a PUSH instruction is executed, the stack pointer register is decremented once and the high-order byte stored; then the stack pointer is decremented again and low-order byte stored.
- When a POP instruction is executed, the byte at the top of the stack is retrieved in the low-order register and the stack pointer incremented; the next byte is retrieved in the high-order register and the stack pointer incremented again.

- The Exchange instructions (EXX and EX AF, AF') are used to exchange contents between general-purpose registers and alternate registers; these instructions can be used instead of PUSH and POP instructions for temporary storage.
- A subroutine is a group of instructions that performs a subtask of repeated occurrence; it is written separately from the main program.
- The program is transferred to a subroutine by using a Call instruction (conditional or unconditional) and returned to the calling program by using a Return (conditional or unconditional) instruction. A Call instruction should always be used in conjunction with a Return instruction.
- When a Call instruction is executed, the return address is stored on the stack before the program execution is transferred to the subroutine.
- When a Return instruction is executed, the program is transferred to the address stored at the top two locations of the stack.
- The DAA instruction adjusts a binary number in the accumulator to its BCD digits by using the Half-Carry (H) and the Carry (CY) flags. When a group of 4 bits (high or low) exceeds the magnitude 9_{10} , the instruction adds 6 and adjusts digits to their BCD values.
- In a seven-segment LED display, the codes required to display digits are unrelated to the binary values and dependent on hardware configuration. Therefore, the table look-up technique is used to display these digits.
- Modular programming is a software design process whereby the programming problem is divided into subtasks (or modules) with definite functions to perform, and each module is written and tested separately as a subroutine. This approach provides flexibility in writing and ease in debugging the program.

ASSIGNMENTS

1. Specify the contents of the BC registers and the stack pointer after the execution of the following instructions.

```
LD SP, 20F5H
LD HL, 2055H
PUSH HL
POP BC
```

2. Specify the address in the stack pointer and the contents of memory locations 2090_H – 2099_H after the execution of the following instructions.

```
LD SP, 219AH
XOR A
LD H, A
LD L, A
LD B, 05H
```

```

LOOP: PUSH HL
      DEC B
      JP NZ, LOOP

```

3. Read the following program and answer the questions.

No.	Instructions
1.	LD SP, 84F9H
2.	LD HL, 8138H
3.	LD BC, 0001H
4.	LD DE, 235AH
5.	LD A, D
6.	OR A
7.	PUSH HL
8.	PUSH AF
9.	PUSH BC



20. POP AF

- What is stored in the stack pointer after the execution of instruction 1?
 - What are the contents of locations 84F8_H and 84F7_H after the execution of instruction 7 (PUSH HL)?
 - Specify the bytes in the accumulator and the flag register after the execution of the instruction OR A.
 - What is the address in the stack pointer when instruction 9 is executed and what are the contents of the two top locations of the stack?
 - Specify the status of the S, Z, and C flags after the execution of instruction 20 (POP AF).
- If the stack pointer is initialized at 20C8_H and the Call instruction located at 2052_H calls the subroutine at 2075_H, specify the contents of the stack locations 20C7_H and 20C6_H and the contents of the stack pointer after the execution of the Call instruction.
 - The following program has a delay subroutine located at 2060_H. Read the program and answer the questions following.

Memory Addresses	Instructions	Comments
2000	LD SP, 2100H	;Main Program
2003	LD HL, 2050H	
2006	LD BC, 000AH	
2009	CALL 2060H	
200C	OUT (PORT1), A	



2060	PUSH HL	;Delay Subroutine
2061	PUSH BC	
2062	LD HL, A2FFH	
↓		
2072	POP BC	
2073	POP HL	
2074	RET	

- a. When the Call instruction located at 2009_H is executed, specify the contents of the stack location 20FE_H and the address in the stack pointer.
 - b. List the stack locations and their contents after the execution of the instructions PUSH HL and PUSH BC in the subroutine.
 - c. List the address in the stack pointer and the contents of the BC registers after the execution of the instruction POP BC.
 - d. Where does the program return after the execution of the instruction RET at the end of the subroutine?
 - e. Specify the contents of the stack pointer after the execution of the RET instruction.
6. The following program is a continuous Hex counter with an appropriate delay between two counts. Read the program and answer the questions.

Memory Addresses	Instructions	Comments
2000	LD SP, 20FAH	;Main program
2003	LD HL, 2065H	
2006	LD BC, 0010H	
2009	LD A, 00H	
200B	OUT (PORT1), A	
200D	CALL 2065H	
2010	INC A	
2011	JP 200BH	
↓		
2065	PUSH HL	;Delay Subroutine
2066	PUSH BC	
2067	LD HL, 10FFH	
206A	DEC HL	
↓		
2070	POP BC	
2071	RET	

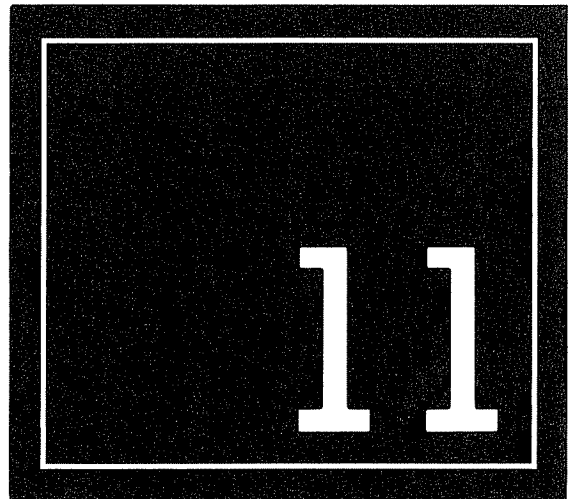
- a. List the stack locations and their contents after the instruction PUSH BC is executed.
 - b. Where does the program return after the execution of the RET instruction and what are the contents of the stack pointer?
 - c. What is being displayed at PORT1? Explain your answer.
7. Write a program to add the two Hex numbers 8A and 93. Store the sum at location OUTBUF and the flag status at location OUTBUF - 1. Initialize the stack at an appropriate memory address.
8. Write a program to initialize the stack pointer at memory location STACK, add two Hex numbers (97 and A1), and store the flag status in location STACK - 2 and the accumulator contents in location STACK - 1.
9. Write a program to meet the following specifications.
 - ☐ Initialize the stack pointer at XX99_H.
 - ☐ Clear the memory locations starting from XX90_H to XX9F_H.
 - ☐ Load register pairs BC, DE, and HL with data 024F_H, 4835_H, and 2050_H, respectively.
 - ☐ Store the contents of the registers BC, DE, and HL on the stack.
 - ☐ Execute the program and verify the memory locations from XX90_H to XX9F_H.
Note: For XX substitute high-order memory address (page number) of your system.
10. Write a program to clear the initial flags, load the data FFFF_H into register BC, and increment the register pair BC. Display the flag status at an output port or store it on the stack. Explain your results.
11. Write a 20 ms time delay subroutine using register pair BC. Clear the Z flag without affecting any other flags in the flag register and return to the main program.
12. Write a program to simulate a flashing yellow light with a 750 ms period. Use bit D₇ to control the light. (Hint: To simulate flashing, the light must be turned on and off.)
13. Modify the subroutine LOOKUP to include the situation when the code is stored in a sequence but crosses the memory page boundary (for example, when the seven-segment code is stored from 20FA_H to 2103_H).

Application Programs and Software Design

In the last three chapters, most of the Z80 instructions were introduced and illustrated with examples and application programs, such as block transfer, time delays, bit manipulations, and some arithmetic operations. The subroutine technique, discussed in Chapter 10, provides us with the most powerful features of programming: modularity and flexibility.

In this chapter we first introduce the Z80 instructions dealing primarily with 16-bit operations (copy, exchange, and arithmetic) and illustrate them using the subroutine technique. The illustrations will include examples such as multiprecision addition, multiplication, division, and code conversions.

In computer applications, various number systems and codes are used to input data or to display results. The ASCII (American Standard Code for Information Interchange) terminal is a standard Input/Output device in disk-based microcomputer systems. The code conversion subroutines demonstrated in this chapter are commonly used to exchange alphanumeric (letters and numbers) information between the microprocessor and peripherals such as terminals and printers.



OBJECTIVES

- Explain and illustrate the instructions used to copy or exchange 16-bit data between registers and memory locations.
 - Explain and illustrate the instructions that perform addition or subtraction with carry.
- Write subroutines to perform arithmetic operations such as multiplying, dividing, and adding numbers larger than 8 bits.
 - Write subroutines to perform code conversions for BCD, binary, and ASCII characters.
 - Write a program to illustrate the modular approach in software design.

11.1

16-BIT OPERATIONS

Most of the instructions discussed in the last several chapters deal primarily with 8-bit data. However, there are instances when we need to manipulate data larger than eight bits, especially in arithmetic manipulations and stack operations. Even though the Z80 is an 8-bit microprocessor, its architecture allows specific combinations of 8-bit registers to form 16-bit registers. There are several instructions in the set to manipulate data larger than 8 bits. These instructions will be introduced in this section and illustrated with examples.

11.11 16-Bit Data Copy and Data Exchange Group

Opcode	Operand	Bytes	Description
LD	HL, (16-bit)	3	Load HL register from the contents of memory specified by 16-bit operand and the next memory location.
LD	(16-bit), HL	3	Load the contents of HL register into memory location specified by 16-bit operand and the next memory location.
LD	SP, HL	1	Load the contents of HL register into the stack pointer register.
JP	(HL)	1	Load the contents of HL register into the program counter. This instruction is equivalent to LD PC, HL.
EX	DE, HL	1	Exchange the contents of DE and HL.
EX	(SP), HL	1	Exchange the contents of HL register and the contents of the top two locations of the stack.

General Characteristics

1. The first four instructions copy 16-bit data between the HL register pair and memory, the stack pointer, and the program counter.
2. The Exchange instructions exchange (copy both ways) 16-bit data.
3. These instructions do not affect the flags.

The memory locations 2050_H and 2051_H contain 3F_H and 42_H respectively, and the register pair DE contains 856F_H. Write instructions to exchange the contents of DE with the contents of the memory locations.

Example 11.1

Before Instructions:		D	85	6F	E	Memory Contents	
						2050	3F
						2051	42
LD HL, (2050H) ;	H	42	3F	L		2050	3F
						2051	42
EX DE, HL ;	D	42	3F	E			
	H	85	6F	L			
LD (2050H), HL ;						2050	6F
						2051	85

Solution

11.12 Arithmetic Instructions: Addition With Carry

ADC A, r These instructions add the contents of the oper-
 ADC A, 8-bit and, the carry, and the accumulator, and the
 ADC A, (HL) result is placed in the accumulator.
 Generally, these instructions are used to add
 numbers larger than 8 bits, as shown in Example 11.2.

Registers BC contain 2793_H, and registers DE contain 3182_H. Add these two 16-bit numbers, and place the sum in memory locations 2050_H and 2051_H.

Example 11.2

Before Instructions:		B	27	93	C
		D	31	82	E
LD A, C	A	93	X	F	
ADD A, E	A	15	C = 1	F	
LD L, A	H		15	L	

$$\begin{array}{r}
 93_H \rightarrow (A) \\
 + 82_H \rightarrow (E) \\
 \hline
 1 \ 15_H
 \end{array}$$

Solution

from the high-order byte 85_H ($85_H - 62_H - 1 \text{ Borrow} = 22_H$). Finally, the result is saved in register B.

11.14 Arithmetic Instructions: 16-bit Addition

ADD HL, rp : Add register pair to register HL

ADD HL, BC : This instruction adds the contents of the operand (register pair or stack pointer) to the contents of the HL register, and the result is placed in the HL register.
 ADD HL, DE
 ADD HL, HL
 ADD HL, SP : The Carry flag is altered to reflect the result of the 16-bit addition. No other flags are affected.
 These instructions use HL as a 16-bit accumulator.

The register HL contains a 16-bit number (4 Hex digits). Write instructions to shift all the digits by four positions to the left and clear bits D_3-D_0 . For example, if the register contains 1231_H , it should have 2310_H after the instructions are executed.

**Example
11.4**

The solution to this problem lies in the fact that a binary number added to itself shifts the number to the left by one position. To shift the number by four positions, we need to add the number four times. This is equivalent to shifting Hex digits to the left by one position. This is illustrated below in the comment section, beginning with the number 1231_H in HL register.

Solution

ADD HL, HL	; $1231 + 1231 =$	2462_H	HL
ADD HL, HL	; $2462 + 2462 =$	$48C4_H$	HL
ADD HL, HL	; $48C4 + 48C4 =$	9188_H	HL
ADD HL, HL	; $9188 + 9188 =$	2310_H	HL

A practical example of this problem is entering a 16-bit address in a single-board microcomputer using the Hex keyboard. When a new key is pressed, the display drops off the most significant Hex digit, shifts the three remaining digits to the left, and places the new key as the least significant digit.

11.15 Miscellaneous Instructions

These instructions are used in a bit manipulation, usually in conjunction with rotate instructions. (See Appendix A for illustrative examples.)

CCF: Complement the carry flag
 If $C = 1$, the CY flag is reset, and
 if $C = 0$, the CY flag is set.
 SCF: Set the Carry Flag. C is set to logic 1.

11.2 ILLUSTRATIVE PROGRAM: MULTIPRECISION ADDITION

Even though the Z80 has an 8-bit accumulator, it can be used to add multibyte numbers. The instruction set includes several instructions specifying arithmetic operations with carry (for example, add with carry or subtract with carry). Descriptions of these instructions convey an impression that these instructions can be used to add (or subtract) 8-bit numbers when the addition generates carries. In fact, when a carry is generated, it is added to bit D₀ of the accumulator in the next operation. Therefore, these instructions are used primarily in multibyte addition and subtraction as illustrated in this program, which adds two 32-bit numbers and stores the result in memory locations of the first number.

11.21 Problem Statement

Two 32-bit numbers, each occupying four memory locations starting with the low-order byte, are stored in locations BUF1 and BUF2. Write a subroutine to add the numbers and store the result in BUF1. Pass the following parameters from the main program to the subroutine: the addresses of BUF1 and BUF2 and the number of bytes in a number.

11.22 Problem Analysis

To add multibyte numbers, two issues need to be resolved: (1) how to add a carry generated by the addition of low-order bytes to the next order bytes, and (2) how to save multibyte results. The first issue can be resolved by using the instruction ADC (Add With Carry), and multibyte results can be stored in memory by assigning appropriate memory locations.

In this problem, we need to set up one counter to count the number of bytes to be added and two memory pointers to point to BUF1 and BUF2.

11.23 Program

```

MAIN: LD HL, BUF1      ;Initialize memory pointers
      LD DE, BUF2
      LD B, 04H         ;Set up register B as a counter to specify
                        ;the size of number to be added
      CALL ADBYTE       ;Call subroutine to add multibyte numbers
      HALT

ADBYTE: ;This subroutine adds any two multibyte numbers and saves the
        ;result in memory by replacing the first number.
        ;Input: Addresses of numbers to be added in HL and DE registers
        ;      : The size of the number in bytes in register B
        ;Output: None, the result is stored in memory
        ;Modifies registers: B, DE, and HL

START: XOR A           ;Clear carry
NEXT: LD A, (DE)        ;Get byte from BUF2

```

```

ADC A, (HL) ;Add byte from BUF1
LD (HL), A  ;Save partial result
INC HL      ;Update memory pointers
INC DE
DEC B        ;Update counter for next addition
JR NZ, NEXT ;If counter ≠0, get next-order byte
RET
    
```

11.24 Program Description

The main program initializes the memory pointers DE and HL, sets up register B to count four bytes (32 bits), and calls the subroutine ADBYTE. The subroutine begins by clearing the CY flag; if a carry has been generated by the calling program in the previous operation, it must be cleared. The program adds the low-order bytes from BUF1 and BUF2 by using the memory pointers and the instruction ADC and saves the partial result in the first memory location of BUF1. In the following instructions, the pointers are upgraded to point to the next bytes, and the counter is decremented. The loop is repeated until all four bytes are added, and the complete result, starting from the low-order byte, is stored in four memory locations of BUF1.

This subroutine can be used to add numbers of any size specified by the calling program in register B; however, it does not account for a carry generated by the last addition. For example, in this program, if the sum is larger than 32 bits, the result will have an error. To subtract multibyte numbers, this subroutine can be used by replacing the instruction ADC with SBC.

BINARY MULTIPLICATION 11.3

Multiplication can be viewed as repeated addition. For example, the product of 20 and 5 (20×5) can be obtained by adding 20 five times. To write a program, we can set up a counter for five and add 20 until the counter is zero. It is, however, a rather inefficient technique for a large multiplier. A more efficient technique can be devised by following the model of manual multiplication of decimal numbers.

$$\begin{array}{r}
 125 \\
 \times 101 \\
 \hline
 \text{Step 1:} \quad (125 \times 1) = 125 \\
 \text{Step 2: Shift left and add } (125 \times 0) \quad + 000 \\
 \text{Step 3: Shift left and add } (125 \times 1) \quad + 125 \\
 \hline
 12625
 \end{array}$$

In this example, the multiplier multiplies each digit of the multiplicand, starting from the right, and adds the product by shifting to the left. When the multiplier digit is 1, we add multiplicand (125), and when the multiplier digit is 0, we add 0 (or nothing). The


```

NOADD:  EX DE, HL      ;Place multiplicand in HL
        ADD HL, HL     ;and shift left
        EX DE, HL      ;Retrieve shifted multiplicand
        DEC B          ;One operation is complete, decrement counter
        JR NZ, NXTBIT  ;Go back to next bit if not done
        RET

```

11.34 Program Description

1. The objective of the main program is to demonstrate uses of 16-bit data copy and exchange instructions. The main program transfers the two bytes—multiplier and multiplicand—from memory locations to the HL registers and places them in the DE registers by using the exchange instruction. It calls the MLTPLY routine and places the result in the output buffer.
2. The multiplier routine follows the format—add and shift to the left—illustrated earlier. The routine places the multiplier into the accumulator and rotates it eight times until the counter (B) becomes zero. Register D is cleared to use it for 16-bit addition (ADD HL, DE).
3. After each rotation, when a multiplier bit is 1, the instruction ADD HL, DE performs the addition, and ADD HL, HL performs the shifting of bits to the left. When a bit is 0, the subroutine skips the instruction ADD HL, DE and just performs the shifting.

BINARY DIVISION

11.4

The division of two numbers can be performed by subtracting the divisor repeatedly from the dividend (the number to be divided) until the remainder becomes smaller than the divisor; the number of times the subtraction is repeated then becomes the quotient. For example, to divide 19 by 5, we can subtract 5 three times from 19 until the remainder is 4, and the quotient is equal to 3. Conceptually, this procedure is simple, but it can be time-consuming. An efficient algorithm that imitates the manual division of two decimal numbers can be devised. For example, to divide 203 by 5, we perform the following steps.

	Divisor	Dividend	Quotient
	5	$\overline{) 203}$	
Step 1: Take the most significant digit (MSD) from the dividend and divide it by the divisor. If the divisor > MSD, place the quotient as 0; otherwise find the remainder.	5	$\overline{) 2}$ R = 2	0

Step 2: Take the next digit from the dividend and combine it with the remainder of Step 1 and divide the new number by the divisor. Find quotient and remainder.	5	$\begin{array}{r} \overline{) 20} \\ -20 \\ \hline \end{array}$	0 4
		R = 0 0	
Step 3: Take the last digit from the dividend and combine it with the remainder of Step 2. Divide it by the divisor. If the divisor > partial dividend, the quotient is 0. Find the remainder.	5	$\begin{array}{r} \overline{) 003} \\ -000 \\ \hline \end{array}$	0 4 0
	5	R = 3	4 0

In this example, the quotient is 40 and the remainder is 3. From this illustration, two critical points need to be emphasized: (1) when the divisor is larger than the partial dividend, the quotient is 0, and (2) the quotients of successive steps are not added but combined with the previous result in appropriate columns.

In Step 2, integer 20 is divided by 5 to obtain the quotient 4, and then the remainder is obtained by subtracting the product of 5 and 4 from 20. This algorithm appears to be complicated; however, in binary numbers, it can be performed simply by subtraction because the quotient can only be either 1 or 0. Similarly, the remainder is obtained by subtracting the divisor from the dividend; the product of the divisor and the quotient is the same as the divisor when the quotient is 1.

11.41 Problem Statement

Write necessary subroutines to divide two unsigned 8-bit numbers. The calling program places the dividend in register E and the divisor in register D. The subroutine should place the quotient in register L and the remainder in register C.

11.42 Problem Analysis

To implement the algorithm suggested in the above example, the following steps are necessary.

1. In Step 1, the MSD is separated from the dividend and divided by the divisor. In case of the binary number, the MSB can be isolated by rotating bit D₇ into the Carry flag and from the Carry flag into bit D₀ of the accumulator (or of any other register). Now, the MSB can be divided by subtracting the divisor; in binary numbers, the quotient can be either 0 or 1. If the Carry flag is set after the subtraction, the divisor is larger than the MSB; thus, the quotient is 0 and the MSB should be retained as a remainder. If the divisor can be subtracted from the MSB, the quotient is 1 and the remainder should be passed on to the next operation.
2. In the next operation, bit D₆ of the dividend is combined with the remainder by rotating the bits, and the above process is repeated until the dividend is rotated left eight times.

11.43 Program

```

DIVIDE:      ;This subroutine divides two 8-bit integers.
              ;Input: Dividend in register D and divisor in register E
              ;Output: Quotient in register L and remainder in register C
              ;Registers modified: B, C, and L
              ;Calls two subroutines: DIV8 and RESULT
              LD B, 08H          ;Set up register B to count eight rotations
              LD L, 0            ;Clear L to save quotient
              LD C, L            ;Clear C to save partial remainder
NXTBIT:      CALL DIV8           ;Call routine to divide two numbers
              CALL RESULT        ;Call routine to save results
              DEC B              ;Decrement bit-count
              JR NZ NXTBIT       ;If all bits are not checked, get next bit
              RET

DIV8:         ;This subroutine gets one bit at a time from the dividend to form a
              ;partial dividend and subtracts the divisor from it and passes the
              ;status of CY flag and the remainder to the subroutine RESULT
              ;Input : Dividend in register D and divisor in register E
              ;      : Partial remainder in register C
              ;Output: Remainder in accumulator and CY flag status
              ;Registers modified: A, C,
              LD A, D            ;Get dividend
              RLCA               ;Shift bit into CY
              LD D, A            ;Save remaining dividend
              LD A, C            ;Place partial remainder in A
              RLA                ;Combine CY bit with remainder to form partial
              ;dividend
              CP E               ;Check if divisor > partial dividend
              RET C              ;Return if CY = 1, divisor > partial dividend
              SUB E              ;Subtract divisor from partial dividend
              RET

RESULT:       ;This subroutine saves the remainder and adjusts the quotient accord-
              ;ing to the result of the previous routine.
              ;Input : Remainder in the accumulator and CY status
              ;Output: Quotient in register L and remainder in register C
              LD C, A            ;Save partial remainder
              CCF                ;Set CY to 1 or 0 as a quotient
              LD A, L            ;Get previous quotient
              RLA                ;Add quotient from CY flag
              LD L, A            ;Save partial quotient
              RET

```

11.44 Program Description

The subroutine `DIVIDE` initializes register `B` to count 8-bit rotation; for a 16-bit division, the counter would be set up to count 16. Register `L` is cleared to save the quotient and register `C` to save the partial dividend. This routine calls the subroutines `DIV8` and `RESULT` eight times until the counter = 0.

The primary function of the subroutine `DIV8` is to take bit D_7 from the dividend (register `D`) and place the bit as D_0 into register `C` using the accumulator. This is similar to the procedure shown in the example—taking one digit from the dividend and combining it with the remainder from the previous step. The dividend from register `D` is copied into `A` and D_7 is shifted into `CY` flag. Then the accumulator contents are replaced by the partial remainder from register `C`, and the `CY` flag is shifted into the accumulator to form the partial dividend. The divisor (register `E`) is compared with the new partial dividend. If the divisor is larger than the dividend, the `CY` flag is set and the program returns; otherwise, the divisor is subtracted from the partial dividend before returning.

In the subroutine `RESULT`, the remainder is saved in register `C`, and the `CY` flag is complemented. When the divisor is larger than the partial dividend, the `CY` flag is set, but the quotient is zero. On the other hand, when the divisor can be subtracted from the partial dividend, the Carry is reset, but the quotient is 1. Thus the `CY` flag needs to be complemented before placing it as D_0 into register `L`.

11.5 ILLUSTRATIVE PROGRAM: BCD TO BINARY CONVERSION

In most microprocessor-based products, data are entered and recorded in decimal numbers. For example, in an instrumentation laboratory, readings such as voltage and current are maintained in decimal numbers, and data entry may be done through a decimal keyboard. The system monitor program of the instrument converts each key into an equivalent 4-bit binary number, and stores two BCD numbers in an 8-bit register or a memory location as a packed BCD. Even if data are entered in decimal digits, it is inefficient to process data in BCD numbers because, in each 4-bit combination, the digits A through F are unused. Therefore, BCD numbers are generally converted into binary numbers for data processing.

The conversion of a BCD number into its binary equivalent employs the principle of *positional weighting* in a given number.

For example, $72_{10} = 7 \times 10 + 2$.

The digit 7 represents 70, based on its second position from the right. Therefore, to convert 72_{BCD} into its binary equivalent requires multiplying the second digit by 10, and adding the first digit.

Converting a two-digit BCD number into its binary equivalent requires the following steps:

1. Separate an 8-bit packed BCD number into two 4-bit unpacked BCD digits: BCD_1 and BCD_2 .

2. Convert each digit into its binary value according to its position.
3. Add both binary numbers to obtain the binary equivalent of the BCD number.

Convert 72_{BCD} into its binary equivalent.

Example
11.5

$72_{10} = 0111\ 0010_{\text{BCD}}$

Solution

Step 1: $0111\ 0010 \rightarrow 0000\ 0010$ Unpacked BCD_1
 $\rightarrow 0000\ 0111$ Unpacked BCD_2

Step 2: Multiply BCD_2 by 10 (7×10)

Step 3: Add BCD_1 to the answer in Step 2.

The multiplication of BCD_2 by 10 can be performed by various methods. One method is multiplication with repeated addition: add 7 ten times. This technique is illustrated in the next program.

11.51 Problem Statement

A two-digit BCD number between 0 and 99 is stored in an R/W memory location called the Input Buffer (INBUF). Write a program that utilizes an unpacking subroutine (UNPACK) and a conversion subroutine (BCDBIN) to convert the BCD number into its equivalent binary number. Store the result in a memory location defined as the Output Buffer (OUTBUF).

11.52 Program

```

START:    LD SP, STACK      ;Initialize stack pointer
          LD HL, INBUF      ;Point HL index to the Input Buffer memory
                               ;location where BCD number is stored
          LD BC, OUTBUF     ;Point BC index to the Output Buffer memory
                               ;where binary number will be stored
          LD A, (HL)        ;Get BCD number
          LD HL, BUFF1      ;Set up HL as memory pointer for BUFF1
          CALL UNPACK       ;Call routine to unpack BCD number
          CALL BCDBIN       ;Call BCD to binary conversion routine
          LD (BC), A        ;Store binary number in the Output Buffer
          HALT              ;End of program

UNPACK:   ;This subroutine unpacks the BCD number from the accumulator
          ;and stores two unpacked BCD digits in output buffer
          ;memory BUFF1 and BUFF1 + 1
          ;Input: Packed BCD number in the accumulator, and storage address

```

;for unpacked BCD in HL
 ;Output: None, but stores unpacked BCD in BUFF1 and BUFF1 + 1
 ;Registers modified: Accumulator and HL

```
PUSH BC
LD B, A           ;Save BCD number temporarily
AND 0FH          ;Keep low-order 4 bits BCD1
LD (HL), A        ;Store BCD1 in BUFF1
INC HL           ;Point to BUFF1 + 1
SRL B            ;Shift BCD2 to right to get it into bits D3–D0
SRL B
SRL B
SRL B
LD (HL), B        ;Store BCD2 in BUFF1 + 1
RET
POP BC
```

BCDBIN: ;This subroutine converts an unpacked BCD number into
 ;its binary equivalent.
 ;Input: Two unpacked BCD numbers in BUFF1 and BUFF1 + 1,
 ; low-order BCD₁ in BUFF1 and BCD₂ in BUFF1 + 1
 ;Output: A binary number in the accumulator.
 ;Registers modified: A, E, H, and L

```
LD HL, (BUFF1)    ;Get BCD1 in L and BCD2 in H registers
XOR A             ;Clear accumulator
LD E, 10          ;Set register E as multiplier of ten
SUM: ADD A, E      ;Add ten to accumulator and continue adding
                        ;as many times as the value of BCD2
DEC H             ;Reduce BCD2 by one
JR NZ SUM         ;Is multiplication complete? If not repeat
ADD A, L          ;Add BCD1
RET
```

11.53 Program Description

1. In modular programming, the main program is concerned primarily with initializations and passing parameters on to subroutines. In this illustration, the main program initializes the stack pointer and two memory indexes. It brings the BCD number into the accumulator, initializes location BUFF1, and passes these parameters to the subroutine. It calls two subroutines: UNPACK and BCDBIN.
2. After the return from the subroutines, the main program stores the binary equivalent in the Output Buffer memory.
3. The conversion from BCD to binary involves multiplying BCD₂ by its positional weighting factor (10) and adding BCD₁ as explained in the example.

ILLUSTRATIVE PROGRAM: BINARY TO BCD CONVERSION

11.6

These steps can be converted into a program as illustrated below.

11.61 Problem Statement

An 8-bit binary number is stored in the memory location BINBYT. Convert the number into BCD, and store each BCD as unpacked BCD digits in an output buffer.

11.62 Problem Analysis

The problem can be divided into three tasks.

1. The first task is to get the byte from memory. This can be part of the main program.
2. After getting the byte, it has to be divided by 100 and 10. These divisors need to be supplied.
3. Convert the binary number into BCD numbers and store them in the output buffer.

11.63 Program

This program converts an 8-bit binary number into a BCD number, so it requires 12 bits to represent three BCD digits. The result is stored as three unpacked BCD digits in three output buffer memory locations.

```

START:  LD SP, STACK      ; Initialize stack pointer
        LD HL, BINBYT     ; Point HL index to where binary number is stored.
        LD A, (HL)        ; Transfer byte
        CALL BINBCD       ; Call conversion subroutine
        HALT

BINBCD:  ;This subroutine supplies the powers of ten in register B
        ;and calls the BCD conversion routine.
        ;Input: Binary number in the accumulator.
        ;Output: Powers of ten and stores BCD1 in the first output buffer.
        ;Calls BCD routine and modifies register B.
        LD HL, OUTBUF     ; Point HL index to output-buffer memory
        LD B, 100          ; Load 100 into register B (in manual
                           ; assembly 100 should be converted to 64H)
        CALL BCD           ; Call conversion
        LD B, 10           ; Load 10 into register B
        CALL BCD
        LD (HL), A         ; Store BCD1
        RET

BCD:     ;This subroutine converts a binary number into
        ;BCD and stores BCD2 and BCD3 in the output buffer.

```

```

;Input: Binary number in accumulator and powers of ten in B.
;Output: None, but stores BCD2 and BCD3 in output buffer.
;Modifies accumulator content.
LD (HL), 0FFH ;Load buffer with (zero minus one)
STORE: INC (HL)      ;Clear buffer and increment for each subtraction
      SUB B          ;Subtract power of ten from binary number
      JR NC, STORE   ;Is number larger than power of ten?
                        ;If yes, go back and add 1 to buffer
      ADD A, B        ; If no, add power of ten to get back remainder
      INC HL          ; Go to next buffer location
      RET

```

11.64 Program Description

This program illustrates the concepts of the nested subroutine and multiple call subroutine. The main program calls the subroutine BINBCD; in turn, the BINBCD calls the BCD subroutine twice.

1. The main program transfers the byte to be converted to the accumulator, and calls the BINBCD subroutine.
2. The subroutine BINBCD supplies the powers of ten by loading register B and the address of the first output buffer memory location, and calls the conversion routine BCD.
3. In the BCD conversion routine, the output buffer memory is used as a register whose contents are incremented in each subtraction loop. This step can also be achieved by using a register in the microprocessor. The BCD routine is called twice, once after loading register B with 100, and again after loading register B with 10.
4. During the first Call of BCD, the subroutine clears the output buffer, stores BCD₃, and points the HL registers to the next output buffer location. The instruction ADD A, B is necessary to restore the remainder because one extra subtraction is performed to check the borrow.
5. During the second Call of BCD, the subroutine again clears the output buffer, stores BCD₂, and points to the next buffer location. BCD₁ is already in the accumulator after the ADD instruction, which is stored in the third output buffer by the instruction LD (HL), A in the BINBCD subroutine.

ILLUSTRATIVE PROGRAM: ASCII TO BINARY CODE CONVERSION

11.7

A computer is a binary machine; it understands and communicates in binary language. However, human beings communicate using alphanumeric symbols (letters and numbers).

Therefore, we need to translate between alphanumeric symbols and the binary language; ASCII (The American Standard Code for Information Interchange) is a commonly used code for such translation. It is a seven-bit code with 128 (2^7) combinations. In the 8-bit word format, the ASCII code ranges from 00_H to $7F_H$, bit D_7 being 0. Each combination is assigned to a letter, a decimal number, or a machine command (see Appendix C). For example, hexadecimals 30_H to 39_H represent numerals 0 to 9, and 41_H to $5A_H$ represent capital letters from A to Z.

The ASCII keyboard is a standard input device for most microcomputers. When an ASCII character is entered, the microprocessor receives the binary equivalent of the ASCII Hex number. For example, when the ASCII key for digit 9 is pressed, the microprocessor receives the code 00111001 (39_H), which must be converted to the binary equivalent of 09 (00001001) for arithmetic operations. Similarly, to display digit 9 at the video terminal, the microprocessor must send out the ASCII code 39_H . In some systems, bit D_7 of the ASCII code is used for the parity check. The parity check conveys the information whether the number of 1s in a transmitted ASCII byte is odd or even (see Chapter 15 for details). For example, in a system with the odd parity check, ASCII 9 will be transmitted with D_7 as 1 to keep the number of 1s odd in the byte; ASCII 9 will be $B9_H$. At this point, we do not need to know the details of parity check except that bit D_7 should be masked to translate from ASCII to binary code.

11.71 Problem Statement

Write a subroutine to convert an ASCII Hex digit (0 to F) into its binary equivalent. A calling program places the ASCII Hex digit including the parity bit into the accumulator.

11.72 Problem Analysis

The ASCII codes for digits 0 to 9 range from 30_H to 39_H , and for digits A to F, they range from 41_H to 46_H ; there is a break in the range. Therefore, to set up a conversion routine, we need to check two ranges. If the digit is between 0 and 9, it can be obtained by subtracting 30_H from the ASCII code. If it is between A to F, we need to subtract an additional 07_H from the remainder because there are seven ASCII codes between the code of 9 (39_H) and code of A (41_H).

11.73 Program

```

ASCBIN:  ;This subroutine takes an ASCII Hex digit, strips the parity bit, and
          ; converts it into its binary equivalent. In the comment section, the routine
          ; is explained assuming ASCII F ( $46_H$ ) as an illustration.
          ;Input: ASCII Hex digit (with parity bit) in the accumulator
          ;Output: Binary equivalent in the accumulator
          ;Modifies the contents of the accumulator

```

		Example	
		A 0010	0110 46H
AND 7FH	;Mask parity bit	0111	1111 7FH
SUB 30H	;Subtract 0 bias from the digit	4 6 H	
CP 10	;Is the digit between 0 and 9?	-3 0 H	
RET C	;If yes, conversion done	1 6 H	
SUB 7	;If not, subtract 7 to find digit	1 6 H	
	; between A and F	0 7 H	
RET		0 F H	

11.74 Program Description

This is an illustration of the multiple ending subroutine. If the digit is between 0 and 9, its comparison with 10 results in a return on the Carry flag. Otherwise, the subroutine returns after subtracting an additional 7. However, this routine does not check whether the ASCII character is beyond the range of Hex digits.

ILLUSTRATIVE PROGRAM: BINARY TO ASCII CODE CONVERSION

11.8

The binary to ASCII code conversion is necessary to display text or numbers at an ASCII terminal (or print at a printer). For example, to display digit 9 at the terminal, the microprocessor should send out 39_H. The following subroutine illustrates binary to ASCII conversion.

11.81 Problem Statement

Write a subroutine to convert a byte in the accumulator into two ASCII characters and store them in output buffer OUTBUF and OUTBUF + 1.

11.82 Problem Analysis

A byte in the accumulator is equivalent to 2 Hex digits. Therefore, the byte should be unpacked. The conversion process is opposite to that of the previous subroutine ASCBIN. If the digit is between 0 to 9, it is converted by adding 30_H, and if the digit is between A to F, an additional 07_H must be added to the digit.

11.83 Program

```

BINASC:    ;This subroutine converts the byte in the accumulator into two ASCII
           ;characters and saves them in memory OUTBUF and OUTBUF + 1
           ;Input: Byte in the accumulator and the memory pointer for OUTBUF
           ;in BC

```

```

;Output: None; two ASCII characters are stored in OUTBUF
;Registers modified: A, B, C, H, and L
;Calls two subroutines: UNPACK and ASCII
CALL UNPACK      ;Unpack the byte from the accumulator and
                  ;place nibbles as low-order 4-bit in BUFF1 and
                  ;BUFF1 + 1
LD HL, (BUFF1)   ;Place unpacked nibbles into HL register
LD A, L          ;Place digit from BUFF1 into A for conversion
CALL ASCII       ;Convert into ASCII character
LD (BC), A       ;Store first ASCII in OUTBUF
INC BC           ;Memory pointer to OUTBUF + 1
LD A, H          ;Place digit from BUFF1 + 1 into A for conver-
                  ;sion
CALL ASCII       ;Convert second digit into ASCII character
LD (BC), A       ;Place second ASCII into OUTBUF + 1
HALT             ;End
UNPACK:          ;This subroutine is written in Section 11.53.

ASCII:           ;This subroutine converts low-order 4-bit into ASCII Hex code
;Input : Binary digit from 0 to F as low-order 4-bit in the accumulator
;Output: ASCII Hex code in the accumulator
;Modifies accumulator contents
CP 10            ;Is digit less than 10?
JR C, BASE      ;If yes, go to add ASCII base of 30H
ADD A, 07H       ;Add 7H to get code for digits between A and F
BASE:           ADD A, 30H ;Add ASCII base 30H
RET

```

11.9 SOFTWARE DESIGN

In previous sections of this chapter, we illustrated various subroutines related to 16-bit arithmetic operations and code conversions. These subroutines are written as independent modules dealing with a simple task. We can now combine these independent modules to design a simple project. The following project can be viewed as part of a communication process between the microcomputer and its terminal. The project is concerned with how to process ASCII characters after they have been received, how to form binary numbers for arithmetic operations, and how to convert any arithmetic results into ASCII characters for display.

11.91 Project Statement

Four ASCII characters are stored sequentially in the input buffer INBUF. The first two characters represent an 8-bit multiplicand and the remaining two represent an 8-bit multiplier. Each number is stored low-order digit first, followed by the high-order digit.

Convert the ASCII characters into binary digits, multiply the numbers, and store the result in the output buffer OUTBUF as ASCII characters.

11.92 Project Analysis

This is a simple software design project, and it can be divided into various segments. To clarify the analysis, the steps are illustrated with the example of the following four ASCII characters: 32_H, 41_H, 46_H and 35_H (Figure 11.1).

1. First, we need to convert ASCII characters into their binary equivalents. Four ASCII characters will have four binary digits; thus, they can be placed as unpacked binary digits (02, 0A, 0F, 05) back into INBUF. (See Appendix C for ASCII table to obtain Hex equivalent for ASCII characters.)
2. The first two represent a multiplicand (A2_H) and the remaining two represent a multiplier (5F_H). These four digits need to be packed as two binary numbers (Figure 11.1(b)).
3. When these two 8-bit numbers are multiplied, the result can be as large as a 16-bit number (or four Hex digits). In our example, the result is 3C1E_H.
4. To convert the result into ASCII characters, all four digits should be converted into unpacked digits as 0E, 01, 0C, and 03 (Figure 11.1(c)).
5. Now the unpacked digits can be converted into ASCII characters as 45_H, 31_H, 43_H, and 33_H and stored sequentially in the output buffer OUTBUF (Figure 11.1(d)).

11.93 Program

START:	LD SP, STACK	;Initialize the stack
	LD HL, INBUF	;Set up HL as memory pointer to ASCII
		;characters
	LD B, 04H	;Set up register B to count ASCII characters
CHAR:	LD A, (HL)	;Get ASCII character
	CALL ASCBIN	;Convert into binary
	LD (HL), A	;Place unpacked binary digit into INBUF
	INC HL	;Next buffer memory location
	DEC B	;One conversion complete
	JR NZ, CHAR	;If all characters are not yet converted, get
		;next one
	LD HL, INBUF	;Set up HL as memory pointer for unpacked
		;digits
	CALL PACK	;Pack digits of the multiplicand
	LD E, A	;Place the multiplicand in register E
	CALL PACK	;Pack digits for the multiplier
	LD D, A	;Place the multiplier in register D
	CALL MLTPLY	;Multiply two numbers and place result in
		;HL
	EX DE, HL	;Save the result in DE

```

LD HL, OUTBUF      ;Set up HL as memory pointer for OUTBUF
LD A, E            ;Get low-order byte of the result
CALL UNPACK        ;Unpack the low-order byte and store in
                   ;OUTBUF

LD HL, OUTBUF + 2  ;Update memory pointer
LD A, D            ;Get high-order byte of the result
CALL UNPACK        ;Unpack high-order byte and store in
                   ;OUTBUF

LD HL, OUTBUF      ;Set up HL as memory pointer for OUTBUF
LD B, 04H          ;Set up register B to count four digits
DIGIT: LD A, (HL)    ;Get binary digit
CALL ASCII         ;Convert binary digit into ASCII character
LD (HL), A         ;Save ASCII character in OUTBUF
INC HL             ;Next buffer memory location
DEC B             ;One conversion complete
JR NZ, DIGIT       ;If all digits are not yet converted, get next
                   ;digit

HALT

PACK: ;This subroutine takes two unpacked digits from memory and packs
      ;them into an 8-bit number in the accumulator.
      ;Input: Memory address in HL
      ;Output: Packed number in the accumulator
      ;Modifies registers: A, B, H, and L

LD B, (HL)         ;Get low-order unpacked digit
INC HL             ;Point to the next digit
LD A, (HL)         ;Get high-order unpacked digit
SLA A              ;Place digit into bit positions D7–D4
SLA A              ;and clear D3–D0.
SLA A
SLA A
OR B               ;Pack both digits
INC HL             ;Point to the next memory location
RET

```

11.94 Program Description and Debugging

This program is made up of several subroutines written previously, and the comments explain the functions of each subroutine. This is a demonstration of how a problem can be divided into small modules and how these modules can be written as subroutines and combined into a program.

The program begins by initializing a memory pointer for ASCII characters stored in INBUF and the counter to get these characters into the microprocessor. The program segment starting with the label CHAR gets these characters and converts them into

unpacked digits using the subroutine ASCBIN. Figure 11.1(a) shows the process with the four specific ASCII characters as examples. The subroutine PACK converts them into binary numbers—a multiplicand and a multiplier—and stores them in registers E and D, respectively. The next subroutine MLTPLY multiplies these numbers and places the product 3C1EH into register HL (Figure 11.1(c)). The product is again unpacked and stored as four unpacked digits in memory OUTBUF. Finally, these digits are converted into ASCII characters by the subroutine ASCII (Figure 11.1(d)). We could have used the subroutine BINASC, with some modifications, instead of the last two subroutines.

The subroutines used in this project are taken from the previous programs, except PACK, which is included at the end of the program. In troubleshooting this program, you have to be careful in checking the parameters that are passed from one module to another. However, this type of program is easy to debug. The programmer can set up breakpoints at the end of a module and check register contents and parameters being passed. For example, a breakpoint can be set up just before the subroutine PACK is called, and the contents of memory INBUF can be verified. If unexpected results are found, you can examine the initialization instructions or the subroutine ASCBIN. On the other hand, if the expected results are found, you can proceed to check the output after the subroutine PACK. The keys to troubleshooting software are modularity and knowledge of the expected outputs at critical junctures.

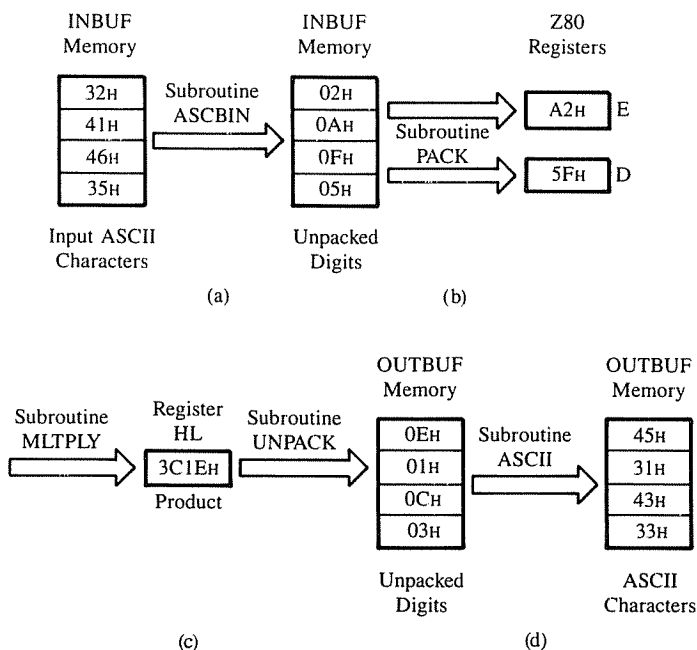


FIGURE 11.1
Memory and Register Contents After Execution of Subroutines

SUMMARY

This chapter illustrated subroutines dealing with arithmetic operations such as multiprecision addition, multiplication, and division, and code conversions for BCD and ASCII. The programs were written as independent modules, and the design of a simple software project was illustrated using these modules. The project demonstrated how to break down a given problem into small manageable modules, and how these modules can be written as subroutines and combined in a program to accomplish a given task.

However, single-board microcomputer systems are unsuitable for writing, coding, and debugging programs larger than fifty instructions. To write a large program, it is necessary to have access to an assembler and a disk-based system, as discussed in Chapter 7.

ASSIGNMENTS

Section 11.1

1. Register BC contains the 16-bit number 72F2_H. Add F5_H to the number and save the result in BC.
2. Two 16-bit numbers (82F7_H and 24A2_H) are stored in memory locations 2050_H to 2053_H, low-order byte first followed by the high-order byte. For example, the location 2050_H holds F7_H and 2051_H holds 82_H. Add the numbers. If the sum is larger than 16-bit, call the ERROR routine; otherwise, store the sum in memory locations 2060_H and 2061_H.
3. Register BC contains A7F2_H and register DE contains 5F18_H. Add the numbers. If the sum is larger than 16-bit, call the OVRLOD routine; otherwise, save the result in register BC.
4. Register BC contains 87A9_H. Subtract the byte F8_H and save the result in register BC.
5. Register BC holds F538_H and register DE holds A279_H. Subtract the contents of DE from the contents of BC and save the result in BC.
6. Register D holds the number C4_H. Shift the entire number to the left by four positions and clear bits D₃–D₀ (the result should be 40_H).
7. Write instructions to get the address from the stack pointer and save it on the stack.
8. Assuming the HL register holds 2088_H, write a 1-byte instruction to transfer the program execution to 2088_H.

Section 11.2

9. Two 24-bit numbers, each occupying three memory locations, are stored in addresses starting with 2050_H and 2060_H. The numbers are stored with high-order

byte first; locations 2050_H and 2060_H hold the high-order byte of each number. Write a subroutine to add the numbers and store the result in memory locations starting with the low-order byte at 2070_H. The calling program should pass the memory addresses to the subroutine.

10. A string of 16-bit numbers is stored in memory locations starting at BUF1; the numbers are stored with low-order byte first. Write a subroutine to add the string and save the result in the output buffer OUTBUF; the result is limited to 24 bits. The calling program should supply the memory addresses and the length of the string.
 11. Modify the program in 10 to increase the limit of the result to 32 bits.
 12. In 10, save the contents of the stack pointer from the main program, point the stack pointer to the location BUF1, and transfer the readings to registers by using the POP instruction. Add the readings as in 10; however, the original contents of the stack pointer should be retrieved after the addition is completed.
 13. Assume that the monitor program stores a memory address in the DE registers. When a Hex key is pressed to enter a new memory address, the keyboard subroutine places the 4-bit binary code of the key pressed into the accumulator. Write a subroutine to shift out the most significant four bits of the old address, and to insert the new code from the accumulator as the least significant four bits in register E.
- Hints: See Example 11.4 to shift the four low-order bits in a 16-bit register.

Sections 11.3 and 11.4

14. Rewrite the MLTPLY subroutine to multiply two 16-bit unsigned numbers; the multiplier is given in register DE and the multiplicand in register HL.
15. Rewrite the MLTPLY subroutine using the technique of successive addition for two 8-bit unsigned numbers.
16. Write a subroutine to divide two unsigned 8-bit numbers using the technique of successive subtraction. The calling program passes the dividend in register D and the divisor in register E.
17. Write a subroutine to divide two unsigned 16-bit numbers using the technique shown in Section 11.4. The calling program passes the dividend in register HL and the divisor in register DE.

Section 11.5

18. Modify the Illustrative Program: BCD to Binary Conversion as follows. The number of BCD digits to be converted is specified by the main program in register D and passed on as a parameter to the subroutine.
 19. Rewrite the multiplication section of the BCDBIN routine using the RLCA (Rotate Left) instruction.
- Hints: Rotating left once is equivalent to multiplying by two. To multiply a digit by ten, rotate left three times and add the result of the first rotation (times 10 = times 8 + times 2).

20. An 8-bit packed BCD is in the accumulator. Save BCD_1 in one of the registers and delete BCD_1 from the accumulator, leaving BCD_2 in high-order positions D_7-D_4 . Clear the CY flag and shift BCD_2 to the right by one position. Explain that by rotating BCD_2 to the right once from the high-order position is equivalent to multiplying it by eight from the low-order position.

Section 11.6

21. Assume the STACK is defined as $20B8_H$ in the illustrative program. Specify the stack addresses and their (symbolic) contents when the BCD subroutine is called the second time.
22. Rewrite the main program to supply the powers of ten in registers B and C, and to store converted BCD numbers in the output buffer. Modify the subroutine BCD to accommodate the changes in the main program, and eliminate the subroutine BINBCD.
23. Rewrite the program to convert a given number of binary data bytes into their BCD equivalent, and store them as unpacked BCDs in the output buffer. The number of data bytes is specified in register D in the main program. The converted numbers should be stored in groups of three consecutive memory locations. If the number is not large enough to occupy all three locations, zeros should be loaded into those locations.
24. A set of ten BCD readings is stored in the input buffer. Convert the numbers into binary, and add the numbers. Store the sum in the output buffer; the sum can be larger than FF_H .

Sections 11.7, 11.8 and 11.9

25. Rewrite the subroutine PACK using an appropriate Rotate instruction.
26. A set of ASCII Hex digits is stored in the input buffer. Write a program to convert these numbers into binary. Add these numbers in binary, and store the result in the output buffer.
27. Extend the program in 26 to convert the result from binary to ASCII Hex code.

CHAPTER 12:

Interrupts

CHAPTER 13:

Programmable Interface Devices

CHAPTER 14:

Programmable Timers and Counters

CHAPTER 15:

Serial I/O and Data Communication

CHAPTER 16:

Advanced Topics in Memory Design and DMA Concepts

CHAPTER 17:

Designing Microprocessor-Based Products

CHAPTER 18:

Trends in Microprocessor Technology

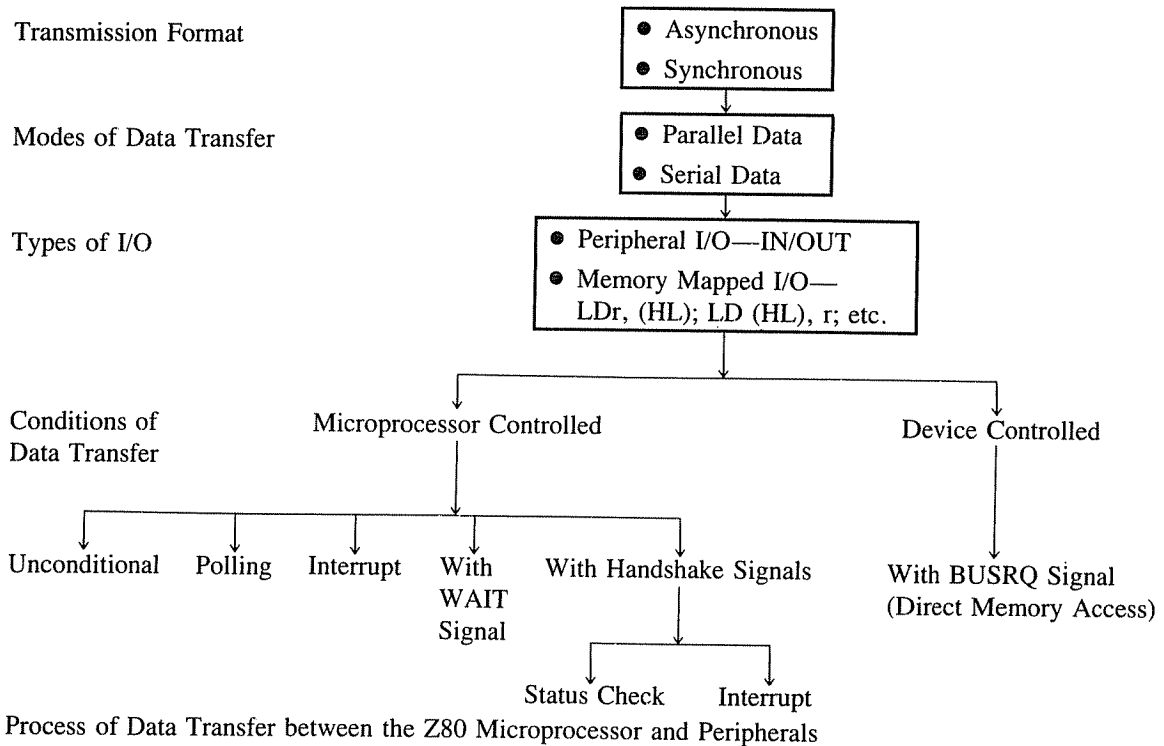
Part III of this book is concerned with the interfacing of peripherals using programmable I/O devices and design processes of microcomputer-based systems. The primary objectives of Part III are

1. To examine the concepts and processes of various data transfers between the microprocessor and peripherals.
2. To illustrate applications of programmable I/O interface devices.
3. To synthesize the concepts of microprocessor architecture, software, and interfacing by designing a simple microprocessor-based system.

The primary function of the microprocessor (MPU) is to accept data from such input devices as keyboards and A/D converters, read instructions from memory, process data according to the instructions, and send the results to such output devices as LEDs, printers, and video monitors. These input and output devices are called either **peripherals** or **I/Os**; memory can be viewed as a special type of I/O. The designing of logic circuits (hardware) and the writing of instructions (software) to enable the microprocessor to

III

Interfacing Peripherals, Programmable I/O Devices, Applications, and Design



communicate with these peripherals is called **interfacing**, and the logic circuits are called **I/O ports** or **interfacing devices**.

The microprocessor (MPU) communicates with the peripherals in either the **asynchronous** or **synchronous** format. Similarly, it can transfer data in one of two modes: **parallel I/O** or **serial I/O**. The Z80 identifies peripherals either as **memory-mapped I/O** or **peripheral I/O** based on their interfacing logic circuits (see Chapter 5). Data transfer between the microprocessor and peripherals can take place under various conditions, as shown in the chart. The modes, techniques, instructions, and conditions of data transfer are briefly described in the following paragraphs.

FORMATS OF DATA TRANSFER: SYNCHRONOUS AND ASYNCHRONOUS

Synchronous means at the same time; transmitter and receiver are synchronized with the same clock. *Asynchronous* means at irregular intervals. The synchronous format is used in high-speed data transmission, and the asynchronous format is used for low-speed data transmission. Data transfer between the microprocessor and peripherals is primarily asynchronous.

MODES OF DATA TRANSFER: PARALLEL AND SERIAL

The microprocessor receives (or transmits) binary data in either of two modes: parallel or serial. In the parallel mode, the entire word (4-bit, 8-bit, or 16-

bit) is transferred at the same time. In the Z80, an 8-bit word is transferred simultaneously over the eight data lines as illustrated in Chapter 5. The peripherals commonly used for parallel data transfer are keyboards, seven-segment LEDs, data converters, and memory.

In the serial mode, data are transferred one bit at a time over a single line between the microprocessor and a peripheral. For data transmission from the microprocessor to a peripheral, a word is converted into a stream of eight bits; this is called parallel-to-serial conversion. For reception, a stream of eight bits is converted into a parallel word; this is called serial-to-parallel conversion. The serial I/O mode is commonly used with such peripherals as a teletype (TTY), CRT terminals, printers, and cassette tapes.

TYPES OF I/O: PERIPHERAL AND MEMORY-MAPPED

In Z80-based systems, I/O devices can be classified in two categories: peripheral I/Os or memory-mapped I/Os. In peripheral I/O, a peripheral is identified with an 8-bit address, and I/O related control signals are used for data transfer. In memory-mapped I/O, a peripheral is connected as if it were a memory location, and it is identified with a 16-bit address. Data transfer is implemented by using memory-related control signals.

CONDITIONS OF DATA TRANSFER

The process of data transfer between the microprocessor and peripherals is controlled either by the microprocessor or by the peripherals. Data transfer is generally implemented under the microprocessor control when the peripheral response is slow relative to that of the microprocessor.

MICROPROCESSOR-CONTROLLED DATA TRANSFER

Most peripherals respond slowly in comparison to the speed of the microprocessor. Therefore, it is necessary to set up conditions for data transfer so that data will not be lost during the transfer. Micropro-

cessor-controlled data transfer can take place under five different conditions: (1) unconditional, (2) status check (also known as polling), (3) interrupt, (4) with WAIT signal, and (5) with handshake signals. These conditions are described briefly.

Unconditional Data Transfer In this form of data transfer, the microprocessor assumes that a peripheral is always available. For example, to display data at an LED port, the microprocessor simply enables the port, transfers data, and goes on to execute the next instruction.

Data Transfer with Status Check (Polling) In this form of data transfer, the microprocessor is kept in a loop to check the status of a peripheral; this is also called polling. When the status condition is satisfied, data transfer is implemented. For example, to read data from an input keyboard in a single-board microcomputer, the microprocessor can keep polling the port until a key is pressed.

Data Transfer with Interrupt In this form of data transfer, when a peripheral is ready to transfer data, it sends an interrupt signal to the microprocessor. The microprocessor stops the execution of the program, accepts the data from the peripheral, and then returns to the program. The advantage of the interrupt technique is that the processor is free to perform other tasks rather than waiting in a status check or polling loop.

Data Transfer with WAIT Signal When peripheral response time is slower than the execution time of the microprocessor, the WAIT signal can be used to add T-states, thus extending the execution time. This technique provides sufficient time for the peripheral to complete the data transfer and is commonly used in a system with slow memory chips.

Data Transfer with Handshake Signals In this form of data transfer, signals are exchanged between the microprocessor and a peripheral prior to actual data transfer; these signals are called *handshake*

signals. The function of these signals is to ensure the readiness of the peripheral and to synchronize the timing of the data transfer. For example, when an A/D converter is used as an input device, the microprocessor needs to wait because of the slow conversion time of the converter. At the end of the conversion, the A/D converter sends the Data Ready (DR), also known as End of Conversion, signal to the microprocessor. Upon receiving the DR signal, the microprocessor reads the data and acknowledges by sending a signal to the converter that the data have been read. During the conversion period, the microprocessor keeps checking the DR signal; this technique is called the status check with handshake signals and is functionally similar to the polling method.

Rather than using the handshake signals for the status check, the signals can be used to implement data transfer with interrupt. In the above example of the A/D converter, the DR signal can be used to interrupt the microprocessor.

Handshake signals prevent the microprocessor from reading the same data more than once from a slow device and from writing new data before the device has accepted the previous data.

PERIPHERAL-CONTROLLED DATA TRANSFER

The last category of data transfer is peripheral-controlled I/O. This type of data transfer is employed when the peripheral is much faster than the microprocessor. For example, in the case of Direct Memory Access (DMA), the DMA controller sends a BUSRQ (Bus Request) signal to the microprocessor; the microprocessor acknowledges the request and releases its data bus, address bus, and control signals to the DMA controller; and data are transferred at high speed without the intervention of the microprocessor.

CHAPTER TOPICS

Chapter 12 is concerned with the Z80 interrupt I/O process, whereby an external peripheral can interrupt the processor and indicate its readiness for data

communication. The chapter discusses various modes of the Z80 interrupt and illustrates them with applications.

Chapter 13 deals with the programmable interface devices: the Z80 PIO and the Intel 8255A. These devices can be set up to perform various I/O tasks by instructions written in their control registers; they are thus called programmable devices. The chapter explains the basic concepts underlying the devices and illustrates various operational modes of these devices with examples.

Chapter 14 describes two programmable timers: the Z80 CTC and the Intel 8253. While time delays and counters were designed using software instructions in earlier chapters, this chapter illustrates the hardware approach.

Chapter 15 focuses on serial data communication, whereby data bits are transferred one bit at a time over one line. First, the chapter discusses the basic concepts in serial I/O and the software approach to serial data transfer. Then it illustrates how the concepts can be implemented using programmable serial interface devices such as the Z80 SIO and the Intel 8251A.

Chapter 16 is concerned with advanced topics in memory interfacing and concepts in the direct memory access (DMA). The topics include the need for Wait states, interfacing of dynamic memory, and data transfer using DMA techniques.

Chapter 17 discusses the design processes in a microprocessor-based product. The primary objective of this chapter is to synthesize the various concepts, both hardware and software, discussed in all the previous chapters; it includes the design of a single-board microcomputer.

Chapter 18 reviews various 8-bit, 16-bit, and 32-bit microprocessors and single-chip controllers and suggests trends in microprocessor technology.

PREREQUISITES

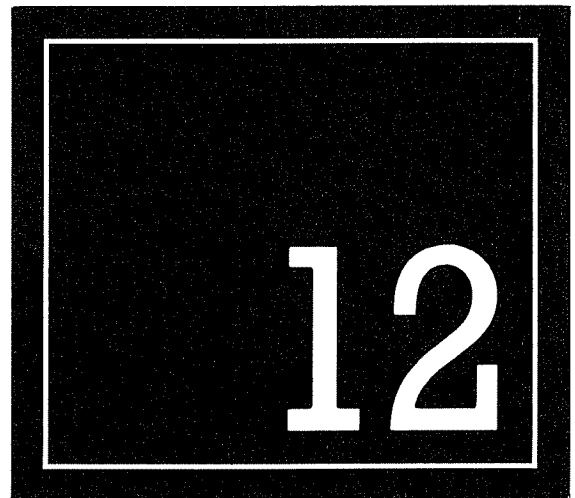
- Basic concepts of microprocessor architecture, memory, and I/Os (Part I).
- Familiarity with the Z80 instruction set and programming techniques (Part II).

Interrupts

In the introduction to Part III, we classified the processes of data transfer between the microprocessor and peripherals into five categories: unconditional, polling, interrupt, using Wait states and handshake signals. In this chapter, we focus on the interrupt process. The interrupt I/O is a process of data transfer whereby an external device or a peripheral can inform the processor that it is ready for communication and requests attention. The process is initiated by an external device, and is asynchronous, meaning that it can be initiated at any time without reference to the system clock. However, the response to an interrupt request is directed or controlled by the microprocessor.

The interrupt requests are classified in two categories: **maskable interrupt** and **nonmaskable interrupt**. A maskable interrupt request can be ignored or delayed by the microprocessor if it is performing some critical task; however, it has to respond to a nonmaskable request immediately. The maskable interrupt is somewhat like a telephone that can be kept off the hook if one is not interested in receiving any calls. The nonmaskable interrupt is like a smoke detector requiring immediate attention if set off.

The interrupt process allows the microprocessor to respond to these external requests for its attention or service on a demand basis and leaves the microprocessor free to perform other tasks. On the other hand, in the program controlled (or polled)



I/O, the microprocessor remains in a loop, continuously checking the I/O device and doing nothing else, until the device is ready for data transfer.

This chapter describes the basic concepts in the interrupt process and provides an overview of the Z80 nonmaskable interrupt and three modes of the maskable interrupt: Modes 0, 1, and 2. The interrupts are illustrated with examples and industrial applications, such as the interfacing of an A/D data converter. Finally, it includes discussion of how multiple interrupts are implemented with one interrupt line and how priorities are determined.

OBJECTIVES

- Explain an interrupt process and the difference between a nonmaskable and a maskable interrupt.
- List the modes of the maskable interrupt and differences among them.
- Explain the instructions EI, DI, and RST, and their functions in the Z80 interrupt process.
- List the eight steps to initiate and implement an interrupt in Z80.
- Design and implement an interrupt with a given RST instruction in Mode 0.
- Design and implement an interrupt in Mode 2 for a given memory address as a restart location.
- Interface an external device such as an A/D converter with the interrupt I/O.
- Explain how to connect multiple-interrupting peripherals with the INT interrupt line and how to determine their priorities using logic circuits.
- Explain how to use a RST instruction to implement a software breakpoint.

12.1 BASIC CONCEPTS IN INTERRUPT I/O

The interrupt I/O is a communication process through which the MPU can be interrupted by using one of the external request signals. In Chapter 3, we discussed briefly five such request signals (pins): Reset, Interrupt ($\overline{\text{INT}}$), Nonmaskable Interrupt ($\overline{\text{NMI}}$), Wait ($\overline{\text{WAIT}}$), and Bus Request ($\overline{\text{BUSRQ}}$) in the context of the Z80 architecture, and they are shown in Figure 12.1(a). In this chapter, we focus primarily on two external request signals, $\overline{\text{INT}}$ and $\overline{\text{NMI}}$ (Figure 12.1(b)), and their functions in the I/O communication process.

The interrupt signal can be compared with a telephone in a office; a person in the office can continue to work until interrupted by a phone ring. After answering the phone, the person can go back to work. In a microcomputer system, an external device can interrupt the microprocessor by using the interrupt signal. For example, let us assume the microcomputer is executing a program and occasionally needs to read data from a data converter whenever a new reading is available. The data converter can be interfaced with

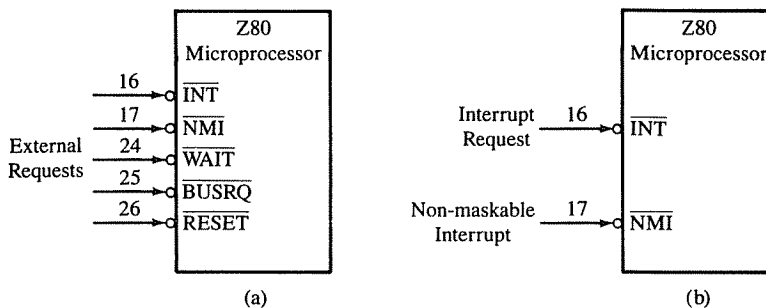


FIGURE 12.1

(a) Z80 External Request Signals (b) Z80 Interrupt Pins

the microprocessor using the interrupt line, so that it can interrupt the processor whenever a new data byte is available. The processor can then read the data byte and go back to executing the program. The interrupt I/O allows the processor to execute the program and also attend to various peripherals on a demand basis. Otherwise, in our example, the processor would be kept busy just reading data from the data converter input port.

What happens in the office of busy or high-powered executives when the phone rings? Generally, the secretary or the administrative assistant answers the phone, then transfers the call to the person you asked for; you may even have to go through one more secretary. When the Z80 microprocessor is interrupted, the program execution is transferred to specific locations in memory to get further instructions for what to do next; this group of instructions is called a service routine. In our example, the service routine may consist of reading a data byte. The Z80 microprocessor has various processes for transferring the program execution to these specific locations in memory similar to the various office protocols for answering telephones. These processes are called interrupt modes and are described in the next section.

12.11 Overview of Z80 Interrupts

The Z80 interrupts are divided into two groups: nonmaskable interrupt ($\overline{\text{NMI}}$, pin 17) and maskable interrupt ($\overline{\text{INT}}$, pin 16). The maskable interrupt is the interrupt that can be masked, meaning it can be disabled or enabled. On the other hand, the nonmaskable interrupt cannot be disabled. The maskable interrupt has three different modes (Modes 0, 1, and 2), as shown in Figure 12.2, and they are explained in the following sections.

MASKABLE INTERRUPT

The Z80 maskable interrupt is controlled by the Interrupt Enable flip-flops (IFF1 and IFF2), which are internal to the processor. These flip-flops are set to logic 1 by using the

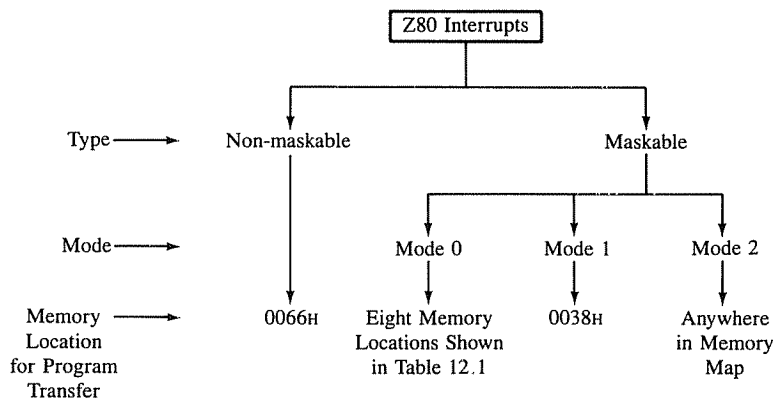


FIGURE 12.2
Z80 Interrupt Modes

software instruction EI to enable the interrupt process. The maskable interrupt can be disabled by using the instruction DI; this instruction resets the flip-flops IFF1 and IFF2.

Instruction: EI—Enable Interrupt

- This is a 1-byte instruction.
- The instruction sets the Interrupt Enable flip-flops IFF1 and IFF2 and enables the interrupt process.
- The interrupt process is disabled by the instruction DI, an interrupt acknowledgment by the Z80, or system Reset.

Instruction: DI—Disable Interrupt

- This is a 1-byte instruction.
- The instruction resets the Interrupt Enable flip-flops and disables the maskable interrupt.
- This instruction should be included in a program segment where an interrupt from an outside source cannot be tolerated.

The Z80 microprocessor can be interrupted from whatever it is doing if

- the flip-flops IFF1 and IFF2 are set (through software).
- the input to the interrupt signal $\overline{\text{INT}}$ (pin 16) is caused to go low by a signal from an external device or a peripheral until the microprocessor has time to sample the $\overline{\text{INT}}$. The $\overline{\text{INT}}$ signal is level sensitive, meaning it is not accepted (or stored) immediately on transition from high to low (see the details in Mode 0).

What happens after the Z80 is interrupted is dependent on the mode it has been programmed for by the programmer. The Z80 instruction set has three instructions to set the interrupt mode: IM 0 (Mode 0), IM 1 (Mode 1), and IM 2 (Mode 2).

Mode 0: The program execution can be transferred to one of the eight memory locations from 0000_H to 0038_H shown in Table 12.1 by using additional hardware (Refer to Section 12.2 for details).

Mode 1: The program execution is directly transferred to memory location 0038_H without any additional hardware.

Mode 2: The program execution can be transferred to any memory location by using external hardware and the address in the interrupt vector register I.

The next step is dependent on what is written at these memory locations; this is similar to what happens to your phone call when the secretary transfers it to the appropriate person. In the following sections, we discuss the hardware and software details of how to transfer the program execution to these memory locations and how to get back to the

TABLE 12.1
Restart Instructions

Mnemonics	Binary Code								Hex Code	Call Location (Hex)
	D ₇	D ₆	D ₅	D ₄	D ₃	D ₂	D ₁	D ₀		
RST 00H	1	1	0	0	0	1	1	1	C7	0000
RST 08H	1	1	0	0	1	1	1	1	CF	0008
RST 10H	1	1	0	1	0	1	1	1	D7	0010
RST 18H	1	1	0	1	1	1	1	1	DF	0018
RST 20H	1	1	1	0	0	1	1	1	E7	0020
RST 28H	1	1	1	0	1	1	1	1	EF	0028
RST 30H	1	1	1	1	0	1	1	1	F7	0030
RST 38H	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	FF	0038

program execution prior to the interrupt. Remember that the person you called has to get back to work after the phone call.

NONMASKABLE INTERRUPT

This interrupt is not controlled through the Interrupt Enable flip-flops. The instruction DI therefore has no effect on this interrupt, and the instruction EI is not necessary to enable it. This interrupt can be compared to the smoke detector in an office, rather than a telephone. When the smoke detector sets off the alarm, it has to be responded to immediately.

The NMI (pin 17) is an active low, edge-sensitive interrupt. When the NMI goes low, the Z80 completes the execution of the current instruction and transfers the execution to memory location 0066_H without any external hardware. The details of this interrupt process are discussed later in the chapter.

12.12 Restart (RST) Instructions and Mode 0

In the previous discussion, we mentioned that if the Z80 is programmed for Mode 0, the program execution can be transferred after an interrupt to one of the eight memory locations shown in Table 12.1. These memory locations are directly related to eight Restart (RST) instructions in the Z80 instruction set.

RESTART (RST) INSTRUCTIONS

These are 1-byte call instructions that transfer the program execution to a specific location on the page 00_H, as listed in Table 12.1. These instructions implicitly specify a 16-bit address in one opcode; this is called the Modified Page Zero Addressing mode. Let us recall, from Chapter 9, how the Call instructions are executed. When a Call instruction is executed, the Z80 first stores the address of the next instruction on the top of the stack, then transfers the program to the Call location. The RST instructions are executed similarly, as illustrated in Example 12.1.

**Example
12.1**

Specify the contents of the stack and the stack pointer after the execution of the instruction RST 30H. Where will the program execution be transferred?

Instructions

2000	LD	SP,	2399H
2003		↓	
2040	RST	30H	
2041			

Solution

The stack pointer is initialized at 2399_H. The RST 30H is a 1-byte call instruction to location 0030_H. When the RST instruction is executed, the Z80 places the contents of the program counter 2041_H (which is the address of the instruction following the RST instruction) on the stack, the stack pointer is decremented to 2397_H, and the program execution is transferred to location 0030_H. The contents of the stack and the stack pointer are as follows:

	Stack	
2397	41 _H	Stack Pointer → 2397 _H
2398	20 _H	

We can now use these RST instructions in conjunction with the interrupt Mode 0. We can insert one of the RST instructions into the microprocessor using external hardware. Figure 12.3 shows such a circuit. The input to the tri-state buffer is F7_H, which is the code for the RST 30H instruction (see Table 12.1). When this buffer is enabled, the instruction RST 30H will be placed onto the data bus and brought into the microprocessor. When it is executed, the program will be transferred to the memory location 0030_H. We now need to know how and when to enable the buffer. The buffer is enabled by the INTA signal, which is issued by the Z80 when it acknowledges an interrupt (this is explained in Section 12.14).

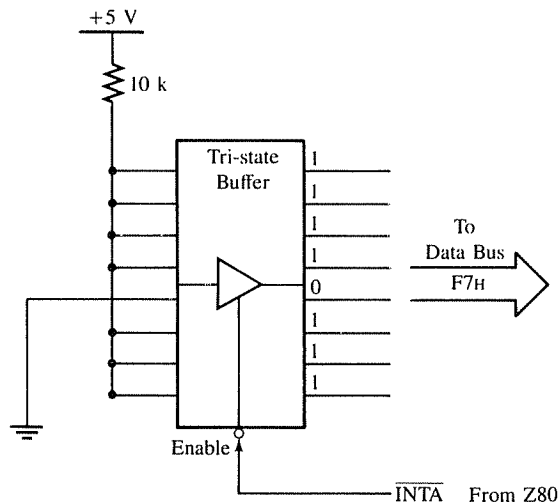
12.13 Interrupt Process in Mode 0

The interrupt in Mode 0 is compatible to the interrupt (INT) in the 8080 and (INTR) in the 8085 microprocessors. We selected Mode 0 to describe the interrupt process because it includes all the basic concepts in the interrupt I/O; other modes can be described as special cases of Mode 0.

One way to describe the Z80 interrupt process is with the analogy of the telephone in an office, this time with a blinking light instead of a ring. Assume that the office has one telephone serving eight engineers, and it is monitored by the secretary. The secretary is generally busy typing, and when the phone begins to blink, he or she stops typing to answer the phone. In order for the secretary to receive and respond to a telephone call, typically, the following activities take place:

FIGURE 12.3

A Circuit to Implement the Instruction RST 30H



1. The telephone system is enabled, meaning that the receiver is on the hook.
2. The secretary glances at the light at certain intervals to check whether someone is calling.
3. When the light begins to blink, the secretary completes the sentence being typed, answers the phone, and waits for a response. Once the phone is picked up, the line is busy, and no more calls can be received on that line until the the receiver is placed back on the hook.
4. The caller specifies the message; for our example, assume the caller is the manager of the group and wants to cancel the scheduled meeting with one of the engineers, Ms. Peterson. The secretary performs the following steps:
 5. makes a pencil mark at the beginning of the next sentence on the typing draft as a reminder to start typing at that point later on.
 6. places the receiver back on the hook.
 7. informs Ms. Peterson about the cancellation of the meeting.
 8. goes back to the pencil mark on the typing draft and starts typing again.

In some instances, steps 6 and 7 are interchanged, depending on the urgency of the request. If the request is critical and the secretary does not want to be interrupted again while attending to the request, step 7 will be performed first.

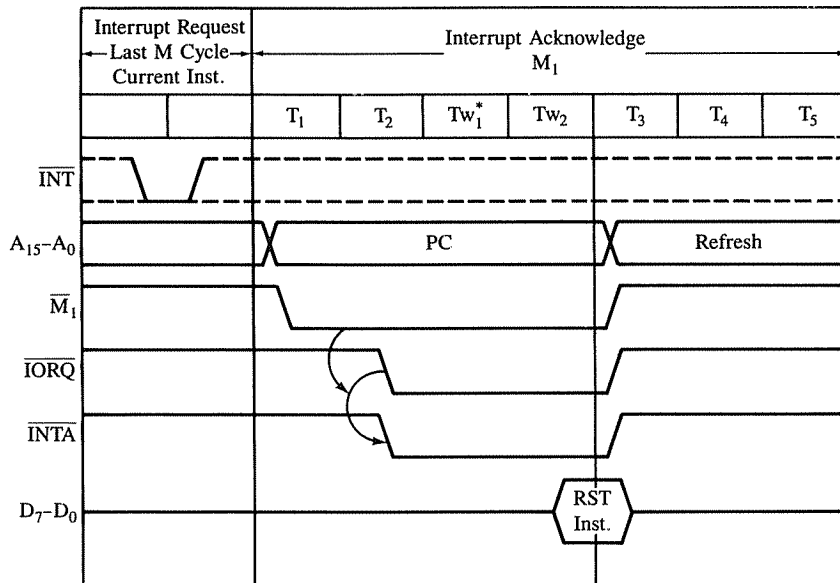
The Z80 interrupt process can be described in terms of these eight steps.

- Step 1:** The interrupt process should be enabled by writing the instruction EI, and the interrupt Mode 0 should be specified by the instruction IM 0 in the main program. This is similar to keeping the phone receiver on the hook.
- Step 2:** When the microprocessor is executing a program, it checks the INT line in the last T-state of each instruction.

- Step 3:** If the interrupt flip-flop is enabled and the $\overline{\text{INT}}$ signal goes active (low) and remains active until the end of the instruction being executed, the microprocessor samples the $\overline{\text{INT}}$ signal, completes the instruction, disables the interrupt flip-flop and sends a signal called $\overline{\text{INTA}}$ —Interrupt Acknowledge (active low). The processor cannot accept any further interrupt requests until the interrupt flip-flops are enabled again.
- Step 4:** The signal $\overline{\text{INTA}}$ is used to insert an instruction, preferably a restart (RST) instruction, through additional hardware, as shown in Figure 12.3.
- Step 5:** If the instruction is one of the RST instructions, the microprocessor saves the memory address of the next instruction on the stack and transfers the program to the memory location of the RST instruction. This is similar to the secretary's making a mark on the draft before walking to the engineer to relay the message.
- Step 6:** Assuming that the task to be performed is written as a subroutine at the specified location, the processor performs the task. This subroutine is known as a service routine.
- Step 7:** The service routine should include the instruction EI to enable the interrupt again. This is similar to putting the receiver back on the hook.
- Step 8:** At the end of the subroutine, the RET instruction retrieves the memory address where the program was interrupted and continues the execution. This is similar to finding the mark made on the typing draft after the secretary was interrupted by the phone call and continuing to type.

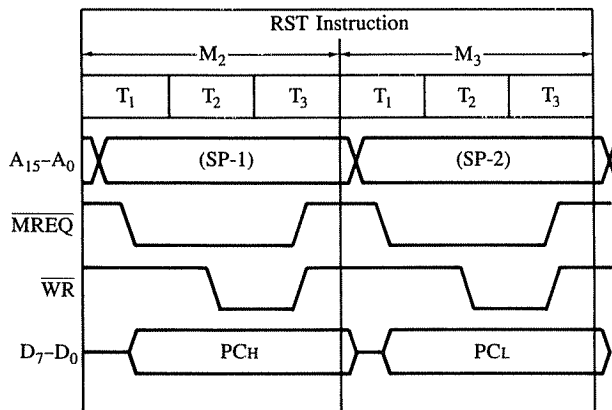
12.14 Interrupt Request/Acknowledge Machine Cycles

In Figure 12.3, the instruction RST 30H is built using resistors and a tri-state buffer. Figure 12.4(a) shows the timing of the Z80 Interrupt Request and Acknowledge. The interrupt signal ($\overline{\text{INT}}$) is sampled by the Z80 with the rising edge of the last clock at the end of every instruction. If the Interrupt Enable flip-flop is already enabled by the EI instruction and the $\overline{\text{INT}}$ is low, the Z80 acknowledges the interrupt by generating the $\overline{\text{IORQ}}$ signal during the M_1 (Opcode Fetch) cycle. Normally, the $\overline{\text{MREQ}}$ control signal goes low during the M_1 cycle to read an opcode from memory. Thus, the interrupt is recognized when M_1 and $\overline{\text{IORQ}}$ are active (Figure 12.4(a)). By logically ANDing these two signals in a negative NAND gate (De Morgan's equivalent of an OR gate), we can generate the Interrupt Acknowledge ($\overline{\text{INTA}}$) control signal. The $\overline{\text{INTA}}$ signal can be used to place an 8-bit instruction (such as RST) onto the data bus. Figure 12.4(a) shows that the Z80 adds two wait states during the interrupt M_1 cycle; these wait states allow sufficient time to determine priorities in multiple interrupts (this will be discussed later). Once the Z80 recognizes that the instruction received is a RST (Call) instruction, it issues two more machine cycles M_2 and M_3 to store the program counter on the stack. During M_1 , the program counter holds the memory address of the next instruction, which should be stored on the stack so that the program can continue after the service routine. During M_2 (Figure 12.4(b)), the address of the stack pointer minus one ($\text{SP}-1$) location is placed onto the address bus, and the high-order address of the program counter is stored on the stack. During M_3 , the



* T_{w1} and T_{w2} are Wait States, Automatically Inserted by the Z80

(a)



(b)

FIGURE 12.4

(a) Interrupt Request/Acknowledge and RST Fetch Machine Cycles (b) RST Instruction: M_2 , M_3 Machine Cycles

SOURCE: Courtesy of Zilog, Inc.

low-order address of the program counter is stored in the next location ($SP-2$) of the stack. Figure 12.4(b) shows that the machine cycles M_2 and M_3 are Memory Write cycles.

In the next instruction cycle, the program is transferred to location 0030_H , assuming we use the circuit shown in Figure 12.3 to insert the RST instruction. However, there is a space of eight memory locations between any two RST instructions; RST 38_H , the next restart instruction, begins at 0038_H . If the service routine requires more than eight locations, the routine is written somewhere in memory, and the jump instruction is written at 0030_H to specify the address of the service routine. All these steps are illustrated in the next section.

12.2 ILLUSTRATION: AN IMPLEMENTATION OF THE Z80 INTERRUPT IN MODE 0

The following example is concerned primarily with demonstrating the basic concepts in the interrupt I/O, rather than illustrating an industrial application. Hardware circuitry is kept to a minimum so that it can be easily built and tested in a laboratory. Similarly, programs are chosen for the ease of the implementation of the interrupt.

In this example, the Z80 MPU is kept busy counting in binary, and when it is interrupted, it flashes FF_H at one of the output ports. The program is illustrated with specific memory locations starting at 2000_H to explain the details of the interrupt process.

12.21 Problem Statement

The main program counts continuously in binary with a one-second delay between each count and displays the count at $PORT0$. A service routine is written at 2070_H to flash FF_H five times when the program is interrupted, with some appropriate delay between each flash.

1. Design a circuit to insert the instruction RST 30_H when the MPU is interrupted by a push-button key.
2. Explain the interrupt process.

PROGRAM

Memory Address	Mnemonics	Comments
	PORT0 EQU 07H	;Output port address
	STACK EQU 2099H	;Initial stack address
2000	LD SP, STACK	;Initialize stack pointer
2003	IM 0	;Set up interrupt in Mode 0
2004	EI	;Enable interrupt flip-flops
2005	LD A, 00H	;Start counter
2007	NXTCNT: OUT (PORT0), A	;Display count

```

2009          CALL DELAY          ;Wait one second
200C          INC A                ;Next count
200D          JP NXCNT            ;Continue
DELAY: ;Use delay subroutine illustrated in Chapter 10 (Section 10.7).
FLASH: ;Service routine to display FFH five times.

2070          PUSH BC             ;Save register contents
2071          PUSH AF
2072          LD B, 0AH           ;Load register B for five flashes
                                   ;and five blanks
2074          LD C, 01H           ;Parameter for one second delay
2076          LD A, 00H           ;Load 00 to blank display
2078          DSPLAY: OUT (PORT0), A ;Output 00 and FFH alternately
207A          CALL DELAY          ;Wait one second
207D          CPL                ;Complement display byte
207E          DEC B               ;Reduce count
207F          JP NZ, DISPLAY
2082          POP AF              ;Restore register contents
2083          POP BC
2084          EI                  ;Enable interrupt process
2085          RET                 ;Service is complete, go back to main
                                   ;program

```

12.22 Circuit Design

The circuit is concerned with designing the instruction RST 30H. The machine code for the instruction is F7_H. We can design such an instruction by using the 74LS244, a tri-state buffer, as shown in Figure 12.5. All the input lines are tied high to represent logic 1 except line DI₃, which is grounded to insert logic 0. The output lines of the buffer are connected to the data bus of the Z80 MPU. When the Enable signal of the buffer goes active (low), the input of the buffer, 1 1 1 0 1 1 1 (F7_H), is placed onto the data bus.

The Interrupt Acknowledge ($\overline{\text{INTA}}$) signal from the Z80 is generated by ANDing $\overline{\text{M}}_1$ and $\overline{\text{IORQ}}$ in a negative NAND gate, and it is connected to the Enable line of the buffer. The $\overline{\text{INT}}$ line of the Z80 is pulled high through a 10 k resistor, and an interrupt is asserted by grounding the $\overline{\text{INT}}$ through the push button key as shown in Figure 12.5.

12.23 Interrupt Operation

1. The main program initializes the stack pointer at 2099_H and enables the interrupts. The program will count continuously from 00_H to FF_H with a delay of one second between each count.
2. When the key is pushed to interrupt the processor, the $\overline{\text{INT}}$ line goes low.
3. Assuming the key is pushed when the processor is executing the instruction OUT at memory location 2007H, the following sequence of events occurs.



- samples the $\overline{\text{INT}}$ line in the last T-state of the OUT instruction.
- senses that the $\overline{\text{INT}}$ is low, and the interrupt is enabled.
- completes the execution of the instruction OUT.
- disables the interrupt, and sends out two signals: $\overline{\text{M}}_1$ and $\overline{\text{IORQ}}$.

4. The INTA (Interrupt Acknowledge) signal goes active at the output of the negative NAND gate.
5. The INTA enables the buffer, and the code $F7_H$ is placed onto the data bus.
6. The Z80 recognizes the instruction as one of the RST instructions. It saves the address 2009_H of the next instruction (CALL DELAY) on the stack at locations 2098_H and 2097_H .
7. The program is transferred to memory location 0030_H . The locations 0030 , 0031 , and 0032_H should have the following Jump instruction to transfer the program to the service routine: JP 2070_H .
(Let us assume that this Jump instruction is already written at 0030_H by the system designer. Otherwise, you do not have access to write at 0030_H . Generally, in a system, ROM (or EPROM) is mapped into the initial memory locations. See the next section.)
8. The program jumps to the service routine at 2070_H .
9. The service routine saves the registers being used in the subroutine and loads the count ten into register B to output five flashes and also five blanks.
10. The service routine enables the interrupt before returning to the main program.

11. When the service routine executes the RET instruction, the microprocessor retrieves the memory address 2009_H from the top of the stack and continues the binary counting in the main program.

12.24 Testing Interrupts on a Single-Board Microcomputer System

Step 7 in the preceding description assumes that you are designing the system and have access to locations in EPROM or ROM on page 00_H. In reality, you have no direct access to restart locations if the system has already been designed. Then how do you transfer the program control from a restart location to the service routine?

In single-board microcomputers, some restart locations are usually reserved for users, and the system designer provides a Jump instruction at a restart location to jump somewhere in R/W memory. By writing one more Jump instruction at this location in R/W memory, we can transfer the program to location 2070_H.

12.25 Issues in Implementing Interrupts

In the above illustration, we deliberately avoided some of the complex issues in the interrupt I/O to maintain clarity in the discussion. These issues are discussed here.

1. *Is there a minimum pulse width required for the \overline{INT} signal?*

The interrupt in Mode 0 is level sensitive, meaning the pulse has to be active until the Z80 has time to sample it. The Z80 samples the \overline{INT} signal on the rising edge of the last clock cycle of every instruction, and the longest instruction in the Z80 set is 23 T-states. In the worst case, if the \overline{INT} goes active in the last cycle of an instruction, it may have to stay on for 23 clock periods.

2. *How long can the \overline{INT} pulse stay low?*

The \overline{INT} pulse can remain low until the interrupt flip-flops are set by the EI instruction in the service routine. If it remains low after the execution of the EI instruction, the processor will be interrupted again, as if it were a new interrupt.

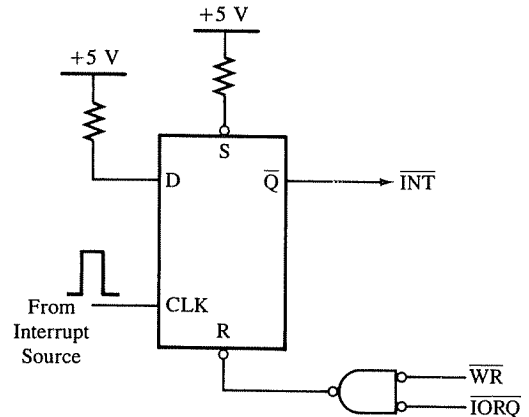
3. *How can we keep the pulse long enough to interrupt the processor but not so long that it can be misinterpreted as a new interrupt?*

One of the solutions to this dilemma is to latch the \overline{INT} pulse in a flip-flop and clear the flip-flop before enabling the interrupt again. This can be accomplished by interfacing the flip-flop as an output port and sending an OUT instruction to clear the flip-flop, as shown in Figure 12.6. In this case, the port address is irrelevant because any OUT instruction will reset the flip-flop.

4. *Can the microprocessor be interrupted again before the completion of the first interrupt service routine?*

The answer to this question is determined by the programmer. After the first interrupt, the interrupt process is automatically disabled. In our illustration, the service routine enables the interrupt at the end of the service routine; in this case, the microprocessor

FIGURE 12.6
Latching and Clearing Interrupt
Request



cannot be interrupted before the completion of this routine. If the instruction EI were written at the beginning of the routine, the microprocessor could be interrupted again during the service routine.

5. Is there any problem in connecting the key to interrupt the processor as shown in Figure 12.5?

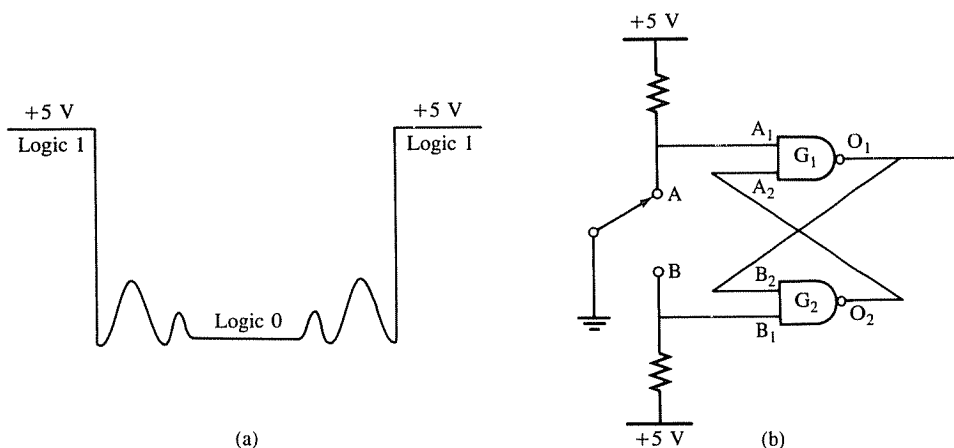
Yes. When a mechanical push-button key is pressed or released, the metal contacts of the key momentarily bounce before giving a steady-state reading, as shown in Figure 12.7(a). The bounce can last for more than 20 ms, and if the interrupt service routine clears the flip-flop before the bounce is settled, the key bounce will be interpreted as a new interrupt.

The key bounce can be eliminated from the \overline{INT} signal by connecting the key through a pair of NAND gates, as shown in Figure 12.7(b). Initially, the output of gate G_1 is logic 1 and that of gate G_2 is logic 0. When the key is pushed, and when it loses its contact with terminal A, the input A_1 to the gate G_1 goes high, but the input A_2 is still low. Thus, the output does not change. When the key makes the contact with terminal B, the input B_1 to gate G_2 goes low and the output of G_2 changes from logic 0 to logic 1. This changes the input A_2 from logic 0 to logic 1. Thus, the output of G_1 changes to logic 0.

The key bounce is eliminated because when the key bounces, meaning it bounces from no-contact to contact with the same terminal, the output will not change. In our illustration, the problems of the key bounce and the duration of the \overline{INT} pulse are avoided by keeping the service routine unusually long.

6. What is the reason to have two flip-flops IFF1 and IFF2 to enable the interrupt?

In Mode 0, it does not make any difference. In the nonmaskable interrupt, the status of IFF1 is copied into IFF2 when the Z80 is interrupted, and the status is copied back into IFF1 at the end of the service routine (see Section 12.5).

**FIGURE 12.7**

(a) Key Bounce (b) Key Debounce Using Two NAND Gates

7. What is the difference between *RET* (Return) and *RETI* (Return from Interrupt) instructions?

The *RET* instruction is used to return from a subroutine. The *RETI* is a specially designed instruction to reset the Z80 daisy-chain interrupt logic (see Section 13.35).

8. When does *EI* in the service routine (memory location 2084_H) become effective?

The *EI* instruction becomes effective immediately after the execution of the next instruction. In the service routine, the processor will not be prematurely interrupted until after the execution of the *RET* instruction.

9. If the Interrupt Enable flip-flops are set and the \overline{INT} is low long enough, will an interrupt request always be acknowledged?

The interrupt request will not be acknowledged if the \overline{BUSRQ} (Bus Request) is active or if the Z80 is servicing a higher priority request (see Section 12.6).

ILLUSTRATION: INTERFACING A/D CONVERTER IN INTERRUPT MODE 1

12.3

The interrupt Mode 1 is a special case of the interrupt Mode 0; all the basic concepts of the interrupt I/O discussed in the previous section are applicable in this mode. However, the implementation is simple because most of the external circuitry required for Mode 0 is already built into the Z80. After reviewing the interrupt I/O in Mode 1, we will discuss briefly the basic concepts in the A/D conversion and illustrate the interrupt Mode 1 by interfacing the ADC0801, an A/D converter on a chip manufactured by National Semi-

conductor. This A/D converter is specially designed to be compatible with the microprocessor control signals.

12.31 Interrupt Process in Mode 1

The initial requirements of Mode 1 to interrupt the Z80 processor are similar to those of Mode 0:

- ☐ The Interrupt Enable flip-flops should be set by the instruction EI.
- ☐ The mode should be specified.
- ☐ The $\overline{\text{INT}}$ signal should go low and stay low until the Z80 can sample it.

After the Z80 acknowledges the interrupt, it

- ☐ resets the Interrupt Enable flip-flops, thus disabling further interrupts.
- ☐ places the address of the next instruction (the contents of the program counter) on the stack.
- ☐ transfers the program execution to location 0038_H (without any external hardware).

The primary difference between Mode 0 and Mode 1 is that in Mode 1, the external hardware to insert the RST instruction is not necessary; it is already built into the processor, and it is activated by setting the Mode. The other difference is that the program can be transferred to only one location, unlike the eight RST instructions in Mode 0; Mode 1 uses the memory location of RST 38H.

12.32 Basic Concepts in A/D Conversion

The analog-to-digital (A/D) conversion is a process whereby an analog signal is represented by equivalent binary states. The relationship between the binary representation and the analog signal is dependent on the design of a converter. For example, we can determine that a 0–1 V signal can be represented by binary three digits; 1 V will be equivalent to all 1s and 0 will be represented by all three 0s. We can divide the entire range 0–1 V into eight different combinations of three bits and each combination can represent one level (1/8 V), called resolution, as shown in Figure 12.8. When the input analog signal is 0.5 V, the binary output will be 1 0 0, as shown in Figure 12.8(b).

One of the common design techniques used to convert an analog signal into its binary equivalent is called successive approximation.* To begin the process, a clock pulse, called the START pulse, is required. An A/D converter can take a few hundred microseconds to milliseconds to convert the analog signal into its binary equivalent; the time it takes to complete the conversion is called the conversion time. At the end of the conversion, the A/D converter generates a pulse called END OF CONVERSION or DATA READY.

To interface such a converter with the microprocessor, the following conditions need to be satisfied. The Z80 should

*You need not be familiar with data converter design technique to interface a data converter with the microprocessor.

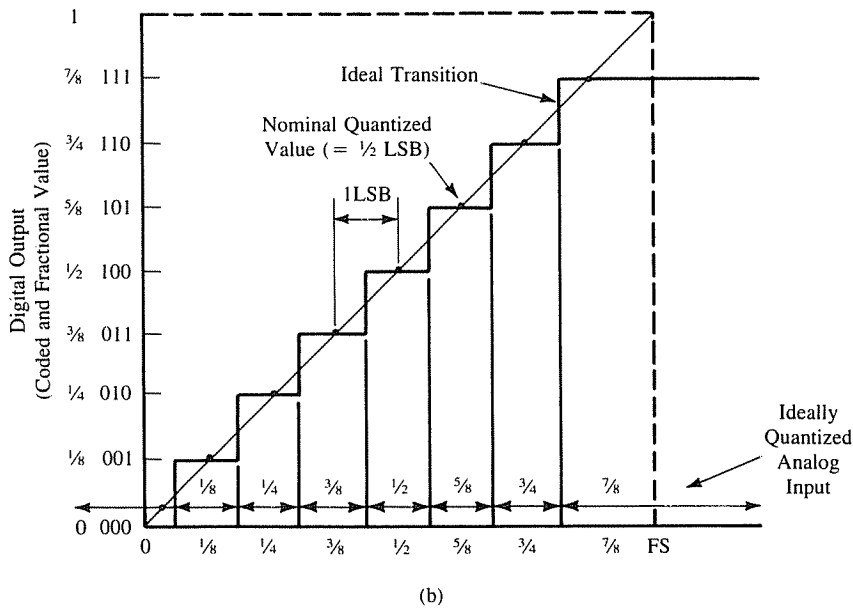
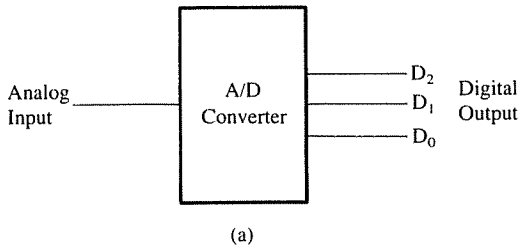


FIGURE 12.8
A 3-bit A/D Converter: (a) Block Diagram (b) Analog-to-Digital Conversion

- Provide a START pulse to initialize the conversion process by writing to the device as an output port.
- Wait until the end of the conversion.
- Read the binary equivalent when the DATA READY signal goes active.

We need to interpret these conditions in terms of circuitry and control signals. The microprocessor can communicate with any external device through a port address and its Read and Write control signals. To meet the above requirements we need to build

- one output port to send a START pulse,
- one input port with a latch so that the Z80 can read the binary data,
- a circuit to sense the end of the conversion.

Fortunately, manufacturers have begun to include latches, buffers, and control logic on the same chip with data converters so that data converters can be easily interfaced with the microprocessor. For our illustration, we selected the National Semiconductor ADC0801 because it has all the necessary interfacing circuitry built in.

THE ADC0801

This is an 8-bit A/D converter (Figure 12.9(a)) available as an integrated circuit on a chip. The analog signal is connected to $V_{in(+)}$, and the binary output is available on eight data lines DB_7 – DB_0 . The maximum input signal can be +5 V or it can be connected as a differential input by using the pin $V_{in(-)}$. The signal V_{ref} is used to limit the maximum input voltage; if it is not connected externally, it is set for +5 V internally. The internal clock is determined by the RC network connected to pins 10 and 4.

To interface the A/D converter with the microprocessor requires three signals: \overline{CS} , \overline{WR} , and \overline{RD} . To start the conversion, the chip should be selected and \overline{WR} asserted low. When \overline{WR} goes low, the chip is reset, and when it goes high, the conversion begins. At the end of the conversion, it initiates the signal \overline{INTR} ; this can be used to interrupt the microprocessor. When the microprocessor reads the output, the \overline{INTR} is reset (see the timing waveforms in Figure 12.9(b)). The ADC0801 is ideally suited for interfacing as an interrupt I/O not only because it generates the \overline{INTR} pulse, but also because it is turned off after the data byte is read. This eliminates our concern about the \overline{INT} pulse width for the Z80 microprocessor.

12.33 Interfacing Circuit

To interface the ADC0801, three signals are necessary: \overline{WR} , \overline{RD} , and \overline{CS} . Figure 12.9(a) shows such a circuit. The output line O_0 of the 3-to-8 decoder is connected to the \overline{CS} signal of the converter. The converter is selected when the address on the address lines from A_7 – A_0 is $F8_H$; thus, the converter is assigned the port address $F8_H$. To start the conversion, the Z80 should write to port $F8_H$; however, we are interested not in writing anything, but in asserting the \overline{WR} signal. At the end of the conversion, the converter asserts the \overline{INTR} , which is connected to the \overline{INT} signal of the Z80.

Assuming the Z80 interrupt is enabled and is set for Mode 1, the program will be transferred to memory location 0038_H . If the system is being designed, the service routine to read data can be written at 0038_H . Otherwise, a Jump instruction should have already been written here to give access to the service routine in system's R/W memory. When the service routine reads the data byte, the \overline{RD} signal will remove the interrupt.

12.34 Program

The following program is set up to collect a number of readings from the data converter, and the readings are stored in memory labelled as BUFFER. The number of readings to be recorded is defined by the term BYTE. To verify this illustration in a laboratory, the terms STACK, BUFFER, and BYTE need to be defined. The program has three segments: main program to initialize the parameters, the restart segment, and the service routine to record data.

MAIN PROGRAM

```

START:  LD SP, STACK      ;Initialize stack pointer
        IM 1              ;Set up interrupt Mode 1
        LD HL, BUFFER     ;Set up HL as memory pointer
        LD B, BYTE        ;Set up counter to count the number of readings
        EI                ;Enable interrupt flip-flops
        OUT (F8H), A       ;Start conversion
WAIT:   NOP
        JP NZ, WAIT        ;If all data readings are not yet recorded, wait
        HALT
0038    JP ADC              ;This is Mode 1 restart location; go to data
                        ; converter service routine

```

SERVICE ROUTINE

```

ADC:    ;This service routine reads data from the A/D converter, saves data in
        ;memory, and starts conversion for the next reading.
        ;Input: Address of memory pointer in HL and the number of readings to be
        ;recorded in register B.
        ;Modifies registers A, B, and HL
        IN A, (F8H)       ;Read data byte from the converter
        EI                ;Enable the interrupt
        LD (HL), A        ;Save data in memory
        INC HL            ;Next memory location
        DEC B             ;One reading is recorded, decrement counter
        OUT (F8H), A      ;Start conversion for the next reading
        RET

```

PROGRAM DESCRIPTION

The main program initializes the stack pointer, the memory pointer, and the counter. It enables the interrupt, starts the conversion by writing to port F8_H, and waits in the loop. In a real industrial application, the main program would have continued to monitor other activities.

When the conversion is complete, the data converter causes $\overline{\text{INTR}}$ to go low, which interrupts the processor. Because the interrupt is set up in Mode 1, the Z80 disables the interrupt, stores the contents of the program counter on the stack, and transfers the program to 0038_H automatically. The Jump instruction at 0038_H transfers the program to the service routine.

The service routine first reads the output of the data converter, and the Read signal removes the interrupt from the INT pin. This logic is built inside the ADC0801; in the previous illustration, we needed to use a flip-flop to turn off the interrupt (see Figure 12.6). The routine enables the interrupt so that the subsequent interrupts can be accepted, then

upgrades the memory pointer, decrements the counter, and initiates the conversion for the next reading. The final instruction in the service routine (RET) is critical; when the RET instruction is executed, the Z80 gets the address from the top of the stack and returns to the main program. The main program has the instruction Jump On No Zero; the Zero flag is set in the service routine when the register B goes to zero.

INTERRUPT MODE 2 12.4

In Mode 0 and Mode 1, once the interrupt request is acknowledged, the program is transferred to specific locations on memory page 00. This is quite a limitation because these locations are, generally, reserved for ROM (or EPROM) and can be used for only eight interrupts. On the other hand, in Mode 2, the program control can be transferred to any memory location in the memory map. This is one of the powerful features of the Z80 microprocessor.

The process of interrupt request and acknowledge in Mode 2 is similar to that of Mode 0. However, the response to the interrupt request is quite different.

12.41 Interrupt Process in Mode 2

Assuming that the interrupt is enabled and set up to operate in Mode 2 by the instructions EI and IM 2, and that the $\overline{\text{INT}}$ signal goes low, the Z80 acknowledges the interrupt by asserting two signals $\overline{\text{M}}_1$ and $\overline{\text{IORQ}}$. The $\overline{\text{INTA}}$ signal, generated by ANDing $\overline{\text{M}}_1$ with $\overline{\text{IORQ}}$, is used to place a byte onto the data bus. The Z80 disables the interrupt and places the contents of the program counter onto the stack. This is similar to Mode 0.

However, in Mode 2, the Z80 interprets the eight bits from external hardware as the low-order byte of a 16-bit memory address rather than an instruction as in Mode 0. The Z80 takes the eight bits from the interrupt register (I) as the high-order byte and combines it with the external byte to form a 16-bit vector address or a pointer. The program is then transferred to the memory location pointed to by the 16-bit address. Let us assume it is 20F8_H . Then the contents of the two memory locations 20F8_H and 20F9_H are interpreted as the 16-bit memory address of the service routine; the byte in 20F8_H is the low-order byte and the byte in 20F9_H the high-order byte. This process is demonstrated in the next example.

-
1. Write initialization instructions to set up the Z80 interrupt in Mode 2 and the interrupt vector with 20_H as the high-order byte.
 2. Design a circuit to place the byte F8_H onto the data bus using the $\overline{\text{INTA}}$ signal.
 3. Specify the contents of the vectored memory locations if the service routine is located at 23A7_H .

Example
12.2

locations pointed to by the vector. Thus, on one page of memory (256 bytes), a table of 128 vectors pointing to service routines can be stored. Another puzzling question is how to design multiple interrupts using only one $\overline{\text{INT}}$ signal; this question is discussed in Section 12.6.

NONMASKABLE INTERRUPT

12.5

The Z80 has a separate input (pin 17) for the **nonmaskable interrupt**. As mentioned before, this interrupt cannot be disabled and has the highest priority among the interrupts. When the Z80 acknowledges the $\overline{\text{NMI}}$, it transfers the program to memory location 0066_H. The $\overline{\text{NMI}}$ is used, generally, for emergency situations such as power failure or activities with high priority, such as a system clock.

12.51 Nonmaskable Interrupt Process

The nonmaskable interrupt differs from the maskable interrupts in the following ways.

- It cannot be disabled by the DI instruction and need not be enabled by the EI instruction; it is independent of the EI and DI instructions.
- It is edge sensitive, meaning it does not have to be active until the Z80 samples it.
- It has a higher priority than the maskable interrupts, meaning it will always be acknowledged at the end of the current instruction being executed if $\overline{\text{BUSRQ}}$ (Bus Request) is inactive.

The steps in the nonmaskable interrupt are as follows.

1. When the $\overline{\text{NMI}}$ is caused to go low by an external device, the interrupt request is latched internally on the falling edge of the $\overline{\text{NMI}}$.
2. When the Z80 samples the $\overline{\text{NMI}}$ (as well as $\overline{\text{INT}}$) in the last T-state of the instruction being executed, it accepts the $\overline{\text{NMI}}$ request after completing the current instruction if $\overline{\text{BUSRQ}}$ is inactive.
3. Once the $\overline{\text{NMI}}$ is accepted, the Z80 places the contents of the program counter on the stack.
4. The Z80 copies the status of the interrupt enable flip-flop IFF1, determined by the previously executed instructions EI (or DI), into IFF2 and resets IFF1 to prevent any interruptions from maskable interrupts.
5. The program is transferred to location 0066_H without any external hardware; this is similar to Mode 1 in the maskable interrupt.

If the service routine is terminated by the special instruction RETN (Return from Non-maskable Interrupt), the Z80

6. copies IFF2 into IFF1 to restore the status of the maskable interrupt.
7. copies the contents of the top two locations of the stack into the program counter, and the program returns to the instruction where it was interrupted.

Example 12.3

Design a five-minute timer using a 60Hz power line as an interrupting source. The output ports should display minutes and seconds in BCD. At the end of the five-minute period, the display should be cleared, and the timer should continue into the next five-minute period.

Solution

This is a five-minute timer designed with a 60Hz AC line. The circuit uses a step-down transformer, a wave-shaping network, and the nonmaskable interrupt (pin 17)—see Figure 12.11.

The AC line has a 60Hz frequency which interrupts the microprocessor every 1/60th of a second using the $\overline{\text{NMI}}$. After the interrupt, program control is transferred first to memory location 0066_H in the monitor program and then to the service routine TIMER. The $\overline{\text{NMI}}$ responds to a negative-edged trigger; thus, the interrupt need not be turned off even if the AC source has an eight millisecond pulse width. In this case, the service routine is completed in a few microseconds, but the next interrupt is recognized only when there is a pulse transition from positive to negative.

Monitor Program

```
0066      JP RWM                ;This is  $\overline{\text{NMI}}$  request, go to location in user
                                ;memory
```

Main Program

```
          LD SP, RAMTOP        ;Initialize stack pointer
          LD BC, 0000H         ;Set up registers B for minutes and C for seconds
          LD D, 60             ;Set up register D to count 60 interrupts—in
                                ;hand assembly the number 60 must be converted
                                ;into a Hex number.

DISPLAY:  LD A, B              ;Display minutes at PORT 1
          OUT (01H), A
          LD A, C              ;Display seconds at PORT 2
          OUT (02H), A
          JP DISPLAY

RWM:      JP TIMER            ;This is  $\overline{\text{NMI}}$ , go to TIMER routine to upgrade
                                ;the clock
```

Interrupt Service Routine

```
TIMER:    ; Section I
          DEC D                ;One interrupt occurred, reduce count by one
          JR NZ, END           ;Is one second elapsed? If not, go back to main
                                ;program

          ;Section II
          LD D, 60             ;One second is complete, load register D again
                                ;to count 60 interrupts

          LD A, C              ;Increment "Second" register
          ADD A, 01
          DAA                  ;Decimal adjust "Seconds"
          LD C, A              ;Save "Seconds"
          CP 60H
```

```

JR NZ, END      ;Is time = 60 seconds? If not, go back to main
                  ;program

;Section III
LD C, 00H       ;60 Seconds complete, clear "Second" regis-
                  ;ter
INC B           ;Increment "Minutes"
LD A, B
CP 05H          ;Is it five minutes?
JR NZ, END      ;If not, return to main program
LD BC, 0000H    ;If it is, clear minute and second registers
END: RETN

```

Program Description The main program clears registers B and C to store minutes and seconds respectively, enables the interrupts, sets up register D to count 60 interrupts, and displays the starting time in minutes (00) and seconds (00). When the first pulse interrupts the processor, program control is transferred to memory location 0066_H, as mentioned earlier, and the Jump instruction at this location, provided by the system designer, will locate the service routine labelled as "TIMER."

In the service routine (Section I), register D is decremented every 1/60th of a second and the program is returned to the main routine. This is repeated 60 times. After the 60th interrupt, the counter D goes to zero and the program enters Section II. In this section, counter D is reloaded, the "Second" register is incremented and adjusted for BCD, and the program is returned to the main routine. For the next 60 interrupts, the program remains in Section I. When Section II is repeated 60 times, the program goes to Section III, where the "Minute" register is incremented and the "Second" register is cleared. If the Minute register has not reached the five-minute period, the routine returns to the main program. When the minute register reaches a five-minute period, register pair BC is cleared and the next period begins. In this particular program, the service routine does not save any register contents by using PUSH instructions before starting the service routine. In most service routines, register contents must be saved because the interrupt is asynchronous and can occur at any time.

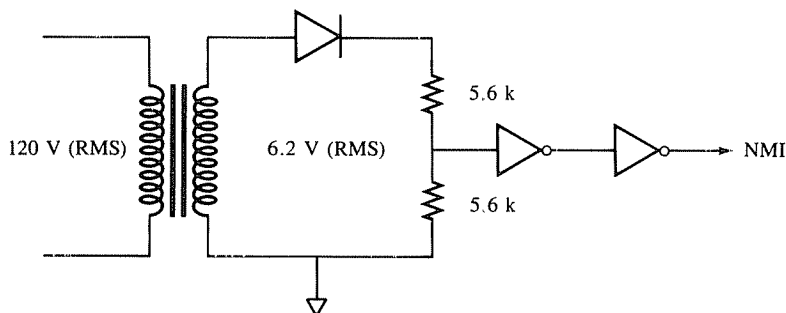


FIGURE 12.11
Schematic for 60 Hz Powerline as an Interrupting Source

12.6

MULTIPLE INTERRUPTS AND PRIORITIES

The Z80 microprocessor has one $\overline{\text{INT}}$ pin for the maskable interrupt. However, Mode 0 suggests that at least eight different peripherals can be connected, and their requests can be transferred to eight restart locations. Mode 2 suggests almost unlimited possibilities to vector interrupt requests anywhere in memory. This raises two questions:

1. How do we connect more than one interrupting device to one interrupt line?
2. What happens if multiple interrupting devices request service simultaneously?

The method of connecting multiple devices to the $\overline{\text{INT}}$ line of the Z80 is determined by the process of identifying an interrupting device. After the acknowledgment of an interrupt, the interrupting device can be identified either by the **polling method** (software technique) or by the **interrupt vector method** (hardware technique). In the polling method, the microprocessor queries each device using software instructions, identifies the device, and transfers the program to the appropriate service routine. On the other hand, in the interrupt vector method, the device identifies itself by supplying either an instruction or an address.

The next question is: What happens when devices request the service at the same time? In the polling technique, software determines the priority among the requesting devices and serves those devices in the sequence specified in the program. In the interrupt vector technique, priority is determined by the hardware. We will illustrate these techniques in the next two sections.

12.61 Polling Technique

Figure 12.12 shows an example in which two A/D converters are interfaced with the Z80 in interrupt Mode 1. The $\overline{\text{INTR}}$ lines from the ADC0801 are logically 0Red, and the output of the gate is connected to the $\overline{\text{INT}}$ line of the Z80; either one or both converters can interrupt the processor. Figure 12.12 does not include any circuitry to turn off the $\overline{\text{INT}}$ because the $\overline{\text{INTR}}$ line of the ADC0801 goes inactive when the microprocessor reads the output.

To identify the interrupting data converters, an additional input port with the tri-state inverter (74LS366) is designed, and the $\overline{\text{INTR}}$ lines of both converters are connected to the data bus lines (D_1 and D_0) through the 74LS366. The following subroutine identifies the interrupting devices and determines the priority between the two converters if they request the service simultaneously.

SERVICE ROUTINE

```
MODE1:      ;This is an interrupt service routine, written at location 0038H to
            ;respond to Mode 1 interrupt requests. It determines the priority
            ;between the two data converters and identifies them. In this
            ;routine Device 1 has higher priority than Device 2. After
```

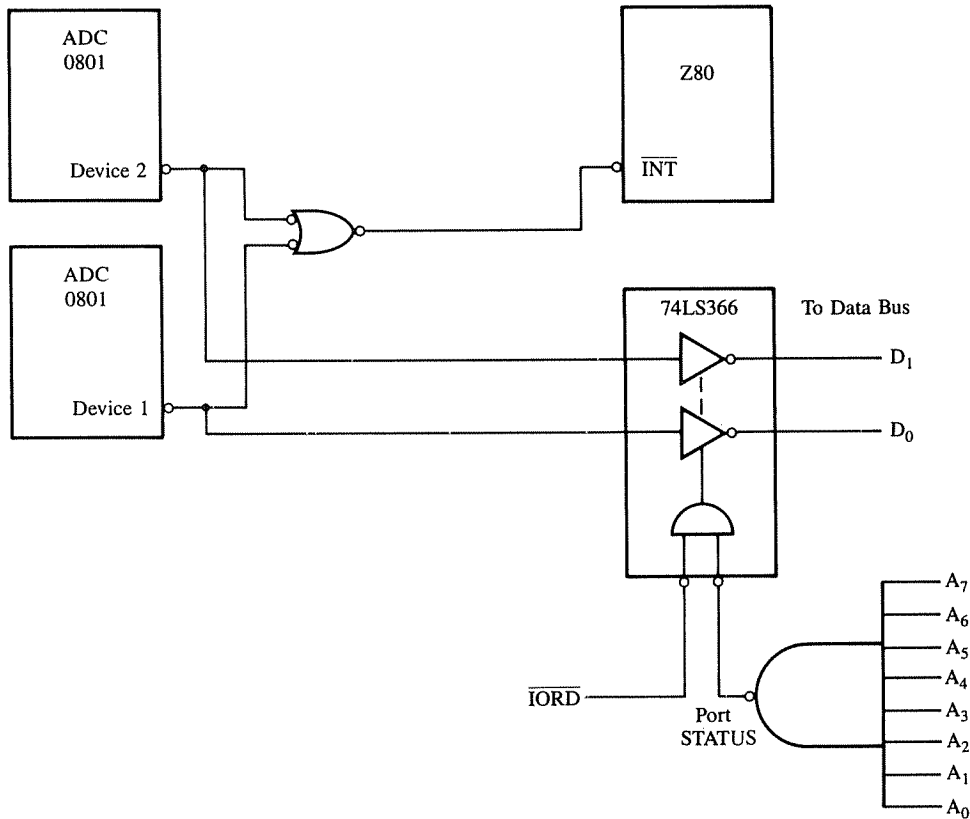


FIGURE 12.12
Multiple Interrupts with Polling Technique

```

;identifying the interrupting converter(s), it reads and stores data
;received from the converter(s), and initiates the next conversion.
PUSH AF                ;Save register contents
IN A, (STATUS)         ;Read tri-state inverter port
AND 00000011B         ;Mask data lines D7–D2
RRA                    ;Place D0 in CY flag
CALL C, DVICE1         ;If D0 = 1, go to DVICE1 to read data
RRA                    ;Place D1 in CY flag
CALL C, DVICE2         ;If D1 = 1, go to DVICE2 to read data
POP AF                 ;Retrieve register contents
EI                      ;Enable interrupt
RET

```

```

DVICE1:  PUSH AF           ;Save interrupt status
          IN A, (ADC1)      ;Read data from Device 1 and turn off INT
          LD (HL), A        ;Save data in memory
          OUT (ADC1), A     ;Start next conversion
          POP AF           ;Retrieve register contents
          RET

DVICE2:  PUSH AF           ;Save interrupt status
          IN A, (ADC2)      ;Read data from Device 2 and turn off INT
          LD (DE), A        ;Save data in memory
          OUT (ADC2), A     ;Start next conversion
          POP AF           ;Retrieve register contents
          RET

```

PROGRAM DESCRIPTION

This service routine assumes that the main program sets up the interrupt mode and initializes memory pointers (HL and DE) to store data. Data converters are assigned port addresses ADC1 and ADC2 for both input and output, and the tri-state buffer is assigned the address STATUS as an input port.

To identify the interrupting device, the service routine reads the tri-state buffer and saves bits D_1 and D_0 . The routine checks first whether D_0 is at logic 1 (the 74LS366 inverts the interrupt request) by rotating D_0 into the CY flag because Device 1 has higher priority than Device 2. If D_0 is high, the routine calls DVICE1 to read data. To check whether Device 2 has also requested the service, the input reading from the STATUS port is rotated again to the right to place D_1 into the CY flag. If the CY is 1, the routine calls DVICE2; otherwise, it returns control to the main program.

Figure 12.12 shows only two interrupting devices; however, the polling technique and the circuit shown can be extended to include many devices. In place of the negative OR gate in Fig. 12.12, interrupt requests from many devices can be tied together using open collector logic devices. The disadvantage of the polling technique is the delayed response in servicing requests.

12.62 Interrupt Vector Technique

The schematic shown in Figure 12.13 implements multiple interrupting devices using the 8-to-3 priority encoder 74LS148. The encoder has eight input lines and three output lines; the output ranges from 000 to 111, thus encoding the eight inputs. However, the output is inverted. For example, when the input I_7 is active, the output is 000, and when the input I_0 is active, the output is 111. In addition to encoding the input, the encoder also determines the priorities among interrupting devices; the higher input signal has higher priority. For example, if I_6 and I_4 are active at the same time, it ignores I_4 and places the code of I_6 on the output lines. The encoder provides appropriate combinations on its output lines A_0 , A_1 , and A_2 , which are connected to data lines D_0 , D_1 and D_2 , respectively; other data lines are tied high. Even though the encoder has eight input lines, we will use only the even input lines I_6 , I_4 , I_2 , and I_0 , and they will be connected to four different interrupting devices. The reason to use only the even lines is that the Z80 expects the vector address to be even (this will be explained later).

When an interrupting device requests service, one of the input lines goes low, which makes the line \overline{GS} low and interrupts the microprocessor. When the interrupt is acknowledged and the signal \overline{INTA} enables the buffer 74LS366, the code corresponding to the input is placed on lines D_2 , D_1 , and D_0 . For example, if the interrupting device on line I_0 goes low, the output of the encoder will be 111. This code is inverted by the buffer 74LS366 and placed onto data lines D_2 , D_1 , and D_0 . Other data lines are high; thus, the byte 1111 1000 ($F8_H$) is placed onto the data lines. Assuming that the Z80 is set up for interrupt Mode 2, and the interrupt register I is loaded with the byte 20_H , the Z80 forms a vector address $20F8_H$ for the interrupting device connected to I_0 . The program is transferred to location $20F8_H$ to get the 16-bit address of the service routine stored in memory locations $20F8_H$ and $20F9_H$. If the input I_2 goes low, the byte 1111 1010 is placed onto the data bus, and the program is transferred to location $20FA_H$. The Z80 expects the interrupt

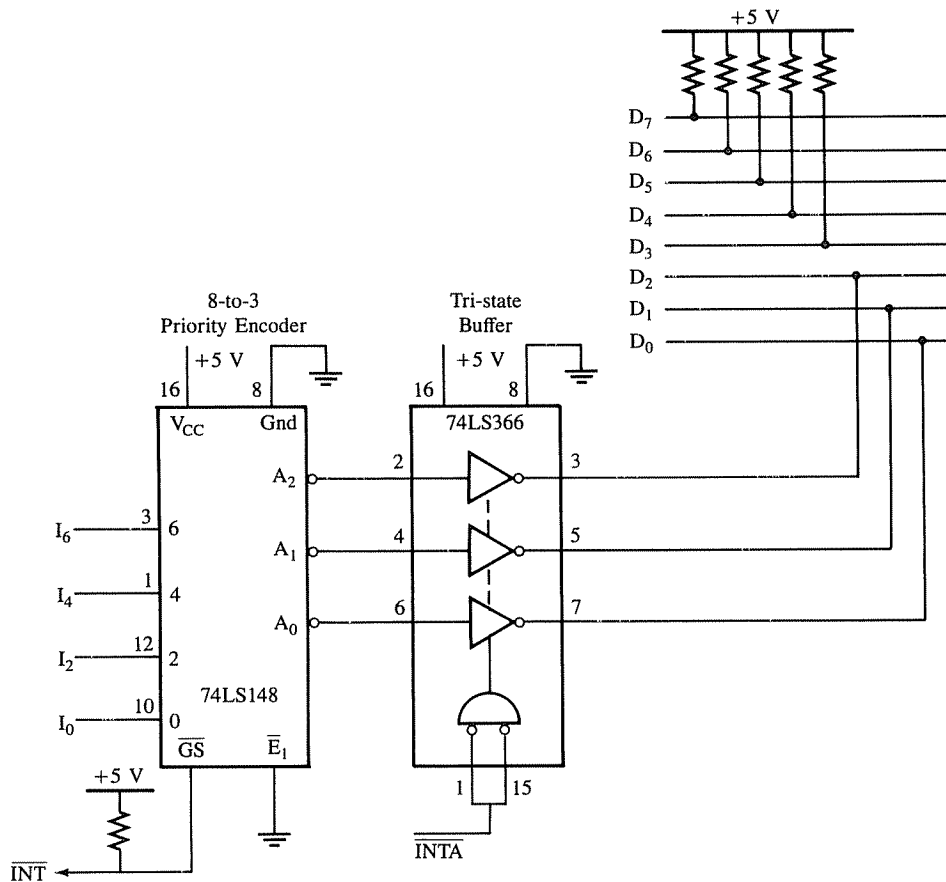


FIGURE 12.13
Implementing Multiple Interrupts

vector to be an even memory address and uses two consecutive memory locations to obtain the address of a service routine; thus, we were unable to use the odd inputs to the encoder.

If there are simultaneous requests, the priorities are determined by the encoder; it responds to a higher level input, ignoring a lower level input. One of the drawbacks of this scheme is that the interrupting device connected to the input I_6 always has the highest priority.

The interrupt scheme, similar to that illustrated in Figure 12.13, can also be implemented by using devices such as the Parallel Input/Output (PIO) controller, to be discussed in the next chapter. A programmable interrupt controller, such as the AMD AM9519A can also be used in implementing interrupts. This is quite a versatile device; it can accept interrupts from eight different devices, hold the requests, resolve priorities, and process them according to their priorities. It is also programmable, meaning its various operating modes can be determined by writing instructions into its internal registers.

12.7 ILLUSTRATION: RESTART AS A SOFTWARE INSTRUCTION—IMPLEMENTATION OF BREAKPOINT TECHNIQUE

In Mode 0, external hardware is necessary to insert an RST instruction when an interrupt is acknowledged. However, the fact that RST is a software instruction is quite often overlooked or misunderstood. The RST instructions are commonly used to set up software breakpoints as a debugging technique. A breakpoint is a Restart (RST) instruction in a program where the execution of the program stops temporarily, and program control is transferred to the RST location. The program should be transferred from the RST location to a breakpoint service routine, which should allow the user to examine register or memory contents when specified keys are pressed. After the breakpoint routine, the program should return to the execution of the main program, where the breakpoint is set.

The breakpoint procedure allows the user to test programs in segments. For example, if RST 30H is written in a program, the program execution is transferred to location 0030_H; it is equivalent to a 1-byte call instruction. This can be used to write a software breakpoint routine, as illustrated in the next problem.

12.71 Problem Statement

Implement a breakpoint facility at RST 30H for the user. When the user writes RST 30H in the program, the program should

1. be interrupted at the instruction RST 30H.
2. display the accumulator contents and the flags when the Hex key A (1010)₂ is pressed.
3. exit the breakpoint routine and continue execution when the Zero key (0000)₂ is pressed.

Assume that the system includes a Hex keyboard and the keyboard routine KBRD is available. When it is called, it returns the binary key code of the key pressed in the accumulator. For example, if key 7 is pressed, the KBRD routine places 0111 in the accumulator.

12.72 Problem Analysis

The breakpoint routine is concerned with displaying the accumulator contents and the flags when the user writes the RST instruction in a program. The microprocessor executes the program until it fetches the RST instruction. Then the program is transferred to location 0030_H and from 0030_H to the breakpoint routine. The technique used to display register contents after executing a segment of the user's program is as follows:

1. Store the register contents on the stack and call the KBRD routine.
2. When the Hex key A is pressed, retrieve the contents of the accumulator and the flags from the stack by manipulating the stack pointer.
3. When the Zero key is pressed, return to the user's program.

12.73 Program: Breakpoint Subroutine

```
;BRKPNT: This is a breakpoint subroutine; it can be implemented with the
;         instruction RST 30H. It displays the accumulator and the flags when
;         the A key is pressed, and returns to the calling program when the
;         Zero key is pressed.
;Input :   None
;Output :  None
;Does not modify any register contents.
;Calls:    KBRD subroutine. The KBRD is a keyboard subroutine which checks a
;         key pressed. The routine identifies the key and places its binary
;         code into the accumulator.
```

```
BRKPNT:    PUSH AF           ;Save registers
           PUSH BC
           PUSH DE
           PUSH HL
KYCHK:     CALL KBRD         ;Check for a key
           CP 0AH            ;Is it key A?
           JP NZ, RETKY      ;If not, check Zero key
           LD HL, 0007H      ;Load stack pointer displacement count; see
                               ;program description
           ADD HL, SP        ;Place memory address in HL, where (A) is
                               ;stored
           LD A, (HL)        ;Get contents of A from stack
           OUT (PORT1), A    ;Display accumulator contents
```

	DEC HL	;Point HL to the location of the flags
	LD A, (HL)	;Get flags
	OUT (PORT2), A	;Display flags
	JP KYCHK	;Go back and check next key
RETKY:	CP 00H	;Is it Zero key?
	JP NZ,KYCHK	;If not, go and check key program
	POP HL	;Retrieve registers
	POP DE	
	POP BC	
	POP AF	
	RET	

12.74 Program Description

The breakpoint routine saves all the registers on the stack, and the address in the stack pointer is decremented accordingly. (In this particular problem registers BC and DE need not be saved. These registers are saved to allow modifications in the program as given in the Assignments.) The accumulator contents are stored in the seventh memory location from the top of the stack, and the flags in the sixth memory location.

When key A is pressed, the HL register adds seven to the stack pointer contents and places that address in HL register (ADD HL, SP), without modifying the contents of the stack pointer. This is a critical point, because if the stack pointer is varied, appropriate contents may not be retrieved with POP and RET instructions. Finally, the subroutine displays the accumulator and the flags at the two output ports and returns to the main program.

SUMMARY

- The interrupt is an asynchronous process of communication with the microprocessor, and is initiated by an external peripheral.
- The Z80 has two active low interrupt signals: maskable interrupt and nonmaskable interrupt ($\overline{\text{NMI}}$). The maskable interrupt is level sensitive, and the nonmaskable is edge sensitive.
- The maskable interrupt can be enabled or disabled through the program control instructions EI and DI, and it has three operating modes: Modes 0, 1, and 2. The nonmaskable interrupt cannot be disabled.
- The Z80 instruction set includes eight RST instructions, which are equivalent to 1-byte calls to specific locations on memory page 00_H. These can be used as software instructions to transfer the program control to their vectored locations on memory page 00_H or can be inserted through external hardware in interrupt Mode 0.
- When the Z80 accepts a request in maskable interrupt I/O, it acknowledges the request by issuing a special $\overline{\text{M}}_1$ cycle. During $\overline{\text{M}}_1$, the I/O Request ($\overline{\text{IORQ}}$) signal goes active. The signals ($\overline{\text{M}}_1$ and $\overline{\text{IORQ}}$) are logically ANDed to generate the Inter-

TABLE 12.2
Summary of Z80 Interrupt Process

Interrupts	Conditions to Accept Interrupt Requests	Software Instruction	External Hardware	Restart Locations
Nonmaskable Interrupt (NMI) □ Edge Sensitive □ Pin 17 (NMI)	$\overline{\text{BUSRQ}}$ Inactive $\overline{\text{NMI}}$ Active Low	No Effect of EI or DI	Not Required	0066 _H
Maskable Interrupt □ Level Sensitive □ Pin 16 (INT) Mode 0	$\overline{\text{BUSRQ}}$ Inactive $\overline{\text{NMI}}$ Inactive $\overline{\text{INT}}$ Active Low	Must Be Enabled by EI and Can Be Disabled	RST Instruction	Eight locations: See Table 12.1
Mode 1			Not Required	0038 _H
Mode 2		Uses I Register for High-order Byte	Low-order Byte	Any Memory Location

rupt Acknowledge ($\overline{\text{INTA}}$) signal, which can be used to insert a hardware instruction or a byte.

- The general steps in the interrupt process are as follows. The Z80
 1. disables the interrupt.
 2. stores the contents of the program counter on the stack.
 3. transfers the program to the memory location specified either by the external hardware or by the mode operation.
 4. services the interrupt request.
 5. fetches one of the return instructions, gets the address from the top of the stack, and returns to the program where the program was interrupted.

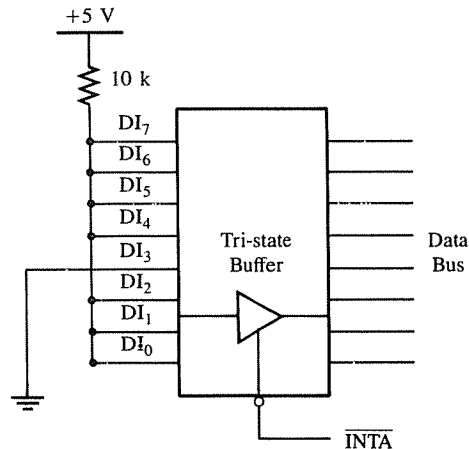
The operational details are summarized in Table 12.2.

ASSIGNMENTS

1. Answer the following questions.
 - a. What is difference between the nonmaskable and the maskable interrupt?
 - b. When does the Z80 check the $\overline{\text{INT}}$ and $\overline{\text{NMI}}$ signals?
 - c. How is the Interrupt Acknowledge cycle differentiated from the Opcode Fetch and the I/O Read machine cycles?

- d. How is the $\overline{\text{INTA}}$ (Interrupt Acknowledge) signal generated?
 - e. Specify the three conditions that are necessary to acknowledge the $\overline{\text{INT}}$.
 - f. Assuming the system's clock frequency is 2 MHz, and if the $\overline{\text{INT}}$ goes low in the first T-state of the OUT instruction (11 T-states), specify the period for which the $\overline{\text{INT}}$ has to remain active to be acknowledged.
 - g. In a system with the clock frequency of 1 MHz, the Z80 begins to execute an instruction with ten T-states. If at the beginning of the instruction, the $\overline{\text{NMI}}$ goes active for 0.5 μs , will the $\overline{\text{NMI}}$ be accepted, and if the answer is yes, when will it be accepted?
 - h. The instruction CALL 2085H is written at memory locations 2017–18–19_H. If it is interrupted during its execution, what is the address that is stored on the stack?
 - i. The execution of the unconditional Call instruction requires 17 T-states. In a system with 2 MHz clock frequency, if the $\overline{\text{INT}}$ (set up in Mode 1) goes active at the beginning of the Call instruction and stays on for 8.5 μs , and if the $\overline{\text{NMI}}$ goes active 2 μs later than the $\overline{\text{INT}}$ and stays on for 1 μs , where will the program be transferred?
 - j. Does the system Reset disable the maskable interrupt?
 - k. If the Z80 is initialized in the interrupt Mode 1, what is the status of the interrupt flip-flop IFF2 when the Z80 acknowledges the $\overline{\text{NMI}}$?
 - l. If the instruction RST 20H is written in a program at location 2051_H, where will the program be transferred and what will be stored on the stack when the instruction is executed?
2. Identify the RST instruction shown in Figure 12.14 and answer the following questions.
 - a. Specify the Restart memory location when the microprocessor is interrupted.
 - b. If the instruction in the monitor program at 0030 is CALL 20BF_H and the service routine is written at 20BF_H, what instruction is necessary at location 0033_H?

FIGURE 12.14
RST Instruction for Assignment 2



3. The main program is stored beginning at 0100_H. The main program has called the subroutine at 0150_H, and when the microprocessor is executing the instruction at location 0151_H (LD), it is interrupted. Read the program and then answer the questions that follow.

```

START:  0100    LD SP, 0400H
        0103    IM 1
        0104    EI
        ↓
        0120    CALL 0150H
        ↓
SUB:     0150    PUSH BC
        0151    LD BC, 10FFH
        0154    LD C, A
        ↓
        015E    POP BC
        015F    RET

```

- Specify the contents of the stack location 03FF_H.
 - Specify the stack locations where the contents of registers BC are stored.
 - When the program is interrupted, what is the memory address stored on the stack?
4. In 3, if the program is changed as follows and the circuit in Figure 12.10 is used to supply the byte, specify the location to which the program will be transferred when it is interrupted and the location of the service routine.

```

START:  0100    LD SP, 2400H
        0103    IM 2
        0104    LD A, 01H
        0106    LD I, A
        0107    LD HL, 01F8H
        010A    LD (HL), 80H
        010C    INC HL
        010D    LD (HL), 23H
        010F    EI
        0110

```



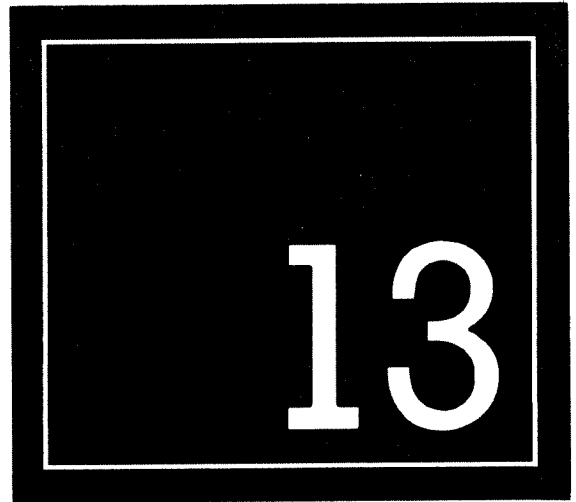
- In Figure 12.13, if the input I₄ goes active, specify the location to which the program will be transferred.
- In Figure 12.13, if the inputs I₄ and I₆ go active simultaneously, specify the location to which the program will be transferred.
- In Figure 12.13, connect the output lines A₂, A₁, and A₀ of the encoder (through the buffer 74LS366) to the data bus D₅, D₄, and D₃ and tie the remaining data lines high. If the Z80 is set up in the interrupt Mode 0, and if the input I₄ goes active, where will the program be transferred?

8. A program is stored in memory from 2000_H to 205F_H. To check the first segment of the program up to location 2025_H, a breakpoint routine call is inserted at location 2026_H. (Refer to the breakpoint routine—Section 12.73.) If the stack pointer is initialized at 2099_H, answer the following questions.
 - a. Specify the contents of the memory locations 2098_H and 2097_H.
 - b. Specify the memory locations where the accumulator content and the flags are stored when the microprocessor executes the instruction PUSH AF in the breakpoint routine.
 - c. Specify the memory locations where HL register contents are stored after execution of the instruction PUSH HL.
 - d. Specify the contents of the stack pointer when the breakpoint routine returns from the KBRD routine.
 - e. What address is placed in the program counter when the instruction RET is executed?
9. Modify the breakpoint routine (Section 12.7) to display the memory location at which the breakpoint is inserted into a program.
10. Modify the breakpoint routine to display the contents of BC, DE, and HL registers when user pushes the Hex Keys 1, 2, and 3. (The respective Hex codes are 01, 02, and 03.)

Programmable Interface Devices

A **programmable interface device** is designed to perform various input/output functions, and these functions can be programmed into the device by writing an instruction (or instructions) in its internal register, called the control register. Functions can also be changed by writing a new instruction in the control register. These devices are flexible, versatile, and economical; they are widely used in microprocessor-based products.

In Chapter 5, we used simple integrated circuits, such as latches and tri-state buffers for I/O functions. However, they are limited in their capabilities; each device can perform only one function, and they are hardwired. In this chapter, we first discuss the basic concepts in programmable devices and then examine the Z80 **Parallel Input Output (PIO) device** in the context of these concepts. The PIO is an I/O device specially designed to function with the Z80, and it is commonly used in Z80-based systems. The PIO has two I/O ports, and it can be programmed in various modes ranging from bit mode to bidirectional data transfer mode. These modes are illustrated with several interfacing applications, such as keyboard and seven-segment display, and bidirec-



tional data transfer between two microcomputers. Finally, another widely used peripheral device, the Intel 8255, is described and compared with the Z80 PIO.

OBJECTIVES

- List elements and characteristics of a typical programmable device.
- Explain the functions of handshake signals.
- List the elements of the Z80 PIO (Parallel Input Output) and explain its various operating modes.
- Write initialization instructions to set up the PIO in a given mode.
- Design an interfacing circuit to set up the PIO in a handshake mode, and write instructions to transfer data using the interrupt I/O.
- List the elements of the Intel 8255 Programmable Peripheral Interface and its various operating modes.
- Write initialization instructions to set up the 8255 in a given mode.
- Compare the features of the Z80 PIO and the 8255.

13.1

BASIC CONCEPTS IN PROGRAMMABLE DEVICES

In Chapter 5, we discussed the interfacing of simple input (switches) and output (LEDs) devices. In the illustrations, we assumed that the I/O devices were always ready for data transfer. In fact, that assumption may not be valid in many data transfer situations. The MPU needs to check whether a peripheral is ready before it reads from or writes into a device because the execution speed of the microprocessor is much faster than the response of a peripheral such as a printer. For example, when the MPU sends data bytes (characters) to a printer, the microprocessor can execute the instructions to transfer a byte in microseconds, but the printer can take 10–25 ms to print a character. After transferring a character to the printer, the MPU should wait until the printer is ready for the next character; otherwise data will be lost. To prevent the loss of data or the MPU's reading the same data more than once, signals are exchanged between the MPU and a peripheral prior to actual data transfer; these signals are called **handshake signals**. To provide such signals in the illustrations of Chapter 5, we need to build additional logic circuitry.

In Chapter 12, we interfaced an A/D converter using the interrupt I/O; however, the interrupt signal was generated by the internal logic of the data converter. Many peripherals may not have that capability; such signals may have to be provided by the interfacing circuitry. In some applications, data flow is bidirectional (such as data transfer between two computers). In such a situation, the interfacing device should be capable of handling **bidirectional data flow**. Based on the above discussion and the illustrations of Chapters 5 and 12, we can summarize the requirements for a programmable interfacing device as follows. The device should include the following:

1. Input and output registers (a group of latches to hold data).
2. Tri-state buffers.
3. Capability for bidirectional data flow.
4. Handshake and interrupt signals.
5. Control logic.
6. Chip Select logic.
7. Interrupt control logic.

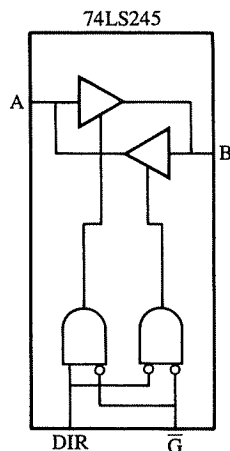
To understand the programmability of such a device, we illustrate a simple example of building a programmable device using a transceiver (bidirectional buffer) in the next section.

13.11 Making the 74LS245 Transceiver Programmable

The 74LS245 is a bidirectional tri-state octal buffer, and the direction of the data flow is determined by the signal DIR. Figure 13.1 shows the logic diagram of the 74LS245; it shows one buffer (rather than eight) in each direction. The buffer is enabled when \bar{G} is active low; however, the direction of the data flow is determined by the DIR signal. When the DIR is high, data flow from A to B, and when it is low, data flow from B to A. In fact, this is a hardwired programmable device; the direction of the data flow is programmed through DIR. However, we are interested in a device that can be programmed by writing an instruction through the MPU. This can be accomplished by adding a register called the control register, as shown in Figure 13.2, and by connecting the DIR signal to bit D_0 of the control register. When $D_0 = 1$, data flow from A to B as output, and when $D_0 = 0$, data flow in the opposite direction as input.

Now the question is: How would the MPU write into the control register? It does so the same way it would with any other I/O port, through a port address. Figure 13.2 shows that the address lines A_7 – A_1 are used to select the chip through a NAND gate and A_0 is used to differentiate between the control register and the transceiver. When A_0 is high, the control register is enabled, and when A_0 is low, the transceiver is enabled. Thus, the MPU could access the control register through the port address FF_H ; and the transceiver through FE_H . To set up the transceiver as an output device, the control word would be 01_H , and to set it up as an input device the control word would be 00_H .

FIGURE 13.1
Logic Symbol of 74LS245
Bidirectional Buffer



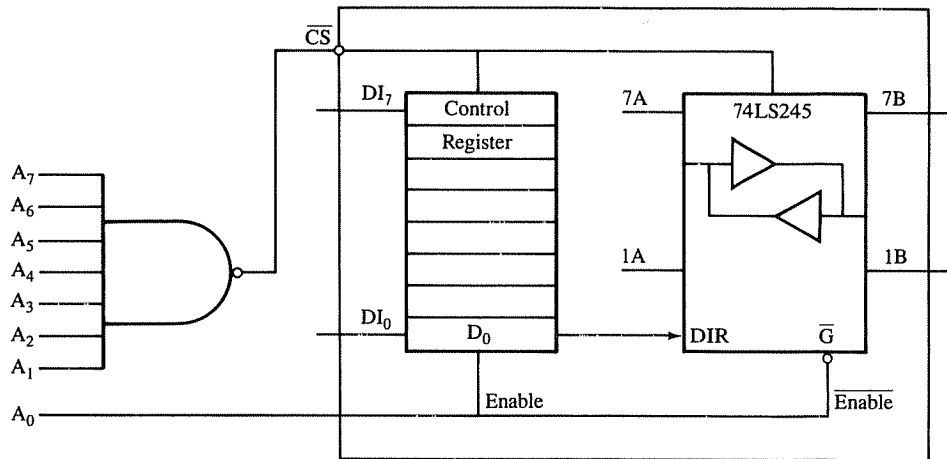


FIGURE 13.2
Making 74LS245 Programmable

**Example
13.1**

Write instructions to initialize the hypothetical chip (Figure 13.2) as an output buffer and send a byte.

Solution

Instructions

LD A, 01H	;Set D ₀ = 1, D ₁ through D ₇ are “don’t care” lines
OUT (FFH), A	;Write in the control register
LD A, BYTE1	;Load data byte
OUT (FEH), A	;Send data out

In the last example, we used the 74LS245 as a tri-state buffer. However, in micro-processor applications, we often need registers that can be used as I/O ports. We can build a latch with a buffer, and by controlling the enable signal of the latch, we can program it to function as an input port or an output port. Figure 13.3 shows two latches (representing eight latches in each direction); the enable signals of these latches are controlled by bit D₀ in the control register. If bit D₀ is 0, it enables the output latch, and if D₀ is 1, it enables the input latch. Thus, by programming bit D₀, we can make the device function as an input port or an output port. When the device is programmed as an output device, the MPU can write to the port by using the \overline{WR} control signal to enable the tri-state buffer and to send out a byte. When bit D₀ = 1, the input latch is enabled and the output latch is disabled, and the MPU can read by enabling the input buffer. If we have additional registers (or I/O ports),

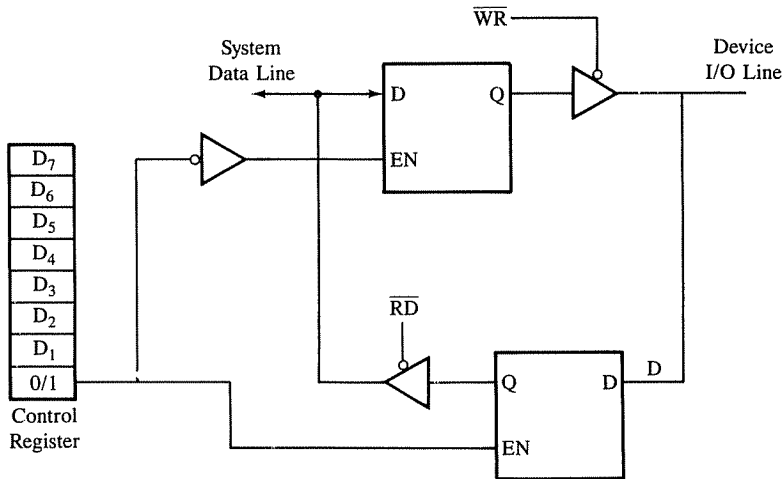


FIGURE 13.3
Programmable I/O Ports

we can use other bits of the control register to define the functions of these registers. Similarly, we can build an interrupt logic and control it through a flip-flop that can in turn be enabled or disabled by a bit in the control register. Thus, we can build a programmable device to meet the requirements specified in the previous section.

Z80 PARALLEL INPUT/OUTPUT DEVICE (PIO)

13.2

The **Z80 PIO** is a programmable I/O interfacing device, specially designed for the Z80. It has two 8-bit I/O ports, A and B, and its signals are divided into six groups as shown in Figure 13.4; they are described in the next section. Ports A and B can be used in three different modes: byte output (Mode 0), byte input (Mode 1), and bit input/output (Mode 3) as shown in Figure 13.5. In addition, Port A can be configured in the bidirectional mode (Mode 2).

- *Modes 0 and 1.* Mode 0 is for output and Mode 1 is for input. In these modes, Ports A and B can be used in two ways: simple I/O without handshake signals or interrupt I/O with handshake signals. Each port has two handshake signals: *Strobe* and *Ready*.
- *Mode 2.* This mode specifies the bidirectional data flow. Only Port A can be configured in this mode, and it uses all four handshake signals.
- *Mode 3.* This is a bit mode whereby each bit of Port A and Port B can be configured as input or output. The handshake signals cannot be used in this mode.

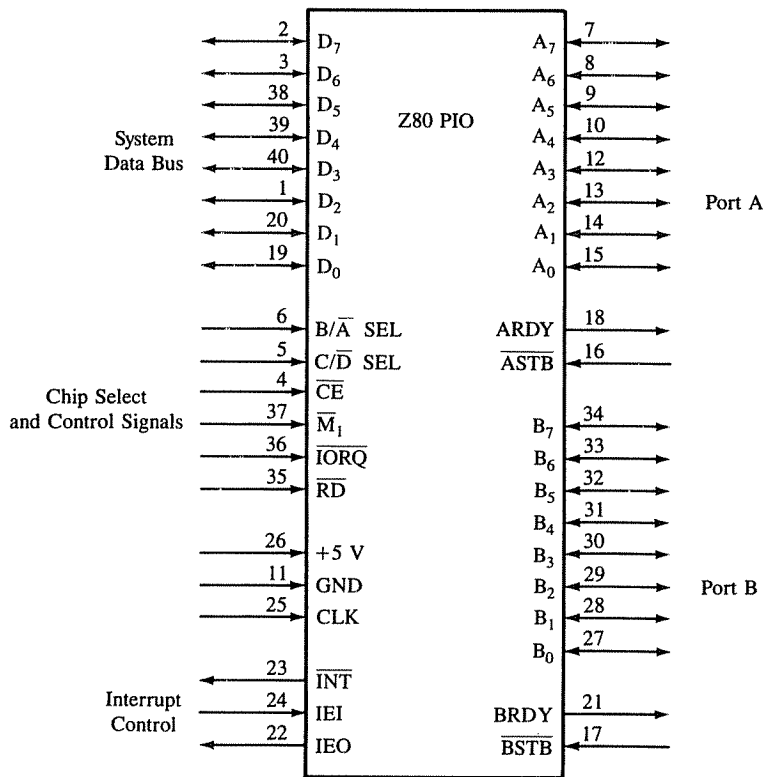


FIGURE 13.4
Z80 PIO Logic Pinout
SOURCE: Courtesy of Zilog, Inc.

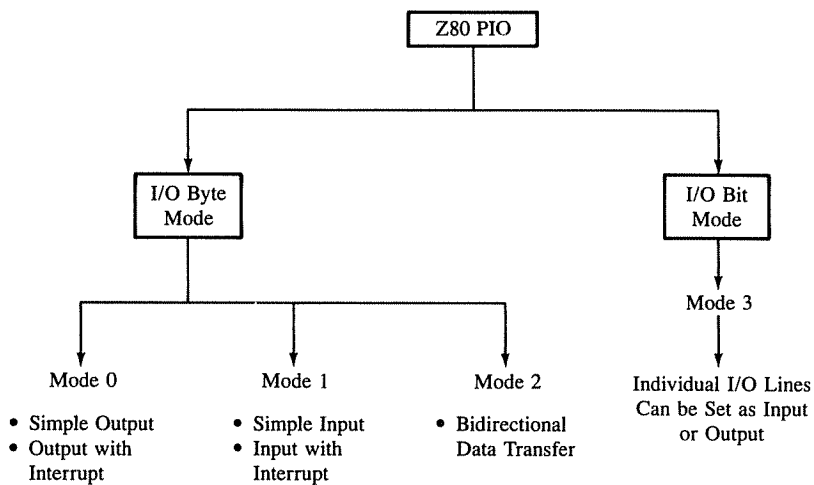


FIGURE 13.5
Z80 PIO Modes

13.21 Z80 PIO Signals

As shown in Figure 13.4, the PIO signals are grouped in six categories.

1. Data bus— D_7 – D_0 : This is an 8-bit bidirectional, tri-state data bus, used to transfer information between the Z80 MPU and the PIO.
2. I/O lines— A_7 – A_0 : These are bidirectional tri-state I/O lines of Port A, used to transfer information between the PIO and a peripheral. These lines can source 250 μ A in logic 1 state and sink 2 mA in logic 0 state.
 B_7 – B_0 : These are Port B I/O lines similar to those of Port A. These lines can supply 1.5 mA at 1.5 V to drive Darlington transistors.
3. Handshake signals: The PIO has four handshake signals, two for each port. However, all of them are used for Port A when it is configured in the bidirectional mode.
 - \overline{ASTB} —This is an active low Port A input signal from a peripheral to the PIO. When Port A is configured as an output port, this signal indicates the acknowledgment of the byte received by the peripheral. When Port A is configured as an input port, this signal indicates that a byte has been placed in Port A by a peripheral.
 - $ARDY$ —This is an active high Port A output signal from the PIO to a peripheral. In the output mode, the signal indicates that a byte has been placed in the Port A register and is ready for data transfer. In the input mode, it indicates that the Port A register is empty and ready to accept the next byte from the peripheral.
 - \overline{BSTB} and $BRDY$ —These are handshake signals for Port B similar to those of Port A. However, these are used by Port A when Port A is configured in the bidirectional mode.
4. Power and clock: The PIO operates with a single power supply with + 5 V and uses a single phase system clock as an input for internal operations.
5. Interrupt control logic: The PIO has three signals to handle the interrupt I/O.
 - \overline{INT} —Interrupt: This is an active low open collector output signal from the PIO; it is used to interrupt the Z80 MPU.
 - IEI —Interrupt Enable In: This is an active high input signal used to form a priority interrupt daisy chain when multiple peripherals are connected in the interrupt I/O (see Section 13.35 for the discussion of daisy chain priority interrupts). The high on this pin indicates that no other peripherals with higher priority are being serviced.
 - IEO —Interrupt Enable Out: This is an active high output signal used in daisy chain priority interrupts. This signal goes high when IEI is high and the Z80 is not servicing an interrupt from this PIO. This signal blocks lower priority devices from interrupting when a higher priority device is being serviced.
6. Control signals: The PIO has six control signals. The first three signals (\overline{CE} , B/\overline{A} , and C/\overline{D}) determine the port addresses of the I/O registers A and B and their control registers. The remaining three signals define the type of the operation (Read or Write) being performed.

TABLE 13.1
Z80 PIO Port Selection

$\overline{\text{CE}}$	$\text{C}/\overline{\text{D}}$	$\text{B}/\overline{\text{A}}$	Selected Port
0	0	0	Data Port A
0	0	1	Data Port B
0	1	0	Control Register A
0	1	1	Control Register B
1	X	X	PIO Not Selected

- $\overline{\text{CE}}$ —Chip Enable: This is an active low signal and is connected to a decoded address bus of the Z80.
- $\text{B}/\overline{\text{A}}$ —Port B or A Select: When this signal is high, Port B is selected, and when it is low, Port A is selected. This signal is generally connected to address line A_0 of the MPU.
- $\text{C}/\overline{\text{D}}$ —Control or Data Select. When this signal is high, the control register is selected to write a command, and when it is low, the I/O register is selected to transfer data between the MPU and the PIO. This signal is generally connected to address line A_1 of the MPU. The port selection is summarized in Table 13.1.
- $\overline{\text{M}}_1$, $\overline{\text{RD}}$, and $\overline{\text{IORQ}}$ —All these signals are connected to the corresponding control signals of the Z80. The $\overline{\text{M}}_1$ signal synchronizes the internal operation and the interrupt logic of the PIO and performs various functions in conjunction with the other two control signals as described below.
 - a. Read: When the $\overline{\text{RD}}$ and $\overline{\text{IORQ}}$ signals are active low, the MPU reads from the selected register.
 - b. Write: When the $\overline{\text{IORQ}}$ is active, but the $\overline{\text{RD}}$ is inactive, the MPU writes into the selected register. There is no specific control signal to write into register; it is a default condition.
 - c. Interrupt Acknowledge: When $\overline{\text{M}}_1$ and $\overline{\text{IORQ}}$ are active, the MPU acknowledges the interrupt from the PIO.
 - d. Reset: When $\overline{\text{M}}_1$ is active and both $\overline{\text{RD}}$ and $\overline{\text{IORQ}}$ are inactive, the PIO is reset.

Example 13.2

Figure 13.6 shows a circuit interfacing the PIO with the Z80 microprocessor. Identify the port addresses of Ports A and B and control registers.

Solution

In Figure 13.6, the output line O_0 of the 74LS138 decoder is connected to the Chip Enable of the PIO. To assert the output line O_0 of the decoder, the address line A_7 should be at logic 1 and the remaining lines at logic 0. By combining these address lines with address lines A_1 and A_0 , the port addresses are as follows (refer to Table 13.1).

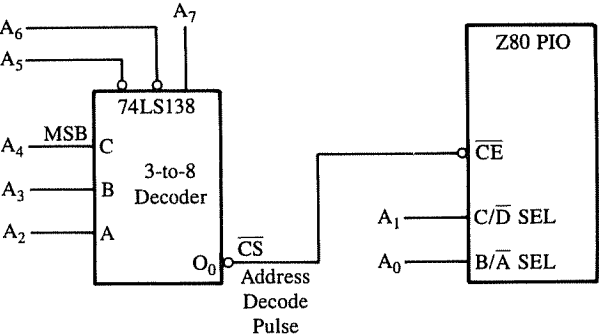


FIGURE 13.6
Interfacing PIO

A ₇	A ₆	A ₅	A ₄	A ₃	A ₂	A ₁	A ₀		
						C/\overline{D}	B/\overline{A}		
1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	= 80 _H	Data Port A
						0	1	= 81 _H	Data Port B
						1	0	= 82 _H	Control Register A
						1	1	= 83 _H	Control Register B

13.22 Control Word

Figure 13.5 shows that the PIO can operate in four different modes. To set up an operating mode, the appropriate control word must be written in the control register of the port being used. The control word is determined by the internal logic (as discussed in Section 13.1), and it is specified by the manufacturer. The control word for the PIO to specify the modes is shown in Figure 13.7, and how to initialize a port is illustrated in Example 13.3.

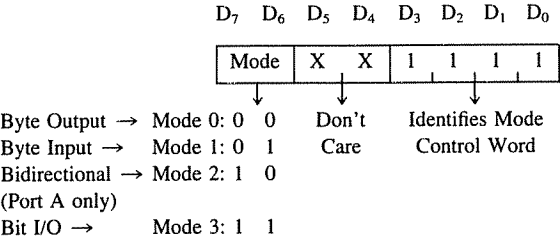


FIGURE 13.7
Z80 PIO Mode Word

Example 13.3

In Figure 13.8, eight DIP switches are connected to Port A and eight LEDs are connected to Port B (the buffer is necessary to supply sufficient current to the LEDs). Write instructions to initialize Port A as an input port and Port B as an output port. Read Port A and turn on the corresponding LEDs in Port B. Assume that the decoding logic is the same as in Figure 13.6.

Solution

To initialize Port A as an input port, $D_7 = 0$ and $D_6 = 1$, and to initialize Port B as an output port, D_7 and D_6 should be both 0. Thus the control words are

Port A as Input Port: 0 1 0 0 1 1 1 1 = 4F_H

↓
Mode 1

Port B as Output Port: 0 0 0 0 1 1 1 1 = 0F_H

↓
Mode 0

Instructions

```

; The following port addresses refer to Figure 13.6
PORTA EQU 80H           ;Port A address
PORTB EQU 81H           ;Port B address
CNTRLA EQU 82H          ;Control Register A
CNTRLB EQU 83H          ;Control Register B
LD A, 01001111B         ;Control word 4FH for Port A
OUT (CNTRLA), A          ;Write in control register A
LD A, 00001111B         ;Control word 0FH for Port B
OUT (CNTRLB), A          ;Write in control register B
IN A, (PORTA)            ;Read DIP switches
OUT (PORTB), A           ;Turn on corresponding LEDs
HALT

```

Description Initially, all ports are defined by writing equates; these port addresses are from Figure 13.6. Then, Ports A and B are initialized by writing control words into their respective control registers. The remaining two instructions are simple I/O instructions. Note that in Figure 13.8, the handshake signal ASTB of the input Port A is grounded in order to prevent the input port from waiting for a strobe signal.

In Example 13.3, switches and LEDs are connected as simple I/O devices, similar to illustrations in Chapter 5. The only difference in writing instructions is the initialization instructions. The next section shows how to interface peripherals using the handshake signals and the interrupt I/O.

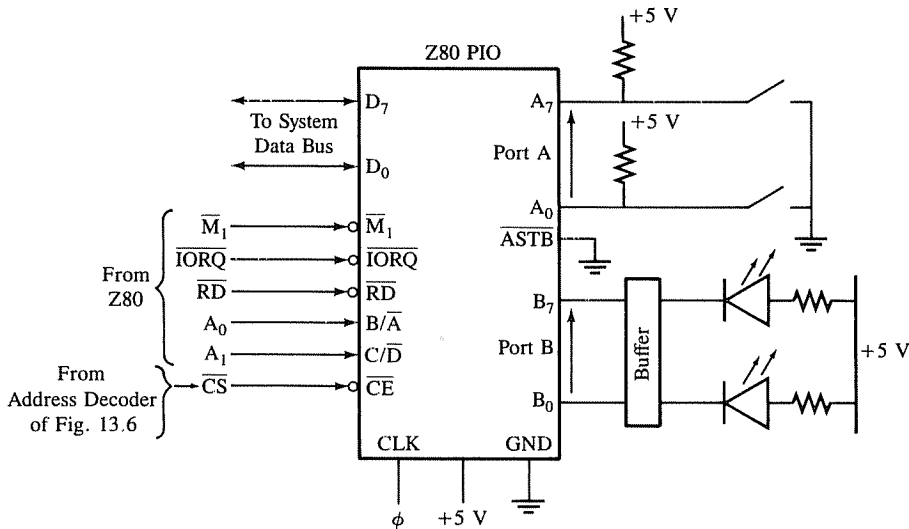


FIGURE 13.8
Interfacing PIO in Mode 0 for Simple I/O

MODES 0, 1, AND 2 WITH HANDSHAKE SIGNALS AND INTERRUPT I/O

13.3

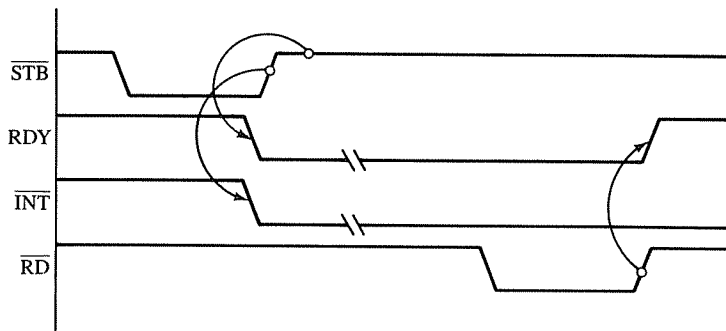
As described earlier, the PIO has two handshake signals, Strobe and Ready ($\overline{\text{STB}}$ and $\overline{\text{RDY}}$), associated with each port and one interrupt ($\overline{\text{INT}}$) signal. The handshake signals are used to indicate the readiness of the peripheral. The interpretation of the handshake signals is somewhat dependent on the mode being used; therefore, they will be explained separately.

The interrupt signal is used to request service from the MPU. To generate an $\overline{\text{INT}}$ signal, the interrupt flip-flop of the port being used must be enabled; each port has its interrupt enable flip-flop. (These flip-flops should not be confused with the Z80 interrupt flip-flops, IFF1 and IFF2.)

13.31 Input Mode 1 and Handshake Signals

Figure 13.9 shows the sequence of events and timing when the selected port is configured as an input port and a byte is transferred from the peripheral to the PIO and then to the MPU.

1. The peripheral causes the $\overline{\text{STB}}$ (Strobe) to go low and informs the PIO that a data byte has been placed in the input register.

**FIGURE 13.9**

PIO Input Mode 1: Timing Waveforms

SOURCE: Courtesy of Zilog, Inc.

2. The rising edge of the $\overline{\text{STB}}$ activates the interrupt ($\overline{\text{INT}}$), and the other handshake signal RDY (Ready) goes inactive, indicating that the input register is full.
3. Let us assume that the Z80 and the PIO interrupt flip-flops are enabled, and that the Z80 MPU is set up in the interrupt Mode 2. When the Z80 acknowledges the interrupt request, a preprogrammed 8-bit vector is placed onto the data bus (see Section 13.33 for interrupt vector definition). This vector is combined with the byte in the interrupt register, IR, of the Z80 to form a 16-bit address, and the program is transferred to this memory address to get the address of the service routine. These interrupt activities are not shown in the timing diagram.
4. When the service routine reads the byte from the port, the RDY goes active on the rising edge of the $\overline{\text{RD}}$ signal, indicating that the PIO is ready for the next byte.

13.32 Output Mode 0 and Handshake Signals

Figure 13.10 shows the sequence of events and the timing when the port is configured as an output port and a data byte is transferred from the MPU to the PIO and then to the peripheral.

1. When the Z80 executes the OUT instruction, it places the byte in the PIO register and activates the RDY signal, indicating to the peripheral that a byte is available in the register.
2. The RDY signal stays high until the peripheral sends the $\overline{\text{STB}}$ signal. The rising edge of the $\overline{\text{STB}}$ activates the interrupt, indicating to the MPU that the byte has been received by the peripheral, and that it is ready for the next byte.
3. When the $\overline{\text{INT}}$ is acknowledged, the program is transferred to the service routine as described in step 3 of Mode 1.

In Figure 13.10, the $\overline{\text{WR}}$ signal needs clarification because the PIO does not have a $\overline{\text{WR}}$ pin. This signal is generated internally by the PIO when $\overline{\text{CE}}$, $\overline{\text{C/D}}$, and $\overline{\text{IORQ}}$ are active, but $\overline{\text{RD}}$ is inactive.

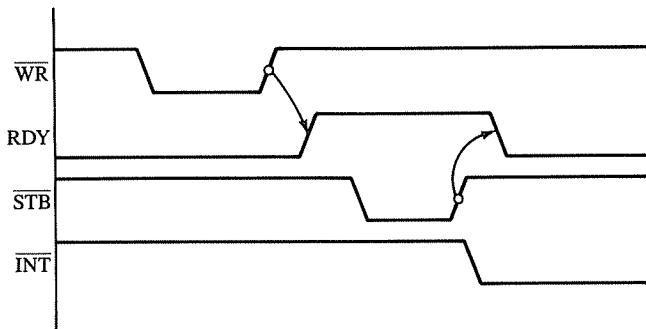


FIGURE 13.10
PIO Output Mode 0: Timing Waveforms
SOURCE: Courtesy of Zilog, Inc.

13.33 Interrupt Enable Word and Interrupt Vector

To set up the PIO ports in the interrupt I/O, the interrupt flip-flop of the port being used must be enabled by writing an instruction in the control register. In addition, the low-order byte must be programmed to form the interrupt vector to locate the address of the service routine. The definitions of the interrupt enable word and the interrupt vector are shown in Figure 13.11. To set up the PIO ports in the interrupt I/O, we need to write three instructions (control words) in the control register of the port being used: mode word, interrupt enable word, and interrupt vector. This is illustrated in the next example.

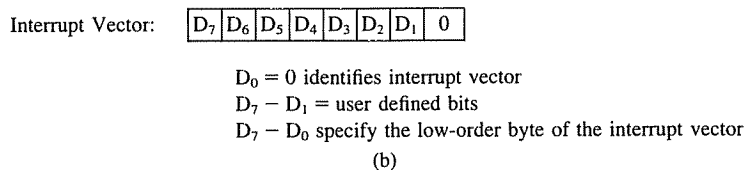
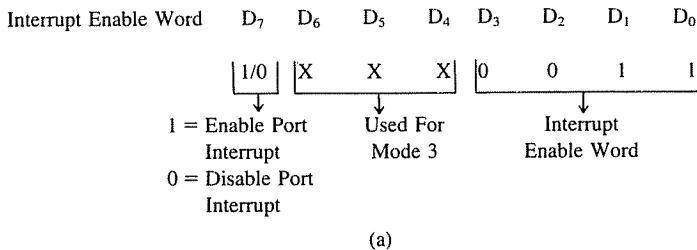


FIGURE 13.11
Definitions of: (a) Interrupt Enable Word (b) Interrupt Vector

**Example
13.4**

Assuming the same Chip Select logic as in Figure 13.6, write instructions to set up the Z80 MPU and the PIO for the interrupt I/O. Initialize Port A as an input port and Port B as an output port. The addresses of the service routines for Port A and Port B are stored in locations 2096_H and 2098_H, respectively.

Solution**Initialization Instructions**

;Setting up Port A as input port with interrupt I/O

```
START:  LD A, 4FH           ;Control word for Mode 1
        OUT (CNTRLA), A    ;Initialize Port A as input port
        LD A, 83H         ;Interrupt enable control word
        OUT (CNTRLA), A    ;Enable Port A interrupt flip-flop
        LD A, 96H         ;Low-order byte of the interrupt vector for
                           ;Port A
        OUT (CNTRLA), A    ;Specify interrupt vector for Port A
```

;Setting up Port B as output port with interrupt I/O

```
LD A, 0FH           ;Control word for Mode 0
OUT (CNTRLB), A    ;Initialize Port B as output port
LD A, 83H         ;Interrupt enable control word
OUT (CNTRLB), A    ;Enable Port B interrupt flip-flop
LD A, 98H         ;Low-order byte of the interrupt vector for
                 ;Port B
OUT (CNTRLB), A    ;Specify interrupt vector for Port B
```

;Setting up Z80 MPU in interrupt Mode 2

```
LD SP, STACK       ;Initialize stack pointer
LD A, 20H          ;High-order address for interrupt vector
LD I, A            ;Initialize Z80 interrupt register
IM 2              ;Set up Z80 in interrupt Mode 2
EI                ;Enable Z80 interrupt
```

Description The above instructions are divided into three groups: initialization of Port A, Port B, and Z80. To initialize Port A and Port B for the interrupt I/O and in Mode 0 and 1, three control words are necessary: Mode Word, Interrupt Enable, and Interrupt Vector. These words can be executed in any sequence; however, we have used a certain sequence to clarify the concepts. Now the question is: How does the PIO differentiate these words, especially when they are written in the same control register? These words are differentiated by identifying certain bit patterns. For example, a mode word is recognized when D₃–D₀ are all 1s, and an interrupt vector is recognized when bit D₀ = 0.

The instructions in the third group set up the Z80 MPU in the interrupt Mode 2, and specify the high-order byte (20_H) of the interrupt vector in register I. By keeping the

instruction EI at the end, the initialization of the PIO will not be disturbed even if an interrupt were to occur in the system.

When the Z80 acknowledges an interrupt from Port A, the byte (20_H) in register I is combined with the low-order byte 96_H, specified as the interrupt vector for Port A, to form the 16-bit memory addresses 2096_H. The program is then transferred to location 2096_H. The byte stored in memory location 2096_H provides the low-order address and the byte in location 97_H the high-order address of the service routine for Port A. For Port B interrupt, the program is transferred to location 2098_H in a similar manner.

13.34 Mode 2: Bidirectional Data Transfer

Port A of the PIO can be set up as a bidirectional input and output port. This is called Mode 2, which is the combination of Mode 0 and Mode 1. In Mode 2, Port A uses all four handshake lines; thus Port B cannot be used as an I/O port with an interrupt-generating capability. Port B must be set in Mode 3 without its logic checking capability (Mode 3 is discussed in Section 13.4). In bidirectional data transfer (Mode 2), when Port A functions as the output port, the handshake signals of Port A (ASTB and ARDY) are used, and when it functions as an input port, the handshake signals for Port B (BSTB and BRDY) are used. Similarly, the interrupt vector for the output is programmed in the control register of Port A, and the interrupt vector for the input is programmed in the control register of Port B. In this mode, the process of data transfer is as follows:

1. *Output Mode.* When the Z80 writes a byte in Port A, ARDY goes high. When the peripheral asserts ASTB and reads the byte, an interrupt is generated (if enabled) to signal the Z80 that the next byte can be sent. This is identical to Mode 0 except that a data byte is allowed onto the data bus of Port A when ASTB is active.
2. *Input Mode.* When the peripheral places a data byte on the data lines and asserts the BSTB signal, an interrupt (if enabled) is generated to indicate that the byte is placed in Port A. When the Z80 reads the byte, the BRDY goes active to indicate to the peripheral that the Z80 is ready for the next byte.

The timing and additional details of Mode 2 are further explained in Section 13.6.

13.35 Interrupt Priority

When multiple peripherals are interfaced with the interrupt I/O, it is essential to have a priority scheme built into the system. The PIO can be used to set the *daisy chain priority* scheme, whereby the first PIO connected to Z80 has the highest priority. Figure 13.12 shows four PIOs connected in the daisy chain format; PIO-1 has the highest priority and PIO-4 has the lowest priority. The design of the daisy chain priority scheme is based on two PIO signals IEI and IEO and the Z80 instruction RETI.

- IEI—Interrupt Enable In: This is an active high input signal to the PIO. When this signal is high, it indicates that no other PIOs of higher priority are being serviced by the

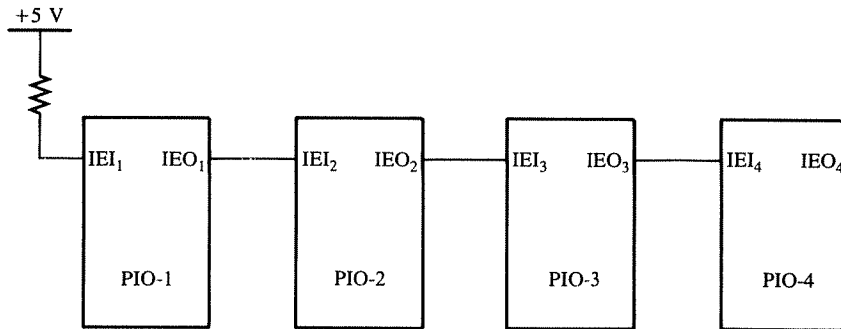


FIGURE 13.12
Daisy Chain Interrupt Priority

Z80. When it is low, it indicates that a higher priority PIO is being serviced and no interrupt can be generated from this PIO.

- IEO—Interrupt Enable Out: This is an active high output signal. This remains high if IEI is high and remains low if IEI is low. When IEI is high and IEO is low, it indicates that either the PIO is being serviced or an interrupt is pending from this PIO.
- RETI—Return From Interrupt: This is a 2-byte (ED 4D) instruction, and the PIO logic can recognize it. When the PIO reads this instruction, it sets IEO high; thus indicating the end of the service routine and allowing lower priority PIOs to interrupt the processor.

To further explain the daisy chain interrupt operation, let us assume that all IEI and IEO signals in Figure 13.12 are high. When PIO-2 generates an interrupt and it is accepted, the IEO₂ goes low; thus causing IEI₃ to go low. The signal ripples through PIO-3 and PIO-4 and disables these devices. Let us assume that when PIO-2 is being serviced, it is interrupted by PIO-1, causing IEI₂ to go low. At the end of the service routine, PIO-1 reads the instruction RETI and sets the IEI₂ high; thus the service routine of PIO-2 can continue.

This daisy chain using the PIO has two drawbacks: (1) it is limited to four PIOs (it can be extended to include more PIOs by using additional logic), and (2) the priority is fixed.

13.4 MODE 3: BIT MODE

Mode 3 is a bit mode whereby each bit of Port A and Port B can be individually assigned input or output function. The features of this mode are as follows:

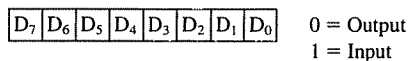
1. Each individual line of the port can be assigned either input or output function by writing a control word in the control register of the port.
2. The handshake signals are not used; Ready is kept low, and Strobe is disabled.

3. Bits are read or written into by use of the normal Read and Write functions of the I/O ports.
4. Individual bits can be masked by writing a mask word in the control register.
5. An interrupt can be generated if a predefined logical combination occurs in the input lines. The logical combination (AND/OR) can be defined by writing an interrupt control word in the control register, and the logic level can be active low or active high. For example, we can specify that bits D_0 – D_7 be inputs and two bits, D_7 and D_6 , be active low with AND function. With this specification, when the PIO reads both bits D_7 and D_6 low, an interrupt signal is generated. In OR logic function, when one of the input lines (D_7 or D_6) is active, the interrupt is activated.

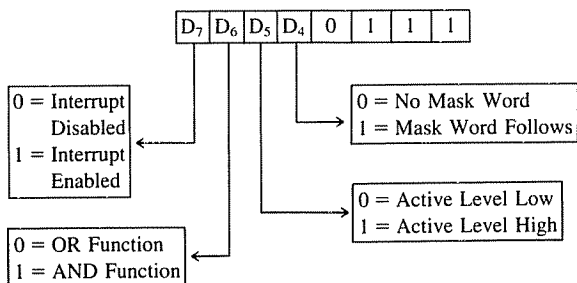
To set up the PIO in Mode 3 with the interrupt capability, four different words should be written in the control register of the port being used.

1. Mode control word for Mode 3.
2. I/O register control word to assign input or output function to individual bits.
3. Interrupt control word to define the logic conditions to generate the interrupt.
4. Mask control word to specify a mask word.

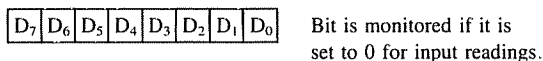
The Mode control word is already defined in Figure 13.7, and the remaining three words are defined in Figure 13.13. The use of these words is illustrated in Example 13.5.



(a) I/O Register Control Word



(b) Interrupt Control Word



(c) Mask Control Word

FIGURE 13.13
Word Definitions for Mode 3

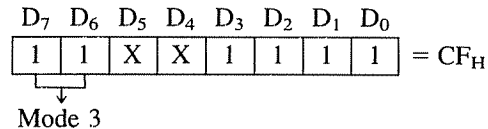
Example 13.5

Port A of the Z80 PIO is set up in Mode 3 to read input switches (active low) and control the relays (Figure 13.14). Input switches are connected to bits A_5 , A_3 , and A_1 , and corresponding output relays are connected to bits A_4 , A_2 , and A_0 . Bits A_7 and A_6 are used as emergency input switches, and when both are on (active low), an interrupt is generated to turn off the entire process. Write instructions to initialize the PIO and monitor the process. Port addresses are the same as defined in Example 13.2.

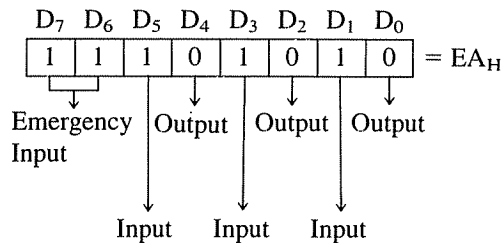
Solution

To initialize the PIO as specified in the problem statement, we need to define the four words as follows:

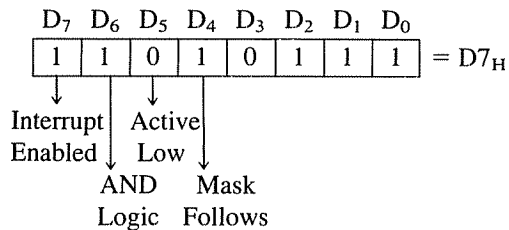
Mode Word (refer to Figure 13.7)



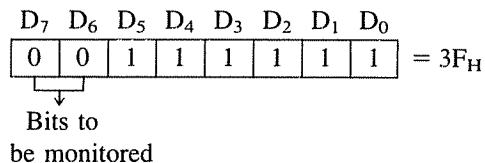
I/O Register Word (refer to Figure 13.13(a)):



Interrupt Control Word (refer to Figure 13.13(b))



Mask Control Word (refer to Figure 13.13(c))



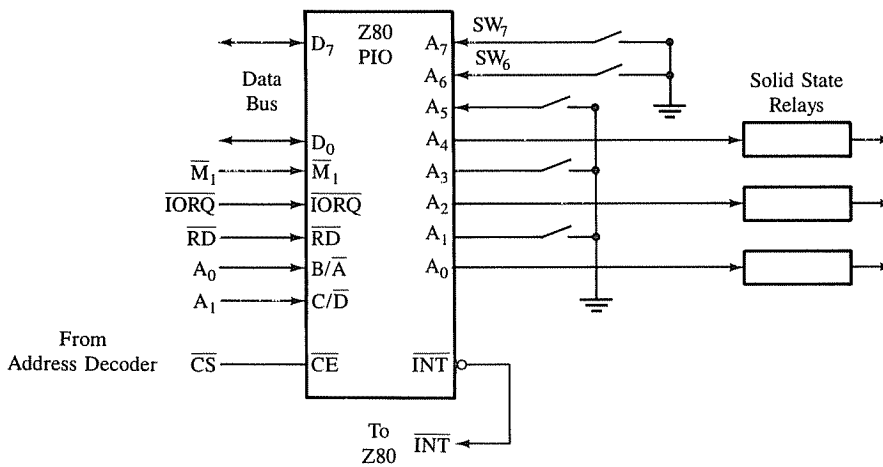


FIGURE 13.14
Interfacing PIO in Mode 3

Instructions

Initialization of Port A in Mode 3

START:	LD A, 0CFH	;Mode control word
	OUT (CTRLA), A	;Write in control register A
		;Control word to set up I/O functions
	LD A, 0EAH	; for bits D ₇ –D ₀ of port A
	OUT (CTRLA), A	
	LD A, 20H	;High-order address of interrupt vector
	LD I, A	;Initialize interrupt register I in Z80
	LD A, 72H	;Low-order address of interrupt vector
	OUT (CTRLA), A	
	LD A, 0D7H	;Enable interrupt with AND logic
	OUT (CTRLA), A	
	LD A, 3FH	;Mask to check D ₇ and D ₆
	OUT (CTRLA), A	
READ:	IN A, (PORTA)	;Read Port A switches
	CPL	;Complement logic levels
	RRCA	;Rotate right switch readings to turn on relays
	OUT (PORTA), A	;Turn on relays
	JP READ	;Go back to monitor switches

Program Description The control words are already explained, and they are written in the control register of port A. The interrupt vector is specified as 2072_H. The interrupt control word 1 1 0 1 0 1 1 1 (D7_H) sets up the PIO to check for active low AND logic. This

is followed by the masking word 0 0 1 1 1 1 1 1 ($3F_H$); this word specifies that bits D_7 and D_6 should be monitored for active low AND logic. This masking word specifies that if bits D_7 and D_6 are both logic 0, the PIO will generate an interrupt. Then the program will be transferred to location 2072_H to find the address of the service routine.

After the initialization, the instructions continuously read switches of Port A. When a switch is turned on, it provides logic 0; therefore, the reading is complemented to turn on the relays. Each switch and its corresponding relay are next to each other; therefore, rotating the reading right by one position turns on appropriate relays. When the switches connected to bits D_7 and D_6 are turned on (logic 0), the PIO logic checks for that condition and generates an interrupt. Then the service routine can take an appropriate action.

13.5 ILLUSTRATION: INTERFACING KEYBOARD AND SEVEN-SEGMENT DISPLAY

This illustration is concerned with interfacing a push-button keyboard and a seven-segment LED display using the PIO. The PIO is connected as a peripheral I/O as in Example 13.2, with the same port addresses. The emphasis in this illustration is not particularly on the features of PIO but on how to integrate hardware and software. When a key is pressed, the binary reading of the key has almost no relationship to what we intend to represent. Similarly, to display a number at a seven-segment LED, the binary value of the number needs to be converted into the seven-segment code, which is primarily decided by the hardware consideration. This illustration demonstrates how the microprocessor monitors the changes in hardware reading, and how we can convert the reading into appropriate binary format using the Z80 instructions.

13.51 Problem Statement

A push-button keyboard is connected to Port A and a seven-segment LED is connected to Port B of the PIO, as shown in Figure 13.15. Port A should be configured in the input Mode 1 and Port B in the output Mode 0; this is a simple I/O configuration without the use of handshake signals or the interrupt.

Write a program to monitor the keyboard to sense a key pressed and display the number of the key at the seven-segment LED. For example, when the key K_7 is pressed, the digit 7 should be displayed at Port B.

13.52 Problem Analysis

In this problem, the address decoding circuit and the port addresses are the same as in Example 13.2, and the initialization instructions for the PIO are same as in Example 13.3; therefore, these aspects of the problem will not be discussed here.

The keyboard circuit shown in Figure 13.15 is similar to that in Figure 5.6 except that the DIP switches are replaced by push-button keys and the buffer is replaced by the PIO. When a push-button key is pressed, it bounces (makes and breaks contact) a few

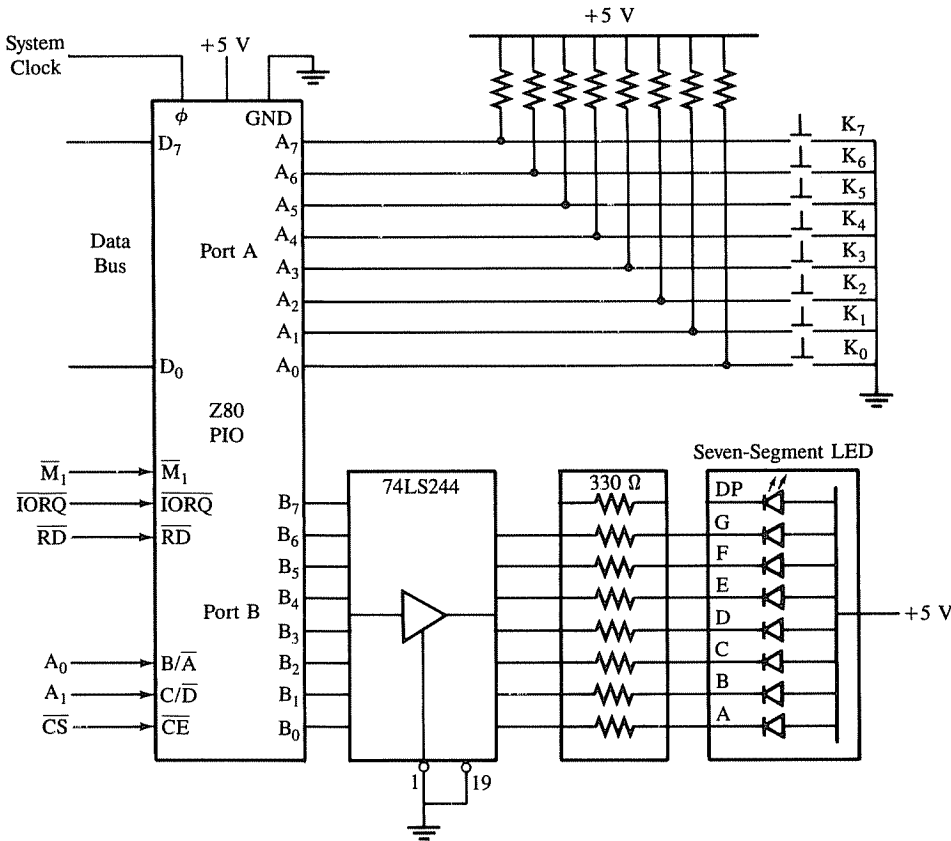


FIGURE 13.15
Interfacing a Keyboard and a Seven-Segment LED

times before it makes a firm contact. To prevent the multiple readings of the same key, it is necessary to debounce the key. We have already discussed the hardware solution to this problem in Chapter 12. The software solution to this problem is to wait for 10–20 ms until the key is settled and then check the key again. The display circuit in Figure 13.15 uses a common anode seven-segment LED, connected to Port B of the PIO. To display a digit, it is necessary to turn on the appropriate segments of the LED. The appropriate binary code can be obtained by using the table look-up technique, described in Section 13.54. The programming of this problem can be divided into the following categories:

1. Check whether a key is pressed.
2. Debounce the key.
3. Identify and encode the key in appropriate binary format.
4. Obtain the seven-segment code and display it.

The instructions for these steps can be written in separate modules, as shown in the next section.

13.53 Keyboard

The keys K_7 – K_0 are tied high through 10 k resistors, and when a key is pressed, the corresponding line is grounded. When all keys are open and if the Z80 reads Port A, the reading on the data bus will be FF_H . When any key is pressed, the reading will be less than FF_H . For example, if K_7 is pressed, the output of Port A will be 0111 1111 ($7F_H$). This reading should be encoded into the binary equivalent of the digit 7 (0 1 1 1) by using software routines. The following subroutines—KYCHK and KYPUSH—accomplish the tasks of checking a key pressed and encoding the key in appropriate binary format.

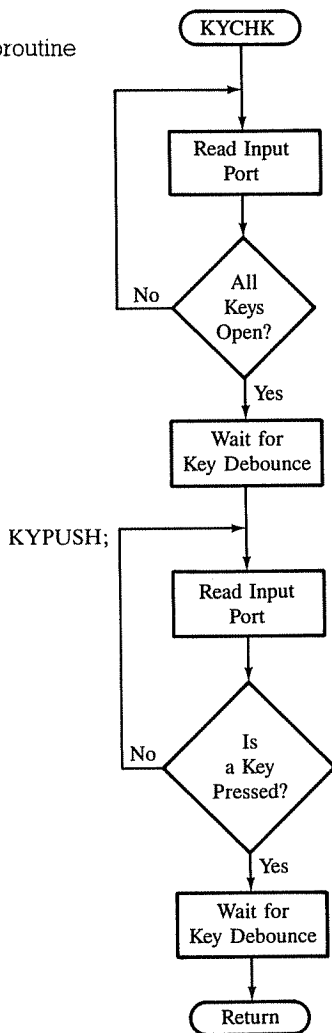
```
;KYCHK: This subroutine first checks whether all keys are open.
;Then, it checks for a key closure, debounces the key, and places
;the reading in the accumulator. See Figure 13.16 for flowchart.
      KYCHK: IN A, (PORTA)    ;Read keyboard
            CP 0FFH          ;Are all keys open?
            JP NZ, KYCHK      ;If not, wait in loop
            CALL DBONCE       ;If yes, wait 20 ms
      KYPUSH: IN A, (PORTA)    ;Read keyboard
            CP 0FFH          ;Is key pressed?
            JP Z, KYPUSH      ;If not, wait in loop
            CALL DBONCE       ;If yes, wait 20 ms
            CPL               ;Set 1 for key closure
            OR A              ;Set 0 flag for an error
            JP Z, KYPUSH      ;It is error, check again
            RET
```

Description This subroutine is based on hardware; when all keys are open the keyboard reading is FF_H , and when a key is pressed, the reading is less than FF_H . The routine begins with the loop to check whether all keys are open, and it stays in the loop until all keys are open. This prevents a reading of the same key repeatedly if someone were to hold the key for a long time. When it finds that a key has been released, it waits for 20 ms for a key debounce.

The loop starting at KYPUSH checks whether a key is pressed. When a key is pressed, the reading is less than FF_H ; thus, the compare instruction does not set the Z flag and the program goes to the next instruction for a key debounce. The CPL instruction complements the accumulator reading; thus, the reading of the key pressed is set to 1, and other bits are set to 0. The next two instructions check for an error. If it is momentary contact (false alarm), all bits are 0s. The OR instruction sets the Z flag, and the Jump instruction takes the program back to checking keys.

FIGURE 13.16

Flowchart: Key Check Subroutine



KYCODE: ;This routine converts (encodes) the binary hardware reading of the key
; pressed into appropriate binary format according to the number of the
; key.

```

LD C, 08H      ;Set code counter
NEXT: DEC C    ;Adjust key code
RLCA          ;Place MSB in CY
JP NC, NEXT   ;If bit = 0, go back to check next bit
LD A, C       ;Place key code into the accumulator
RET
  
```

Description Conceptually, this is an important routine; it establishes the relationship between the hardware and the number of the key. For example, if key K_7 is pressed, the reading from the routine KYCHK in the accumulator will be 1 0 0 0 0 0 0 (the reading is already complemented). The KYCODE routine sets register C for the count of eight and immediately decrements the count to seven. The instruction RLCA places bit D_7 into the CY flag, and the next instruction checks for the CY flag. If it is set, the key K_7 must be pressed, and the key code (digit 7) is in register C. If $CY = 0$, the program loops back to check the next bit (D_6). The loop is repeated until 1 is found in CY, and at every iteration of the loop, the key code in register C is adjusted for the next key. If more than one key is pressed, this routine ignores the low-order key. Finally, the subroutine places the key code into the accumulator and returns.

DBONCE: ;This is a 20 ms delay routine.

 ;The delay COUNT should be calculated based on system frequency.

 ;This does not destroy any register contents.

 ;Input and Output = None

 PUSH BC ;Save register contents

 LD BC, COUNT ;Load delay count

 LOOP: NOP ;Add delay

 DEC C ;Repeat until C = 0

 JR NZ, LOOP

 DJNZ LOOP ;Loop until B = 0

 POP BC ;Restore register contents

 RET

Description This is a simple delay routine similar to the delay routines discussed in Chapter 9. The first instruction loads the BC register with a 16-bit number, and the DJNZ instruction decrements the number in B and repeats the loop until B = 0. The NOP instruction is included in the loop to increase the delay. The inner loop is repeated until C = 0. In this routine, the 16-bit number (COUNT) should be calculated based on the clock frequency of the system and the T-states in the loop (see Chapter 9 for details).

13.54 Seven-Segment Display

Figure 13.15 shows that a common anode seven-segment LED is connected to Port B through the driver 74LS244. The driver is necessary to increase the current capacity of Port B; each LED segment requires 15–20 mA of current.

A seven-segment LED consists of seven light-emitting diodes (A through G) and one diode (DP) for the decimal point; these LEDs are physically arranged as shown in Figure 13.17(a). A common anode LED can be logically represented as shown in Figure 13.17(b), and a common cathode LED as in Figure 13.17(c). The segments, A through G, are usually connected to data lines D_0 through D_6 , respectively. If the decimal point is being used, data line D_7 is connected to DP; otherwise it is left open. The binary code required to display a digit is determined by the type of the seven-segment LED (common cathode or common anode) and the connections of the data lines. For example, to display digit 7 at Port B (Figure 13.15), segments A, B, and C should be turned on, and in a

common anode LED, these segments are turned on with logic 0. Therefore, the binary code should be 78_H as follows:

Data Lines	D ₇	D ₆	D ₅	D ₄	D ₃	D ₂	D ₁	D ₀	
Logic	X	1	1	1	1	0	0	0	= 78_H
Segments	NC	G	F	E	D	C	B	A	

The code for each Hex digit from 0 to F can be determined by examining the connections of the data lines to the segments and their logic requirements.

The driver 74LS244 (Figure 13.15) is an octal noninverting driver with tri-state output and the current sinking capacity of 24 mA. It has two active low enable lines, and the driver is permanently enabled by grounding these lines. In this circuit, the driver functions simply as a current amplifier; whatever logic is at Port B will be at the output of the driver.

To display the number of the key pressed, a routine is necessary that will send an appropriate code to Port B. The routine KYCODE supplies the binary number of the key pressed; however, there is no relationship between the binary value of a digit and its seven-segment code. Therefore, the table look-up technique (Section 10.7) will have to be used to find the code for the digit supplied by KYCODE; this is shown in the next routine, DISPLAY.

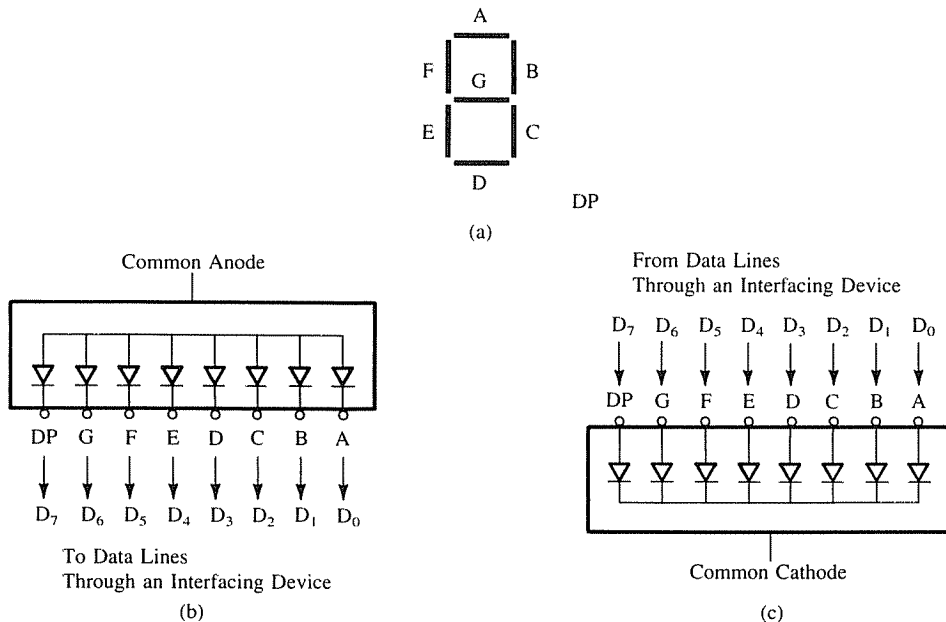


FIGURE 13.17

Seven-Segment LED: (a) LED segments (b) Common Anode LED (c) Common Cathode LED

DSPLAY: ;This routine takes the binary number and converts it into its common
 ;anode seven-segment LED code. The codes are stored in memory
 ;sequentially starting from the address CACODE.
 ;Input: Binary number in accumulator
 ;Output: None
 ;Modifies contents of HL and A
 LD HL, CACODE ;Load starting address of code table in HL
 ADD A, L ;Add digit to low-order address in L
 LD L, A ;Place code address in L
 LD A, (HL) ;Get code from memory
 OUT (PORTB), A ;Send code to Port B
 RET

CACODE: ;Common anode seven-segment codes are stored sequentially in memory
 DB 40H, 79H, 24H, 30H, 19H, 12H ;Codes for digits from 0 to 5
 DB 02H, 78H, 00H, 18H, 08H, 03H ;Codes for digits from 6 to B
 DB 46H, 21H, 06H, 0EH ;Codes for digits from C to F

Description In this routine the HL register is used as a memory pointer to code location. The digit to be displayed is in the accumulator, supplied by the routine KYCODE, and the seven-segment code is stored sequentially in memory starting from location CACODE. The basic concept in this routine is to modify the memory pointer by adding the value of the digit to the base address and get the code location. For example, let us assume that the starting address of CACODE is 2050_H and the digit 7 is in the accumulator. The code for digit 0 is in location 2050_H; consequently, the code for digit 7 is in location 2057_H. Therefore, to display digit 7, the routine adds the contents of the accumulator (7) to the low-order byte 50_H in register L, resulting in the sum 57_H. Thus, the memory pointer in HL is modified to 2057_H, and the code for digit 7 is obtained by using this memory pointer.

13.55 Program

To monitor the keyboard and display the key pressed, we need to initialize the PIO ports and combine the software modules discussed previously.

KYBORD: ;This program first initializes the PIO ports; Port A in Mode 1 and
 ; Port B in Mode 0 and then, calls the subroutine modules discussed
 ; previously to monitor the keyboard.
 PORTA EQU 80H ;Port A address
 PORTB EQU 81H ;Port B address
 CNTRLA EQU 82H ;Control register A
 CNTRLB EQU 83H ;Control register B
 WORDA EQU 4FH ;Mode 1 control word
 WORDB EQU 0FH ;Mode 0 control word
 STACK EQU 20A7H ;Beginning stack address

```

                LD SP, STACK
PIO:            LD A, WORDA
                OUT (CNTRLA), A    ;Set up Port A in Mode 1
                LD A, WORDB
                OUT (CNTRLB), A    ;Set up Port B in Mode 0
NEXTKY:        CALL KYCHK         ;Check if a key is pressed
                CALL KYCODE       ;Encode the key
                CALL DSPLAY       ;Display key pressed
                JP NEXTKY         ;Check the next key pressed

```

Description This is the main program, which involves the initialization of the PIO and the stack pointer. The port addresses defined here are from Example 13.3 (Figure 13.8), and the address of STACK (stack pointer initialization) is shown as an illustration; it has no specific significance. Because the problem is divided into small modules, the main program consists primarily of calling these modules.

13.56 Comments and Alternative Approaches

The interfacing of the push-button keyboard and seven-segment display is a simplified illustration of industrial applications. The illustration is deliberately kept simple to emphasize the conceptual framework between hardware and software. However, as an application, it has several limitations.

1. This method of connecting the keyboard limits the number of keys in proportion to the number of I/O ports; only eight keys can be connected to an 8-bit port. Generally, keys are connected in a matrix format (Section 13.57). For example, in the matrix format, 16 keys can be connected to one 8-bit port or 64 keys can be connected to two 8-bit ports.
2. This method of connecting a seven-segment LED needs excessive hardware, one port and a driver per seven-segment LED. Furthermore, it consumes large current (100–150 mA per display). To minimize hardware and power consumption, the technique of multiplexing is generally used (Section 13.58).

In this illustration, the primary emphasis is on software. For example, in the keyboard, the debouncing and encoding is performed by using instructions. However, interfacing chips that can sense a key closure, debounce the key, and encode the key are currently available commercially. These chips can also generate an interrupt signal when a key is pressed. Similarly, in the seven-segment display, the table look-up can be replaced by a decoder/driver. However, the hardware approach increases unit price. On the other hand, the software approach involves considerable labor (programming and debugging) cost. The choice is generally determined by the production volume and the total unit price.

13.57 Matrix Keyboard

In a matrix keyboard, keys are arranged in a matrix form, as shown in Figure 13.18. It has 20 keys, arranged in four rows and five columns. When a key is pressed, it shorts one row

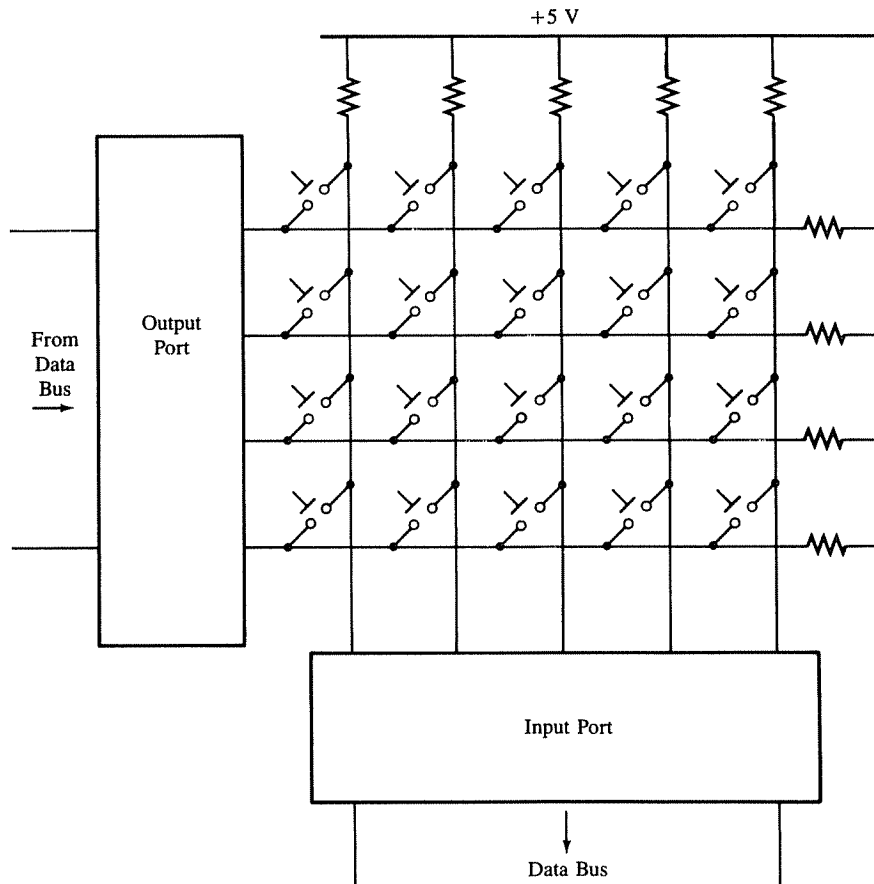


FIGURE 13.18
Interfacing a Matrix Keyboard

and one column; otherwise, the row and column do not have any contact. This keyboard requires nine data lines instead of the 20 required if the keys are connected as in Figure 13.15.

The interfacing of a matrix keyboard requires two I/O ports, one output port and one input port. Rows are connected to the output port, and the columns are connected to the input port. To sense a key closure, we can use either the software approach or the hardware approach.

A software technique called matrix scan is used to sense a key closure. In this technique, rows are grounded by sending 0s to all the rows through the output port, and a key closure is checked by reading the data on columns through the input port. If no key is pressed, all bits of the input reading are high, and if a key is pressed, one of the bits will be 0. Then the program grounds one row at a time, locates the key pressed, and encodes the

key. The basic concepts in interfacing a matrix keyboard are similar to those discussed in the above illustration, except that the software is somewhat complex. An illustration of interfacing a matrix keyboard is discussed in Chapter 17.

The hardware approach is to use a commercially available chip, as shown in Figure 13.19 (National Semiconductor MM54/74C923); this is a key encoder for a 20-key matrix. Figure 13.19 shows the block diagram of the key encoder including the connections to a keyboard. In this circuit, when a key is pressed, the internal circuit senses a key closure, debounces and encodes the key, and generates an interrupt to inform the MPU that a key has been pressed. For example, when the “A” key is pressed, the output of the key encoder will be 0 1 0 1 0. The task for software is to read the code.

13.58 Multiplexing and Scanned Display

The display technique in the above illustration is quite limited. It needs one I/O port and a driver for one seven-segment LED; this technique can be quite costly for multiple-digit display. The number of hardware chips needed for multiple-digit display can be minimized by using the technique called multiplexing, whereby the data lines are time-shared by various seven-segment LEDs.

Figure 13.20 shows a block diagram for a multiplexed display. The diagram has two output ports: one port P_A to drive LED segments, and a second port P_B to turn on the corresponding cathodes. The output lines of port P_A are connected to seven segments of each LED, and the output lines of port P_B are connected to the cathodes of each LED. To display a digit, the code is sent to the segments through port P_A , and a LED is turned on by sending a bit to the appropriate cathode through port P_B . To display a four-digit number,

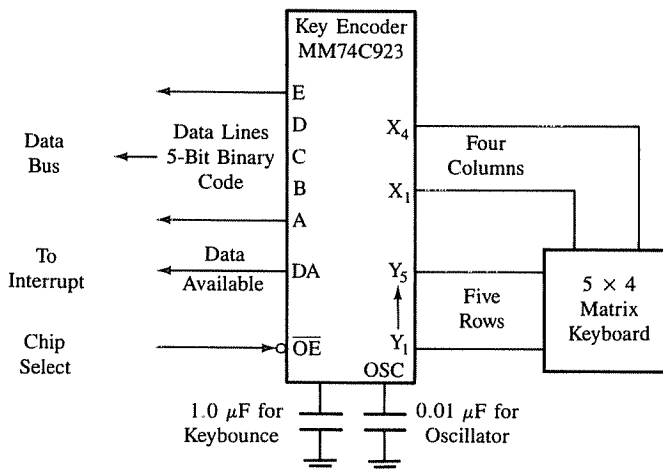


FIGURE 13.19
Logic Diagram of MM74C923 20-Key Encoder Interfacing a Matrix Keyboard

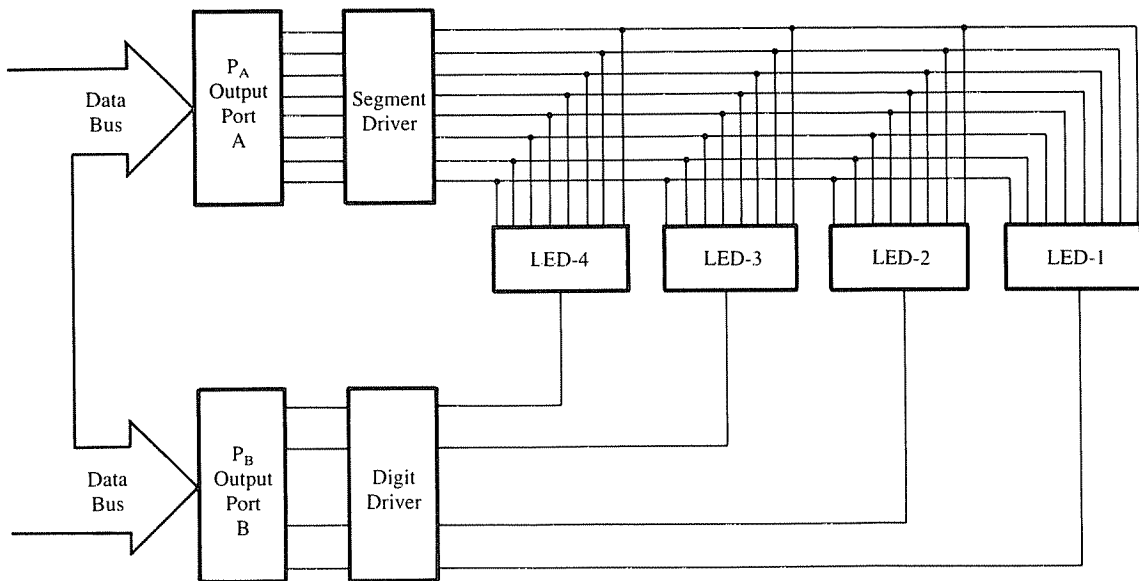


FIGURE 13.20
Block Diagram of Multiplexed Output Display

each seven-segment LED is turned on and off sequentially. For example, to display 1987, the code for digit 7 is sent first and LED-1 is turned on. Next, the code for digit 8 is placed on the segment data lines; simultaneously, LED-1 is turned off and LED-2 turned on. The cycle is repeated fast enough that the display appears stable. This multiplexing technique reduces the power consumption and the number of chips.

Two ports shown in Figure 13.20 are not capable of driving eight seven-segment LEDs. In a common cathode seven-segment LED, all segments are driven by the output lines, which should supply at least 10–15 mA of current to each segment. The cathode should sink seven or eight times that current. The I/O ports of the PIO are limited in current capacity; therefore, additional transistors or ICs, called segment and digit drivers, are required, as shown in Figure 13.20. An illustration of multiplexed scanned display is shown in Chapter 17. Another approach is to replace software by hardware, as shown in Figure 13.21. It has two types of displays; Port A is connected to a HP 5082/7340 and Port B has seven-segment LEDs with a Hex decoder/driver. The HP 5082/7340 display has an internal decoder/driver; thus, two digits per port can be displayed. Port B has a separate decoder/driver; however, both ports are functionally similar. In this approach, the task of the software instructions is reduced simply to outputting the byte to be displayed to the port. For example, to display 87_H, the Z80 needs only to output 87_H to that port. Replacing software with hardware can increase the unit price of a display; for example, in Figure 13.21 we can connect only four LEDs. In addition, this technique increases the power consumption.

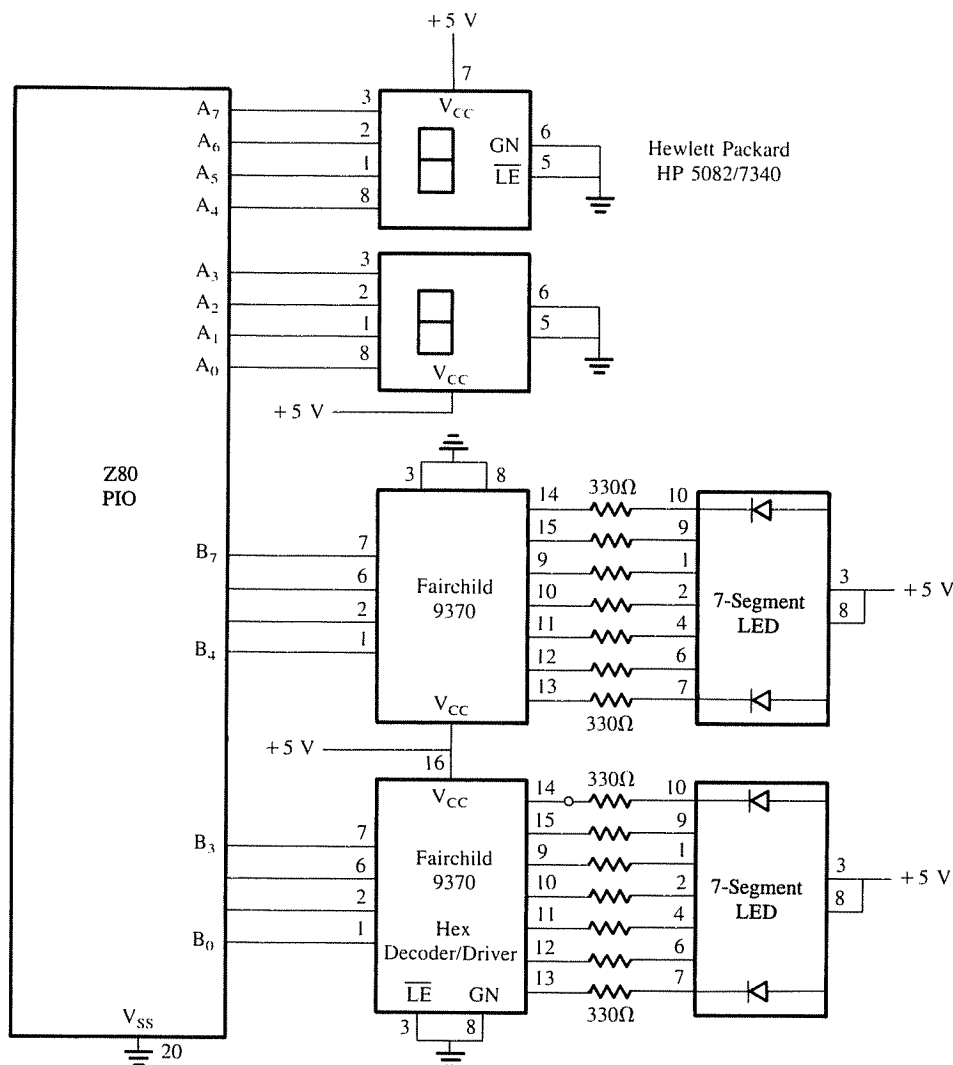


FIGURE 13.21
Hardware Alternatives to Multiplexed Display

ILLUSTRATION: BIDIRECTIONAL DATA TRANSFER BETWEEN TWO MICROCOMPUTERS USING PIO IN MODE 2

13.6

The bidirectional data transfer is a common occurrence in the computer world. Typical examples include data transfer between two microcomputers or between a floppy disk and

a microcomputer. The bidirectional communication between two microcomputers can be accomplished using the PIO in Mode 2.

13.61 Problem Statement

Design an interfacing circuit to set up bidirectional data communication between two Z80 microcomputers: Micro-1 and Micro-2. Use the PIO in Mode 2 as the interfacing device with Micro-1, and the interrupt technique for data transfer. Set up Micro-2 using a tri-state buffer as the interfacing device and implement data transfer under program control (status check). Write necessary software to transfer a block of data from Micro-1 to Micro-2.

13.62 Problem Analysis

Figure 13.22 shows a block diagram to set up the bidirectional communication between two microcomputers. The block diagram shows two bidirectional data buses—system data bus and I/O data bus—interconnected through the PIO, which serves as the interfacing device of Micro-1. Port A of the PIO is used for bidirectional data transfer. Micro-1 uses the handshake signals of Port A (ASTB and ARDY) for output control, and the handshake signals of Port B (BSTB and BRDY) for input control. The communication process is the combination of Mode 0 and Mode 1.

Both microcomputers require I/O ports to read and write data and to check the status of handshake signals. Therefore, it is necessary to analyze carefully these I/O functions between the MPUs. Data transfer for Micro-2 is to be accomplished under program control with the status check and through the interrupt process for Micro-1. The steps in the data transfer operations between the two MPUs and the timing are as follows.

Data Output from Micro-1 to Micro-2.

1. The Micro-1 writes data into Port A and causes the signal ARDY to go high, indicating to Micro-2 that a byte is available to be read (Figure 13.23). This is an output function for Micro-1.

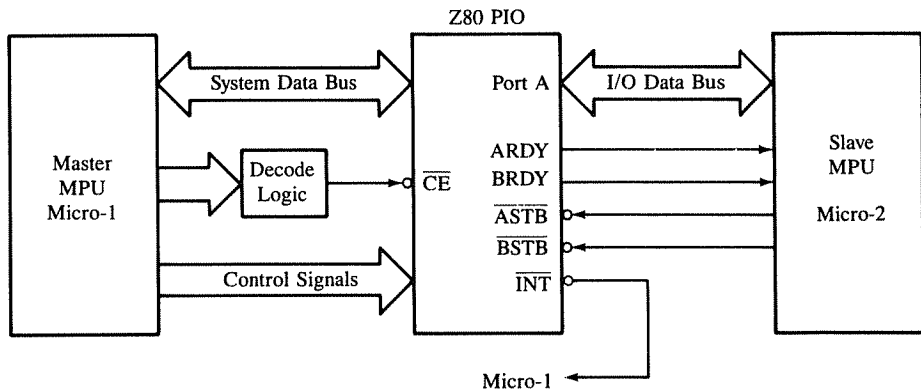
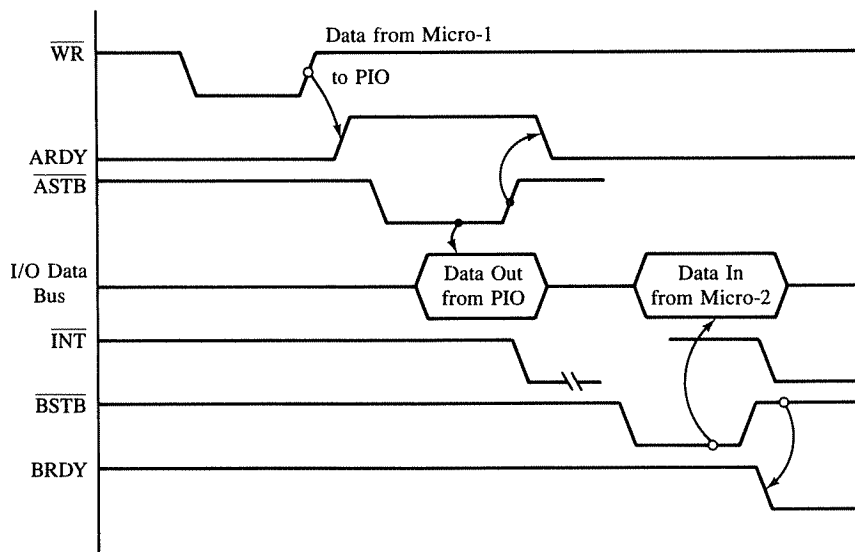


FIGURE 13.22

Block Diagram: Bidirectional Communication between Two Microcomputers Using PIO

**FIGURE 13.23**

Timing Waveforms for Bidirectional Data Transfer

2. The Micro-2 continues to check ARDY, and when it goes high, it asserts the $\overline{\text{ASTB}}$ signal low. This places the data byte onto the data bus (Figure 13.23). For Micro-2, checking ARDY is an input function.
3. Once the data byte is on the bus, it can be latched or read by Micro-2 on the rising edge of the ASTB signal. Therefore, the asserting of $\overline{\text{ASTB}}$ low and reading the byte can be performed by a Read operation of Micro-2. Thus, asserting the $\overline{\text{ASTB}}$ is an input operation of Micro-2.
4. When the byte is read by the Micro-2, ARDY goes low and the $\overline{\text{INT}}$ is generated to indicate to Micro-1 that a next byte can be sent.

Data Input to Micro-1 from Micro-2

1. Micro-2 places a data byte onto the I/O data bus as it asserts the $\overline{\text{BSTB}}$ signal. This is an output function for Micro-2.
2. On the rising edge of the $\overline{\text{BSTB}}$, the $\overline{\text{INT}}$ is generated to inform Micro-1 that a byte is available in Port A to be read. Similarly, when $\overline{\text{BSTB}}$ goes high, it causes BRDY to go low, indicating to Micro-2 to wait until a byte is read, so Micro-2 continues to read BRDY. This is an input function for Micro-2.
3. When an interrupt is generated, Micro-1 reads the byte, and the $\overline{\text{RD}}$ signal causes the BRDY to go high, indicating to Micro-2 that next byte can be sent.

This analysis leads to certain hardware requirements, which are discussed in the next section.

13.63 Hardware Description

To clarify the hardware requirements, we can summarize the bidirectional data transfer operations as follows.

1. To send a byte from Micro-1 and to receive it in Micro-2:
 - Micro-1 writes a byte into Port A of the PIO whenever an interrupt is generated.
 - Micro-2 reads ARDY until it goes high, and then reads the byte by asserting the $\overline{\text{ASTB}}$.
2. To receive a data byte by Micro-1:
 - Micro-1 performs an input operation whenever an interrupt is generated.
 - Micro-2 performs two operations: one input operation to monitor BRDY and one output operation to write a data byte and assert the $\overline{\text{BSTB}}$.

Thus, for Micro-1, Port A of the PIO needs to be set up in the bidirectional mode, and the Z80 in the interrupt Mode 2. Micro-2 needs one input port to monitor ARDY and BRDY, another input port to read a byte and assert $\overline{\text{ASTB}}$, and one output port to send a byte and assert $\overline{\text{BSTB}}$.

Figure 13.24 shows the complete schematic of the necessary ports and their decoding logic. The decoding logic for Port A of the PIO is the same as in Example 13.2; thus, port addresses range from 80_{H} to 83_{H} . All the handshake signals are being used for bidirectional data transfer by Port A; the $\overline{\text{INT}}$ signal of the PIO is connected to the $\overline{\text{INT}}$ signal of the Z80 MPU of Micro-1, and Port B is not being used in this illustration.

The two handshake signals—ARDY and BRDY—are tied, respectively, to bits D_7 and D_0 of the I/O data bus through a tri-state buffer so that they can be monitored by Micro-2; this port is labeled as input port STATUS. The signal $\overline{\text{ASTB}}$ is asserted by reading PORTIN, and the signal $\overline{\text{BSTB}}$ is asserted by writing in PRTOUT. The decode logic for these ports is generated by using the 74LS138 (3-to-8) decoder. Assuming the “don’t care” address lines (A_4 and A_3) are at logic 0, the port addresses are as follows:

	A_7	A_6	A_5	A_4	A_3	A_2	A_1	A_0	
Status Port:	0	1	0	X	X	1	1	1	$= 47_{\text{H}} \rightarrow \text{STATUS}$
Input Port:						1	0	1	$= 45_{\text{H}} \rightarrow \text{PORTIN}$
Output Port:						0	0	0	$= 40_{\text{H}} \rightarrow \text{PRTOUT}$

Two output lines of the decoder are combined with the $\overline{\text{IORD}}$ control signal of Micro-2 to generate two input device select pulses (45_{H} and 47_{H}). Port 47_{H} is used to read status on the data lines D_7 and D_0 , and Port 45_{H} is used to assert the $\overline{\text{ASTB}}$ signal. The decoder line with the address 40_{H} is combined with the $\overline{\text{IOWR}}$ signal of Micro-2 to generate the $\overline{\text{BSTB}}$ signal.

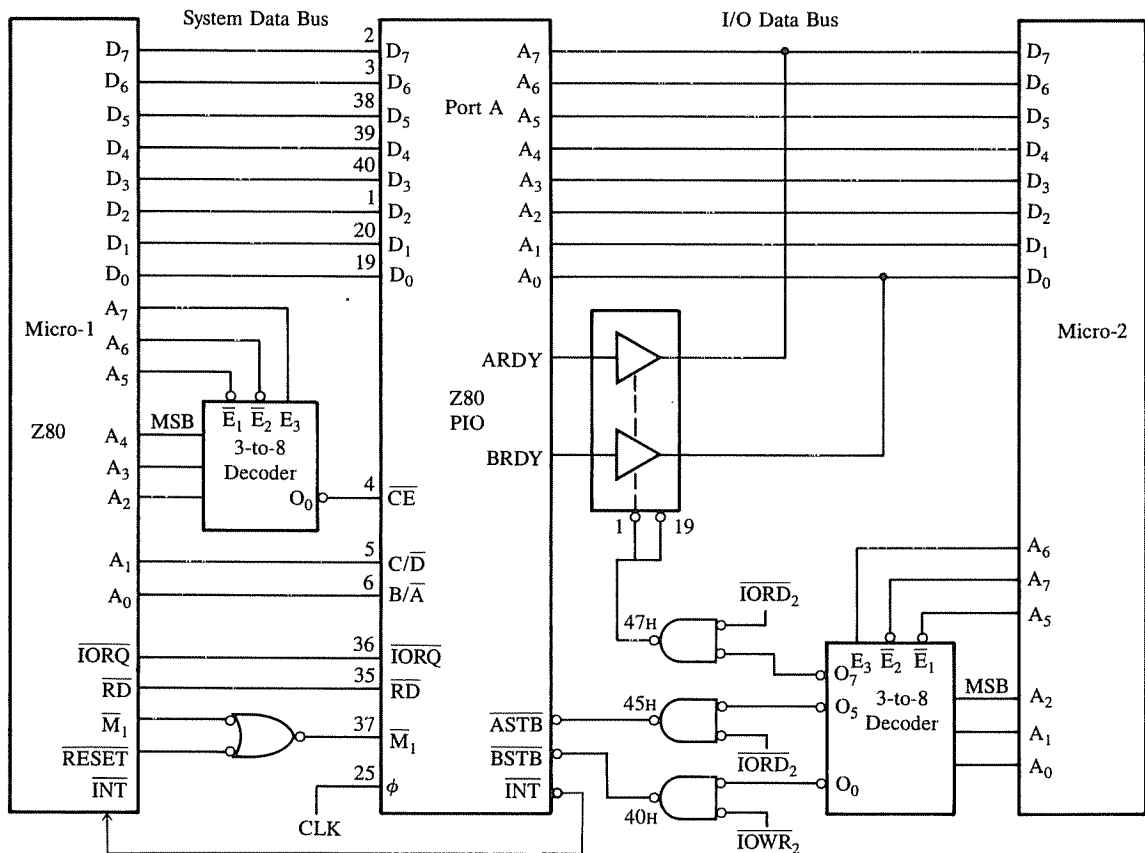


FIGURE 13.24
Interfacing Schematic for Bidirectional Data Transfer between Two Microcomputers

13.64 Program

This illustration requires two programs: one for Micro-1 to send a block of data bytes and another for Micro-2 to receive those data bytes. These programs will be similar, but will vary in details because Micro-1 uses the PIO with the interrupt I/O while Micro-2 transfers data under program control. To transfer data from Micro-2 to Micro-1 is not included in the problem statement; it is left as an assignment.

Micro-1 Program

```

;This program initializes Z80 in interrupt Mode 2 and the PIO in the
;  bidirectional data transfer Mode 2 and sends out a block of data bytes to Micro-2.
;The interrupt vector for Port A is 2090H and for Port B is 2092H.

```

```

MICRO1: LD A, 10001111B ;Control word (8FH) for Mode 2
        OUT (CNTRLA), A ;Set up Port A for bidirectional data transfer
        LD A, 10000011B ;Interrupt enable word (83H)—Figure 13.11(a)
        OUT (CNTRLA), A ;Enable interrupt for Port A
        OUT (CNTRLB), A ;Enable interrupt for Port B
        LD A, 90H ;Interrupt vector for Port A
        OUT (CNTRLA), A ;Write interrupt vector to Port A
        LD A, 92H ;Interrupt vector for Port B
        OUT (CNTRLB), A ;Write interrupt vector to Port B
        LD SP, STACK1 ;Initialize stack for Z80 of Micro-1
        IM 2 ;Set up Z80 in interrupt Mode 2
        LD HL, DATA ;Set up HL as memory pointer where data
                        ; bytes are located
        LD B, BYTES ;Load number for bytes to be transferred
        CALL SEND ;Send first to get things started
LOOP: JP LOOP ;Wait for an interrupt
SEND: ;This is a service routine for Port A to send data to Micro-2.
      ;The routine outputs one byte at a time to PIO Port A until all
      ; bytes are transmitted.
        LD A, (HL) ;Get byte from memory
        OUT (PORTA), A ;Send byte to Port A of PIO
        INC HL ;Next byte location
        DEC B ;Decrement byte counter
        EI ;Enable Z80 interrupt
        RET NZ ;Return if byte counter ≠ 0
        JP END ;Jump to End message subroutine

```

Micro- 2 Program (See Figure 13.25)

;This program receives the block of data from Micro-1 under program control.

;It checks the status of ARDY. When ARDY is high, it reads PORTIN.

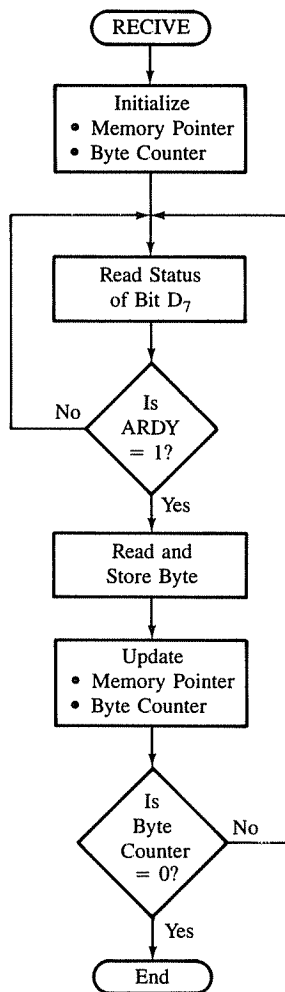
```

RECEIVE: LD SP, STACK 2 ;Initialize stack pointer for Micro-2
         LD HL, STORE ;Point index to first memory location where data
                        ; bytes should be stored
         LD B, BYTES ;Specify number of bytes to be received
         IN A, (PORTIN) ;This is dummy read to generate interrupt for PIO
ARDY: IN A, (STATUS) ;Check ARDY
       RLA ;Place bit D7 into Carry
       JP NC, ARDY ;If ARDY is low, wait in loop
       IN A, (PORTIN) ;Read data
       LD (HL), A ;Store data byte
       INC HL ;Next memory location
       DJNZ NZ, ARDY ;Go back to read next byte if all bytes are not
                        ; yet received
       HALT

```

FIGURE 13.25

Flowchart: Program to Receive
Data Bytes by Micro-2



PROGRAM DESCRIPTION

1. To transfer a block of data from Micro-1 to Micro-2, both programs need to be executed at the same time.
2. The program for Micro-1 waits in a loop after the initialization; ordinarily, in real application, the program would continue to perform other tasks until an interrupt is generated.
3. The program RECEIVE for Micro-2 performs a dummy read operation to start the data transfer and continues to check ARDY. When Micro-2 reads PORTIN the first time, the ASTB signal goes low and an interrupt is generated for Micro-1.

4. In Micro-1, because of the interrupt the program is transferred to the service routine. It writes a byte in the PIO, causing ARDY to go high; decrements the byte counter; and if the counter is not zero, returns to the main program to wait in the loop.
5. When ARDY goes high, bit D₇ goes high because the ARDY is tied to data line D₇. The program RECEIVE reads the byte; this causes $\overline{\text{ASTB}}$ to go low, and an interrupt is generated for the next byte.
6. Every time a byte is transferred by Micro-1 and received by Micro-2, the respective counters (registers B) are decremented, and the data transfer continues until the counters go to 0. In Micro-1, when the byte counter is 0, the program control jumps to an End message routine. It is expected that the message routine will include the instructions EI and RET.
7. The programs given can transfer a block of data from Micro-1 to Micro-2, but not vice versa. To transfer a block of data from Micro-2 to Micro-1, additional routines are necessary (see Assignment 24). The service routine for Micro-1 will involve reading PORTA whenever an interrupt is generated. For Micro-2, an additional set of instructions is necessary. These instructions will monitor the BRDY signal. When the BRDY goes high, it means PORTA is ready to receive a byte. Then Micro-2 can write a byte causing $\overline{\text{BSTB}}$ to go low; an interrupt will be generated and Micro-1 can read the byte.

13.7 THE 8255A PROGRAMMABLE PERIPHERAL INTERFACE

The Intel 8255A is another widely used, programmable, parallel I/O device, similar to the Z80 PIO. It is the revised version of Intel's 8255 and is commonly referred to as the 8255 rather than the 8255A. It can be programmed to transfer data under various conditions—from simple I/O to interrupt I/O. It is flexible, versatile, and economical, but somewhat complex. It is a general purpose I/O device and can be used with almost any microprocessor. Because of its wide use in industry it is discussed here briefly. (See Gaonkar, *Microprocessor Architecture*, 1984, for a full description.)

The 8255A has 24 I/O pins, and they can be grouped into two 8-bit parallel ports, A and B, and an 8-bit port C. The eight-bits of port C can be used as individual bits or grouped into two 4-bit ports: C_U and C_L (Figure 13.26(a)). Ports A and B of the 8255A are similar to ports A and B of the Z80 PIO, and port C is similar to the bit mode of the PIO. The functions of these ports are defined by writing a control word in the control register.

Figure 13.26(b) shows all the functions of the 8255A. They are classified according to two modes: the Bit Set/Reset (BSR) mode and the I/O mode (byte mode). The **BSR mode** is used to set or reset the bits in port C. The I/O mode is further divided into three modes: Mode 0, Mode 1, and Mode 2. In Mode 0, all ports function as simple I/O ports. Mode 1 is a **handshake mode**, whereby Ports A and/or B use bits from Port C as handshake signals. In the handshake mode, two types of I/O data transfer can be implemented:

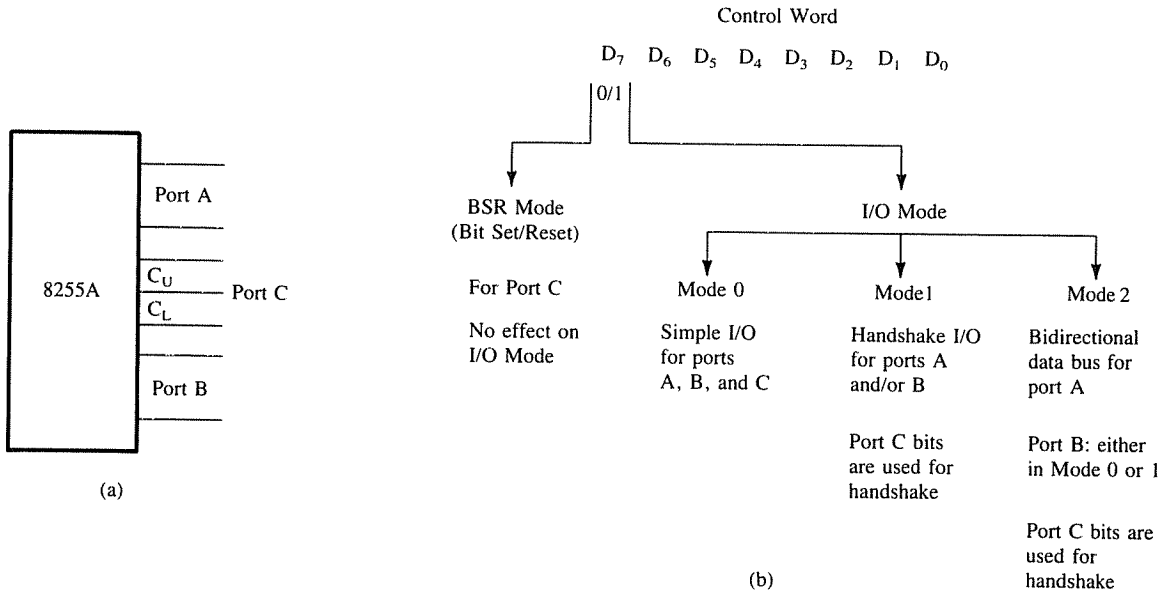


FIGURE 13.26

(a) 8255A I/O Ports and (b) Their Modes

status check under program control and interrupt. In Mode 2, port A can be set up for bidirectional data transfer using handshake signals from port C, and port B can be set up in either Mode 0 or Mode 1. The definitions of Mode 0 and Mode 1 in the 8255A are quite different from those in the PIO and should not be confused.

13.71 Block Diagram of the 8255A

The block diagram in Figure 13.27(a) shows two 8-bit ports (A and B), two 4-bit ports (C_U and C_L), the data bus buffer, and control logic. Figure 13.27(b) shows a simplified but expanded version of the internal structure, which includes a control register. This block diagram includes all the elements of a programmable device; Port C performs functions similar to that of the status register.

CONTROL LOGIC

The control section has six lines. Their functions and connections are as follows:

- \overline{RD} —Read: This control signal enables the Read operation. When the signal is low, the MPU reads data from a selected I/O port of the 8255A.
- \overline{WR} —Write: This control signal enables the Write operation. When the signal goes low, the MPU writes into a selected I/O port or the control register.
- RESET—Reset: This is an active high signal and clears all the registers of the 8255A.

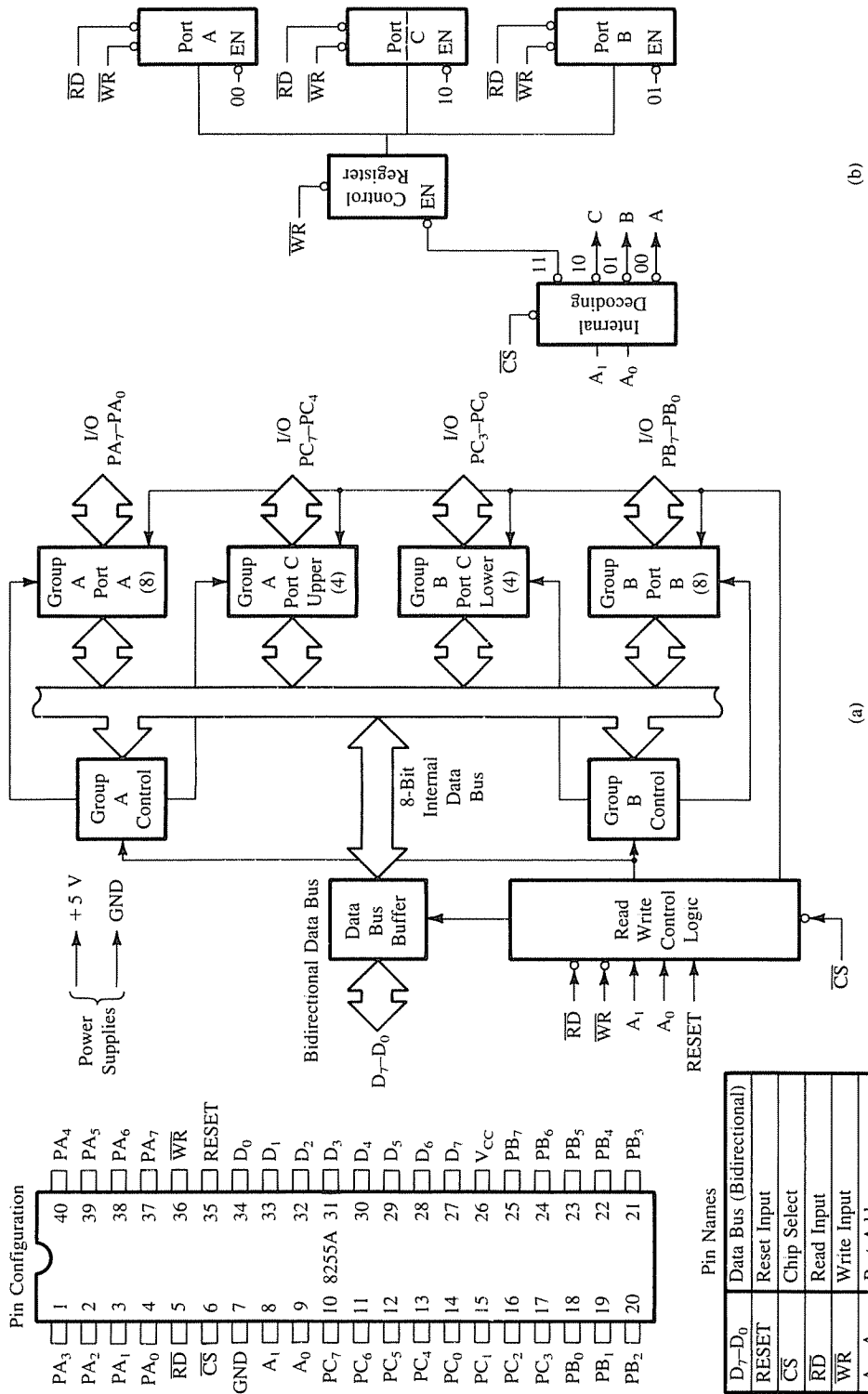


FIGURE 13.27
(a) 8255A Block Diagram (b) Expanded Version of the Control Logic and I/O Ports
SOURCE: (a) Reprinted by permission of Intel Corporation, copyright 1979.

- \overline{CS} , A_0 , and A_1 —Chip Select Signals: These signals are used for selecting the device. \overline{CS} is connected to a decoded address, and A_0 and A_1 are generally connected to the system address lines A_0 and A_1 , respectively.

The \overline{CS} signal is the master Chip Select, and A_0 and A_1 specify one of the I/O ports or the control register as shown.

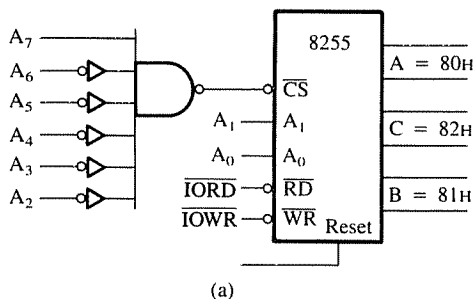
\overline{CS}	A_1	A_0	Selected
0	0	0	Port A
0	0	1	Port B
0	1	0	Port C
0	1	1	Control Register
1	X	X	8255 is not selected.

As an example, the port addresses in Figure 13.28 are determined by the \overline{CS} , A_0 , and A_1 lines. The \overline{CS} line goes low when $A_7=1$ and A_6 through A_2 are at logic 0. Combining these signals with A_0 and A_1 yields port addresses ranging from 80_H to 83_H , as shown in Figure 13.28(b).

CONTROL WORD

The 8255A has one control register, and the contents of this register, called the control word, specify an I/O function for each port. This register can be accessed to write a control word when A_0 and A_1 are at logic 1, as mentioned previously. The register is not accessible for a Read operation.

Bit D_7 of the control register specifies either the I/O function or the Bit Set/Reset function, as shown in Figure 13.26(b). If bit $D_7 = 1$, bits D_0 – D_6 determine I/O functions in various modes, as shown in Figure 13.29. If bit $D_7 = 0$, port C operates in the Bit Set/Reset (BSR) mode. The BSR control word does not affect the functions of ports A and B; the BSR mode will be described later.



\overline{CS}		Hex Address	Port
$A_7 A_6 A_5 A_4 A_3 A_2$	$A_1 A_0$		
1 0 0 0 0 0	0 0	= 80_H	A
	0 1	= 81_H	B
	1 0	= 82_H	C
	1 1	= 83_H	Control Register

(b)

FIGURE 13.28

(a) 8255A Chip Select Logic and (b) I/O Port Addresses

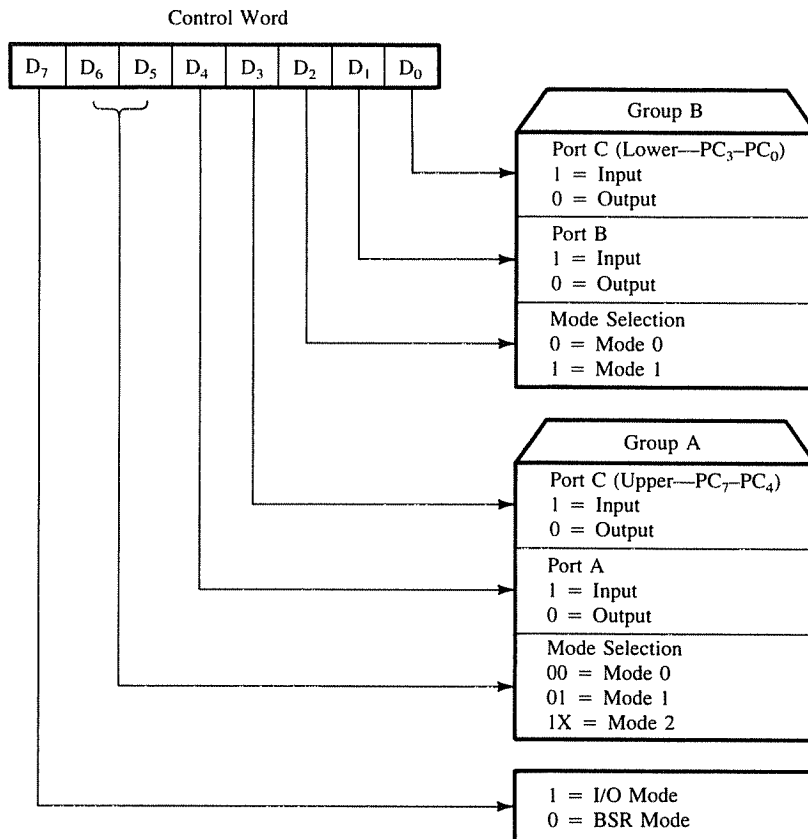


FIGURE 13.29
8255A Control Word Format for I/O Mode
SOURCE: Adapted from Intel Corporation, copyright 1981.

To communicate with peripherals through the 8255A, the following three steps are necessary:

1. Determine the addresses of ports A, B, and C and of the control register according to the Chip Select logic and the address lines A₀ and A₁.
2. Write a control word in the control register.
3. Write I/O instructions to communicate with peripherals through ports A, B, and C.

13.72 Mode 0: Simple Input or Output

In this mode, ports A and B function as two 8-bit I/O ports and port C as two 4-bit ports. Each port (or half port, in the case of C) can be programmed to function as simply an input

or output port. The input/output features in Mode 0 are as follows:

1. Outputs are latched.
2. Inputs are not latched.
3. Ports do not have handshake interrupt capability.

13.73 BSR (Bit Set/Reset) Mode

The BSR mode is concerned only with the 8 bits of port C, which can be set or reset by writing an appropriate control word in the control register. A control word with bit $D_7 = 0$ is recognized as a BSR control word, and it does not alter any previously transmitted control word with bit $D_7 = 1$; thus the I/O operations of ports A and B are not affected by a BSR control word. In the BSR mode, individual bits of port C can be used for applications such as an on/off switch.

BSR CONTROL WORD

This control word, when written in the control register, sets or resets one bit at a time, as shown in Figure 13.30.

13.74 Illustration: Interfacing an A/D Converter Using the 8255A in Mode 0 and BSR Mode.

PROBLEM STATEMENT

Design an interfacing circuit to read data from an A/D converter, using the 8255 in the peripheral-mapped I/O.

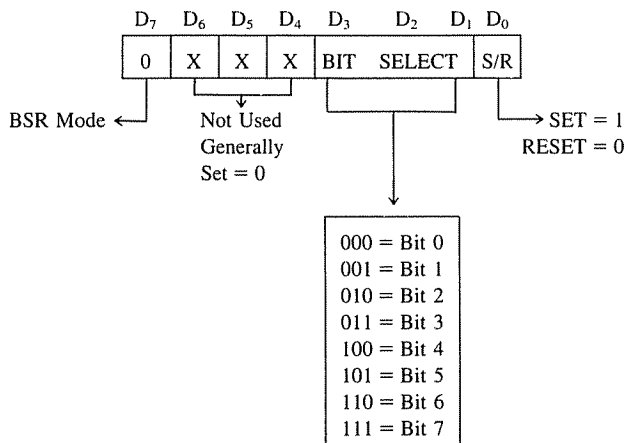


FIGURE 13.30
8255A Control Word Format in the BSR Mode

1. Set up port A to read data.
2. Set up bit PC₀ to start conversion and bit PC₇ to read the ready status of the converter.

PROBLEM ANALYSIS

The Chip Select logic in Figure 13.31 is similar to that in the previous examples. The port addresses can be obtained by examining the decoding logic of the \overline{CS} signal and combining that with the A₁ and A₀ signals. The port addresses range from 20_H to 23_H, as shown.

A ₇	A ₆	A ₅	A ₄	A ₃	A ₂	A ₁	A ₀		
0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	= 20 _H	Port A
						0	1	= 21 _H	Port B
						1	0	= 22 _H	Port C
						1	1	= 23 _H	Control Register

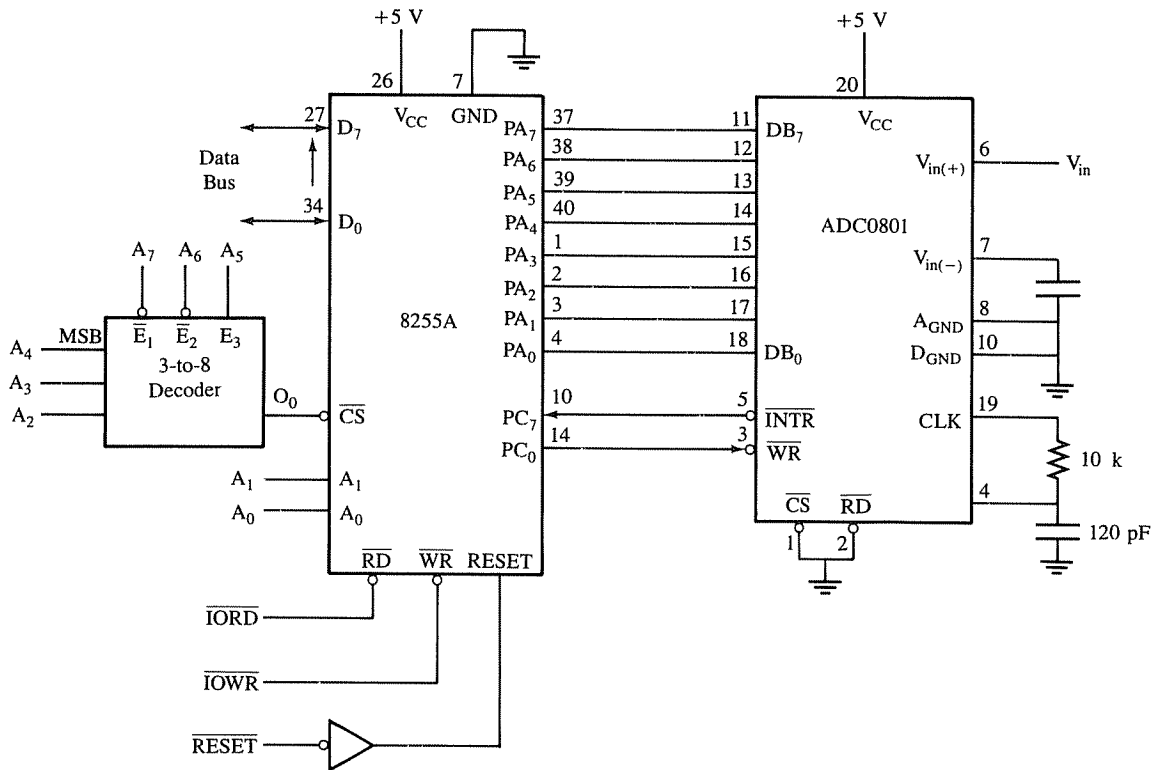


FIGURE 13.31

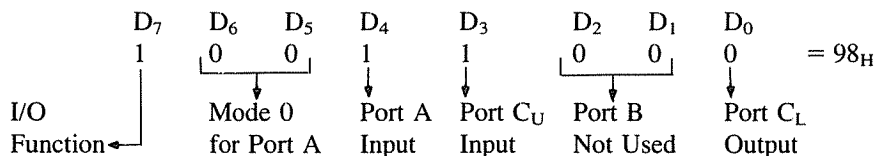
Schematic: Interfacing the A/D Converter ADC0801 Using the 8255A in Mode 0 and BSR Mode

MODE 0 CONTROL WORD

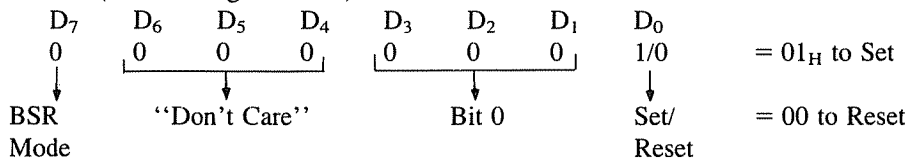
The configuration of the ports is specified as follows:

- Port A as an input port.
- Port C_L as an output port because bit PC₀ is being used to start conversion.
- Port C_U as an input port to read the status at PC₇.
- Port B not being used.

Therefore, the control word necessary to meet the requirements is 98_H as shown.

**BSR CONTROL WORD FOR START PULSE**

Bit PC₀ is being used as a start pulse. To set and reset PC₀, the BSR control word is as follows (Refer to Figure 13.30):

**SUBROUTINE**

PORTA	EQU 20H	;Port A address
PORTC	EQU 22H	;Port C address
CNTRL	EQU 23H	;Control register address
A/D:	LD C, 23H	;Set up Z80 C register as pointer to 8255A control register
	LD A, 10011000B	;Load the mode 0 control word (98H)
	OUT (C), A	;Write in the control register to set up A and C _U as inputs
	LD A, 00H	;Load BSR control word to reset PC ₀
	OUT (C), A	;Send \overline{WR} pulse
	CALL DELAY	;Wait for sufficient pulse width
	LD A, 01H	;Load BSR control word to set PC ₀
	OUT (C), A	;Start conversion
READ:	IN A, (C)	;Read bit PC ₇
	RLA	;Place PC ₇ in the carry
	JP C, READ	;Wait in the loop until the end of conversion
	IN A, (20H)	;Read A/D converter
	RET	

PROGRAM DESCRIPTION

The 8255A ports are initialized by placing the control word 98_H into the control register. To provide a start pulse to the converter, logic 0 is sent to bit PC₀ in port C, and after a sufficient delay, bit PC₀ is set to start the conversion. The end of conversion is checked by verifying the status of line PC₇. When PC₇ goes low, the instruction LD A, (20H) reads and places data into the accumulator.

13.75 Mode 1: Input or Output with Handshake

In Mode 1, handshake signals are exchanged between the MPU and peripherals prior to data transfer. The features of this mode are as follows:

1. Two ports—A and B—function as 8-bit I/O ports. They can be configured either as input or output ports.
2. Each port uses three lines from port C as handshake signals. The remaining two lines of port C can be used for simple I/O functions.
3. Input and output data are latched.
4. Interrupt logic is supported.

In the 8255A, the specific lines used from port C for handshake signals vary according to the I/O function of a port. Therefore, input and output functions in Mode 1 are discussed separately.

MODE 1: INPUT CONTROL SIGNALS

Figure 13.32(a) shows the associated control signals used for handshaking when ports A and B are configured as input ports. Port A uses the upper three signals—PC₃, PC₄, and PC₅—while Port B uses PC₂, PC₁, and PC₀. The functions of these signals are:

- \overline{STB} (Strobe Input): This signal (active low) is generated by a peripheral device to indicate that it has transmitted a data byte. The 8255A, in response to \overline{STB} , generates IBF and INTR, as shown in Figure 13.33.
- IBF (Input Buffer Full): This signal is an acknowledgment by the 8255A to indicate that the input latch has received the data byte. This is reset when the MPU reads the data (Figure 13.33).
- INTR (Interrupt Request): This is an output signal that may be used to interrupt the MPU. This signal is generated if \overline{STB} , IBF, and INTE (internal flip-flop) are all at logic 1, and is reset by the falling edge of the \overline{RD} signal (Figure 13.33).
- INTE (Interrupt Enable): This is an internal flip-flop used to enable or disable the generation of the INTR signal. The two flip-flops INTE_A and INTE_B are set/reset through the BSR mode. The INTE_A is enabled/disabled through PC₄, and INTE_B is enabled/disabled through PC₂.

CONTROL AND STATUS WORDS

Figure 13.32(b) uses control words derived from Figure 13.29 to set up port A and port B as input ports in Mode 1. Similarly, Figure 13.32(c) shows the status word, which will be placed into the accumulator if port C is read.

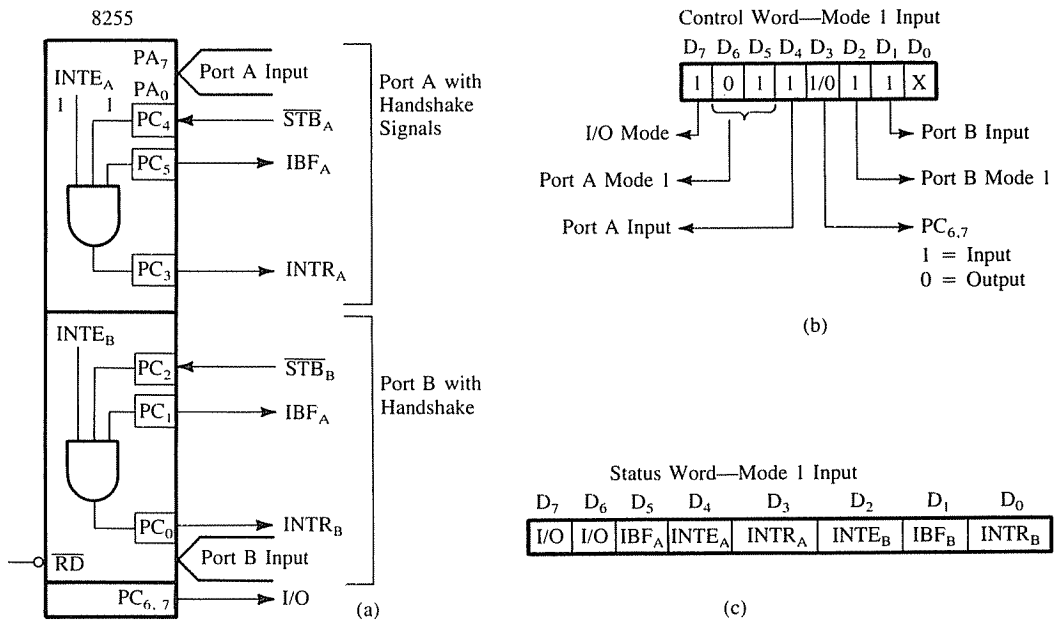


FIGURE 13.32

8255A Mode 1: Input Configuration

SOURCE: Adapted from Intel Corporation, copyright 1981.

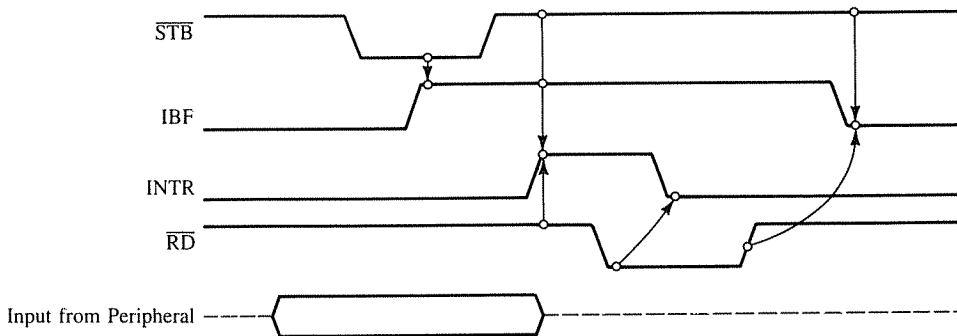


FIGURE 13.33

8255A Mode 0: Timing Waveforms for Strobed Input (with Handshake)

SOURCE: Adapted from Intel Corporation, copyright 1981.

PROGRAMMING THE 8255A IN MODE 1

The 8255A can be programmed to function using either status check I/O or interrupt I/O. Figure 13.34(a) shows a flowchart for the status check I/O. In this flowchart, the MPU continues to check data status through the IBF line until it goes high. This is a simplified flowchart and does not show how to handle data transfer if two ports are being used. The technique is similar to that of Mode 0 combined with the BSR mode. The disadvantage of the status check I/O with handshake is that the MPU is tied up in the loop.

The flowchart in Figure 13.34(b) shows the steps required for the interrupt I/O, assuming that vectored interrupts are available. The confusing step in the interrupt I/O is to set INTE for either port A or port B. Figure 13.33(a) shows that the \overline{STB} signal is connected to pin PC_4 and the $INTE_A$ is also controlled by the pin PC_4 . (In port B, the pin PC_2 is used for the same purposes.) However, the $INTE_A$ is set or reset in the BSR mode and the BSR control word has no effect when ports A and B are set in Mode 1.

In case the INTR line is used to implement the interrupt, it may be necessary to read the status of $INTR_A$ and $INTR_B$ to identify the port requesting an interrupt service and to determine the priority through software, if necessary.

MODE 1: OUTPUT CONTROL SIGNALS

Figure 13.35 shows the control signals when ports A and B are configured as output ports. These signals are defined as follows:

- \overline{OBF} (Output Buffer Full): This is an output signal that goes low when the MPU writes data into the output latch of the 8255A. This signal indicates to an output peripheral that new data are ready to be read (Figure 13.36). It goes high again after the 8255A receives an \overline{ACK} (Acknowledge) from the peripheral.

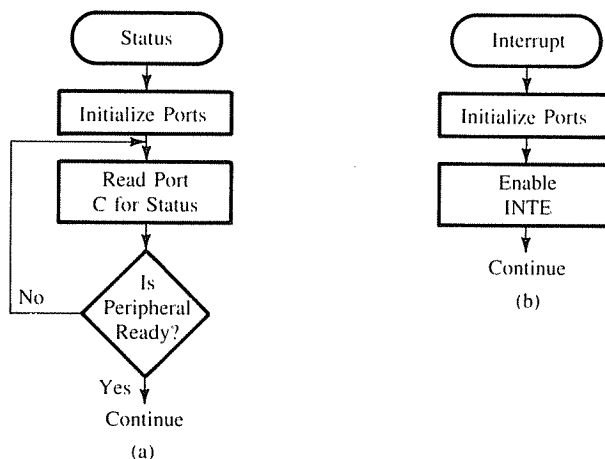


FIGURE 13.34

Flowcharts: (a) Status Check I/O (b) Interrupt I/O

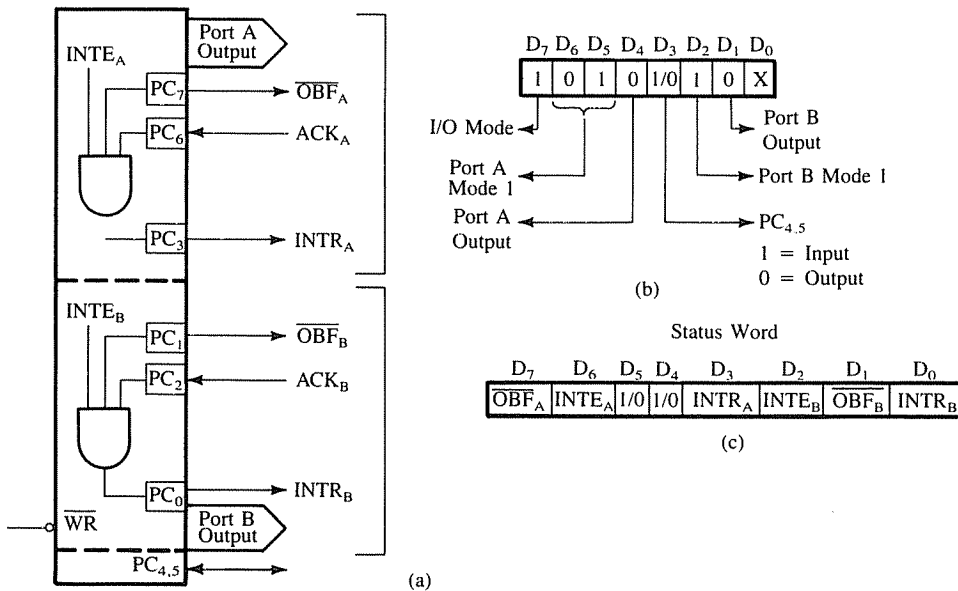


FIGURE 13.35

8255A Mode 1: Output Configuration

SOURCE: Adapted from Intel Corporation, copyright 1981.

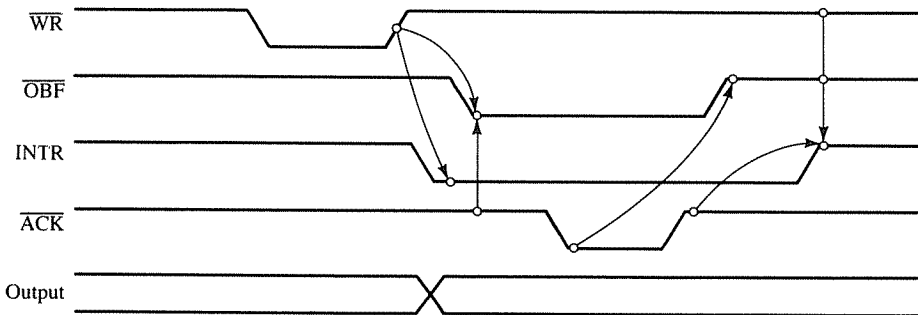


FIGURE 13.36

8255A Mode 1: Timing Waveforms for Strobed Input (with Handshake)

SOURCE: Adapted from Intel Corporation, copyright 1981.

- \overline{ACK} (Acknowledge): This is an input signal to the 8255A from a peripheral, which must output a low when the peripheral receives the data from the 8255A ports (Figure 13.36).
- \overline{INTR} (Interrupt Request): This is an output signal, and it is set by the rising edge of the \overline{ACK} signal. This signal can be used to interrupt the MPU to request the next data byte

for output. The INTR is set when $\overline{\text{OBF}}$, $\overline{\text{ACK}}$ and INTE are all one (Figure 13.36) and reset by the falling edge of WR.

- INTE (Interrupt Enable): This is an internal flip-flop to a port and needs to be set to generate the INTR signal. The two flip-flops INTE_A and INTE_B are controlled by bits PC_6 and PC_2 , respectively, through the BSR mode.
- PC_4 and PC_5 : These lines can be set up as either input or output.

CONTROL AND STATUS WORDS

Figure 13.35(b) shows the control word needed to set up port A and port B as output ports in Mode 1. Similarly, Figure 13.35(c) also shows the status word, which will be placed into the accumulator if port C is read.

13.76 Mode 2: Bidirectional Data Transfer

This mode is used primarily in applications such as data transfer between two microcomputers or floppy disk controller interface. In this mode, port A can be configured as the bidirectional port and port B in either Mode 0 or Mode 1. Port A uses five signals from port C as controls signals for data transfer. The remaining three signals from port C can be used either as simple I/O or as handshake signals for port B. Figure 13.37 shows two configurations of Mode 2.

13.77 Comparison of the Z80 PIO and the 8255

The Z80 PIO and the Intel 8255A are two widely used peripheral interface devices, and they are designed to serve similar functions. However, the 8255A is a general-purpose

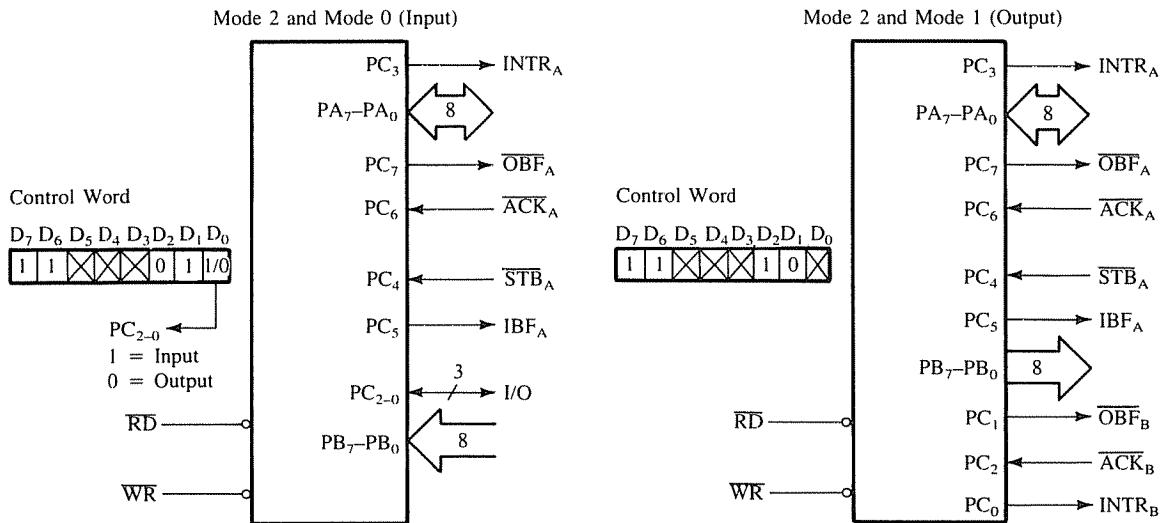


FIGURE 13.37

8255A Mode 2. Bidirectional Input/Output

SOURCE: Adapted from Intel Corporation, copyright 1981.

TABLE 13.2

Comparison of the Z80 PIO and the 8255

	PIO	8255A
1. Number of 8-bit Ports	Two: A and B	Three: A, B, and C Port C Consists of Two 4-bit Ports.
2. I/O Lines in Bit Mode	16 Lines	8 Lines in Addition to Ports A and B
3. Handshake and Interrupt Signals	Ports A and B Separate 4 Lines	Ports A and B Uses Lines of Port C
4. Bidirectional Mode	Port A	Port A
5. Status Check of Handshake Signals	Not Available	Available through Port C
6. Interrupt I/O	Ports A and B	Ports A and B
7. Logic Check and Interrupt	Bit Mode	Not Available
8. Daisy Chain Interrupt Priority	Available	Not Available

device and can be used with any microprocessor. On the other hand, the PIO is specifically designed to work with the Z80 microprocessor. Therefore, the PIO can offer some special features, such as daisy chain interrupt priority, based on its ability to recognize the instruction RETI. The PIO has some other attractive features, such as its ability to recognize predefined logic conditions in the bit mode. The advantages of the 8255A over the PIO are that the 8255A has three I/O ports and the status of the handshake signals can be monitored by reading port C. In the 8255A, data transfer can be set up under the program control or the interrupt control; the PIO is better suited for the interrupt control. The comparison of these two devices is shown in Table 13.2.

SUMMARY

This chapter has been concerned with the basic concepts (such as control register, control logic, and handshake signals) underlying a programmable device. Based on these concepts, the Z80 PIO (Programmable Input/Output) device was discussed in details with illustrative applications. Finally, another widely used peripheral interfacing device, the Intel 8255A, was discussed and compared with the PIO. The important points can be summarized as follows:

- A programmable interface device is designed to perform various I/O functions, and these functions can be specified by writing an appropriate control word (or words) into its control registers.

- A programmable I/O device generally includes multiple I/O ports, control register(s), handshake signals, and interrupt capability.
- The signals that are exchanged between the MPU and peripherals prior to data transfer are called handshake signals. These signals check whether a peripheral is ready for data transfer and inform the MPU accordingly.
- The Z80 PIO is a programmable I/O device with two I/O ports (A and B), and it has four operating modes: Mode 0 (output), Mode 1 (input), Mode 2 (bidirectional), and Mode 3 (bit mode).
- Each PIO port has two handshake signals, and each port can be used to transfer data under interrupt control.
- In PIO, only Port A can be used for bidirectional data transfer, and all handshake lines are used for this data transfer. Port A handshake lines are used for output control and Port B handshake lines for input control.
- Both PIO ports can be set up in the bit mode, whereby each line can be assigned either input or output function. For input lines, AND or OR logic function can be specified in the control register, and an interrupt can be generated when the conditions exist.
- The PIO has two signals—IEI and IEO—which are used to set up daisy chain priority.
- The Intel 8255A is a general purpose programmable interfacing device, and it has three ports. It can also operate in various modes similar to the PIO.

ASSIGNMENTS

1. List the internal components found in a typical programmable device.
2. Explain the functions of handshake signals.
3. List the operating modes of the PIO and their features.
4. If the PIO does not include the Write signal, specify the control signals necessary to perform a Write operation.
5. Write instructions to set up Port A in Mode 0 and Port B in Mode 1.
6. In Figure 13.6, identify the addresses of Port A and Port B and their control registers if the output line O_7 of the decoder is connected to the \overline{CE} signal of the PIO.
7. In Figure 13.6, identify the addresses of ports A and B and their control registers if the address lines A_0 and A_1 are interchanged.
8. In Figure 13.6, exchange the address lines A_7 and A_5 of the decoder, and identify port addresses.
9. In Figure 13.38, address lines A_6 and A_5 are “don’t care.” Specify the multiple addresses that can access ports A and B.
10. Identify the addresses of ports A and B and their control registers in Figure 13.39, assuming all “don’t care” lines at logic 0.

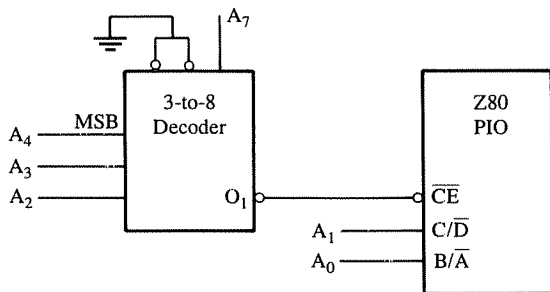


FIGURE 13.38
PIO Interfacing for Assignment 9

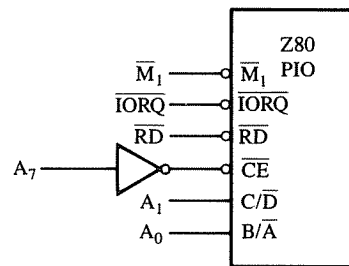


FIGURE 13.39
PIO Interfacing for Assignment 10

11. Port A of the PIO is initialized in Mode 3 with bits D_7 – D_5 as input and D_4 – D_0 as output. The PIO generates an interrupt when bits D_7 and D_6 are both at logic 0. Write initialization instructions.
12. Explain the functions of the handshake signals \overline{ASTB} and $ARDY$ if PIO Port A is initialized as an input port.
13. List the control words that need to be written into the control register to set up PIO Port B in Mode 1 for interrupt control I/O.
14. If PIO Port B is initialized as an output port, list the sequence of events that occurs when a data byte is transferred to a peripheral under interrupt I/O.
15. The PIO ports A and B are initialized as output ports to transfer data under interrupt control. Write instructions for the Z80 MPU to initialize the stack at $20A7_H$ and the interrupt register at 20_H . Assume that the service routine for Port A is at 2072_H and for port B at 2097_H , and that the interrupt vectors are located at 2048_H and $204A_H$ for port A and B, respectively.
16. Write a service routine to output a byte to the peripheral in Assignment 15. Show the memory addresses where the service routine is to be stored.
17. In 15, an interrupt occurs from Port A when the Z80 MPU is executing a 3-byte instruction located at 2022_H – 2024_H . List the stack addresses and their contents when the interrupt is acknowledged and the program control is transferred to the service routine.
18. In Figure 13.12, if PIO-3 is being serviced, specify the status of the pins IEI and IEO of PIO-2 and PIO-3.
19. The keyboard routine for Figure 13.15 gives the priority from key K_7 to key K_0 in that sequence. Modify the subroutine to change the priority sequence so that key K_0 has the highest priority.
20. When two keys are pressed simultaneously (Figure 13.15), the subroutine recognizes only the higher priority key. Modify the subroutine to recognize both keys.
21. Redraw Figure 13.15 to replace the PIO with an octal buffer (such as the 74LS240) and an octal latch (such as the 74LS373).

22. Modify Figure 13.18 to show how a 4×4 matrix keyboard can be connected to Port A of the PIO. Write initialization instructions to set up Port A in Mode 3 to generate an interrupt whenever a key is pressed.
23. Write initialization instructions to set up Port A in the bidirectional mode and Port B in Mode 3. Assign lines B_7 – B_4 as input and B_3 – B_0 as output. Can you write the control word to generate an interrupt when the lines B_7 and B_6 are at logic 1? Explain your answer.
24. Write necessary software to transfer 100 bytes of data from Micro-2 to Micro-1 (Figure 13.24).
25. List the operating modes of the 8255A Programmable Peripheral Interface.
26. Specify the bit of a control word for the 8255A that differentiates between the I/O mode and the BSR mode.
27. Write initialization instructions for the 8255A to set up Ports A and B in the handshake mode with the interrupt I/O.
28. Figure 13.40 shows an interfacing of the data converter ADC0801 using Port A of the Z80 PIO; Port A is set up in Mode 1. The handshake signal ARDY is used to start the conversion by connecting it to \overline{WR} through the one-shot multivibrator 74121, and \overline{ASTB} is used to detect the end of the conversion by monitoring the line \overline{INTR} of the converter. To start the conversion, one dummy Read instruction IN A, (PIOA) is executed. Explain the need for the one-shot multivibrator. (Hint: The data converter needs a pulse transition low-to-high to start the conversion.)

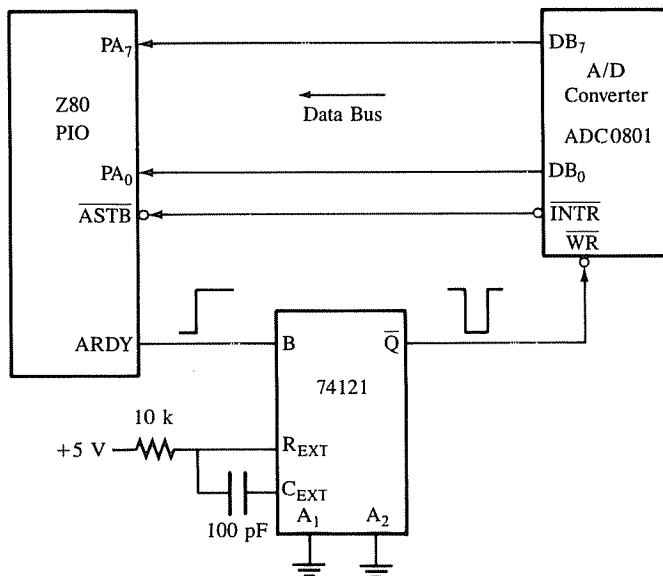
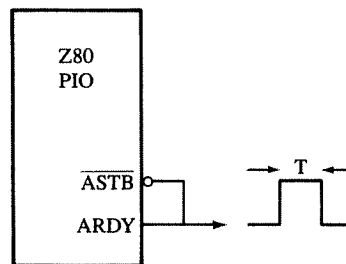


FIGURE 13.40

Interfacing the ADC0801 Using the Z80 PIO in Mode 1 with Handshake

29. Write instructions to set up the Z80 PIO Port A in Mode 1 and the Z80 in interrupt Mode 2 with the interrupt vector 2070_H . Initialize the memory pointer at 2050_H to store data and the counter to record ten readings, and start the conversion. Write also an interrupt service routine to read the port, store data in memory (for ten readings), start the conversion again, and enable the interrupt.
30. In Figure 13.41, Port A of the Z80 PIO is initialized in Mode 0, and its handshake signals $\overline{\text{ASTB}}$ and $\overline{\text{ARDY}}$ are tied together. When we execute the instruction $\text{OUT}(\text{PIOA}), A$, a pulse equal to one system clock period is generated at the output of $\overline{\text{ARDY}}$ that can be used as a strobe to start a process at a peripheral. Explain the output pulse of $\overline{\text{ARDY}}$. (Hint: In Mode 0, the transition low-to-high of the $\overline{\text{STB}}$ signal turns off the $\overline{\text{RDY}}$ signal—see Figure 13.10.)

FIGURE 13.41
Generating a Strobe Pulse Using
PIO Handshake Lines



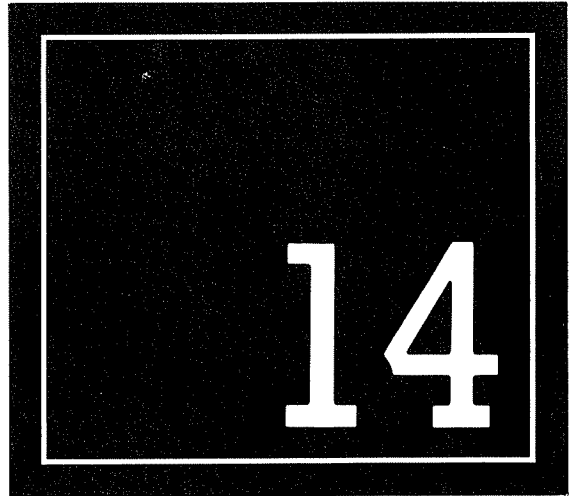
Programmable Timers and Counters

A programmable timer/counter device is designed to generate accurate time delays using the system's clock and to count occurrences of external events. It can be used for applications such as a real-time clock, an event counter, and a signal generator.

This chapter is concerned primarily with the Z80 CTC—Counter/Timer Circuit—and its applications. The CTC has four timer/counter channels and can be programmed to function as timers or counters by the user's writing control words into appropriate internal registers. The CTC is also capable of generating interrupt signals at a specified time delay or count. The CTC is widely used as a timer/counter and has become an integral part of Z80-based microprocessor systems. This chapter also includes the description of another widely used timer/counter—the Intel 8253—and its features are compared with those of the CTC.

OBJECTIVES

- List the elements of the block diagram of the Z80 CTC (Counter/Timer Circuit) and explain functions of each element.
- List the operating modes of the CTC and explain the differences in these modes.
- Explain how the CTC operates as a counter and a timer and its interrupt capability.
- Identify port addresses of each counter channel in a given circuit.
- Write initialization instructions to set up the CTC in either the counter or the timer mode.
- Design a circuit to interface the CTC for given port addresses and write instructions to set up the CTC as a timer or a counter.
- List the elements of the Intel 8253 Programmable Interval Timer and its operating modes.
- Design a circuit to interface the 8253 for given port addresses and write instructions to set up the device for a given mode.



14.1

Z80 CTC—COUNTER/TIMER CIRCUIT

The **Z80 CTC (Counter/Timer Circuit)** is a 28-pin programmable chip, specially designed to work with the Z80 microprocessor. The block diagram (Figure 14.1) shows that the chip includes four counter/timer channels, control logic, interrupt control, and the system data bus. The CTC requires +5 V power supply and the Z80 system clock (CLK).

The system data bus, D_7 – D_0 , consists of bidirectional tri-state lines and is connected to the data bus of the Z80 microprocessor. These bus lines transfer all data and commands between the Z80 and the CTC.

The four channels can be independently programmed in either the timer or the counter mode. An 8-bit number (time constant) is loaded into the register of a channel, and is decremented on every clock pulse. At the end of the count, it generates a pulse at the ZC/TO (Zero Count/Time Out) pin; reloads the time constant into the register, and begins the next operation. If the CTC is programmed to use the interrupt, it generates an interrupt pulse at the end of the count, and its IEI and IEO signals can be used to set up the daisy chain interrupt priorities.

14.11 Interfacing the CTC

The CTC has an 8-bit bidirectional data bus, one output signal per channel (except Channel 3), and seven control signals including the chip enable signal, as shown in Figure 14.1. These signals are connected to the appropriate signals of the Z80 microprocessor.

- D_0 – D_7 (Data Bus): This is a tri-state bidirectional data bus that transfers data and commands between the Z80 and the CTC.
- CLK (Clock): This is an input from the Z80 system clock.
- CLK/TRG (Clock/Trigger): This is an external input signal. In the counter mode, it is used to count external events, and its active level (high or low) is specified in the control word. In the timer mode, an active edge starts the timer.
- ZC/TO (Zero Count/Time-Out): This is an active high output, generated when the down-counter has been decremented to zero.
- $\overline{\text{IORQ}}$ (I/O Request), $\overline{\text{M1}}$ (Machine Cycle 1), and $\overline{\text{RD}}$ (Read): These are three active low signals and perform Read/Write/Interrupt Acknowledge operations as described below.
- Read: This operation is performed when $\overline{\text{IORQ}}$ and $\overline{\text{RD}}$ are active low and $\overline{\text{M1}}$ is high. In this operation, the contents of the counter of the selected channel can be read.
- Write: There is no separate signal for the Write operation. When $\overline{\text{RD}}$ is high, the CTC generates the Write signal internally. In this operation, control word and time constant can be written in the selected channel.
- Interrupt Acknowledge: The Z80 acknowledges the interrupt by asserting two control signals ($\overline{\text{IORQ}}$ and $\overline{\text{M1}}$) low, and the highest priority interrupting channel places its interrupt vector on the data bus. (This operation is discussed in detail later in Section 14.13 and 14.14).

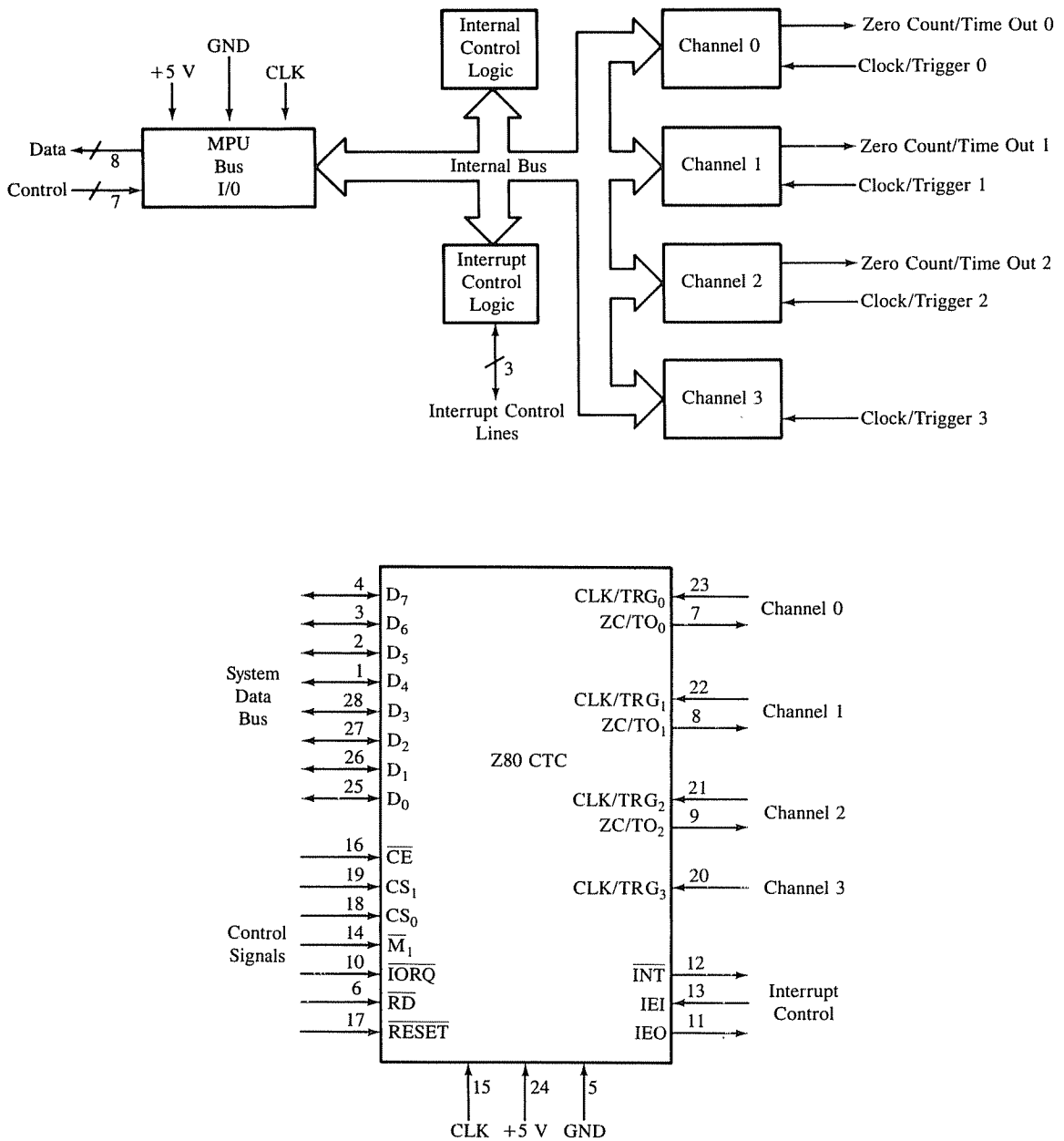


FIGURE 14.1

Z80 CTC: Block Diagram and Logic Pinout

SOURCE: Courtesy of Zilog, Inc.

TABLE 14.1
Control Operations and Signals

Operations	$\overline{\text{IORQ}}$	$\overline{\text{RD}}$	$\overline{\text{M}}_1$
Read	Low	Low	High
Write	Low	High	High
Interrupt	Low	High	Low
Acknowledge			

- The control operations and the active level of the associated control signals are summarized in Table 14.1.
- RESET (Reset): This is an active low signal that terminates the counting operation and disables the interrupts; all outputs go inactive and the data bus D_7 – D_0 goes to the high impedance state.
- $\overline{\text{CE}}$ (Chip Enable): This is an active low signal connected to the decoded low-order address bus of the Z80. When this signal is active, the CTC is selected.
- $\overline{\text{CS}}_0$ and $\overline{\text{CS}}_1$ (Channel Select): These two lines are generally connected to the address lines A_0 and A_1 , respectively, and the logic combination of these lines (as shown in the following list) selects one of the four channels of the CTC to write into or read from. The decoded address of the Chip Enable and the logic levels of $\overline{\text{CS}}_0$ and $\overline{\text{CS}}_1$ determine the port address of the selected counter channel.

$\overline{\text{CE}}$	$\overline{\text{CS}}_1$	$\overline{\text{CS}}_0$	Selected Channel
0	0	0	Channel 0
0	0	1	Channel 1
0	1	0	Channel 2
0	1	1	Channel 3

Example 14.1 illustrates the use of these signals in interfacing the CTC.

Example 14.1

Determine the port addresses of the CTC channels shown in Figure 14.2.

Solution

To select the CTC, the output line O_1 of the decoder should go low. Therefore the logic levels of the address lines A_7 – A_2 should be as shown. Combining the logic levels of A_7 – A_2 with those of A_1 and A_0 gives us port addresses of the counter channels ranging from 24_H to 27_H .

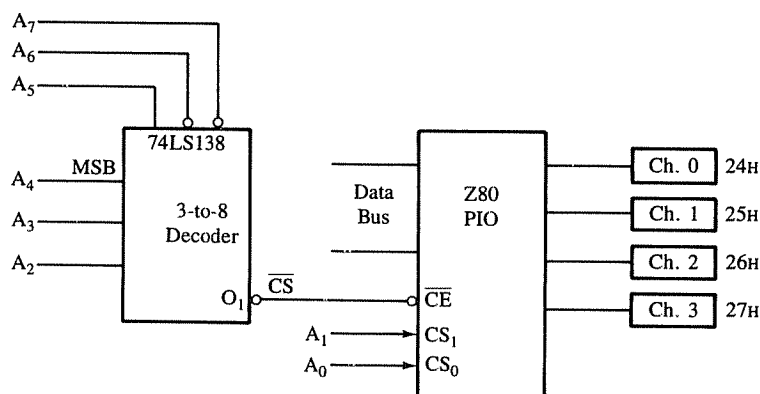


FIGURE 14.2
Interfacing the CTC

A ₇	A ₆	A ₅	A ₄	A ₃	A ₂	A ₁	A ₀		
0	0	1	0	0	1	0	0	= 24 _H	Channel 0
						0	1	= 25 _H	Channel 1
						1	0	= 26 _H	Channel 2
						1	1	= 27 _H	Channel 3
↓ Decoder Enable			↓ Decoder Input			Channel Select			

14.12 Programming the CTC

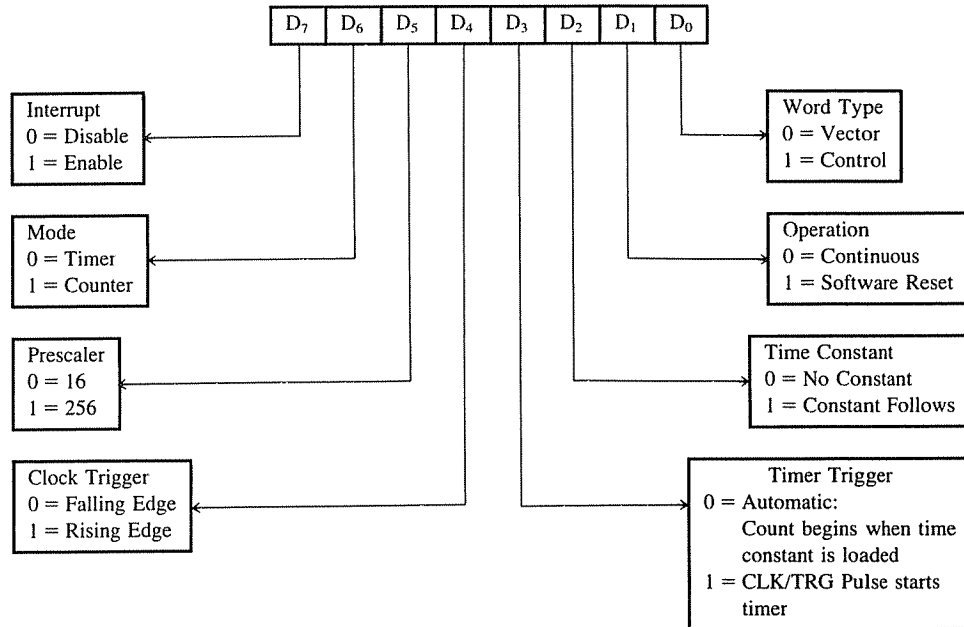
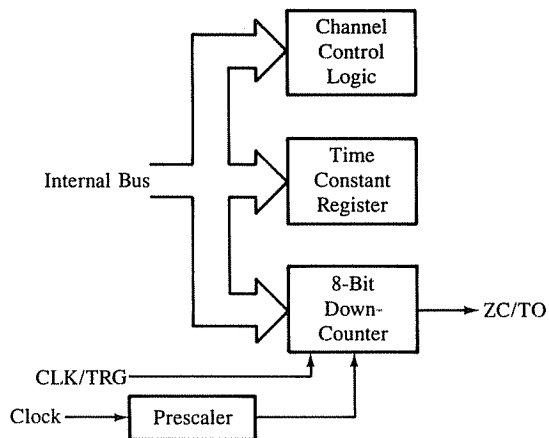
The CTC can be programmed to operate in either the timer mode or the counter mode. Each channel consists of *channel control logic*, *time constant register*, and the *down-counter*, as shown in Figure 14.3. To program the CTC, a control word should be written into the channel, and it must be followed by an 8-bit time constant value loaded into the time constant register. The control word determines such parameters as the operating mode, the active trigger level (falling or rising edge), and the interrupt logic (see Figure 14.4). The time constant (count), which can be from 1 to 256 (0 = 256), is loaded into the down-counter and decremented according to the specified mode operation. When the count reaches zero, it is automatically reloaded into the register. Figure 14.3 also shows a block called prescaler. This is used only in the timer mode; it divides the system clock frequency by either 16 or 256. The output of the prescaler decrements the down-counter in the timer mode.

The channel control word is shown in Figure 14.4 and is illustrated in Example 14.2.

FIGURE 14.3

Internal Architecture of a Channel

SOURCE: Courtesy of Zilog, Inc.

**FIGURE 14.4**

Channel Control Word

Write instructions to program Channel 0 of the CTC (Figure 14.2) in the timer mode to provide a pulse every 20 ms if the system clock is 1 MHz.

**Example
14.2**

Solution

Channel 0 of the CTC in Figure 14.2 has the port address 24_H. To program the channel in the timer mode, we need to send two words to the channel port: a channel control word and a proper count to provide 20 ms delay. Assuming the prescaler is 256, the system clock frequency will be divided by 256; in other words, the clock period will be multiplied by 256. Therefore the total delay between two consecutive outputs is

$$T_d = T_c \times PS \times TC$$

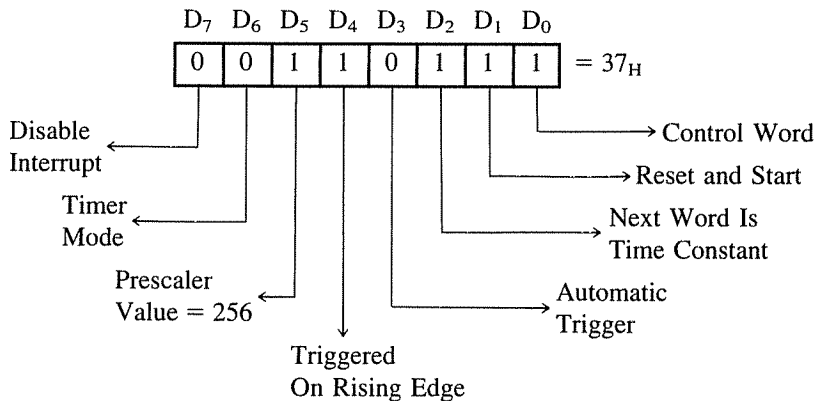
where T_c = System clock
 PS = Prescaler
 TC = Time constant (Count).

The system has a 1 μ s clock period; therefore, the number in the time constant register will be decremented every 256 μ s. The count necessary to obtain a 20 ms delay is

$$20 \text{ ms} = 1 \mu\text{s} \times 256 \times TC \text{ (Count)}$$

$$TC = \frac{20 \text{ ms}}{256 \mu\text{s}} = 78.125 \cong 78 = 4E_H.$$

Assuming the counter will begin at the rising edge of the system clock as soon as the count is loaded into the register, the control word is as follows:



Instructions The following instructions will set up the CTC in the timer mode with the specified parameters.

CNTRL	EQU 37H	;Defines channel control word
COUNT	EQU 4EH	;Time constant
PORT0	EQU 24H	;Port address of Channel 0

```

SETUP: LD A, CNTRL      ;Channel control word
        OUT (PORT0), A  ;Send control word to Channel 0
        LD A, COUNT     ;Time constant
        OUT (PORT0), A  ;Load time constant in Channel 0
        HALT

```

Description The first instruction writes the channel control word in Channel 0 (Port 24_H), and it is followed by the time constant (COUNT = 4E_H). As soon as the time constant is loaded into the channel, the down-counter begins. Because the prescaler divides the system clock by 256, the count is decremented every 256 μ s. The countdown continues until the time constant (4E_H) goes to zero, and at the end of the count, a high pulse, approximately 1.5 times the system clock period in width, is generated at the output (ZC/TO = Zero Count/Time Out) of Channel 0. The channel word has specified continuous operation; therefore, the time constant is automatically loaded again into the channel register and the down-counter continues generating a pulse every 20 ms.

14.13 Using the CTC Interrupts

The CTC architecture includes the interrupt control logic shown in the block diagram (Figure 14.1). This logic is used to generate an interrupt request pulse and to determine the priorities among the four channels as well as among various CTC devices if the system includes more than one CTC. The CTC has three signals associated with the interrupt: $\overline{\text{INT}}$, IBI, and IEO. These signals are functionally similar to those of the Z80 PIO described in the last chapter. The $\overline{\text{INT}}$ signal is again described here, and the other two are described in Section 14.14.

- $\overline{\text{Int}}$ (Interrupt Request): This is an active low output signal, and if the interrupt is enabled in the channel control word, it goes low when the down-counter reaches zero.

To use the interrupt process, the Z80 should be set in the interrupt Mode 2, and the CTC should be programmed to supply the low-order byte of the interrupt vector. The CTC generates an interrupt request ($\overline{\text{INT}}$) when the down-counter of a channel reaches zero. When the Z80 acknowledges the interrupt request, the Interrupt register I of the Z80 supplies the high-order byte and the CTC supplies the low-order byte of the interrupt vector address. The low-order byte of the interrupt vector and the identification of the channel requesting the interrupt are defined as shown in Figure 14.5. Bits D₇–D₃ are defined by the user; bits D₂–D₁ are supplied by the CTC to identify the channel that has reached the count of zero, and bit D₀ must be zero to differentiate the interrupt vector from the control word. To form the interrupt vector, initially, bits D₂ and D₁ can be at any logic level; they are specified by the CTC when a channel requests an interrupt. Once the interrupt vector address of Channel 0 is defined, the remaining vector addresses are automatically defined; they are consecutive addresses with two memory locations for each channel.

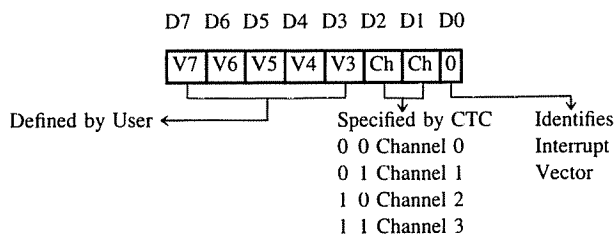


FIGURE 14.5
Bit Definition of Interrupt Vector

Modify the instructions in Example 14.2 to program Channel 0 of the CTC (Figure 14.2) in the timer mode to provide a pulse and generate an interrupt every 20 ms. The address of the interrupt service routine is at memory locations 2050_H and 2051_H.

**Example
14.3**

To program the CTC, we need to load three words into Channel 0.

Solution

1. Channel control word: The word is similar to the word in Example 14.2 except that bit D₇ should be 1 to enable the interrupt. Therefore, the word should be changed from 37_H to B7_H.
2. Time constant: It is the same as in Example 14.2.
3. Interrupt vector for location 2050_H: The high-order byte should be loaded into the interrupt vector register I of the Z80 and the low-order byte into Channel 0.

Instructions

```

CNTRL    EQU B7H           ;Channel control word
COUNT   EQU 4EH           ;Time constant
PORT0    EQU 24H           ;Channel 0 port address
SETUP:   DI                ;Disable interrupt
          IM 2              ;Set up Z80 in interrupt Mode 2
          LD A, 20H         ;High-order byte of interrupt vector
          LD I, A           ;Load interrupt register with high-order byte
          LD A, CNTRL       ;Channel control word = B7H
          OUT (PORT0), A    ;Initialize Channel 0
          LD A, COUNT       ;Time constant = 4EH as in Example 14.2
          OUT (PORT0), A    ;Load time constant into Channel 0
          LD A, 50H         ;Low-order byte of interrupt vector
          OUT (PORT0), A    ;Load interrupt vector in CTC
          EI                ;Enable Z80 interrupt
          ↓                 ;Continue with program

```

Description The first instruction DI disables, and the last instruction EI enables, the Z80 interrupt. This is necessary to avoid any false interrupts when the CTC is being initialized. The interrupt vector for Channel 0 is initialized at 2050_H; therefore, the interrupt service routine address for Channel 0 must be stored in locations 2050_H and 2051_H. The interrupt vector addresses for Channels 1 through 3 are automatically defined; they range from 2052_H to 2057_H. The interrupt service routine should be terminated by the instruction RETI (Return from Interrupt). The CTC is designed to recognize the RETI instruction, and when it does so, the interrupt request is automatically removed.

14.14 Interrupt Priorities

Among the four CTC channels, Channel 0 has the highest priority and Channel 3 has the lowest priority. When multiple CTC devices are used in a system, they can be connected in the daisy chain format; the CTC has two signals (IEI and IEO) to set up the daisy chain priorities among CTC devices.

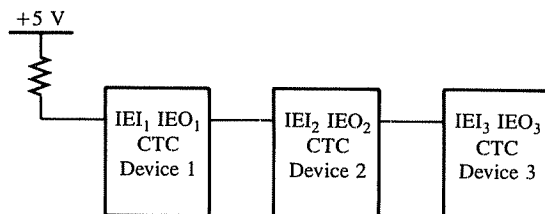
- IEI (Interrupt Enable In): This is an active high input signal, used to set up daisy chain interrupt priorities. A high level on this pin indicates that no other interrupting devices of higher priority in the daisy chain are being serviced by the Z80.
- IEO (Interrupt Enable Out): This is an output signal, used in conjunction with the IEI signal to set up the daisy chain priority in a system. The IEO signal remains high if the IEI is high and the Z80 is not servicing any interrupt from any CTC channel. This signal blocks lower priority devices from interrupting while a higher priority interrupting device is being serviced.

Figure 14.6 shows three CTC devices connected in the daisy chain format. The IEI of Device #1 is tied to +5 V, and its IEO signal is fed to Device #2. In this schematic, Device #1 has the highest priority, and Device #3 has the lowest priority, and within each device, the priority goes from Channel 0 to Channel 3.

14.15 Counter and Timer Applications

The CTC operations in the counter mode and the timer mode appear to be similar; this apparent similarity can cause confusion in applications. For example, either of the modes can be used to design a clock. Therefore, it is necessary to discuss the differences between these two operations.

FIGURE 14.6
CTCs Connected in Daisy Chain
Format



The counter mode is used to count external events indicated by the CLK/TRG pulse. When an external circuit causes the CLK/TRG pin to go active, the down-counter in the CTC is decremented. Thus, the down-counter continues to count the events until it reaches zero, and then the output (ZC/TO) pulsed high indicates the end of the count. The down-counter is automatically loaded again, and the next cycle of counting continues.

On the other hand, the timer mode is used to provide time delays and is based on the internal clock (CLK). However, the clock frequency is divided by a number called prescaler (16 or 256), which is specified in the control word. Thus the down-counter is decremented every 16th or 256th clock pulse. When the down-counter reaches zero, an output pulse is generated, similar to that in the counter mode, and the counter is loaded again for the next time delay.

The CTC can be used in the timer mode to design a clock to indicate the time of the day; the accuracy is determined primarily by the system clock. Similarly, the CTC can be used in the counter mode to count pulses from a 60 Hz power line, and a clock can be designed as illustrated in Section 14.3.

ILLUSTRATION: DESIGNING A BAUD (RATE) GENERATOR USING THE CTC IN THE TIMER MODE

14.2

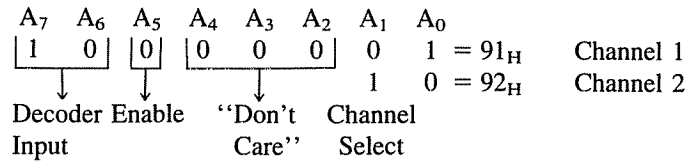
A typical application of the CTC in the timer mode is a programmable **baud (rate) generator** for serial I/O data communication (see Chapter 15). The baud generator is a frequency generator that provides a pulse at a predetermined frequency. In serial I/O, data bits are generally transmitted from 110 bits to 9,600 bits per second. For example, to send data over telephone lines, the transmission rate ranges from 300 to 2,400 bits per second. The clock frequency for serial I/O circuitry is generally 16 to 64 times the transmission rate. This illustration is concerned with designing a baud generator using the CTC.

14.21 Problem Statement

Design a programmable baud (frequency) generator using the CTC to provide two frequencies: 300×16 ($= 4.8$ kHz) and 1200×16 ($= 19.2$ kHz); the system clock is 3.6864 MHz. Identify the port addresses of Channels 1 and 2 and program Channel 1 to generate 4.8 kHz and Channel 2 for 19.2 kHz.

14.22 Problem Analysis

The port addresses of the channels can be obtained by analyzing the decoding logic in Figure 14.7. The circuit uses the 74LS139 2-to-4 decoder; it has address lines A_7 and A_6 as inputs, A_5 as the enable line (active low), and lines A_4 , A_3 , and A_2 as “don’t care.” The address lines A_1 and A_0 are connected to the CTC, and they determine the channel selection. Assuming the “don’t care” lines at logic 0, Channel 1 can be accessed with the port address 91_H and Channel 2 with the port address 92_H , as shown.



To program the channels for the specified frequencies, we need to initialize the channels in the timer mode and calculate the time constant; this step is similar to Example 14.2. Let us assume the prescaler is 16; for Channel 1, the output or the baud (rate) should be 4.8 kHz.

$$\text{Baud} = \frac{\text{System Clock Frequency}}{\text{Prescaler} \times \text{Time Constant}} = \frac{f_s}{16 \times T_c}$$

$$4.8 \text{ kHz} = \frac{3.6864 \text{ MHz}}{16 \times T_c} \quad T_c = 48$$

Similarly, the time constant for 19.2 kHz = 12.

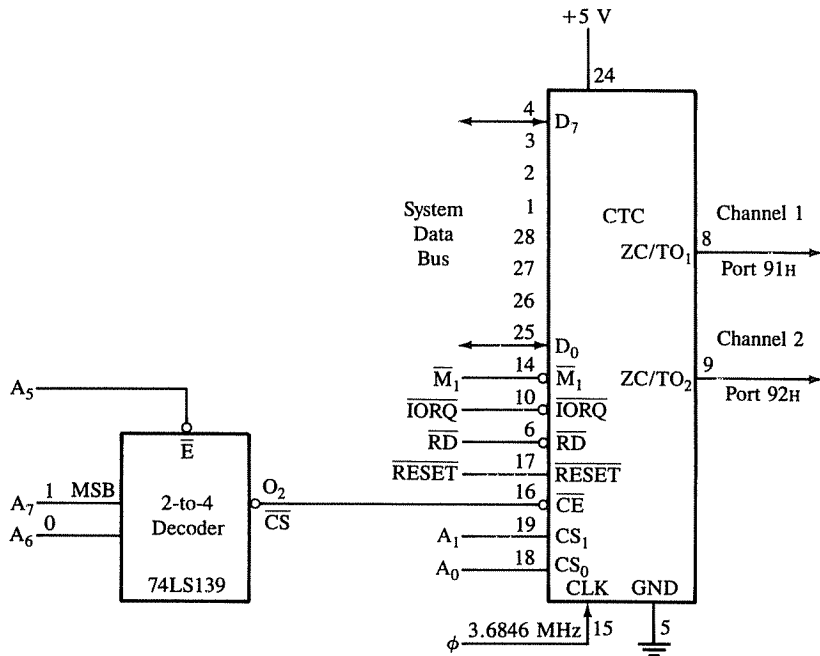
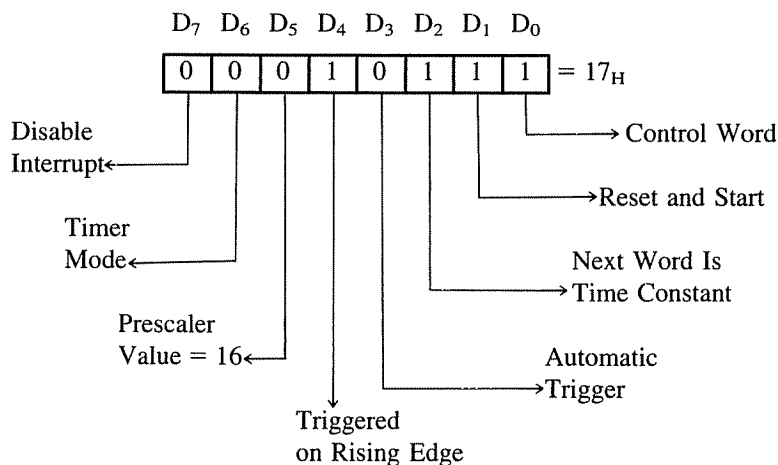


FIGURE 14.7

Schematic: Baud Generator Using CTC in the Timer Mode

The channel control word for both channels is 17_H as shown in the following diagram; this is a continuous operation without the interrupt capability.



Instructions The following instructions will set up the CTC in the timer mode: Channel 1 for 4.8 kHz output and Channel 2 for 19.2 kHz.

```

CNTRL    EQU 17H           ;Defines channel control word
COUNT1  EQU 30H           ;Time constant 48 for Channel 1
COUNT2  EQU 0CH           ;Time constant 12 for Channel 2
CTC1     EQU 91H           ;Port address of Channel 1
CTC2     EQU 92H           ;Port address of Channel 2
SETUP:   LD A, CNTRL        ;Channel control word
          OUT (CTC1), A     ;Send control word to Channel 1
          LD A, COUNT1      ;Time constant for Channel 1
          OUT (CTC1), A     ;Load time constant into Channel 1
          LD A, CNTRL        ;Channel control word
          OUT (CTC2), A     ;Send control word to Channel 2
          LD A, COUNT2      ;Time constant for Channel 2
          OUT (CTC2), A     ;Load time constant into Channel 2
          HALT

```

Description The first two instructions write the channel control word into Channel 1 (Port 91_H), and it must be followed by the time constant (COUNT1 = 30_H). This operation is repeated for Channel 2 by the subsequent instructions. When the time constant is loaded, it resets the channel and begins the countdown at the rising edge of the system clock. When the count reaches zero, a high pulse equal to 1.5 times (0.41 μ s) the system clock period is generated at the output (ZC/TO = Zero Count/Time Out) of the channel; thus, Channel 1 provides a 4.8 kHz clock and Channel 2 provides a 19.2 kHz clock.

14.3

ILLUSTRATION: USING THE CTC IN THE COUNTER MODE WITH INTERRUPT

In the counter mode, the CTC counts external events whenever the input signal at the CLK/TRG pin of a channel goes active. The CLK/TRG pin can be activated by either a leading edge or trailing edge pulse input; it is specified by the channel control word. The channel operation is similar to that in the timer mode; an 8-bit count is loaded into the channel register, and the count is decremented whenever the CLK/TRG input goes active. When the count reaches zero, the output ZC/TO goes active for approximately 1.5 times the clock period and the count is reloaded into the register.

This illustration concerns designing a clock by counting a 60 Hz power line, which provides an accurate time base.

14.31 Problem Statement

Design a minute timer using a 60 Hz powerline as an external trigger to the CLK/TRG pin of Channel 3 as shown in Figure 14.8. The CTC should interrupt the Z80 MPU every second to update the seconds display, and at the end of 60 minutes the clock should be reset and start again. The vector address for Channel 3=2056_H.

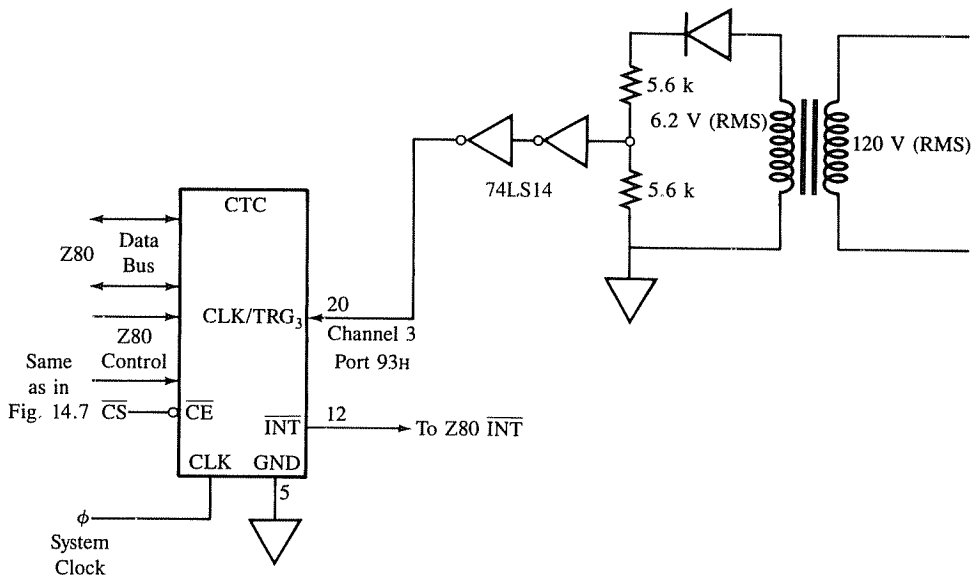


FIGURE 14.8

Schematic: CTC in the Counter Mode

14.32 Problem Analysis

This problem has three parts:

1. Getting an appropriate pulse from the 60 Hz power line.
2. Setting up the CTC in the counter mode with the interrupt capability.
3. Writing subroutines to upgrade the displays of seconds and minutes.

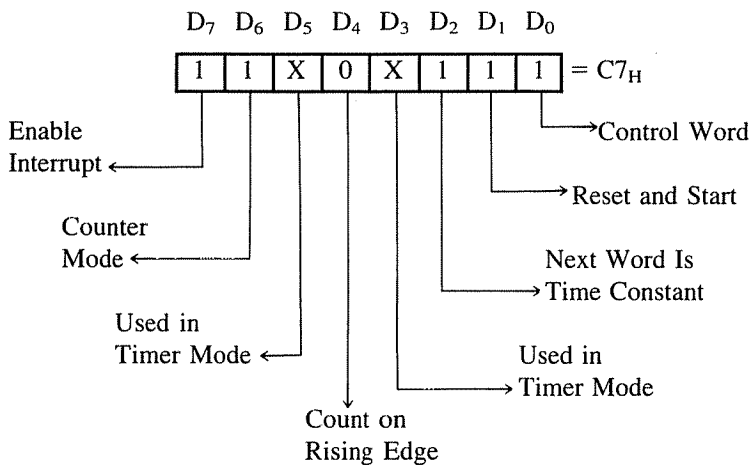
The AC power line provides 120 V (RMS) with 60 Hz frequency. Thus, it can provide a signal with a 16.6 ms period; however, the voltage should be converted into a 5 V pulse to be compatible with TTL logic. Figure 14.8 shows a step-down transformer with a rectifier; the output of the rectifier will be approximately + 10 V, and the resistor divider network adjusts the output to + 5 V. The inverters are used as a wave-shaping circuit to convert the sine wave into a square wave pulse. The output of the inverters will be a 5 V square wave with a 16.6 ms period, connected to the CLK/TRG pin of the CTC Channel 3. This pulse triggers the CTC channel 60 times per second.

The CTC channel counter should be set up to count these pulses, and at the end of the count, the CTC should generate an interrupt. Thus, the interrupts are generated every second, and the interrupt service subroutine should upgrade the seconds display.

14.33 Initializing the CTC in the Counter Mode

To initialize the CTC in the counter mode with interrupt capability, we need to send three words: channel control word and count (time constant) to Channel 3, and interrupt vector to Channel 0.

The channel control word is as follows (assuming “don’t care” bits at logic 0):



The time constant = $3C_H$ to count 60 pulses. The low-order vector address = 50_H for Channel 0; the high-order address is supplied by the interrupt register I (see Figure 14.5).

14.34 Program

In this illustration, the program can be divided into three sections: CTC initialization, the main program to display minutes and seconds, and the interrupt service routine to update the timer registers.

CTC Initialization The following instructions are written as a subroutine to set up the CTC Channel 3 in the counter mode with interrupt enable.

```

CNTRL    EQU C7H           ;Defines channel control word
COUNT3  EQU 3CH           ;Time constant 60 for 1 second
LOVECT    EQU 50H          ;Low-order address of interrupt vector
CTC3      EQU 93H          ;Port address of Channel 3
CTC0      EQU 90H          ;Port address of Channel 0.
SETCTC:   LD A, CNTRL       ;Channel control word
          OUT (CTC3), A     ;Send control word to Channel 3
          LD A, COUNT3      ;Time constant to count 60 pulses
          OUT (CTC3), A     ;Load time constant into Channel 3
          LD A, LOVECT      ;Low-order interrupt vector
          OUT (CTC0), A     ;Load interrupt vector address into Channel 0
          RET

```

Main Program The main program initializes the stack pointer, the interrupt register, and registers for minutes and seconds. It calls the SETCTC subroutine, enables the Z80 interrupt, and stays in the display loop.

```

START:    LD SP, STACK      ;Initialize stack pointer
          IM 2              ;Set up Z80 in interrupt Mode 2
          LD A, 20H         ;Load high-order byte of interrupt vector
          LD I, A           ;Load interrupt register
          CALL SETCTC       ;Initialize CTC
          LD BC, 0000       ;Set B for minutes and C for seconds
          EI                ;Enable Z80 interrupts

DSPLAY:   LD A, B
          OUT (PORT1), A    ;Display minutes
          LD A, C
          OUT (PORT2), A    ;Display seconds
          JP DSPLAY

```

Interrupt Service Routine This routine is concerned primarily with updating the registers for seconds and minutes and decimal adjusting the values in the registers for BCD display. When register C reaches 60 seconds, it clears the register and increments register B. Register B is incremented until it reaches 60 minutes, and then the timer is reset to start again.

```

TIMER:  PUSH AF          ;Save (A) (F)
        LD A, C          ;Get previous reading
        ADD 01H          ;Update seconds
        DAA              ;Decimal adjust seconds
        LD C, A          ;Save BCD value of seconds
        CP 60H           ;Is time = 60 seconds?
        JR NZ, GOEND     ;If not, go to end and return
        LD C, 00         ;If yes, clear seconds
        LD A, B          ;Get previous minutes
        ADD A, 01H       ;Update minutes
        DAA              ;Decimal adjust minutes
        LD B, A          ;Save BCD value of minutes
        CP 60H           ;Are minutes = 60?
        JR NZ, GOEND     ;If not, go to end and return
        LD B, 00         ;If yes, clear minutes
GOEND:  POP AF
        EI
        RETI

```

PROGRAM DESCRIPTION

The main program initializes the CTC Channel 3 and remains in the DSPLAY loop displaying the contents of registers B and C at output ports. The CTC channel register is loaded with the count 60, and whenever the powerline source triggers the CLK/TRG pin, the CTC register is decremented. When the register reaches zero, the interrupt request ($\overline{\text{INT}}$) goes active and interrupts the Z80; thus, the Z80 is interrupted every second. Channel 3 does not have a ZC/TO output signal; therefore, the interrupt request $\overline{\text{INT}}$ must be used to indicate that the register has reached zero.

When the Z80 acknowledges the interrupt request, the CTC supplies the low-order address (56_{H}) of the interrupt vector, and it is combined with the high-order address (20_{H}) from the Z80 interrupt register. The program execution is transferred to location 2056_{H} , where the address of the service routine is stored in two consecutive memory locations (2056_{H} and 2057_{H}), and then the program is transferred to the service routine TIMER.

The service routine increments the seconds in register C, adjusts the value for BCD, and checks whether the number has reached 60. If it has not, the routine jumps to the end to enable the interrupt and returns to the main program. When the instruction $\overline{\text{RETI}}$ (Return from Interrupt) is executed, it is recognized by the CTC, which clears the $\overline{\text{INT}}$ signal. When register C does eventually reach 60, the routine clears register C and increments the minutes in register B. When register B reaches the count of 60 minutes, register B is cleared, and the timer is reset to start all over.

THE 8253 PROGRAMMABLE INTERVAL TIMER

14.4

The Intel 8253 is another widely used general purpose programmable interval timer/counter, and it is in many ways similar to the Z80 CTC. The 8253 includes three identical

16-bit counters which can operate independently in any one of six modes (described later). It is packaged in a 24-pin DIP and requires a single +5 V power supply. For operation as a counter, a 16-bit count is loaded in its register, and on command, it begins to decrement the count until it reaches zero. At the end of the count, it generates a pulse which can be used to interrupt the MPU. The counter can count in either binary or BCD. In addition, a count can be read by the MPU while the counter is decrementing.

14.41 Block Diagram of the 8253

Figure 14.9 shows the block diagram of the 8253; it includes three 16-bit counters (0, 1, and 2). Each counter has two input signals—clock (CLK) and GATE—and one output signal—OUT. GATE can be used to initiate, enable, or disable counting. The diagram also shows three blocks: data bus buffer, Read/Write control logic, and a control word register.

Data Bus Buffer This is a tri-state 8-bit, bidirectional buffer connected to the data bus of the MPU.

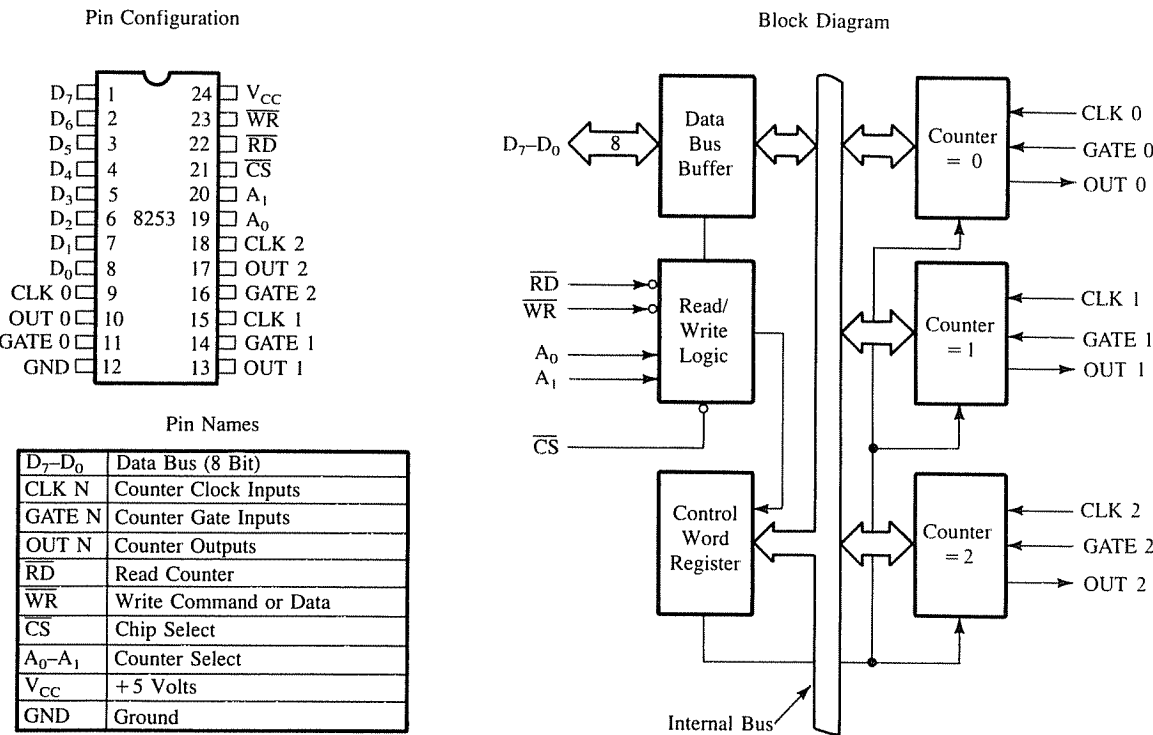


FIGURE 14.9
8253 Block Diagram
SOURCE: Reprinted by permission of Intel Corporation, copyright 1979.

Control Logic This control section has five signals: \overline{RD} (Read), \overline{WR} (Write), \overline{CS} (Chip Select), and the address lines A_0 and A_1 . In the peripheral I/O mode, the \overline{RD} and \overline{WR} signals are connected to \overline{IOR} and \overline{IOWR} , respectively. In memory-mapped I/O, these are connected to \overline{MEMRD} (Memory Read) and \overline{MEMWR} (Memory Write). Address lines A_0 and A_1 of the MPU are usually connected to lines A_0 and A_1 of the 8253, and \overline{CS} is tied to a decoded address.

The control word register and counters are selected according to the signals on lines A_0 and A_1 , as shown.

A_1	A_0	Selection
0	0	Counter 0
0	1	Counter 1
1	0	Counter 2
1	1	Control Word Register

Control Word Register This register is accessed when lines A_0 and A_1 are at logic 1. It is used to write a command word which specifies the counter to be used, its mode, and either Read or Write operation. However, the control word register is not available for a Read operation. The control word format is shown in Figure 14.10.

Mode The 8253 can operate in six different modes, as shown in Figure 14.11. The gate of a counter is used either to disable or enable counting, as shown in Figure 14.12.

14.42 Programming the 8253

The 8253 can be programmed to provide various types of outputs (Figure 14.11) through Write operations, or to check a count while counting through Read operations. The details of these operations are given below.

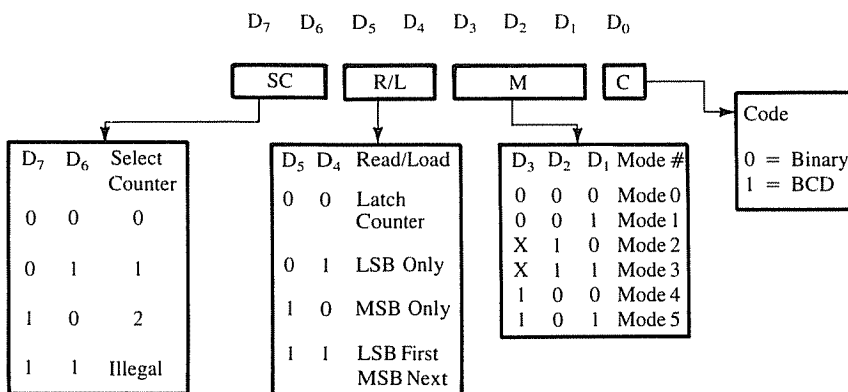
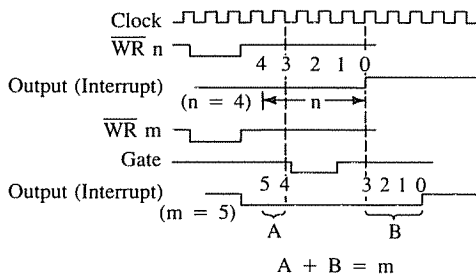


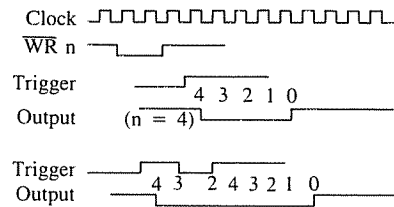
FIGURE 14.10
8253 Control Word Format

SOURCE: Adapted from Intel Corporation, copyright 1978.

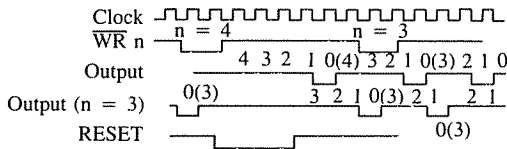
Mode 0: Interrupt on Terminal Count



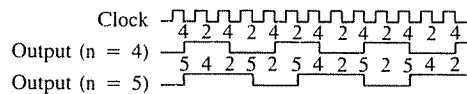
Mode 1: Programmable One-Shot



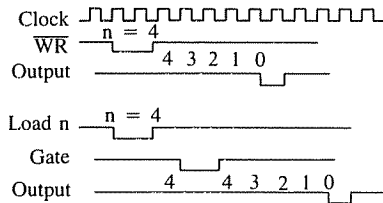
Mode 2: Rate Generator Clock



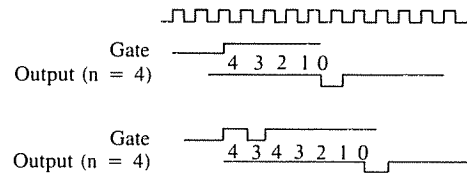
Mode 3: Square Wave Generator



Mode 4: Software Triggered Strobe



Mode 5: Hardware Triggered Strobe

**FIGURE 14.11**

8253 Operating Modes

SOURCE: Reprinted by permission of Intel Corporation, copyright 1981.

Write Operations To initialize a counter, the following steps are necessary.

1. Write a control word into the control register.
2. Load the low-order byte of a count into the counter register.
3. Load the high-order byte of a count into the counter register.

With a clock and an appropriate gate signal to one of the counters, the above instructions should be able to start the counter and provide appropriate output according to the control word.

Read Operations In some applications, especially in event counters, it is necessary to read the value of the count in progress. This can be done by one of two methods. One

Modes \ Signal Status	Low or Going Low	Rising	High
0	Disables counting	—	Enables counting
1	—	(1) Initiates counting (2) Resets output after next clock	—
2	(1) Disables counting (2) Sets output immediately high	(1) Reloads counter (2) Initiates counting	Enables counting
3	(1) Disables counting (2) Sets output immediately high	Initiates counting	Enables counting
4	Disables counting	—	Enables counting
5	—	Initiates counting	—

FIGURE 14.12

Gate Settings of a Counter

SOURCE: Reprinted by permission of Intel Corporation, copyright 1981

method involves reading a count after inhibiting (stopping) the counter to be read. The second method involves reading a count while counting is in progress (reading on the fly).

In the first method, counting is stopped (or inhibited) by controlling the gate input or the clock input of the selected counter, and two I/O Read operations are performed by the MPU. The first I/O operation reads the low-order byte, and the second reads the high-order byte.

In the second method, an appropriate control word is written into the control register to latch a count in the output latch, and two I/O Read operations are performed by the MPU.

14.43 The 8253 as a Square Wave Generator

One of the attractive features of the 8253 is that it has several modes that can be used for various purposes whereas the CTC is primarily restricted to two modes: counter and timer. The following example illustrates how to set up the 8253 as a square wave generator.

1. Identify the port addresses of the control register and the counter 2 in Figure 14.13.
2. Calculate the count necessary to obtain a 20 kHz square wave if the clock frequency is 1 MHz and the counter is set up in Mode 3.
3. Write instructions to initialize Counter 2 in Mode 3 to obtain a 20 kHz square wave.

**Example
14.4**

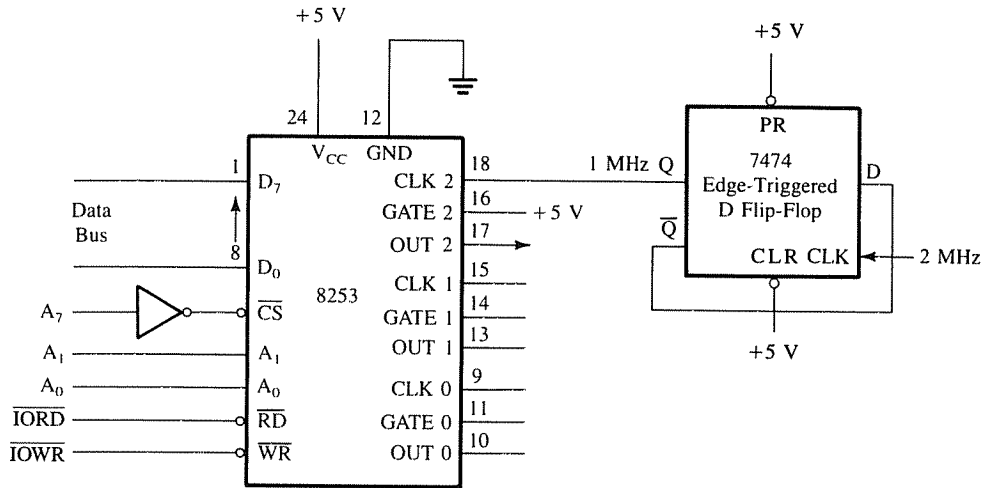


FIGURE 14.13
Schematic: Interfacing the 8253

Solution

1. Port Addresses

The Chip Select is enabled when $A_7 = 1$ (see Figure 14.13), and the control register is selected when A_1 and $A_0 = 1$. Similarly, Counter 2 is selected when $A_1 = 1$ and $A_0 = 0$. Assuming that the unused address lines A_6 to A_2 are at logic 0, the port addresses will be as follows:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Control Register} &= 83_H \\ \text{Counter 2} &= 82_H.\end{aligned}$$

2. Count to Generate 20 kHz in Mode 3

The system clock frequency is 2 MHz, which is divided by 2 using a D flip-flop. The output of the flip-flop changes on the rising edge; therefore, the output frequency fed to CLK 2 is 1 MHz, with the period of $1 \mu s$ (see Figure 14.14).

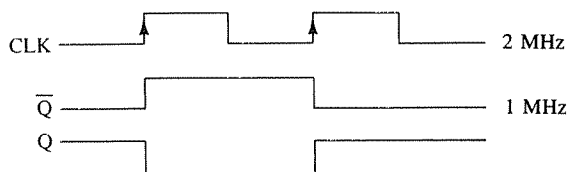
In Mode 3, the output remains high for half the count and low for the remaining half of the count. This is accomplished by decrementing the count by two at every falling edge of the clock. Therefore, with 1 MHz clock frequency, the count will be decremented by two every microsecond. To obtain the square wave with 20 kHz frequency (50 μs period), the output should remain high for 25 μs and low for 25 μs .

$$\frac{\text{Count} \times \text{Clock Period}}{2} = \text{Half Period of Square Wave}$$

$$\text{Count} = 2 \times \frac{25 \mu s}{1 \mu s} = 50$$

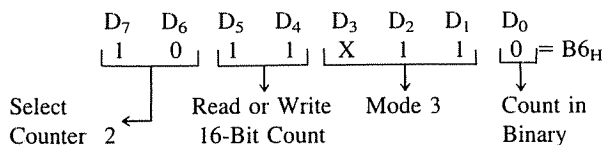
FIGURE 14.14

Clock Frequency Waveform



3. Control Word and Instructions to Initialize the Counter

To initialize the 8253 for Counter 2 in Mode 3, the following control word is necessary.



Instructions

```

COUNTR:  LD A, 10110110B    ;Control word (B6H) to initialize Counter 2.
          OUT (83H), A      ;Write control word in control register
          LD A, 50          ;Low-order byte (50 = 32H) of the count
          OUT (82H), A      ;Load Counter 2 with the low-order byte
          LD A, 00          ;High-order byte of the count
          OUT (82H), A      ;Load Counter 2 with the high-order byte

```

Description The first instruction loads the control word into the control register of the 8253 to set up Counter 2 in Mode 3. The subsequent instructions load the count 0032H (50₁₀) to obtain a 20 kHz square wave. In Figure 14.13, the gate is tied high; therefore, the counter begins as soon as the count is loaded.

14.44 Comparison of Z80 CTC and Intel 8253

The Intel 8253 is a general purpose programmable timer/counter. It includes three 16-bit counters. Its control logic requires $\overline{RD}/\overline{WR}$ control signals and the decoded address. Each counter can have its own independent clock, and the counter operation can be controlled using the gate input. The 8253 can operate in six different modes to provide various types of outputs, such as a single pulse at the end of the count or a square wave output.

On the other hand, the CTC is specially designed to work with the Z80; it requires \overline{M}_1 and \overline{IORQ} control signals in addition to \overline{RD} signal. The CTC has four independent channels with an 8-bit time constant register. The counting is initiated by software instructions; it does not have a gate input signal. It can operate only in two modes: counter and timer. However, the CTC has a very powerful interrupt scheme; it can generate an interrupt request signal at the end of the count and set up the daisy chain priority scheme.

SUMMARY

Programmable timer/counter circuits are designed to provide accurate time delays and to count external events. These integrated circuits are used in various applications such as time delays, counters, one-shot, and waveform generation. This chapter has been concerned with applications of programmable timer/counter devices, specifically, the Z80 Counter/Timer Circuit (CTC). The CTC was described in detail, and it was illustrated with two applications: baud generator and timer (clock) design using a 60 Hz power line signal. In addition, the Intel 8253 timer was described and compared with the CTC. A summary of the important features of the programmable timer circuits is as follows.

- A programmable timer/counter device generally includes multiple timer/counter circuits and can operate in various modes.
- The control logic of the timer includes a control register and a time constant register. The operation mode and the selection of a timer is specified by writing a control word into the control register, and an appropriate count is loaded into the time constant register.
- The Z80 CTC has two modes of operation: the timer mode and the counter mode.
- In the timer mode, the CTC provides the time delay based on the frequency of the system clock, the prescaler specified in the control word, and the time constant loaded into the counter register. After the time constant (count) is loaded, the counter can be initiated either automatically or by an external pulse. Once the operation is initiated, the down-counter is decremented at every clock pulse, and when it reaches zero, an active high pulse is generated at the output. The count is automatically loaded again, and the operation continues.
- In the counter mode, the CTC counts external events indicated by the input from an external circuit. In this mode, the counter is decremented whenever it receives an active pulse from the external event, and when the counter reaches zero, an active high pulse is generated at the output and the count is automatically reloaded into the counter register.
- The Z80 CTC is capable of generating an interrupt request pulse. If the interrupt is enabled, the CTC generates an interrupt request pulse when the count reaches zero. The CTC also includes interrupt control logic to set up several CTCs in a daisy chain priority.
- The Intel 8253 is also a widely used general purpose timer/counter circuit. It has three 16-bit counters that can operate independently in six different modes.

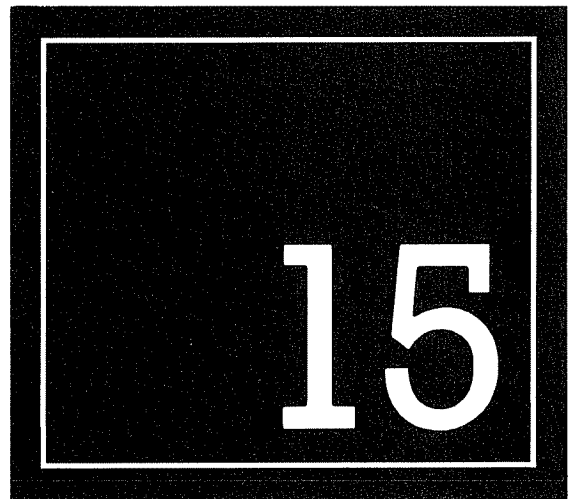
ASSIGNMENTS

1. Explain the operations of the Z80 CTC in the counter mode and the timer mode.
2. What is the function of the prescaler when the CTC is set up in the timer mode?
3. Calculate the time delay for the following parameters: System clock frequency = 4 MHz, prescaler = 256, and the time constant = 150.
4. Calculate the time constant to obtain a pulse every 400 μ s if the system clock is 4 MHz and the prescaler value is 16.
5. Identify the port addresses of Channel 1 and Channel 2 in Figure 14.2 if address lines A_7 and A_4 are interchanged.
6. Specify the control word for Channel 1 (Figure 14.7) to set up the CTC in the timer mode with the automatic trigger on the falling edge and the interrupt disabled.
7. Write instructions to initialize Channel 2 (Figure 14.7) in the timer mode to provide a pulse approximately every 5 ms.
8. Specify the control word to set up Channel 2 in the counter mode with the interrupt enabled.
9. Write instructions to set up Channel 2 (Fig. 14.8) in the counter mode to count 120 events. At the end of 120 events, the CTC should generate an interrupt request. After the interrupt acknowledge, the program should be transferred to the location 209F_H, where the service routine is located. The interrupt vector address for Channel 0 is specified as 2048_H.
10. Show output connections of Channel 1 and Channel 2 (Fig. 14.8) to count 1000 events. Initialize the channels with appropriate time constants.
11. Design a five minute timer using two channels of the Z80 CTC. Assuming the system clock to be 2 MHz, set up one channel as a timer and another as a counter. Connect the output of the timer to CLK/TRG input of the counter. The counter channel should generate an interrupt request every second, and the service routine should count the seconds until the total time is five minutes.
12. Write initialization instructions to set up Channel 0 as a timer with the prescaler equal to 16 and the time constant equal to 256. If the clock frequency is 4 MHz, calculate the delay obtained at the output of Channel 0.
13. Set up Channel 1 as a counter with the maximum count (256) and trigger the CLK/TRG1 from the output of Channel 0 in Assignment 12. Calculate the delay interval at ZC/TO1.
14. Set up Channels 2 and 3 as counters and generate an interrupt after one hour by using the output of Assignment 13.

Serial I/O and Data Communication

The Z80 microprocessor is a parallel device; it transfers data bits simultaneously over its eight data lines. This is called the **parallel I/O mode**, as discussed in previous chapters. However, in many situations, the parallel I/O mode is either impractical or impossible. For example, parallel data communication over a long distance can become very expensive. Similarly, devices such as a CRT terminal and a cassette tape are not designed for parallel I/O. In these instances, the **serial I/O mode** is used, whereby one bit at a time is transferred over a single line.

In *serial transmission* (from the MPU to a peripheral), an 8-bit parallel word should be converted into a stream of eight serial bits; this is known as **parallel-to-serial conversion**. After the conversion, one bit at a time is transmitted over a single line at a given rate called the **baud** (bits per second). In *serial reception*, on the other hand, the MPU receives a stream of eight bits, and they should be converted into an 8-bit parallel word; this is known as **serial-to-parallel conversion**. In addition to the conversion, information such as the beginning and the end of transmission and error check is necessary in serial communication. This chapter first discusses these basic concepts in serial data communication and explains how serial communication can be implemented using microprocessor instructions



(software). However, in industrial applications, the hardware approach through programmable devices is generally used. This chapter illustrates applications with two such devices: the Intel 8251 and the Z80 SIO (and DART).

OBJECTIVES

- Explain how data transfer occurs in the serial I/O mode and how it differs from the parallel I/O mode.
- Explain the terms: synchronous and asynchronous transmission; simplex, and half and full duplex transmission; baud, and parity check.
- Explain how data bits are transmitted (or received) in the asynchronous format, and calculate the delay required between two successive bits for a given baud.
- Explain the RS-232C serial I/O standard and compare it with the RS-422 and -423 standards.
- Explain how serial I/O communication can be implemented in the asynchronous format using software.
- Explain the block diagram and the functions of each block of the Intel 8251 USART (Programmable Communication Interface).
- Design an interfacing circuit using the 8251, and write initialization instructions to set up data communication between a microcomputer and a serial peripheral.
- Explain the block diagram and the functions of each block of the Z80 SIO (Serial Input/Output Controller) and the DART (Dual Asynchronous Receiver and Transmitter).
- Write initialization instructions to set up the Z80 SIO (or DART) for given specifications to implement the asynchronous communication.
- Write interrupt service routines to implement communication between the Z80 MPU and a terminal when the Z80 SIO is set up in the interrupt mode.

15.1

BASIC CONCEPTS IN SERIAL I/O

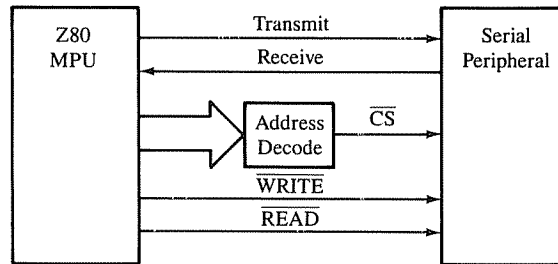
The basic concepts concerning the serial I/O mode can be classified into the following categories.

1. Interfacing requirements
2. Serial I/O format and requirements
3. Error checks in data communication
4. Data communication over long distance
5. Standards in serial I/O
6. Software versus programmable hardware approaches

15.11 Interfacing Requirements

The interfacing requirements for a serial I/O peripheral are the same as those of a parallel I/O device. The microprocessor identifies the peripheral through a port address and enables it using Read or Write control signal. The primary difference between the parallel I/O and the serial I/O is in the number of lines used for data transfer—the parallel I/O uses the entire data bus and the serial I/O uses only one data line. Figure 15.1 shows a typical configuration of serial I/O transmission; the MPU selects the peripheral through Chip Select and uses the control signals READ to receive data and WRITE to transmit data. The serial peripheral can be interfaced either under program control (status check) or interrupt control.

FIGURE 15.1
Block Diagram: Serial I/O Interfacing



15.12 Serial I/O Format and Requirements

The serial transmission format is concerned with such issues as synchronization between a receiver and a transmitter, direction of data flow, and rate or speed of transmission. These topics are briefly described below. Topics concerning errors in transmission and data communication over long distances are discussed in the subsequent sections.

Synchronous versus Asynchronous Transmission Serial communication occurs in one of two formats: synchronous or asynchronous. In the synchronous format, a receiver and a transmitter are synchronized with the same frequency, and a block of characters is transmitted along with the synchronization (Sync) characters, as shown in Figure 15.2(a). Error check characters called CRC (Cyclic Redundancy Check—discussed later), are also included. This format is generally used for high speed transmission (more than 20 k bits/second).

The asynchronous format is character-oriented as shown in Figure 15.2(b). The asynchronous transmission, as the name suggests, can occur any time; it is unpredictable in relation to time. Therefore, each character must carry information about when the transmission begins and when it ends; this information is included in each character by adding the Start and the Stop bits (Figure 15.2(b)). When no data are being transmitted, a receiver stays in the high state. Transmission begins with a low Start bit, followed by a character and one or two high Stop bits. This is also known as **framing**. Figure 15.2(b) shows the transmission of 11 bits for an ASCII character in the asynchronous format: one Start bit, eight character bits, and two Stop bits. In serial I/O, logic 1 is known also as Mark and logic 0 as Space. The format shown in Figure 15.2(b) is similar to Morse Code, but dots and dashes are replaced by logic 0s and 1s. The asynchronous format is generally used in low speed transmission (less than 20 k bits/second).

Simplex and Duplex Transmission Serial communication can also be classified according to the direction and simultaneity of data flow.

In **simplex transmission**, data are transmitted in only one direction. An example is the transmission from a microcomputer to a printer.

In **duplex transmission**, data flow in both directions. However, if the transmission is one way at a time, it is called *half duplex*; if it is both ways simultaneously, it is called

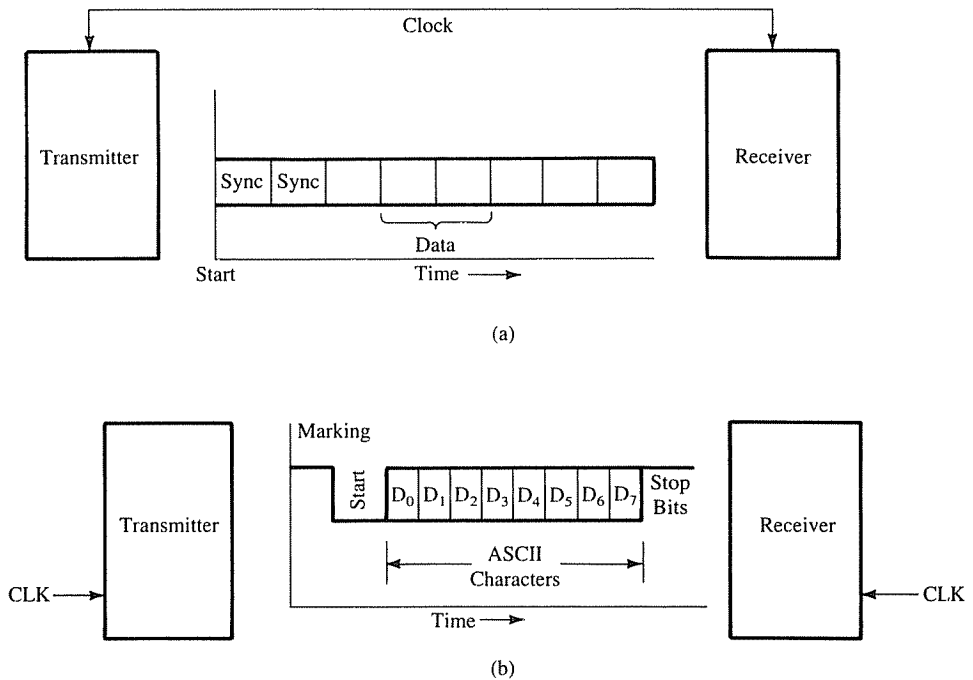


FIGURE 15.2

Transmission Format: (a) Synchronous (b) Asynchronous

full duplex. Generally, transmission between two computers or between a computer and a terminal is full duplex.

Rate of Transmission In parallel I/O, data bits are transferred when a control signal enables the interfacing device; the transfer takes place in less than three T-states. However, in serial I/O, one bit is sent out at a time; therefore, how long the bit stays on or off is determined by the speed at which the bits are transmitted. Furthermore, the receiver should be set up to receive the bits at the same rate as the transmission; otherwise, the receiver may not be able to differentiate between two consecutive 0s or 1s.

The rate at which the bits are transmitted—bits/second—is called a **baud**; however, technically, it is defined as the number of signal changes/second. Each piece of equipment has its own baud requirement. For example, a teletype (TTY) generally runs on a 110 baud. However, in most terminals and printers, the baud is adjustable, typically ranging from 50 to 9,600 baud. Figure 15.3 shows how the ASCII character I (49_H) will be transmitted with 1,200 baud with the framing information of one Start and two Stop bits. The transmission begins with active low Start bit, followed by the LSB D_0 . The bit time—the delay between any two successive bits—is 0.83 ms; this is determined by the baud as shown in Figure 15.3.

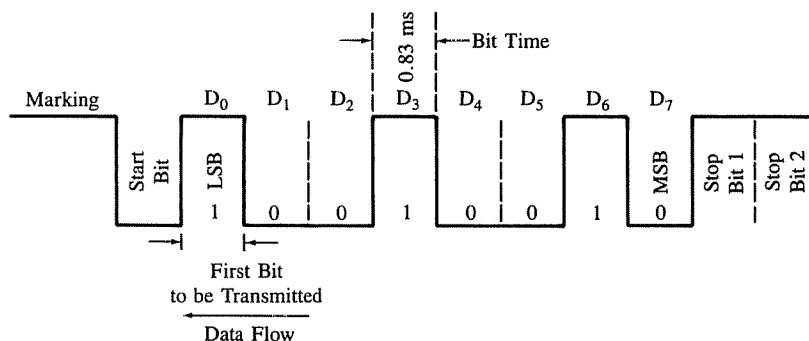


FIGURE 15.3

Serial Bit Format for ASCII Character "I" at 1,200 Baud

$$1,200 \text{ bits} = 1 \text{ second}$$

$$\text{For 1 bit} = 1/1,200 = 0.83 \text{ ms}$$

Therefore, to transmit one character, a parallel byte (49_H) should be converted into a stream of 11 bits by adding framing bits (one Start and two Stop bits), and each bit must be transmitted at the interval of 0.83 ms. This can be implemented either through software or through programmable hardware chips. To receive a character in the serial mode, the process is reversed—bits are received one at a time and converted into a parallel word.

15.13 Error Checks in Data Communication

During transmission, various types of errors can occur. For example, data bits may change because of noise or can be misunderstood by the receiver because of differences in receiver and transmitter clocks. These errors need to be checked; therefore, additional information for error checking is sent during the transmission. The receiver can check the received data against the error check information, and if an error is detected, the receiver can request the retransmission of that data segment. Three methods used in common practice are **parity check**, **checksum**, and **cyclic redundancy check**.

PARITY CHECK

This is used to check each character by counting the number of 1s in the character, and in the ASCII code transmission, bit D_7 is used to transmit parity check information. The technique is based on the principle that in a given system, each character is transmitted with either an even number or an odd number of 1s.

In an even parity system, when a character has an odd number of 1s, the bit D_7 is set to 1 and an even number of 1s is transmitted. For example, the code for the character I is 49_H (01001001) with three 1s. When the character I is transmitted in an even parity system, the transmitter will set the bit D_7 to 1, making the code $C9_H$ (1100 1001). On the

other hand, in an odd parity system, the character I is transmitted by keeping bit D_7 at 0; thus, the code remains 49_H .

In the Z80 system, the parity check is easy to implement and detect because the Z80 has the parity flag, and this flag can be used to check parity information in each character. However, the parity check cannot detect multiple errors in any given character if the number of errors is even.

CHECKSUM

The checksum technique is used when blocks of data are transferred. It involves adding all the bytes in a block without carries. Then, the 2's complement of the sum (negative of the sum) is transmitted as the last byte. The receiver adds all the bytes, including the 2's complement of the sum; thus, the result should be zero if there is no error in the block.

CYCLIC REDUNDANCY CHECK (CRC)

This technique is commonly used when data are transferred from and to a floppy disk and in a synchronous data communication. The technique is based on mathematical relationships of polynomials. A stream of data can be represented as a polynomial that is divided by a constant polynomial called the generator polynomial. The remainder of the division is sent out as a check for errors. The receiver checks the remainder to detect an error in the transmission. The mathematical details are as follows.

1. A stream of data bits can be represented as

$$M(x) = b_n x^0 + b_{n-1} x^1 + \dots + b_0 x^n, \text{ where}$$

b_0 = least significant bit

b_n = most significant bit.

For example, the polynomial of the Hex number $8A_H$ (1 0 0 0 1 0 1 0) is

$$\begin{aligned} M(x) &= 1x^0 + 0x^1 + 0x^2 + 0x^3 + 1x^4 + 0x^5 + 1x^6 + 0x^7 \\ &= 1x^0 + 1x^4 + 1x^6 = x^6 + x^4 + 1. \end{aligned}$$

2. Let us assume the length of the CRC code is four bits, although normally it is 16 bits. To obtain proper division, the polynomial is first multiplied by the power of the CRC code length (in our example it is x^4) and divided by the agreed-upon generator polynomial $G(x)$. The formula is

$$\frac{M(x) \times x^4}{G(x)} = Q(x) + R(x)$$

where $Q(x)$ is the quotient obtained by Modulo-2 arithmetic (see Appendix B for Modulo-2 arithmetic) and $R(x)$ is the remainder.

3. Assuming $G(x) = x^4 + 1$

$$\frac{M(x) \times x^4}{G(x)} = \frac{x^{10} + x^8 + x^4}{x^4 + 1} = (x^6 + x^4 + x^2) + x^2 \quad \begin{array}{l} \text{(see Appendix B).} \\ \text{Quotient } Q(x) \quad \text{Remainder } R(x) \end{array}$$

4. This remainder is added to the modified polynomial
 $M(x) \times x^4 + R(x) = x^{10} + x^8 + x^4 + x^2$ and transmitted as

	x^{10}			x^8				x^4			x^2			
0	1	0	1	0	0	0	1	0	1	0	0			
D ₀	D ₁	D ₂	D ₃	D ₄	D ₅	D ₆	D ₇	D ₈	D ₉	D ₁₀	D ₁₁			
Data = 8A _H												CRC		

The transmitted stream of bits includes the original byte 8A_H in reverse order, appended by the CRC bits at the end.

5. The receiver divides the transmitted polynomial by $G(x)$, and if the remainder is 0, it indicates no error (divides $x^{10} + x^8 + x^4 + x^2$ by $x^4 + 1$ and checks the answer).

The CRC check is a somewhat complex technique; it is discussed briefly here because the Z80 SIO is capable of generating and checking the CRC code if the SIO is used in the synchronous mode.

15.14 Data Communication Over Telephone Lines

The serial I/O technique can be used to send data over long distance through telephone lines. However, telephone lines are designed to handle voice; the bandwidth of telephone lines ranges from 300 Hz to 3,300 Hz, while a digital signal, with rise time in nanoseconds, requires a bandwidth of several megahertz. Therefore, data bits are converted into audio tones using modems.

A **modem** (Modulator/Demodulator) is a circuit that translates digital data into audio tone frequencies for transmission over telephone lines and converts audio frequencies into digital data for reception. The modems are designed to transfer data at rates of 300–2,400 bps (bits per second). Generally, two types of modulation techniques are used: *frequency shift keying* (FSK) for low-speed modems and *phase shift keying* (PSK) for high-speed modems.

Computers can exchange information over telephone lines by using two modems—one on each side (Figure 15.4). A calling computer (or terminal), also known as the originator, contacts a receiving (answering) computer through a telephone number, and a communication link is established after control signals have been exchanged between computers and modems.

A typical process of communication for a 300 bps modem is shown in Figure 15.4. A parallel word is converted into serial bits; in turn, the originator modem generates two audio frequencies —1,070 Hz for logic 0 (Space) and 1,270 Hz for logic 1 (Mark). These audio frequencies are transmitted over telephone lines. At the answering end, audio frequencies are converted back into 0s and 1s, and serial bits are converted into a parallel word that can be read by the computer. When the answering computer needs to transmit, it transmits on 2,025 Hz (Space) and 2,225 Hz (Mark).

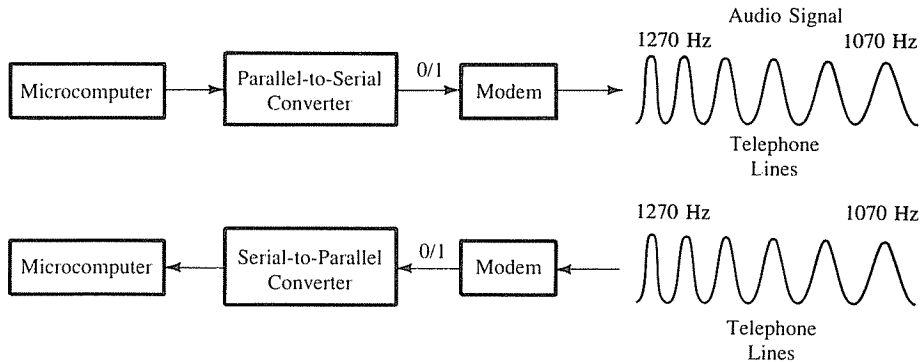


FIGURE 15.4
Communication over Telephone Lines Using Modems

15.15 Standards in Serial I/O

The serial I/O technique is commonly used to interface terminals, printers, and modems. These peripherals and computers are designed and manufactured by various companies. Therefore, a common understanding must exist among various manufacturing and user groups that can ensure compatibility among different equipment. When this understanding is defined and generally accepted in industry (and by users), it is known as a standard. A standard is normally defined by a professional organization (such as IEEE—Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers); however, a widespread practice can occasionally become a *de facto* standard. A standard may include such items as assignment of pin positions for signals, voltage levels, speed of data transfer, length of cables, and mechanical specifications.

In serial I/O, data can be transmitted either as current or voltage. Typically, 20mA (or 60mA) current loops are used in teletype equipment. When a teletype is Marking or at logic 1, current flows; when it is at logic 0 (or Space), the current flow is interrupted. The advantage of the current loop method is that signals are relatively noise-free.

When data are transmitted as voltage, the commonly used standard is known as **RS-232C**. It is defined in reference to Data Terminal Equipment (DTE) and Data Communication Equipment (DCE)—terminal and modem—as shown in Figure 15.5(a); however, its voltage levels are not compatible with TTL logic levels. The rate of data transmission in RS-232C is restricted to a maximum of 20 kbaud and the distance is limited to 50 ft. For high-speed data transmission, two new standards—RS-422A and RS-423A—have been developed in recent years; however, they are not yet widely used.

To appreciate the difficulties and confusion in this standard, one has to examine its historical background. The RS-232 Standard was developed during the initial days of computer timesharing, long before the existence of TTL logic, and its primary focus was to have compatibility between a terminal and a modem. However, the same standard is now being used for communications between computers and peripherals, and the roles of a

data terminal and a modem have become ambiguous. Should a computer be considered a terminal or a modem? The answer is that it can be either. Therefore, the lines used for transmission and reception will differ, depending on how the manufacturer designs the equipment.

RS-232C

Figure 15.5(b) shows the RS-232C 25 pins and associated signals. The signals are divided into four groups: **data signals**, **control signals**, **timing signals**, and **grounds**. For data

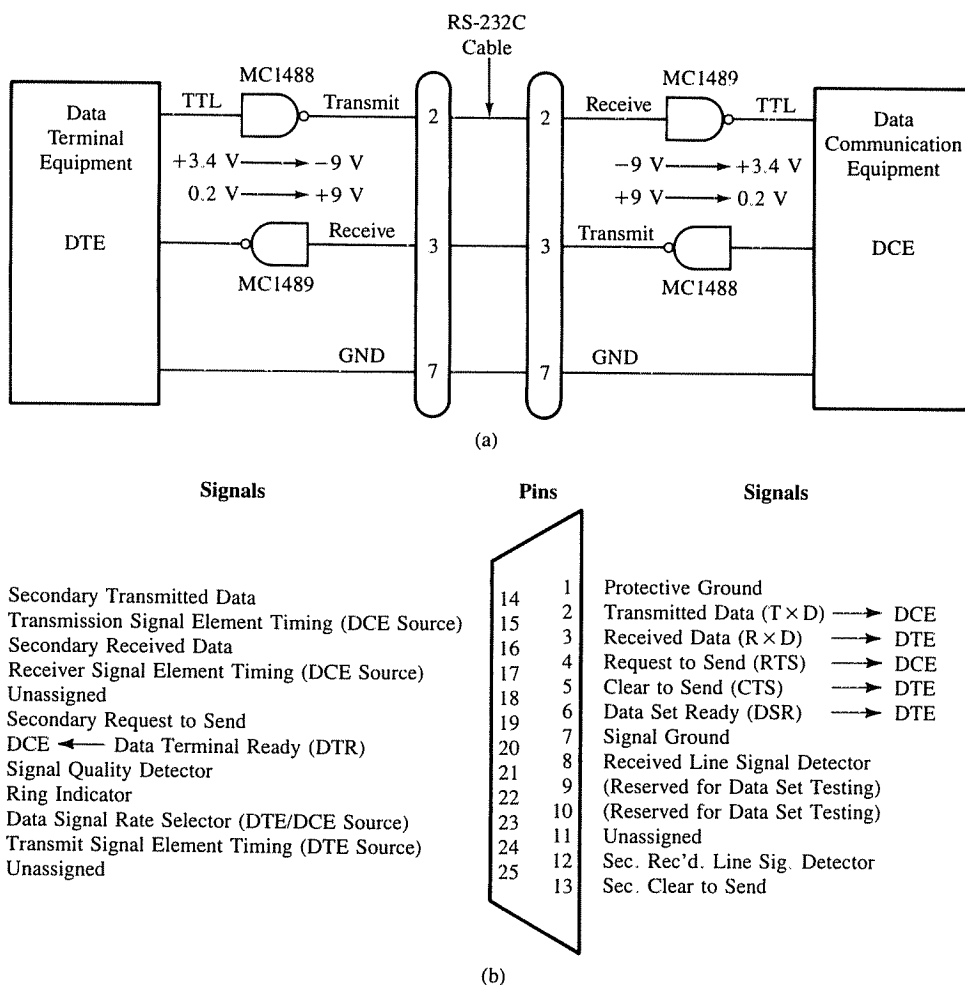


FIGURE 15.5

(a) Minimum Configuration of RS-232C Signals and Voltage Levels (b) RS-232C Signal Definitions and Pin Assignments

SOURCE: Courtesy of Electronic Industries Association.

lines, the voltage level from +3 V to +15 V is defined as logic 0, and from -3 V to -15 V is defined as logic 1 (normally, voltage levels are ± 12 V). This is negative true logic. Because of incompatibility with TTL logic, voltage translators, called **line drivers** and **line receivers**, are required to interface TTL logic with the RS-232 signals, as shown in Figure 15.5(a). The line driver, MC1488, converts logic 1 into approximately -9 V and logic 0 into +9 V (Figure 15.5(a)). Before the signal is received by the DCE, it is again converted by the line receiver, MC1489, into TTL compatible logic. This raises the question: If the received signal is to be converted back to the TTL levels, what is the reason to convert the transmitted signal to higher voltages in the first place? The primary reason is that the standard was defined before the TTL levels came into existence; before 1960, most equipment was designed to handle higher voltages. The other reason is that this standard provides a higher level of noise margin, from -3 V to +3 V.

The minimum interface requires three lines: pins 2, 3, and 7 as shown in Figure 15.5(a). These lines are defined in relation to the DTE; the terminal transmits on pin 2 and receives on pin 3. On the other hand, the DCE transmits on pin 3 and receives on pin 2. Typically, data transmission with a handshake requires eight lines. Specific functions of handshake lines differ in different peripherals, and therefore, should be referred to in the manufacturer's manuals.

For high-speed transmission, the standards RS-422A and RS-423A are used. These standards use differential amplifiers to reject noise levels and can transmit data at a higher speed with longer cable. The RS-422A allows the maximum speeds of 10 Mbaud for a 40 ft distance and 100 kbaud at 4,000 ft. The RS-423A is limited to 100 kbaud for a 30 ft distance and 10 kbaud at 300 ft. See Table 15.1 for comparison of the three standards: RS-232C, RS-422A, and RS-423A.

15.16 Review of Serial I/O Concepts and Approaches to Implementation

Serial data transmission can be implemented through either software or programmable I/O devices. The software and the hardware approaches are conceptually similar. In asynchronous data transmission, the steps can be summarized as follows:

1. Inform the receiver that the transmission is beginning with the Start pulse.
2. Convert a parallel word into a stream of serial bits.
3. Transmit data one bit at a time with appropriate time delay using one data line of an output port. The time delay is determined by the speed of the transmission.
4. Transmit parity check bit.
5. Inform the receiver that transmission is ending by sending Stop bits.

In data reception, the process is reversed. The receiver needs to

1. Recognize the beginning of the transmission.
2. Receive data one bit at a time and convert them into a parallel byte.
3. Check for errors and recognize the end of the transmission.

TABLE 15.1
Comparison of Serial I/O Standards

Specifications	RS-232C	RS-422A	RS-423A
Speed	20 kbaud	10 Mbaud—40 ft 100 kbaud—4,000 ft	100 kbaud—30 ft 1 kbaud—4,000 ft
Distance	50 ft	4,000 ft	4,000 ft
Logic 0	$> +3$ to $+25$ V	$B > A$	$+4$ to $+6$ V
Logic 1	< -3 to -25 V	$B < A$	-4 to -6 V
Receiver Input Voltage	± 15 V	± 7 V	± 12 V

NOTE: B and A are differential input to the op amp

In the software approach, the speed of transmission is set up by using an appropriate delay between the transmission of two consecutive bits, and the entire word is converted into a serial stream by rotating the byte and outputting one bit at a time using one of the data lines of an output port. The software provides the time delay between the two consecutive bits and adds framing bits and the parity bit; this is discussed in Section 15.2.

In the hardware approach, the above functions are performed by a programmable device (chip). The device contains a parallel-to-serial register and 1-bit output port for transmission, and a serial-to-parallel register and 1-bit input port for reception. The rate of transmission and reception is determined by the clock. The programmable chip also includes a control register that can be programmed to add framing and error-check information, and to specify the number of bits to be transferred. The microprocessor transfers a parallel byte using the data bus, and the programmable chip performs the remaining functions for serial I/O.

The software approach is suitable for slow-speed asynchronous data communication where timing requirements are not critical. The approach is simple and inexpensive. The hardware approach is suitable for both asynchronous and synchronous formats. The approach is flexible, and chips can be programmed to accommodate changing requirements. In industrial and commercial products, the hardware approach has become almost universal. This chapter includes the detailed discussion and illustrations of two programmable chips: the Intel 8251 and the Z80 SIO. However, for learning the basic concepts in serial I/O, the software approach is more suitable than the hardware approach; thus, the software approach is described here prior to the discussion of the programmable serial I/O devices. We will limit our discussion to the asynchronous communication mode, which is commonly used in the microcomputer. Synchronous data communication is a specialized technique and will not be discussed here.

The basic concepts concerning serial I/O discussed in the previous sections are summarized in Table 15.2.

TABLE 15.2

Summary of Synchronous and Asynchronous Serial Data Communication

Format	Synchronous	Asynchronous
Data Format	Groups of Characters	One Character at a Time
Speed	High (20 k bits/second or Higher)	20 k bits/second or Lower
Framing Information	Sync Characters Are Sent with Each Group	Start and Stop Bits with Every Character
Implementation	Hardware	Hardware or Software
Data Direction	Simplex, Half and Full Duplex	Simplex, Half and Full Duplex

15.2

SOFTWARE-CONTROLLED ASYNCHRONOUS SERIAL I/O

In the software-controlled asynchronous serial mode, the program should perform the following tasks.

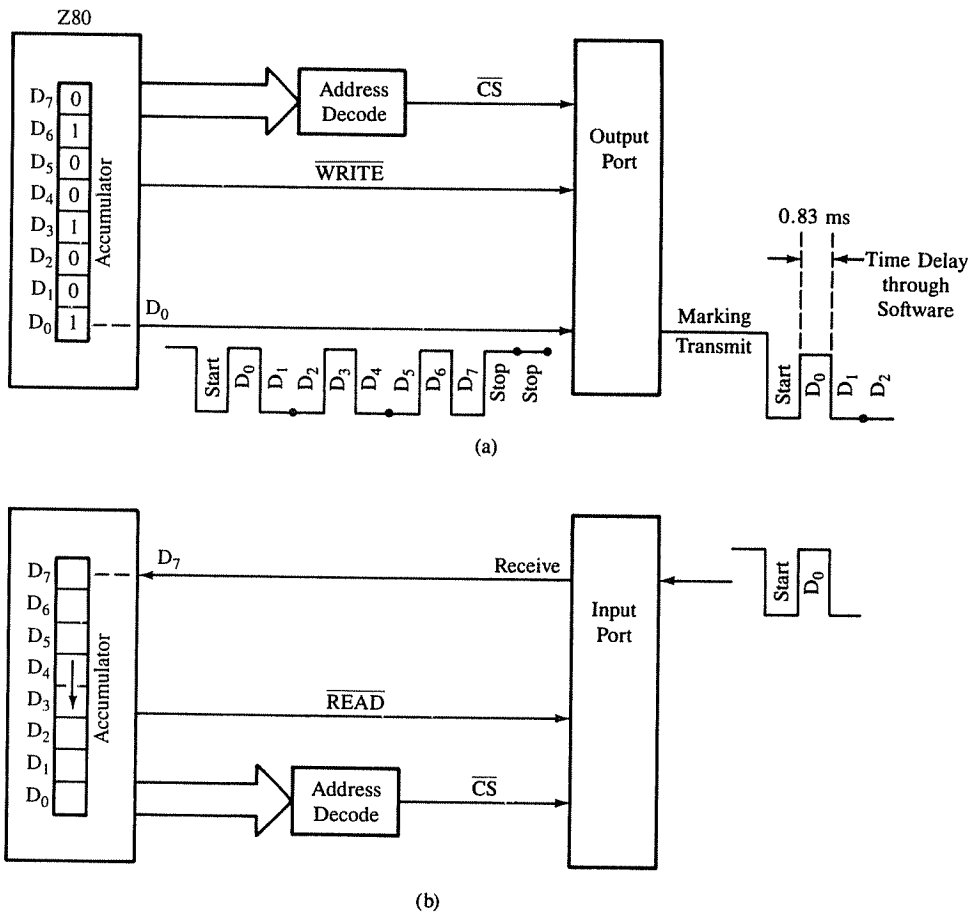
1. Output a Start bit.
2. Convert the character to be sent into a stream of serial bits with appropriate delay.
3. Add parity information if necessary.
4. Output one or two Stop bits.

Figure 15.6 shows the accumulator with the code for the ASCII character “I,” and it is converted into a stream of 11 bits, including one Start bit and two Stop bits. After the Start bit, the character bits are transmitted with bit D_0 first and bit D_7 last; for ASCII characters, bit D_7 can be used to add parity information. The bit time—the delay between two successive bits—is determined by the transmission baud. Figure 15.6 shows the transmission with 1,200 baud; the delay between the two consecutive bits is thus 0.83 ms.

Data reception in the serial mode involves the reverse process: receiving one bit at a time and forming an 8-bit parallel word. The receiving program should continue to read the input port until it receives the Start bit, and then begin to count character bits with appropriate delay.

15.21 Serial Data Transmission

Figure 15.7(a) shows a flowchart to transmit an ASCII character, and it can be explained in the context of the block diagram shown in Figure 15.6(a). When no character is being transmitted, the transmit line of the output port stays high in the Mark position. The transmission begins with the Start bit, active low. The initialization block of the flowchart

**FIGURE 15.6**

(a) Serial Data Transmission and (b) Serial Data Reception under Software Control

includes setting up a counter to count eight character bits; Start and Stop bits are sent out separately. The program waits for bit time—0.833 ms for 1,200 baud—and begins to send one character-bit at a time over the data line D_0 at the interval of 0.83 ms. To get ready for the next bit, the program rotates the bits—for example, D_1 into D_0 . It repeats the loop eight times, and finally sends out two Stop bits. Assuming that the character is being sent to a printer, the printer waits until it receives all the bits serially, checks the parity if necessary, forms a character, and prints it during the Stop bits. The Stop bits perform two functions: They allow sufficient time for the printer to print the character and leave the transmit line in the Mark position at the end of the character.

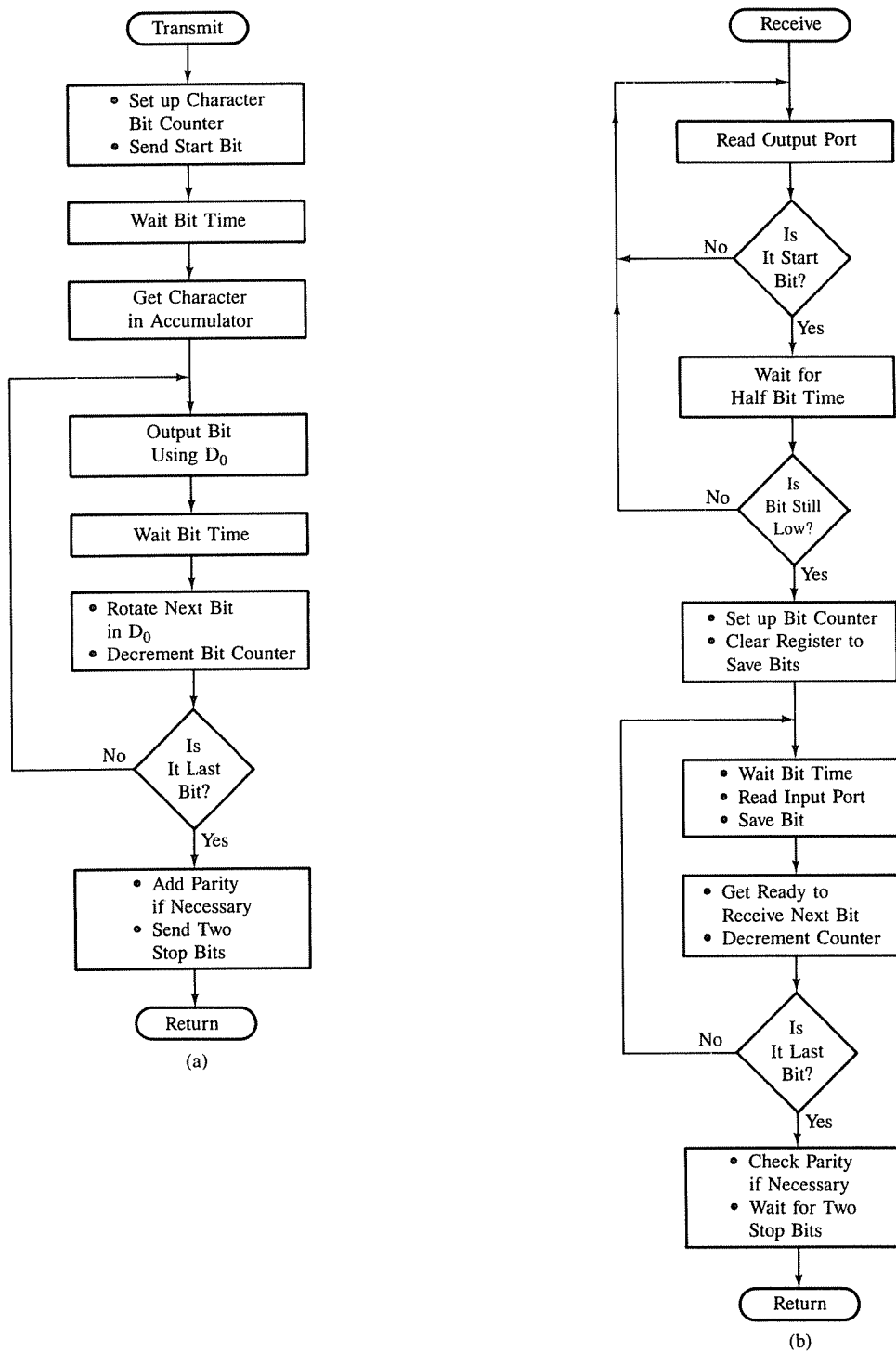


FIGURE 15.7

Flowcharts. (a) Transmission and (b) Reception of an ASCII Character

15.22 Serial Data Reception

In serial data reception, the program begins by reading the input port. When no character is being received, the input line stays high. The program stays in the loop and continues to read the port until the Start bit (active low) is received, as shown in the flowchart (Figure 15.7(b)).

When the Start bit is received, the program waits for half the bit time and samples the character bits in the middle of the pulse rather than at the beginning to avoid errors in transition. Then it checks again to confirm that it is really a Start bit and not a false start such as a noise spike. In the next block, it initializes the counter to count eight bits and clears a register to save the partial readings. The program reads the input port at the interval of bit time until it reads all the character bits, checks the parity bit, and ignores the last two bits by just waiting for bit times. The character reception also begins with the LSB; that is, the microprocessor will receive bit D_0 first. In Figure 15.6(a), the data line D_7 is used for the reception. The line D_7 provides some programming convenience for serial-to-parallel conversion; the word can be formed by shifting bits to the right whenever a bit is read, and eventually the LSB will reach its proper position.

PROGRAMMABLE COMMUNICATION INTERFACE— INTEL 8251A: HARDWARE APPROACH TO SERIAL I/O

15.3

The hardware approach to serial I/O incorporates the same basic principles and requirements necessary for the software approach. The various functions performed separately under software control must be performed by the hardware, designed in an integrated circuit. Such a device should

1. Transfer a parallel word between the microprocessor and the device.
2. Have an input port to receive and an output port to transmit serial data, both with one I/O line each.
3. Perform parallel-to-serial and serial-to-parallel conversion.
4. Provide framing and error-check information.
5. Transmit (or receive) serial data according to the clock connected to the device.

The integrated circuit that meets these requirements is generally called a USART (Universal Synchronous/Asynchronous Receiver/Transmitter). Because of technological advances in IC fabrication, such devices have become quite inexpensive and are commonly used for serial I/O. We will focus on two widely used devices: the Intel 8251A and the Z80 SIO. The 8251A is discussed in this section and the Z80 SIO is described in Section 15.5. The discussion of the 8251A is included prior to the discussion of the SIO because the initialization of the 8251A is easier than that of the SIO.

15.31 The 8251A Programmable Communication Interface: Overview

The 8251A is a programmable chip designed for synchronous and asynchronous serial data communication, packaged in a 28-pin DIP. The 8251A is the enhanced version of its

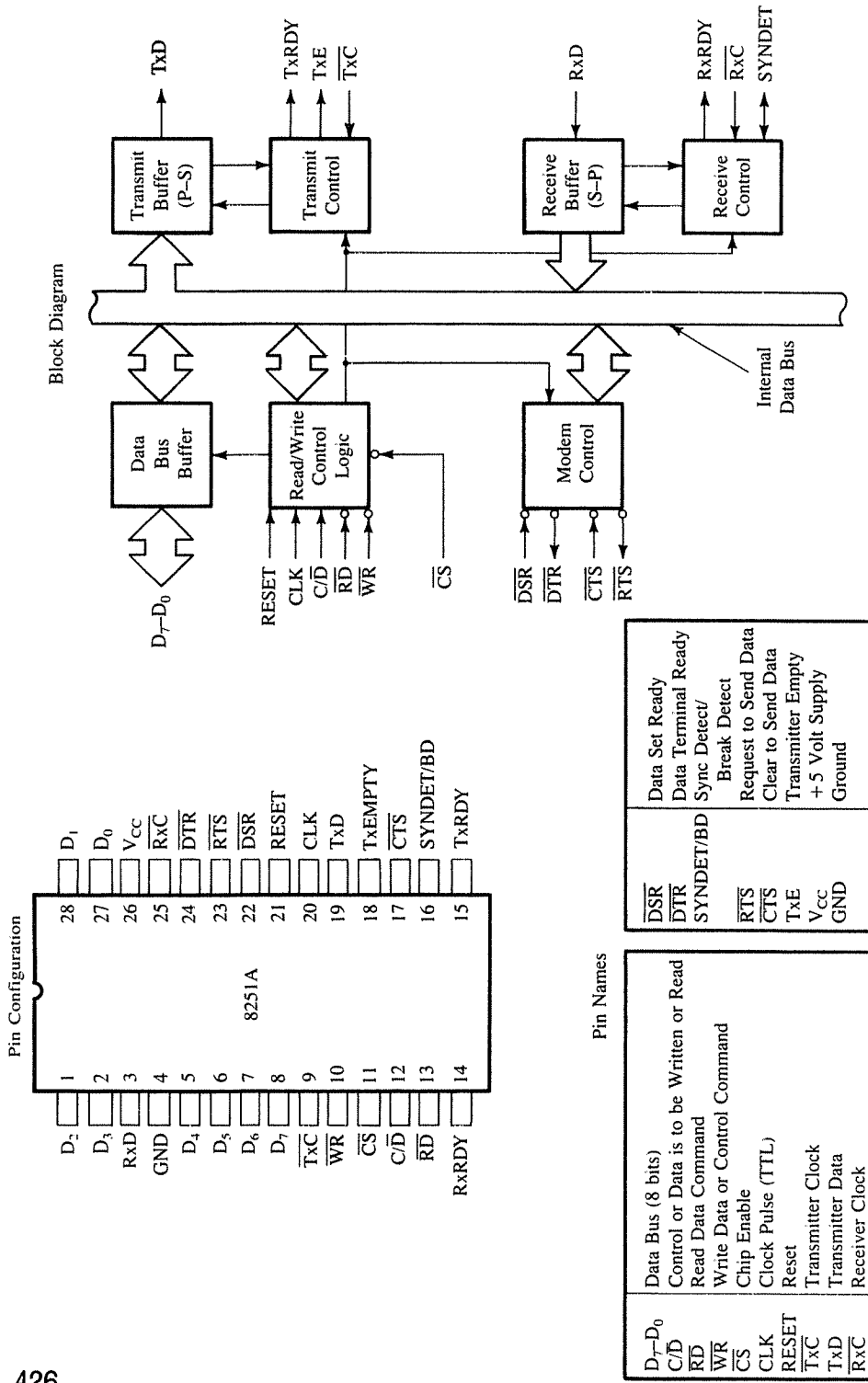


FIGURE 15.8

The 8251A: Block Diagram, Pin Configuration, and Description

SOURCE: Adapted from Intel Corporation, copyright 1979.

predecessor, the 8251, and is compatible with the 8251. Figure 15.8 shows the block diagram of the 8251A. It includes five sections—Read/Write Control Logic, Transmitter, Receiver, Data Bus Buffer, and Modem Control.

The control logic interfaces the chip with the MPU, determines the functions of the chip according to the control word in its register (explained later), and monitors the data flow. The transmitter section converts a parallel word received from the MPU into serial bits and transmits them over the TxD line to a peripheral. The receiver section receives serial bits from a peripheral, converts them into a parallel word, and transfers the word to the MPU. The modem control is used to establish data communication through modems over telephone lines. The 8251A is a complex device, capable of performing various functions. For the sake of clarity, this chapter focuses only on the asynchronous mode of serial I/O and excludes any discussion of the synchronous mode and the modem control. The asynchronous mode is commonly used for data communication between the MPU and such serial peripherals as terminals and floppy disks.

Figure 15.9 shows an expanded version of the 8251A block diagram. The block diagram shows all the elements of a programmable chip; it includes the interfacing signals, the control register, and the status register. The functions of various blocks are described next.

15.32 Read/Write Control Logic and Interfacing

This section has six input signals, control logic, and three buffer registers: data register, control register, and status register.

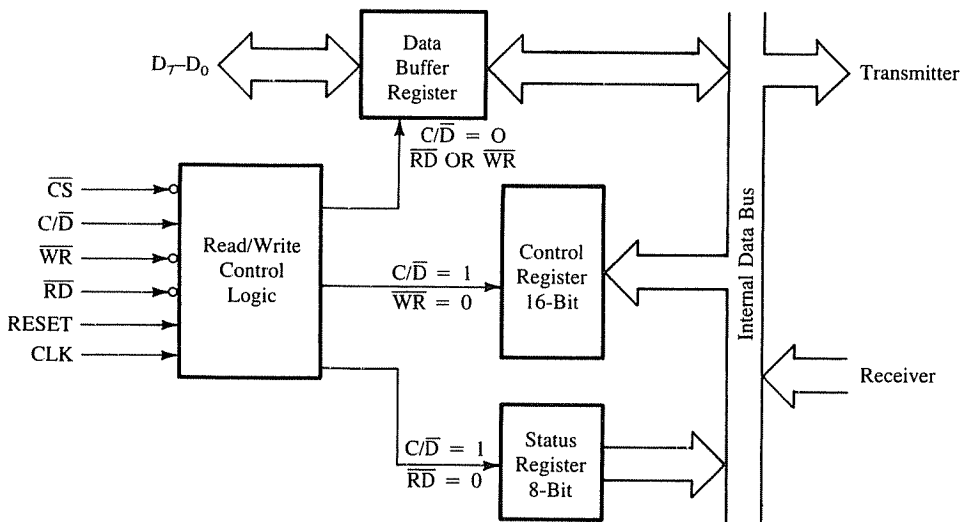


FIGURE 15.9

The 8251A: Expanded Block Diagram of Control Logic and Registers

Input Signals

- $\overline{\text{CS}}$ —Chip Select: When this signal goes low, the 8251A is selected by the MPU for communication. This is usually connected to a decoded address bus.
- $\text{C}/\overline{\text{D}}$ —Control/Data: When this signal is high, the control register or the status register is addressed, and when it is low the data buffer is addressed. The control register and the status register are differentiated by $\overline{\text{WR}}$ and $\overline{\text{RD}}$ signals, respectively.
- $\overline{\text{WR}}$ —Write: When this signal goes low, the MPU either writes in the control register or sends output to the data buffer. This is connected to $\overline{\text{IOWR}}$ or $\overline{\text{MEMWR}}$.
- $\overline{\text{RD}}$ —Read: When this signal goes low, the MPU either reads a status from the status register or accepts (inputs) data from the data buffer. This is connected to either $\overline{\text{IORD}}$ or $\overline{\text{MEMRD}}$.
- RESET—Reset: A high on this input resets the 8251A and forces it into the idle mode.
- CLK—Clock: This is the clock input, usually connected to the system clock; the clock frequency must be between 740/kHz and 3.125/MHz. This clock does not control either the transmission or the reception rate. This clock is necessary to synchronize internal operations of the 8251A.

Control Register This 16-bit register for a control word consists of two independent bytes; the first byte is called the **mode instruction** (word), and the second byte is called the **command instruction** (word). This register can be accessed as an output port when the $\text{C}/\overline{\text{D}}$ pin is high.

Status Register This input register checks the ready status of a peripheral. This register is addressed as an input port when the $\text{C}/\overline{\text{D}}$ pin is high; it has the same port address as the control register.

Data Buffer This bidirectional register can be addressed as an input and an output port when the $\text{C}/\overline{\text{D}}$ pin is low. Table 15.3 summarizes all the interfacing and control signals.

TABLE 15.3
Summary of Control Signal for the 8251A

$\overline{\text{CS}}$	$\text{C}/\overline{\text{D}}$	$\overline{\text{RD}}$	$\overline{\text{WR}}$	Function
0	1	1	0	MPU Writes Instructions in the Control Register
0	1	0	1	MPU Reads Status from the Status Register
0	0	1	0	MPU Outputs Data to the Data Buffer
0	0	0	1	MPU Accepts Data from the Data Buffer
1	X	X	X	USART Is Not Selected

Identify port addresses of the control register and the data register in Figure 15.10 and explain the functions of each control register.

Example 15.1

Solution

In Figure 15.10, the address line A_0 is connected to the C/\overline{D} pin of the 8251A. When A_0 is high, the MPU communicates with the control register, and when it is low, it selects the data register. The 8251A is selected when the output line O_4 of the decoder goes low. Therefore, the control register is accessed with the port address $F9_H$, and the data register is accessed with the port address $F8_H$ as shown.

A_7	A_6	A_5	A_4	A_3	A_2	A_1	A_0		
1	1	1	1	1	0	0	1	$= F9_H$	Control Register
							0	$= F8_H$	Data Register
							\overline{CS}	C/\overline{D}	

The control register is an output port and the status register is an input port; they are identified by \overline{WR} and \overline{RD} signals even if their port addresses are the same.

The data register is selected when the C/\overline{D} line goes low. Thus, the port address of the data register is $F8_H$. The register is bidirectional, and the same address is used to receive or transmit data. The input and output functions are identified by \overline{RD} and \overline{WR} signals.

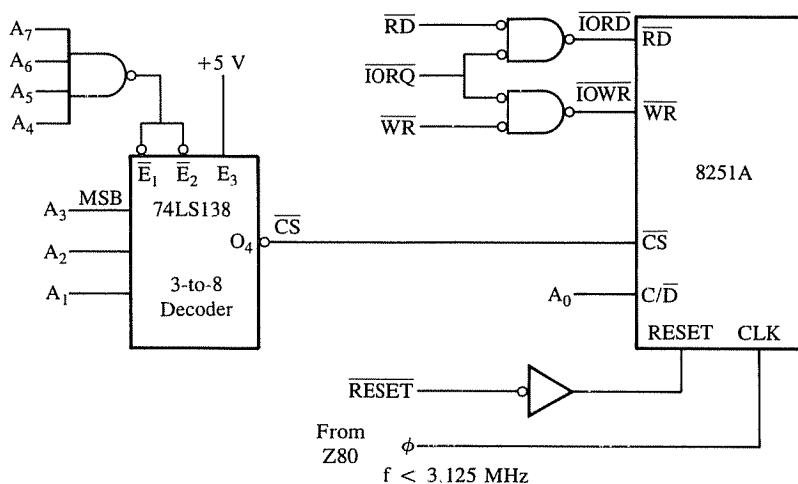


FIGURE 15.10
Interfacing the 8251A

The 8251A does not have $\overline{\text{IORQ}}$ signal; it has $\overline{\text{RD}}$ and $\overline{\text{WR}}$ signals. However, the Z80 identifies its I/O operation using the $\overline{\text{IORQ}}$ signal. Therefore, the control signals $\overline{\text{IORQ}}$ and $\overline{\text{IOWR}}$ are generated by ANDing (physically OR gate) $\overline{\text{RD}}$ and $\overline{\text{WR}}$ with the $\overline{\text{IORQ}}$ signal as shown in Figure 15.10. The $\overline{\text{RESET}}$ signal from the Z80 can reset the 8251A, thus clearing all the previous commands, and the Z80 clock signal is used by the 8251A to perform internal functions.

15.33 Transmitter Section

The transmitter accepts parallel data from the MPU and converts them into serial data. It has two registers: a buffer register to hold 8 bits and an output register to convert 8 bits into a stream of serial bits (Figure 15.11). The MPU writes a byte in the buffer register, and whenever the output register is empty, the contents of the buffer register are transferred to the output register. This section transmits data on the TxD pin with the appropriate framing bits (Start and Stop). Three output signals and one input signal are associated with the transmitter section.

- TxD—Transmit Data: Serial bits are transmitted on this line.
- $\overline{\text{TxC}}$ —Transmitter Clock: This input signal controls the rate at which bits are transmitted by the USART. The clock frequency can be 1, 16, or 64 times the baud.
- TxRDY—Transmitter Ready: This is an output signal. When it is high, it indicates that the buffer register is empty and the USART is ready to accept a byte. It can be used

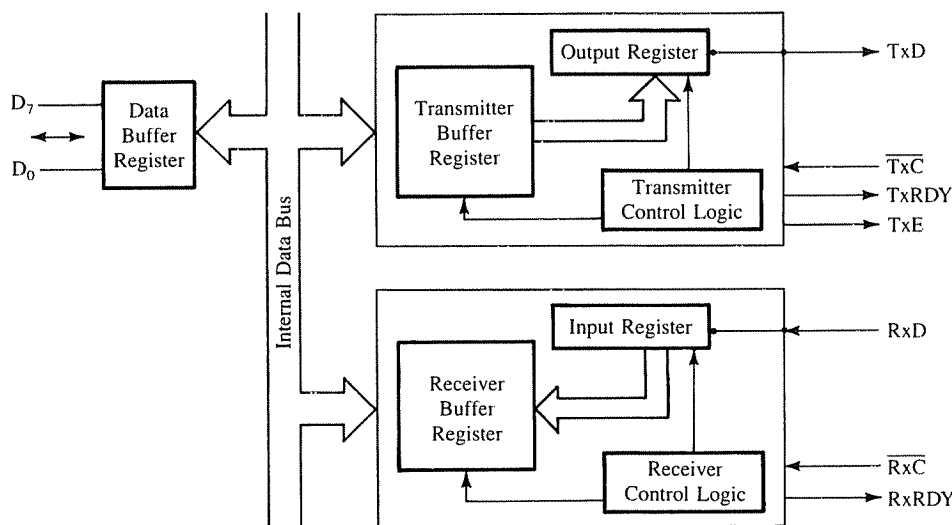


FIGURE 15.11

The 8251A. Expanded Block Diagrams of Transmitter and Receiver Sections

either to interrupt the MPU or to indicate the status. This signal is reset when a data byte is loaded into the buffer.

- TxE—Transmitter Empty: This is an output signal. Logic 1 on this line indicates that the output register and the buffer register are empty. This signal is reset when a byte is transferred from the buffer to the output register.

15.34 Receiver Section

The receiver accepts serial data on the Rx_D line from a peripheral and converts them into parallel data. The section has two registers: the receiver input register and the buffer register (Figure 15.11). When the Rx_D line goes low, the control logic assumes it is a Start bit, waits for half a bit time, and samples the line again. If the line is still low, the input register accepts the next bits, forms a character, and loads it into the buffer register. Subsequently, the parallel byte is transferred to the MPU when requested. In the asynchronous mode, two input signals and one output signal are necessary.

- Rx_D—Receive Data: Bits are received serially on this line and converted into a parallel byte in the receiver input register.
- Rx_C—Receiver Clock: This is a clock signal that controls the rate at which bits are received by the USART. In the asynchronous mode the clock can be set to 1, 16, or 64 times the baud.
- RxRDY (Receiver Ready): This is an output signal. It goes high when the USART has a character in the buffer register and is ready to transfer it to the MPU. This line can be used either to indicate the status or to interrupt the MPU.

15.35 Programming the 8251A

To implement serial communication, the MPU must inform the 8251A of all details such as mode, baud, Stop bits, and parity. Therefore, prior to data transfer, a set of control words must be loaded into the 16-bit control register of the 8251A. In addition, the MPU must check the readiness of a peripheral by reading the status register. The control words are divided into two formats: mode word and command word. The mode word specifies the general characteristics of operation (such as baud, parity, number of Stop bits), and the command word enables data transmission and/or reception. The status word, which can be read by the MPU, provides information concerning register status and transmission errors. Figure 15.12 shows the definitions of these words.

To program the 8251A in the asynchronous mode, the following sequence of steps must be followed.

1. Reset the 8251A. This can be done either through a system reset (RESET signal) or software reset of the 8251A (bit D₆ in the command word).
2. Write a mode word in the control register to specify baud, parity, number of stop bits (see Figure 15.12(a) for definition). This word must be followed by a command word (see Step 3).
3. Write a command word in the control register to enable data transfer (see Figure

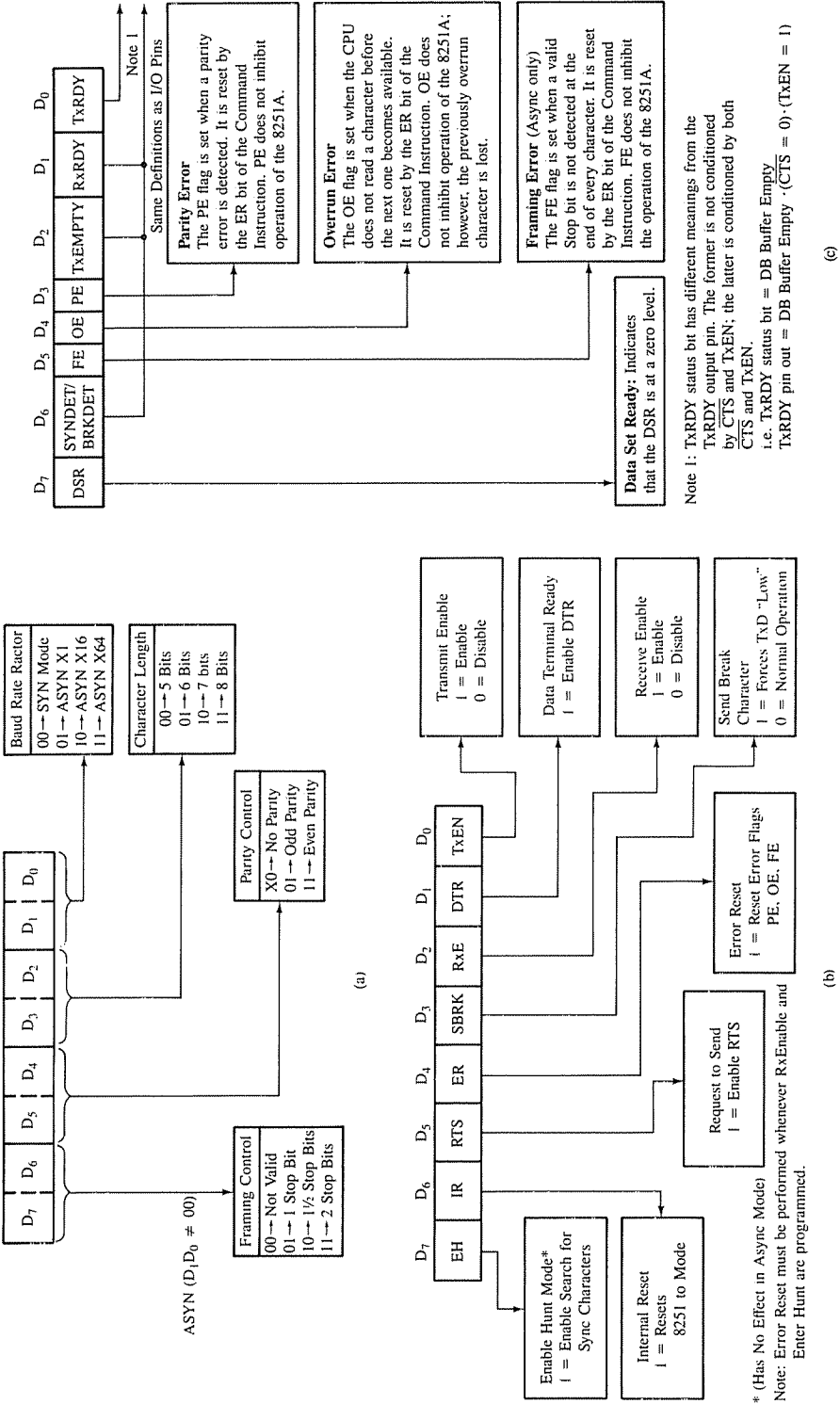


FIGURE 15.12
(a) Mode Word, (b) Command Word, and (c) Status Word Format
SOURCE: (a and c) Reprinted by permission of Intel Corporation, copyright 1981.

15.12(b) for definition). The command word can be changed anytime during the operation without resetting the 8251A.

4. To modify the mode word, the 8251A must be reset prior to writing a new mode word. This can be accomplished by setting bit D_6 to logic 1 in the command word.

The 8251A is designed to recognize the first word written to the control register as a mode word. However, the software reset is accomplished by the bit D_6 in the command word. If we were to load a command word with bit $D_6 = 1$, it would be interpreted as the mode word. The solution to this dilemma is to send the first word as a dummy mode word, followed by the command word that resets the 8251A. Therefore, the sequence of programming the 8251 is as follows:

1. Send dummy mode word (00) to the control register.
2. Send command word with bit $D_6 = 1$ to reset the 8251A.
3. Send mode word to specify communication parameters (baud, parity, etc.).
4. Send command word to enable transmission/reception.

After this sequence, any word sent to the control register will be interpreted as a command word until the 8251A is reset. The above sequence is adequate in most situations; however, on rare occasions the 8251A may be set up for synchronous mode by a random word when the system is turned on. In such a case, it would interpret the next two words written in the control register as Sync characters. Therefore, to deal with the worst possible situation at power turned on, three dummy words are sent to the control register, followed by the command word to reset the 8251A.

Figure 15.10 shows a schematic of interfacing the 8251A with the Z80 MPU.

Example
15.2

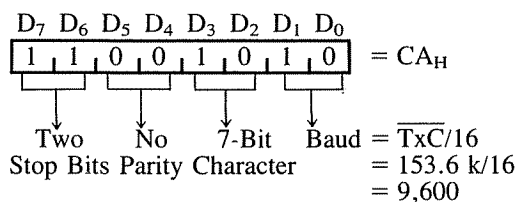
1. Identify the mode and the command words to initialize the 8251A to transmit data with the following requirements:

- ☐ Asynchronous mode with 9,600 baud.
- ☐ Character length: seven bits and two Stop bits.
- ☐ No parity check.

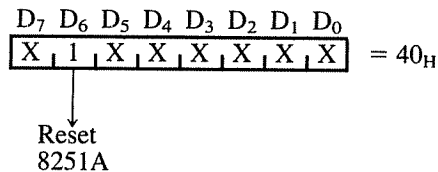
2. Write a subroutine SETUP to initialize the 8251A.

Solution

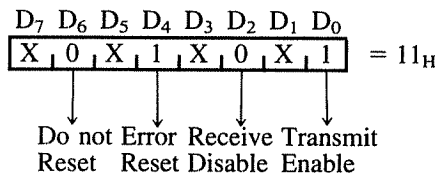
1. The mode word to meet the requirements is as follows (refer to Figure 15.12(a):



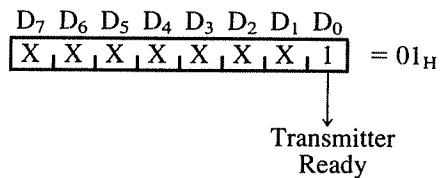
Reset command word—Figure 15.12(b):



Command word to enable transmitter—Figure 15.12(b):



Status Word—Figure 15.12(c):



2. Initialization Subroutine:

CNTRL	EQU F9H	;8251A control port address
PORT	EQU F8H	;8251A data port address
RESET	EQU 40H	;Reset command
MODE	EQU CAH	;Mode word
COMAND	EQU 11H	;Command word to enable transmitter
SETUP:	LD C, CNTRL	;Load control port address into C
	LD B, 00	;Load dummy word
	OUT (C), B	;Send dummy word three times
	OUT (C), B	
	OUT (C), B	
	LD B, RESET	;Load reset command
	OUT (C), B	;Reset 8251A
	LD B, MODE	;Load mode word = CAH
	OUT (C), B	;Specify communication parameters
	LD B, COMAND	;Load command word (11H) to enable transmission
	OUT (C), B	;Enable transmitter
	RET	

As the power is turned on, the 8251A can come up in either the asynchronous or the synchronous mode. If it is set up in the synchronous mode, it expects the next two words as Sync pulses. Therefore, this initialization routine sends three dummy words at the beginning; the first two will be interpreted as Sync characters and the third as the Mode word, which is followed by the Reset command word. Then the Mode and Command words are sent in a sequence. If the 8251A comes up in the asynchronous mode, it will interpret the first dummy word as the Mode word, followed by Command and Mode words; thus, it will interpret the Reset as a Command and not as a Mode word.

ILLUSTRATION: INTERFACING A RS-232 TERMINAL USING THE 8251A IN THE POLLED MODE

15.4

CRT terminals are serial I/O devices, generally connected using the RS-232C standard. The terminal has two sections: the ASCII keyboard as an input port and the video screen as an output port. To transmit data using the RS-232C standard, the TTL logic levels should be converted into RS-232C levels by using line drivers, and to receive data, line receivers should be used to convert back into TTL logic levels.

15.41 Problem Statement

1. Figure 15.13 shows a schematic of interfacing a CRT terminal using RS-232C. The port decoding logic is the same as in Figure 15.10 with the control port address $F9_H$ and the data port address $F8_H$. Explain the RS-232C signals and the operations of the line driver (MC 1488) and the line receiver (MC 1489).
2. Write a program to transmit a message from a Z80 single-board microcomputer to a CRT terminal under program control (status check). The requirements are as follows:
 - A message is stored in ASCII characters (without parity) in memory locations starting at $XX70_H$.
 - The message specifies the number of characters (excluding the first byte) to be transmitted in the first byte and concludes with the characters for the carriage return and the line feed.
 - Use subroutine SETUP to initialize the 8251A as in Example 15.2.
 - Explain the necessary modifications in the program to receive data into the Z80 system.

15.42 RS-232C Signals

In Figure 15.13, the addresses of the control port and the data port are $F9_H$ and $F8_H$, respectively; these addresses are from Figure 15.10. The transmit and receive signals are connected to the terminal using the line driver (MC 1488) and the line receiver (MC 1489), as shown in Figure 15.13. Line drivers and receivers are integrated circuits designed to

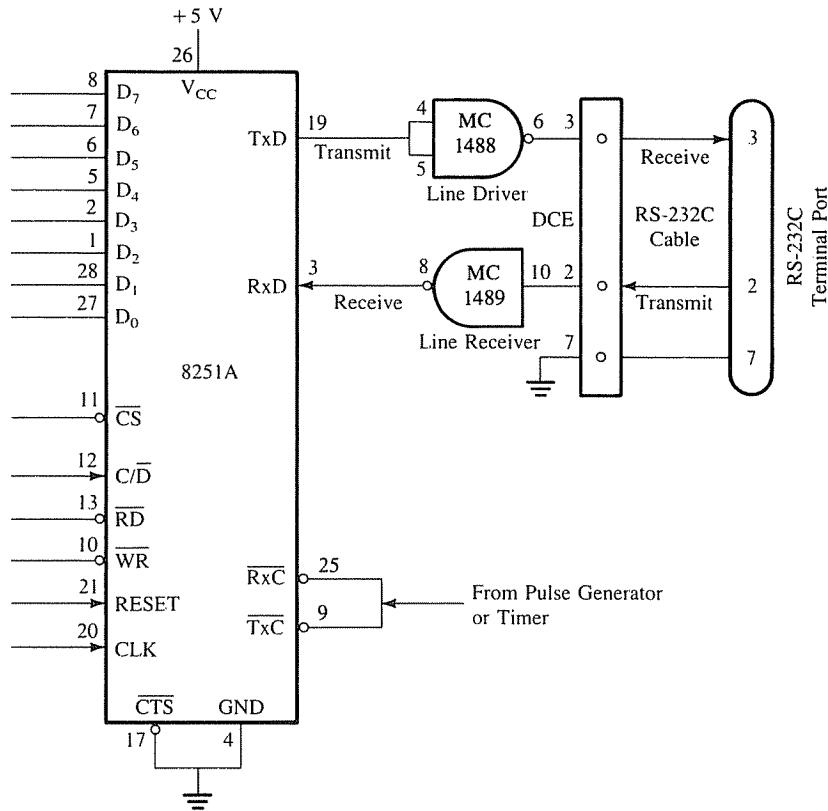


FIGURE 15.13

Schematic: Interfacing a CRT Terminal Using RS-232 with the 8251A in the Polled Mode

interface TTL logic levels with the RS-232C signal levels. They are used primarily in interfacing data terminal equipment (DTE) with data communication equipment (DCE).

Line Driver: MC 1488 This is a quad line driver which converts TTL input levels to a maximum $+15V_{DC}$ output signal. Typically, for logic 0 input ($< 0.8V_{DC}$) the output is around $+10V$, and for logic 1 input ($> +2.4V_{DC}$) the output is around $-10V$; thus, the positive true logic is converted into negative true logic for RS-232C signals. The internal circuit of the MC 1488 functions much like a comparator. For an input lower than the threshold voltage, the output approaches positive power supply voltage, and for an input higher than the threshold voltage, the output approaches negative power supply voltage.

Line Receiver: MC 1489 This is a quad line receiver which converts high voltage signals (typically $+15V$) into TTL logic levels. Output voltages usually range from $0.2V$ (low)

to 4.0 V (high). The internal circuit functions as an on/off transistor. When the transistor base has a negative input voltage, the transistor is turned off and the collector voltage (the output of the MC 1489) is high. When the transistor base has a positive input voltage, the transistor is driven into saturation to 0.2 V.

15.43 Program

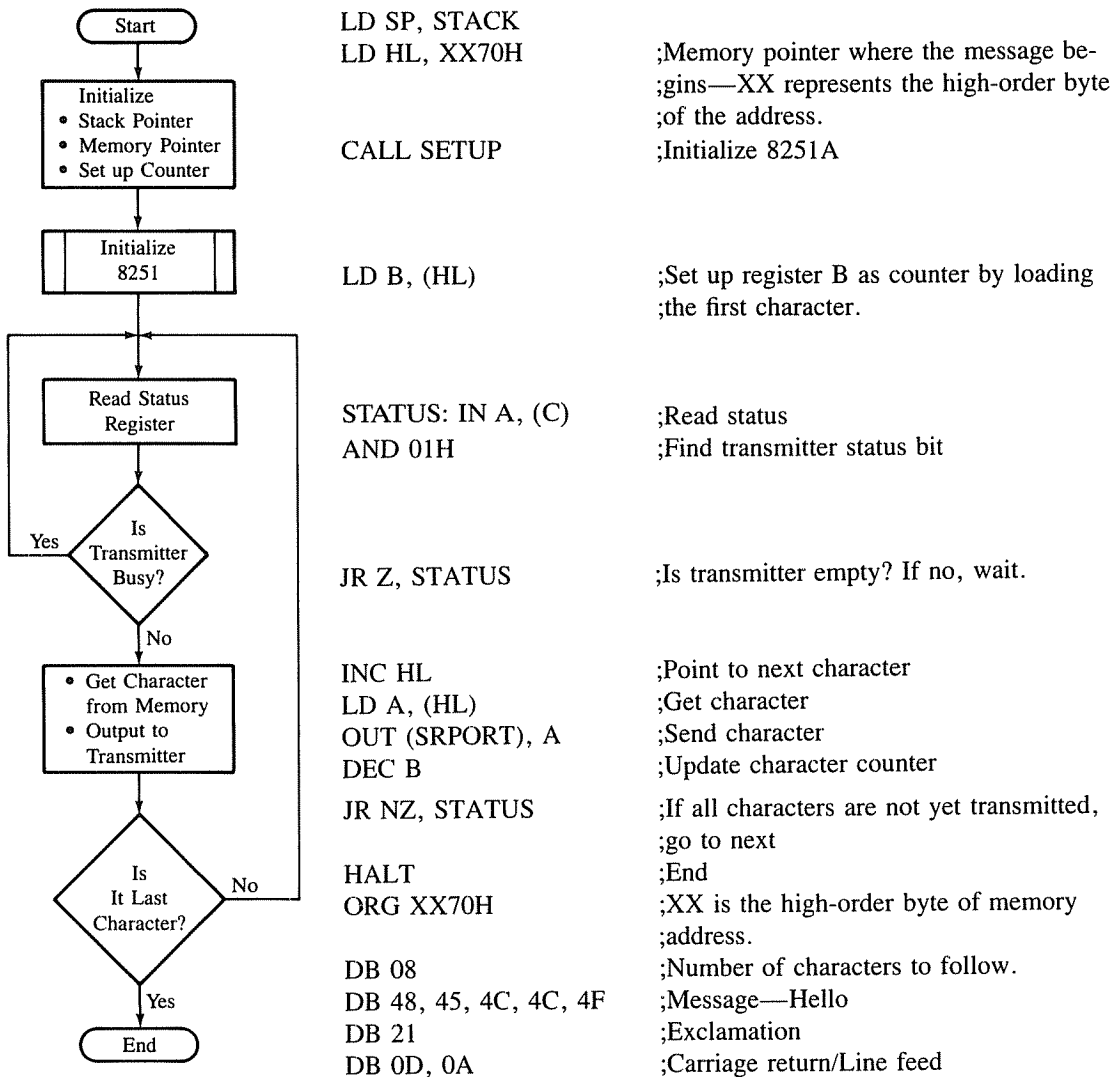


FIGURE 15.14

Flowchart: Transmission from Microcomputer to Terminal

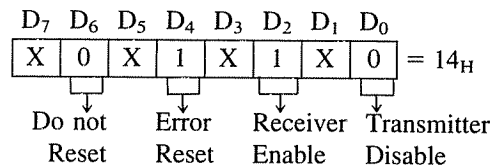
PROGRAM DESCRIPTION

According to the problem statement, the first character of the message specifies the number of characters to be transmitted. Therefore, the instruction LD B, (HL) loads the first character (in this case 08_H) into register B and sets that register as counter. The subroutine SETUP (described earlier in Example 15.2) initializes the 8251A for the given specifications.

The next group of instructions, starting with the label STATUS, continues to read the status port and check bit D₀ until it is 1. Bit D₀ indicates the status of the transmitter; logic 1 indicates that the transmitter buffer is empty and ready for the next character. When bit D₀ goes to logic 1, the program points to the next character, loads it into the accumulator, and sends it to the transmitter. This loop is repeated until the counter B becomes 0, indicating the completion of the message.

15.44 Data Reception

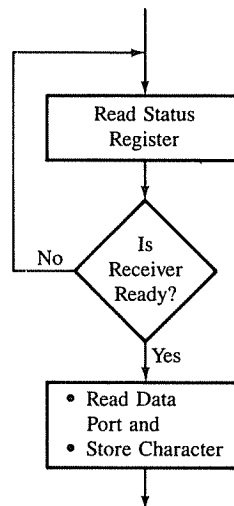
To receive data from the terminal, the command word should be modified to enable the receiver section of the 8251A by setting D₂ = 1. Thus, to enable only the receiver, the command word is as follows:



The program for data reception (Figure 15.15) should begin with reading the status port as in the transmission program and checking bit D₁ for receiver ready, instead of bit D₀ for

FIGURE 15.15

Flowchart: Data Reception



transmitter ready (Figure 15.12(c)). When a character is placed into the receiver buffer by the terminal, bit D_1 is set to logic 1, and then the program should read the data port for the character.

SERIAL INPUT/OUTPUT CONTROLLERS: Z80 SIO AND DART

15.5

The Z80 **Serial Input/Output Controller (SIO)** is another commonly used programmable device in serial communication. It has two channels (equivalent of two devices), and both channels can be used for asynchronous or synchronous communication. It is functionally similar to the Intel 8251A (Section 15.3), but includes two channels and additional features such as CRC error check. It is a versatile device, but requires many more programming instructions to set up than does the 8251A. The Z80 **DART (Dual Asynchronous Receiver/Transmitter)** is similar to the SIO, but it is designed to handle only asynchronous serial communication. It also has two channels, and they are identical to the asynchronous sections of the SIO.

In 8-bit microprocessors, serial communication is generally asynchronous; thus, we will focus on applications using the DART or the asynchronous section of the SIO. The SIO can be set up to communicate data in three different ways: program control (status check), interrupt control, and block transfer. In the last section, we illustrated the 8251A under program control; in this section, we focus on interrupt control.

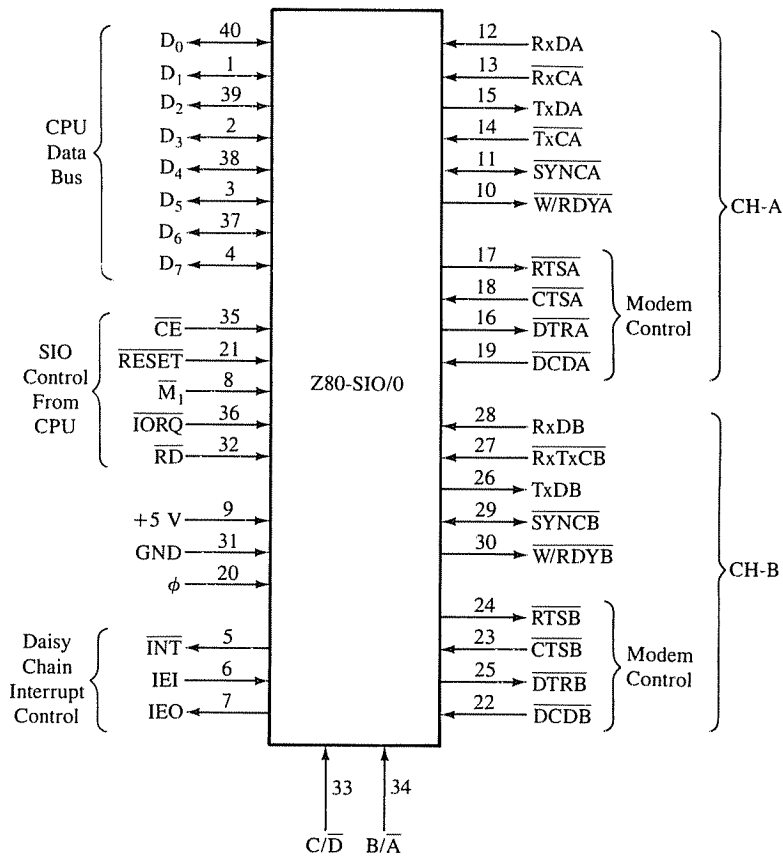
15.51 The Z80 SIO and DART: Overview

The Z80 SIO is a dual channel interfacing device in a 40-pin package as shown in Figure 15.16(a). The logic pin-out shows seven sections: Channel A and Channel B, modem control for each channel, parallel data bus, control signals for interfacing, and interrupt control.

Channel A and Channel B are two independent channels and can support both asynchronous and synchronous communications. The SIO has a versatile interrupt structure and can be used to set up daisy-chained interrupt priority. The parallel data bus and the control signals are used to interface the device with the Z80, and the modem control signals are used for communication through telephone lines.

The SIO has three versions: **SIO/0**, **SIO/1**, and **SIO/2**. The internal structure of these versions is identical; however, to provide all the necessary signals for two independent channels, 41 pins are necessary. To accommodate 41 signals in a 40-pin package, one function must be restricted or combined with some other pin. For example, channel B of the SIO/0 has a common clock for the receiver and the transmitter; thus, the clock frequency for the receiver and the transmitter must be the same.

The DART is designed to support only asynchronous communication; it is functionally and architecturally identical with the asynchronous section of the SIO. Figure 15.16(c) shows the pin-out of the DART. It is pin compatible with the Z80 SIO/0 except for two pins, which can be used for general-purpose inputs or ignored.



(a) Z80-SIO/0 Pin Configuration

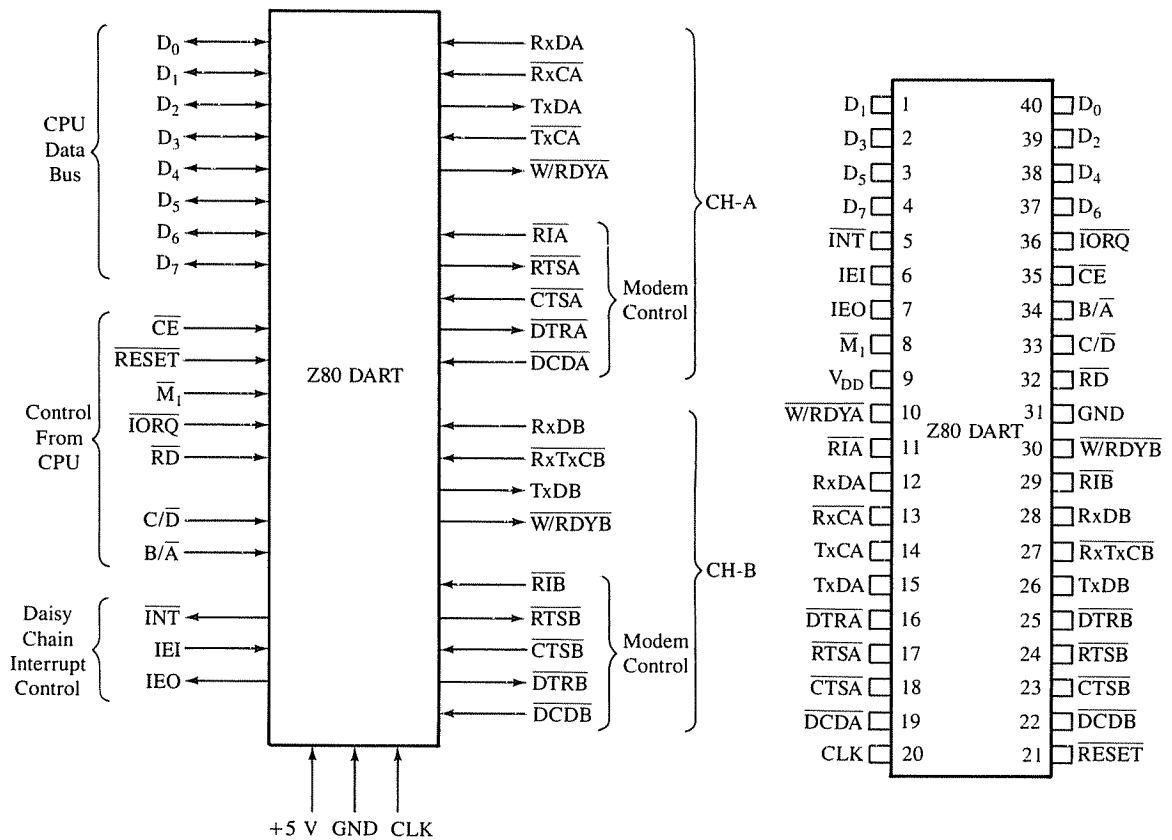
FIGURE 15.16

Z80 SIO/0 and DART Logic and Pin Configurations

SOURCE: Courtesy of Zilog, Inc.

Figure 15.17 shows the expanded block diagram of the DART (or the asynchronous section the SIO) with Channel A only. The Read/Write control section and the data bus are used for interfacing the device with the MPU. The device includes several control and status registers shown as the Control/Status block. The parameters of communications, such as number of bits per character, parity, and transmission rate in relation to the clock have to be specified or programmed. Prior to implementing communication, these control registers must be programmed.

To transmit a byte, the MPU accesses the device through a port address and sends a parallel byte. The control and status circuitry of Channel A frames the byte by adding a Start bit, Stop bits and a parity bit, places it into the register to transmit data, and then



(b) Z80 DART Pin Functions

(c) Pin Assignments

FIGURE 15.16 (continued)

transmits one bit at a time by using the shift register. The baud is determined by the transmitter clock and multiplying factor specified in the control register. To receive data, the process is reversed. In addition, the data go through error logic to check errors. The following sections describe various signals and illustrate the serial communication process.

15.52 Read/Write Control Logic and Interfacing

To interface the DART (or the SIO) with the Z80, the signals are as follows:

- D₀–D₇—Data Bus: This is a tri-state bidirectional data bus that transfers data and commands between the Z80 and the SIO.
- B/ \overline{A} —Channel Select: This signal selects either channel A or channel B for communication. When it is logic 1, channel B is selected, and when it is logic 0, channel A is selected. Address line A₀ from the Z80 is generally connected to this signal.

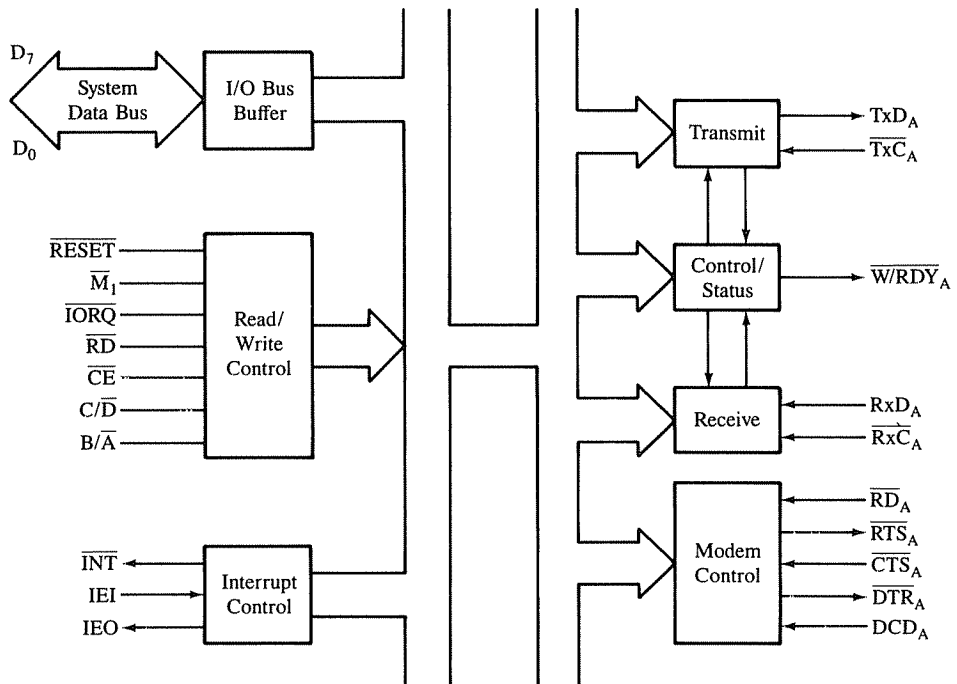


FIGURE 15.17

Z80 DART: Expanded Block Diagram of Channel A

- $\overline{C/D}$ —Control or Data: This signal selects either the control register or the data register of the selected channel. When this signal is logic 1, the MPU communicates with the control register either to write a command or read the status. When this signal is logic 0, the MPU either writes a byte in the data register to transmit or reads a byte from the receiver. Address line A_1 from the Z80 is generally connected to this signal.
- \overline{CE} —Chip Enable: When this signal goes low, it indicates that the SIO has been selected for communication. The decoded address bus is usually connected to this signal. The address lines connected to signals \overline{CE} , $\overline{C/D}$, and $\overline{B/A}$ determine the port addresses of the control register and the data register. Table 15.4 summarizes the active levels of these signals and the control signals.
- ϕ —System Clock: This is a single phase clock input from the system; it synchronizes the internal operations of the SIO.
- \overline{RESET} —Reset: This is an active low signal that disables all the SIO operations, including interrupts. After a reset, the control registers must be rewritten to transmit or receive.
- \overline{IORQ} (I/O Request), $\overline{M_1}$ (Machine Cycle 1), and \overline{RD} (Read): These are three active low

signals that perform Read/Write/Interrupt Acknowledge operations as described below:

1. *Read.* This operation is performed when $\overline{\text{IORQ}}$ and $\overline{\text{RD}}$ are active low and $\overline{\text{M}}_1$ is high. In this operation, the Z80 either receives a data byte or reads a status from the status register.
2. *Write.* This operation is performed when $\overline{\text{IORQ}}$ is active low, but $\overline{\text{RD}}$ and $\overline{\text{M}}_1$ are high; the SIO does not have a separate signal for the Write operation. In this operation, the Z80 either writes a command in the control register or transfers a byte for transmission.
3. *Interrupt Acknowledge.* The Z80 acknowledges an interrupt by asserting $\overline{\text{IORQ}}$ and $\overline{\text{M}}_1$ signals low, and the SIO places its interrupt vector on the data bus.

The control operations, the active level of the associated signals, and port selection are summarized in Table 15.4; Example 15.3 illustrates interfacing of the SIO with the Z80.

TABLE 15.4
Summary of Control Signals and Port Selection of Z80 SIO/DART

$\overline{\text{IORQ}}$	$\overline{\text{RD}}$	$\overline{\text{M}}_1$	CE	C/D	B/A	Function and Port Selection
0	1	1	0	0	0	Z80 Selects Channel A for Data Transmission
			0	0	1	Z80 Selects Channel B for Data Transmission
			0	1	0	Z80 Writes Command in Channel A Control Register
			0	1	1	Z80 Writes Command in Channel B Control Register
0	0	1	0	0	0	Z80 Selects Channel A for Data Reception
			0	0	1	Z80 Selects Channel B for Data Reception
			0	1	0	Z80 Reads Channel A Status Register
			0	1	1	Z80 Reads Channel B Status Register
			1	X	X	SIO Is Not Selected
0	1	0				SIO acknowledges an interrupt and a vector address is placed on the data bus

Example 15.3

Determine the port addresses of the Z80 SIO control registers and data registers shown in Figure 15.18.

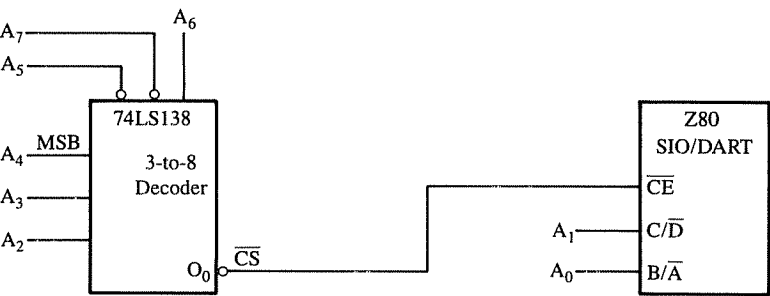


FIGURE 15.18
Interfacing Z80 SIO/DART

Solution

According to Table 15.4, the SIO is selected when the \overline{CE} signal goes low, and the \overline{CE} goes low when the output line O_0 of the decoder is asserted active low. By combining the logic levels of A_7 – A_2 with those of A_1 and A_0 , the port addresses range from 40_H to 43_H as shown.

A_7	A_6	A_5	A_4	A_3	A_2	A_1	A_0	
						C/\overline{D}	B/\overline{A}	
0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	$= 40_H$ Channel A data register
						0	1	$= 41_H$ Channel B data register
						1	0	$= 42_H$ Channel A control register
						1	1	$= 43_H$ Channel B control register

15.53 Transmitter and Receiver Sections

When the MPU writes into the channel A data register, the byte is placed into the Transmit Data register of the transmitter section (Figure 15.19). The byte is properly framed by adding Start and Stop bits according to the instructions written into the control register during the initialization of the device. Then the framed byte is transmitted one bit at a time over the TxDA line by use of the shift register. The rate of transmission is determined by the transmitter clock and the scaling factor specified in the control register. The data transmission rate can be specified as 1, 1/16, 1/32, or 1/64 of the clock.

The receiver section has one 8-bit Receive Shift register and three buffer registers (Figure 15.19) arranged in the FIFO (first-in-first-out) format. The shift register receives bits over the RxDA line and converts the bits into a parallel word. This word is placed in

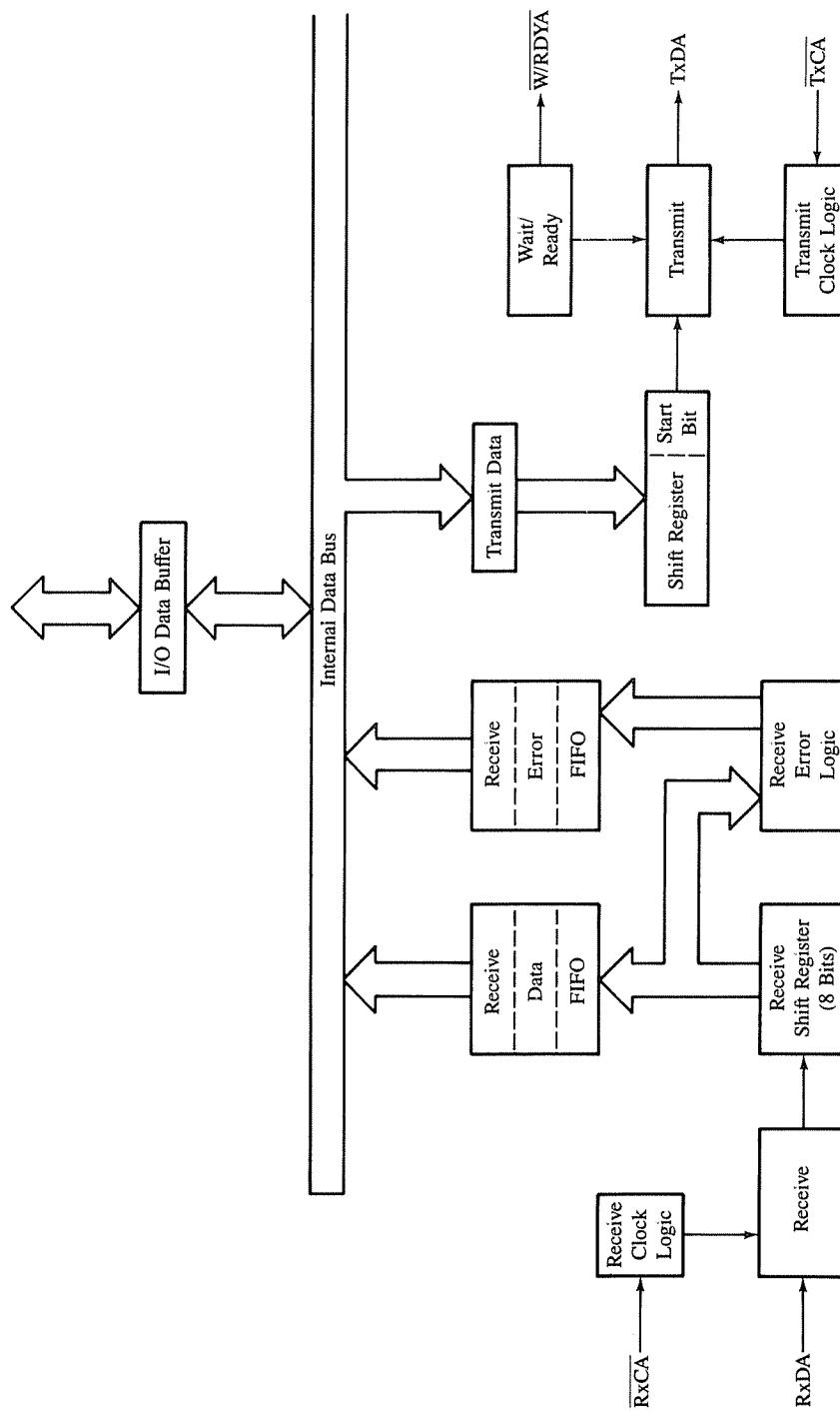


FIGURE 15.19
Z80 DART: Receive and Transmit Internal Block Diagram
SOURCE: Courtesy of Zilog, Inc.

the buffer register that can be read by the MPU. Three buffer registers can store three bytes, thus allowing the MPU sufficient time for an interrupt service if needed. The incoming data also go through the error logic section, which also has three registers. Status information associated with each byte and errors such as parity, framing error, and overrun are stored in Receive Error registers. The rate of reception is again determined by the receiver clock and the scaling factor. The line called W/RDYA shown in Figure 15.19 synchronizes the data transfer (described later in more detail).

Although Figure 15.19 shows only the internal structure of Channel A of the DART, the discussion is equally valid for Channel B and the asynchronous section of the SIO. Five signals associated with this section are described below:

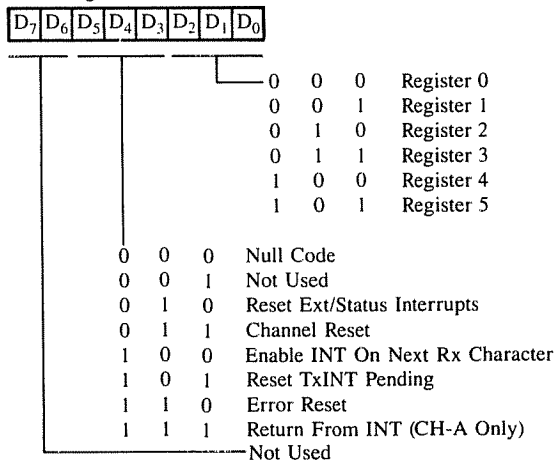
- TxDA—Transmit Data: This is an output signal, and serial bits are transmitted on this line.
- TxCA—Transmitter Clock: This is an input clock signal, and the clock frequency can be 1, 16, 32, or 64 times the transmission data rate. However, this scaling factor must be the same for both the transmitter and the receiver.
- RxDA—Receive Data: Bits are received serially on this line.
- RxCA—Receiver Clock: This is an input clock signal for the receiver, and the clock frequency can be 1, 16, 32, or 64 times the data rate.
- W/RDYA—Wait/Ready: This is an output signal defined during the initialization of the device and used for two functions. When this line is defined as a Wait function, it has the characteristics of the open drain logic, and it synchronizes the data transfer between the device and the MPU by adding Wait states. When it is defined as a Ready function, it can be driven high or low, and it is used in conjunction with the DMA (Direct Memory Access) controller.

Channel B includes all the above signals except that it has only one clock signal used for both transmission and reception. The SIO has one additional signal called SYNC that is used in the synchronous communication.

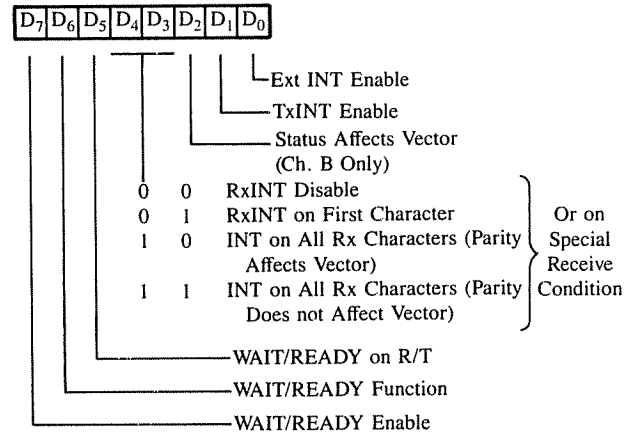
15.54 Programming the SIO and DART

In the asynchronous format, the SIO and the DART can be set up to handle serial data transfer in three modes: polling, interrupt, and block transfer. However, prior to implementing data transfer, a series of commands must be issued to define various communication parameters such as number of bits in a character, number of Stop bits, and parity. These commands are issued using the **Write Registers (WR)** in the control section. Similarly, to synchronize the communication, the MPU needs to check the readiness of the peripheral, examine error conditions, and obtain information concerning the interrupt vector. The MPU performs these tasks by reading the status from **Read Registers (RR)**. The DART has six Write Registers (WR0–WR5), shown in Figure 15.20, which are used to specify the communication parameters. It has three Read Registers (RR0–RR2), shown in Figure 15.21, which are used for status information. The SIO has two additional Write Registers (WR6–WR7) that are used only for synchronous communication. This type of architecture raises the question: How does the MPU write in these six (or eight in the SIO)

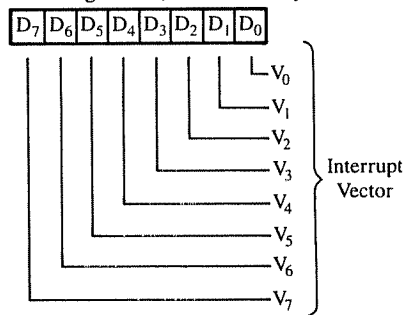
Write Register 0



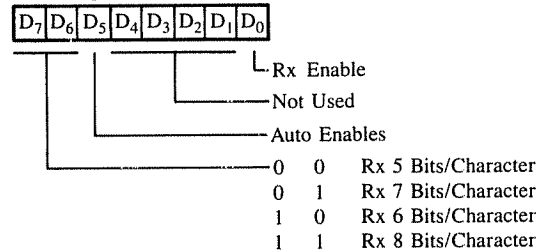
Write Register 1



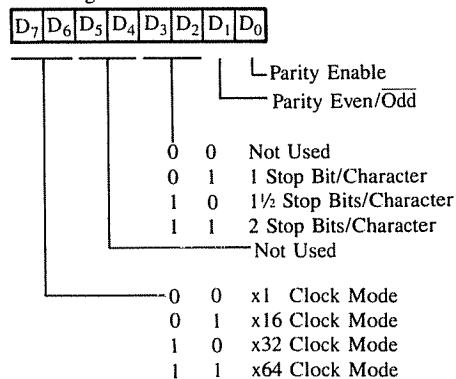
Write Register 2 (Channel B Only)



Write Register 3



Write Register 4



Write Register 5

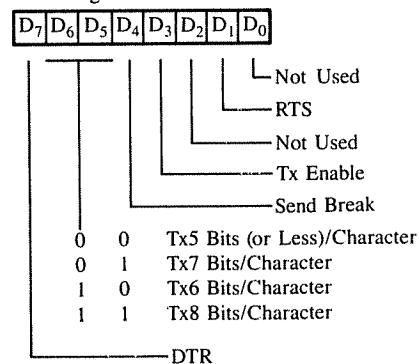
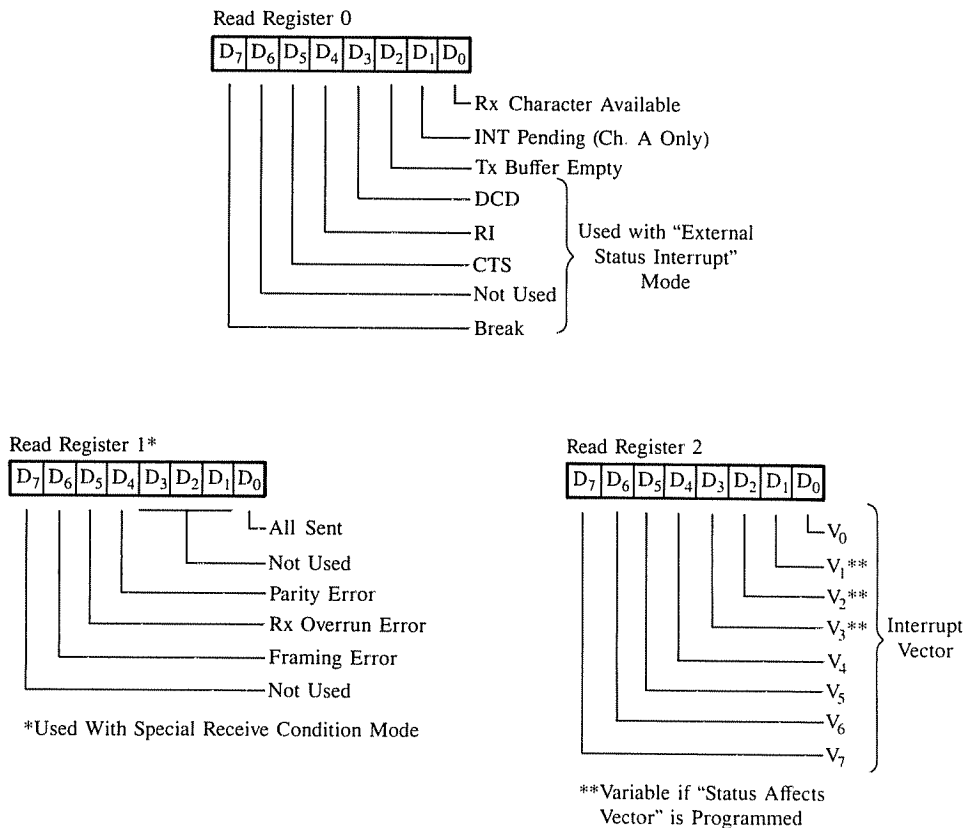


FIGURE 15.20

Z80 DART: Write Registers

SOURCE: Courtesy of Zilog, Inc.

**FIGURE 15.21**

Z80 DART: Read Registers

SOURCE: Courtesy of Zilog, Inc.

registers and read three different status registers using one port address of the control register? This dilemma is resolved by using three bits (D₂–D₀) of the WR0 register as a pointer to the remaining registers; thus, each command issued through WR1–WR5 requires two bytes: one to the WR0 register to set up the pointer, and the other to write a command into the specified register. The Read and Write operations are differentiated by the Read and Write control signals of the MPU.

Both channels A and B have identical architecture, except that register WR2 is included only in Channel B. When the device is set up to handle the interrupt mode, register WR2 is used to specify the low-order address of the interrupt vector, and this address can be used by both channels. Figure 15.20 shows bit definitions for Write Registers and Figure 15.21 shows the bit definitions of the Read (status) Registers. The

functions of the Write Registers are briefly described here and illustrated in Examples 15.4 and 15.5. The Read (status) Registers are explained later.

WRITE REGISTERS

- WR0 (Write Register 0): This is a special register; bits D_0 – D_2 are used as pointers to the remaining registers and bits D_3 – D_5 are used to issue initialization commands. Bits D_7 – D_6 should be 00; they are used in Synchronous communication only.
- WR1 (Write Register 1): The bits in this register define various interrupt and Wait/Ready modes.
- WR2 (Write Register 2—Channel B only): This register is used to store the low-order address of the interrupt vector, and it can be used by the interrupts in both channels. The vector is automatically modified based on the status of bit D_2 in register WR1.
- WR3 (Write Register 3): The bits in this register define receiver parameters and enable the receiver.
- WR4 (Write Register 4): This register contains bits that define communication parameters such as Stop bits, parity, and baud multiplying factor.
- WR5 (Write Register 5): The bits in this register define transmitter parameters and enable the transmitter.
- WR6–WR7 (Write Registers 6–7): These registers are included in the SIO only and used for synchronous communication.

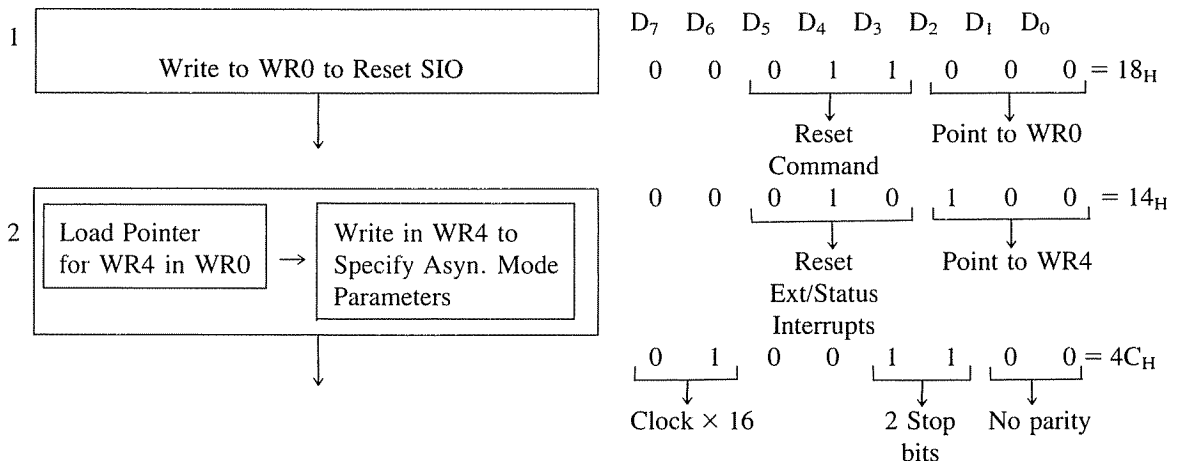
Draw a flowchart and give bit definitions to initialize the Z80 SIO or DART to meet the following specifications:

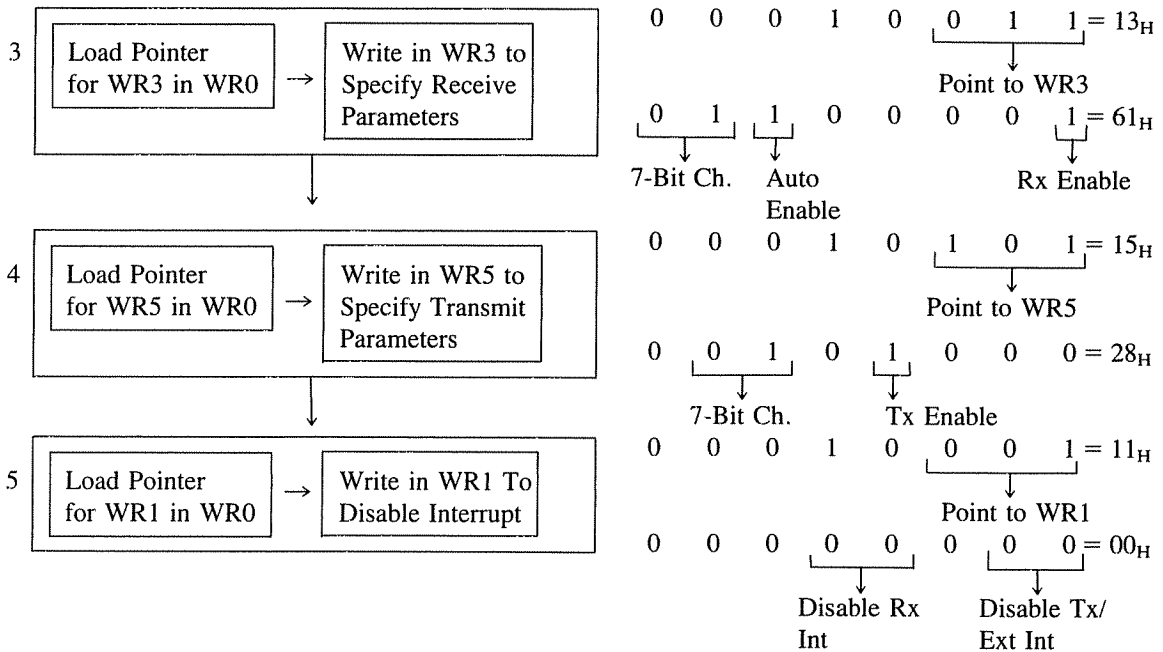
**Example
15.4**

1. Asynchronous transmission/receiver format without interrupts.
2. 7-bit character, two Stop bits, no parity, frequency multiplying factor = 16.

To initialize the SIO in the asynchronous mode, register WR0 is used to reset the device and as a pointer to other registers. The steps are as follows:

Solution



**Example 15.5**

Write a subroutine to initialize channel A of the DART shown in Figure 15.18 to meet the specifications of Example 15.4.

Solution

As shown in Example 15.3, the channel A control port address is 42_H. Referring to bit definitions in Example 15.4, we can write the instructions using register C as follows. However, the coding can be substantially reduced by using the instruction OTIR (see Assignment 29).

DATAA	EQU 40H	;Channel A data port address
CNTRLA	EQU 42H	;Channel A control port address
DART:	LD C, CNTRLA	;Load control port address into register C
	LD A, 18H	;Reset byte
	OUT (C), A	;Reset Channel A
	LD A, 14H	;Pointer for WR4
	OUT (C), A	
	LD A, 4CH	;Bit definitions for asynchronous communication
	OUT (C), A	;Specify parity, stop bits, clock multiplier
	LD A, 13H	;Pointer to WR3
	OUT (C), A	

LD A, 61H	;Bit definitions for receiver
OUT (C), A	;Enable receiver to receive 7-bit character
LD A, 15H	;Point to WR5
OUT (C), A	
LD A, 28H	;Bit definition for transmitter
OUT (C), A	;Enable transmitter to transmit 7-bit character
LD A, 11H	;Point to WR1
OUT (C), A	
LD A, 00H	;Byte to disable interrupts
OUT (C), A	;Disable interrupts
RET	;Initialization complete

READ REGISTERS

The SIO (DART) has three registers (RR0, and RR1, and RR2) that can be read by the MPU to obtain receiver/transmitter status information. Registers RR0 and RR1 are included in both channels; however, register RR2 is only in Channel B. The RR0 register can be read directly by accessing the control port; however, the remaining two registers have to be read by using the pointer bits in Write register WR0. Figure 15.21 shows bit definitions of the Read Registers. These registers are briefly described here and illustrated in the following examples.

- RR0 (Read Register 0): This register provides the status information of the receiver, transmitter, and the interrupts. Bit D₀ is set when a character is received, and bit D₂ is set when the transmitter buffer is empty.
- RR1 (Read Register 1): This register monitors errors in receiving data; bits in this register identify various types of the errors, such as parity, framing, and overrun. To read the information from this register, the pointer must be written in register WR0.
- RR2 (Read Register 2—Channel B only): The interrupt vector written in register WR2 of Channel B is available through this register for interrupts in both channels. If bit D₂ of Write Register WR1 is set, the vector address can be modified according to the interrupting source, and the modified address is returned to the MPU when the interrupt is acknowledged.

Assuming Channel A of the SIO or DART is initialized for asynchronous serial I/O with the polled mode, write a subroutine to receive a character and check for errors. The character should be stored in memory location INBUF, and if there are any errors, the contents of the status register RR1 should be stored in memory location ERRCHK.

Example
15.6

The availability of a character is indicated by bit D₀ in RR0. Therefore, in the polled mode, the program should continue to check bit D₀ until it is set.

Solution

```

READ:  IN A, (CNTRLA)      ;Read status register RR0
        BIT 0, A           ;Check bit D0
        JR Z, READ        ;Wait until character is available
        IN A, (PORTA)     ;Read character
        LD (INBUF), A     ;Store character
CHECK:  LD A, 01H          ;Load pointer for RR1
        OUT (CNTRLA), A   ;Select status register RR1
        IN A, (CNTRLA)    ;Read error flags in register RR1
        AND 70H           ;Mask all bits except D6, D5, D4
                           ;These are error flags (refer to Figure 15.21)
        LD (ERRCHK), A    ;Store error status.
        RET Z             ;No errors
RESET:  LD A, 30H          ;Reset command
        OUT (CNTRLA), A   ;Reset all error flags
        RET

```

Description The first instruction (IN) of this subroutine places the contents of the status register RR0 in the accumulator by reading the control port of Channel A. To read register RR0 does not require a pointer in WR0. Bit D₀ of the register RR0 indicates the availability of a character. Thus, the routine continues to check bit D₀ until it is set. Once a character is available, it is stored in memory location INBUF.

If there are errors in the received character, bits D₆ (framing), D₅ (overrun), and D₄ (parity) of register RR1 are set. However, to read register RR1, the pointer needs to be loaded into Write Register WR0. The subroutine reads RR1, logically ANDs its contents with 01110000, and saves the result for further action in location ERRCHK. If there are no errors, error bits (D₆, D₅, and D₄) are reset, the Z flag of the Z80 is set, and the program returns on the Z flag. If there are errors, the error bits are reset by sending the reset instruction to the control port.

Example 15.7

Assuming the SIO (DART) Channel A is initialized for the polled I/O, write a subroutine to send a character stored in memory location OUTBUF.

Solution

The status of the transmitter section is indicated by bit D₂ in register RR0. Therefore, the subroutine should continue to check bit D₂ in RR0 until it is set, at which time it should transmit the character.

```

                TRNSMT
STATUS:  IN A, (CNTRLA)    ;Read register RR0
        BIT 2, A          ;Check transmitter buffer if it is empty
        JR Z, STATUS      ;Wait until buffer is empty
        LD A, (OUTBUF)    ;Get character from memory
        OUT (PORTA), A    ;Send the character
        RET

```

15.55 The SIO (DART) In the Interrupt Mode

The SIO has a powerful interrupt scheme that can respond quickly to various sources of interrupts. In the previous examples of data transmission and reception in the polled mode, we have seen that the MPU is kept occupied continuously in polling, even if there is no character to transmit or receive. In the interrupt mode, the SIO will interrupt the MPU only on a need basis—such as when it has received a character, when the transmitter is empty, or under some special error conditions. The MPU is thus free to perform other functions.

Figure 15.22 shows three sources of interrupts: transmit, receive, and external status. In transmission, when the buffer becomes empty and the SIO is ready for the next character, an interrupt is generated. The external status interrupt is generated whenever there is a transition in status lines and when transmission conditions such as Transmit Underrun and Break occur.

The receive interrupt is somewhat complex in that it has two categories: one for the first character received and the second for every character received. The second category is similar to the transmit interrupt; whenever a character is received, an interrupt is generated. The first category is used primarily for the block transfer. In this case, when the first character arrives, an interrupt is generated, and then no other interrupt is generated until

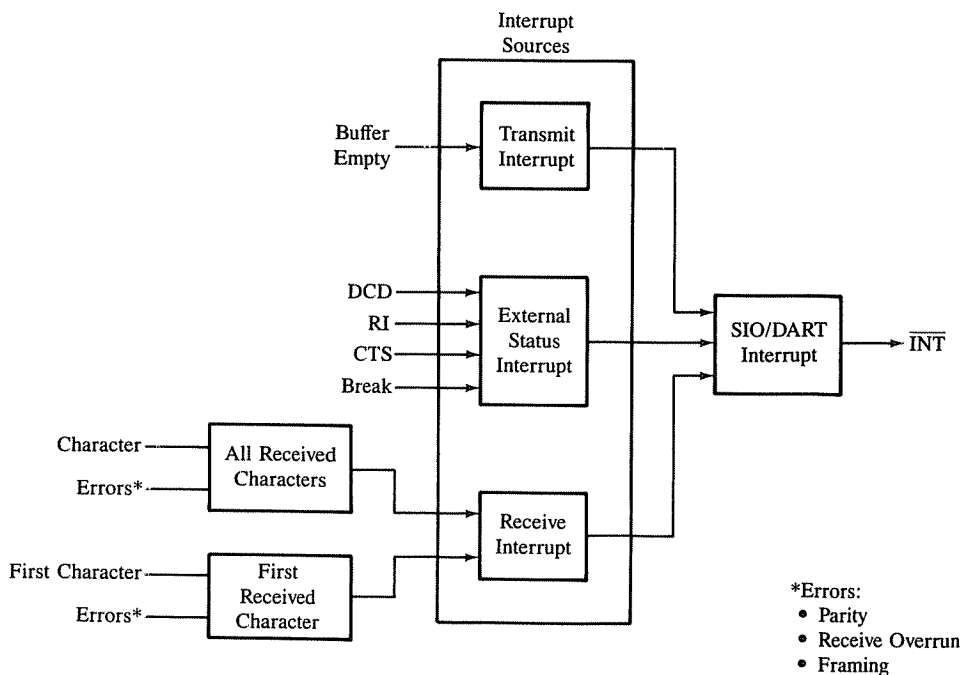


Figure 15.22
Z80 DART: Interrupt Structure

the block transfer is completed or a higher priority source requests a service. The receive interrupt can also be generated when errors occur. Once an interrupt is generated, it is necessary to identify the source of the interrupt. Two procedures can be used: polling and modifying the interrupt vector. For both methods, an interrupt vector must be loaded into register WR2 in Channel B during the initialization. In the polling method, once an interrupt is acknowledged, the program control will be transferred to the vector location. Then the service routine will identify the source of the interrupt by checking the status registers RR0 and RR1. In the other method, the interrupt vector in register WR2 is modified according to the interrupting source and eight different addresses can be generated, as shown in Table 15.5. The vectors shown in Table 15.5 are arranged according to their interrupt priorities, starting with the lowest priority 0; Channel B has lower priority than Channel A, and within each channel the interrupt generated by the receive errors (Special Receive Condition) has the highest priority. This is further illustrated in Example 15.8.

The Z80 SIO (DART) has three signals to handle the interrupts: one to generate an interrupt and the other two to set the priorities among various devices using the daisy chain scheme. The signals are as follows:

- $\overline{\text{INT}}$ —Interrupt Request: This is an open drain active low signal, and it is generated to acknowledge the conditions previously discussed.
- IEI—Interrupt Enable IN and IEO—Interrupt Enable Out: These signals are used to determine the priorities among devices in the system when multiple devices are connected in the interrupt driven mode. The functions of these signals are identical to those of IEI and IEO signals in the Z80 PIO and CTC described in the previous chapters.

Example 15.8

Add the necessary instructions in the initialization subroutine SETUP in Example 15.4 to include the interrupt mode with the interrupt vector at 80_H. The vector should be modified according to the interrupting source. Assuming the interrupt register in the Z80 contains the address 20_H, specify the vector addresses for the transmit interrupt in Channel A and the interrupt due to the parity error (refer to Table 15.5).

TABLE 15.5
Interrupt Vectors

Type of Interrupt		D ₇	D ₆	D ₅	D ₄	D ₃	D ₂	D ₁	D ₀	Hex	Priority
Channel B:	External/status Transition	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	= 02	0
	Transmitter Buffer Empty	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	= 00	1
	Received Character	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	= 04	2
	Special Receive Condition	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	0	= 06	3
Channel A:	External/status Transition	0	0	0	0	1	0	1	0	= 0A	4
	Transmitter Buffer Empty	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	= 08	5
	Received Character	0	0	0	0	1	1	0	0	= 0C	6
	Special Receive Condition	0	0	0	0	1	1	1	0	= 0E	7

Solution

Referring to the subroutine DART in Example 15.4, we find that three commands must be added to initialize the DART in the interrupt mode: one command in WR2 to specify the vector 80_H (Channel B), the second command to turn on bit D₂ in WR1 (Channel B) to enable modification of the interrupt vector, and the third command in WR1 to enable the interrupts. The second command is additional here because we are using only Channel A, and the third command replaces the last disable command in the previous routine. To load these commands, the register WR0 must be used as a pointer. The instructions are as follows:

```
LD A, 12H           ;Pointer to WR2
OUT (CNTRLB), A     ;Set up pointer to WR2
LD A, 80H           ;Low-order vector address
OUT (CNTRLB), A     ;Load vector into register WR2—Channel B
LD A, 11H           ;Point to WR1
OUT (CNTRLB), A
LD A, 04H           ;Bit D2 = 1 (status affects vector)
OUT (CNTRLB), A     ;Set bit D2 in Channel B
LD A, 12H           ;Byte to enable Tx, Rx (every received char.)
                     ; and parity error interrupt.
OUT (C), A          ;Enable interrupts
RET                 ;Initialization complete
```

By referring to Table 15.4 and using 20_H as the high-order address of the interrupt vector, we can identify the memory locations where the pointers are stored for various interrupts.

		D ₃	D ₂	D ₁	
1. Transmitter Buffer Empty	1 0 0 0	1	0	0	0 = 20 88 _H
2. Character Received	1 0 0 0	1	1	0	0 = 20 8C _H
3. Parity Error	1 0 0 0	1	1	1	0 = 20 8E _H

These vectors are situated two memory locations apart (208A_H is not included in this problem); thus can 16-bit addresses of various service routines be stored.

ILLUSTRATION: INTERFACING A RS-232 TERMINAL USING DART (SIO) IN THE INTERRUPT MODE

15.6

The DART requirements for the interrupt-driven serial I/O have been discussed in the previous sections. Examples 15.6 and 15.7 illustrated how to receive and transmit a character using the polled mode, and Example 15.8 illustrated how to initialize the SIO for the interrupt mode. We will now use these concepts to interface a RS-232 terminal to a Z80 system using the DART in the interrupt mode.

The microprocessor views the ASCII terminal as two different peripherals: the keyboard as an input and the CRT as an output display. When a key is pressed, the DART receives a serial stream of bits that can be read by the microprocessor. However, to display that character on the screen, the same byte should be sent out as an output to the screen; these are two distinct processes. The following illustration shows how ASCII characters are received and displayed on the screen.

15.61 Problem Statement

1. Interface an ASCII terminal with the Z80 system using the DART in the interrupt mode. Use the same decoding logic as in Example 15.3 to assign port addresses 40_H to the Channel A data port and 42_H to the Channel A control port.
2. Initialize the DART for the interrupt mode to meet the following specifications: (a) asynchronous format, (b) seven-bit character with even parity, (c) transmit and receive frequency = 16 times baud, (d) interrupts should be generated on Rx (All Received Characters), Tx, and parity error.
3. Write a service routine to receive a character when a key is pressed.
4. Write a service routine to transmit (echo) the received character to the CRT screen.

15.62 Problem Analysis

1. Figure 15.23 shows the interfacing circuit using the DART in the interrupt mode. The decoding logic is the same as in Example 15.3 with Channel A port addresses $POR_{TA} = 40_H$ and $CNTRLA = 42_H$. In addition, \overline{INT} of the DART is connected to the \overline{INT} signal of the Z80, and the IEI line of the DART is tied high with the assumption there are no other devices in the system.
2. The specifications are the same as in Example 15.8, with the interrupt vector at location 80_H .
3. Main Program: This program is quite simple; it involves initializing the stack and the high-order interrupt vector and calling the initialization subroutine SETUP. To illustrate how characters are received or transmitted in the interrupt-driven mode, the program should have an endless loop. In a real-life example, the MPU would be free to perform other tasks.

PORTA	EQU 40H	;Channel A: data port address
CNTRLA	EQU 42H	;Channel A: control port address
STACK	EQU 2100H	;Stack address
SIO:	LD SP, STACK	;Initialize the stack
	IM 2	;Set up Z80 in interrupt Mode 2
	LD A, 20H	;High-order interrupt vector
	LD (I), A	;Load vector into Interrupt Register
	CALL SETUP	;Initialize DART as in Example 15.8
WAIT:	JR WAIT	;Wait here until an interrupt occurs

4. The following service routine receives a character when the receive interrupt occurs and transmits the same character to the CRT by checking the status of bit D_2 in register RR0.

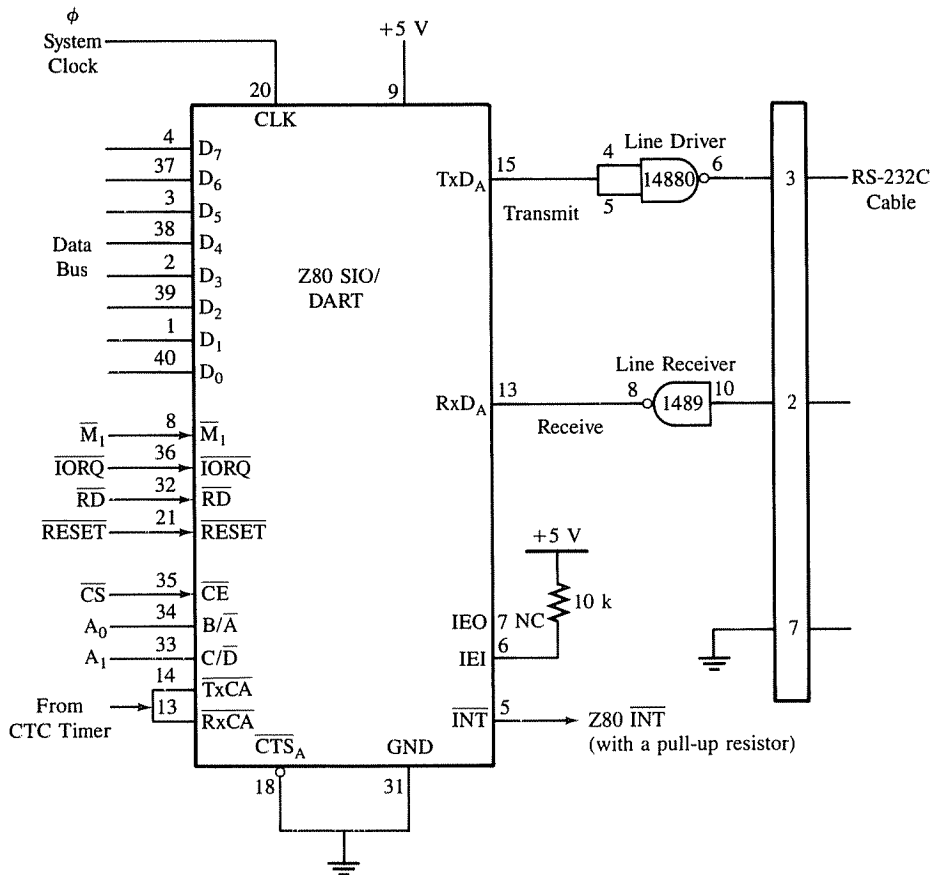


FIGURE 15.23

Interfacing a RS-232C Terminal with a Z80 System Using the DART in the Interrupt Mode

ECHO:	EX AF, AF'	;Save accumulator and flags
	PUSH BC	;Save contents of BC
	LD C, PORTA	;Load PORTA address into register C
	IN B, (C)	;Read received character in register B
STATUS:	IN A, (CNTRLA)	;Read status register RRO
	BIT 2, A	;Is transmitter buffer empty?
	JR Z, STATUS	;Wait until transmitter is ready
	OUT (C), B	;Send character to CRT
	EX AF, AF'	;Retrieve register contents
	POP BC	
	EI	;Enable interrupts
	RETI	

SUMMARY

In this chapter, we discussed the technique of serial I/O for data communication, whereby one bit is transferred over one line rather than using eight data lines to transfer a byte. The serial I/O technique is necessary for certain types of equipment and media such as magnetic tapes and telephone lines. The rate of data transfer in serial I/O is determined by the time delay between two successive bits. Therefore, a host of issues such as error check and synchronization of data transfer between the transmitter and the receiver need to be resolved. The serial I/O data transfer can be implemented using software techniques; however, programmable devices called USART (Universal Synchronous/Asynchronous Receiver/Transmitter) are commonly used in industrial and commercial products. Two such devices, the Intel 8251A and the Z80 SIO (DART), are discussed with illustrations in this chapter. The basic concepts involved in serial I/O can be summarized as follows:

1. In serial I/O communication, a word is transmitted one bit at a time over a single line by converting a parallel word into a stream of serial bits. On the other hand, a word is received by converting a stream of bits into a parallel word.
2. Serial data communication can be either synchronous or asynchronous. The synchronous mode is used for high-speed and the asynchronous mode for low-speed data communications.
3. The MPU identifies a serial peripheral through a decoded address and an appropriate control signal. Data transfer can be implemented using such methods as polling (status check), and interrupt.
4. In software-controlled serial transmission, the MPU converts a parallel word into serial bits by using time delays and transmits one bit at a time over one data line of an output port.
5. In software-controlled serial reception, the MPU converts a serial word into a parallel word by using time delays and receives bits over one data line.
6. The Intel 8251A is a programmable serial I/O device known as a USART, which can perform all the functions of software techniques and is commonly used in synchronous and asynchronous data communication.
7. The Z80 SIO (Serial Input/Output Controller) and DART (Dual Asynchronous Receiver/Transmitter) are also commonly used in serial I/O communication.

DEFINITION OF TERMS

- **ASCII** (American Standard Code for Information Interchange). A 7-bit alphanumeric code commonly used in computers.
- **EBCDIC** (Extended Binary Coded Decimal Interchange Code). An 8-bit alphanumeric code used primarily in IBM large computers.

- **Asynchronous Serial Data Transmission.** In this format, the transmitter is not synchronized with the receiver by the same master clock. A transmitted character includes information concerning the starting and ending of the character.
- **Synchronous Serial Data Transmission.** In this format, the transmitter is synchronized with the receiver by a common clock.
- **Simplex Transmission.** One-way data communication.
- **Duplex Transmission.** Two-way data communication. Full duplex is simultaneous in both directions and half duplex is one direction at a time.
- **Baud (Rate).** The number of signal changes per second. In serial I/O, it is equal to bits per second, the rate of data transmission.
- **Current Loop.** The transmission of serial data bits as current signals.
- **RS-232C.** A data communications standard that defines voltage signals in reference to data terminal equipment and data communication equipment.
- **RS-422A and -423A.** Data communication standards for high-speed data transmission.
- **USART (Universal Synchronous/Asynchronous Receiver/Transmitter).** A programmable chip designed for synchronous/asynchronous serial data communication.

ASSIGNMENTS

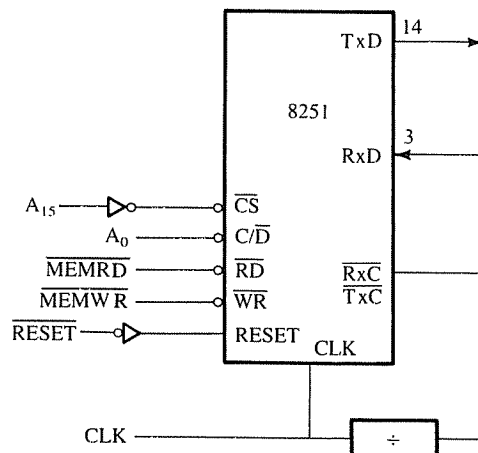
1. Explain the difference between asynchronous and the synchronous data transmission.
2. Explain the terms odd and even parity.
3. Calculate the bit time for 9,600 baud.
4. Sketch the serial output waveform for the ASCII character “A” when it is transmitted with 9,600 baud and even parity.
5. What is the Hex code necessary to transmit the ASCII character “H” with odd parity?
6. Sketch the serial output waveform for the ASCII sign “+” when it is transmitted with 2,400 baud and odd parity.
7. Explain the RS-232C serial I/O standard and specify the signals used in the minimum configuration.
8. Is a microcomputer connected as a DTE or DCE in the RS-232C standard serial I/O communication?
9. Show the RS-232C cable connections in the minimum configuration when a microcomputer and a printer are connected as DCEs.
10. In Figure 15.10, specify the control port and data port addresses if the address lines A_7 and A_0 are interchanged.
11. In Example 15.2 (Figure 15.10), change the mode word from CA_H to CB_H , and calculate the clock frequency for 1,200 baud.

12. In Example 15.2, change the mode word to meet the following specifications: 8-bit character, even parity, $1\frac{1}{2}$ Stop bits, and 2,400 baud ($TxC = 153.6$ kHz).
13. In Example 15.2, explain the consequences if the command word to enable the transmitter is changed to 51_H .
14. Write a program to transmit letters A to Z from the MPU to the terminal in Figure 15.13.
15. Write a subroutine to accept a letter from the CRT terminal (Figure 15.13).
16. In Figure 15.13, specify the command word to transmit and to receive characters.
17. Write a subroutine to check and identify an error in the received character by reading the status register (Figure 15.13).
18. In Figure 15.24, identify the addresses of the control and data ports (assume all "don't care" lines are at logic 0).
19. In Figure 15.24, if the following instructions are executed and the program is transferred to location CHECK, explain the possible reasons for such a transfer.

```
LD A, (8001H)      ;Read status register
AND 38H
JP NZ, CHECK
```

20. Write instructions to check a parity error when a character is received (Figure 15.24). If an error occurs, write a command word to disable the receiver, reset the error, and call the Error routine.
21. Specify the mode word and the command word for data communication having the following specifications (Figure 15.24): (a) asynchronous mode, (b) 1,200 baud ($TxC = RxC = 76.8$ kHz), (c) 8-bit character, (d) even parity, (e) 2 Stop bits.

FIGURE 15.24
Schematic for Assignments 18–21



22. Write an interrupt service routine to receive a character from the keyboard and store the character in memory location INBUF.
23. How does the MPU write into the Z80 SIO without the WR signal pin on the SIO?
24. Specify the logic levels of the SIO control signals when the Z80 acknowledges an interrupt.
25. In Figure 15.18, identify the addresses of the control and the data ports if the address lines A_7 and A_0 are interchanged.
26. Write initialization instructions for the Z80 SIO to meet the following specifications: (a) asynchronous format to receive characters under program control, (b) 8-bit character with 2 Stop bits and even parity, (c) frequency multiplying factor 64.
27. Modify the instructions in the previous assignment to include the interrupt control and the low-order interrupt vector at 50_H that can be modified if an error occurs.
28. In assignment 27, specify the 16-bit address of the interrupt vector if the parity error occurs in Channel B and the Interrupt Register I contains 24_H .
29. Rewrite the initialization instructions in Example 15.5 using the instruction OTIR.

Advanced Topics in Memory Design and DMA Concepts

In Chapter 4, we discussed memory interfacing; however, to maintain the clarity in our discussion, we avoided the details of memory access time and its effect on interfacing. Similarly, we did not discuss the need for Wait states in interfacing slow memory devices (peripherals) or the implementation of high-speed data transfer by giving control of system buses to external peripherals. We introduced the topic of dynamic memory, but did not discuss its interfacing. In this chapter, we discuss these timing-related topics and how they affect interfacing and design processes.

We will begin by examining the memory access time in the context of the microprocessor execution time and determine the need for Wait states in interfacing slow memory devices. We will discuss the structure and the requirements of dynamic memory and illustrate the interfacing of a dynamic memory chip. Then we will examine the same memory-related topics from a design point of view and illustrate a memory design using industrial practices. The chapter concludes with the discussion of high-speed data transfer using the Direct Memory Access (DMA) technique.

A large, bold, white number '16' is centered within a black square. The square has a thin white border. This graphic serves as a chapter indicator.

16

OBJECTIVES

- Define memory access time and explain how it relates to the microprocessor machine cycles.
- Determine the need for Wait states in interfacing slow memory devices and explain how to generate Wait states.
- Explain the internal structure, interfacing requirements, and the need for refreshing dynamic memory.
- Illustrate the interfacing of a 16K dynamic memory chip with the Z80.
- Explain address decoding using a decoder and a PROM programmer.
- Design a memory system for given specifications.
- Explain the need for data transfer using the Direct Memory Access technique and the functions of BUSRQ (Bus Request) and BUSAK (Bus Acknowledgment) signals of the Z80.
- Explain the differences between the three modes of DMA data transfer: byte, burst, and continuous.
- Explain the block diagram of the Z80 DMA controller and its interfacing with the Z80.

16.1

INTERFACING MEMORY USING WAIT STATES

In interfacing memory with the microprocessor, the interfacing circuit must satisfy the timing requirements of both the microprocessor and the memory chip. In Chapter 4, we assumed that memory response can match the execution speed of the microprocessor, but this assumption is invalid in some situations. Because of cost considerations, memory chips with slow response time are occasionally used in microprocessor-based systems. Therefore, it is necessary to synchronize the execution speed of the microprocessor with the response time of memory. This can be accomplished by using the Wait signal input to the Z80 microprocessor.

- $\overline{\text{WAIT}}$ (Wait)—This is an active low signal, input to the Z80 as an external request from a slow peripheral (or memory), to indicate that the peripheral is not yet ready for data transfer. The Z80 samples the WAIT line at the falling edge of T_2 of each machine cycle, and if the WAIT line is low, it adds one T-state (T_W) as a Wait state to its machine cycle. Then it samples the T_W state and adds an additional Wait state if the WAIT signal is still low and continues to add Wait states until the WAIT signal becomes inactive. During this time, the Z80 extends the time of control signals and preserves the contents of all the buses. Thus, the WAIT signal can be used to synchronize the response time of any type of peripheral.

To ascertain whether a given memory chip is too slow in comparison with the execution speed of the microprocessor and needs Wait states to synchronize the data transfer, we must examine the timing requirements of the microprocessor and the response time of the memory.

16.11 Z80 Machine Cycles and Memory Access Time

In Chapter 3, we examined three Z80 machine cycles: Opcode Fetch, Memory Read, and Memory Write. The Opcode Fetch machine cycle is shown here again in Figure 16.1 with

precise timing for the Z80 with a 2.5 MHz clock. The read timing of the Opcode Fetch is the most restrictive because the microprocessor begins to read the data byte at the rising edge of T_3 ; in the Memory Read cycle, it reads the byte at the falling edge of T_3 . If the memory chip can respond adequately in the Opcode Fetch cycle, we need not be concerned with the Memory Read cycle.

Figure 16.1 shows the time interval T_{AD} ; this is the interval between the time the Z80 places the address on the address bus and the time it has to read the byte. In a 2.5 MHz system (400 ns clock period), the T_{AD} is 605 ns. This is calculated by subtracting the output address delay $T_{D(AD)}$ and the data set-up time T_{SD} on the data bus from the two clock periods (see Figure 16.1).

$$\text{Allowable time interval for Z80 to read data after placing the address on the address bus} = 2 \times \text{Clock Period} - \text{Address Delay} - \text{Data Set-Up Time}$$

The memory response is defined in terms of the memory access time T_{AC} ; this is the delay between the time the memory address is placed on the address bus and the data byte is placed on the data bus. The memory access time plus the delay in the address decoding network must be less than T_{AD} ; if it is more than T_{AD} , we must add Wait states.

16.12 Generating Wait States

In the definition of the WAIT signal, the only requirement to add Wait states is to keep the WAIT signal low when the Z80 samples it during the T_2 state. Figure 16.1 shows that the Memory Request (\overline{MREQ}) goes active after the falling edge of T_1 . The \overline{MREQ} signal can be used, after the delay of one clock period, to activate the WAIT signal, as shown in Figure 16.2.

Figure 16.2 shows that a WAIT signal can be generated by ANDing the outputs of the two edge-triggered flip-flops and using the \overline{MREQ} as an input to the flip-flop FF_1 . The \overline{MREQ} stays high unless the microprocessor is accessing memory; therefore, we can safely assume that Q_2 , the output of FF_2 , is initially high. The \overline{MREQ} goes low after the falling edge of T_1 (Figure 16.1); thus, Q_1 goes high in the next clock period at the rising edge of T_2 (the flip-flop is positive-edge-triggered) and generates the Wait signal, which should be connected to the WAIT pin of the Z80. Because \overline{WAIT} is low at T_2 , the Z80 extends the machine cycle by one clock period, T_W . At the next cycle, Q_2 goes low (Q_1 was low in the previous cycle), causing the WAIT signal to go inactive. The circuit shown in Figure 16.2 adds one Wait state to all memory access cycles in the system. To use the Wait state for a particular memory chip in the system, the input \overline{MREQ} should be ANDed with the decoded address of the chip as shown in the next example.

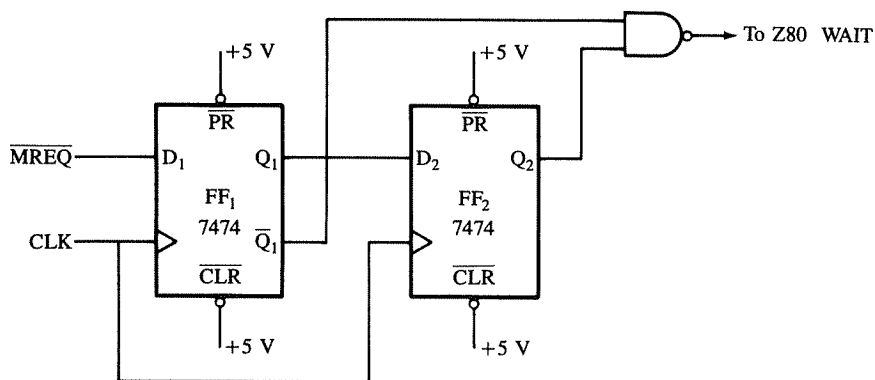


FIGURE 16.2
Generating One Wait State

Example 16.1

Figure 16.3 shows the circuit (from Figure 4.7) interfacing the 2732 EPROM with a 4 MHz Z80A system; the circuit includes a Wait state circuit. The Z80A address delay is 110 ns and data set-up time is 35 ns. The memory access time for the EPROM is given as

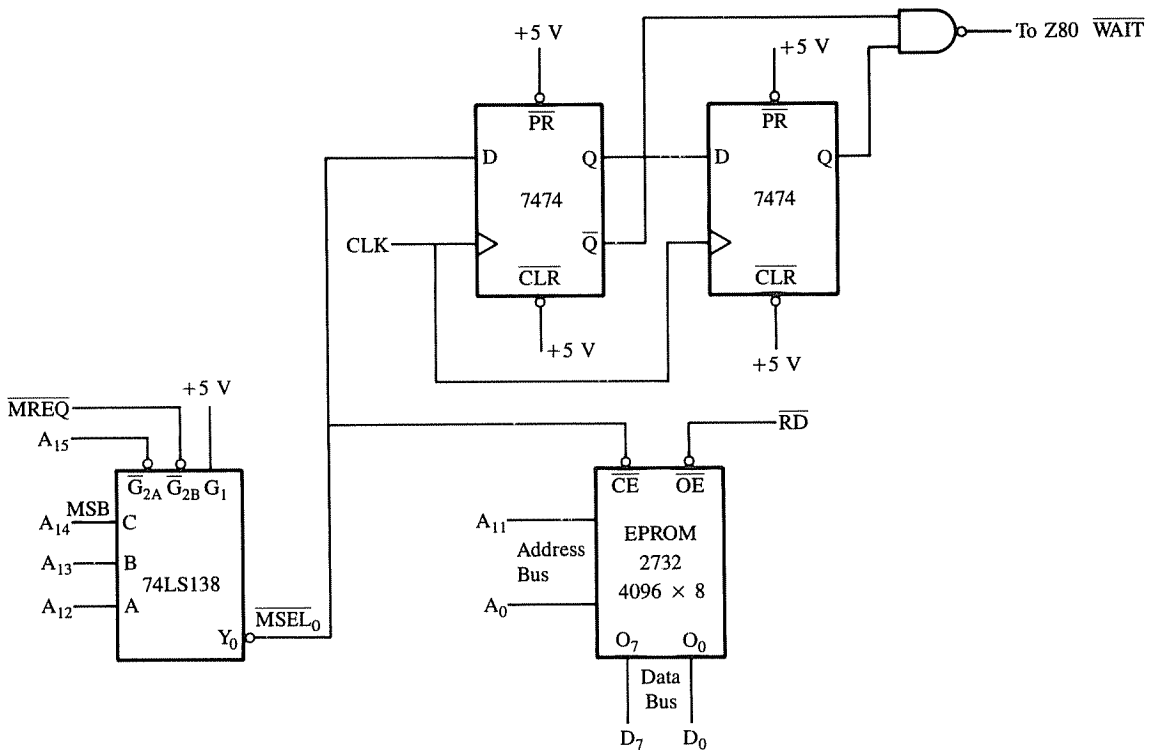


FIGURE 16.3
Interfacing EPROM 2732 With a Wait State

450 ns, and the delay in the decoder is 40 ns. Explain the timing, and calculate the number of Wait states required.

In this system, the clock period is 250 ns. In the Opcode Fetch cycle, the Z80 reads the data byte at the rising edge of T_2 cycle. Therefore, the allowable microprocessor read time is (see Eq. 16.1)

Solution

$$T_{AD} = 2 \times 250 \text{ ns} - 110 \text{ ns} - 35 \text{ ns} = 355 \text{ ns}$$

The EPROM would require

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Memory Read Time} &= \text{Memory Access Time} + \text{Address Decoding Delay} \\ &= 450 \text{ ns} + 40 \text{ ns} = 490 \text{ ns} \end{aligned}$$

These calculations show that the memory requires 490 ns and that the microprocessor, without the Wait states, would begin to read in 355 ns after placing the address on the bus. After adding one Wait state, the microprocessor read time is extended to 605 ns (355 ns +

250 ns). This leaves 115 ns ($605 \text{ ns} - 490 \text{ ns}$) as a safety margin for the memory read time.

The interfacing circuit shown in Figure 16.3 is a combination of two circuits: Generating one Wait State (Figure 16.2) and the memory interfacing circuit (Figure 4.7). However, in this circuit, the input to the flip-flop of the Generating Wait State circuit is modified; the input is the gated signal of the $\overline{\text{MREQ}}$ and the decoded address from the 3-to-8 decoder. Thus, whenever the Z80 accesses the EPROM, this circuit will add one Wait state to the memory machine cycles without affecting the performance of other memory chips in the system.

16.2 INTERFACING DYNAMIC MEMORY

The dynamic Read/Write memory stores bit information in the form of a capacitive charge, and its internal structure differs from that of static memory. It is organized in the square matrix format of rows and columns, and its address lines are multiplexed. Therefore, to interface dynamic memory with the microprocessor, additional circuitry must be designed to address rows and columns separately. Furthermore, each memory cell needs to be refreshed at least every two milliseconds to retain the stored information. The circuitry necessary for refreshing the dynamic memory is built-in Z80 architecture; in other microprocessors, the refreshing is performed by external logic or LSI devices such as a Dynamic Memory Controller.

In the following sections, we will examine the internal structure of dynamic memory and its timing requirements, and design an interfacing circuit.

16.21 Dynamic Memory: Structure and Addressing

The dynamic memory consists of MOS transistors, which store information as capacitive charge and are internally arranged in the matrix format. Figure 16.4(a) shows four such cells with two rows and two columns. Figure 16.4(b) shows the representation of 16 cells with four rows and four columns with 2-to-4 decoders and latches. Thus, two input lines R_1 and R_2 can identify four rows when strobe line $\overline{\text{RAS}}$ (Row Address Strobe) is active, and two lines C_1 and C_2 can identify four columns when the strobe line $\overline{\text{CAS}}$ (Column Address Strobe) is active. The lines R_1 , R_2 , C_1 , and C_2 are connected together, and in turn connected to two address lines A_1 and A_0 . Thus, with two address lines and two strobe lines, we can select any of the cells. For example, by sending address 11 and asserting the $\overline{\text{RAS}}$ line, the address 11 will be latched and row 3 will be selected, and if we follow that by sending the address 01 and asserting the $\overline{\text{CAS}}$ line, we select column 1. Therefore, by sending the address 01 11, we can select cell number 7. Of course, we need to know the timings of when to assert $\overline{\text{RAS}}$ and $\overline{\text{CAS}}$ strobes. After selecting the cell, if we want to write into the cell, the Write signal must be asserted.

The memory structure shown in Figure 16.4(b) has one input line and one output line; thus, we can write 16 bits or read 16 bits from this memory. This memory is repre-

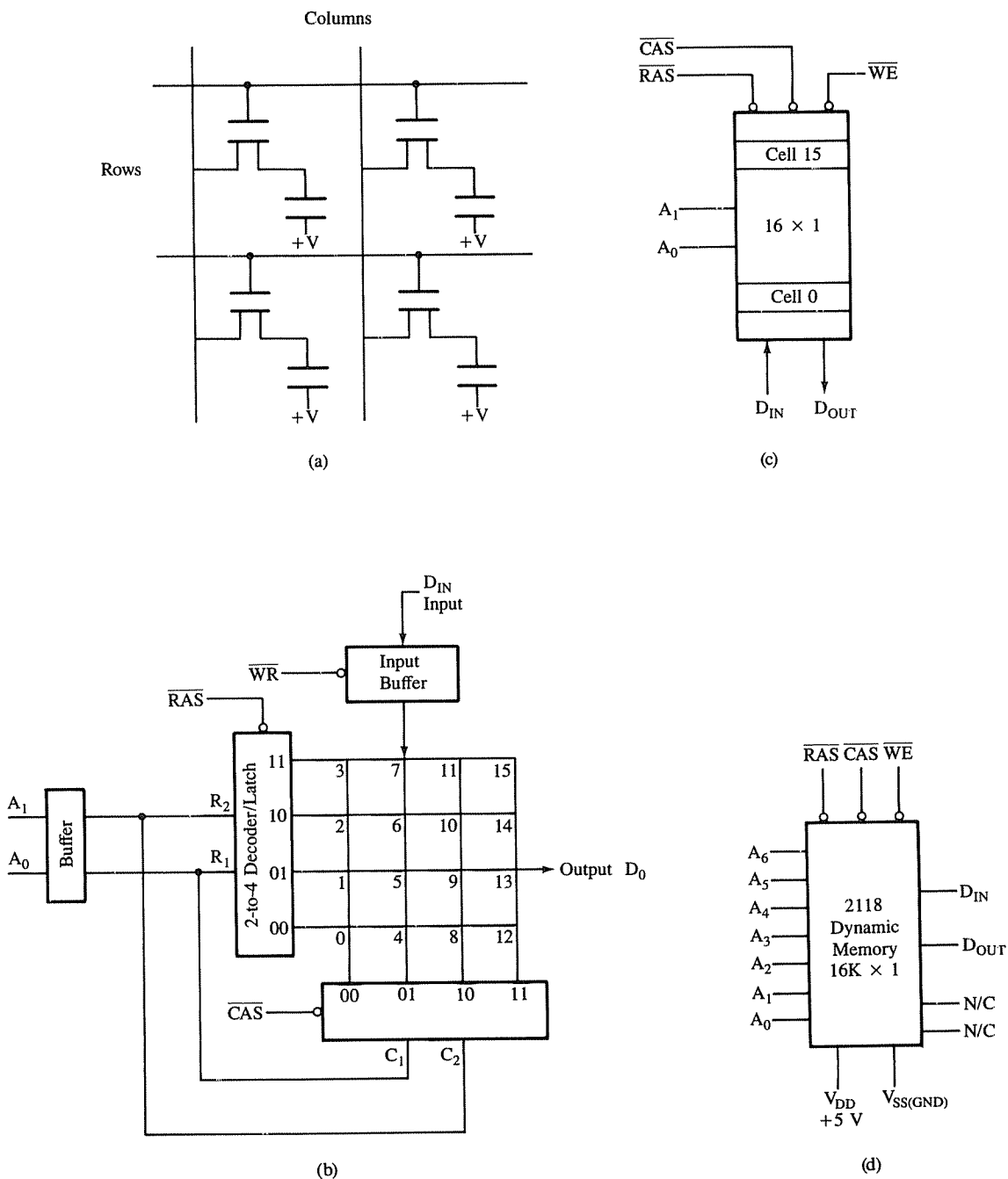


FIGURE 16.4
 (a) Dynamic Memory Cells (b) Dynamic Memory: Internal Structure (c) Logic Symbol for 16×1 Dynamic Memory (d) Logic Symbol: Intel 2118 Dynamic Memory in a 16-pin Package

sented by the logic symbol, shown in Figure 16.4(c) with two address lines, two strobe lines, one control signal \overline{WE} , one input line, and one output line; the size of this chip is 16×1 . An 8-bit microprocessor such as the Z80 requires an 8-bit memory word; thus, we will need eight chips to have memory of 16 bytes. Figure 16.4(d) shows the logic symbol of the Intel 2118 family of $16,384 \times 1$ dynamic memory. To address 16K memory, we need 14 address lines, $A_{13}-A_0$ —seven rows and seven columns; however, the chip shows only seven lines A_6-A_0 . These lines are multiplexed; the low-order address A_6-A_0 is used for rows and the high-order address $A_{13}-A_7$ is used for columns.

To appreciate the complexities in interfacing this dynamic memory chip, let us first recall the steps for interfacing a static memory in relation to the Z80 Read/Write operations. The Z80

1. places a 16-bit address on the address bus.
2. sends the \overline{MREQ} signal to indicate that the 16-bit address is on the address bus.
3. sends the control signal \overline{RD} or \overline{WR} .

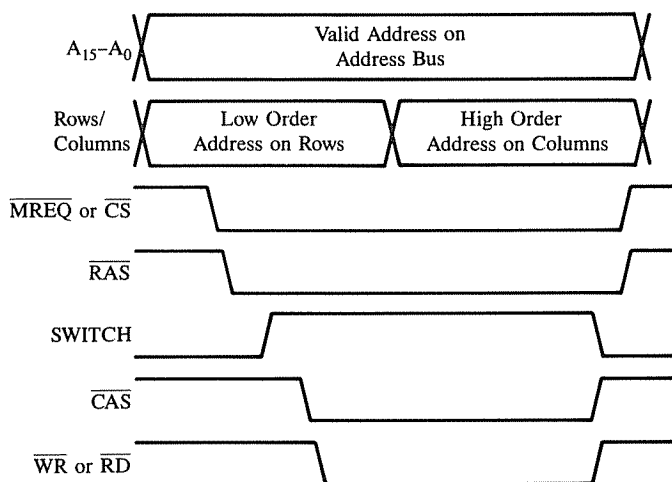
Therefore, to interface a static memory, the designer has to perform the following three steps:

1. Generate the \overline{CS} signal by decoding the high-order bus and connect it to the \overline{CE} pin of the memory chip.
2. Generate the \overline{MEMRD} signal by ANDing \overline{RD} and \overline{MREQ} and connect it to the \overline{RD} pin of the memory chip.
3. Generate the \overline{MEMWR} signal by ANDing \overline{WR} and \overline{MREQ} and connect it to the \overline{WR} pin of the memory chip.

In interfacing dynamic memory, the Z80 operations remain the same; it is the responsibility of the designer to generate the signals that are necessary for the dynamic memory chip. The steps and the issues involved are as follows:

1. Generate the \overline{CS} signal to identify this chip among many memory chips in the system. However, there is no \overline{CS} pin on the memory chip.
2. Isolate the low-order address from the high-order address.
3. Place the low-order address on the memory address lines and generate \overline{RAS} (Row Address Strobe) to inform the memory that the row address is on the address lines.
4. Switch from the low-order address to the high-order address and place the high-order address (column address) on the memory address lines.
5. Generate the \overline{CAS} (Column Strobe Signal) to inform the memory that the high-order address is on the address lines.
6. Use the \overline{WR} signal to write into the memory or \overline{RD} signal to read from memory. However, there is no \overline{RD} pin on the memory chip.

The timing diagram for the memory is shown in Figure 16.5. How to generate these signals is discussed in the next section.

**FIGURE 16.5**

Timing Requirements to Read from or Write into Dynamic Memory

16.22 Designing Circuits and Generating Timing Signals for Dynamic Memory

To generate timing signals shown in Figure 16.5, we will refer to the six steps listed above and use the memory chip 2118 as an illustration.

Step 1: Generating the $\overline{\text{CS}}$ signal

To address 16K memory, we need 14 address lines A₁₃–A₀; only two address lines A₁₅–A₁₄ remain. We can use a 2-to-4 decoder or a simple two-input gate with an inverter as shown in Figure 16.6. The $\overline{\text{CS}}$ is generated when A₁₅ is logic 1 and A₁₄ is logic 0.

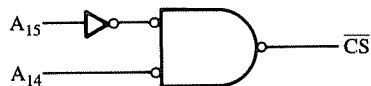
Step 2: Isolating the low-order address from the high-order address

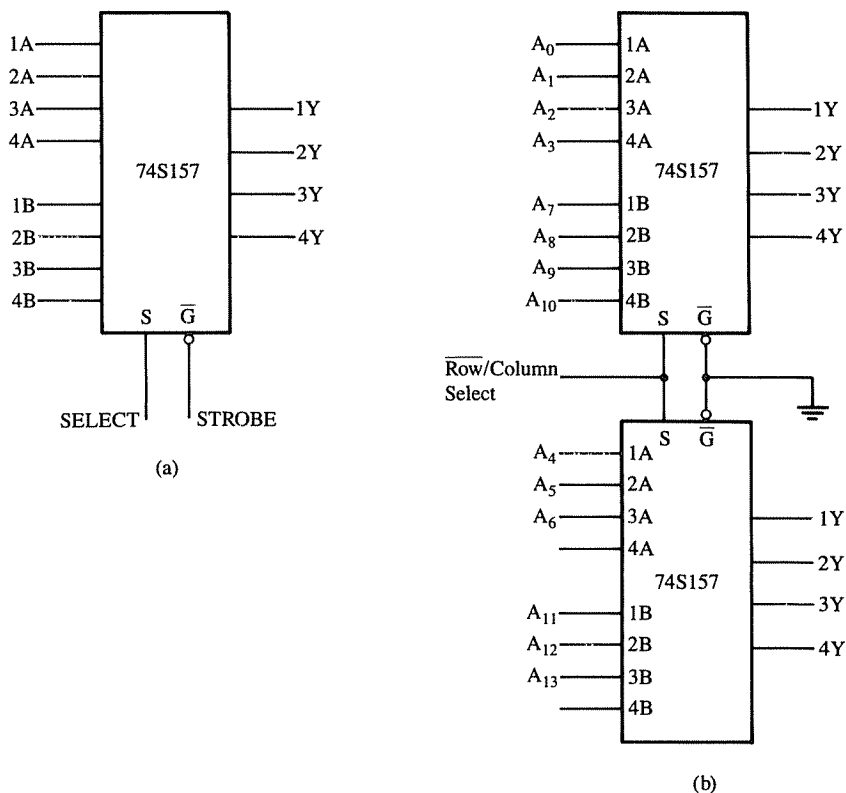
This can be accomplished by using the 74LS157 multiplexer shown in Figure 16.7(a). The device has two control signals: **SELECT** and **$\overline{\text{STROBE}}$** , and the **$\overline{\text{STROBE}}$** must be active (low) for the device to function. When the **SELECT** is low, the data on input lines 1A–4A are available on the output lines, and when the **SELECT** is high, the data on lines 1B–4B are available on the output lines.

To separate the low-order address from the high-order address, the low-order address lines can be connected to the A input lines of the multiplexer and the high-order

FIGURE 16.6

Address Decoding to Generate Chip Select Signal



**FIGURE 16.7**

(a) Logic Symbol: 74S157 Multiplexer (b) Z80 Address Lines to Multiplexer

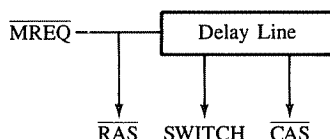
address lines can be connected to the B input lines. The Intel 2118 memory chip has seven multiplexed address lines for 14-bit addresses; we therefore need to use two multiplexers as shown in Figure 16.7(b). When the SELECT is low, the address A₆–A₀ is placed on the output lines, and when the SELECT is high, the address A₁₃–A₇ is placed on the output lines.

Step 3: Generating $\overline{\text{RAS}}$ (Row Address Strobe) and placing the low-order address on the memory address lines

The $\overline{\text{RAS}}$ informs the memory that the row address is on the address lines. In the Z80, assertion of the $\overline{\text{MREQ}}$ (Memory Request) signal indicates that the 16-bit address is on the address bus. Therefore, the $\overline{\text{MREQ}}$ can be used as the $\overline{\text{RAS}}$ signal, and by keeping the SELECT low, the low-order address can be placed on the memory address lines. On the falling edge of the $\overline{\text{RAS}}$, the row address is latched by the memory.

Step 4: Switching from the row address to the column address

FIGURE 16.8
Generating $\overline{\text{RAS}}$ and $\overline{\text{CAS}}$ Signals
Using a Delay Line



This is accomplished by asserting the SELECT line high. The multiplexer can be switched by using the $\overline{\text{MREQ}}$ signal with appropriate delay. This delay can be generated by using a delay line circuit as shown in Figure 16.8 or using propagation delays in logic gates. When the delay line, connected to the SELECT pin of the multiplexer, is asserted, the column address ($A_{13}\text{--}A_7$) is placed on the memory address lines.

Step 5: Generating the $\overline{\text{CAS}}$ (Column Address Strobe) signal

The $\overline{\text{CAS}}$ signal can be generated by delaying the $\overline{\text{MREQ}}$ signal as shown in Figure 16.8. When the $\overline{\text{CAS}}$ is asserted, the column address is latched by the memory chip.

Step 6: Writing into or reading from a memory cell

To write into a memory cell, three signals— $\overline{\text{RAS}}$, $\overline{\text{CAS}}$, and $\overline{\text{WR}}$ —must be asserted. The $\overline{\text{WR}}$ signal can be asserted before the $\overline{\text{CAS}}$ signal (the early-write technique) or after the $\overline{\text{CAS}}$ signal. When these three signals are active, the data bit on the input line D_{IN} is latched into the internal register.

To read from a memory cell, the cell must be selected by asserting the $\overline{\text{RAS}}$ and $\overline{\text{CAS}}$ signals. After the selection of the cell, the Z80 can assert its $\overline{\text{RD}}$ signal to read from the cell; however, the memory chip does not have a $\overline{\text{RD}}$ pin. Therefore, the Read operation requires a buffer that can be enabled to read the data bit as shown in Figure 16.9.

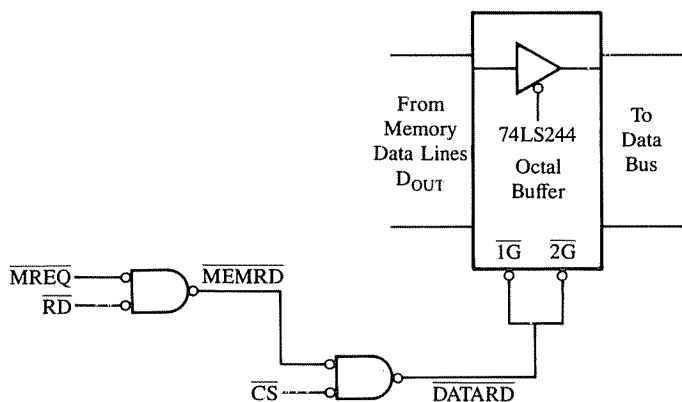


FIGURE 16.9
Output Port to Read from Dynamic Memory

16.23 Refreshing Dynamic Memory

As mentioned earlier, the bits are stored as capacitive charges in the dynamic memory cells and the charge leaks. Therefore, to retain information, the cells must be refreshed every 2 ms. A memory cell is automatically refreshed simply by accessing its row or by reading from or writing into the cell. However, there is no guarantee that each cell can be refreshed within a 2 ms period during the normal execution of a program. Therefore, additional circuitry must be used to refresh the cells in dynamic memory.

The commonly used technique to refresh dynamic memory is to place a row address on the memory address lines and assert the $\overline{\text{RAS}}$ signal without the $\overline{\text{RD}}$, $\overline{\text{WR}}$, or the $\overline{\text{CAS}}$ signals; this is called $\overline{\text{RAS}}$ -only refresh. The 2118 memory chip has seven rows with 128 cells that can be refreshed by using a 7-bit counter. The counter provides a 7-bit address, and by cycling the counter through 128 row addresses within 2 ms, the entire memory chip can be refreshed. The Z80 has a specially built register R which is used as a refresh counter and a signal called RFSH (Refresh).

Figure 16.1 shows the timing of the Z80 Opcode Fetch cycle. The time during T_3 and T_4 , when the Z80 decodes the instruction internally and the address bus would otherwise be idle, is used in Z80-based systems for refreshing the dynamic memories. This process is called transparent refresh. During T_3 , the $\overline{\text{RFSH}}$ signal goes low, indicating that the lower seven bits of the address bus contain a refresh address, and the $\overline{\text{MREQ}}$ is asserted low again. To latch the row address and refresh the cell, the $\overline{\text{RAS}}$ signal must be generated when the $\overline{\text{RFSH}}$ is active; this can be done by ANDing the $\overline{\text{MREQ}}$ and the $\overline{\text{RFSH}}$ signals. In addition, the $\overline{\text{CAS}}$ signal must be kept inactive during this period or the contents of the memory cell may be lost. The row address to refresh the cell is supplied by the contents of Refresh register R, and the address is incremented automatically after each Opcode Fetch cycle. The refresh process is automatic; the programmer can load an address into register R for testing purposes, but it is not necessary.

The refreshing technique discussed here can refresh 128 rows of a 16K dynamic memory. This technique is not, however, necessarily limited to 16K memory. If the system includes four 2118s (64K memory), the same refresh address can be used to refresh one row in each of the four memory chips if the $\overline{\text{RAS}}$ is generated without the Chip Select. We will combine the circuits discussed in this section in Section 16.3, Interfacing the 2118 Dynamic Memory with the Z80.

This refreshing technique is ideal in that it does not slow down the microprocessor operations. However, it has some limitations. It is based on the M_1 cycle's being executed at least 128 times within 2 ms. This may not be possible if the external Reset, Wait, and Hold signals are active more than 1 ms. Even if this technique can refresh several 16K memory chips, it cannot be used for a memory chip larger than 16K. Then, LSI devices such as Dynamic RAM Controllers are commonly used. These controllers not only refresh the dynamic memories but also provide such necessary timing signals as $\overline{\text{RAS}}$ and $\overline{\text{CAS}}$.

ILLUSTRATION: INTERFACING THE 2118—16K R/W DYNAMIC MEMORY—WITH THE Z80

16.3

This illustration is concerned with interfacing a 16K R/W dynamic memory with the Z80. The illustration synthesizes the concepts we discussed in the previous section.

16.31 Problem Statement

Design a circuit to interface the 2118—16K dynamic memory—with the Z80 for the memory map starting at 8000_H. Generate the necessary timing signals assuming the system clock is 2.5 MHz, and use the Z80 Refresh signal and register R to refresh the memory cells within 2 ms.

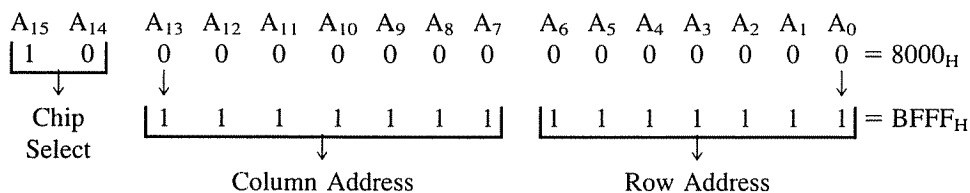
16.32 Problem Analysis

The interfacing of dynamic memory involves three aspects: assigning the memory map, generating timing signals, and refreshing memory cells. The steps are as follows:

1. Decode the high-order address lines to assign the map.
2. Generate $\overline{\text{RAS}}$, $\overline{\text{CAS}}$, and SELECT signals with appropriate delays.
3. Use the $\overline{\text{RAS}}$ signal to latch the row address, the SELECT signal to switch from the $\overline{\text{RAS}}$ to the $\overline{\text{CAS}}$ signal, and the $\overline{\text{CAS}}$ signal to latch the column address.
4. Use the Z80 $\overline{\text{WR}}$ signal to write into the selected cell.
5. Generate the Memory Read signal to enable a buffer as an input port.
6. Refresh the memory cell during T₃ and T₄ states of the Opcode Fetch cycle.

16.33 Interfacing Circuit and Its Operation

In this circuit design, the assignment of the memory map with the starting address 8000_H is easy. The 16K memory requires 14 address lines A₁₃—A₀ to address memory cells; thus, only two address lines, A₁₅ and A₁₄, remain. These address lines can be decoded either using a simple gate and an inverter or a 2-to-4 decoder. Figure 16.10 shows that the $\overline{\text{CS}}$ signal is generated using the gate 74LS32 with an inverter. The memory map of this circuit ranges from 8000_H to BFFF_H as shown.



GENERATING THE $\overline{\text{RAS}}$ SIGNAL

The $\overline{\text{RAS}}$ signal should be active when the row address is placed on the memory lines and when the $\overline{\text{RFSH}}$ signal is asserted to refresh the memory cells. However, the $\overline{\text{CS}}$ signal is not necessary for refreshing. Therefore, the $\overline{\text{CS}}$ and $\overline{\text{RFSH}}$ signals are logically ORed as shown in Figure 16.10. The $\overline{\text{RAS}}$ is generated by ANDing $\overline{\text{CS}}$ or $\overline{\text{RFSH}}$ with the $\overline{\text{MREQ}}$. The time delay in generating the $\overline{\text{RAS}}$ signal in relation to the $\overline{\text{MREQ}}$ will be 37 ns, the sum of the delays in 74LS04 and NAND gate. The delay in generating the $\overline{\text{CS}}$ is irrelevant because the address is placed on the address bus 300 ns before the $\overline{\text{MREQ}}$ is asserted.

CONNECTING THE ROW AND COLUMN ADDRESSES

Figure 16.11 shows that the row address lines A_6 – A_0 are connected to A input and the column address lines A_{13} – A_7 are connected to B input of the two multiplexers 74S157. The seven output lines of the multiplexers are connected to the multiplexed address lines A_6 – A_0 of the memory chip, and the eighth output line of the multiplexer is connected to the $\overline{\text{CAS}}$ signal of the memory chip. The input lines 4A and 4B of the second multiplexer are tied to +5 V and ground, respectively. When the SELECT is switched from low to high, the eighth output line goes from high to low (from +5 V to ground), and the $\overline{\text{CAS}}$ signal is asserted (active low). Figure 16.11 shows the details of only one memory chip, rather than eight chips, to avoid clutter.

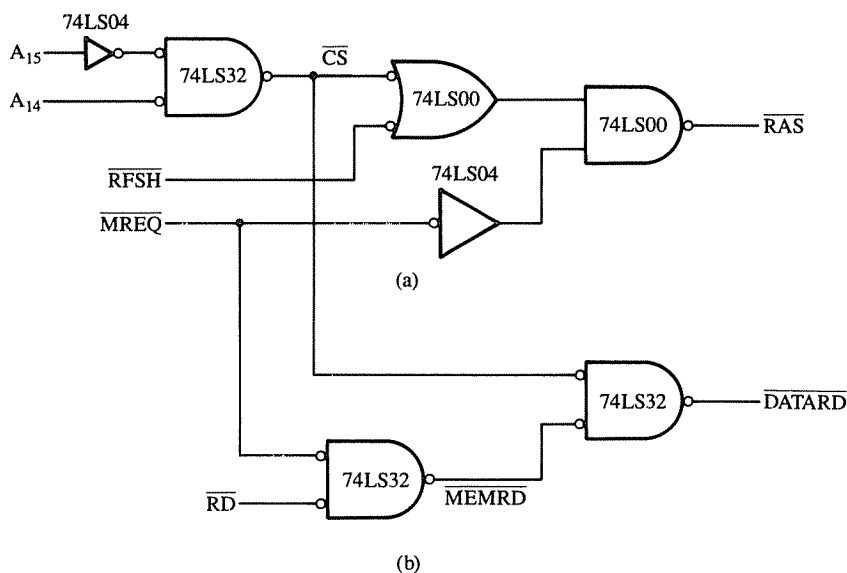


FIGURE 16.10

(a) Generating $\overline{\text{RAS}}$ Signal When $\overline{\text{CS}}$ or $\overline{\text{RFSH}}$ Is Active (b) Generating $\overline{\text{MEMRD}}$ and $\overline{\text{DATARD}}$ to Read from Memory

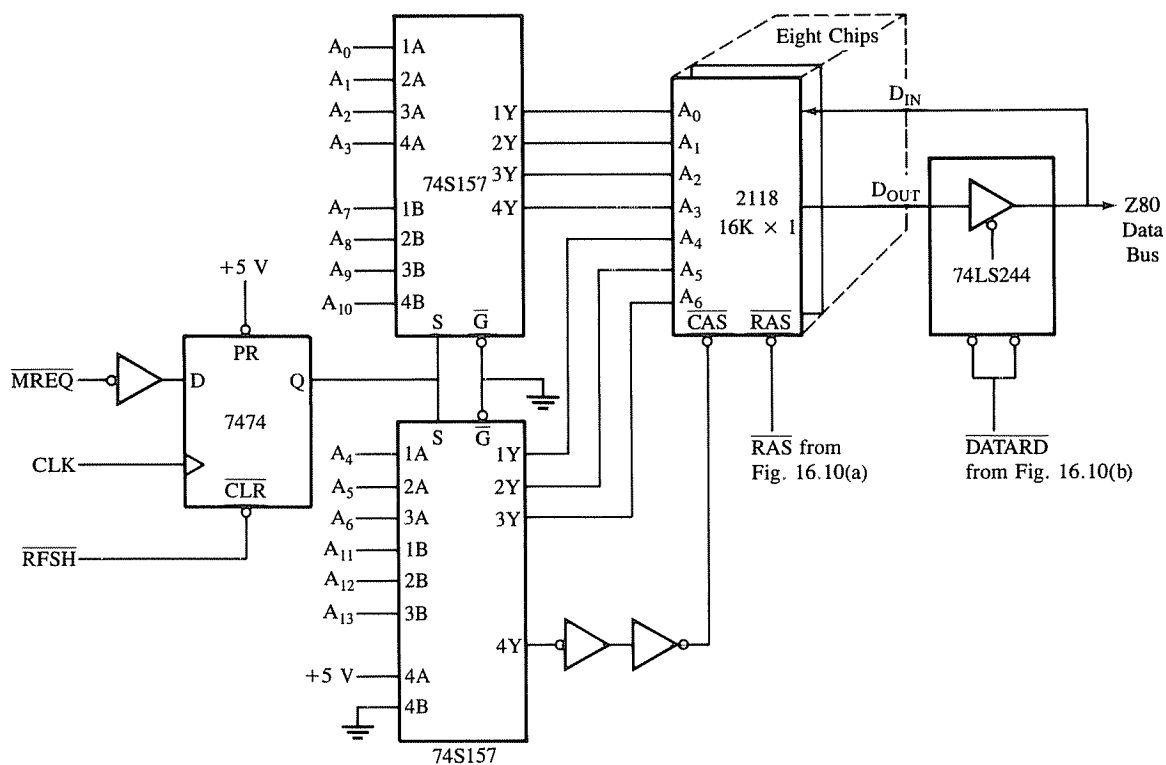


FIGURE 16.11
Interfacing Dynamic Memory

SOURCE: Adapted from *Memory Data Book and Designer's Guide*, p. x-45; courtesy of Mostek Corporation.

PLACING THE ADDRESSES AND SWITCHING FROM $\overline{\text{RAS}}$ TO $\overline{\text{CAS}}$

The SELECT signal of the multiplexer is controlled by the $\overline{\text{MREQ}}$ through the edge-triggered flip-flop 7474 (Figure 16.11). At the beginning of the Opcode Fetch cycle, the $\overline{\text{MREQ}}$ is high and the output of the flip-flop is low. Thus, the SELECT signal is low, and the row address is placed on the output lines of the multiplexer. When the $\overline{\text{MREQ}}$ is asserted, the $\overline{\text{RAS}}$ is generated 37 ns later because of the delay in the inverter and the NAND gate (Figure 16.10), and the row address is latched by the memory. The $\overline{\text{MREQ}}$ also changes the input to the flip-flop; however, the output of the flop-flop changes on the rising edge of the clock T_2 . When the output of the flip-flop goes high, the SELECT is switched from low to high, and the column address A_{13} – A_7 is placed on the address lines. The $\overline{\text{CAS}}$ is delayed by 37 ns by using two inverters, thus allowing sufficient time for the column address to settle. When the $\overline{\text{CAS}}$ is asserted, the column address is latched.

READING FROM AND WRITING DATA INTO MEMORY

The Memory Read signal is generated by ANDing \overline{CS} , \overline{MREQ} , and \overline{RD} (Figure 16.10(b)); this is similar to generating the \overline{MEMRD} signal for static R/W memory. However, this memory chip does not have a \overline{RD} pin; therefore, the data bit is read by using the buffer 74LS244 as a memory-mapped input port. Figure 16.11 shows one input and one output data line; the other seven data lines are not shown here.

To write data into a selected cell, the \overline{WR} signal, which is connected to \overline{WR} pin of the memory, must be asserted. The \overline{WR} signal can also be asserted before the \overline{CAS} signal (early-write); we have not used that technique in this illustration.

REFRESHING THE MEMORY CELL

During the T_3 state of the Opcode Fetch cycle, the \overline{RFSH} is asserted and the address from the R register is placed on the address bus. The \overline{RAS} signal is asserted again when the \overline{MREQ} goes low, the row address is latched by the memory, and the cell is refreshed. However, the \overline{CAS} is held inactive during the refresh by using the \overline{RFSH} signal to reset the flip-flop. Thus, this operation is not confused with a Read or Write operation.

TIMING CALCULATIONS AND MICROPROCESSOR READ TIME

In Section 16.1 we calculated that the Z80 with a 2.5 MHz clock begins to read data 450 ns after asserting the \overline{MREQ} . In dynamic memory, the sum of the memory access time and the delays in generating various signals must be less than the microprocessor read time. In Figures 16.10 and 16.11, the delays in reference to \overline{MREQ} can be calculated as follows:

1. \overline{MREQ} to \overline{RAS} : Delay in 7404 and 7400	= 37 ns
2. \overline{RAS} to SELECT : Rising clock + flip-flop delay	= 73 ns
3. SELECT to \overline{CAS} : Multiplexer and inverter delays	= 52 ns
4. \overline{CAS} Access Time:	= 165 ns
5. \overline{CAS} to Octal Buffer:	= 12 ns
Total Delay	<u>339 ns</u>

The timings are shown in Figure 16.12. The total delay is 339 ns, and the microprocessor would begin to read at 450 ns; thus, we have a 111 ns safety margin.

16.4

DESIGNING MEMORY SYSTEMS

In designing memory systems for microprocessor-based products, several critical issues must be considered at the beginning of the design cycle. These issues are

1. Cost effectiveness
2. Ease of converting a product from design to production
3. Design flexibility and future upgrading

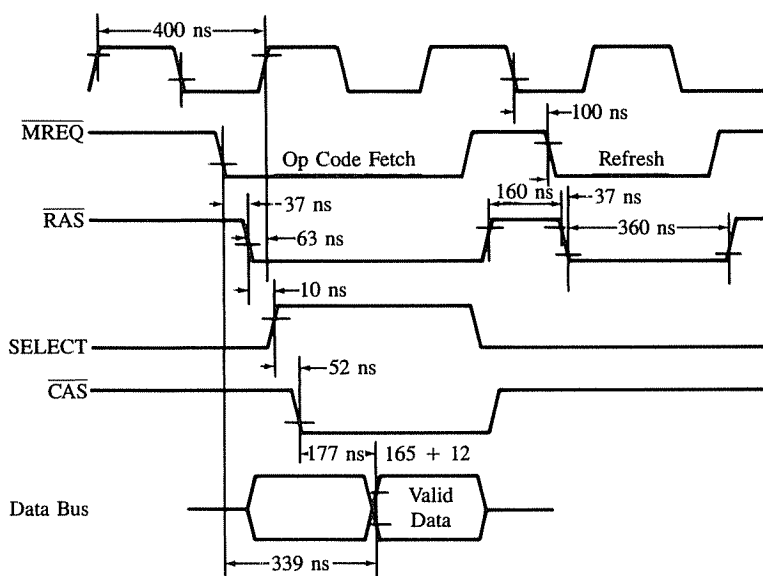


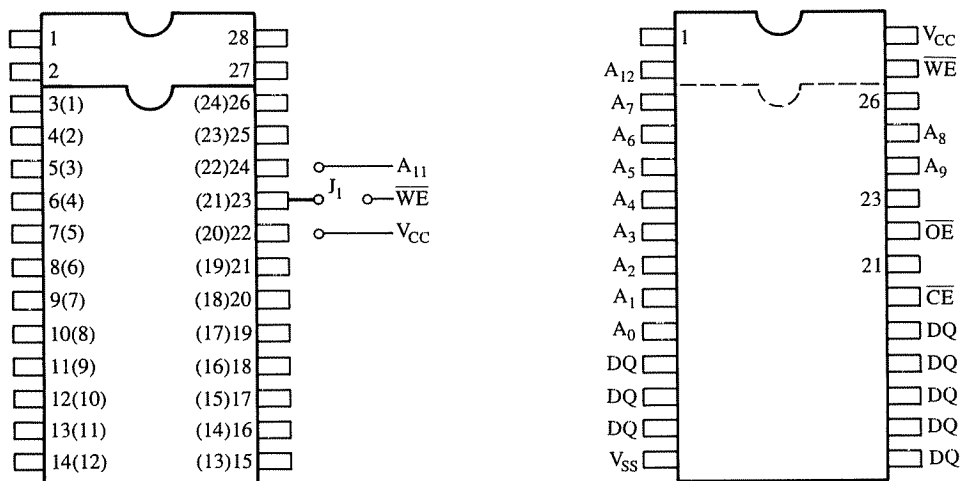
FIGURE 16.12

Timing: Dynamic Memory

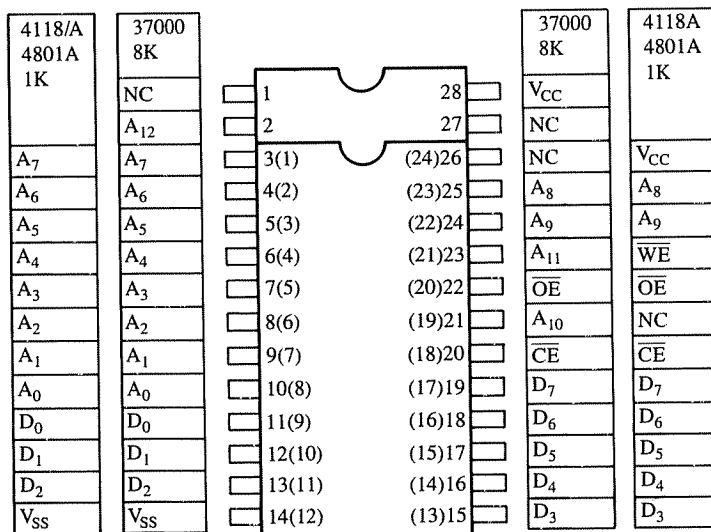
SOURCE: Adapted from *Memory Data Book and Designer's Guide*, p. x-46; courtesy of Mostek Corporation.

The first issue of cost effectiveness involves the unit price of the memory chips to be used in the system and the available space on the printed circuit board (commonly known as the real estate of a PC board). Ideally, the designer would like to use the minimum space and components with the lowest unit price, and at times, these requirements may conflict.

In terms of selecting the memory chips, the memory map must be divided between R/W memory and Read Only Memory; the decision is generally based on the requirements of data retention. In the design stage, these requirements are generally not known; however, compatible memory chips are currently available so that RAM, ROM, and EPROM can be interchanged in the same socket. The next decision concerning the R/W memory is to select either static memory or dynamic memory. For small systems with 8K or less memory, the static memory has cost advantage. When memory size begins to approach 64K, dynamic memory has a distinct price advantage in spite of the additional cost of the refresh circuitry. For memory size between 8K and 32K, the integrated R/W memory (iRAM) appears to have cost advantage. Similarly, for Read Only Memory, we need to choose from among masked ROM, PROM, and EPROM. In the design stage, the EPROM is the best choice until the system is completely developed and debugged. The masked ROM becomes cost effective only for large production quantities.



(a)



Parentheses Indicates
Pin Number of 24-Pin Packages

(b)

FIGURE 16.13

Bytewide Concept (a) 28-Pin Socket and Related Jumpers, and (b) Used to Connect 8K and 1K Memory in a 28-Pin Socket

SOURCE: Courtesy of Mostek Corporation.

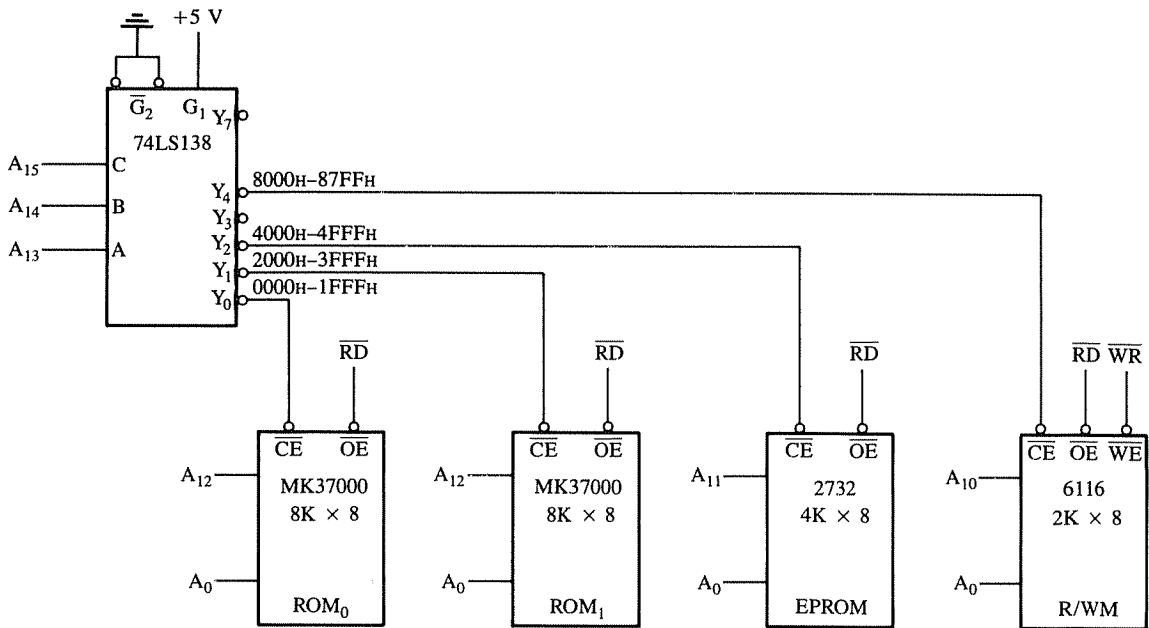


FIGURE 16.14
Memory Board Design

The next memory chip is the EPROM with 4K registers; thus, only 12 address lines are required for the memory chip. Therefore, one address line, A_{12} , must be left as “don’t care.” As a result, this memory chip will have a foldback memory of 4K. This conclusion can be drawn simply by examining the decoder circuit. Each output line of the decoder in this circuit can have a memory address block of 8K; therefore, any memory chip with less than 8K memory will have foldback memory addresses. Assuming the “don’t care” address line at logic 0, the memory map of the EPROM ranges from 4000_H to $4FFF_H$, and the foldback addresses range from 5000_H to $5FFF_H$ as shown.

A_{15}	A_{14}	A_{13}	A_{12}	A_{11}	A_{10}	A_9	A_8	A_7	A_6	A_5	A_4	A_3	A_2	A_1	A_0	
0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	= 4000
chip select			(X)	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	= 4FFF
0	1	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	= 5000
chip select			(X)	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	= 5FFF

The size of the R/W memory chip is 2K, and it must have the beginning address 8000_H or higher. Therefore, it should be selected when $A_{15} = 1$, and this can be accom-

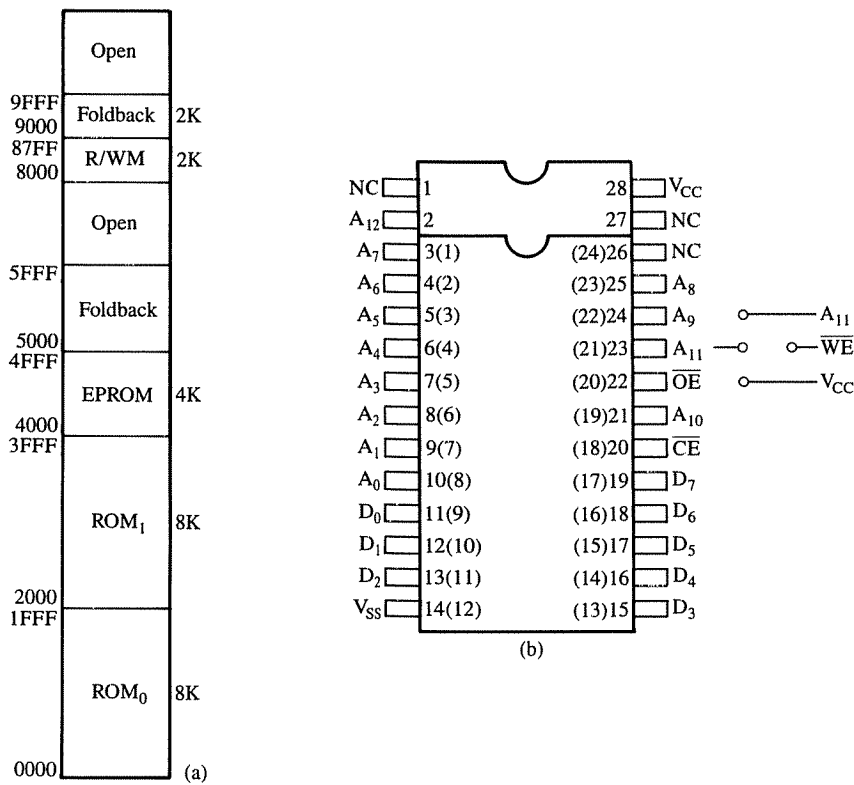


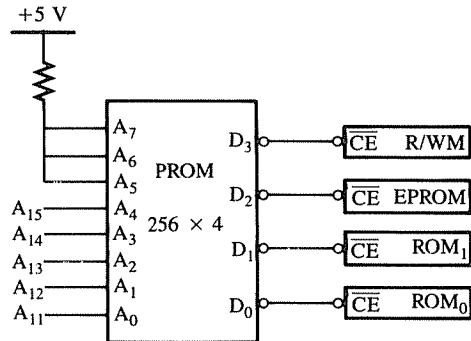
FIGURE 16.15

(a) Memory Map (b) Using Byte-wide Concept

plished by connecting the Y_4 output of the decoder to the \overline{CE} of the memory chip. This memory chip requires 11 address lines; thus, two address lines, A_{12} and A_{11} , will assume “don’t care” logic status. The address of the R/W memory will range from 8000_H to $87FF_H$ assuming the “don’t care” lines at logic 0. The remaining 6K (of the decoder’s 8K block) from 8800_H to $9FFF_H$ will be the foldback memory. Figure 16.15(a) shows the entire memory map, and Figure 16.15(b) shows how to connect different sizes of memory chips using the 28-pin package and the BYTEWYDE concept. For example, to connect a 1K R/W memory chip, pin 23 is connected to \overline{WE} using the jumper, and pin 21 has no connection.

One of the drawbacks of this type of decoding technique is that it generates foldback memory addresses; thus, it wastes memory space and limits further expansion. However, in small systems this is not a serious problem. Another approach that avoids the foldback memory addresses is to use a separate decoder for each different size memory chip, but this increases the cost of the system and the size of the PC board.

FIGURE 16.16
Address Decoding Using a PROM



16.43 Address Decoding Using a PROM

Another technique, commonly used in industrial products, is to decode the address bus using a PROM. Figure 16.16 shows a PROM (256×4) with eight address lines and four data lines. We can connect each data line to the Chip Enable \overline{CE} signals of memory devices; thus, we can interface four memory devices. Now we can program the PROM in such a way that for a given range of the address, only one data line will go active (low) while the others stay high.

In this memory design problem, the smallest memory size is 2K, which requires 11 address lines; the remaining five address lines must be decoded. The PROM has eight address lines; we can connect the five address lines A₁₅–A₁₁ to the address lines A₄–A₀ of the PROM, and the address lines A₇–A₅ can be tied high. The five address lines A₄–A₀ of the PROM can have 32 (2^5) combinations, and we can determine the data output as shown in Table 16.1.

Table 16.1 shows that for the first 8K memory block of ROM₀, the data line D₀ is active; other data lines are high. Similarly, for the second 8K memory block of ROM₁, the data line D₁ is active while others are high. The PROM is decoded for 2K resolution; thus, every combination on A₄–A₀ of the PROM provides a 2K memory map. Therefore, for 8K memory, we need D₀ and D₁ to be active for four combinations each. Similarly, D₂ is active for the next two combinations, and D₃ is active when the address begins at 8000_H. For the open memory space, all data lines are high.

The decoding technique using the PROM has several advantages: (1) it is programmable, so the map can be altered or expanded by just reprogramming the PROM, and (2) the entire memory space can be utilized without the foldback memory addresses.

16.5

DIRECT MEMORY ACCESS (DMA) AND THE Z80 DMA CONTROLLER

Direct Memory Access is a commonly used I/O technique for high-speed data transfer (for example, data transfer between system memory and a floppy disk). In polling and interrupt I/O, data transfer is relatively slow because each byte must be read and then written to its

TABLE 16.1
PROM Decoding

A ₇	A ₆	A ₅	A ₄ A ₁₅	A ₃ A ₁₄	A ₂ A ₁₃	A ₁ A ₁₂	A ₀ A ₁₁	D ₃	D ₂	D ₁	D ₀	Memory Addresses (Hex)
1	1	1	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	1	0	ROM ₀ 0000 _H
			0	0	0	0	1	1	1	1	0	
			0	0	0	1	0	1	1	1	0	
			0	0	0	1	1	1	1	1	0	1FFF _H
			0	0	1	0	0	1	1	0	1	ROM ₁ 2000 _H
			0	0	1	0	1	1	1	0	1	
			0	0	1	1	0	1	1	0	1	
			0	0	1	1	1	1	1	0	1	3FFF _H
			0	1	0	0	0	1	0	1	1	EPROM 4000 _H
			0	1	0	0	1	1	0	1	1	4FFF _H
			0	1	0	1	0	1	1	1	1	
			↓				↓	↓			↓	
			0	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	
			1	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	1	R/W M 8000 _H 87FF _H
			1	0	0	1	0	1	1	1	1	
			↓				↓					
			1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	

destination; thus, two instructions per byte are required. In DMA, the MPU releases the control of the buses to a device called a DMA controller. The controller manages data transfer between memory and a peripheral under its control, thus bypassing the MPU. Conceptually, this is an important I/O technique that requires two signals available on the Z80—BUSRQ (Bus Request) and BUSAK (Bus Acknowledge).

- $\overline{\text{BUSRQ}}$ —This is an active low input signal to the Z80 from another device requesting the use of the address and the data buses, and control signals. After receiving the Bus Request, the MPU relinquishes the buses in the following machine cycle. All buses are tri-stated, so the Bus Acknowledge ($\overline{\text{BUSAK}}$) signal is sent out. The MPU regains the control of the buses after the $\overline{\text{BUSRQ}}$ goes high.
- $\overline{\text{BUSAK}}$ —Bus Acknowledge. This is an active low output signal indicating that the MPU has completed its current machine cycle and has relinquished control of the buses.

A DMA controller plays two roles in this type of data transfer: one as a peripheral to the Z80 and the other as a data transfer processor. The DMA controller uses the signals just discussed as if it were a peripheral requesting control of the buses from the MPU. The MPU communicates with the controller by using the Chip Select line, buses, and control signals. However, once the controller has gained control, it plays the role of a special-purpose processor for data transfer; it uses the Z80 buses and the control signals to transfer data directly between memory and an I/O device. To perform this function the DMA controller must have the following:

1. Data bus
2. Address bus
3. Chip Enable and Read/Write control signals
4. Signals to communicate when it functions as a peripheral and when as a processor.

Typically, the microprocessor accesses the DMA controller as an I/O device and writes the necessary initialization instructions in the DMA control registers. These instructions include the mode of data transfer (discussed later), the source and the destination addresses, and the number of bytes to be transferred. Figure 16.17 shows a block diagram of the DMA data transfer. When a peripheral is ready for data transfer, it sends the Ready signal to the DMA controller, and in turn, the DMA controller sends the Bus Request (BUSREQ) signal to the MPU. The MPU completes the execution of the present machine cycle, acknowledges the request by sending the Bus Acknowledge (BUSAK) signal, and releases the control of the buses to the DMA controller.

The DMA controller can transfer data either sequentially or simultaneously. In the **sequential transfer**, the Read cycle is followed by the Write cycle. In the **simultaneous transfer**, each byte is read from the source and written into the destination simultaneously; the Read and Write cycles are active at the same time. Figure 16.18 shows these two types

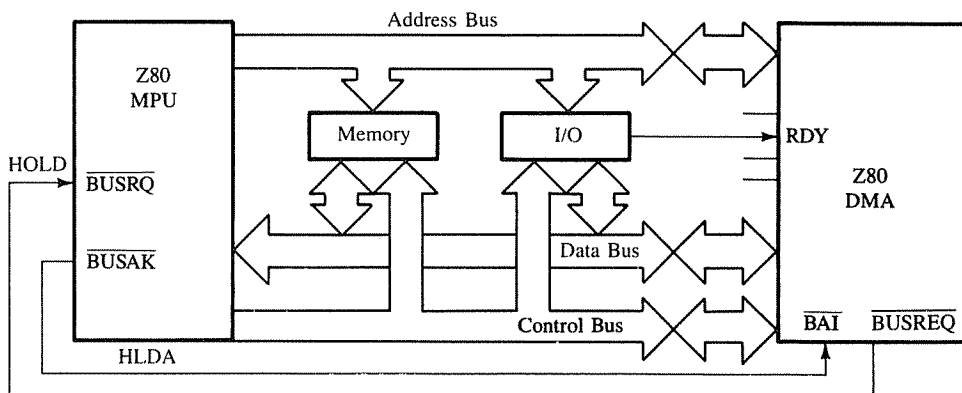


FIGURE 16.17

Block Diagram: DMA Data Transfer

SOURCE: Reprinted by permission of Intel Corporation, Copyright 1979.

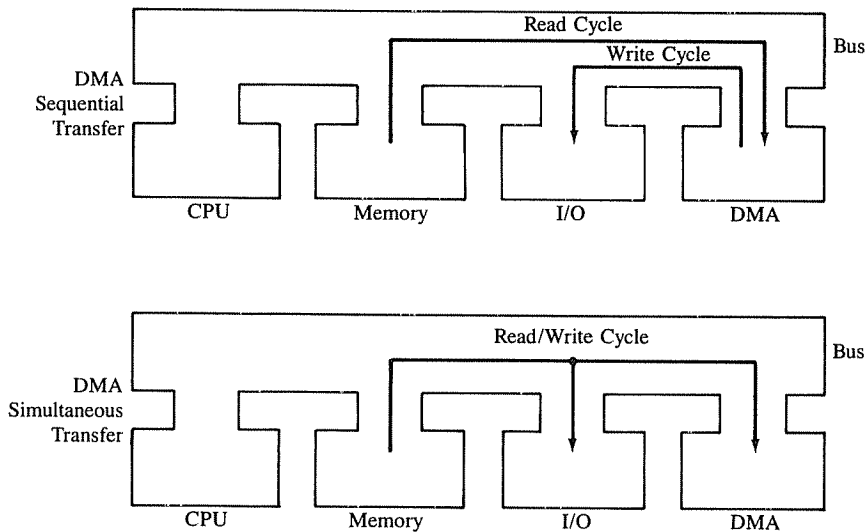


FIGURE 16.18
DMA Data Transfer: Sequential and Simultaneous
SOURCE: Courtesy of Zilog, Inc.

of data transfer. In addition, for each type of data transfer, the DMA controller can be set up in one of three modes: *byte*, *burst*, and *continuous (block)*. In the byte mode, the controller transfers one byte and releases the bus control back to the MPU. In the burst mode, the data transfer continues until the Ready goes inactive, and then the bus control is released. In the continuous transfer, the controller does not release control of the buses until the entire block of data transfer is completed.

The DMA data transfer has the highest priority in the system; no interrupt, not even the NMI (non-maskable interrupt), can be acknowledged during the DMA data transfer. One of the major disadvantages of the DMA process is that the refreshing of the dynamic memory is suspended during the data transfer; this suspension can be detrimental to the system, especially in the block mode. The process of DMA data transfer and the interfacing are discussed in the following sections in the context of the Z80 DMA controller.

16.51 The Z80 DMA Controller

The Z80 DMA controller is a programmable device, capable of transferring a block of 64K bytes or searching for a particular 8-bit maskable byte. It can also combine data transfers with simultaneous search. The ability to search for a byte is generally not found in other controllers. Figure 16.19 shows the logic pinout of the device; it is similar to a processor, and designed to be compatible with the Z80 control signals. It includes 16 address lines, eight data lines, control signals compatible with the Z80, interrupt control, and the signals to communicate with a peripheral and the MPU for the DMA data transfer. Some of these

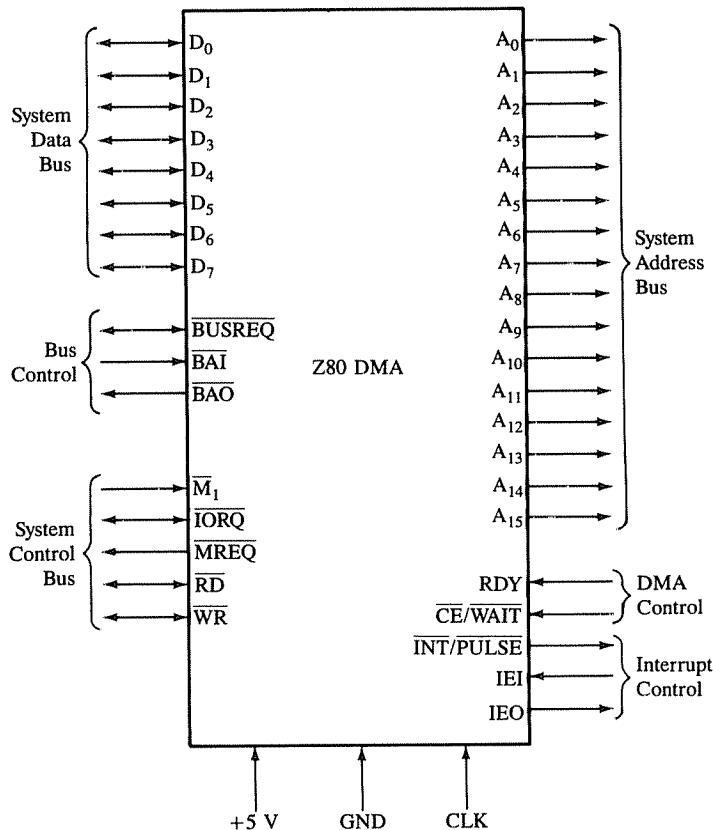


FIGURE 16.19

Z80 DMA: Logic Pinout

SOURCE: Courtesy of Zilog, Inc.

signals are bidirectional, and they perform different functions depending upon whether the DMA is in the peripheral mode or in the processor (master) mode. The signals that perform some special functions or are unique to the DMA controller are described as follows.

- $\overline{\text{CE/WAIT}}$ —(Chip Enable and Wait): Generally, this is used as a Chip Enable signal through which the MPU can access the DMA as a peripheral and write instructions in the control register or read status registers. However, it can be also used as a Wait line. After the DMA receives the Bus Acknowledge ($\overline{\text{BUSA}}$) signal and when it is in the processor mode, this line can be used as a Wait line by memory or I/O to slow down the speed of the DMA to match with memory or I/O.
- $\overline{\text{BAI}}$ —(Bus Acknowledge In): This is an active low input signal and is generally connected to the $\overline{\text{BUSA}}$ signal of the Z80. When this signal is active, it indicates that the

buses have been released by the MPU. In a multiple-DMA system, this signal is connected to the $\overline{\text{BAO}}$ (Bus Acknowledge Out) signal of the next higher priority DMA to form a daisy chain; the $\overline{\text{BAI}}$ of the highest priority is connected to the $\overline{\text{BUSAK}}$ of the Z80.

- $\overline{\text{BAO}}$ —Bus Acknowledge Out: This is an active low signal and is used in a multiple-DMA system to form the daisy chain priority.
- RDY—(Ready): This is an input signal and can be programmed as active low or high. When a peripheral is ready for data transfer, this signal goes active. When the DMA is in the processor mode, this signal controls the activities of the DMA.
- $\overline{\text{IORQ}}$, $\overline{\text{RD}}$, and $\overline{\text{WR}}$ —These are three bidirectional control signals. When the Z80 communicates with the DMA as a peripheral, these signals are input to the DMA. When the DMA functions as a processor, these signals are output signals and used to communicate with other memory or I/Os.
- $\overline{\text{MREQ}}$ —This is an output signal used as a control signal to communicate with memory.
- $\overline{\text{BUSREQ}}$ —(Bus Request): This is a bidirectional active low signal. As an output, it is connected to the $\overline{\text{BUSRQ}}$ of the Z80; it requests the use of the buses to the MPU. In a multiple-DMA system, it senses whether any other DMA is using the buses, and it refrains from requesting the buses until the other DMA operation is completed.

16.52 Interfacing the Z80 DMA Controller

The interfacing of the Z80 DMA is similar to that of any other peripheral. Figure 16.20 shows a schematic of interfacing the Z80 DMA with the Z80. The output line Y_1 of the decoder is connected to the $\overline{\text{CE/ WAIT}}$ line of the DMA; thus, the DMA is assigned the port address F9_H . The Bus Request and Bus Acknowledge signals of the Z80 are connected to the respective signals ($\overline{\text{BUSREQ}}$ and $\overline{\text{BAI}}$) of the DMA, and the RDY signal of the DMA

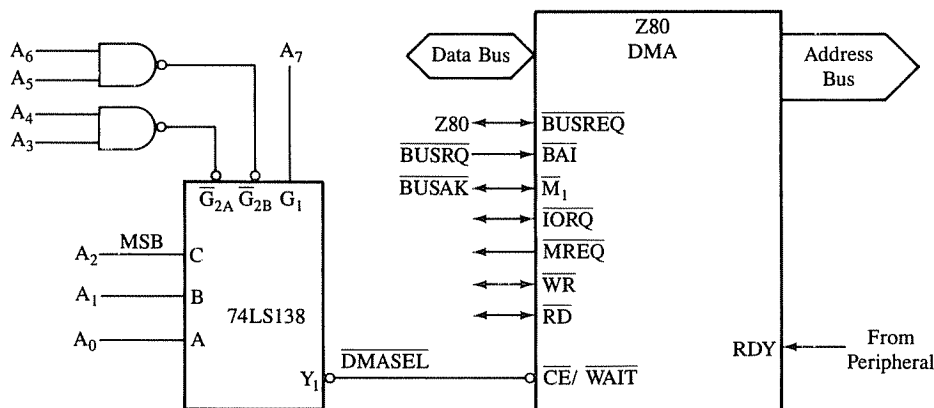


FIGURE 16.20
Interfacing DMA

is connected to a peripheral. The remaining control signals of the Z80 (\overline{M}_1 , \overline{RD} , \overline{WR} , \overline{IORQ} , and \overline{MREQ}) are connected to the respective control signals of the DMA; this is similar to interfacing any other programmable I/O. However, three control signals (\overline{RD} , \overline{WR} , \overline{IORQ}) of the DMA are bidirectional, and the \overline{MREQ} is an output signal. When the DMA is in the peripheral mode, the Z80 communicates with the DMA using the \overline{RD} , \overline{WR} , and \overline{IORQ} . When the DMA is in the processor mode, the DMA can communicate with the system memory or I/O (such as a floppy disk controller) using all four control signals (\overline{IORQ} , \overline{MREQ} , \overline{RD} , and \overline{WR}).

16.53 Programming the DMA Controller

The Z80 DMA is a versatile device and offers many options; thus, it requires a series of instructions to program the device for given specifications. However, we will discuss only the important features of this device. Figure 16.21 shows the internal structure of the DMA, which includes two port addresses, one byte counter, control and status registers, and control logic.

To program the DMA, we must write starting addresses of source and destination in Port A and Port B; either port can be used for source or destination. The addresses can be for memory or I/O; they can also be either fixed or variable, and if they are variable, they can be incremented or decremented. We must also specify the block length (the number of bytes to be transferred), type of operation (transfer, search, or search/transfer), and the mode of data transfer (byte, burst, or continuous).

The Z80 DMA has 21 Write registers to write control words and seven Read registers to read the status of an operation. The Write registers are organized in seven base register groups, and each group includes several control registers. The steps in writing

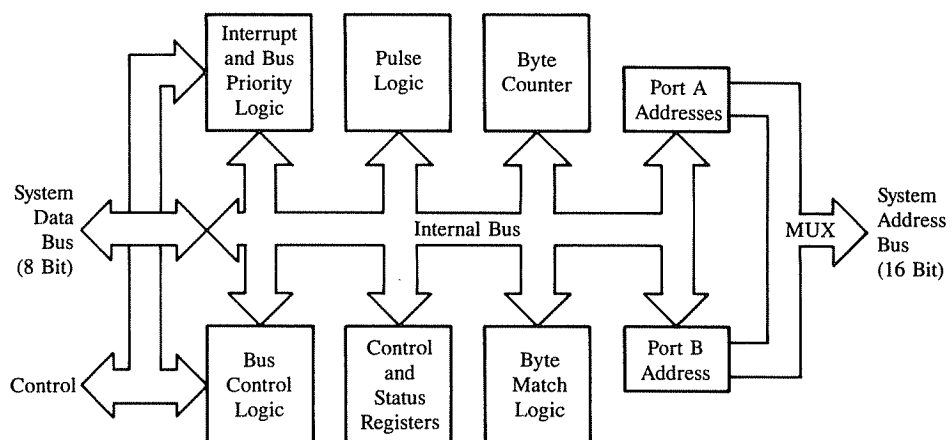


FIGURE 16.21
Z80 DMA Block Diagram
SOURCE: Courtesy of Zilog, Inc.

control words into these registers are similar to those of writing into Z80 SIO registers; they involve writing to a base register and using the base register as a pointer to other registers. The Read registers provide status information of the DMA, including the number in the byte counter and addresses in Ports A and B. For the programming details of these registers, refer to the Technical Manual of the Z80 DMA included in the References.

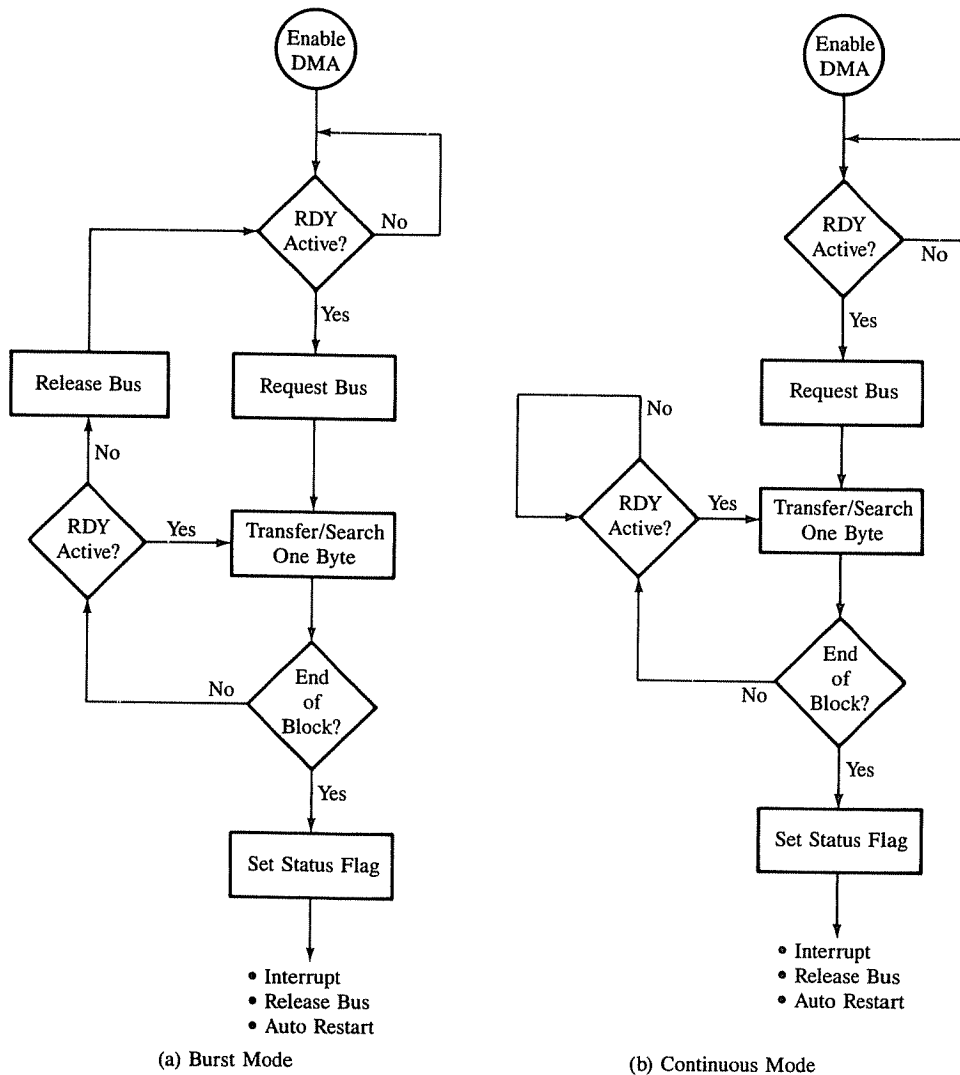


FIGURE 16.22

Flowchart: DMA Data Transfer in (a) Burst Mode, and (b) Continuous Mode

SOURCE: Courtesy of Zilog, Inc.

16.54 Process of DMA Data Transfer

In a Z80 system, the DMA is normally connected as a peripheral, and control bytes must be written at the power-up initialization. Then the DMA begins to monitor the RDY line from the peripheral (such as a floppy disk controller, a printer, or a SIO). When the RDY line goes active, indicating that the peripheral is ready for data transfer, the DMA asserts the $\overline{\text{BUSREQ}}$. The Z80 MPU completes the present machine cycle, acknowledges the request by asserting the $\overline{\text{BUSAk}}$, which is connected to the $\overline{\text{BAI}}$ of the DMA, and releases the control of the buses. When the $\overline{\text{BAI}}$ signal goes low, the DMA assumes the role of the processor and begins the data transfer according to the specified mode. This can also be accomplished by generating an interrupt when the RDY goes active and then enabling the DMA data transfer.

If the DMA is set up in the byte mode, it transfers one byte and releases control of the buses to the MPU. The buses are requested again for each succeeding byte transfer. If the DMA is programmed in the burst mode, the DMA transfers a byte and checks the block length. If it is not the end of the block and the RDY is still active, the data transfer continues. When the RDY line goes inactive, the $\overline{\text{BUSREQ}}$ signal goes high, and the DMA releases bus control to the MPU.

If the DMA is programmed in the continuous (block) mode, the data transfer continues until the end of the block. During the transfer, if the RDY goes inactive, the DMA does not release the control of the buses; it waits until the RDY goes active again and continues the data transfer until the end of the block. Figure 16.22 shows two flowcharts, one for the burst mode and the other for the continuous (block) mode.

SUMMARY

In this chapter, we have discussed applications of two external request signals: Wait and Bus Request. The Wait signal is used to provide additional time to a slow peripheral so that data transfer is properly synchronized between the Z80 microprocessor and slow peripherals. On the other hand, the Bus Request is used to implement high-speed data transfer without the intervention of the microprocessor. In addition, interfacing of dynamic memory, address decoding using a PROM, and memory design were illustrated. The important concepts discussed in this chapter can be summarized as follows.

- The Z80 includes the “WAIT” signal, which can be used as an input from slow peripherals to add clock cycles in a given operation. The Z80 samples the WAIT line during T_2 of each machine cycle, and if it is asserted low, the Z80 adds an additional clock period, thus providing extra time to slow peripherals.
- If memory access time is too slow in comparison with the execution speed of the microprocessor, the WAIT line can be used to synchronize the data transfer between the memory and the Z80.

- Dynamic memory stores a bit as a capacitive charge, which has a tendency to leak; therefore, all cells must be refreshed every two milliseconds.
- In a dynamic memory chip, the memory cells are organized in a square matrix format, and the row and the column address lines are multiplexed. Therefore, the row address must be placed on the memory address lines first, followed by the column address with an appropriate delay.
- Dynamic memory includes two signals, $\overline{\text{RAS}}$ (Row Address Strobe) and $\overline{\text{CAS}}$ (Column Address Strobe), which are used to latch the row address and the column address.
- The Z80 architecture includes a refresh register R that can be used as a 7-bit counter to refresh 128 rows every two milliseconds.
- In memory design, two techniques used for address decoding are called incomplete decoding and absolute decoding. The incomplete decoding technique is generally less expensive, but generates foldback memory addresses.
- Memory address decoding can be achieved by using various devices such as a decoder, a PROM programmer, or logic gates.
- Direct memory access (DMA) is a commonly used I/O technique for high-speed data transfer.
- The Z80 includes two signals— $\overline{\text{BUSRQ}}$ (Bus Request) and $\overline{\text{BUSAK}}$ (Bus Acknowledge)—which are used in the DMA data transfer.
- When the DMA controller sends the $\overline{\text{BUSREQ}}$ signal, the MPU acknowledges the request by asserting the $\overline{\text{BUSAK}}$ signal at the end of the machine cycle being executed and releases bus control to the DMA. The DMA uses the buses to transfer data, and then releases bus control back to the MPU.
- The DMA has three modes of data transfer: byte, burst, and block (continuous). In the byte mode, the DMA transfers one byte and releases the control back to the MPU. In the burst mode, the DMA continues to transfer data until the Ready signal of the DMA is inactive. In the block (continuous) mode, the DMA does not release the control of the buses until the entire block of the data transfer is complete.

ASSIGNMENTS

1. Define the memory access time.
2. Explain the condition that must be satisfied to add a Wait state.
3. Explain the need to refresh the dynamic memory cells.
4. Explain why the refresh circuitry is unnecessary in static R/W memory.
5. What are the advantages of using a PROM as a decoder?
6. Explain the DMA technique and the functions of the Z80 $\overline{\text{BUSRQ}}$ and $\overline{\text{BUSAK}}$ signals.
7. List the steps involved in the DMA controller's transfer of data using the $\overline{\text{BUSRQ}}$ and $\overline{\text{BUSAK}}$ signals.
8. In the DMA, what is the difference between the sequential and the simultaneous data transfer?

Designing Microprocessor- Based Products

In Chapter 1, we began with an overview of microprocessor-based products and microcomputer systems. In subsequent chapters, we examined the architecture of the Z80 microprocessor and interfacing of memory and I/Os. An overview of the Z80 instruction set was given in Chapter 6, and Chapters 7 through 11 were devoted to the discussion of various programming techniques, applications of the Z80 instruction set, and familiarization with operating systems. Similarly, we examined processes of data transfer such as interrupts, serial I/O, and DMA using programmable devices. This chapter is concerned with integrating or synthesizing the concepts of the microprocessor architecture, software, and interfacing discussed previously, by designing a microprocessor system.

Designing a single-board microcomputer is the best possible choice, since it can incorporate all the important concepts related to the microprocessor-based design. Furthermore, it allows expansion to include various types of interfacing. This chapter deals primarily with designing such a single-board computer. The chapter also includes troubleshooting techniques using an in-circuit emulator, a logic analyzer, and a signature analyzer.



17

OBJECTIVES

- Design modules (sub-systems) of a single-board microcomputer based on the Z80 microprocessor and Z80 family of programmable interfacing devices.
- Illustrate the interfacing of scanned display, and list the advantages.
- Illustrate the interfacing of a matrix keyboard using software.
- Illustrate the interfacing of a matrix keyboard using a keyboard encoder.
- Draw flowcharts to illustrate the software design of a Key Monitor program and related sub-modules.
- List the primary features of the in-circuit emulator and explain its applications in troubleshooting microprocessor-based systems.
- Explain the functions of a logic analyzer and a signature analyzer as troubleshooting instruments.

17.1

PROJECT STATEMENT: DESIGNING A MICROCOMPUTER SYSTEM

Design a single-board microcomputer to meet the following specifications:

- Input: Hex keyboard with minimum of 20 keys.
- Output: Six seven-segment LEDs to display memory address and data.
 : Two seven-segment LEDs to display results.
- Memory: Minimum 2K of EPROM—2716 (2048×8) or 2732 (4096×8).
 : 2K of R/W static memory—6116 (2048×8) or equivalent.
- Microprocessor: Z80.
- System Frequency: 2 MHz.
- Suggested Interfacing Devices: Z80 PIOs, bus drivers, 3-to-8 decoders, key encoder, segment and digit drivers, and Hex decoder/drivers.

The system should allow a user to enter and execute programs, and the buses should have enough driving capacity to interface with additional peripherals. While machine codes are being entered, the memory address and data should be displayed by seven-segment LEDs. A two-digit seven-segment LED port should be available as an output port to display the results when programs are executed.

17.11 Project Analysis

In analyzing the specifications of a microprocessor-based product it is essential to consider both hardware and software, simultaneously. Both are interrelated, and each will have an impact on the other. However, in this project we will not focus on one approach, but will explore alternatives. We will design various modules and leave the final decisions with the user.

The functions of the single-board microcomputer according to the specifications (given above) can be classified into three categories as follows:

1. Check the keyboard for data or functions.
2. Display memory address, data, and results.
3. Execute programs.

Keyboard The keyboard in this design is an input port with keys arranged in the matrix format. When a key is pressed, the keyboard routine should provide a binary equivalent of the key. This can be accomplished various ways: one is a software approach whereby a key closure is sensed, debounced, identified, and the key code obtained by using the software. The other is the hardware approach whereby all these key functions are performed through a programmable keyboard encoder.

The keys are divided into two groups: One group is for Hex digits from 0 to F, and the second is concerned with various functions. There are two basic approaches to entering data and specifying a function. One approach is to begin with Hex keys, identify the memory address, and then specify a function such as Examine Memory or Execute. In the second approach, a function is specified first and then Hex keys are entered.

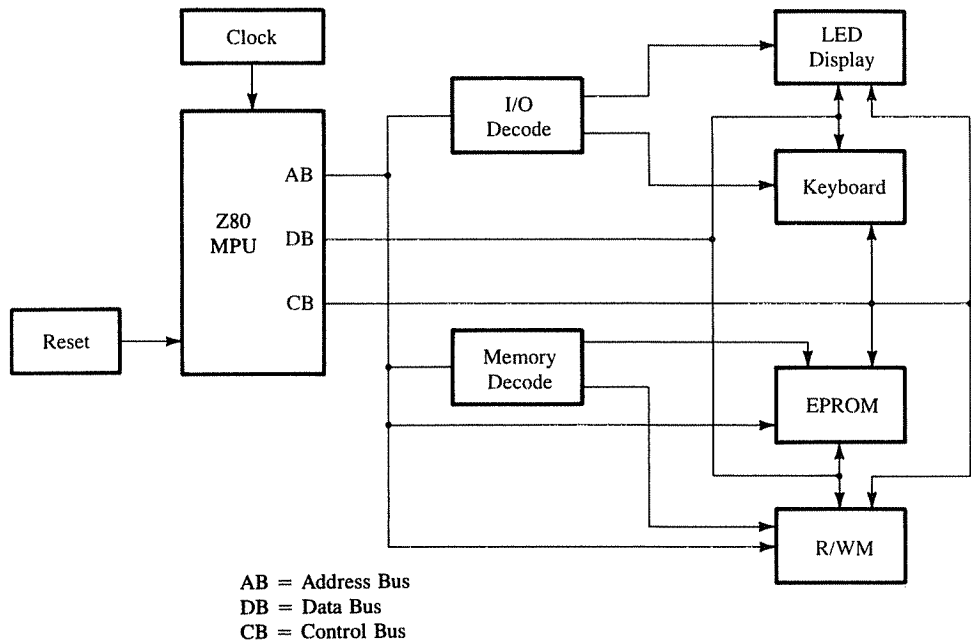
Display This project has two types of display: the system display and the user display. The system display consists of four seven-segment LEDs for memory address and two seven-segment LEDs for data. The user display consists of two seven-segment LEDs for results. We can explore both hardware and software approaches to designing output ports for these displays and suggest a way of combining the user display and the data display.

Execute This is the simplest function among all three and can be performed with one instruction: JP (HL). When the user wants to execute a program, he or she provides the starting memory address where the program is stored and presses the Execute key. Assuming the memory address is stored in the HL register, the instruction JP (HL) simply loads the program counter with the specified memory address, and the program control is transferred from the monitor program to the user's program.

Figure 17.1 shows the block diagram of a single-board microcomputer, and we can divide the project design into the following sections:

1. Z80 MPU design.
2. Memory design.
3. Display design.
4. Keyboard interfacing.
5. System software.

This single-board microcomputer is designed around the Z80 microprocessor, and the MPU should provide necessary buses with appropriate driving capacity. The MPU design can be divided into the following segments:

**FIGURE 17.1**

Block Diagram of a Single-Board Microcomputer

1. Address bus.
2. Data bus.
3. Control signals.
4. Frequency and power requirements.
5. Externally triggered signals (Reset, Interrupts, etc.).

17.21 Address Bus

The Z80 has 16 address lines A_{15} – A_0 ; this is a unidirectional bus with driving current capacity of $I_{OH} = 250 \mu\text{A}$ and sinking capacity I_{OL} of 1.8 mA. At this point, we do not know the total load on the address bus, but by examining the block diagram, we can make some reasonable estimates of the load on the address bus. Figure 17.1 shows that the address bus will drive two decode circuits (I/O and memory decoders) and two memory chips (CMOS 6116 and EPROM 2716). We can calculate the bus loading as follows (see Figure 17.2):

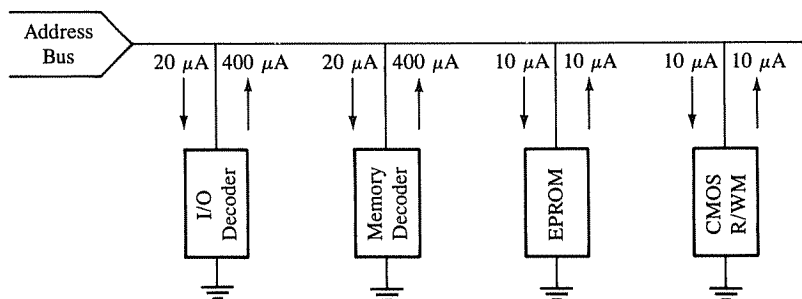


FIGURE 17.2
Loading on the Address Bus

High-level input currents I_{IH}

Two Decoders =	$20\mu\text{A} \times 2 = 40\mu\text{A}$
R/W Memory	$= 10\mu\text{A}$
2732 EPROM	$= 10\mu\text{A}$
	<hr/>
	$60\mu\text{A}$

Low-level input currents I_{PL}

$400\mu\text{A} \times 2 = 800\mu\text{A}$
$= 10\mu\text{A}$
$= 10\mu\text{A}$
<hr/>
$820\mu\text{A}$

By examining these load currents, we can conclude that the bus driver is unnecessary for the address bus; we can even add a few decode circuits or gates. However, this single-board microcomputer is expected to be used for general-purpose interfacing; therefore, as a precaution we will use the 74LS244 as a bus driver to increase the driving capacity. The 74LS244 is an octal buffer/driver, capable of sourcing 15 mA and sinking 24 mA of current. Figure 17.3 shows two octal buffers for 16 address lines; the Enable lines of these buffers are active low, and they are permanently enabled. Thus, the Z80 address bus can drive additional devices (decoders, gates, etc.) without excessive loading.

17.22 Data Bus

The Z80 data bus has eight bidirectional lines with driving capacity similar to that of the address bus. Because the data bus is bidirectional, the loading on the bus varies considerably. When the Z80 is reading from memory, the memory chip that is enabled becomes the driving source and the microprocessor becomes the load, and when the Z80 is writing to an output port, the microprocessor is the source and the latches of the output port constitute the load. An octal latch, such as the 74LS363, requires a 400 μA input current at the low level logic; on the other hand, the 7475 requires 3 to 6 mA. Therefore, as a precaution, we will use a bidirectional buffer as a data bus driver.

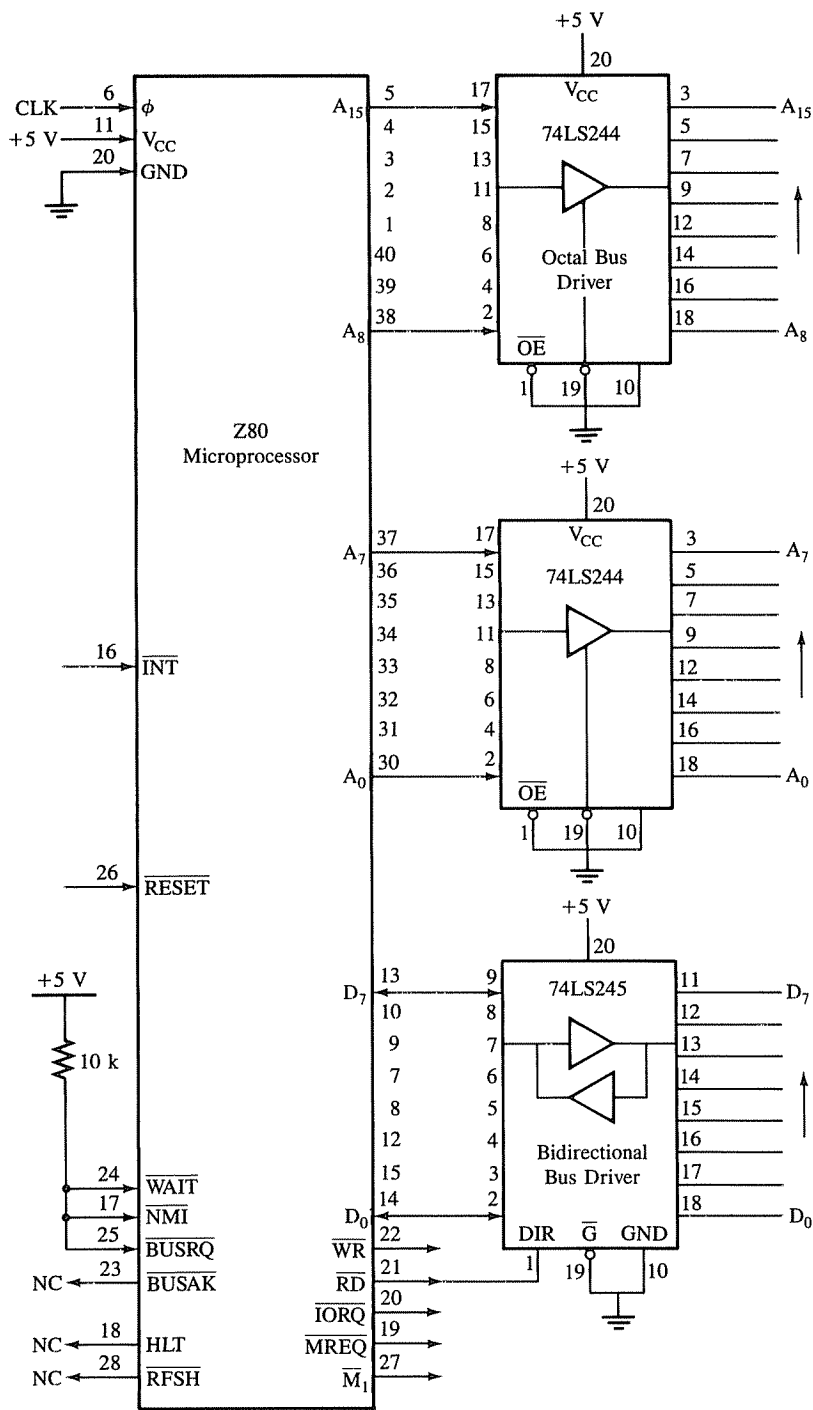


FIGURE 17.3
Z80 MPU with Bus Drivers

Figure 17.3 shows the 74LS245 as an 8-bit bidirectional bus driver to increase the driving capacity of the data bus. The 74LS245 can sink 24 mA and source 15 mA of current. The 74LS245 has eight bidirectional data lines; the direction of the data flow is determined by the direction control line (DIR). Figure 17.3 shows that the bus driver is enabled by grounding the Enable (\overline{G}) signal. The direction of the data flow is determined by connecting the \overline{RD} signal from the Z80 to the DIR signal. When the Z80 is writing to peripherals, the \overline{RD} is high and data flow from the Z80 to peripherals. When it is reading from peripherals, the \overline{RD} is low and data flow toward the microprocessor.

17.23 Control Bus

The Z80 provides five active low signals— \overline{M}_1 , \overline{IORQ} , \overline{MREQ} , \overline{RD} , and \overline{WR} —which can be combined to generate necessary control signals. The commonly used control signals are \overline{IORD} (I/O Read), \overline{IOWR} (I/O Write), \overline{MEMRD} (Memory Read), \overline{MEMWR} (Memory Write), and \overline{INTA} (Interrupt Acknowledge); they can be generated by the logic combinations shown in Figure 17.4(a). However, in memory interfacing the \overline{RD} and \overline{WR} signals are generally connected to the memory chip directly and \overline{MREQ} is combined with the address-decoding scheme. Figure 17.4(b) shows another scheme to generate the I/O control signals and the \overline{INTA} signal by using a 3-to-8 decoder.

The driving capacity of these control signals is determined by the circuits used in generating them. If necessary, these control signals can be buffered by using the 74LS244 or the Hex drivers 74LS367. Generally, the circuits shown in Figure 17.4 will have sufficient drive so that buffers may not be needed.

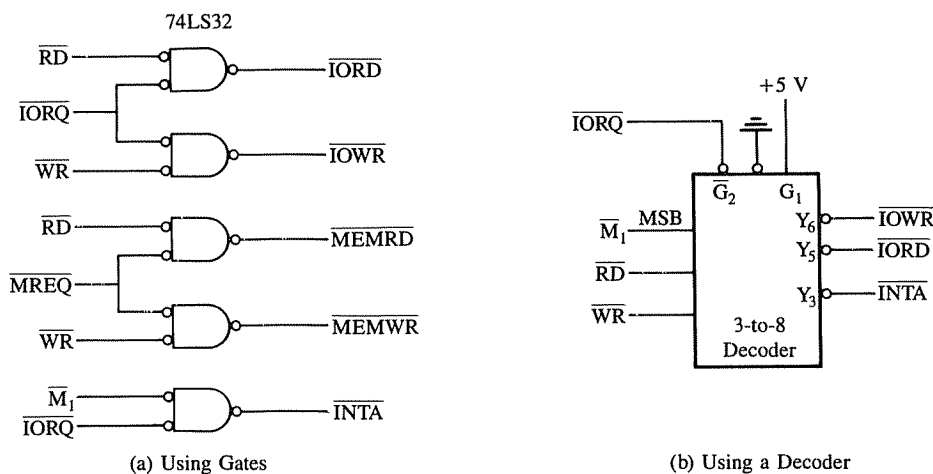


FIGURE 17.4
Generating Control Signals

17.24 Frequency and Power Requirements

The clock circuitry is of critical importance in designing Z80 systems. The Z80 does not have an oscillator circuit on its chip; therefore, a separate oscillator circuit needs to be built. The Z80 requires a single-phase TTL level clock with a maximum 30 nsec rise/fall time, and the voltage levels should be between ($V_{cc} - 0.6V$) and 0.8 V. The Z80 microprocessor has four versions of the chip operating at different maximum frequencies: the Z80 operates at 2.5 MHz, the Z80A at 4 MHz, the Z80B at 6 MHz, and Z80H at 8 MHz clock.

Figure 17.5(a) shows a typical oscillator circuit with two inverters and RC network; the 330 ohm pull-up resistor is necessary to obtain TTL voltage level within 0.6 V of V_{cc} . However, this type of circuit is somewhat unstable because of variances in the components. If the microprocessor is not operating at the specified maximum frequency, the circuit shown in Figure 17.5(a) can function very well. Figure 17.5(b) shows a circuit that is generally used in industrial products. The circuit uses a crystal to stabilize the frequency. The output of the oscillator circuit is fed to a flip-flop that divides the frequency in half; the flip-flop provides a 50 percent duty cycle for the clock. In addition to these circuits, several manufacturers (for example, the Motorola K1160 series) offer oscillator/driver circuits on a chip.

The Z80 and other components used in this system require one power supply with +5 V. The current requirement of the power supply is determined primarily by the display load and the peripherals of the system; the MPU and memory components of the system require less than 400 mA.

17.25 External Trigger Signals

As discussed in Chapter 3, the Z80 has provision for five external input signals: Reset ($\overline{\text{RESET}}$), Interrupt ($\overline{\text{INT}}$), Nonmaskable Interrupt ($\overline{\text{NMI}}$), Wait ($\overline{\text{WAIT}}$), and Bus Request ($\overline{\text{BUSRQ}}$). Of these five input signals, the $\overline{\text{RESET}}$ and the $\overline{\text{INT}}$ are used in this system, and the others are disabled by connecting them to +5 V (see Figure 17.3).

Reset Circuit The $\overline{\text{RESET}}$ signal in the Z80 is active low; when this signal goes low, the system is reset. The reset forces the program counter to zero, disables the interrupt flip-flop, clears registers I and R, and sets the Z80 in the interrupt Mode 0.

The reset circuit shown in Figure 17.5(c) is an RC network with a time constant around 50 ms. When the reset key is pushed, the $\overline{\text{RESET}}$ goes low and slowly rises to +5 V, providing sufficient time for the MPU to reset the system; two inverters provide a sharp pulse. Some systems include a circuit called *power-on reset*, as shown in Figure 17.5(d). As power is turned on, the voltage across the capacitor does not change instantaneously; therefore, the voltage at the junction of the resistor and the capacitor goes low and slowly rises to +5 V. This pulse can be used through two inverters as in Figure 17.5(c) to reset the system.

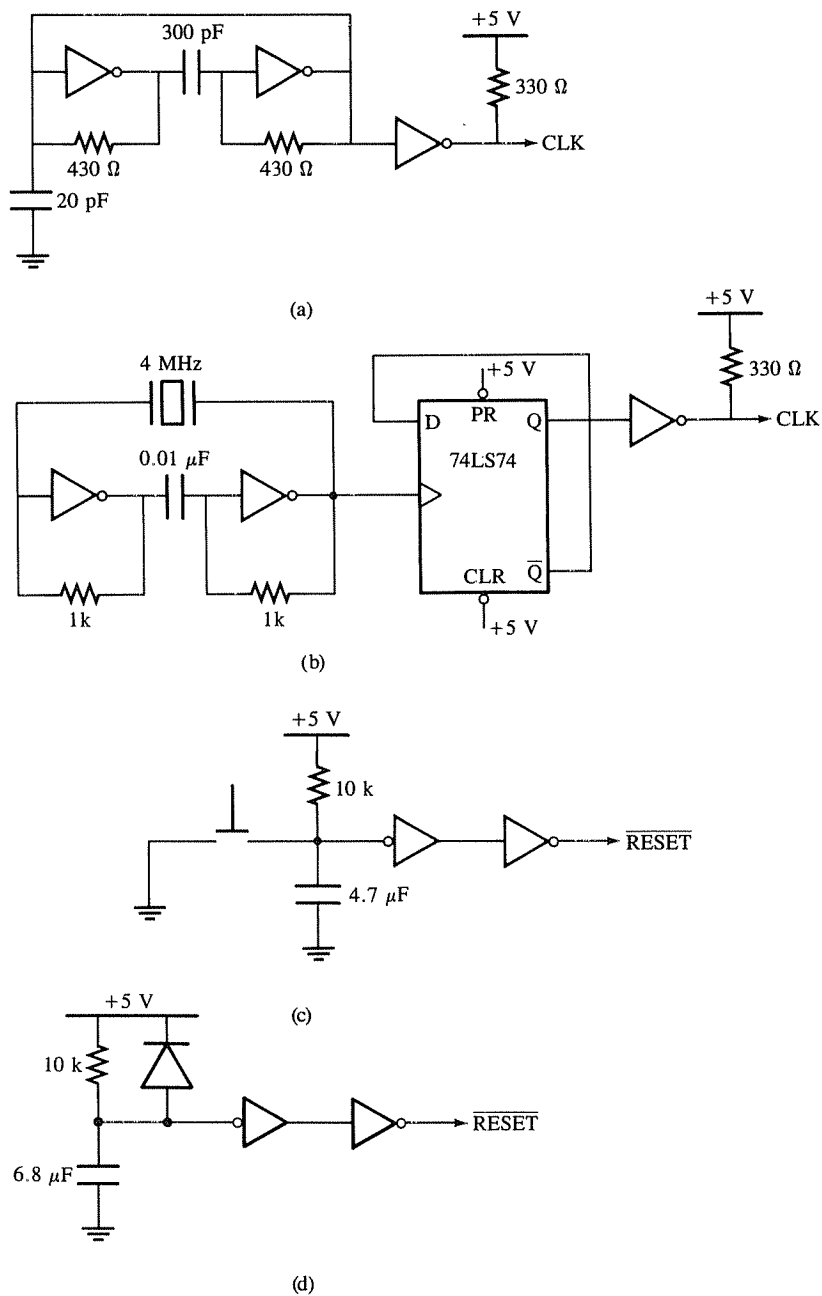


FIGURE 17.5

(a) RC Network Oscillator Circuit (b) Oscillator with Crystal (c) Manual Reset Circuit
(d) Power-on Reset Circuit

Interrupts The Z80 has two interrupt signals, $\overline{\text{INT}}$ and $\overline{\text{NMI}}$, both active low. In this system, we will use the $\overline{\text{INT}}$ signal and tie the $\overline{\text{NMI}}$ signal high; the floating interrupt pin can cause malfunction in the system.

Bus Request This is an active low signal, generally used in the DMA data transfer. We will not be using this signal in our system; this signal also must be connected to + 5V.

Wait If the $\overline{\text{WAIT}}$ signal goes low during T_2 of any machine cycle, the MPU enters the Wait state for an integral number of clock cycles until WAIT goes high, and then the MPU completes the Read or Write cycle. This signal is used primarily to synchronize slow peripherals with the MPU. If we were to use the Z80A and increase the system frequency to 4 MHz, the WAIT signal might be necessary for memory devices used in this project (see Example 16.1 for Wait calculations). In this project, to prevent the MPU from entering the Wait state, this pin is tied high.

17.3 MEMORY DESIGN

This single-board microcomputer includes two types of memory: EPROM and R/W memory. In memory design, we should be concerned about the *size* of the memory chips required and their memory maps, future *expandability*, and *access time*.

The first consideration of the memory design is the memory size and the memory map. For our design, the monitor program can be very easily stored in 2K memory, such as the 2716 EPROM. However, the price difference between the easily available 2732 EPROM (4K) and the 2716 EPROM is negligible, and both of them are pin-compatible. Therefore, we will use the 2732 EPROM ($4K \times 8$) in our design. The memory map of this EPROM should begin at memory address 0000_H because the program counter is cleared to that address whenever the system is reset. The memory map of EPROM with 4K bytes of memory should be placed in the range from 0000_H to $0FFF_H$ as shown in Figure 17.6. However, there are no such restrictions for the memory map of R/W memory; it can be mapped anywhere so long as it does not overlap with the map of the EPROM. The other consideration is an appropriate decoding technique for memory devices with different sizes; in this system, we are using 4K of EPROM and 2K of R/W memory. If we use the same decoding network for both devices, such as a 3-to-8 decoder, the 2K R/W memory will be left with one “don’t care” address line; thus, it will have foldback memory addresses. However, in a small system, the foldback memory is not a serious concern. Figure 17.6 shows how to avoid the foldback memory by using a negative NOR logic gate and a 3-to-8 decoder (explained in section 17.32).

The next consideration is future expandability. The 2732 requires a 24-pin socket; however, its pinout is designed in such a way that it can use a 28-pin socket and be compatible with larger memory chips. By using a 28-pin socket with additional DIP switches, the system can be expanded to accommodate the 2764 (8K), 27128 (16K), and

27256 (32K) memory chips. However, this type of expansion cannot be easily accomplished by the decoding network shown in Figure 17.6; to accommodate larger memory chips, we will have to use a PROM, which can be reprogrammed for the decoding.

The last consideration is the memory access time and whether we need any Wait states in interfacing these memories. In the last decade, the memory access time has

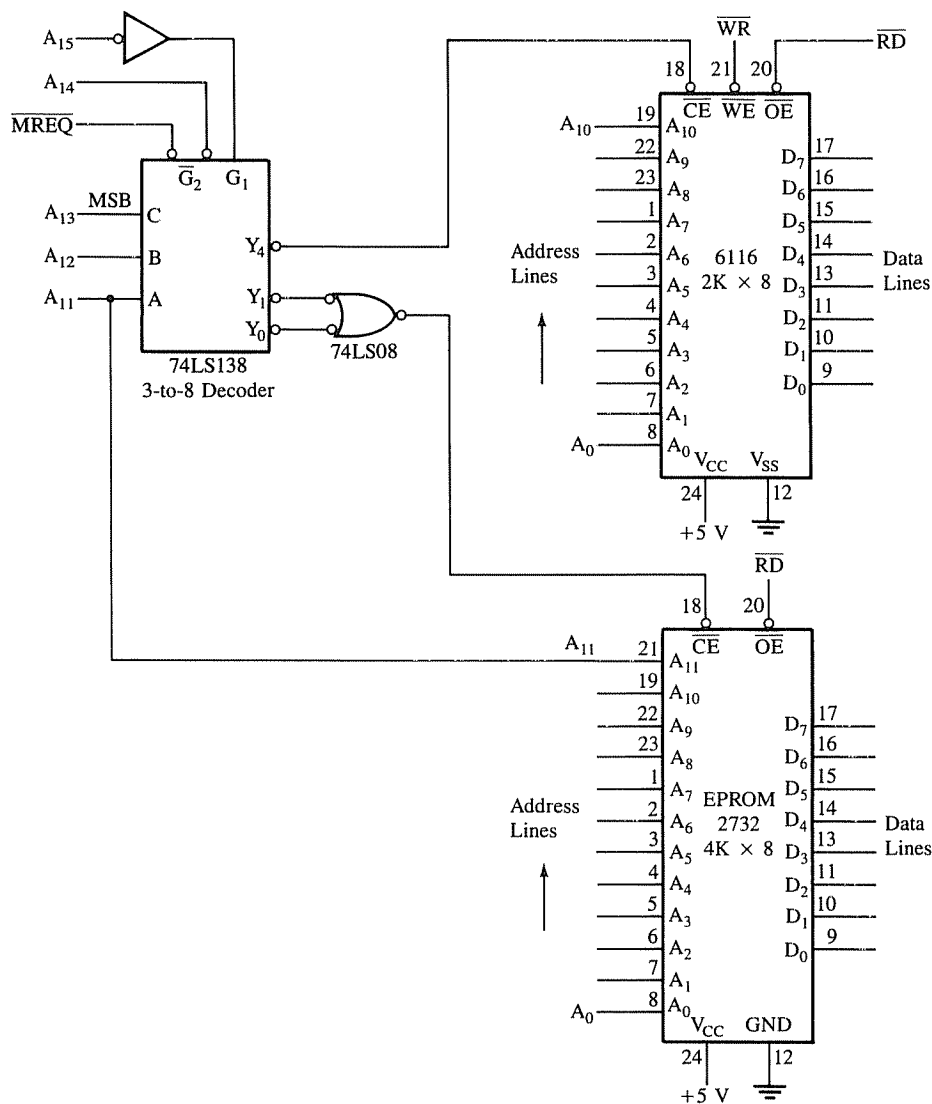


FIGURE 17.6
Schematic: Memory Design

A ₁₅	A ₁₄	A ₁₃	A ₁₂	A ₁₁	A ₁₀ ----- A ₀	Address
0	0	1	0	0	0 ----- 0	2000 _H
					↓	
0	0	1	0	0	1 ----- 1	27FF _H

DESIGNING SCANNED DISPLAYS

17.4

In this system, two types of displays are specified: the system display and the user display. In Chapter 13, we discussed the interfacing of seven-segment LED displays; the approach was primarily software dependent based on the table look-up technique. In addition, we briefly introduced alternative approaches: the scan technique and hardware decoding. We will illustrate both of these approaches in this design: the scan technique for the system display and the hardware decoding for the user display. We will use Z80 PIOs as the interfacing devices.

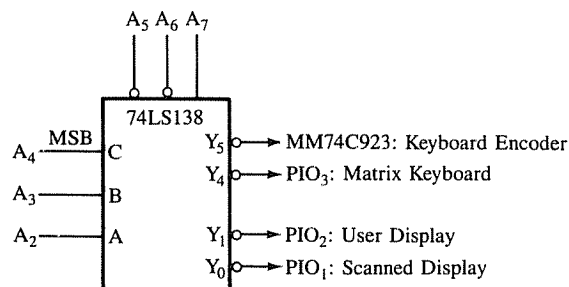
17.41 Basic Concepts

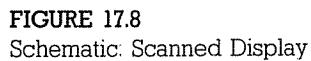
The basic concepts in scanned display were discussed in Section 13.58 (Figure 13.20). The display involves two output ports: One port is used to send seven-segment binary code, and the other port is used to turn seven-segment LEDs off or on in a sequence. The program repeats the sequence of code continuously; thus, the user can see a stable display.

17.42 Interfacing Circuit

Figure 17.7 shows the address-decoding network using the 74LS138 3-to-8 decoder. The address lines A₇–A₂ are connected to the decoder and the remaining two address lines A₁ and A₀ will be connected directly to the Z80 PIO. The output lines of this decoder will be used for other displays and the matrix keyboard. The decode logic of the PIO is identical to that of Figure 13.6. The Z80 PIO is selected when the the output line Y₀ of the decoder (Figure 17.7) is asserted. Therefore, the port addresses of the PIO (Figure 17.8) are as follows:

FIGURE 17.7
I/O Decoding Circuit





A ₇	A ₆	A ₅	A ₄	A ₃	A ₂	A ₁	A ₀	
<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; display: inline-block;">1 0 0</div>			<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; display: inline-block;">0 0 0</div>			0	0	= 80 _H Port A
↓			↓			0	1	= 81 _H Port B
Decoder Enable Lines			Decoder Inputs			1	0	= 82 _H Control Register A
						1	1	= 83 _H Control Register B

Figure 17.8 shows the schematic of a scanned display; it has six common cathode seven-segment LEDs, one Z80 PIO, and two drivers. Of the six LEDs, four are used for memory address and two for data. Both ports of the PIO are set up as output ports: Port A with the address 80_H for segment codes and Port B with the address 81_H for digits to turn LEDs on or off. The SN 75491 and the SN 75492 are used as the segment code driver and the digit driver, respectively, to increase the current capacity in the circuit.

SN 75491—Segment Driver The SN 75491 is a quad device that has four Darlington pair transistors in a package; to drive eight data lines, we need two devices, as shown in Figure 17.8. The SN 75491 can source or sink 50 mA current (approximately 12.5 mA/pair). Pin A, the base of the transistor, is connected to one of the data lines of the output port and emitter E is connected to one of the LED segments.

SN 75492—Digit Driver The SN 75492 has six Darlington pairs in a package and can sink 250 mA of total current. Each collector (pins 6Y–1Y) is connected to the common cathode of its respective LED, and the data lines from the port are connected to the base of the transistor to turn the LEDs on or off.

To display a digit, the seven-segment code for the digit is sent to Port A, and the corresponding cathode is turned on and off in sequence; the loop is repeated continuously.

17.43 Program

```
;The following program initializes the Z80 PIO ports A and B as output ports
; and displays a constant message stored at memory location SYSRDY (System
; Ready). The message has six codes: uP-rdy (microprocessor ready). The
; code for the right-most letter "y" is stored at the first location SYSRDY,
; and the scanning begins at that location.
```

SEGMNT	EQU 80H	;Port address-Segment Driver
DIGIT	EQU 81H	;Port address-Digit Driver
PIO1A	EQU 82H	;Control Port A
PIO1B	EQU 83H	;Control Port B
PIO1:	LD A, 00001111B	;PIO control word 0FH for Mode 0
	OUT (PIO1A), A	;Initialize Port A
	OUT (PIO1B), A	;Initialize Port B
READY:	LD B, 00000001B	;Initialize digit code
	LD C, 06	;Initialize counter for six LEDs
	LD HL, SYSRDY	;Use HL as memory pointer for message
NEXT:	LD A, (HL)	;Get segment code
	OUT (SEGMNT), A	;Output segment code
	LD A, B	;Get digit code
	OUT (DIGIT), A	;Turn on one LED
	CALL DELAY1	;Wait 1 millisecond
	XOR A	;Code to turn off segments
	OUT (SEGMNT), A	;Clear segments


```

        RLC B                ;Shift digit code to turn on next LED
        INC HL               ;Point to next code
        DEC C               ;Next LED count
        JR Z, NEXT
        RET
SYSRDY: DB 5EH, 50H,        ;Message codes
        DB 40H, 73H, 1CH ;y d r - P u

```

PROGRAM DESCRIPTION

This routine initializes ports A and B of PIO1 as output ports by sending the word 00001111B (0F_H) to the control registers of Port A and Port B (see Figure 13.7 for the definition of the control word). The next instruction initializes the scan routine by placing the digit code 00000001 into register B; this code will turn on LED-1 (the first LED at the right). By rotating bit D₀ (logic 1) to the left, the next LED is turned on and the LED presently being displayed is turned off; thus, only one LED is on at a time. Register C is set up as a counter to scan six LEDs, and the HL register is used as a memory pointer to point to where the message is stored.

The scanning begins by sending the first code (the last letter “y” in the message) to Port A, and LED-1 is turned on by sending the digit code. This LED is kept on for approximately 1 ms by calling the delay routine, and the entire display is turned off by clearing the segment code; this eliminates the flicker and the ghost images. The segment codes are sent in a sequence as they are stored in memory, and the corresponding LED is turned on until the counter reaches zero. To keep the display on, the routine should be called repeatedly.

Comments In the scanned display, the hardware is minimized. With two output ports, this scheme can scan eight LEDs. In addition, current consumption is considerably reduced. However, the major disadvantage is that the MPU is kept occupied in scanning the display continuously. To relieve the MPU from the continuous scanning task, the Intel 8279—programmable keyboard/display interface device—can be used (discussed in the Section 17.5).

17.44 Hardware Approach for the User Display Using a Hex Decoder/Driver

The user display requires two seven-segment LEDs; they are interfaced with the MPU using the Z80 PIO2 and 9370 Hex decoder drivers (Figure 17.9). The 9370 has four data lines as binary input and seven output lines. The binary input is decoded internally, and the corresponding seven-segment code is placed on the output lines. To display two bytes, we need one port of the PIO and two 9370s. The PIO2 is accessed by connecting the decoder output Y₁ (Figure 17.7) to the $\overline{\text{CE}}$ signal of the PIO; thus, the port addresses range from 84_H to 87_H.

In this design, we will use Port A and leave Port B for additional displays. Because the decoding is performed internally using hardware, the software required to use this

display is simple; it involves initializing Port A as an output port in Mode 0 and outputting the byte to be displayed to Port A. The instructions to display a byte at this port are as follows:

```

PIO2A    EQU    86H           ;Control Port A
LEDPRT    EQU    84H           ;LED port address
LD A, 00001111B             ;PIO control word for Mode 0
OUT (PIO2A), A               ;Initialize Port A of PIO2
LD A, BYTE                     ;Load byte to be displayed
OUT (LEDPRT), A              ;Display BYTE at Port A

```

Comments In this hardware approach, the number of components increase in proportion with the numbers of LEDs; this can be quite expensive. The power consumption also increases in the same proportion.

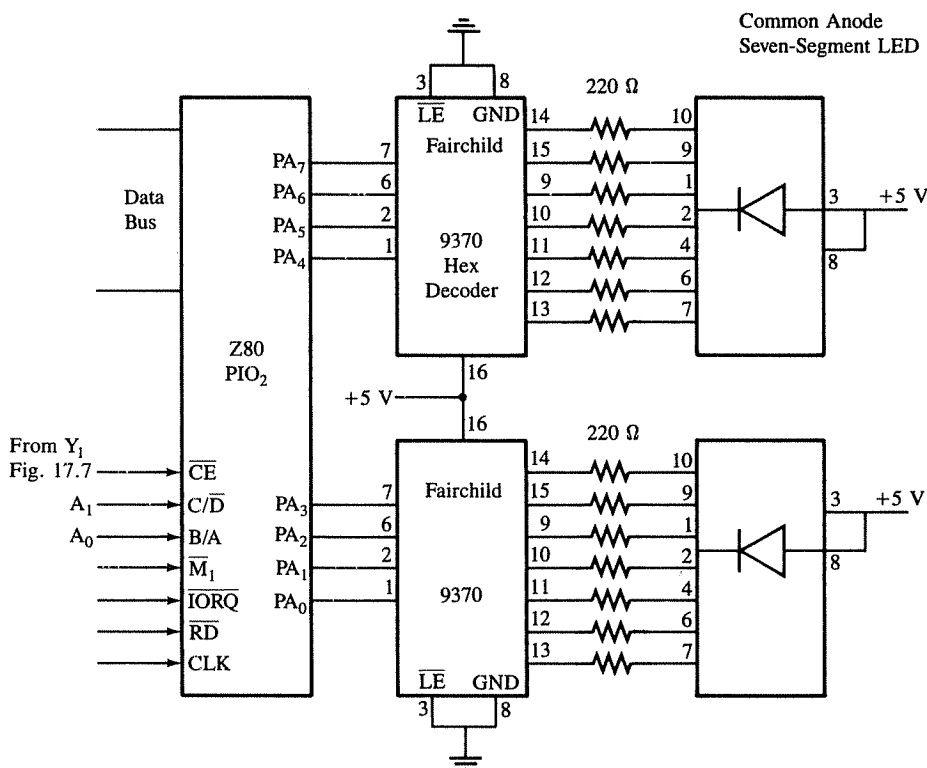


FIGURE 17.9

Schematic: Interfacing Seven-Segment LEDs Using a Hex Decoder

17.5

INTERFACING A MATRIX KEYBOARD

A matrix keyboard is a commonly used input device when more than eight keys are necessary, rather than a row of keys as discussed in Chapter 13. A matrix keyboard reduces the number of connections, thus the number of interfacing devices required. For example, a keyboard with 20 keys, arranged in a 5×4 (five rows and four columns) matrix, requires nine lines from the microprocessor to make all the connections instead of twenty lines needed if the keys are connected in a linear format.

In interfacing a matrix keyboard, the major task is to identify which key is pressed and decode the key in terms of its binary value. This task can be accomplished through either software or hardware. In this section we explore both methods: First we discuss the basic concepts in interfacing a matrix keyboard, and then write subroutines to check, identify, and decode (interpret) the key pressed. Finally, we illustrate how these functions can be replaced by a hardware device, such as the National Semiconductor keyboard encoder MM74C923.

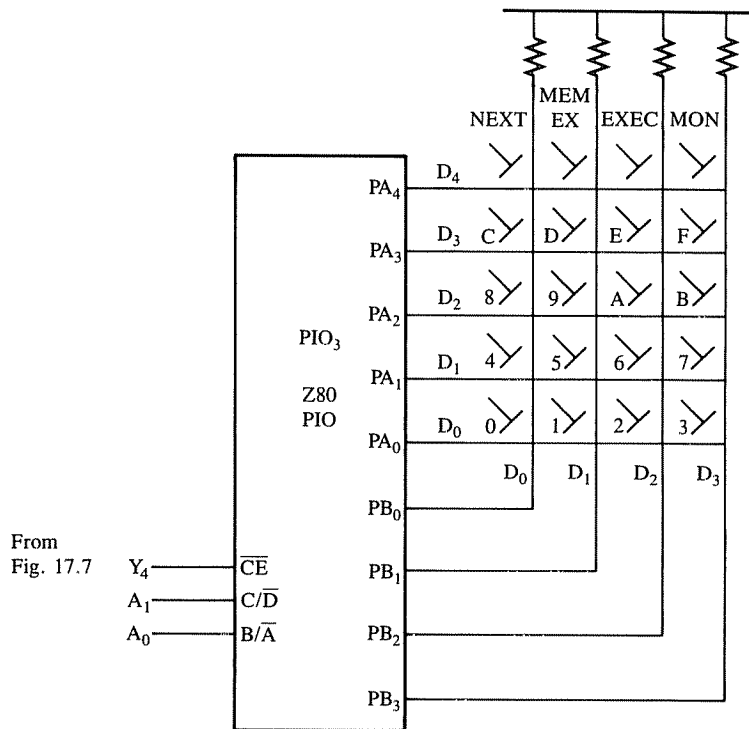


FIGURE 17.10
Interfacing a Matrix Keyboard

17.51 Basic Concepts

Figure 17.10 shows a matrix keyboard with 20 keys; the keyboard has five rows and four columns. The first sixteen keys in a sequence represent data 0 to F in Hex, and the remaining four will represent various functions such as Store and Execute. The circuit includes two I/O ports: one output port and one input port. Rows are connected to the output port and columns to the input port. The columns and rows make contact only when a key is pressed; otherwise, they remain high (+5 V). When a key is pressed, the key must be identified by its column and the row, and the intersection of the column and row must change from high to low. This can be accomplished as explained in the following steps.

1. Ground all the rows by sending logic 0 through the output port.
2. Check the columns by reading the input port. If no key is pressed, all columns remain high. Continue to repeat Steps 1 and 2 until the reading indicates a change.
3. When one of the keys is pressed, the corresponding column goes low; at that point, identify and decode the key.

17.52 Interfacing Circuit

Figure 17.10 shows an interfacing circuit of a 20-key matrix keyboard using a Z80 PIO, identified as PIO3. This circuit uses the decoding network of Figure 17.7; the output line Y_4 of the decoder is connected to the \overline{CE} line of PIO3. Therefore, the port addresses of the PIO3 range from 90_H to 93_H as follows:

A ₇	A ₆	A ₅	A ₄	A ₃	A ₂	A ₁	A ₀	
1	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	= 90 _H Port A
						0	1	= 91 _H Port B
						1	0	= 92 _H Control Register A
						1	1	= 93 _H Control Register B
↓ Decoder Enable Lines			↓ Decoder Inputs					

In Figure 17.10, the rows are connected to Port A, and the columns are connected to Port B; therefore, Port A should be initialized as an output port and Port B as an input port. To initialize the PIO3, the instructions are as follows:

```
PIO3A EQU 92H           ;Port A control register
PIO3B EQU 93H           ;Port B control register
PIO2: LD A, 00001111B   ;Mode 0 control word (0FH)
      OUT (PIO3A), A     ;Initialize Port A as an output port
      LD A, 01001111B   ;Mode 1 control word (4FH)
      OUT (PIO3B), A     ;Initialize Port B as an input port
```

17.53 Program

The matrix keyboard routine is conceptually important because it illustrates how to set up relationships between hardware binary readings and expected codes. For example, when

key “0” is pressed, the input reading at Port B will be 1 1 1 0 (D_3 – D_0); however, the binary code for that key must be 0 0 0 0 0 0 0. This conversion is performed by the software routines which are illustrated in this section. Similarly, when key “NEXT” is pressed, the input reading will be the same as for the “0” key (1 1 1 0). The software routines will have to differentiate between data and function keys.

This matrix keyboard problem can be divided into four steps (Figure 17.11).

Step 1: Check whether all keys are open.

In this step, the program grounds all the rows by sending 0s to the output port. It reads the input port to check the key release, and debounces the key release by waiting for 10 ms. This step is necessary to avoid misinterpretation if a key is held for a long time.

Step 2: Check a key closure.

In this step, the program checks for a key closure by reading the input port. If all keys are open, the input reading on data lines D_3 – D_0 should be 1 1 1 1, and if one of the keys is closed, the reading will be less than 1 1 1 1. (Data lines D_7 – D_4 are not connected; therefore, the data on these lines should be masked.)

Step 3: Identify the key.

This is a somewhat complex procedure. Once a key closure is found, the key should be identified by grounding one row at a time and checking each column for zero. Figure 17.11 (Step 3) shows that two loops are set up: The outer loop grounds one row at a time, and the inner loop checks each column for zero.

Step 4: Find the binary key code for the key.

The binary key code is identified through the counter procedure. For each row, the inner loop is repeated four times to check four columns, and for every column check, the counter is incremented. For five rows, the inner loop is repeated twenty times, and the counter is incremented from 0 to 13_H —thus maintaining the binary code in the counter. Once the key is identified, the code is transferred from the counter to the accumulator. The codes 0 to F are used for data keys and the remaining codes 10_H to 13_H are assigned various functions as shown in Figure 17.10.

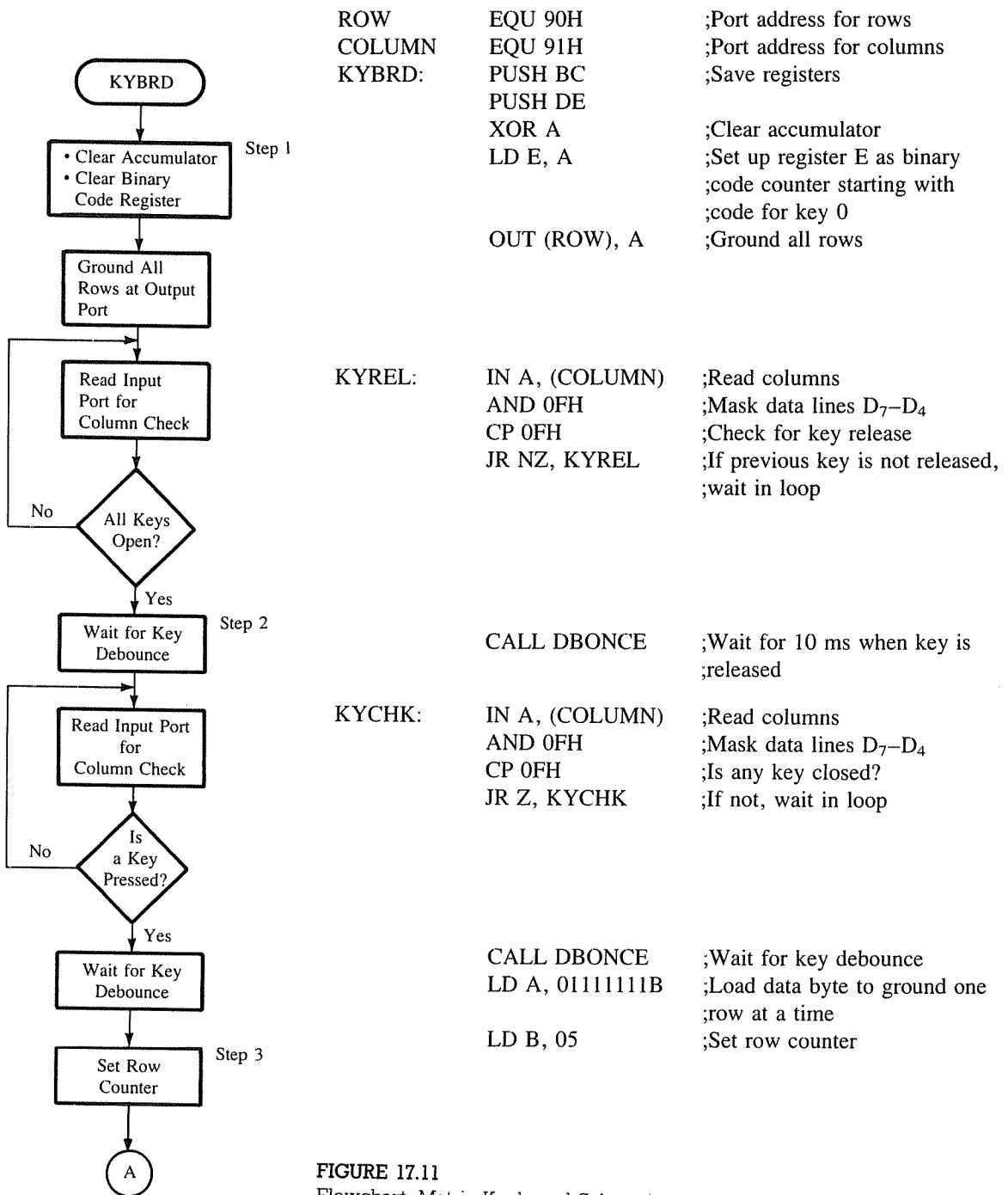
KEYBOARD SUBROUTINE

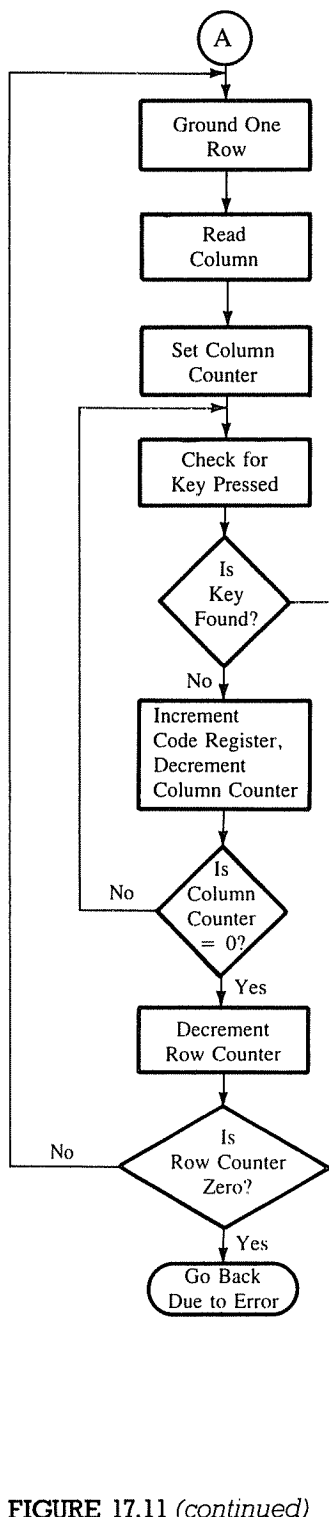
;This subroutine checks a key closure in the keyboard, identifies the key, and
;supplies the corresponding binary code in the accumulator. It does not modify
;any register contents.

;Input: None

;Output: Binary key code in the accumulator

;Calls DBONCE, a 10 ms delay subroutine





```

NXTROW:  RLCA                ;Move zero into one of the rows
          LD D, A            ;Save data byte to ground next
                                     ;row
          OUT (ROW), A       ;Ground one of the rows
          IN A, (COLUMN)     ;Read columns
          AND 0FH            ;Mask D7–D4
          LD C, 04           ;Set column counter
          RRA                ;Move D0 into CY
          JR NC, CODE        ;Key closure is found if zero
                                     ;is in CY
          INC E              ;Increment binary code for
                                     ;next key
          DEC C              ;No key closure found yet,
                                     ;decrement column counter
          JR NZ, NXTCOLM     ;Check for key closure in
                                     ;next column
          LD A, D            ;Load data byte to ground next
                                     ;row

          DEC B              ;No key closure found in col-
                                     ;umns, get ready to ground
                                     ;next row
          JR NZ, NXTROW      ;No key closure yet, go back
                                     ;to ground next row
          JR KYCHK           ;No key closure found, it was
                                     ;an error

CODE:     LD A, E            ;Load accumulator with binary
                                     ;code from code counter
          POP DE             ;Retrieve data from stack
          POP BC
          RET                ;Return to main program

DBONCE:   ;This is a 10 ms. delay routine, does not
          ;destroy any register contents
          ;Input: None
          ;Output: None
          PUSH BC            ;Save registers
          PUSH AF
          LD BC, COUNT       ;Load 10 ms delay count
          DEC BC             ;Repeat loop for delay
          LD A, C
          OR B               ;Set zero flag if BC = 0
          JR NZ, LOOP
          POP AF
          POP BC
          RET

LOOP:
  
```

FIGURE 17.11 (continued)

PROGRAM DESCRIPTION

This keyboard routine saves register contents of the calling program and clears registers A and E. Register E is used as a binary code counter for the keys; it begins with the code of “0” key. The OUT instruction grounds all the rows, and the IN instruction reads the columns. The AND instruction masks the data on lines D₇–D₄ because they are not being used for this keyboard.

The next instruction, CP 0FH, checks whether the previous key pressed has been released; this is a precautionary step against someone holding a key for a long time. If all keys are open, D₃–D₀ will be high, the reading will be 0FH, and the Compare instruction will set the zero flag; otherwise, the routine stays in the loop KYREL until all keys are open. The subroutine DBONCE eliminates the key bounce by waiting for 10 ms.

Once all keys are open, the routine reads the columns to check for a key closure. If any of the keys is closed, one of the columns will be at logic 0, and the routine will skip the KYCHK loop. The DBONCE routine will debounce the key closure. At this point, a key closure is found, but the key is not identified. For example, if the reading on data lines D₃–D₀ is 1 1 1 0, any of the keys in Column 0 may have been pressed. Therefore, the next step is to identify the key.

To identify the key pressed, one row is grounded at a time, beginning at Row 0. The byte 0 1 1 1 1 1 1 (7FH) is loaded into the accumulator and rotated left (RLCA) by one position; the byte is thus converted to 1 1 1 1 1 1 0. This byte is sent to Port A to ground Row 0. Then, Port B is read, and each column is checked for logic 0 by rotating the reading into the CY flag. Register C is set up to count four columns, and by rotating the byte to the left four times, each column is checked for logic 0 in the loop labelled as NXTCOLM. As each column is being checked, the code counter (Register E) is incremented at each iteration. For example, when Row 0 is grounded, four keys, 0 through 3, are checked, and the code counter is incremented from 00 to 03H.

After checking the columns in Row 0, the program loops back to location NXTROW and grounds the next row by sending the code which was previously saved in register D. Register B is set up as a row counter to count five rows. For each row, the loop NXTCOLM is repeated four times; thus, all twenty keys are checked, and for each iteration the code counter is incremented. When columns are checked, each reading is rotated into the CY flag; the key closure is found and the key identified when CY is reset. The program jumps to location CODE. The routine copies the key code into the accumulator and returns to the calling program.

17.54 Using the Matrix Keyboard in the Project

In our single-board microcomputer project, the keyboard monitor program from the previous section can be used in conjunction with the user display where the output is latched. If we were to use the scanned display (as specified) with the software-driven matrix keyboard, the keyboard subroutine would have to be coupled with the scanned display; otherwise, the display may go off. For example, when the subroutine is waiting for a key to be pressed, the scanned display cannot be refreshed by turning on and off digits in a sequence at a regular interval. Therefore, the program must alternate between refreshing

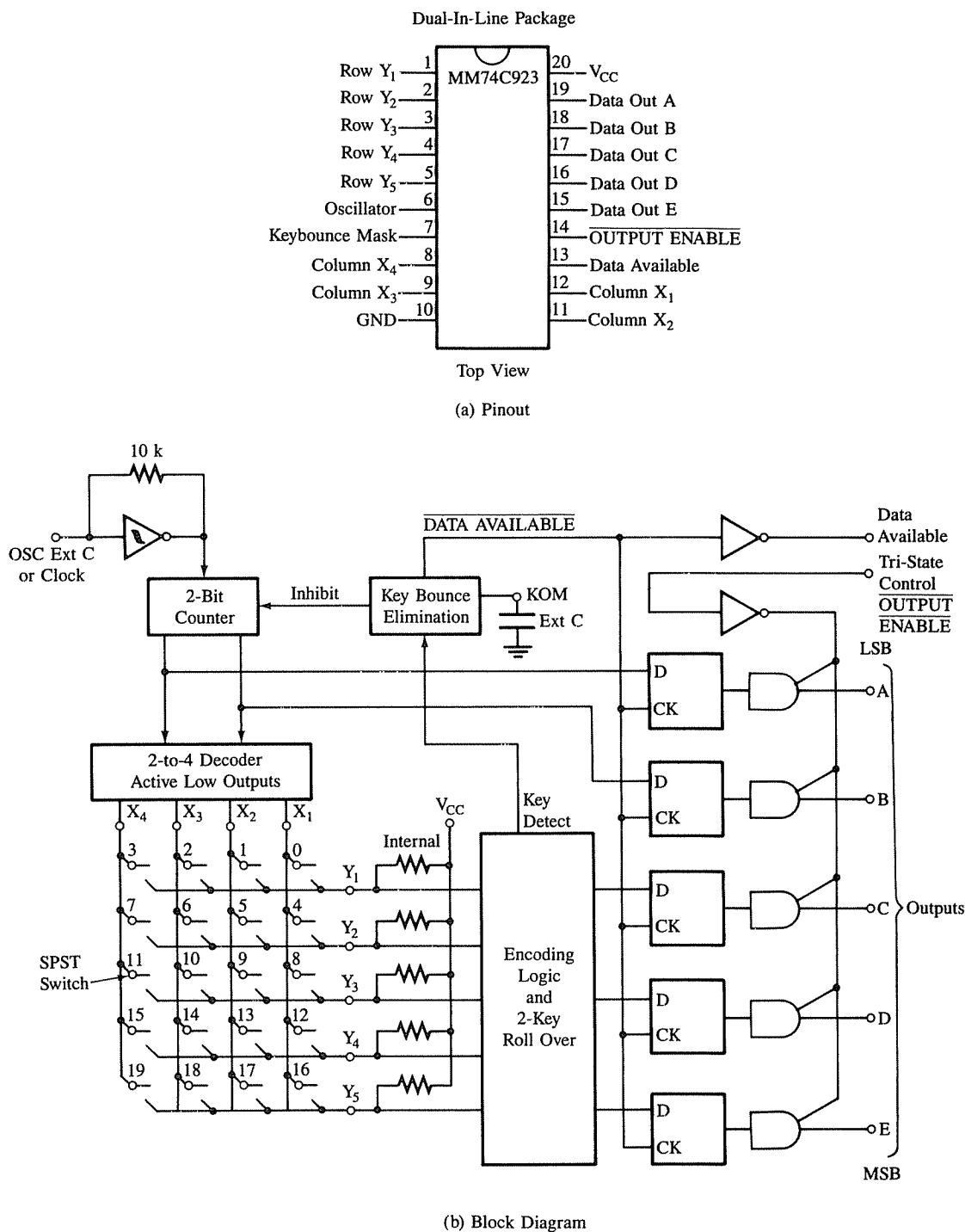


FIGURE 17.12
 Keyboard Encoder MM74C923 (National Semiconductor) (a) Pinout (b) Block Diagram
 SOURCE: Reprinted with permission of National Semiconductor Corporation

the display and checking a keyboard to find a key pressed. Another approach is to interface the keyboard using the interrupt technique. In this approach, the program continues to scan the display until the interrupt signal is received, and then the program checks the keyboard, processes the key, and goes back to scanning the display.

17.55 Hardware Approaches to Interfacing Matrix Keyboard and Scanned Display

The hardware approach reduces the software and allows the MPU to perform other tasks; however, it may increase the unit cost of the product. One of the approaches is to use a logic device, such as the National Semiconductor MM74C923 keyboard encoder. This keyboard encoder can sense a key closure, debounce the key, provide the binary code of the key, and generate an interrupt. Another approach is to use a programmable device, such as the Intel 8279 keyboard/display interface. This interface device performs two tasks: One task is to detect and encode a key (this is the same task as that of the National Semiconductor keyboard encoder), and the other is to refresh a scanned display. It is capable of displaying 16 bytes. The 8279 is a complex device and will not be discussed here. However, we will illustrate how to interface a matrix keyboard using the MM74C923 keyboard encoder.

MM74C923 KEYBOARD ENCODER

This is a 20-key encoder with four columns and five rows (Figure 17.12). The respective columns and rows of a matrix keyboard must be connected to the columns and rows of the encoder. The encoder includes Chip Select and Interrupt logic. The decoded address line (I/O Select) is connected to the \overline{OE} pin of the encoder; it does not require a PIO or an input buffer. It has five output data lines that provide the binary code of a key closure from 00000 to 10011 (0–19).

Figure 17.13 shows the schematic for interfacing a 20-key matrix keyboard using the encoder. The keyboard is assigned the port address by connecting the output Y_5 of the decoder from Figure 17.7. Thus, the keyboard can be accessed by any one of the port addresses 94_H to 97_H; the address lines A_1 and A_0 are left as “don’t care.”

When a key is pressed, the encoder debounces the key and checks again for a valid key. If a valid key is detected, the encoder generates an interrupt and places the binary code of the key into the internal latches, and the code can be read by enabling \overline{OE} . When the MPU acknowledges the interrupt and reads the binary code, the encoder turns off the interrupt. In this interfacing, the keyboard routine is reduced to a few instructions of a service routine, which reads the keyboard and stores the code in the input buffer. This technique reduces considerable software overhead for the MPU. Therefore, the MPU can continue to scan the display until an interrupt request is received. Then, it can process the key and go back to the scanned display routine.

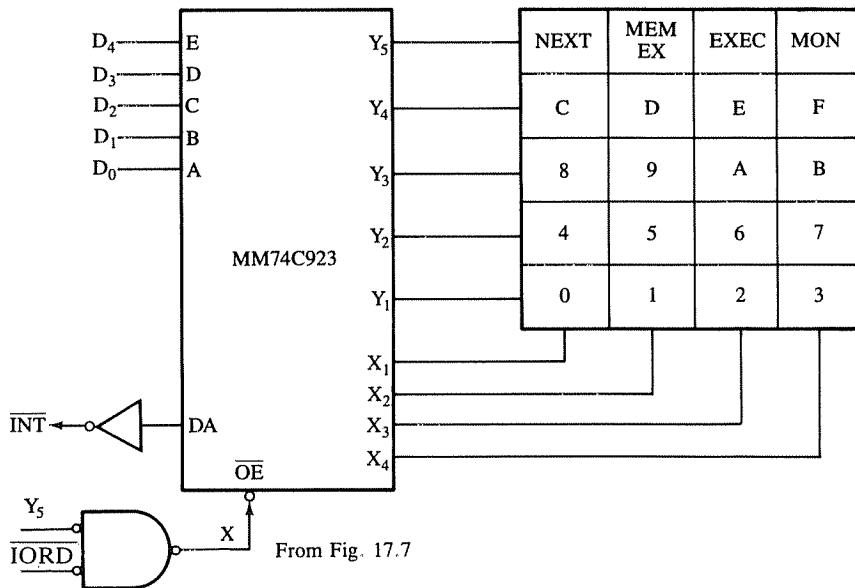


FIGURE 17.13
Interfacing 20-Key Matrix Keyboard Using the MM74C923

devoted to writing and troubleshooting software. Software design is done neither in isolation from nor after the completion of hardware design; these are concurrent processes. In the previous sections, we discussed approaches to interfacing displays and matrix keyboards. Now we need to make some decisions based on the cost and the specifications; several alternatives are suggested here.

Alternative 1 Figure 17.14 shows a way of combining the matrix keyboard and the scanned display. The digit code driver of the scanned display can be used to connect the rows of the matrix keyboard. The program scans the display once, turns off the display temporarily by sending logic 0 to the LED segments, and then grounds rows of the keyboard and checks the columns for a key closure. This approach requires two PIOs; three ports can be used for the display and the keyboard, and the fourth port can be used for the user display. Now the question is: Why do we need a separate user display? Can we use the data LEDs of the system display as the user display? The scanned display is not convenient for the user to use as an output port; the user can use that port only by calling routines in the monitor program. To have a separate latched output port is a worthwhile feature for beginning users.

This approach requires 14 components (two PIOs, two drivers, two Hex decoders, and eight LEDs) and a keyboard. This design is heavily software-dependent, and the microprocessor is kept totally busy in scanning the keyboard and display.

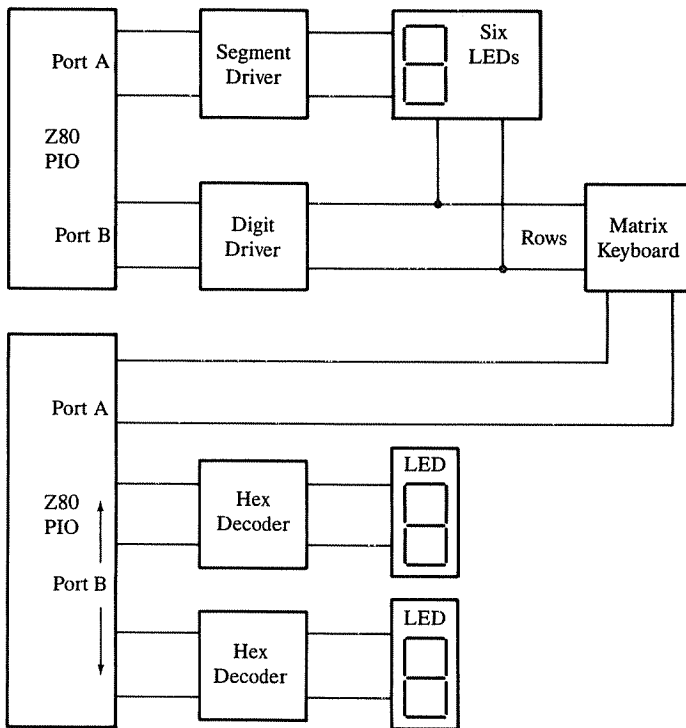
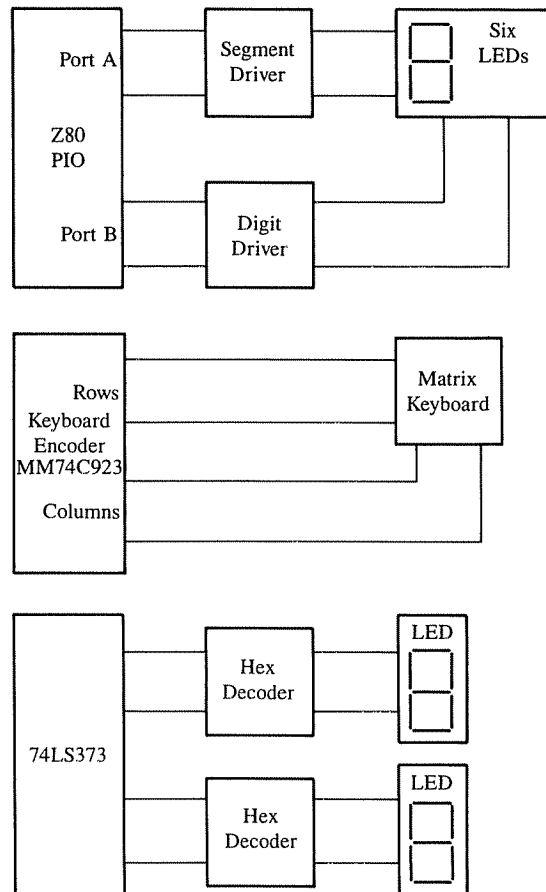


FIGURE 17.14
Combining Scanned Display and Matrix Keyboard—System Design Alternative 1

Alternative 2 The second alternative is to use four LEDs in the scanned display; these can be used to display a memory address. The two-LED-latched output port can be used for system data and by the user as well. When the user program is being executed, the program control is transferred to the user program; therefore, the system display will not be used. Furthermore, when a latched port is used for data, the software overhead is reduced; there is no need to continuously scan the data port. The block diagram for this alternative is similar to the first alternative.

Alternative 3 The third alternative is to replace the keyboard routine with a keyboard encoder (MM74C923). This approach eliminates the software related to checking and encoding a key. The program has to continuously scan the display, and when a keyboard encoder generates an interrupt, the MPU can read the keyboard, process the key, and go back to scanning the display. In this approach, we need one PIO for the system display, and the other PIO can be replaced by an octal latch such as the 74LS373 as shown in Figure 17.15. The block diagram shows that the design requires 15 components (in addition to a keyboard, which is common to all circuits).

FIGURE 17.15
System Design Using the
MM74C923 Keyboard Encoder—
System Design Alternative 3



Alternative 4 The fourth alternative is to replace the display scanning and keyboard checking with a programmable keyboard encoder, such as the Intel 8279. This device relieves the burden of scanning the display and checking the keyboard from the MPU. When a key is pressed, the 8279 generates an interrupt to inform the MPU. When the MPU reads the keyboard, it places the code in the encoder memory, and informs the encoder how many LEDs to scan. This simplifies the software necessary for the keyboard monitor and allows the MPU to perform other tasks.

Figure 17.16 shows the logic diagram of the 8279, which includes interfacing logic, control signals, system data bus, eight data lines to drive LED segments, eight return lines, and four scan lines. The 8279 is functionally equivalent to the circuit shown in Figure 17.14 without the user display. To scan more than four LEDs, additional scan lines can be generated by using a decoder.

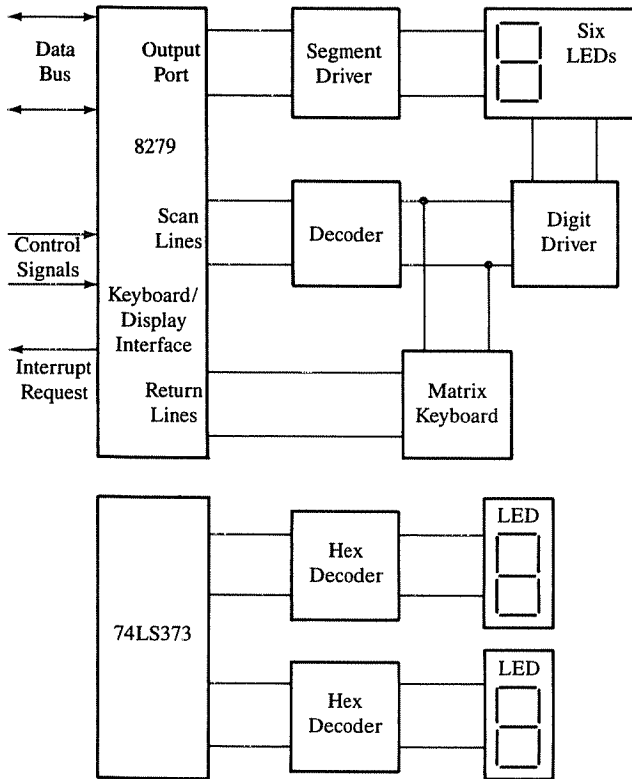


FIGURE 17.16
System Design Using the 8279 Keyboard/Display Interface—Alternative 4

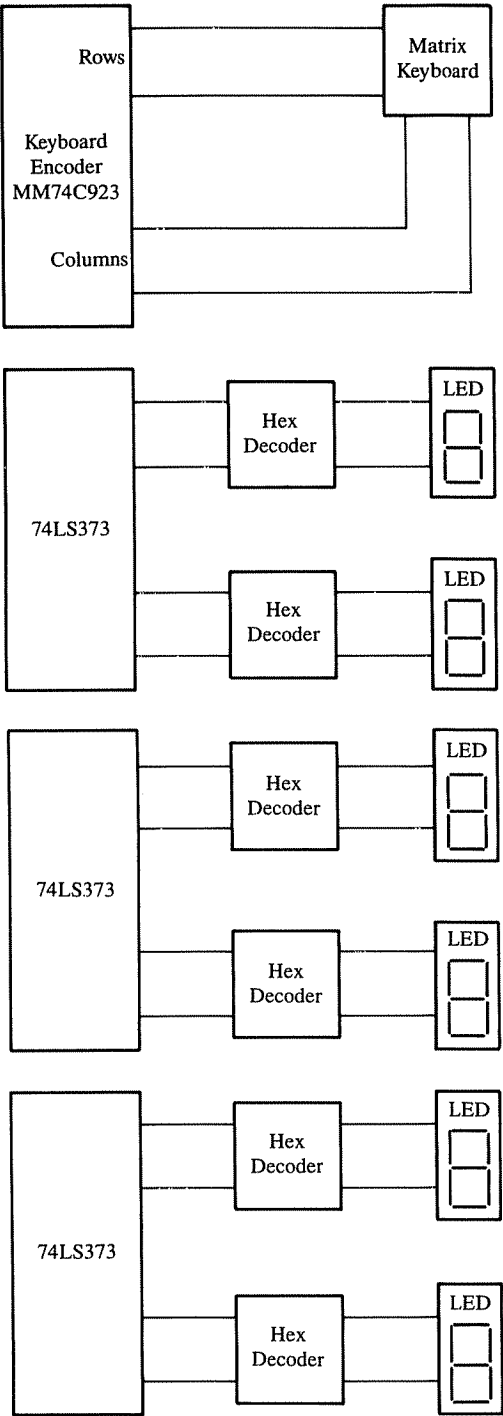
The design shown in Figure 17.16 requires 15 components. This is a hardware approach to keyboard and display scanning at a somewhat higher unit cost.

Alternative 5 The fifth alternative is to use a keyboard encoder, such as the National Semiconductor MM74C923, for the keyboard and use the latched LED ports as displays. This will simplify the software considerably.

Figure 17.17 shows that three octal latches are used as output ports to interface six LEDs. One of the output ports can be used as the user port; thus, the total number of components required in this design is 16. This approach increases the power consumption in LEDs, but relieves the MPU from the scanning task.

We have suggested various alternatives, and now we will discuss software routines for some of these approaches. The most puzzling aspect of software design is where to begin and how to synthesize all functions into one program. The place to begin is the list of the functions to be performed. In the project analysis section, three functions are listed: check keyboard, display, and execute. The next place to look for clues is hardware.

FIGURE 17.17
System Design Using the
MM74C923 Keyboard Encoder and
Octal Latches



Examination of the hardware design reveals the following:

1. Program should begin at location 0000_H.
2. “Low” memory locations should be reserved for interrupt restarts.
3. Programmable peripherals need initialization instructions.
4. As the system is turned on, a message should be displayed.
5. Four keys are available to identify functions, and 16 keys are used as Hex digits from 0 to F.

By combining the functions to be performed and the clues obtained from hardware design, the task can be divided into the following steps:

1. Initialize programmable peripherals.
2. Display the sign-on message to indicate that the system is ready.
3. Scan the display once and jump to check a key closure. If no key is pressed, go back and scan the display.
4. When a key closure is found, read the binary code of the key to check whether it is an appropriate key.
5. If it is an appropriate key, turn off the sign-on message, process the key, and return to the display loop to display the new key; otherwise, blank the display.
6. If it is not an appropriate key, return to the display loop to indicate the error message.
7. If the keyboard is interrupt driven, stay in the display loop until an interrupt is generated (this is an alternative to Steps 3–6).

The first three steps are fairly simple. The initialization is determined by peripheral devices and their decode logic (discussed previously). The display involves scanning the sign-on message.

The fourth step—the determination of an appropriate key—is critical to the software design, and the appropriateness depends upon how the user is allowed to enter and execute a program. There are two basic approaches: One approach is to begin with a function key and then enter Hex digit keys, and the second is to enter a memory address and then specify the function to be performed. In addition to the Reset key, at least three keys are required: MEMEX (Memory Examine), NEXT (Next Memory Location), and EXEC (Execute). The MEMEX key allows the user to enter the memory address, examine the data stored in that memory, and enter new data. The NEXT key stores the new data byte and increments to the next memory location. The EXEC key allows the user to execute a program. With this minimum configuration, if an inappropriate sequence of keys is pressed, and the program displays the error message, it can be terminated only by the Reset key. Therefore, a key called MON (Monitor) is added to terminate a program.

In the first approach, whereby the user begins with a function, we will use four keys: MON (Monitor), MEMEX (Memory Examine), NEXT (Next Address), and EXEC (Execute). If the MON function is selected, the program goes to the beginning and displays a Ready message, and if the EXEC function is selected, the program transfers the control to the user program. If the MEMEX key is pressed, the program displays the contents of the

memory, and if the NEXT key is pressed, the program increments to the next memory location. After the MEMEX key, the user is allowed to enter new data or go to any one of the functions.

In the second approach, the user must begin with a memory address and then specify a function; otherwise, an erroneous result will be displayed. Now we can make some hardware design decisions and illustrate an approach to software design.

Among the five design alternatives we have discussed, it appears that Alternative 1 (Figure 17.14) is the least expensive in unit price, but it is extensively dependent on software. Alternatives 4 and 5 (Figures 17.16 and 17.17) are hardware oriented and may be more expensive in unit price. We prefer to select Alternative 3 (Figure 17.15) based on instructional rather than commercial reasons. Our primary reason for the selection is that the approach illustrates important concepts without being excessively dependent on software. The specifications are as follows:

1. Memory Map: EPROM 0000_H to 07FF_H (Figure 17.6)
R/W M 2000_H to 27FF_H (Figure 17.6).
2. System Display: Scanned display with six LEDs using PI01
Port addresses—80_H to 83_H (Figure 17.8).
3. User Display: Latched LED port using the octal latch 74LS373.
4. Keyboard: 20-key matrix keyboard using the encoder MM74C923
Port is interrupt driven with address 94_H (Figure 17.13)
Four function keys—MON, MEMEX, NEXT, and EXEC.

Based on these specifications, we will illustrate an approach to software design in the next section.

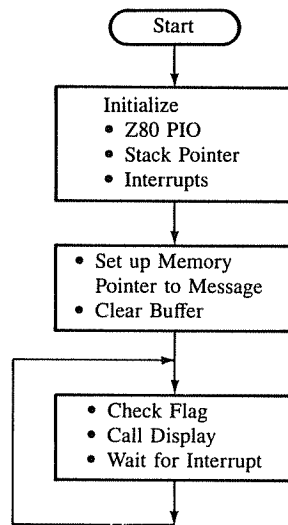
17.7

DESIGNING SOFTWARE MODULES

The proposed system includes a scanned display that needs refreshing at a regular interval and a matrix keyboard that is interrupt driven. Therefore, the main program revolves primarily around refreshing the display and waiting for an interrupt to occur, as shown in Figure 17.18. The primary task of the interrupt service routine is to read and process the key pressed and perform the designated function of the key. We can divide the software design into the following modules:

1. Initialization.
2. Display the sign-on message and wait for an interrupt.
3. When an interrupt occurs, read the key.
4. Decode the key and jump to the appropriate function.
5. Perform the function and return to scanning the display.

FIGURE 17.18
Flowchart: Main Program



17.71 Initialization

When a system is reset, the Z80 clears the program counter, and the program execution begins at location 0000_H. If the system includes several sources of interrupts, the initial memory locations can be used for Mode 0 interrupts. However, in the Z80, Mode 2 interrupts can be placed anywhere in the memory map; therefore, there is no compelling reason to save these interrupt call locations. The initialization program module can be written in the beginning segment of the 2732 EPROM.

This module must initialize the programmable devices (PIOs) and the stack pointer, enable the interrupts, and set up the interrupt mode. In Section 17.4, we have already written the initialization instructions for the Z80 PIOs. The stack pointer is generally initialized at the top of the R/W memory; however, in this project, we will need six top locations as a display buffer and one location to save input data. After reserving top locations (for example, from 27F9_H to 27FF_H) for the buffer (explained in the next section), the stack pointer can be initialized. In the Z80, Mode 1 interrupt is the simplest to implement because it does not require any external hardware. When an interrupt is generated by the keyboard encoder and accepted by the MPU, the program is automatically transferred to location 0038_H. Thus, the keyboard service routine must begin at 0038_H or a Jump instruction must be written at 0038_H to locate the start of the interrupt service routine.

17.72 Display Module

We have already discussed the scanned display routine in Section 17.4. That routine can be used for any fixed message such as the sign-on message or the error message; the codes

for these messages can be stored permanently in the EPROM. However, to display memory address and data that change with key strokes, we need to reserve memory locations: four for memory address and two for data in the R/W memory. These locations are called the *display buffer*. For example, in this single-board microcomputer, the R/W memory ranges from 2000_H to 27FF_H; we can reserve the last six locations, 27FA_H to 27FF_H, as the display buffer. The display routine must be modified to scan the display buffer and get the segment code by using the table look-up technique, output the code, and turn on the corresponding digit (Figure 17.8). In addition, the routine must be informed of the number of digits to be scanned. For example, when a memory address is entered, four digits are displayed, and when the MEMEX key is pressed, six digits are displayed.

Now we need to find a way to inform the routine of the number of digits to be displayed and how to differentiate between data keys and address keys. This can be accomplished by using the flag concept. The routine that calls the codes to be displayed sets a flag when four digits are to be displayed. For example, bit D₇ in register B can be used as a flag. When D₇ is 0, the routine scans four memory digits, and when it is 1, it scans the six digits. The CY can also be used to perform the same function. In block 3 of the main program, this flag concept is used. Before calling the Display routine, the program checks the flag to determine whether it should scan four locations or six locations of the buffer.

17.73 Reading the Keyboard and Placing the Byte In the Buffer

When an interrupt request is generated by the keyboard encoder, the MPU should read the keyboard and save the reading in the input buffer (location 27F9_H). If it is a Hex key of a memory address or of a data byte, the MPU should place the binary value of the new key in the buffer. In addition, a register pair such as DE can be used as the memory register to save the memory address and register C can be used as the data register. However, before the key code is placed in the buffer, the previous codes must be shifted by one location, and in the process, the MSD (Most Significant Digit) must be discarded (see Example 11.4).

Figure 17.19 shows the partial flowchart of the interrupt service routine, which begins with reading a key and saving the data in the input buffer. Then the program checks whether it is a function key or a Hex digit key; the keys with binary code 00 to 0F_H are Hex digit keys and with binary code higher than 0F_H are function keys. If a function key is pressed, the program determines whether it is the MEMEX, NEXT, MON, or EXEC key and then jumps to appropriate locations. If it is a Hex digit key, it checks the flag (bit D₇) in register B and identifies the key that is a part of a memory address or of a data byte. Then the program inserts the code of the new key as the least significant four bits in the display buffer and in the memory register or data register and returns from the interrupt service routine.

17.74 Function Module

The user must enter four Hex digits as a memory address. If more than four Hex keys are entered, the binary code of the last four is saved in register DE, and the display buffer is updated accordingly. If a function key is pressed after an address is entered, the program checks which function key is pressed. If the MEMEX key is pressed, the memory address

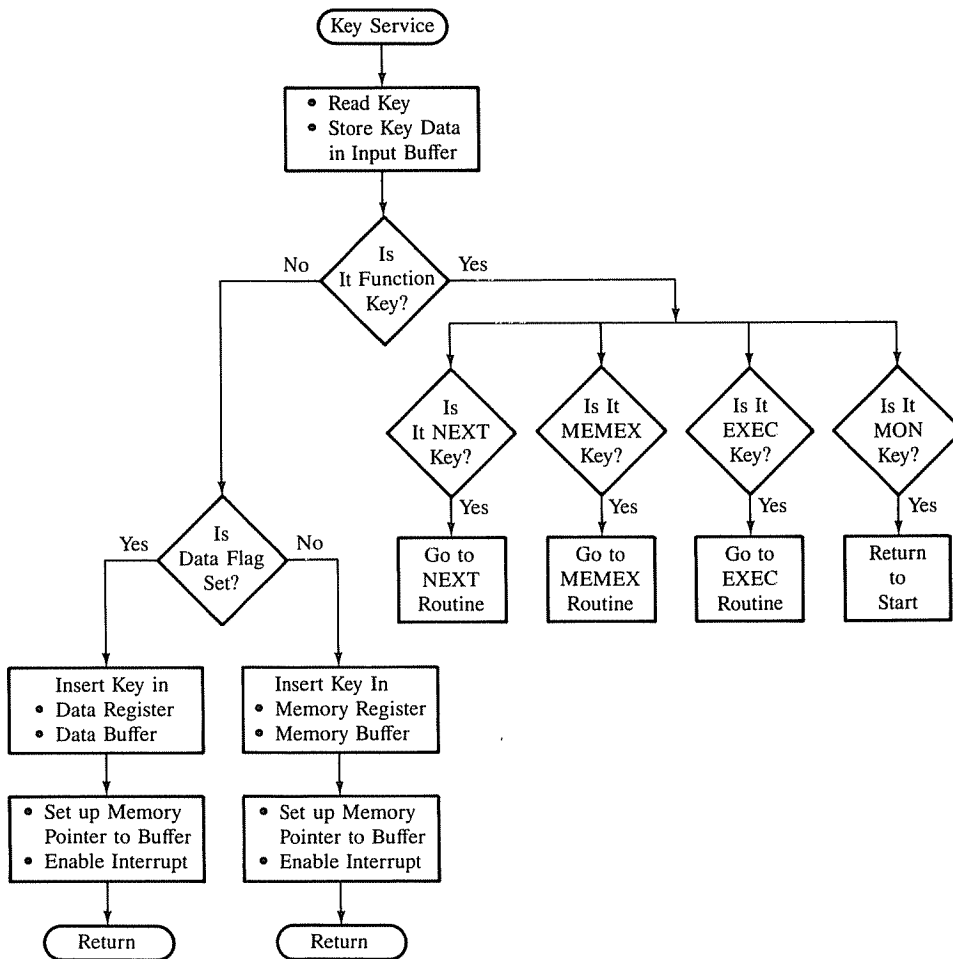


FIGURE 17.19
Flowchart: Key Service Routine

is already in the DE register. This address can be used as a memory pointer, and data from that memory location can be retrieved and placed in the display buffer (Figure 17.20). Similarly, when the NEXT key is pressed, the address in the DE register is incremented, the data byte in that location is obtained, and all six digits are placed in the display buffer.

When a data byte is being entered, we can use register C to save data keys, as mentioned earlier. When a new key is pressed, the most significant nibble can be discarded, and the binary code of the new key can be entered as a least significant nibble (see Assignment 3).

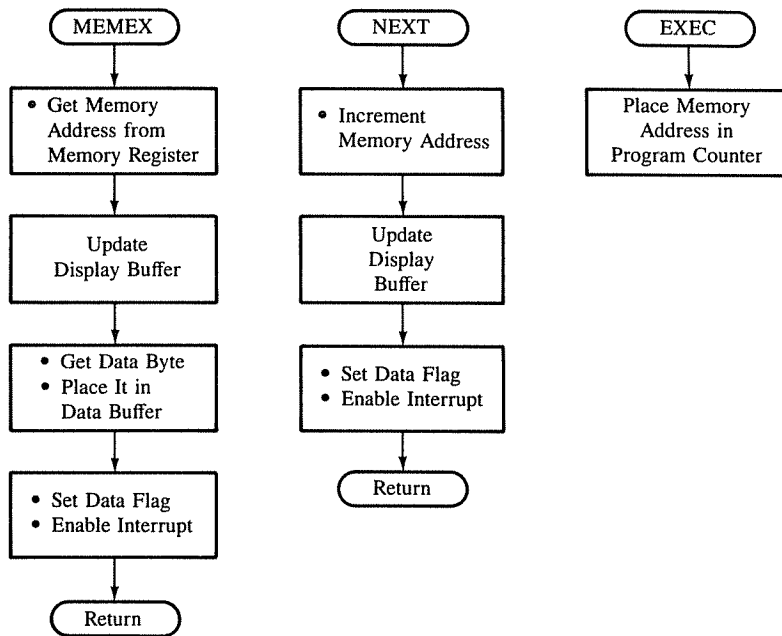


FIGURE 17.20
Function Routines

If the key is EXEC, the memory address where the execution should begin is already in the DE register pair. The program places the memory address in the program counter, and the control is transferred to the user program. If the key is MON, the program returns to the beginning and displays the system-ready message.

In writing this monitor program, the critical issue to remember is that the system uses the scanned display and needs continuous refreshing. Therefore, the main program consists primarily of calling the display routine. The next steps are to code this program in Z80 assembly language and to test it on prototype hardware, using such debugging tools as an in-circuit emulator and a logic analyzer (discussed later).

PROGRAM CODING

Assuming that program coding is to be performed by a team, it is necessary to break down the task into small, manageable, and independent modules. It is not always possible to break logic flow into independent subroutine modules. However, it is necessary to agree on symbols or labels that might be used by various members of the team; these are called global symbols.

17.75 Prototype Building and Testing

Microprocessor-based products are hardly ever completely built and tested as complete systems during the initial stages of design. If a system is completely built, it is difficult to

troubleshoot. Traditional approaches, such as signal injection and isolation of trouble spots, are ineffective for troubleshooting bus-oriented systems. Therefore a system is built and tested in stages. Each subsystem, such as keyboard, displays, and memory, should be built and tested separately as an independent module. Now the question is: How do we test a module without building a system? An answer can be found in such everyday incidents as testing a light bulb or starting a car with a dead battery. The light bulb can be tested by plugging it into a working socket, and the car can be started with a jumper cable and another battery. There are two principles involved in these examples: (1) borrowing resources from a working system, and (2) substitution. These principles can be used in testing each separate subsystem of a microprocessor-based product. What is needed is a working system that can create an environment similar to the complete prototype system, and that is generous enough to share its resources with hardware modules to be built. Such a working system is called an in-circuit emulator, and is described in Section 17.8 and shown in Figure 17.21.

Assuming that such an in-circuit emulator is available, each subsystem of the single-board microcomputer can be built and tested one at a time. Similarly, as software modules are being written, they can be tested first on a software development system (discussed in Chapter 7). Finally, hardware and software can be integrated and tested using an in-circuit emulator.



FIGURE 17.21

Photograph: In-Circuit Emulator—Applied Micro Systems

SOURCE: Courtesy of Applied Microsystems

17.8 DEVELOPMENT AND TROUBLESHOOTING TOOLS

In bus-oriented systems, a constant flow of data changes logic states continuously. The flow of data is controlled by software instructions. Therefore, to examine what is happening inside the system, special instruments capable of capturing data in relation to instructions are required. Three such instruments—in-circuit emulator, logic state analyzer, and signature analyzer—are discussed briefly in the next sections.

17.81 In-Circuit Emulator

The in-circuit emulation technique has become an essential part of the design process for microprocessor-based products. In-circuit emulation is the execution of a prototype software program in prototype hardware under the control of a software development system. First, the microprocessor is removed from the prototype design board, and a 40-pin cable from an in-circuit emulator is plugged into the socket previously occupied by the microprocessor. The in-circuit emulator performs all the functions of the replaced microprocessor; in addition, it allows the prototype hardware to share all its resources, such as software, memory, and I/Os. It provides a window for looking into the dynamic, real-time operation of the prototype hardware. At present, a wide variety of in-circuit emulators is available, ranging from universal emulators with complete software development systems to stand-alone microprocessor units. Figure 17.21 shows a stand-alone in-circuit emulator (MT-180) designed by Applied Micro Systems.

Emulation Process To test subsystems (such as I/O and memory) using an in-circuit emulator, the minimum prototype hardware required is a 40-pin microprocessor socket (without the microprocessor), a power supply, and a system clock. All other resources can be borrowed from the in-circuit emulator. As more and more prototype hardware is built, fewer and fewer resources from the in-circuit emulator will be required. In the final stage, total software and hardware are integrated for testing. A hardware prototype can be viewed as a fetus growing in stages in the womb of an in-circuit emulator; until the fetus is fully developed and functioning independently, the in-circuit emulator provides the necessary environment and resources.

Features of the In-Circuit Emulator An in-circuit emulator is a software/hardware troubleshooting instrument. It can be a stand-alone unit or part of a software development system. A small program can be entered directly into the emulator, or a program can be transferred into the emulator from a host computer system through an RS-232 serial link. Once a program is loaded, a user can interact with the emulator through its keyboard or a terminal. The emulator has its own software commands to perform various debugging functions. The main capabilities of an in-circuit emulator can be listed as follows:

- **Downloading:** Facilities to transfer programs between a software development system or a host computer and the in-circuit emulator.

- **Resource Sharing:** The in-circuit emulator allows the system being tested to share its memory and I/O ports. The memory and I/O ports of the in-circuit emulator can be assigned any addresses, which will avoid conflict with memory and I/O of the prototype; this is called memory and I/O mapping.
- **Debugging Tools:** Real-Time Trace
 - Breakpoints
 - Mnemonic Display
 - In-Line Assembly
 - Register Display/Modification
 - Disassembly

DEBUGGING TOOLS

The debugging tools listed are used in troubleshooting programs. Single-stepping and setting breakpoints have already been discussed in Chapters 7 and 8. The others are briefly described as follows.

Real-Time Trace The in-circuit emulator has R/W memory used as a buffer to store the last several (128, for example) bus operations, and these can be displayed on the screen. This display is like a snapshot of all the bus operations in real time. The user can specify several requirements, such as a memory address and certain data conditions for recognizing an event, in order to trigger and display a trace. Similarly, a trace can be observed between two breakpoints or at a specified delay after a certain event. The real-time trace is a very valuable tool in debugging microprocessor-based products.

In-Line Assembly This allows the user to change data or instructions while software is in the in-circuit emulator.

Disassembly After instructions are changed in the in-circuit emulator, this facility can write mnemonics in software.

Register Display This displays register contents after the execution of instructions.

17.82 Logic State Analyzer

The logic state analyzer, also known as the logic analyzer, is a multitrace digital oscilloscope specially designed to use with microprocessor-related products. In a multitrace scope, the timing relationships of several signals can be observed with respect to some triggering event or events. For example, a four-trace scope can show the timing relationships of four signals. In a microprocessor-related product the user is interested in observing digital signals on the address bus, the data bus, the control bus, and possibly on an external instrument, relative to a specified triggering event or events. Furthermore, data display should be in a conveniently readable format, such as Hex or binary. The logic analyzer performs these functions.

A typical logic analyzer designed primarily to work with microprocessors has a 40-pin probe plus an auxiliary probe to gather external information. It includes Read-Only

Memory (ROM) to store instructions related to the analyzer, R/W buffer memory to store data from a product under test, a microprocessor to monitor data gathering, and a keyboard to specify operations and enter data in Hex or octal format. The analyzer can be triggered to gather information at a specified event related to the microprocessor in the product under test or in relation to an external word. The analyzer in a trace mode takes a snapshot of real-time information at a specific trigger, stores it in its buffer memory, and displays it on its CRT.

The in-circuit emulator is a very valuable tool in the initial stages of product development, and in later stages the logic analyzer can perform some of the troubleshooting functions.

17.83 Signature Analyzer

The signature analyzer is an instrument used in troubleshooting microprocessor products either in the field or during production. This instrument converts the complex serial data stream present at the intersections of logic circuits, called nodes, into a four-digit pattern called a signature. Conceptually, a signature is similar to a voltage level specified on the schematic of an analog product. To troubleshoot an analog product, voltages are measured at various locations until a mismatch is found between the measured reading and the specified reading to isolate the trouble. The signature analyzer is used in the same manner.

SUMMARY

In this chapter, various techniques of interfacing the scanned display and the matrix keyboard were illustrated, and the trade-offs between hardware and the software were discussed. Then we used the scanned display and keyboard illustrations in designing a single-board microcomputer. In addition, debugging tools such as the in-circuit emulator, the logic analyzer, and the signature analyzer were introduced.

The design of a single-board microcomputer integrates all the concepts of microprocessor architecture, software, and interfacing discussed throughout this text. In this chapter, we discussed the necessary steps in designing hardware and software. The necessary software modules were illustrated with flowcharts; however, the coding of these modules has been reserved for Assignments.

ASSIGNMENTS

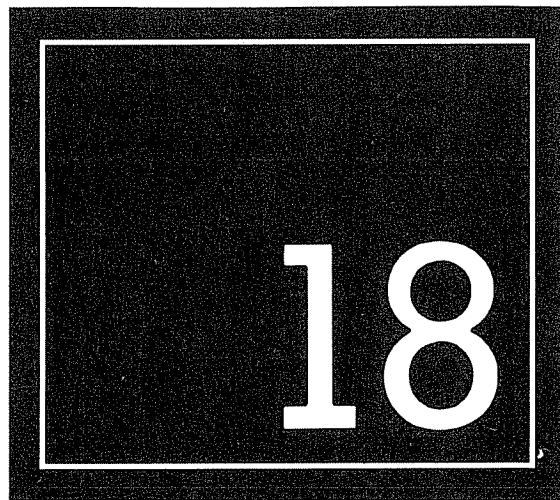
1. Draw a schematic to interface a 16-key matrix keyboard using one PIO port. Explain how the PIO should be initialized.

2. Draw a schematic to interface a 30-key matrix board and a six-LED scanned display using three PIO ports. Combine the matrix columns and the digit drivers, and explain why it is possible.
3. In a key monitor program, register C is used to save 4-bit codes of two data keys. Write a subroutine to insert a new 4-bit key code that is available in the accumulator; the new code must be inserted as a low-order nibble, and the most significant nibble in register C must be discarded.
4. Write instructions to unpack the data keys in 3 and place the codes in two different memory locations of the output buffer.
5. In a monitor program, register DE is used to save a 16-bit memory address. Write instructions to insert a 4-bit code of a new key in DE as a least significant nibble.
6. In 5, unpack all the codes and store them in four memory locations in the output buffer.
7. In Section 17.5, modify the matrix keyboard routine to accommodate 30 keys (six rows and five columns).
8. Modify the program in Section 17.43 to display an error message as Err and blanks.
9. Write instructions for the EXEC module assuming the memory address is in register DE.
10. Write a subroutine to transfer a 16-bit address from register DE and a data byte from register C into the display buffer (20FA_H to 20FF_H); the least significant nibble of the memory address should be placed in location 20FA_H and the least significant nibble of the data byte in location 20FE_H.
11. Write a Display subroutine that takes the unpacked memory address and the byte from the buffer, looks up the seven-segment code, sends the segment codes to the segment driver, and scans the digit code in a sequence to display the address and the byte.

Trends in Microprocessor Technology

The advent of the microprocessor is having an impact on industries as diversified as machine tools, chemical processes, medical instrumentation, and sophisticated guidance control. Some applications require simple timing and bit set/reset functions, while others require high-speed data processing capability. Therefore, different microprocessor families are being designed to meet these diversified requirements. In addition to general-purpose 8-bit microprocessors, microprocessor technology has evolved in several directions as follows: (1) the complete microcomputer, commonly known as a microcontroller, on a single chip geared toward specific application; (2) the 16-bit and 32-bit microprocessors with general-purpose capability similar to mini- and mainframe computers, and (3) the integrated super 8-bit chips.

This chapter includes brief descriptions of single-chip microcomputers, 16-bit and 32-bit microprocessors, and integrated 8-bit chips; in addition, it examines recent trends in this fast-changing technology and their implications for industry.



OBJECTIVES

- List the elements of a single-chip microcomputer (microcontroller), and compare the characteristics of Zilog Z8 and Intel MCS-51 microcontrollers.
- Describe important features of 16-bit microprocessors, and explain the concepts of memory segmentation, parallel processing, queueing, and coprocessing.
- Compare the features of the Intel 8086, the Zilog Z8000, and the Motorola MC68000 16-bit microprocessors.
- Explain the differences between the operating environments of single-user systems and multi-user systems.
- Explain how 32-bit microprocessors differ from 16-bit microprocessors.
- Explain the features of integrated super 8-bit chips, such as Zilog Z280 and Toshiba HD64180.

18.1 SINGLE-CHIP MICROCOMPUTERS (MICROCONTROLLERS)

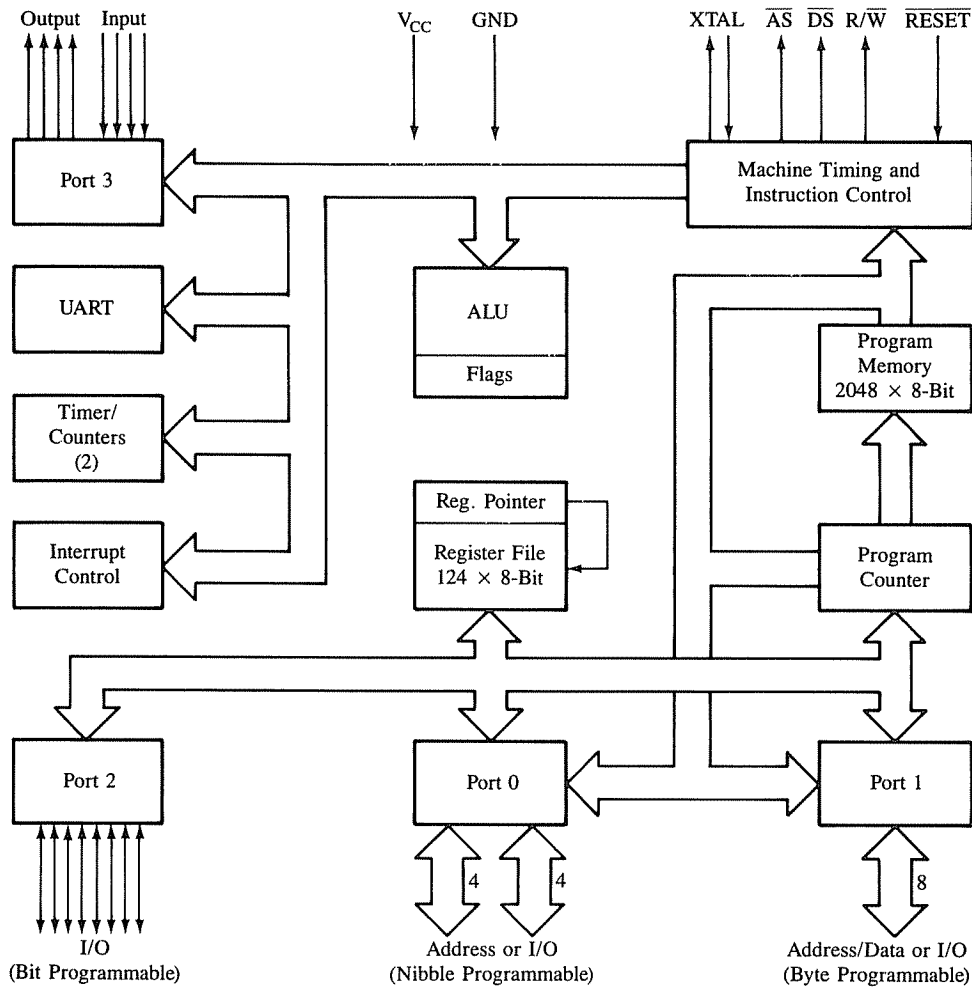
Single-chip microcomputers, also known as microcontrollers, are used primarily to perform dedicated functions. They are used as independent controllers in machines or dedicated to perform specialized functions in a larger system. Generally, they include all the essential elements of a computer on a single chip: MPU, R/W memory, ROM, and I/O lines. Examples of the single-chip microcomputers are the Zilog Z8; the Intel MCS-48, MCS-51, and MCS-96 families; the Motorola 6801; and the Fairchild F8(two-chip).

Most of these microcontrollers have an 8-bit word size (except the MCS-96, with a 16-bit word size), at least 64 bytes of R/W memory, and 1K bytes of ROM. The range of I/O lines varies from 16 to 32 lines. However, most of these devices cannot be easily programmed in college laboratories except those with EPROM on the chip, such as the Intel 8748 and 8751. A variety of single-chip microcomputers is available on the market to meet diversified industrial needs. To illustrate the trend, we will describe the Zilog Z8, and the Intel MCS-51 and 2920.

18.11 Zilog Z8 Microcomputer

The Z8 microcomputer is a versatile and powerful 8-bit single-chip microcontroller, used primarily in dedicated control applications. The Z8 family includes three versions: the 40-pin with ROM, the 40-pin with EPROM, and the 64-pin version, and they can operate with 8 MHz frequency.

Figure 18.1 shows the block diagram of the Z8 microcomputer. It includes four I/O ports (32 I/O lines), 2K ROM or EPROM, 128 bytes of R/W memory, two 8-bit timer/counters, and one serial I/O port (UART). It has 144 registers, including 124 general-purpose registers which can function as accumulators, address pointers, or index registers. It is capable of addressing 124K bytes of external memory. The Z8 has six interrupts, and each of the interrupts has a 16-bit vector that can point to its service routine. These interrupts can be prioritized through programming. The instruction set is quite

**FIGURE 18.1**

Z8 Block Diagram

SOURCE: Courtesy of Zilog, Inc.

powerful and especially suited for control applications. It has 46 instruction types that include bit manipulation, BCD operations, conditional and relative branching, and block transfer.

18.12 Intel MCS-51 Single-Chip Family

This is one of the Intel's single-chip microcomputer families, at the high end of the single-chip device spectrum in terms of its capability and versatility. It is designed for use

in sophisticated real-time instrumentation and industrial control. It can operate with a 12 MHz clock and has a very powerful instruction set.

Figure 18.2 shows the block diagram of the chip; its architecture is in many ways similar to the Zilog Z8 microcomputer. It includes the following features:

1. 4K bytes of ROM or EPROM.
2. 256 bytes of R/W memory, which includes 128 8-bit, special-function registers (SFR).
3. Four programmable I/O ports.
4. Two 16-bit timer/event counters.
5. A serial I/O port with a UART.
6. Five interrupt lines: two for external signals and three for internal operations.

The MCS-51 is known as a *bit and byte processor*. The instruction set includes binary and BCD arithmetic operations, bit set/reset functions, and all logical functions. However, its real power comes from its ability to handle Boolean functions. On any addressable bit, the processor can perform such functions as Set, Clear, Complement, Jump If Set or Not Set, and Jump If Set Then Clear. It can also perform logical functions with two bits and place the result in the carry flag.

The MCS-51 can use its 32 I/O lines as 32 individual bits or as four 8-bit parallel ports. It can serve five interrupts: two external, two from the counters, and one from the serial I/O port. The chip includes two 16-bit counters, which can operate in three different modes, and a serial I/O port, which can operate in full duplex mode.

18.13 Analog Signal Processor: the Intel 2920

This is a single-chip microcomputer specially designed to process analog signals. Most microprocessors are not able to process high speed analog signals because of their slow response. The 2920 is designed with special architecture and an instruction set suitable for handling high-speed signal processing. In addition to the MPU and memory, the chip includes all such necessary devices as A/D and D/A converters, a multiplexer to handle four different inputs, a sample and hold circuit, and a demultiplexer.

The 2920 is widely used for acquiring and processing analog signals. Typical applications are in such areas as telecommunications, signal processing, guidance and control, speech processing, and industrial automation.

16- AND 32-BIT MICROPROCESSORS

18.2

The 16-bit microprocessor families are designed primarily to compete in the territory of minicomputers, and are oriented towards high-level languages. Their applications may overlap the high end of 8-bit microprocessor applications and may compete with main-frame computers. They have powerful instruction sets and are capable of addressing megabytes of memory. Examples of widely used 16-bit microprocessors include Intel 8086/

8088, Zilog Z8001/8002, Digital Equipment LSI-11, Motorola 68000, and National Semiconductor NS16000. Apart from design concepts and instruction sets, a critical factor that decides the capability of the microprocessor is the number of pins available. One trend is to stay within the 40-pin package size and take advantage of existing production and testing facilities. The 40-pin package either limits the size of the memory that can be addressed or necessitates multiplexing of several functions. Intel, Zilog (for Z8002), and Digital Equipment have stayed with the 40-pin package. Another trend is to go beyond the 40-pin limit, either to a 48-pin size or to a 64-pin size. National Semiconductor (for NS16000) and Zilog (for Z8001) have chosen the 48-pin size package. Motorola and Texas Instruments have selected the 64-pin size package. The primary objectives of these 16-bit microprocessors can be summarized as follows:

1. Increase memory-addressing capacity.
2. Increase execution speed.
3. Provide a powerful instruction set.
4. Facilitate programming in high-level languages.

These objectives can be met by using various design concepts. To illustrate differences in design philosophies, the next two sections will briefly describe three 16-bit microprocessors: Intel 8086/8088, Zilog Z8001/Z8002, and Motorola MC68000.

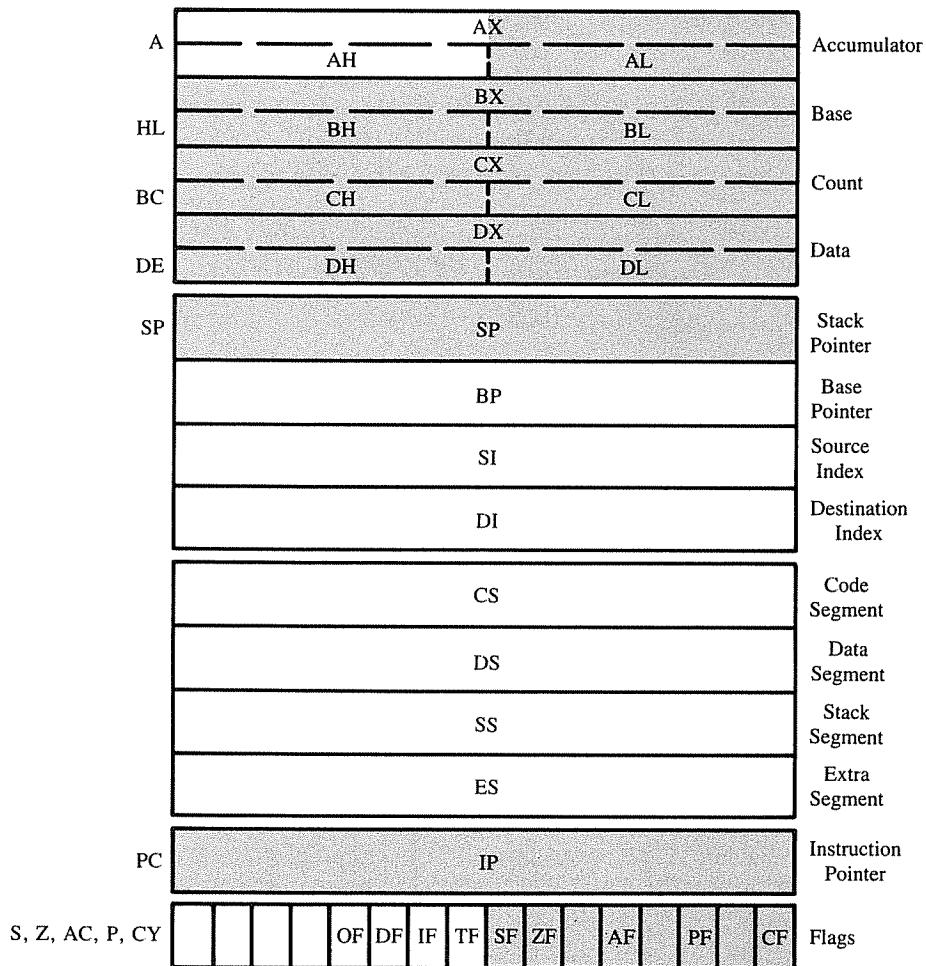
18.21 Intel 8086/8088

This is a 16-bit microprocessor housed in a 40-pin package and capable of addressing 1 megabyte of memory. Various versions of this chip can operate with clock frequencies from 4 MHz to 8 MHz. Figure 18.3 shows internal registers; the shaded portions of the figure are identical with the 8085/8080A registers. This microprocessor includes fourteen 16-bit registers, of which the top four registers (AX, BX, CX, and DX) are used as general purpose accumulators. These four can also be used as 8-bit registers. The next four 16-bit registers are used primarily as memory pointers and index registers; they hold part of a 20-bit memory address, as described under **Memory Segmentation**. They can also be used as general-purpose registers. The next four 16-bit registers are used to specify a segment of the 1-megabyte memory. The last two registers are similar to the program counter and flag register in the 80805/8080A, but have four additional flags.

The 8088 is functionally similar to the 8086, except that it has an 8-bit data bus. Its internal architecture and instruction set are essentially identical with those of the 8086. The only difference is that a 16-bit data word must be transferred in two segments in the 8088. The 8088 can be viewed as an 8-bit microprocessor with the execution power of a 16-bit microprocessor. The next few paragraphs describe the features of the 8086 architecture that meet the objectives described.

MEMORY SEGMENTATION

To increase the memory addressing capacity, the concept of memory segmentation is employed in this device. This concept involves combining the addresses from two 16-bit

**FIGURE 18.3**

The 8086 Programming Registers

SOURCE: Reprinted by permission of Intel Corporation, copyright 1981.

registers to form a 20-bit effective address. A segment register provides a base address, and another register supplies an offset address. For example, to fetch an instruction from the 256th location on page 0, the address can be formed as follows:

1. Define the memory segment by loading 0000_H into the Code Segment Register.
2. The Instruction Pointer should hold 00FF_H as the offset.

3. The processor shifts the address in the Code Segment Register by four bits to the left and adds the content of the Instruction Pointer to form the 20-bit address:

Code Segment:	0 0 0 0
Instruction Pointer:	0 0 F F
Effective Address:	0 0 0 F F

The same address can be obtained by redefining the address in the Code Segment Register and using an appropriate count from the Instruction Pointer. By having four segment registers, the 1-megabyte memory space can be conveniently divided into different sections such as program, data, and stack.

SIMULTANEOUS PROCESSING

The 8086 includes two processors called Execution Unit and Bus Interface Unit, as shown in Figure 18.4. They speed up execution by employing the concept of dividing work between two processors and processing it simultaneously. The execution process in the 8086 is similar to that of the Z80: fetch, decode, and execute. However, in the 8-bit processor, the buses are idle during the execution cycle. This idle time is avoided in the 8086 by assigning execution to the Execution Unit and fetching to the Bus Interface Unit. When an instruction is being executed, the Bus Interface Unit fetches instructions and places them on the queue, as shown in Figure 18.4; this is also known as *pipelining* the instructions.

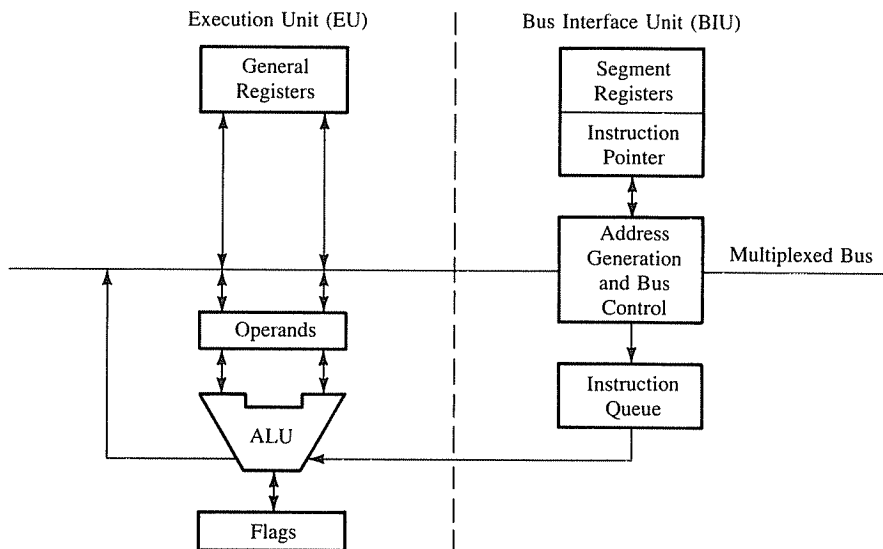


FIGURE 18.4

Execution and Bus Interface Units (EU and BIU) of the 8086

SOURCE: Reprinted by permission of Intel Corporation, copyright 1981.

COPROCESSING

In addition to the 8086, Intel has designed a series of such special function devices as the 8089 (I/O Processor) and the 8087 (Numeric Processor). These processors are compatible with the 8086 in the master-slave relationship. They are designed with additional instructions and can be assigned dedicated functions to increase the overall execution speed in large systems.

INSTRUCTION SET

The 8086 has a large instruction set, consisting of 135 basic instructions, which can operate on individual bits, bytes, 16-bit words, and 32-bit double words. The set includes such instructions as multiply, divide, and bit and string manipulation.

MODULAR PROGRAMMING

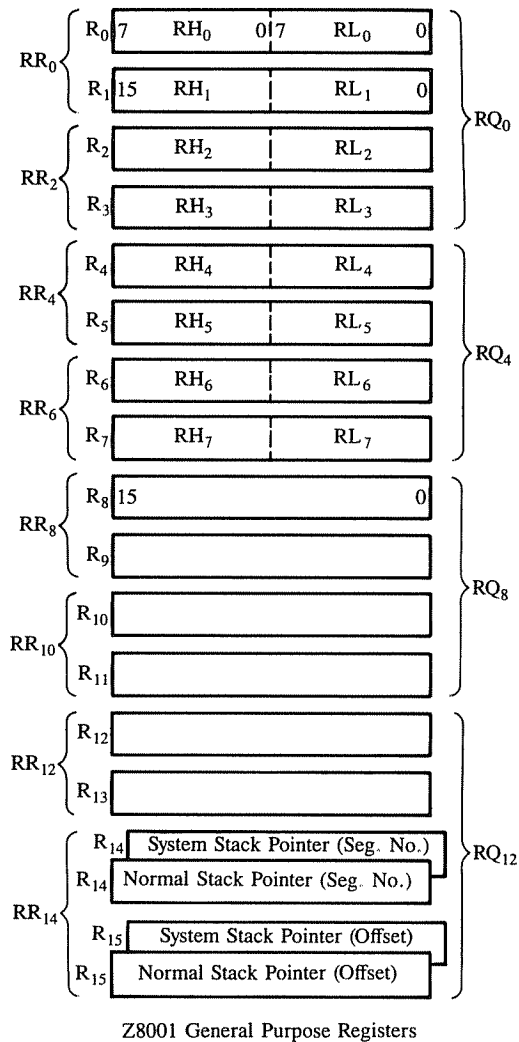
In addition to the powerful instruction set, the chip design is oriented toward modular programming, which is highly desirable for high-level languages. The memory-segmentation concept facilitates programming of independent modules that can communicate with each other as well as share common data.

18.22 Zilog Z8000

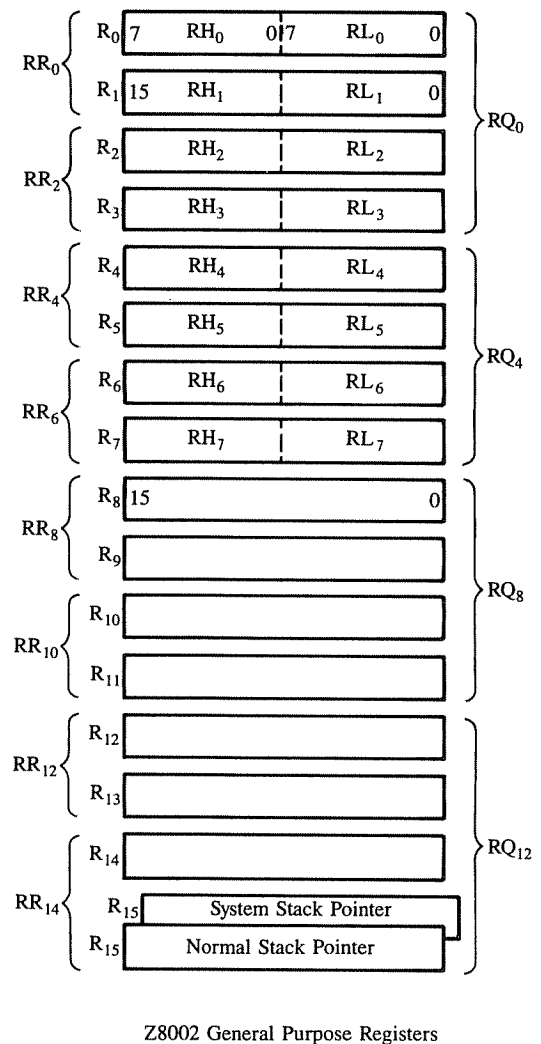
The Zilog Z8000 is a 16-bit microprocessor with two versions—Z8001 and Z8002. The Z8002 is a 40-pin device capable of addressing 64K non-segmented memory. The Z8001 is a 48-pin device, almost identical to the Z8002, capable of directly addressing eight megabytes of memory. Like the 8086, it can also use the concept of segmented memory, but unlike the 8086, it requires an additional device called the Memory Management Unit, and the memory addressing can be extended to 48 megabytes.

The overall architectural philosophy of the Z8000 is similar to that of the 8086. The Z8000 is a register-oriented microprocessor; the Z8002 version has twenty-one 16-bit registers, of which 16 are general-purpose registers (Figure 18.5). Any of these general-purpose registers, with the exception of the register R0, can be used as an accumulator, index register, memory pointer, or stack pointer. This is unlike the 8086, in which most registers have designated functions. In addition to 16 general-purpose registers, the Z8000 includes five registers: program counter, flag register, status pointer, instruction register, and refresh counter. To speed up the execution, it uses the prefetched pipeline technique and has a powerful interrupt structure. One of the unique features of the Z8000 is that it provides a refresh counter to refresh dynamic memory. It can operate in either the system or normal mode. The system mode permits privileged operations, thereby facilitating multi-user systems.

The Z8000 has a very powerful instruction set of 110 instruction types; it has seven addressing modes and can operate on a bit, byte, 16-bit word, 32-bit long word, and 64-bit quad word. The instruction set includes instructions such as multiply/divide, block transfer, and string manipulations.



Z8001 General Purpose Registers



Z8002 General Purpose Registers

FIGURE 18.5

Z8001/Z8002 General-Purpose Registers

SOURCE: Courtesy of Zilog, Inc.

18.23 Motorola MC68000

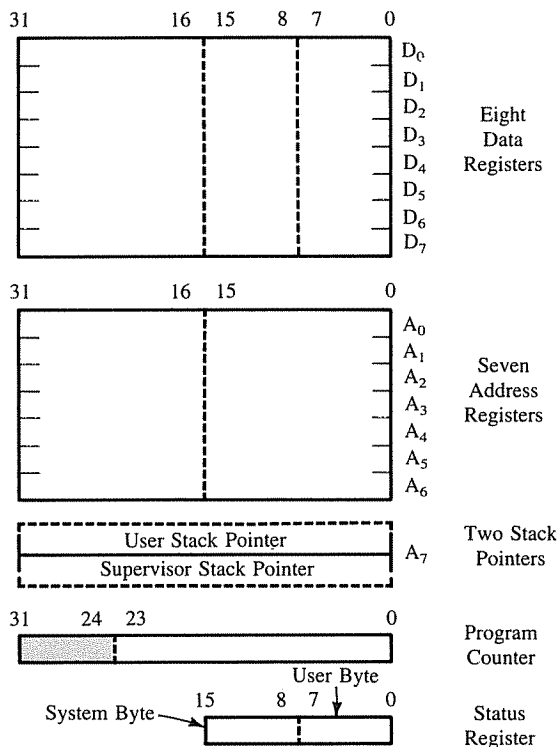
This is a 16-bit microprocessor with a 32-bit internal architecture housed in a 64-pin package. It is capable of addressing 16 megabytes of memory, and the clock frequency ranges from 4 MHz to 10 MHz for different versions of the chip.

Figure 18.6 shows the internal architecture of the device. It includes seventeen 32-bit, general-purpose registers, a 32-bit program counter, and a 16-bit status register.

FIGURE 18.6

Programming Registers of the 68000

SOURCE: Courtesy of Motorola, Inc.



The general-purpose registers are divided into three groups: eight data registers, seven address registers, and two stack pointers. The contents of the data registers can be accessed as bytes, 16-bit words, or 32-bit words, and the contents of the address registers can be accessed as 16-bit or 32-bit addresses. The 68000 can operate in two different modes: the user mode and the supervisor mode. The supervisor mode is designed primarily for operating systems; in this mode, some privileged system control instructions can be used. Some of its other features can be described as follows.

NONSEGMENTED MEMORY

To increase the memory addressing capacity, Motorola has increased the number of pins in its package. The chip is designed with 23 separate lines to address eight megawords (16 megabytes). Similarly, its program counter is 32 bits long; however, only the low-order 24 bits are necessary to address the entire memory map.

INSTRUCTION SET

The 68000 has one of the most powerful and simple instruction sets. It includes 56 basic instructions and can operate on five different types of data: bit, byte, BCD, 16-bit word, and 32-bit word. It has only memory-mapped I/O but includes 14 memory addressing modes. To cite one example of its powerful set, its MOV instruction can transfer data from

any source to any destination. It includes such instructions as Multiply and Divide and special instructions to deal with numbers longer than 32 bits. Its orientation towards high-level languages comes primarily from its instruction set.

ASYNCHRONOUS AND SYNCHRONOUS CONTROL LINES

The 68000 has a special way of handling slow and fast peripherals. It has two sets of control signals, called asynchronous and synchronous signals. Communication with asynchronous peripherals is handled through the control lines called Upper Data Strobe (UDS), Lower Data Strobe (LDS), and Data Acknowledge (DACK). The DACK signal is similar to a handshake line; until the signal DACK is received, the bus cycle is not terminated. The 6800 family offers some synchronous peripherals, and communication with these peripherals is handled through the control signals called Valid Peripheral Address (VPA), Valid Memory Address (VMA), and Enable(E).

18.24 Intel 80186 and 80286

The Intel 80186 and -286 are 16-bit microprocessors, extended versions of the 8086. One of the critical barriers among the Intel's earlier microprocessors was the 40-pin package. Once that barrier was broken, it became easier to address large memory. These recent microprocessors are housed in 68-pin packages. These microprocessors, generally, use the concepts of prefetched pipeline structure, parallel processing, and memory management.

The 80186 is an improved version of the 8086; it is available in two speeds: 6 MHz and 8 MHz. It is an integrated device designed to reduce the chip count, rather than to increase the memory addressing capacity. It has multiplexed address and the data buses, and the additional lines of the bigger package are used to include devices such as a clock generator, interrupt controller, timers, DMA controller, and a chip-select unit.

The 80286 is also a 16-bit microprocessor, an improved version of the 8086 but with different architectural philosophy. It has eliminated the multiplexing of the buses; it has a linear address bus with 24 address lines that can address 16 megabytes of memory directly. It can also support a memory management unit, and through the memory management unit it can address 1 gigabyte of memory, also known as virtual memory. The processor includes various built-in mechanisms that can protect system software from user programs, protect users' programs, and restrict access to some regions of memory. The 80286 is designed for a multi-user system in an environment similar to that of minicomputers and mainframe computers; its architectural philosophy is closer to the Intel's 80386 32-bit microprocessor, which is described in the next section.

18.25 32-bit Microprocessors

At the high end of the microprocessor range, we now have 32-bit microprocessors available; examples include such microprocessors as Intel 80386, Zilog Z80,000, National Semiconductor NS32032, and Motorola MC68020. We are interested not in discussing the details of these microprocessors, but in exploring trends in the microprocessor technology.

These microprocessors are not merely more of the same, except bigger and faster; they offer some unique features not available in 16-bit microprocessors. The applications and the environments in which they operate are far different from those of the 8-bit microprocessor and the 16-bit microprocessors. It appears that two trends are evolving: One is multi-user, multi-tasking, time-sharing environments, and the other is distributed processing, interconnected with networks. As soon as we move away from the single-user system, the demands on these microprocessors change dramatically; the environment is more like that of minicomputers or mainframe computers. These microprocessors should not be viewed as programmable logic devices.

In a single-user system, the user has an unlimited access to all aspects of the system. The user need not be concerned with sharing the time or the resources of the system, but can schedule various tasks according to his or her convenience. The user has access to the operating system, can tamper with the system to include some personal conveniences, or in the process can lock up the system. However, the multi-user system cannot afford to provide the luxuries of unlimited access to all users. Some of the requirements of the multi-user system are as follows:

1. Higher speed of execution.
2. Ability to handle different types of tasks efficiently.
3. Large memory space that can be shared by multiple users.
4. Appropriate memory allocations and the management of memory access.
5. Data security and data access.
6. Limited and selected access to part of the system.
7. Resource (printer, hard disk, etc.) sharing and management.

Some of these requirements must be managed by a multi-user operating system, and some should be facilitated by the architectural design of the microprocessors. The 32-bit microprocessors are designed to work in this type of environment. Some of the important features of Intel 80386 and Zilog Z80,000 are described in this section as representative samples of 32-bit microprocessor technology.

The 80386 is a 32-bit microprocessor with a nonmultiplexed 32-bit address bus and can operate at 16 MHz clock. It is capable of addressing 4 gigabytes of physical memory, and through its memory management unit, it can address 64 tetrabytes (2^{46}) of memory. The 80386 has 32-bit registers, and it is upward software compatible with the 8086. The execution of instructions is highly pipelined, and it is designed to operate in a multi-user and multitasking environment. It has the protection mechanism that is necessary for this type of environment.

The Z80,000 is also a 32-bit microprocessor with architecture similar to that of the 80386. It can directly address 4 gigabytes of memory, and it can extend the memory addressing capacity similar to the 80386 by using the built-in memory management unit. It is designed to operate in two primary modes—system and normal—supported by separate stacks. The normal mode is for user programs, and the system mode is used for some of the critical functions of an operating system, such as protecting the operating system from user access.

In summary, these 32-bit microprocessors are oriented toward high-level languages. They can address a large memory space, execute instructions with high speed, and perform arithmetic operations with high precision. These microprocessors suggest a trend toward replacing software functions with hardware. They are designed to perform the functions normally found in mainframe computers.

18.26 Contemporary 8-Bit Microprocessors and Technology Trends

The Intel 8008, which was later superseded by the Intel 8080A, was the first 8-bit microprocessor. Just about the same time (1974), Motorola brought out the MC6800 as an improvement over the first 8008, but with substantially different architecture. Within a few years, Zilog designed the Z80, and Intel came up with the 8085 as an improvement over the 8080A. Both are upward machine-language compatible with the 8080A. Other popular microprocessors are those of the MOS Technology (now part of Rockwell) MCS6500 series, which was designed as an improvement over the Motorola 6800; however, they are neither hardware nor software compatible. In recent years, Motorola came up with the MC6809, a vastly improved version of the MC6800. These contemporary 8-bit microprocessors were discussed briefly in Chapter 2. Now the question is: What is the role of these general-purpose 8-bit microprocessors in the fast changing microprocessor technology?

Along with the development of general-purpose 8-bit microprocessors, the single-chip microcontrollers began to assume a major role in the area of dedicated functions. Examination of the three examples discussed in Section 18.1 shows that the single-chip microcomputer plays a vital role in control applications and is an important segment of microprocessor technology. These devices are designed for special-purpose applications, and the circuitry on the chips varies according to the objectives. Applications range from bit set/reset functions to processing high-speed analog signals.

At the other end of the application spectrum, 16-bit microprocessors have begun to dominate the microcomputer industry. The 8086 and the Z8002 have employed several new architectural concepts, such as memory segmentation, parallel processing, queueing, and coprocessing. In addition, the Motorola MC68000 and the Zilog Z8001 broke the barrier of the 40-pin package. These processors are oriented toward high-level languages and will perform some functions of minicomputers and mainframe computers. Recent microprocessors, such as Intel 80286 and -386, and Zilog Z80,000 have begun to accept the challenges of multi-user and multi-tasking environments.

Now the question is: will these general-purpose 8-bit microprocessors disappear because of the competition from highly sophisticated single-chip microcontrollers at one end and high speed and powerful 16-bit microprocessors at the other end? We think not. Each group has carved out its own share of applications. This is similar to the automobile industry; there is room for subcompacts as well as luxury sports cars.

The 16-bit microprocessors are too powerful to perform the functions of general purpose 8-bit microprocessors; therefore, they are less likely to replace 8-bit processors. Competition for the general-purpose 8-bit microprocessors will come from the other direc-

tion: the single-chip microcomputers. However, the single-chip microcomputers do not lend themselves as suitable learning vehicles for basic concepts, and the 16-bit microprocessors are too complex and cumbersome for instructional purposes.

In 8-bit general-purpose microprocessors, the trend seems to be toward integrated devices that reduce the chip count; these devices are known as integrated super 8-bit MPUs. Two examples of such devices are Hitachi HD64180 and Zilog Z280; these are described briefly here to indicate the trend.

Hitachi HD64180 This is an 8-bit, high-integration CMOS microprocessor in a 64-pin package, designed for applications with low power consumption, and it can operate with a 6 MHz clock. It includes a clock generator, an interrupt controller, and a memory management unit (MMU) as support devices for the microprocessor (Figure 18.7). It has 19 address lines that can address 512K bytes of physical memory, and the MMU translates internal 64K logical addressing into appropriate physical addressing. The interrupt controller is capable of handling four external and eight internal interrupting sources.

Figure 18.7 also shows that the HD64180 includes four I/O related devices: DMA controller (DMAC—two channels), asynchronous serial communication interface (ASCI—two channels), clocked serial I/O port (CSI/O), and programmable reload timer (PRT—two channels). The DMAC has two channels that support high-speed data transfer of 64K bytes per channel anywhere in the physical space of 512K bytes of memory. The ASCI has two separate channels for full-duplex communication, and the CSI/O provides a half-duplex communication; it is used primarily for simple high-speed connection between microcomputers. Similarly, the timer has two channels with 16-bit counters, and one of the channels can be used for waveform generation.

The instruction set of the HD64180 is upward compatible with the Z80 instruction set. The HD64180 has seven additional instructions, including 8-bit Multiply and Sleep. The Sleep instruction reduces the power consumption to 19 mW. One of the powerful features of this device is that the Opcode Fetch cycle of an instruction consists of three T-states versus four T-states in the Z80, resulting in faster program execution.

Zilog Z280 This is also an 8-bit, high-integration CMOS microprocessor in a 68-pin package, and it can operate with a 20* MHz clock. It includes a clock generator, refresh address generator, 256 bytes of on-chip memory, and a memory management unit (MMU) as support devices for the microprocessor operations (Figure 18.8). The MMU enables the microprocessor to address 16M bytes of memory, and the refresh address generator provides a 10-bit address that is used in refreshing dynamic memory. The on-chip memory allows programs to run significantly faster by reducing the number of external bus accesses.

Figure 18.8 also shows that the Z280 includes four I/O related devices: DMA (four channels), Universal Asynchronous Receiver/Transmitter (UART), and Counter/Timer (three channels). The DMA has four channels that can transfer data between any two ports (source and destination), including memory-to-I/O, I/O-to-memory, memory-to-memory,

*Note: The preliminary specifications indicate that the clock frequencies can go as high as 50 MHz.

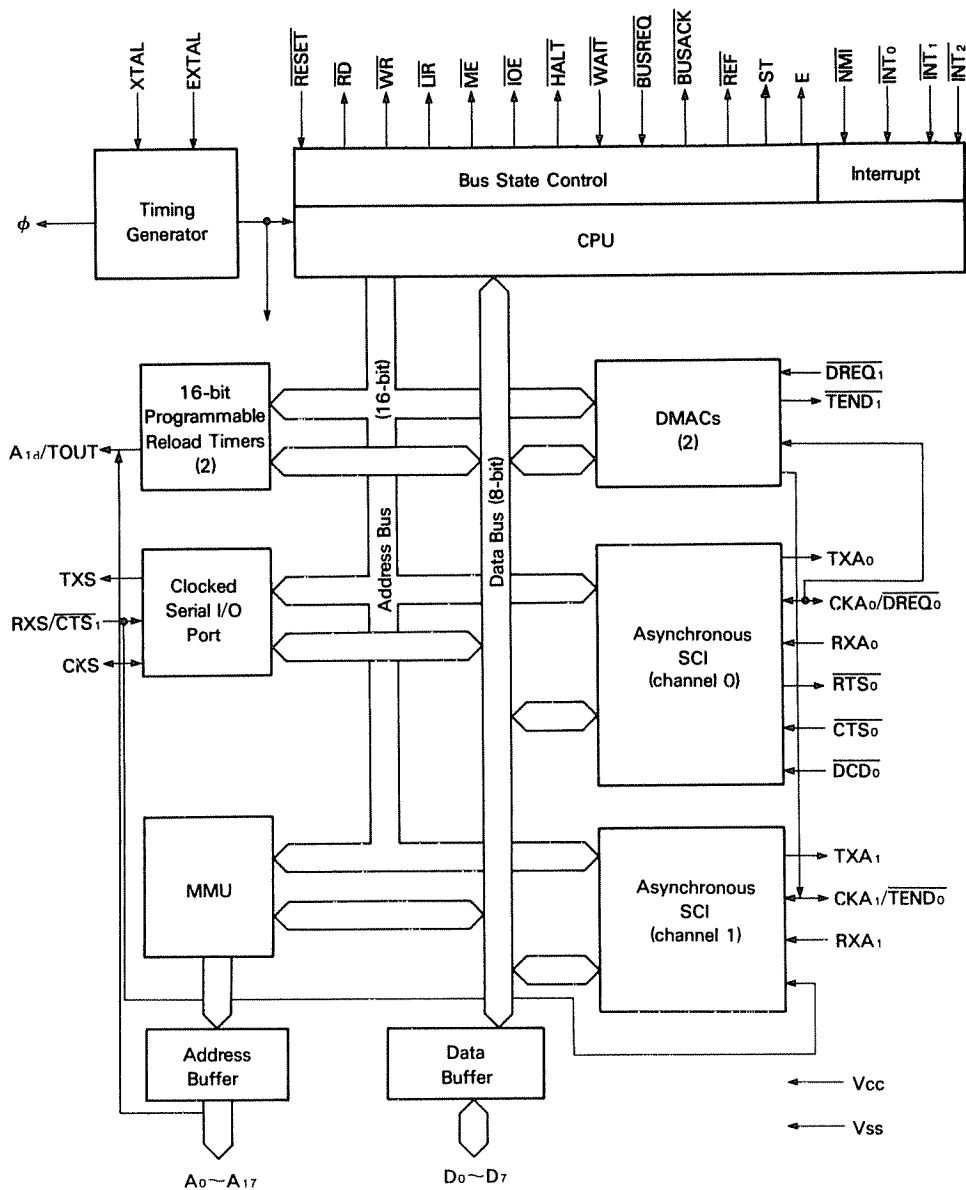


FIGURE 18.7

Block Diagram: HD64180

SOURCE: Courtesy of Hitachi America, Ltd., Semiconductor & I.C. Division.

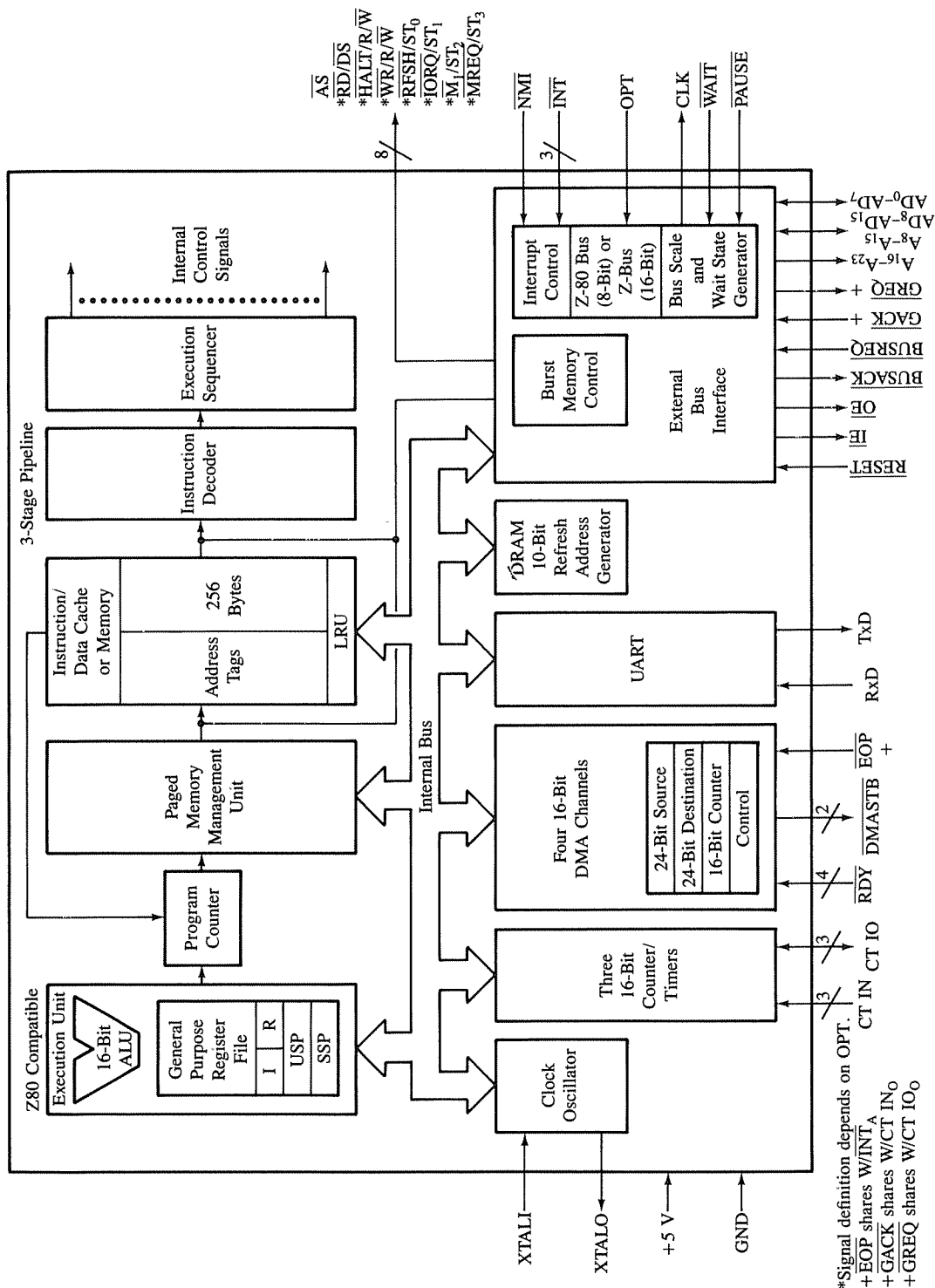


FIGURE 18.8
Block Diagram: Z280
SOURCE: Courtesy of Zilog, Inc.

and I/O-to-I/O. The UART is capable of handling any full-duplex asynchronous data communication. Similarly, the Z280 has three channels of Timer/Counter with 16-bit time constant; these can be used for event counting, interrupt and interval timing, and general clock generation.

The Z280 can operate in either user or system mode, and each has separate stacks. System mode is intended for the functions of an operating system, and user mode is intended for application programs. Thus, the sensitive and critical functions of the operating system are protected from the user interference. The instruction set of the Z280 retains compatibility with that of the Z80 and includes additional instructions such as 8- and 16-bit signed and unsigned multiply and divide. It has a powerful interrupt structure which has four modes of operation; the first three modes are similar to those of the Z80.

After examining these two devices, it appears that the Z80-type microprocessors have begun to reassert their presence in the form of integrated devices in industrial and computer applications.

18.3 BUS INTERFACE STANDARDS

The microcomputer is a bus-oriented system whereby subsystems or peripherals are interconnected through the bus architecture. The design approach should be such that systems are modular, expandable, and multipurpose. For example, a microcomputer with 32K memory should be expandable to 64K memory without any design changes as the user's needs change. The user should be able to select a peripheral from any manufacturer and plug it into the system. Similarly, the user should be able to print out programs as well as collect data from various instruments. To design microcomputers with such features, a common understanding of equipment specifications among manufacturers is needed; this is known as **defining standards**. In the field of electronics, these standards are generally defined by professional organizations such as IEEE (Institute for Electrical and Electronics Engineers) and EIA (Electronic Industries Association); sometimes the standards are forced upon the industry either by a dominant manufacturer or by common practice. The need for expandability and modularity gave rise to various bus standards, as listed in Table 18.1. The bus S-100, the Standard Bus, IBM PC Bus, the Multibus, and the GPIB are described here; others were described in Chapter 15.

18.31 S-100 (IEEE 696), Standard, IBM PC Bus

The primary force behind the development of these buses is their expandability. This type of bus allows the user to plug in additional peripherals (including memory) without any design changes and also facilitates troubleshooting. The bus design is based on the concept of the "mother board," a printed circuit board with parallel foil strips. Several edge connectors, connected to the foil strips, are included in a system, and some edge connectors are left empty for the user.

TABLE 18.1
Bus Standards

Buses	I/O Mode	Applications/Description
1. S-100 (IEEE-696)	Parallel	To interconnect various components within the micro-computer. It has 100 signals.
2. STD Bus	Parallel	This is a bus competing with S-100. It has 56 signals.
3. IBM PC Bus	Parallel	It has 62 signal lines and is used to connect peripherals.
4. Multibus (IEEE-796)	Parallel	Interface between modules with the master/slave type communication. It has 86 signals.
5. GPIB (IEEE-488)	Parallel	Interface between the microcomputer and measurement equipment such as a voltmeter. It has 24 signals.
6. RS-232C	Serial	Interface between the microcomputer and serial peripherals such as a terminal and a printer (see Chapter 15).
7. RS-422 and RS-423	Serial	High-speed serial communication for distances longer than 20 meters.

BUS INTERFACE

The bus signals are divided into four groups, as shown in Figure 18.9: power, data, address, and control. The S-100 bus has 100 signals, the STD bus has 56 signals, and the IBM PC bus has 62 signals.

The S-100 bus was originally developed by MITS and IMASAI in 1975, even before the existence of a 16-bit microprocessor. The bus quickly became popular with hobbyists and it became the de-facto industry standard. Initially, several lines were undefined, causing contradictory uses by manufacturers. Eventually, IEEE adopted the S-100, with some modifications, as the IEEE-696 standard. This bus has 24 address lines, 16 data lines, 11 interrupts, and provision for multiprocessing.

The STD bus was recently (1981) developed by Pro-Log Corporation and MOS-TEK, as a simple bus structure for 8-bit microprocessors. It is a 56-pin bus with eight data lines, 16 address lines, 22 control lines, and ten power lines. It is a better-defined bus, an improvement over the original S-100 bus. However, the S-100 is so widely used that the STD bus may have difficulty demonstrating its superiority to industry.

The IBM PC bus is a set of 62 signal lines, specifically designed for IBM personal computers; the bus is also known as I/O channel. It is used to connect peripherals such as floppy disk controllers, serial and parallel I/O devices, and video display controllers to the system board. In addition, it can also be used to expand memory capacity and connect special-purpose I/O devices. The bus includes 20 address lines, eight data lines, seven power and frequency related lines (± 12 V, ± 5 V, GND, system clock, and high frequency clock), and one unspecified line; the remaining 26 lines can be classified as control and status lines. The control and status group consists of Read/Write signals, interrupt request signals, DMA request and acknowledge signals, and status (such as address latch enable, I/O check, Ready) signals.

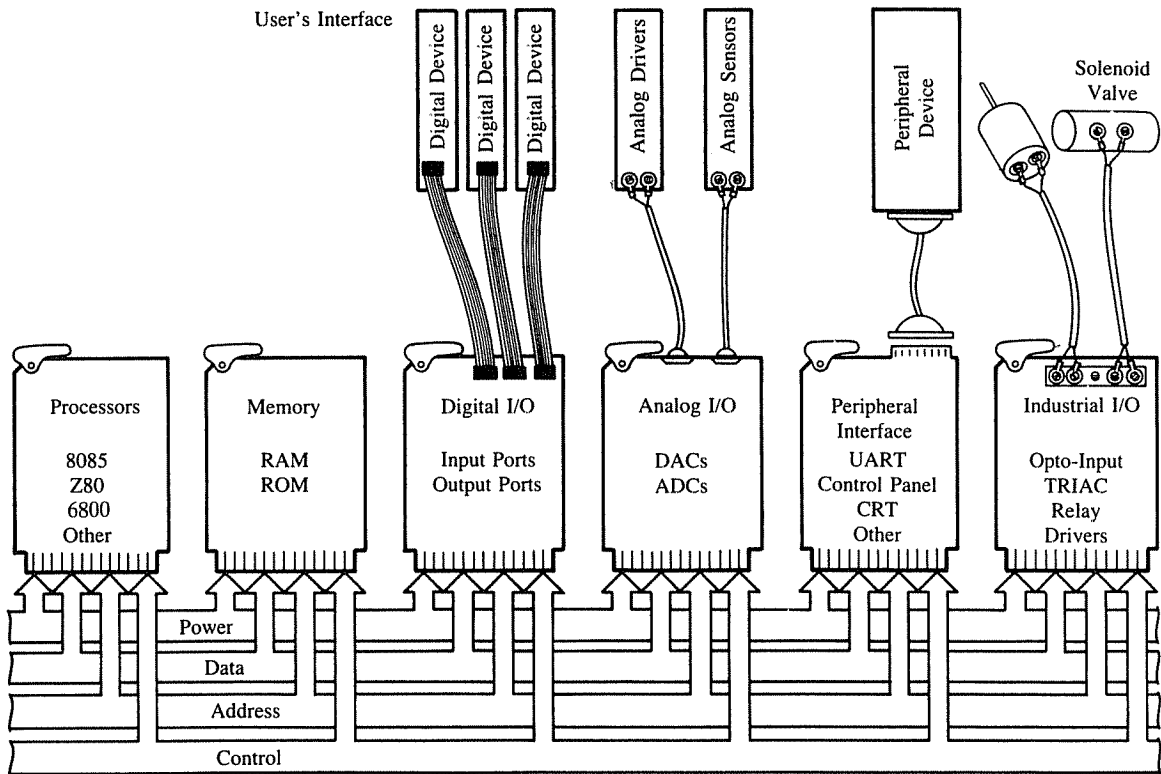


FIGURE 18.9
Bus Interface

SOURCE: Courtesy of Pro-Log Corporation, Monterey, Calif.

The IBM PC design is divided primarily into two segments: system board and various I/O channels with these 62 lines. Peripheral boards are simply plugged into these channels. For example, a floppy disk controller is specifically assigned three control signals: IRQ6 (Interrupt Request 6), DRQ2 (DMA Request 2), and DACK2 (DMA Acknowledge 2), and the disk controller board is designed using these lines. The usage and popularity of this bus is dependent on the IBM PC and its compatible systems; the recent models of IBM PCs (Personal System/2) do not use this bus.

18.32 Multibus (IEEE 796)

The multibus is an 86-line (optional 60-line) bus developed by Intel Corporation to connect independent modules (or microcomputers) of various microprocessors to share resources. Each board can operate independently using its own memory and I/Os for dedicated functions. They can access a system's resources such as a hard disk or printer through the multibus.

The bus includes 20 address lines, 16 bidirectional data lines, numerous control lines, and multiple power and ground lines; the bus control can be managed by IC devices such as the Intel 8218 or 8288. A multibus system can have many masters; therefore, control logic is required for arbitration and data flow when multiple requests are made to access the bus. Simultaneous requests to access the bus are handled through either serial or parallel techniques by control signals.

18.33 GPIB Interface Bus (IEEE 488)

This bus was developed to facilitate interfacing of programmable instruments (such as printers, digital voltmeters, and digital tape recorders) with computers. Initially, the bus was developed by Hewlett-Packard; later, it was accepted as the IEEE 488 Interface Standard. The bus standard is also known as the General Purpose Interface Bus (GPIB) or the Hewlett-Packard Interface Bus (HP-IB).

Some of the features of this bus are the following:

1. Data transfer among the interconnected devices is digital.
2. Fifteen devices may be connected to one continuous bus.
3. Total transmission path is limited to twenty meters or two meters per device.
4. Data rate on any signal line is limited to 1Mbyte/sec.

BUS SIGNALS

The bus has 24 signals: eight bidirectional data lines, five general bus management lines, three handshake lines, and eight grounds. Figure 18.10 shows four types of devices that can be connected to the bus. These devices are classified as follows:

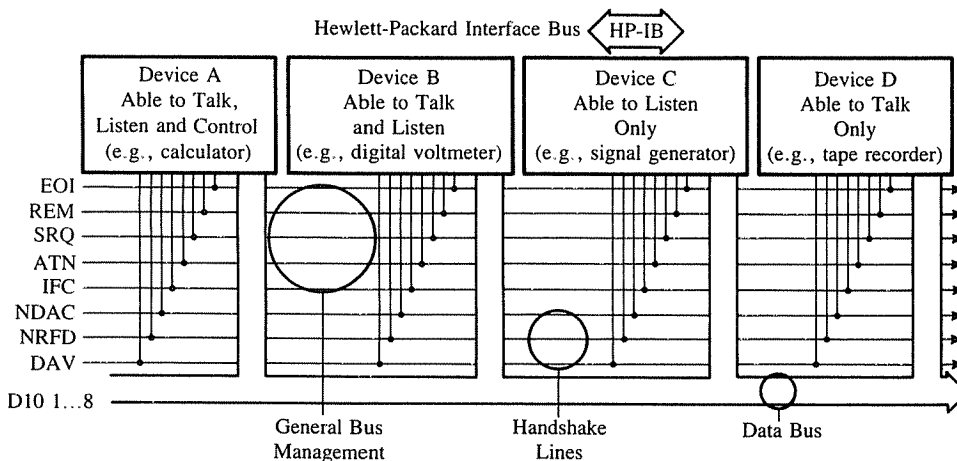


FIGURE 18.10

GPIB (IEEE 488) Bus Interface

SOURCE: Hewlett-Packard Company, *Tutorial Descriptions of the Hewlett-Packard Interface Bus*. (Palo Alto, CA: Author, 1980), p. 8. Reproduced with permission.

1. *Listener* is a device capable of receiving data when addressed; 14 devices can listen at a time. Examples include printers and display devices.
2. *Talker* is a device capable of transmitting data when addressed; only one device can be active at a time. Examples include tape readers and voltmeters.
3. *Listener/Talker* is a device that can receive as well as transmit data over the interface. A programmable digital voltmeter (DVM) is a listener/talker device.
4. *Controller* is a device that controls signals and specifies which device can talk and which device can listen. A microcomputer with an appropriate I/O card can serve as a controller.

SUMMARY

In this chapter, various microprocessors—from 8-bit to 32-bit—and single-chip microcontrollers were discussed, compared, and contrasted in terms of their characteristics and applications. Future trends in microprocessor technology were suggested.

Single-chip microcomputers (also known as microcontrollers) and their various applications were discussed in Section 18.1. These microcontrollers are specially designed for specific applications, and their characteristics differ according to their areas of applications.

Microprocessors with 16- and 32-bit words were discussed in Sections 18.2. These are designed to facilitate the use of high-level languages, and are expected to compete with functions of minicomputers and mainframe computers. New architectural concepts such as memory segmentation, parallel processing, and queueing were employed in designing some of these processors, and some are designed with pin package larger than 40. In 8-bit general-purpose microprocessors, Z80-type microprocessors have begun to appear in the form of integrated devices that include a microprocessor, memory management unit, DMA controllers, UARTS, and timers on one chip.

The chapter was concluded with the discussion of various bus standards.

References

- Analog Devices Inc. *Data Acquisition Components and Subsystems*, Norwood, MA; Author, 1980.
- Bates, Paul. *Practical Digital and Data Communications with LSI Applications*. Englewood Cliffs, NJ: Prentice-Hall, 1987.
- Brey, Barry. *8086/8088 Microprocessor Architecture, Programming, and Interfacing*. Columbus, OH: Merrill Publishing Co., 1987.
- CAMI Research Inc. *The Micro-Trainer Manual*, Arlington, MA: Author, 1983.
- Coffron, James. *Practical Hardware Details for 8080, 8085, Z80, and 6800 Microprocessor Systems*. Englewood Cliffs, NJ: Prentice-Hall, 1981.
- Coffron, James. *Z80 Applications*. Berkeley, CA: Sybex Inc., 1983.
- Electronic Industries Association. *Interface Between Data Terminal Equipment and Data Communication Equipment Employing Serial Binary Data Interchange: RS-232-C Standard*. Washington, DC: Author, 1969. Reaffirmed in June 1981.
- Fairchild. *TTL Data Book*, Mountainview, CA: Author, 1978.
- Floyd, Thomas. *Digital Fundamentals*, 3rd ed. Columbus, OH: Merrill Publishing Co., 1986.
- Gaonkar, Ramesh. "Data Conversion, Chapter 13." In *Integrated Circuits Applications Handbook*, Arthur Seidman, Ed. New York: Wiley, 1983.
- Gaonkar, Ramesh. *Microprocessor Architecture, Programming, and Applications with the 8085/8080A*. Columbus, OH: Merrill Publishing Co., 1984.
- Goldsbrough, Paul. *Microcomputer Interfacing with the 8255 PPI Chip*. Indianapolis, IN: Howard W. Sams, 1979.
- Hall, Douglas. *Microprocessors and Interfacing*. New York: McGraw-Hill, 1986.
- Hewlett-Packard Company. *Tutorial Description of the Hewlett-Packard Interface Bus*. Palo Alto: Author, 1980.
- Hitachi America Ltd. *HD64180 8-Bit High Integration CMOS Microprocessor User's Manual*, San Jose, CA: Author, 1985.
- Hogan, Thom. *CP/M User's Guide*. Berkeley, CA: Osborne/McGraw-Hill, 1981.
- Intel Corporation. *Component Data Catalog*. Santa Clara, CA: Author, 1982.
- Intel Corporation. *iAPX 86,88 User's Manual*. Santa Clara, CA: Author, 1981.
- Intel Corporation. *Memory Components Handbook*. Santa Clara, CA: Author, 1984.
- Intel Corporation. *Microcontroller Handbook*. Santa Clara, CA: Author, 1984.
- Intel Corporation. *Peripheral Design Handbook*. Santa Clara, CA: Author, 1981.
- Intel Corporation. *2920 Analog Signal Processor Design Handbook*, Santa Clara, CA: Author, 1980.
- Khambata, Adi. *Introduction to the Z80 Microcomputer*, New York: Wiley, 1982.
- Leibson Steve. "The Input/Output Primer, Part 4: The BCD and Serial Interfaces." *Byte* (May 1982): 202-220.

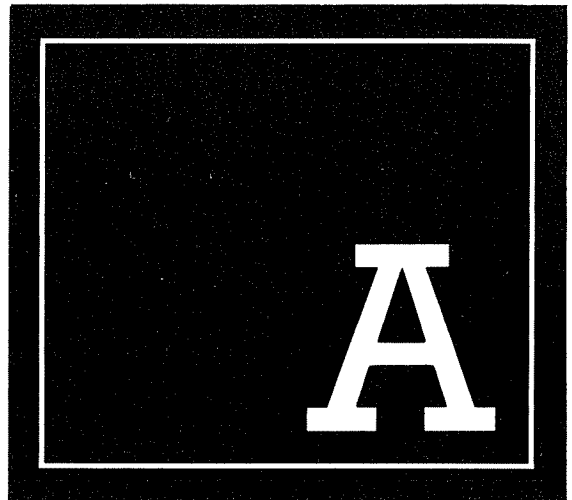
- Mostek. *BYTEWYDE Memory Data Book*. Carrollton, TX: Author, 1980.
- Mostek. *Memory Data Book and Designer's Guide*. Carrollton, TX: Author, 1980.
- Mostek. *Z80 Microcomputer Data Book*. Carrollton, TX: Author, 1981.
- Multitech Electronics, Inc. *Micro-Professor User's Manual*, San Jose, CA: Author, 1981.
- National Semiconductor Inc. *Linear Data Handbook*, Santa Clara, CA: Author, 1982.
- Norton, Peter. *The Peter Norton Programmer's Guide To The IBM-PC*. Bellevue, Washington, Microsoft Press, 1985.
- Osborne, Adam, and Kane, Gerry. *4- & 8-bit Microprocessor Handbook*. Berkeley, CA: Osborne/McGraw-Hill, 1981.
- Pro-Log Corporation. *Series 7000 STD Bus Technical Manual and Product Catalog*. Monterey, CA: Author, 1981.
- Rony, Peter. "Interfacing Fundamentals: Bidirectional I/O Using Two Semaphores." *Computer Design* (April 1981): 184-188.
- Rony, Peter. "Interfacing Fundamentals: A Comparison of Block Diagrams for I/O Techniques." *Computer Design* (February 1982): 175-177.
- Rony, Peter. "Interfacing Fundamentals: Conditional I/O Using a Semaphore." *Computer Design* (April 1980): 166-167.
- Rony, Peter. "Interfacing Fundamentals: Conditional I/O Using Two Microcomputers." *Computer Design* (August 1980): 136-138.
- Rony, Peter. "Interfacing Fundamentals: 2-Wire Handshake Using Two Microcomputers." *Computer Design* (June 1981): 156-160.
- Terrell, David. *Microprocessor Technology*. Reston, VA: Reston Publishing Company, 1982.
- Texas Instruments Inc. *The TTL Data Book for Design Engineers*, 2nd ed. Dallas TX: Author, 1976.
- Titus, Christopher, et al. *16-Bit Microprocessors*, Indianapolis, IN: Howard W. Sams, 1981.
- Toomey, Paul. *The AD7574 Analog to Microprocessor Interface, Application Note*. Norwood, MA: Analog Devices, 1982.
- Uffenback, John. *Microcomputers and Microprocessors: The 8080, 8085, and Z80 Programming, Interfacing, and Troubleshooting*. Englewood Cliffs, NJ: Prentice-Hall, 1985.
- Zaks, Rodney. *Programming the Z80*, 3rd Rev. Ed. Berkeley, CA: Sybex Inc., 1982.
- Zilog Inc. *Components Data Book*, Campbell, CA: Author, 1982, 1983, 1985.
- Zilog Inc. *Microprocessor Applications Reference Book*, vol. 1. Cupertino, CA: Author, 1981.
- Zilog Inc. *Microprocessor Applications Reference Book*, vol. 2. Campbell, CA: Author, 1983.
- Zilog Inc. *Z80-Assembly Language Programming Manual*, Campbell, CA: Author, 1980.
- Zilog Inc. *Z80-CPU Z80A-CPU Technical Manual*, Campbell, CA: Author, 1978.
- Zilog Inc. *Z80 CTC Counter/Timer Circuit Technical Manual*, Campbell, CA: Author, 1982.
- Zilog Inc. *Z80 DMA Technical Manual*, Cupertino, CA: Author, 1981.
- Zilog Inc. *Z80 PIO Z80A PIO Technical Manual*, Campbell, CA: Author, 1978.
- Zilog Inc. *Z80 SIO Technical Manual*, Campbell, CA: Author, 1978.
- Zilog Inc. *Z280 MPU Microprocessor Unit, Preliminary Product Specifications*. Campbell, CA: Author, 1987.

Z80 Instruction Set

Appendix A describes each Z80 instruction fully in terms of its operation and the operand, including details such as number of bytes, machine cycles, T-states, Hex code, and affected flags. The instructions appear in alphabetical order and are illustrated with examples.

The following abbreviations and symbols are used in the description of the instruction set.

- r = Z80 Registers
- rp = Register Pair
- rx = Index Registers
- r' = Z80 Alternate Registers
- m = Memory Location
- r_s = Register Source
- r_d = Register Destination
- () = Contents of
- d = 7-bit Displacement (Expressed in 2's Complement for Backward Displacement)
- b = Bit from 0 to 7
- MC = Machine Cycles
- 1 = Flag Set
- 0 = Flag Reset
- ✓ = Flag Affected
- [Blank] = No Effect On Flag
- ? = Flag Indeterminate



Flags	cc = Flag Condition Code
S = Sign	P = Plus
Z = Zero	M = Minus
H = Half-Carry	Z = Zero
P/V = Parity/Overflow	NZ = No Zero
N = Add/Subtract	PE = Parity Even
C = Carry (In the description of an instruction, the abbreviation CY is used instead of C to avoid confusion with register C.)	PO = Parity Odd
	C = Carry
	NC = No Carry

ADC A, r: ADD REGISTER TO ACCUMULATOR WITH CARRY
ADC A, 8-BIT: ADD 8-BIT TO ACCUMULATOR WITH CARRY

Opcode	Operand	Bytes	MC /T-States	Hex Codes							
ADC	r	1	1 /4	A	B	C	D	E	H	L	
				8F	88	89	8A	8B	8C	8D	
	8-Bit	2	2 /7(4,3)	CE 8-Bit							

Description The contents of the operand (register or 8-bit data) and the carry flag CY are added to the contents of the accumulator and the result is placed in the accumulator.

	S	Z		H		P/V	N	C
Flags	✓	✓		✓		✓	0	✓

Example The register BC contains 2498_H and the register DE contains 54A1_H. Add (BC) and (DE) and store the result in BC.

Step 1:	Copy (B) into A and add (D) using ADD instruction.	(C) →	(A): 98 _H
Step 2:	Save the sum (39 _H) in register C.		(E): A1 _H
Step 3:	Copy (B) into A and add (D) using the ADC instruction to account for the carry from the previous sum.		(A): 1/39 _H
Step 4:	Save the sum (79 _H) in B. The ADC instruction resets the previous CY flag.	(B) →	(A): 24 _H
			(D): 54 _H
			Carry: 1
			79 _H

Comments The instruction is generally used in 16-bit addition or multi-byte number; the carry generated by bit D₇ is added to bit D₀ of the next addition. This instruction should not be used to account for carries generated in summing 8-bit numbers.

ADC A, (HL) : ADD THE CONTENTS OF MEMORY AND CARRY TO
ACCUMULATOR

ADC A, (IX + d):

ADC A, (IY + d):

Opcode	Operand	Bytes	MC /T-States	Hex Codes
ADC	A, (HL)	1	2 /7(4,3)	8E
ADC	A, (IX + d)	3	5 /19(4,4,3,5,3)	DD 8E d
	A, (IY + d)			FD 8E d

Description The contents of memory specified by the operand (HL, IX + d, or IY + d) and the carry flag are added to the contents of the accumulator.

	S	Z		H		P/V	N	C
Flags	✓	✓		✓		✓	0	✓

ADC HL, rp: ADD REGISTER PAIR TO HL WITH CARRY

Opcode	Operand	Bytes	MC /T-States	Hex Codes
ADC	HL, rp	2	2 /15(4,4,4,3)	BC DE HL SP ED 4A 5A 6A 7A

Description The contents of the operand (BC, DE, HL, or SP) and the carry flag are added to the contents of the HL register and the result is stored in the HL register.

	S	Z		H		P/V	N	C
Flags	✓	✓		?		✓	0	✓

Example The HL register contains 8200_H, the DE register contains F850_H, and the carry flag CY is set. Add the contents of HL and DE with carry.

Mnemonics: ADC HL, DE Hex Code: ED 5A

Addition with Carry				
(DE):	1111	1000	0101	0000 (F850 _H)
(HL):	1000	0010	0000	0000 (8200 _H)
CY :				1
<hr/>				
	1/0111	1010	0101	0001 (7A51 _H)

Register Contents After Instruction

		S	Z	H	V	N	C	
A	X	0	0	0	1	0	1	F
D	F8			5				E
H	7A			5				L

ADD A, r: ADD REGISTER TO ACCUMULATOR

Opcode	Operand	Bytes	MC /T-States	Hex Codes					
ADD	A, r	1	1 /4	A	B	C	D	E	H L
				87	80	81	82	83	84 85

Description The contents of the register are added to the contents of the accumulator, and the result is stored in the accumulator.

	S	Z		H		P/V	N	C
Flags	✓	✓		✓		✓	0	✓

Example Register B has 51_H and the accumulator has 47_H. Add (B) to (A).

Mnemonics: ADD A, B Hex Code: 80

Addition				Register Contents After Execution					
					S	Z	H	V	N C
(B)	0101	0001	(51 _H)	A	98	1	0	0	0
(A)	0100	0111	(47 _H)						
(A)	1001	1000	(98 _H)	B	51		X		

ADD A, 8-BIT: ADD 8-BIT TO ACCUMULATOR

Opcode	Operand	Bytes	MC /T-States	Hex Code
ADD	8-Bit	2	2 /7(4,3)	C6 8-Bit

Description The operand byte (8-bit data) is added to the contents of the accumulator, and the result is placed in the accumulator.

	S	Z		H		P/V	N	C
Flags	✓	✓		✓		✓	0	✓

Example The accumulator contains 4A_H. Add the data byte 59_H to the contents of the accumulator.

Mnemonics: ADD A, 59H Hex Codes: C6 59

Addition				Register Contents After Execution					
					S	Z	H	V	N C
(A)	0100	1010	(4A _H)	A	A3	1	0	1	1
8-bit	0101	1001	(59 _H)						
	1010	0011	(A3 _H)						

	S	Z		H		P/V	N	C
Flags				✓			0	✓

C = 1 if bit D₁₅ generates carry; otherwise it is reset.
H = 1 if bit D₁₁ generates carry; otherwise it is reset.

Example The HL register contains 2900_H and the DE register contains F895_H. Add (HL) and (DE).

Mnemonics: ADD HL, DE Hex Code: 19

Addition				Register Contents After Instruction				
(HL):	0010	1001	0000 0000	(2900 _H)	D	F8	95	E
(DE):	1111	1000	1001 0101	(F895 _H)				
(HL):	1/0010	0001	1001 0101	(2195 _H)	H	21	95	L
CY = 1, H = 1								

ADD IX, rp: ADD REGISTER PAIR TO INDEX REGISTER

ADD IY, rp:

Opcode	Operand	Bytes	MC /T-States	Hex Codes				
ADD	IX, rp	2	4 /15(4,4,4,3)	BC	DE	IX/IY	SP	
				IX:	DD	09	19	29 39
				IY:	FD	09	19	29 39

Description The contents of the specified register pair rp are added to the contents of the index register and the result is placed in the index register.

- 1. This is a 2-byte instruction. The first byte specifies the index register (IX or IY), and the second byte specifies the register pair to be added to the index register.
- 2. This instruction cannot add (HL) to an index register or add (IX) and (IY). If the second byte is 29_H, the contents of the index register specified adds to its own contents.

	S	Z		H		P/V	N	C
Flags				?			0	✓

AND r: LOGICALLY AND REGISTER WITH ACCUMULATOR

Opcode	Operand	Bytes	MC /T-States	Hex Codes							
AND	r	1	1 /4	A	B	C	D	E	H	L	
				A7	A0	A1	A2	A3	A4	A5	

Description The contents of the specified register are ANDed with the contents of the accumulator and the result is placed in the accumulator.

	S	Z		H		P/V	N	C
Flags	✓	✓		1		✓	0	0

Example The contents of the accumulator and register B are 54_H and 82_H respectively. Logically AND (B) with (A) and show the flags and the contents of each register after ANDing.

Mnemonics: AND B Hex Code: A0

Logical AND		Register Contents After Instruction			
(A)	1 0 0 0 0 0 1 0 (82 _H)	S Z H PNC			
(B)	0 1 0 1 0 1 0 0 (54 _H)				
(A)	0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 (00 _H)	A	00	0 1 1 1 0 0	F
		B	54	X	C

AND 8-BIT: LOGICALLY AND 8-BIT WITH ACCUMULATOR

Opcode	Operand	Bytes	MC /T-States	Hex Codes
AND	8-Bit	2	2 /7(4,3)	E6 8-Bit

Description The contents of the operand (8-bit data) are logically ANDed with the contents of the accumulator and the result is placed in the accumulator.

	S	Z		H		P/V	N	C
Flags	✓	✓		1		✓	0	0

Example The accumulator contains A3_H. AND byte 97_H with (A).

Mnemonics: AND 97H Hex Code: E6 97

Logical AND		Register Contents After Instruction			
(A)	:1 0 1 0 0 0 1 1 (A3 _H)	S Z H PNC			
(Data):	1 0 0 1 0 1 1 1 (97 _H)				
(A)	:1 0 0 0 0 0 1 1 (83 _H)	A	83	1 0 0 0 0 0	F

AND (HL) : LOGICALLY AND CONTENTS OF MEMORY WITH ACCUMULATOR

AND (IX + d):

AND (IY + d):

Opcode	Operand	Bytes	MC /T-States	Hex Codes
AND	(HL)	1	2 /7(4,3)	A6
AND	(IX + d)	3	5 /19	DD A6 d
	(IY + d)		(4,4,3,5,3)	FD A6 d

Description The contents of memory are ANDed with the contents of the accumulator. The memory address is specified by the contents of the HL register or an index register with a displacement byte d.

	S	Z		H		P/V	N	C
Flags	✓	✓		1		✓	0	0

Example Write mnemonics to AND the contents of memory location 2070_H with the contents of the accumulator, assuming index register IY contains address 2000_H.

Mnemonics: AND (IY + 70H) Hex Code: FD A6 70

BIT b, r: TEST BIT IN REGISTER

Opcode	Operand	Bytes	MC /T-States	Hex Codes							
BIT	b, r	2	2 /8(4,4)	Source Register							
	(Bit)			A	B	C	D	E	H	L	
CB (7)				7F	78	79	7A	7B	7C	7D	
CB (6)				77	70	71	72	73	74	75	
CB (5)				6F	68	69	6A	6B	6C	6D	
CB (4)				67	60	61	62	63	64	65	
CB (3)				5F	58	59	5A	5B	5C	5D	
CB (2)				57	50	51	52	53	54	55	
CB (1)				4F	48	49	4A	4B	4C	4D	
CB (0)				47	40	41	42	43	44	45	

Description This instruction tests the specified bit in a given register r and sets the Z flag if bit is zero; otherwise, Z flag is reset. The register r can be any one of the registers: A, B, C, D, E, H, L.

	S	Z		H		P/V	N	C
Flags	?	✓				?	0	

Example Register B has 1000 0111(87_H). Test bit D₃.

Mnemonics: BIT 3, B Hex Code: CB 58

This instruction tests bit D₃ and sets the Z flag because D₃ = 0.

BIT b, (HL) : TEST BIT IN MEMORY LOCATION
BIT b, (IX + d):
BIT b, (IY + d):

Opcode	Operand	Bytes	MC /T-States	Hex Codes
			(BIT) 7 6 5 4 3 2 1 0	
BIT	b, (HL)	2	3 /12(4,4,4,)	CB [7E 76 6E 66 5E 56 4E 46]
BIT	b, (IX + d)	4	5 /20	DD CB d [7E 76 6E 66 5E 56 4E 46]
BIT	b, (IY + d)		(4,4,3,5,4)	FD CB d [7E 76 6E 66 5E 56 4E 46]

Description This instruction tests the bit in the specified memory location and sets Z flag if the bit is zero. The memory location is specified by the contents of HL or index registers (plus displacement).

	S	Z	H	P/V	N	C
Flags	?	✓	1	?	0	

CALL 16-BIT: CALL SUBROUTINE SPECIFIED BY OPERAND

Opcode	Operand	Bytes	MC /T-States	Hex Code
CALL	16-Bit	3	5 /17(4,3,4,3,3)	CD 16-bit

Description The program execution is transferred to the subroutine address specified by the operand. Before the transfer, the address of the opcode following the CALL (the contents of the program counter) is stored on the stack. The sequence of events is described in the example below. This instruction should be accompanied by one of the return (RET or conditional RET) instructions in the subroutine.

Flags No flags are affected.

Example Write the instruction to call the subroutine located at memory location 2050_H. Explain how the contents of the program counter are stored on the stack if the stack pointer is at location 2099_H.

Instruction: CALL 2050H Hex Code: CD 50 20

As an example, this machine code can be stored as follows:

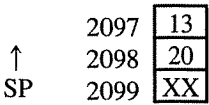
Memory Address	Hex Code	Mnemonics
2010	CD	CALL 2050H
2011	50	
2012	20	

Make a note of the difference between writing a 16-bit address as mnemonics and machine code. In the code, the low-order byte (50_H) is entered first, followed by the

high-order byte (20_H). However, in mnemonics the bytes are shown in the proper sequence. If an assembler is used to obtain the codes, it will automatically reverse the sequence of the mnemonics.

When the last machine code (20_H), located at 2012_H, is fetched by the microprocessor, the program counter holds the address 2013_H. This address is placed on the stack as follows.

- 1. Stack pointer is decremented to 2098_H and the MSB is stored.
- 2. Stack pointer is decremented to 2097_H and the LSB is stored.
- 3. Call address (2050_H) is temporarily stored in internal registers and placed on the bus for the fetch cycle.



CALL cc, 16-BIT: CALL SUBROUTINE IF CONDITION IS TRUE

Opcode	Operand	Bytes	MC /T-States
CALL	cc, 16-Bit	3	5 /17(4,3,4,3,3); If condition is true 3 /10(4,3,3) ; If condition is false

Condition Flags	NZ	Z	NC	C	PO	PE	P	M
Hex Codes	C4	CC	D4	DC	E4	EC	F4	FC

Description The program execution is transferred to the subroutine address specified by the 16-bit of the operand if the flag condition is true. If the condition is false, the program continues without calling the subroutine.

Flags No flags are affected.

Example Write two conditional Call instructions: one with Carry set (C) and the other with Zero flag not set (NZ).

Instructions:	1) CALL C, 2050H	Hex Codes:	DC	50	20
	2) CALL NZ, 2070H		C4	70	20

CCF: COMPLEMENT CARRY FLAG

Opcode	Operand	Bytes	MC /T-States	Hex Code
CCF		1	1 /4	3F

Description The Carry flag is complemented.

Flags	S	Z	H	P/V	N	C
			?		0	✓

CP r : COMPARE REGISTER WITH ACCUMULATOR
CP 8-Bit: COMPARE 8-BIT DATA WITH ACCUMULATOR

Opcode	Operand	Bytes	MC /T-States	Hex Codes					
CP	r	1	1 /4	A	B	C	D	E	H L
				BF	B8	B9	BA	BB	BC BD
CP	8-bit	2	2 /7(4,3)	FE 8-bit					

Description The operand is compared with the accumulator by subtracting the contents of the operand from the contents of the accumulator. None of the contents are altered and the comparison is shown by setting the flags as follows:

- ☐ If (A) < (r /8-bit): Carry flag is set and Zero flag is reset.
- ☐ If (A) = (r /8-bit): Zero flag is set and Carry flag is reset.
- ☐ If (A) > (r /8-bit): Carry and Zero flags are reset.

Flags In addition to C and Z, the other flags are also modified to reflect the result of the operation.

S	Z		H		P/V	N	C
✓	✓		✓		✓	1	✓

Example Register B contains data byte 62_H and the accumulator contains data byte 57_H. Compare (B) with (A).

Mnemonics: CP B Hex Code: B8

Register Contents Before Instruction				Register Contents After Instruction			
				SZ H VNC			
A	57	X	X	A	57	1	0
B	62	X	X	B	62	X	X

- ☐ No contents are changed.
- ☐ Carry flag is set because (A) < (B).
- ☐ Other flags are also modified as shown.

CP (HL) : COMPARE MEMORY CONTENTS WITH ACCUMULATOR

CP (IX + d):
CP (IY + d):

Opcode	Operand	Bytes	MC /T-States	Hex Codes		
CP	(HL)	1	2 /7(4,3)	BE		
CP	(IX + d)	3	5 /19(4,4,3,5,3)	DD	BE	8-bit
CP	(IY + d)			FD	BE	8-bit

Description The memory is compared with the accumulator by subtracting the contents of the memory from the contents of the accumulator. None of the contents are altered and the comparison is shown by setting the flags as follows. The memory address is specified by the contents of the HL register or index register.

- ☐ If (A) < (M): Carry flag is set and Zero flag is reset.
- ☐ If (A) = (M): Zero flag is set and Carry flag is reset.
- ☐ If (A) > (M): Carry and Zero flags are reset.

Flags In addition to CY and Z, the other flags are also modified to reflect the result of the operation.

S	Z		H		P/V	N	C
✓	✓		✓		✓	1	✓

Example The memory location 2050_H contains 64_H, the accumulator contains 64_H, and the HL register holds the address 2050_H. Write the instruction to compare the contents of the accumulator with the contents of the memory location 2050H and show the status of the flags.

Mnemonics: CP (HL) Hex Code: BE

Register Contents Before Instruction				Memory Contents		Register Contents After Instruction					
						S Z H VNC					
A	64	X	X	F	204F	XX	A	64	0 1 , 0 , 0 1 0	F	
H	20		50	L	2050	64	H	20		50	L

- ☐ No contents are changed.
- ☐ Zero flag is set because (A) = (M).
- ☐ Other flags are also modified as shown.

**CPD: COMPARE MEMORY WITH ACCUMULATOR, AND
DECREMENT MEMORY ADDRESS AND BYTE COUNTER**

Opcode	Operand	Bytes	MC /T-States	Hex Code
CPD		2	4 /16(4,4,3,5)	ED A9

Description The contents of the memory location addressed by the HL register are compared with the contents of the accumulator, and the flags are set as follows without altering the contents. The HL and BC registers are decremented. Register BC can be used as a byte counter.

- If (A) < (M): Sign flag is set and Zero flag is reset.
- If (A) = (M): Zero flag is set and Sign flag is reset.
- If (A) > (M): Sign and Zero flags are reset.

Flags In addition to S and Z, the other flags are also modified to reflect the result of the operation.

S	Z		H		P/V	N	C
✓	✓		✓		0/1	1	

P/V = 0 if BC = 0
= 1 if BC ≠ 0

CPDR: COMPARE MEMORY WITH ACCUMULATOR, AND DECREMENT MEMORY ADDRESS AND BYTE COUNTER UNTIL CONTENTS ARE EQUAL OR COUNTER IS ZERO

Opcode	Bytes	MC /T-States	Hex Code
CPDR	2	5 /21(4,4,3,5,5) if BC ≠ 0 and (A) ≠ (HL) 4 /16(4,4,3,5) if BC = 0 or (A) = (HL)	ED B9

Description The contents of the memory location addressed by the HL register are compared with the contents of the accumulator, and HL and BC registers are decremented. The instruction is repeated until either BC = 0 or (A) = (HL). Register BC is used as a byte counter.

S	Z		H		P/V	N	C
✓	✓		✓		0/1	1	

Z = 1 if (A) = (HL) P/V = 0 if BC = 0
= 1 if BC ≠ 0

JP NZ, B40

Example The contents of the registers are (A) = 9FH, BC = 000FH, and (HL) = 2099H. The memory location 2090H has the byte 9F. Specify the contents of the registers after the execution of the instruction CPDR.

Instruction: CPDR Hex Code: ED B9

The instruction begins its search from the location 2099H, and it will be repeated ten times until the memory location 2090H, where (A) = (HL). The contents of the registers at the end of the search will be as follows:

	S	Z	H	P/V	N	C
A			9F	0	1	1
B			00		0	5
H			20		8	F

**CPI: COMPARE MEMORY WITH ACCUMULATOR,
INCREMENT MEMORY ADDRESS, AND DECREMENT BYTE
COUNTER**

Opcode	Operand	Bytes	MC /T-States	Hex Code
CPI		2	4 /16(4,4,3,5)	ED A1

Description The contents of the memory location addressed by the HL register are compared with the contents of the accumulator, and the flags are set as follows without altering the contents. The HL register is incremented and the BC register is decremented. Register BC can be used as a byte counter.

- If (A) < (M): Sign flag is set and Zero flag is reset.
- If (A) = (M): Zero flag is set and Sign flag is reset.
- If (A) > (M): Sign and Zero flags are reset.

Flags In addition to S and Z, the other flags are also modified to reflect the result of the operation.

S	Z		H		P/V	N	C
✓	✓		✓		0/1	1	

P/V = 0 if BC = 0
= 1 if BC ≠ 0

**CPIR: COMPARE MEMORY WITH ACCUMULATOR,
INCREMENT MEMORY ADDRESS, AND DECREMENT BYTE
COUNTER UNTIL CONTENTS ARE EQUAL OR COUNTER IS
ZERO**

Opcode	Bytes	MC /T-States	Hex Code
CPIR	2	5 /21(4,4,3,5,5) if BC ≠ 0 and (A) (HL) 4 /16(4,4,3,5) if BC = 0 or (A) = (HL)	ED B1

Description The contents of the memory location addressed by the HL register are compared with the contents of the accumulator, and the HL register is incremented and the BC register decremented. The instruction is repeated until either BC = 0 or (A) = (HL). Register BC is used as a byte counter.

S	Z		H		P/V	N	C
✓	✓		✓		0/1	1	

Flags

Z = 1 if (A) = (HL) P/V = 0 if BC = 0
= 1 if BC ≠ 0

Example The contents of the registers are (A) = 9F_H, BC = 000F_H, and (HL) = 2090_H. None of the memory locations between 2090_H and 209F_H has the byte 9F. Specify the contents of the registers after the execution of the instruction CPIR.

Instruction: CPIR Hex Code: ED B1

The instruction begins its search from the location 2090_H, and it will be repeated fifteen times until the byte counter BC is zero. The contents of the registers at the end of the search will be as follows:

		S	Z	H	P	N	C	
A	9F	0				0	1	F
B	00			0	0			C
H	20			A	0			L

S and H flags will be determined by the last comparison.

CPL: COMPLEMENT ACCUMULATOR

Opcode	Operand	Bytes	MC /T-States	Hex Code
CPL		1	1 /4	2F

Description The contents of the accumulator are complemented (inverted or 1's complement).

Flags	S	Z	H	P/V	N	C
			1		1	

Example The accumulator has 89_H. Show the contents after the execution of the instruction CPL.

Mnemonics: CPL Hex Code: 2F

	Before Instruction		After Instruction
A	1 0 0 0 1 0 0 1 (89 _H)	A	0 1 1 1 0 1 1 0 (76 _H)

DAA: DECIMAL ADJUST ACCUMULATOR

Opcode	Operand	Bytes	MC /T-States	Hex Code
DAA		1	1 /4	27

Description If this instruction is used after an addition or subtraction of two BCD numbers, the result is adjusted for BCD values. This instruction uses the Half Carry (H) flag internally to convert the binary result into BCD values shown as follows.

After an addition of two BCD numbers

1. If the value of the low-order four bits (D_3 – D_0) in the accumulator is greater than 9 or if H flag is set, the instruction adjusts the low-order bits by adding 06 (0 1 1 0) to D_3 – D_0 .
2. If the value of the high-order bits (D_7 – D_4) is greater than 9 or if CY flag is set, the instruction adjusts the high-order bits by adding 60 (0 1 1 0) to D_7 – D_4 .

After a subtraction of two BCD numbers, the above procedure is also valid, except the instruction adds 2's complement of 06 or 60 to the respective group of digits.

	S	Z		H		P/V	N	C
Flags	✓	✓		✓		✓		✓

Example The accumulator contains 85_{BCD} and register B contains 68_{BCD} . Add the two numbers and adjust the result for the BCD value.

Mnemonics:	ADD B	Hex Code:	80
	DAA		27
(A)	1 0 0 0 0 1 0 1	(85) _{BCD}	
(B)	+0 1 1 0 1 0 0 0	(68) _{BCD}	
	1 1 1 0 1 1 0 1	(153) _{BCD}	

The binary sum is ED_H , and the values of both low- and high-order four bits are higher than 9 (1 0 0 1). The instruction adds 6 (0 1 1 0) to both groups as shown below:

(A)	1 1 1 0 1 1 0 1	(ED)
	+0 1 1 0 0 1 1 0	(66)
	1 0 1 0 1 0 0 1 1	1 53 _{BCD}
	CY	

The accumulator contains 53 and the CY flag is set to indicate that the sum is larger than eight bits. The program should keep track of the carry; otherwise it may be altered by subsequent instructions.

Example The accumulator contains 97_{BCD} and register B contains 39_{BCD} . Subtract (B) from (A) and adjust the result for decimal numbers.

Mnemonics:	SUB B	Hex Codes:	90
	DAA		27

The subtraction is performed in 2's complement as follows:

(A)	1 0 0 1 0 1 1 1	97
+ (B)	1 1 0 0 0 1 1 1	2's Comp. (39)
	1 0 1 0 1 1 1 0	→ 5E _H

After the subtraction, the low-order byte is larger than (1 0 0 1). The instruction adjusts

the result by adding 2's complement of 06 (1 1 1 1 1 0 1 0) as shown.

$$\begin{array}{r}
 \text{(A)} \quad 0 \ 1 \ 0 \ 1 \ 1 \ 1 \ 1 \ 0 \quad 5\text{E} \\
 + \quad 1 \ 1 \ 1 \ 1 \ 1 \ 0 \ 1 \ 0 \quad 2\text{'s Comp. (06)} \\
 \hline
 1 \ 0 \ 1 \ 0 \ 1 \ 1 \ 0 \ 0 \ 0 \rightarrow 58_{\text{BCD}}
 \end{array}$$

DEC r : DECREMENT REGISTER CONTENTS

DEC (HL) : DECREMENT MEMORY CONTENTS

DEC (IX + d):

DEC (IY + d):

Opcode	Operand	Bytes	MC /T-States	Hex Codes							
				A	B	C	D	E	H	L	
DEC	r	1	1 /4	3D	05	0D	15	1D	25	2D	
DEC	(HL)	1	3 /11(4,4,3)					35			
DEC	(IX + d)	3	6 /23(4,4,3,5,4,3)	DD	35			d			
DEC	(IY + d)			FD	35			d			

Description The contents of the designated register/memory location are decremented by 1. If the operand is a memory location, it is specified by the contents of HL or index registers.

	S	Z		H		P/V	N	C
Flags	✓	✓		✓		✓	1	

DEC rp: DECREMENT REGISTER PAIR OR INDEX REGISTER

DEC rx:

Opcode	Operand	Bytes	MC /T-States	Hex Codes			
				BC	DE	HL	SP
DEC	rp	1	1 /6	0B	1B	2B	3B
DEC	IX	2	2 /10(4,6)	DD	2B		
DEC	IY			FD	2B		

Description The contents of the specified register are decremented by 1; the contents are viewed as a 16-bit number.

Flags No flags are affected.

Example Register HL contains 2000_H. Specify the contents of the entire register after the instruction DEC HL.

Mnemonics: DEC HL Hex Code: 2B

The contents of the HL register will be 1FFF_H.

DI: DISABLE INTERRUPTS

Opcode	Operand	Bytes	MC /T-States	Hex Code
DI		1	1 /4	F3

Description This instruction resets the interrupt enable flip-flops (IFF1 and IFF2) and disables maskable interrupts.

Flags No flags are affected.

DJNZ d: JUMP RELATIVE IF B IS NOT ZERO

Opcode	Operand	Bytes	MC /T-States	Hex Code
DJNZ	d	2	3 /13(5,3,5) if B≠0 2 /8(3,5) if B = 0	10 d

Description Register B is decremented, and if B≠0, the program execution is transferred to the memory location by adding displacement byte to the program counter +2.

Flags No flags are affected.

EI: ENABLE INTERRUPTS

Opcode	Operand	Bytes	MC /T-States	Hex Code
EI		1	1 /4	FB

Description This instruction sets the interrupt enable flip-flops (IFF1 and IFF2) to logic 1 and enables the maskable interrupts.

Flags No flags are affected.

Comments After the system reset or the acknowledgment of an interrupt, the interrupt enable flip-flops are reset, thus disabling the interrupts. This instruction must be executed to reenable the maskable interrupts.

EX AF, AF': EXCHANGE ACCUMULATOR AND FLAGS WITH ALTERNATE ACCUMULATOR AND FLAGS

Opcode	Operand	Bytes	MC /T-States	Hex Code
EX	AF, AF'	1	1 /4	08

Description The contents of the accumulator and the flag register are exchanged with their respective alternate registers.

Flags All flags are affected.

EX DE, HL: EXCHANGE HL AND DE REGISTERS

Opcode	Operand	Bytes	MC /T-States	Hex Code
EX	DE, HL	1	1 /4	EB

Description The contents of register H are exchanged with the contents of register D, and the contents of register L are exchanged with the contents of register E.

Flags No flags are affected.

EX (SP), HL: EXCHANGE CONTENTS OF REGISTERS WITH TOP OF STACK

EX (SP), IX:

EX (SP), IY:

Opcode	Operand	Bytes	MC /T-States	Hex Code
EX	(SP), HL	1	5 /19(4,3,4,3,5)	E3
EX	(SP), IX	2	6 /23(4,4,3,4,3,5)	DD E3
EX	(SP), IY			FD E3

Description The contents of the low-order register (L or the low-order byte of an index register) are exchanged with the contents of the memory location pointed to by the stack pointer. The contents of the high-order register or the high-order byte of an index register are exchanged with the contents of the next memory (stack) location (SP + 1).

Flags No flags are affected.

Example The contents of registers and stack location are as follows:

Register Contents			Stack Contents		
H	80	FF	L	2097	32
SP	20 97			2098	A2
				2099	

After the execution of the instruction EX (SP), HL, the contents of registers and stack

locations will be as follows:

Register Contents				Stack Contents	
H	A2	32	L	2097	FF
SP	20	97		2098	80
				2099	

EXX: EXCHANGE REGISTERS WITH ALTERNATE REGISTERS

Opcode	Operand	Bytes	MC /T-States	Hex Code
EXX		1	1 /4	D9

Description The contents of the general-purpose registers BC, DE, and HL are exchanged with the contents of their respective alternate registers BC', DE' and HL'.

Flags No flags are affected.

HALT: SUSPEND OPERATIONS

Opcode	Operand	Bytes	MC /T-States	Hex Code
HALT		1	1 /4	76

Description This instruction suspends (halts) all operations, and the microprocessor waits until an interrupt or the reset is received. During the halt, the microprocessor continues to execute NOP instruction to maintain memory refresh cycles.

Flags No flags are affected.

IM 0: SET UP INTERRUPT MODE 0

Opcode	Operand	Bytes	MC /T-States	Hex Code
IM	0	2	2 /8(4,4)	ED 46

Description This instruction sets up the microprocessor in Interrupt Mode 0. In this mode, the interrupting device can insert any instruction onto the data bus to restart the MPU execution; the first byte must be inserted during the interrupt acknowledge cycle.

Flags No flags are affected.

IM 1: SET UP INTERRUPT MODE 1

Opcode	Operand	Bytes	MC /T-States	Hex Code
IM	1	2	2 /8(4,4)	ED 56

Description This instruction sets up the microprocessor in Interrupt Mode 1. In this mode, the MPU responds to an interrupt by executing the restart at location 0038_H.

Flags No flags are affected.

IM 2: SET UP INTERRUPT MODE 2

Opcode	Operand	Bytes	MC /T-States	Hex Code
IM	2	2	2 /8(4,4)	ED 5E

Description This instruction sets up the microprocessor in Interrupt Mode 2. In this mode, the MPU responds to an interrupt by executing an indirect call to the specified 16-bit address of a memory location. The low-order 8-bit address is supplied by the interrupting device, and the high-order address is supplied by the contents of the interrupt vector register I.

Flags No flags are affected.

IN A, (8-BIT): INPUT DATA TO ACCUMULATOR FROM A PORT WITH 8-BIT ADDRESS

Opcode	Operand	Bytes	MC /T-States	Hex Code
IN	8-bit	2	3 /11(4,3,4)	DB 8-bit

Description The contents of the input port specified in the operand are read and placed in the accumulator.

Flags No flags are affected.

IN r, (C): INPUT DATA TO REGISTER FROM A PORT WITH ADDRESS IN C

Opcode	Operand	Bytes	MC /T-States	Hex Codes
IN	r, (C)	2	3 /12	A B C D E H L ED 78 40 48 50 58 60 68

Description The contents of the input port with the address in register C are read and placed in the specified register.

	S	Z		H		P/V	N	C
Flags	✓	✓		✓		✓	0	

INC r: INCREMENT REGISTER

Opcode	Operand	Bytes	MC /T-States	Hex Codes						
INC	r	1	1 /4	A	B	C	D	E	H	L
				3C	04	0C	14	1C	24	2C

Description The contents of the specified register are incremented by 1.

	S	Z		H		P/V	N	C
Flags	✓	✓		✓		✓	0	

Example The accumulator contains FF_H. Specify the contents of the accumulator and the status of CY and Z flags after the INC instruction.

Mnemonics: INC A Hex Code: 3C

$$\begin{array}{r} (A) = \quad 1\ 1\ 1\ 1\ 1\ 1\ 1\ 1 \\ \quad + 0\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 1 \\ \hline (A) = 1\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 0 \end{array}$$

After the byte FF has been incremented, the sum should be 00 with carry. However, the INC instruction does not set the CY flag even though it affects all other flags. If ADD instruction is used, the accumulator contents will be 00 with the CY flag set.

INC rp: INCREMENT REGISTER PAIR OR INDEX REGISTER

INC rx:

Opcode	Operand	Bytes	MC /T-States	Hex Codes			
				BC	DE	HL	SP
INC	rp	1	1 /6	03	13	23	33
INC	IX	2	2 /10(4,6)	DD	23		
INC	IY			FD	23		

Description The contents of the specified register pair or the index register are incremented by 1.

Flags No flags are affected.

INC (HL): INCREMENT MEMORY CONTENTS

INC (IX + d):

INC (IY + d):

Opcode	Operand	Bytes	MC /T-States	Hex Codes	
INC	(HL)	1	3 /11(4,4,3)		34
INC	(IX + d)	3	6 /23(4,4,3,5,4,3)	DD	34 d
INC	(IY + d)			FD	34 d

Description The contents of the specified memory are incremented by 1. The memory location is specified either by the contents of HL register or the contents of an index register plus the displacement.

	S	Z		H		P/V	N	C
Flags	✓	✓		✓		✓	0	

Example The memory register at 2040_H contains the byte FF_H. The index register IX holds the address 2050_H. Write the instruction to increment the contents of the memory register and specify the status of the flags.

Mnemonics: INC (IX + F0H) Hex Codes: DD 34 F0

The displacement is calculated by taking 2's complement of 10_H, the difference between 2050_H and 2040_H. After the execution of the instruction, the memory contents will be 00. The flag status will be as follows:

	S	Z		H		V	N	C
	0	1		1		0	0	

Note: This instruction does not affect the C flag.

IND: INPUT DATA TO MEMORY AND DECREMENT BYTE COUNTER AND MEMORY POINTER

Opcode	Operand	Bytes	MC /T-States	Hex Code
IND		2	4 /16(4,5,3,4)	ED AA

Description This instruction reads the input port specified by the contents of register C, and the reading is stored in the memory location specified by the contents of register HL. Register B is used as a byte counter, and both B and HL are decremented by one.

	S	Z		H		P/V	N	C
Flags	?	0/1		?		?	1	

Z = 1 if B = 0
= 0 if B ≠ 0

INDR: INPUT DATA TO MEMORY AND DECREMENT MEMORY POINTER AND BYTE COUNTER UNTIL BYTE COUNTER IS ZERO

Opcode	Operand	Bytes	MC /T-States	Hex Code
INDR		2	5 /21(4,5,3,4,5) if B ≠ 0 4 /16(4,5,3,4) if B = 0	ED BA

Description This instruction reads the input port specified by the contents of register C, and the reading is stored in the memory location specified by the contents of register HL. Register B is used as a byte counter, both B and HL are decremented by one, and the instruction is repeated until B = 0.

Flags

S	Z		H		P/V	N	C
?	1		?		?	1	

Example The contents of the registers are HL = 2070_H and BC = 0401_H. Show the contents of memory locations and registers after the execution of the instruction INDR.

Instruction: INDR Hex Code: ED BA

The instruction reads the data at the input port 01_H four times until register B = 0 and stores the data in memory starting from 2070_H. The contents of registers and the memory locations are as follows:

Register Contents Before Instruction				Memory Contents			Register Contents After Instruction		
B		C					B		C
04	01		206C				00	01	
20	70	L	206D	BYTE4			20	6C	L
			206E	BYTE3					
			206F	BYTE2					
			2070	BYTE1					

INI: INPUT DATA TO MEMORY, DECREMENT BYTE COUNTER, AND INCREMENT MEMORY POINTER

Opcode	Operand	Bytes	MC /T-States	Hex Code
INI		2	4 /16(4,5,3,4)	ED A2

Description This instruction reads the input port specified by the contents of register C, and the reading is stored in the memory location specified by the contents of register HL. The contents of register B are decremented and those of register HL are incremented by one.

Flags

S	Z		H		P/V	N	C
?	0/1		?		?	1	

Z = 1 if B = 0
= 0 if B≠ 0

**INIR: INPUT DATA TO MEMORY, INCREMENT MEMORY
POINTER, AND DECREMENT BYTE COUNTER UNTIL BYTE
COUNTER IS ZERO**

Opcode	Operand	Bytes	MC /T-States	Hex Code
INIR		2	5 /21(4,5,3,4,5) if B≠0 4 /16(4,5,3,4) if B = 0	ED B2

Description This instruction reads the input port specified by the contents of register C, and the reading is stored in the memory location specified by the contents of register HL. The contents of register B are decremented and those of register HL are incremented by one. Register B is used as a byte counter, and the instruction is repeated until B = 0.

	S	Z		H		P/V	N	C
Flags	?	1		?		?	1	

Example The contents of the registers are HL = 2070_H and BC = 0407_H. Show the contents of memory locations and registers after the execution of the instruction INIR.

Instruction: INIR Hex Code: ED B2

The instruction reads the data at the input port 07_H four times until register B = 0 and stores the data in memory starting from 2070_H. The contents of registers and the memory locations are as follows:

Register Contents Before Instruction			Memory Contents	Register Contents After Instruction		
B	04	07		B	00	07
H	20	70		H	20	74

JP 16-BIT: JUMP TO 16-BIT ADDRESS

Opcode	Operand	Bytes	MC /T-States	Hex Code
JP	16-Bit	3	3 /10(4,3,3)	C3 16-bit

Description The program execution is transferred to the memory location specified by the 16-bit address. This is a 3-byte instruction; the second byte specifies the low-order byte and the third byte specifies the high-order byte of the 16-bit address.

Flags No flags are affected.

Example Write the instruction at location 2010_H to transfer the program sequence to location 2050_H.

Instruction: JP 2050H Hex Code: C3 50 20

This machine code can be stored as follows:

Memory Address	Hex Code	Mnemonics
2010	C3	JP 2050H
2011	50	
2012	20	

Make a note of the difference between writing a 16-bit address as mnemonics and machine code. In the code, the low-order byte (50) is entered first, followed by the high-order byte (20). However, in mnemonics the bytes are shown in the proper sequence. If an assembler is used to obtain the codes, it will automatically reverse the sequence of the machine codes.

JP cc, 16-BIT: JUMP TO 16-BIT ADDRESS IF CONDITION IS TRUE

Opcode	Operand	Bytes	MC /T-States	Hex Codes
JP	cc, 16-Bit	3	3 /10	NZ Z NC C P0 PE P M C2 CA D2 DA E2 EA F2 FA

Description The program execution is transferred to the address specified by the 16-bit of the operand if the flag condition is true. If the condition is false, the program continues to the next memory location.

Flags No flags are affected.

Example Write two conditional Jump instructions: one with Carry set (C) and the other when the Zero flag is not set (NZ).

Instructions: 1) JP C, 2050H Hex Codes: DA 50 20
2) JP NZ, 2070H C2 70 20

JP (HL): JUMP TO MEMORY LOCATION SPECIFIED BY HL OR INDEX REGISTERS

JP (IX):

JP (IY):

Opcode	Operand	Bytes	MC /T-States	Hex Codes
JP	(HL)	1	1 /4	E9
JP	(IX)	2	2 /8(4,4)	DD E9
JP	(IY)			FD E9

Description The program execution is transferred to the memory location specified by the contents of the HL register or the index register.

Flags No flags are affected.

JR: JUMP RELATIVE EQUAL TO DISPLACEMENT

Opcode	Operand	Bytes	MC /T-States	Hex Codes	
JR	d	2	3 /12(4,3,5)	18	d

Description The program execution is transferred to the memory location specified by the sum of the present program counter and the displacement byte. The value of a displacement byte can be positive for a forward jump or in 2's complement for a backward jump. The total range of the jump is -126 to $+129$; this accounts for the additional two memory locations due to the instruction Jump Relative.

Flags No flags are affected.

Example Write the instruction at location 2010 to transfer the program sequence to location 2050_H.

Instruction: JR 3EH Hex Code: 18 3E

This machine code can be stored as follows:

Memory Address	Hex Code	Mnemonics
2010	18	JR 3EH
2011	3E	
2012		

When the instruction Jump Relative located at 2010_H is executed, the program counter contains 2012_H. By adding 3E_H to 2012_H, the program counter contains 2050_H; thus, the program is transferred to the location 2050_H. Therefore, to calculate the displacement byte for a forward jump, the value obtained by subtracting the instruction location (2010_H) from the jump location (2050_H) should be reduced by two. On the other hand, two should be added to the displacement byte in 2's complement for a backward jump as shown in the following example.

Example Write the instruction at location 2010_H to transfer the program sequence to location 2000_H.

Instruction: JR EEH Hex Code: 18 EE

This machine code can be stored as follows:

Memory Address	Hex Code	Mnemonics
2010	18	JR EEH
2011	EE	
2012		

The displacement byte is calculated as follows:

$$\begin{aligned}
 (\text{PC}) &= 2\ 0\ 1\ 2_{\text{H}} \\
 \text{Jump} &= 2\ 0\ 0\ 0_{\text{H}} \\
 \text{Location} &= \underline{\hspace{2cm}} \\
 &\quad 1\ 2_{\text{H}} = 0\ 0\ 0\ 1\ 0\ 0\ 1\ 0 \\
 \text{2's Complement of } 12_{\text{H}} &= 1\ 1\ 1\ 0\ 1\ 1\ 1\ 0 \quad (\text{EE}_{\text{H}})
 \end{aligned}$$

JR cc, d: JUMP RELATIVE EQUAL TO DISPLACEMENT IF FLAG CONDITION IS TRUE

Opcode	Operand	Bytes	MC /T-States	Hex Codes
JR	cc, d	2	3 /12(4,3,5) If condition is true 2 /7(4,3) If condition is false	NZ Z NC C 20 28 30 38

Description The program execution is transferred to the memory location specified by the sum of the present program counter and the displacement byte if the condition is true. The value of a displacement byte can be positive for a forward jump or in 2's complement for a backward jump. The total range of the jump is -126 to $+129$; this accounts for the additional two memory locations due to the instruction Jump Relative.

Note: There are no conditional relative jump instructions based on other flags.

Flags No flags are affected.

Example Write the instruction at location 2010_{H} to transfer the program sequence to location 2000_{H} if Carry is set.

Instruction: JR C, EEH Hex Code: 38 EE

This machine code can be stored as follows:

Memory Address	Hex Code	Mnemonics
2010	38	JR C, EEH
2011	EE	
2012		

For the calculation of the displacement byte, see the example in the previous instruction.

LD r_d, r_s : COPY SOURCE REGISTER INTO DESTINATION REGISTER

Opcode	Operand	Bytes	MC /T-States	Hex Codes
LD	r_d, r_s	1	1 /4	Source Register
			A B C D E H L	
			A 7F 78 79 7A 7B 7C 7D	
			B 47 40 41 42 43 44 45	
	Destination		C 4F 48 49 4A 4B 4C 4D	
	Register		D 57 50 51 52 53 54 55	
			E 5F 58 59 5A 5B 5C 5D	
			H 67 60 61 62 63 64 65	
			L 6F 68 69 6A 6B 6C 6D	

Description The contents of the source register r_s are copied into the destination register r_d . The letters r_s and r_d represent any of the registers A, B, C, D, E, H, and L.

Flags No flags are affected.

Example Register B contains 72_H and register C contains 9F_H. Transfer the contents of register B to register C.

Mnemonics: LD C, B Hex Code: 48

Note that the first operand C specifies the destination register and the second operand B specifies the source register.

Register Contents Before Instruction			Register Contents After Instruction		
B	72	9F C	B	72	72 C

LD r, 8-BIT: LOAD REGISTER r WITH 8-BIT DATA

Opcode	Operand	Bytes	MC /T-States	Hex Codes
LD	$r, 8\text{-Bit}$	2	2 /7(4,3)	A B C D E H L [3E 06 0E 16 1E 26 2E] 8-bit

Description The second byte (8-bit data) is loaded into the specified register r . Register r can be any of the registers A, B, C, D, E, H, or L.

Flags No flags are affected.

Example Load 92_H into register B.

Mnemonics: LD B, 92H Hex Code: 06 92

LD r, (HL): COPY CONTENTS OF MEMORY INTO REGISTER
LD r, (IX + d):
LD r, (IY + d):

Opcode	Operand	Bytes	MC /T-States	Hex Codes
LD	r, (HL)	1	2 /7(4,3)	A B C D E H L 7E 46 4E 56 5E 66 6E
LD	r, (IX + d)	3	5 /19	DD [7E 46 4E 56 5E 66 6E] d
	r, (IY + d)		(4,4,3,5,3)	FD [7E 46 4E 56 5E 66 6E] d

Description The contents of the memory location indicated by the HL register or by one of the index registers (plus displacement) is copied into the specified register r. Register r can be any one of the registers A, B, C, D, E, H, or L.

Flags No flags are affected.

Example Assume the contents of register HL are 20_H and 50_H, respectively. The byte 9F_H is stored in memory location 2050_H. Copy the contents of the memory location 2050_H into register D.

Mnemonics: LD D, (HL) Hex Code: 56

Register Contents Before Instruction			Memory Contents	Register Contents After Instruction		
D		E		D		E
	XX	XX			9F	XX
H	20	50	2050	H	20	50

Example Assume the index register IX has 2040_H. Copy the contents of memory location 2050_H into register D as in the previous example.

Mnemonics: LD D, (IX + 10H) Hex Code: DD 56 10

This instruction adds the displacement byte 10_H to the contents of the index register (2040_H) and points to location 2050_H. Then it copies the contents of 2050_H into register D.

LD (HL), r : COPY CONTENTS OF REGISTER INTO MEMORY
LD (IX + d), r:
LD (IY + d), r:

Opcode	Operand	Bytes	MC /T-States	Hex Codes
				A B C D E H L
LD	(HL), r	1	2 /7(4,3)	77 70 71 72 73 74 75
LD	(IX + d), r	3	5 /19	DD [77 70 71 72 73 74 75] d
	(IY + d), r		(4,4,3,5,3)	FD [77 70 71 72 73 74 75] d

Description The contents of register r are copied into the memory location specified by either the contents of the HL register pair or one of the index registers (plus displacement). Register r represents any one of the registers A, B, C, D, E, H, or L.

Flags No flags are affected.

Example Register B contains 98_H and the register pair HL contains 2065_H. Copy the contents of register B into memory location 2065_H.

Mnemonics: LD (HL), B Hex Code: 70

This instruction copies the contents of register B (98H) into memory location 2065H.

LD (HL), 8-BIT : LOAD 8-BIT INTO MEMORY
LD (IX + d), 8-BIT:
LD (IY + d), 8-BIT:

Opcode	Operand	Bytes	MC /T-States	Hex Codes
LD	(HL), 8-Bit	2	3 /10(4,3,3)	36 8-bit
LD	(IX + d), 8-Bit	4	5 /19(4,4,3,5,3)	DD 36 d 8-bit
	(IY + d), 8-Bit			FD 36 d 8-bit

Description The 8-bit data are loaded into the specified memory location. The address of the memory location is specified by the contents of register pair HL or by one of the index registers (plus displacement).

Flags No flags are affected.

Example Assume the contents of register pair HL are 20_H and 50_H, respectively. Load the byte 97_H into memory location 2050_H.

Mnemonics: LD (HL), 97H Hex Code: 36 97

This instruction loads 97_H into memory location 2050_H.

Example Explain the data transfer in the following instruction if the index register IY holds the contents 2060_H.

Instruction: LD (IY + 0FH), 00H Hex Code: FD 36 0F 00

This instruction adds the displacement byte 0F_H to the contents of the index register IY (2060_H) and specifies the memory location 206F_H, then clears that location by loading 00_H.

LD A, (16-BIT): COPY MEMORY CONTENTS INTO ACCUMULATOR

LD A, (BC) :

LD A, (DE) :

Opcode	Operand	Bytes	MC /T-States	Hex Codes
LD	A, (16-Bit)	3	4 /13(4,3,3,3)	3A 16-bit
LD	A, (BC)	1	2 /7(4,3)	0A
	A, (DE)			1A

Description The contents of the specified memory location are copied into the accumulator. The memory location is specified either directly by 16-bit address or by the contents of BC or DE registers.

Flags No flags are affected.

Example The register BC contains 2050_H and the byte F8_H is stored in memory location 2050_H. Copy the byte into the accumulator.

Mnemonics: LD A, (BC) Hex Code: 0A

This instruction copies the contents, F8_H, of the memory location 2050_H into the accumulator.

Example Write the instruction to copy the byte from the memory location 2050_H into the accumulator.

Instruction: LD A, (2050H) Hex Code: 3A 50 20

Note that the 16-bit address is entered in the reversed order: the low-order byte (50_H) first, followed by the high-order byte (20_H).

LD (16-BIT), A: COPY ACCUMULATOR CONTENTS INTO MEMORY

LD (BC), A :

LD (DE), A :

Opcode	Operand	Bytes	MC /T-States	Hex Codes
LD	(16-Bit), A	3	4 /13(4,3,3,3)	32 16-bit
LD	(BC), A	1	2 /7(4,3)	02
LD	(DE),A			12

Description The contents of the accumulator are copied into the specified memory location. The memory location is specified either directly by a 16-bit address or by the contents of BC or DE registers.

Flags No flags are affected.

Example Write instructions to copy the contents of the accumulator into memory location 2050_H by using the direct addressing and the indirect addressing methods.

Direct Addressing: LD (2050H), A Hex Code: 32 50 20

Indirect : To use the DE pair as a memory pointer, the address 2050_H
Addressing : must be loaded into the DE register. Then the following instruction can be used:

LD (DE), A Hex Code: 12

LD A, I: COPY INTERRUPT VECTOR REGISTER INTO ACCUMULATOR

LD A, R: COPY MEMORY REFRESH REGISTER INTO ACCUMULATOR

Opcode	Operand	Bytes	MC /T-States	Hex Codes
LD	A, I	2	2 /9(4,5)	ED 57
LD	A, R	2	2 /9(4,5)	ED 5F

Description The first instruction copies the contents of the interrupt vector register and the second instruction copies the contents of the memory refresh register into the accumulator.

	S	Z		H		P/V	N	C
Flags	✓	✓		0		0/1	0	

P/V = IFF2 Flag

LD I, A: COPY ACCUMULATOR INTO INTERRUPT VECTOR REGISTER

LD R, A: COPY ACCUMULATOR INTO MEMORY REFRESH REGISTER

Opcode	Operand	Bytes	MC /T-States	Hex Codes
LD	I, A	2	2 /9(4,5)	ED 47
LD	R, A	2	2 /9(4,5)	ED 4F

Description The instructions copy the contents of the accumulator into the interrupt vector register and the memory refresh register, respectively.

Flags No flags are affected.

LD rp, 16-BIT: LOAD 16-BIT INTO REGISTER PAIR

LD IX, 16-BIT: LOAD 16-BIT INTO INDEX REGISTER

LD IY, 16-BIT:

Opcode	Operand	Bytes	MC /T-States	Hex Codes			
				BC	DE	HL	SP
LD	rp, 16-Bit	3	3 /10(4,3,3)	01	11	21	31 16-bit
LD	IX, 16-bit	4	4 /14(4,4,3,3)	DD	21	16-bit	
LD	IY, 16-bit			FD	21	16-bit	

Description 16-bit data are loaded into the specified register pair or index register. The 16-bit data are entered low-order byte first, followed by the high-order byte.

Flags No flags are affected.

Example Write instructions to load 2050_H into register BC and 4000_H into index register IY.

Instructions: LD BC, 2050H Hex Code: 01 50 20
LD IY, 4000H FD 21 00 40

Note the order of 16-bit data: low-order byte first, followed by the high-order byte.

LD rp, (16-BIT): LOAD CONTENTS OF TWO MEMORY
LD rx, (16-BIT): LOCATIONS INTO REGISTER PAIR OR INDEX
LD HL, (16-BIT): REGISTER

Opcode	Operand	Bytes	MC /T-States	Hex Codes					
					BC	DE	HL	SP	
LD	rp, (16-Bit)	4	6 /20(4,4,3,3,3,3)	ED	[4B	5B	6B	7B]	16-bit
LD	IX, (16-bit)				DD	2A	16-bit		
LD	IY, (16-bit)				FD	2A	16-bit		
LD	HL, (16-bit)	3	5 /16		2A	16-bit			

Description The instruction copies the contents of the memory location specified by the 16-bit address into low-order register and then copies the contents of the next memory location into high-order register.

Flags No flags are affected.

Example The memory locations 2050_H and 2051_H contain the data bytes 19_H and 86_H respectively. Copy the memory contents into BC and IX registers.

Instruction: LD BC, (2050H) Hex Code: ED 4B 50 20

Memory Contents		Register Contents After Instruction	
2050	19	B 86	19 C
2051	86		

Instruction: LD IX, (2050H) Hex Code: DD 2A 50 20

Memory Contents		Register Contents After Instruction	
2050	19	IX	86 19
2051	86		

LD (16-BIT), rp: LOAD CONTENTS OF REGISTER PAIR OR INDEX REGISTER INTO TWO CONSECUTIVE MEMORY LOCATIONS

LD (16-BIT), XY:

LD (16-BIT), HL:

Opcode	Operand	Bytes	MC /T-States	Hex Codes
				BC DE HL SP
LD	(16-Bit), rp	4	6 /20(4,4,3,3,3,3)	ED [43 53 63 73] 16-bit
LD	(16-bit), IX			DD 22 16-bit
LD	(16-bit), IY			FD 22 16-bit
LD	(16-bit), HL	3	5 /16	22 16-bit

Description The instruction copies the contents of the low-order register into memory location specified by the 16-bit address and copies the contents of the high-order register into the next memory location.

Flags No flags are affected.

Example The BC register contains data 408F_H. Copy the register contents into memory locations 2050_H and 2051_H.

Instruction: LD (2050H), BC Hex Code: ED 43 50 20

Register Contents Before Instruction		Memory Contents After Instruction	
B	40 8F	C	8F 40
			2050 2051

LD SP, HL: COPY HL OR INDEX REGISTER INTO STACK POINTER

LD SP, IX:

LD SP, IY:

Opcode	Operand	Bytes	MC /T-States	Hex Codes
LD	SP, HL	1	1 /6	F9
LD	SP, IX	2	2 /10(4,6)	DD F9
LD	SP, IY			FD F9

Description The instruction copies the contents of the HL register or an index register into the stack pointer.

Flags No flags are affected.

Example The HL register contains 2050_H. Specify the contents of the stack pointer after executing the following instruction.

Instruction: LD SP, HL Hex Code: F9

After the execution of the above instruction, both the stack pointer and the HL register will have 2050_H. The contents of the source are not destroyed.

**LDD: COPY DATA FROM SOURCE MEMORY TO
DESTINATION MEMORY, AND DECREMENT MEMORY
POINTERS AND COUNTER**

Opcode	Operand	Bytes	MC /T-States	Hex Codes
LDD		1	4 /16(4,4,3,5)	ED A8

Description The contents of the memory location addressed by the HL register are copied into the memory location addressed by the DE register. Then registers BC, DE, and HL are decremented. In this instruction, HL functions as a source memory pointer, DE as a destination memory pointer, and BC as a counter.

Flags

S	Z	H	P/V	N	C
		0	0/1	0	

P/V = 0 if BC = 0
= 1 if BC ≠ 0

Example The memory locations 2070_H, 2071_H, and 2072_H contain 97_H, 4F_H, and 7A_H, respectively. The contents of the registers are HL = 2072_H, DE = 2045_H, and BC = 01FF_H. Show the contents of memory locations and registers after the execution of the instruction LDD.

Instruction: LDD Hex Code: ED A8

Register Contents
Before Instruction

B	01	FF	C
D	20	45	E
H	20	72	L

Memory
Contents

2044	
2045	7A
2070	97
2071	4F
2072	7A

Register Contents
After Instruction

B	01	FE	C
D	20	44	E
H	20	71	L

**LDDR: COPY DATA FROM SOURCE MEMORY TO
DESTINATION MEMORY, AND DECREMENT MEMORY
POINTERS AND COUNTER UNTIL COUNTER IS ZERO**

Opcode	Operand	Bytes	MC /T-States	Hex Codes
LDDR		2	5 /21(4,4,3,5,5) if BC ≠ 0 4 /16(4,4,3,5) if BC = 0	ED B8

Description The contents of the memory location addressed by the HL register are copied into the memory location addressed by the DE register. Then registers BC, DE, and HL are decremented, and the copying process is continued until BC = 0. In this instruction, HL functions as a source memory pointer, DE as a destination memory pointer, and BC as a counter.

	S	Z		H		P/V	N	C
Flags				0		0	0	

Example The memory locations 2071_H and 2072_H contain 97_H and 4F_H, respectively. The contents of the registers are HL = 2072_H, DE = 2045_H, and BC = 0002_H. Show the contents of memory locations and registers after the execution of the instruction LDDR.

Instruction: LDDR Hex Code: ED B8

Register Contents Before Instruction						Memory Contents		Register Contents After Instruction		
B	00	02	C	→ 2044	97	B	00	00	C	
D	20	45	E	→ 2045	4F	D	20	43	E	
H	20	72	L			H	20	70	L	
				2070						
				2071	97					
				2072	4F					

**LDI: COPY DATA FROM SOURCE MEMORY TO DESTINATION
MEMORY, INCREMENT MEMORY POINTERS, AND
DECREMENT COUNTER**

Opcode	Operand	Bytes	MC /T-States	Hex Codes
LDI		2	4 /16(4,4,3,5)	ED A0

Description The contents of the memory location addressed by the HL register are copied into the memory location addressed by the DE register. Then DE and HL are incremented and BC is decremented. In this instruction, HL functions as a source memory pointer, DE as a destination memory pointer, and BC as a counter.

	S	Z		H		P/V	N	C
Flags				0		0/1	0	

P/V = 0 if BC = 0
= 1 if BC ≠ 0

Example The memory locations 2070_H, 2071_H, and 2072_H contain 97_H, 4F_H, and 7A_H, respectively. The contents of the registers are HL = 2070_H, DE = 2045_H, and BC = 01FF_H. Show the contents of memory locations and registers after the execution of the instruction LDI.

Instruction: LDI Hex Code: ED A0										
Register Contents Before Instruction						Memory Contents		Register Contents After Instruction		
B	01	FF	C	2044			B	01	FE	C
D	20	45	E	2045	97		D	20	46	E
H	20	70	L	2070	97		H	20	71	L
				2071	4F					
				2072	7A					

LDIR: COPY DATA FROM SOURCE MEMORY TO DESTINATION MEMORY, INCREMENT MEMORY POINTERS, AND DECREMENT COUNTER UNTIL IT IS ZERO

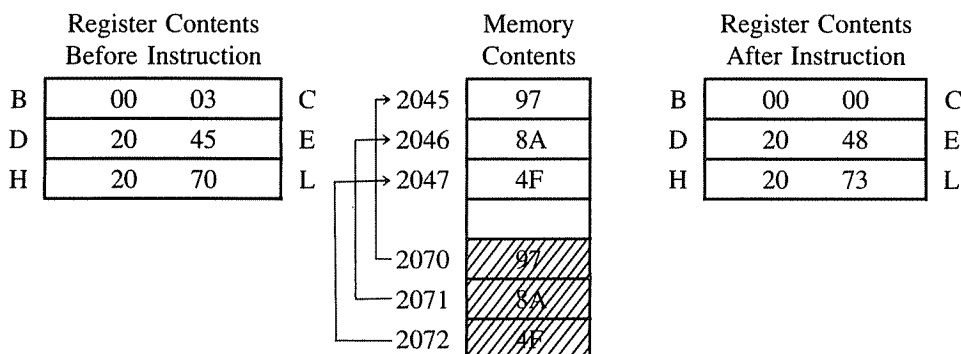
Opcode	Operand	Bytes	MC /T-States	Hex Codes
LDIR		2	5 /21(4,4,3,5,5) if BC ≠ 0 4 /16(4,4,3,5) if BC = 0	ED B0

Description The contents of the memory location addressed by the HL register are copied into the memory location addressed by the DE register. Then registers DE and HL are incremented and BC is decremented. and the copying process is continued until BC = 0. In this instruction, HL functions as a source memory pointer, DE as a destination memory pointer, and BC as a counter.

	S	Z		H		P/V	N	C
Flags				0		0	0	

Example The memory locations 2070_H, 2071_H, and 2072_H contain 97_H, 8A_H, 4F_H, respectively. The contents of the registers are HL = 2070_H, DE = 2045_H, and BC = 0003_H. Show the contents of memory locations and registers after the execution of the instruction LDIR.

Instruction: LDIR Hex Code: ED B0

**NEG: TAKE 2's COMPLEMENT (NEGATE ACCUMULATOR)**

Opcode	Operand	Bytes	MC /T-States	Hex Code
NEG		2	2 /8 (4, 4)	ED 44

Description The instruction converts the accumulator contents into 2's complement by subtracting the contents from 0.

S	Z	H	P/V	N	C
✓	✓	✓	✓	1	✓

Flags

Example The accumulator holds 97_H. Specify the contents of the accumulator and explain the S and CY flags after the execution of NEG instruction.

Mnemonics: NEG Hex Code: ED 44

Before Instruction: (A) = 1 0 0 1 0 1 1 1 (97_H)After Instruction : (A) = 0 1 1 0 1 0 0 1 (69_H)

Flags : S = 0, CY = 1

The Sign flag is reset because D₇ = 0, and the Carry flag is set because the larger number 97_H is subtracted from 00. However, the result does not mean that 69_H is a negative number; it depends upon the interpretation of 97_H. The appropriate interpretation is that 97_H and 69_H are 2's complements of each other.

NOP: NO OPERATION

Opcode	Operand	Bytes	MC /T-States	Hex Code
NOP		1	1 /4	00

Description No operation is performed. The instruction is fetched and decoded; however, no operation is executed.

Flags No flags are affected.

Comments The instruction is used to increase time delays or delete and insert instructions while troubleshooting.

OR r : LOGICALLY OR REGISTER, 8-BIT, OR MEMORY WITH ACCUMULATOR

OR 8-Bit:
OR (m) :

Opcode	Operand	Bytes	MC /T-States	Hex Codes							
OR	r	1	1 /4	A	B	C	D	E	H	L	
				B7	B0	B1	B2	B3	B4	B5	
OR	8-bit	2	2 /7(4,3)	F6	d						
OR	(HL)	1	2 /7(4,3)	B6							
OR	(IX + d)	3	5 /19(4,4,3,5,3)	DD	B6	d					
	(IY + d)			FD	B6	d					

Description The contents of a register or memory or an 8-bit word are ORed with the contents of the accumulator. The memory address is specified by the contents of the HL register or an index register with a displacement byte d.

S		Z	H		P/V	N	C
✓	✓		0		✓	0	0

Flags

Example The contents of the accumulator and register B are 54_H and 82_H respectively. Logically OR (B) with (A) and show the flags and the contents of each register after ORing.

Mnemonics: OR B Hex Code: B0

Logical OR									Register Contents After Instruction								
(A)	1	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	(82 _H)	S		Z	H	P	N	C	
(B)	0	1	0	1	0	1	0	0	(54 _H)	A	D6	1	0	0	0	0	F
(A)	1	1	0	1	0	1	1	0	(D6 _H)	B	54	X					C

Example Write mnemonics to OR the contents of memory location 2070_H with the contents of the accumulator assuming index register IY contains address 2000_H.

Mnemonics: OR (IY + 70H) Hex Code: FD B6 70

OUT (8-Bit), A: OUTPUT DATA FROM ACCUMULATOR TO PORT WITH 8-BIT ADDRESS

Opcode	Operand	Bytes	MC /T-States	Hex Code	
OUT	8-Bit	2	3 /11(4,3,4)	D3	8-bit

Description The contents of the accumulator are copied into the I/O port specified by the 8-bit address.

Flags No flags are affected.

OUT (C), r: OUTPUT DATA FROM REGISTER r TO THE PORT WITH ADDRESS IN C

Opcode	Operand	Bytes	MC /T-States	Hex Codes							
					A	B	C	D	E	H	L
OUT	(C), r	2	3 /12	ED	79	41	49	51	59	61	69

Description The contents of register r are copied into the I/O port specified by the address in register C.

Flags No flags are affected.

OUTD: OUTPUT DATA FROM MEMORY AND DECREMENT BYTE COUNTER AND MEMORY POINTER

Opcode	Operand	Bytes	MC /T-States	Hex Code
OUTD		2	4 /16(4,5,3,4)	ED AB

Description This instruction copies data from the memory location specified by the contents of register HL into the output port specified by register C. Register B is used as a byte counter, and both B and HL are decremented by one.

	S	Z		H		P/V	N	C
Flags	?	0/1		?		?	1	

OTDR: OUTPUT DATA FROM MEMORY AND DECREMENT MEMORY POINTER AND BYTE COUNTER UNTIL BYTE COUNTER IS ZERO

Opcode	Operand	Bytes	MC /T-States	Hex Code
OTDR		2	5 /21(4,5,3,4,5) if B≠0 4 /16(4,5,3,4) if B=0	ED BB

Description This instruction copies data from the memory location specified by the contents of register HL into the output port specified by register C. Register B is used as a byte counter, and both B and HL are decremented by one; the instruction is repeated until B = 0.

	S	Z		H		P/V	N	C
Flags	?	1		?		?	1	

Example The contents of the registers are HL = 2070_H and BC = 0401_H. Show the contents of memory locations and registers after the execution of the instruction OTDR.

Instruction: OTDR Hex Code: ED BB

The instruction copies data starting from memory 2070_H to the output port 01_H four times until register B = 0. Assuming the port 01_H is a printer, the four bytes will be printed. The contents of registers at the end of the instruction are as follows:

Register Contents Before Instruction				Register Contents After Instruction			
B	04	01	C	B	00	01	C
H	20	70	L	H	20	6C	L

OUTI: OUTPUT DATA FROM MEMORY, DECREMENT BYTE COUNTER, AND INCREMENT MEMORY POINTER

Opcode	Operand	Bytes	MC /T-States	Hex Code
OUTI		2	4 /16(4,5,3,4)	ED A3

Description This instruction copies data from the memory location specified by the contents of register HL into the output port specified by register C. The contents of register B are decremented and those of register HL are incremented by one.

	S	Z		H		P/V	N	C
Flags	?	0/1		?		?	1	

OTIR: OUTPUT DATA FROM MEMORY, INCREMENT MEMORY POINTER, AND DECREMENT BYTE COUNTER UNTIL BYTE COUNTER IS ZERO

Opcode	Operand	Bytes	MC /T-States	Hex Code
OTIR		2	5 /21(4,5,3,4,5) if B≠0 4 /16(4,5,3,4) if B = 0	ED B3

Description This instruction copies data from the memory location specified by the contents of register HL into the output port specified by register C. The contents of register B are decremented and those of register HL are incremented by one. The instruction is repeated until B = 0.

	S	Z		H		P/V	N	C
Flags	?	1		?		?	1	

Example The contents of the registers are HL = 2070_H and BC = 0407_H. Show the contents of memory locations and registers after the execution of the instruction OTIR.

Instruction: OTIR Hex Code: ED B3

The instruction copies data starting from memory location 2070_H into output port 07_H. The instruction is repeated four times until B = 0, and every time data is taken from the next memory location by incrementing HL. The contents of registers are as follows:

Register Contents Before Instruction				Register Contents After Instruction			
B	04	07	C	B	00	07	C
H	20	70	L	H	20	74	L

POP rp: PLACE STACK CONTENTS INTO REGISTER PAIR OR INDEX REGISTER

POP rx:

Opcode	Operand	Bytes	MC /T-States	Hex Codes			
				BC	DE	HL	AF
POP	rp	1	3 /10(4,3,3)	C1	D1	E1	F1
POP	IX	2	4 /14(4,4,3,3)		DD	E1	
POP	IY				FD	E1	

Description The contents at the top of the stack indicated by the address in the stack pointer are copied into the low-order register (C, E, L, or F) or as a low-order byte into an index register and the stack pointer is incremented by one. Again, the contents of the top of the stack (after incrementing the stack pointer) are copied into the high-order register or as a high-order byte into an index register. The stack pointer is incremented by one to indicate the new top of the stack.

Flags No flags are affected.

Example Assume the stack pointer contains 2090_H, data byte 50_H is stored in location 2090_H and 80_H is stored in location 2091_H. Transfer the contents of the top two stack locations into HL registers.

Mnemonics: POP HL Hex Code: E1

Register Contents Before Instruction			Stack Contents	Register Contents After Instruction					
H	XX	XX	L	2090	50	H	80	50	L
SP	2090			2091	80	SP	2092		

PUSH rp: COPY REGISTER PAIR OR INDEX REGISTER ON STACK

PUSH rx:

Opcode	Operand	Bytes	MC /T-States	Hex Codes			
				BC	DE	HL	AF
PUSH	rp	1	3 /10(4,3,3)	C5	D5	E5	F5
PUSH	IX	2	4 /14(4,4,3,3)		DD	E5	
PUSH	IY				FD	E5	

Description The contents of the specified register pair or index register are copied into the stack locations as follows. First, the stack pointer is decremented by one and the contents of the high-order register (B, D, H, A) or high-order byte of the index register are copied into the memory location indicated by the stack pointer. The stack pointer is decremented again and the contents of the low-order register (C, E, L, F) or the low-order byte of the index register are copied into that location.

Flags No flags are affected.

Example Assume that the stack pointer contains 2099_H, register H contains 40_H, and register L contains F8_H. Save the contents of HL on the stack.

Mnemonics: PUSH HL Hex Code: E5

Register Contents Before Instruction				Stack Contents		Register Contents After Instruction			
H	40	F8	L	2097	F8	H	40	F8	L
SP	2099			2098	40	SP	2097		
				2099	XX				

RES b, r: RESET BIT IN A REGISTER OR IN MEMORY

RES b, (m):

Opcode	Operand	Bytes	MC /T-States	Hex Codes							
RES	b, r	2	2 /8(4,4)	<i>Register</i>							
			(Bit)	A	B	C	D	E	H	L	
			CB (0)	87	80	81	82	83	84	85	
			CB (1)	8F	88	89	8A	8B	8C	8D	
			CB (2)	97	90	91	92	93	94	95	

				CB (3)	9F	98	99	9A	9B	9C	9D			
				CB (4)	A7	A0	A1	A2	A3	A4	A5			
				CB (5)	AF	A8	A9	AA	AB	AC	AD			
				CB (6)	B7	B0	B1	B2	B3	B4	B5			
				CB (7)	BF	B8	B9	BA	BB	BC	BD			
				Bit										
							0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
RES	b, (HL)	2	4 /15		CB	[86	8E	96	9E	A6	AE	B6	BE]	
			(4,4,4,3)											
RES	b, (IX + d)	4	6/23		DD CB d	[86	8E	96	9E	A6	AE	B6	BE]	
			(4,4,3,5,4,3)											
RES	b, (IY + d)				FD CB d	[86	8E	96	9E	A6	AE	B6	BE]	

Description The specified bit is reset in a register or in memory. The values of b (0–7) correspond to bits D₀–D₇.

Flags No flags are affected.

Example Write instructions to reset bit 3 in register A and bit 0 in memory 2055_H. Assume that registers HL are already loaded with the address 2055_H.

	Mnemonics	Hex Code
	RES 3, A	CB 9F
	RES 0, (HL)	CB 86

RET: RETURN FROM SUBROUTINE UNCONDITIONALLY

Opcode	Operand	Bytes	MC /T-States	Hex Code
RET		1	3 /10(4,3,3)	C9

Description The program execution is transferred from the subroutine to the calling program. The two bytes from the top of the stack are copied into the program counter and the program execution begins at the new address. The instruction is equivalent to POP Program Counter.

Flags No flags are affected.

Example Assume that the stack pointer contains 2095_H. Explain the effect of the RET instruction if the contents of the stack location are as follows:

2095	50
2096	20

After instruction RET, the contents of the top two stack locations are copied into the program counter, and the program execution is transferred to location 2050_H. The stack pointer is incremented to location 2097_H.

RET cc: RETURN FROM SUBROUTINE IF CONDITION IS TRUE

Opcode	Operand	Bytes	MC /T-States						
RET	cc	1	3 /11(5,3,3) ; If condition is true 1 /5 ; If condition is false						
Condition Flags		NZ	Z	NC	C	PO	PE	P	M
Hex Codes		C0	C8	D0	D8	E0	E8	F0	F8

Description The program execution is transferred from the subroutine to the calling program if the flag condition is true. If the condition is false, the program continues to the next memory location.

Flags No flags are affected.

RETI: RETURN FROM INTERRUPT

Opcode	Operand	Bytes	MC /T-States	Hex Code
RETI		2	4 /14(4,4,3,3)	ED 4D

Description The instruction copies the contents of the top two stack locations into the program counter, and the program execution is transferred to the address stored on the stack; this execution is similar to that of a RET instruction.

This instruction is used at the end of a maskable interrupt service routine. In addition to transferring the program execution to the interrupted program, it indicates to a Z80 family I/O device that it is the end of the service routine.

Flags No flags are affected.

RETN: RETURN FROM NONMASKABLE INTERRUPT

Opcode	Operand	Bytes	MC /T-States	Hex Code
RETN		2	4 /14(4,4,3,3)	ED 45

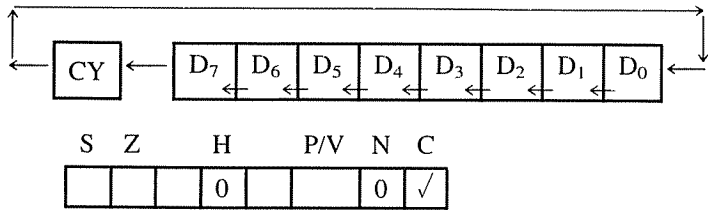
Description The instruction copies the contents of the top two stack locations into the program counter and the program execution is transferred to the address stored on the stack; this execution is similar to that of a RET instruction.

This instruction is used at the end of the nonmaskable interrupt service routine. In addition to transferring the program execution to the interrupted program, it restores the status of the maskable interrupts by copying the state of IFF2 (Interrupt Flip-flop 2) into IFF1 (Interrupt Flip-flop 1).

RLA: ROTATE ACCUMULATOR LEFT THROUGH CARRY

Opcode	Operand	Bytes	MC /T-States	Hex Code
RLA		1	1 /4	17

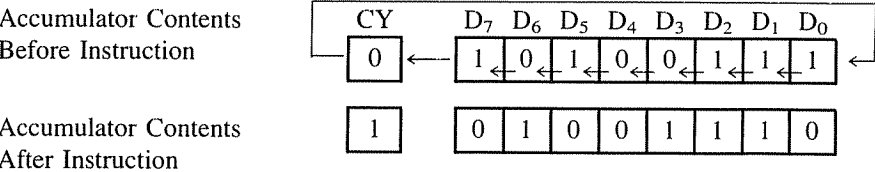
Description Each bit in the accumulator is rotated left by one position through the Carry flag. Bit D₇ is placed into the CY position and the CY flag is placed into bit D₀.



The CY flag is modified according to bit D₇.

Example The accumulator contains A7_H and the CY flag is reset. Show the contents of the accumulator and the CY flag after the execution of the instruction RLA.

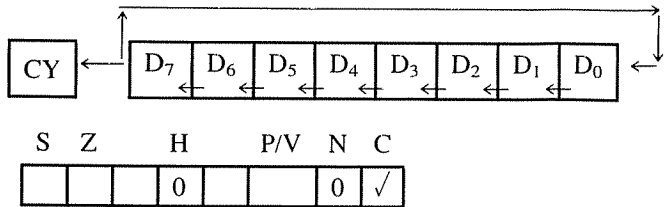
Mnemonics: RLA Hex Code: 17



RLCA: ROTATE ACCUMULATOR LEFT

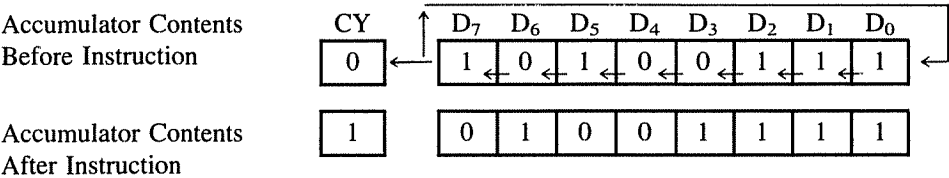
Opcode	Operand	Bytes	MC /T-States	Hex Code
RLCA		1	1 /4	07

Description Each bit in the accumulator is rotated left by one position. Bit D₇ is placed into the position of bit D₀ and the CY flag is modified according to bit D₇.



Example The accumulator contains A7_H and the CY flag is reset. Show the contents of the accumulator and the CY flag after the execution of the instruction RLCA.

Mnemonics: RLCA Hex Code: 07

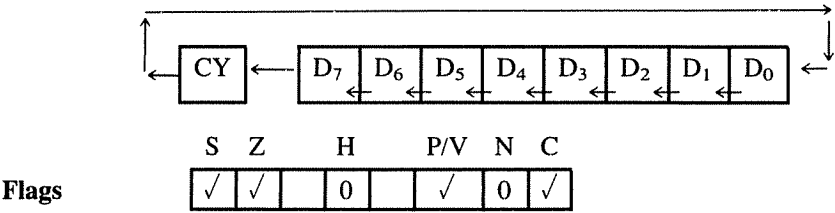


RL r: ROTATE EACH BIT LEFT IN REGISTER OR MEMORY THROUGH CARRY

RL (m):

Opcode	Operand	Bytes	MC /T-States	Hex Codes							
				A	B	C	D	E	H	L	
RL	r	2	2 /8(4,4)	CB	17	10	11	12	13	14	15
RL	(HL)	2	4 /15(4,4,4,3)	CB	16						
RL	(IX + d)	4	6 /23(4,4,3,5,4,3)	DD	CB	d	16				
RLC	(IY + d)			FD	CB	d	16				

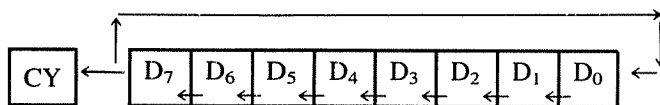
Description Each bit in the specified register or memory is rotated left by one position through carry. Bit D₇ is placed into the CY flag and the CY flag is placed into bit D₀. The memory address is specified using either HL or an index register.



RLC r: ROTATE EACH BIT LEFT IN REGISTER OR MEMORY
RLC (m):

Opcode	Operand	Bytes	MC /T-States	Hex Codes							
RLC	r	2	2 /8(4,4)	A	B	C	D	E	H	L	
				CB	07	00	01	02	03	04	05
RLC	(HL)	2	4 /15(4,4,4,3)			CB	06				
RLC	(IX + d)	4	6 /23(4,4,3,5,4,3)		DD	CB	d	06			
RLC	(IY + d)				FD	CB	d	06			

Description Each bit in the specified register or memory is rotated left by one position. Bit D₇ is placed into the position of bit D₀ and the CY flag is modified according to bit D₇. The memory address is specified using either HL or an index register.

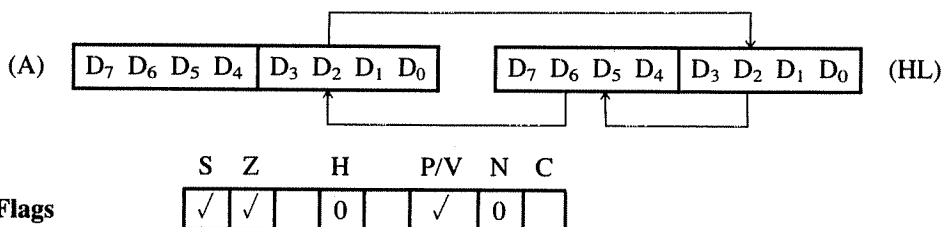


	S	Z		H		P/V	N	C
Flags	✓	✓		0		✓	0	✓

RLD: ROTATE LEFT BCD DIGIT BETWEEN ACCUMULATOR AND MEMORY

Opcode	Operand	Bytes	MC /T-States	Hex Code
RLD		2	5 /18(4,4,3,4,3)	ED 6F

Description The instruction shifts 4-bit digits between memory and the accumulator as shown below. The four low-order bits (D₃–D₀) in the memory location indicated by HL register are shifted left, bits D₇–D₄ are copied into the low-order bits of the accumulator, and bits D₃–D₀ of the accumulator are copied into bits D₃–D₀ of the memory.



Example The accumulator contains 67_H and the memory location 2050_H contains 92_H. If the HL register holds the address 2050_H, show the contents of the memory location and the accumulator after the execution of the instruction RLD.

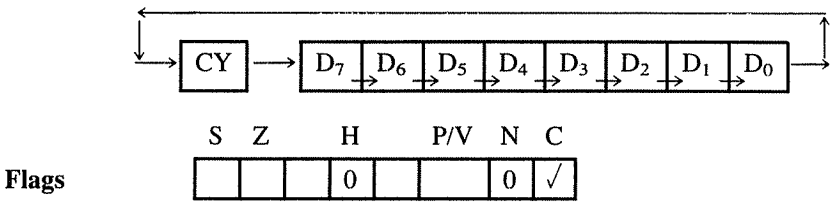
Mnemonics: RLD Hex Code: ED 6F

Contents Before Instruction	A	<div>6</div> <div>7</div>	<div>9</div> <div>2</div>	2050
Contents After Instruction	A	<div>6</div> <div>9</div>	<div>2</div> <div>7</div>	2050

RRA: ROTATE ACCUMULATOR RIGHT THROUGH CARRY

Opcode	Operand	Bytes	MC /T-States	Hex Code
RRA		1	1 /4	1F

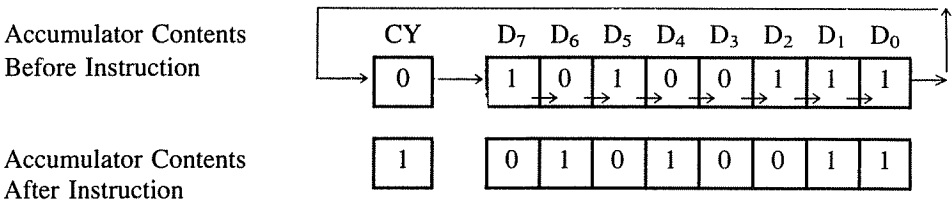
Description Each bit in the accumulator is rotated right by one position through the Carry flag. Bit D₀ is placed into the CY position, and the CY flag is placed into bit D₇.



The CY flag is modified according to bit D₀.

Example The accumulator contains A7_H and the CY flag is reset. Show the contents of the accumulator and the CY flag after the execution of the instruction RRA.

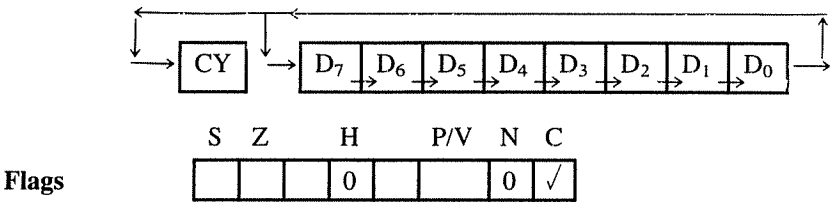
Mnemonics: RRA Hex Code: 1F



RRCA: ROTATE ACCUMULATOR RIGHT

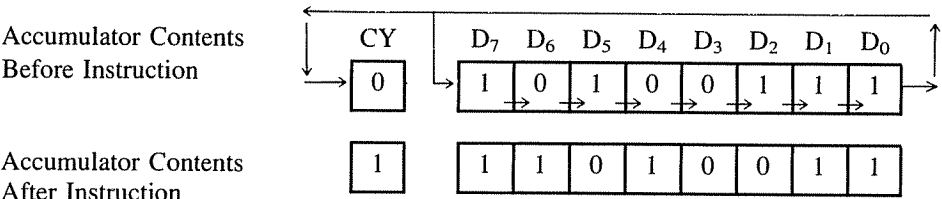
Opcode	Operand	Bytes	MC /T-States	Hex Code
RRCA		1	1 /4	0F

Description Each bit in the accumulator is rotated right by one position. Bit D₀ is placed in the position of bit D₇ and the CY flag is also modified according to bit D₀.



Example The accumulator contains A7_H and the CY flag is reset. Show the contents of the accumulator and the CY flag after the execution of the instruction RRCA.

Mnemonics: RRCA Hex Code: 0F

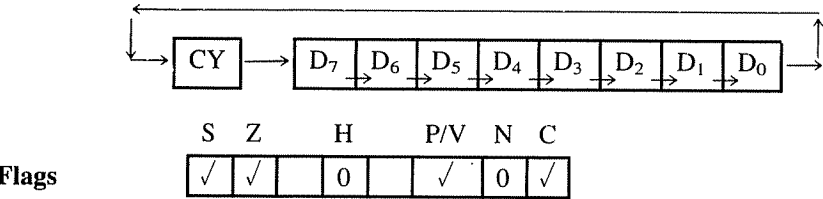


RR r: ROTATE EACH BIT RIGHT IN REGISTER OR MEMORY THROUGH CARRY

RR (m):

Opcode	Operand	Bytes	MC /T-States	Hex Codes
				A B C D E H L
RR	r	2	2 /8(4,4)	CB 1F 18 19 1A 1B 1C 1D
RR	(HL)	2	4 /15(4,4,4,3)	CB 1E
RR	(IX + d)	4	6 /23 (4,4,3,5,4,3)	DD CB d 1E
RR	(IY + d)			FD CB d 1E

Description Each bit in the specified register or memory is rotated right by one position through carry. Bit D₀ is placed into the CY flag and the CY flag is placed into bit D₇. The memory address is specified using either HL or an index register.

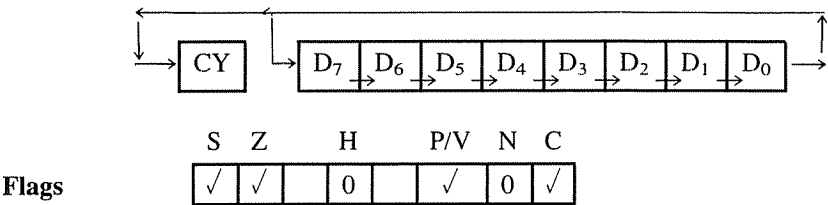


RRC r: ROTATE EACH BIT RIGHT IN REGISTER OR MEMORY

RRC (m):

Opcode	Operand	Bytes	MC /T-States	Hex Codes
				A B C D E H L
RRC	r	2	2 /8(4,4)	CB 0F 08 09 0A 0B 0C 0D
RRC	(HL)	2	4 /15(4,4,4,3)	CB 0E
RRC	(IX + d)	4	6 /23 (4,4,3,5,4,3)	DD CB d 0E
RRC	(IY + d)			FD CB d 0E

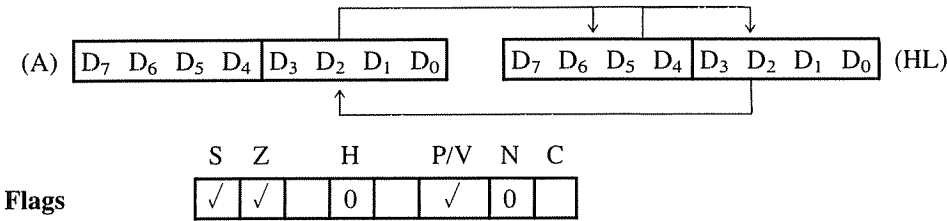
Description Each bit in the specified register or memory is rotated right by one position. Bit D₀ is placed into the position of bit D₇, and the CY flag is modified according to bit D₀. The memory address is specified using either HL or an index register.



RRD: ROTATE RIGHT BCD DIGIT BETWEEN ACCUMULATOR AND MEMORY

Opcode	Operand	Bytes	MC /T-States	Hex Code
RRD		2	5 /18(4,4,3,4,3)	ED 67

Description The instruction shifts 4-bit digits between memory and the accumulator as shown below. The four high-order bits (D₇–D₄) in the memory location indicated by HL are shifted right, bits D₃–D₀ are copied into low-order bits of the accumulator, and bits D₃–D₀ of the accumulator are copied into bits D₇–D₄ of the memory.



Example The accumulator contains 67_H and the memory location 2050_H contains 92_H. If the HL register holds the address 2050_H, show the contents of the memory location and the accumulator after the execution of the instruction RRD.

Mnemonics: RRD Hex Code: ED 67					
Contents Before Instruction	A <table border="1"><tr><td>6</td><td>7</td></tr></table> <table border="1"><tr><td>9</td><td>2</td></tr></table> 2050	6	7	9	2
6	7				
9	2				
Contents After Instruction	A <table border="1"><tr><td>6</td><td>2</td></tr></table> <table border="1"><tr><td>7</td><td>9</td></tr></table> 2050	6	2	7	9
6	2				
7	9				

RST: RESTART

Opcode	Operand	Bytes	MC /T-States	Hex Codes
RST	0 to 7	1	3 /11(5,3,3)	As shown below
Opcode/Operand		Restart Address (Hex)	Hex Code	
RST 00H		0000	C7	
RST 08H		0008	CF	
RST 10H		0010	D7	
RST 18H		0018	DF	
RST 20H		0020	E7	
RST 28H		0028	EF	
RST 30H		0030	F7	
RST 38H		0038	FF	

Description The RST instructions are 1-byte call instructions to one of eight memory locations on page 0. The instructions are generally used in conjunction with interrupts and inserted using external hardware. These instructions are also used in a program as software instructions to set up breakpoints or to transfer program execution to one of the eight memory locations.

Flags No flags are affected.

SBC A, r: SUBTRACT REGISTER AND BORROW FROM ACCUMULATOR
SBC A, 8-BIT: SUBTRACT 8-BIT AND BORROW FROM ACCUMULATOR
SBC A, (m): SUBTRACT MEMORY AND BORROW FROM ACCUMULATOR

Opcode	Operand	Bytes	MC /T-States	Hex Codes
				A B C D E H L
SBC	A, r	1	1 /4	9F 98 99 9A 9B 9C 9D
SBC	A, 8-Bit	2	2 /7(4,3)	DE 8-Bit
SBC	A, (HL)	1	2 /7(4,3)	9E
SBC	A, (IX + d)	3	5 /19(4,4,3,5,3)	DD 9E d
SBC	A, (IY + d)			FD 9E d

Description The contents of the operand (register, 8-bit data, memory) and the Carry flag CY (as borrow) are subtracted from the contents of the accumulator, and the result is placed in the accumulator.

	S	Z		H		P/V	N	C
Flags	✓	✓		✓		✓	1	✓

Example The register BC contains 7498_H and the register DE contains 19A1_H. Subtract (DE) from (BC) and store the result in BC.

- Step 1:** Copy (C) into A and subtract (E) using SUB instruction. The Z80 performs this subtraction in 2's complement.
- (B) → (A): 98_H
 − (E): A1_H
 (A): 1/F7_H
- Step 2:** Save the result F7_H in register C.
- Step 3:** Copy (B) into A and subtract (D) using SBC instruction to account for the borrow of the previous result. The Z80 performs this subtraction in 2's complement.
- (B) → (A): 74_H
 (D): 19_H
 Borrow: 1
 5A_H
- Step 4:** Save the result (5A_H) in B. The SBC instruction resets the previous CY flag.

Comments The instruction is generally used in 16-bit subtraction or multi-byte subtraction; the borrow generated by D₇ is subtracted from bit D₈ in the next subtraction. This instruction should not be used to account for carries (borrows) generated in subtracting 8-bit numbers.

SBC HL, rp: SUBTRACT REGISTER PAIR AND BORROW FROM HL

Opcode	Operand	Bytes	MC /T-States	Hex Codes
				BC DE HL SP
SBC	HL, rp	2	4 /15(4,4,4,3)	ED 42 52 62 72

Description The contents of the operand (BC, DE, HL, or SP) and the Carry flag (as borrow) are subtracted from the contents of the HL register, and the result is stored in the HL register.

	S	Z		H		P/V	N	C
Flags	✓	✓		?		✓	1	✓

Example The HL register contains F850_H, the DE register contains 8200_H, and the Carry flag CY is set. Subtract the contents of DE from HL with borrow.

Mnemonics: SBC HL, DE Hex Code: ED 52

Subtraction with Borrow					Register Contents After Instruction		
(HL):	1111	1000	0101	0000 (F850 _H)	D	82 00	E
(DE):	1000	0010	0000	0000 (8200 _H)	H	76 4F	L
CY :				1			
	0/0111	0110	0100	1111 (764F _H)			

SCF: SET CARRY FLAG

Opcode	Operand	Bytes	MC /T-States	Hex Code
SCF		1	1 /4	37

Description The Carry flag (C) is set to 1.

	S	Z	H	P/V	N	C
Flags			0		0	1

SET b, r: SET BIT IN REGISTER OR MEMORY
SET b, (m):

Opcode	Operand	Bytes	MC /T-States	Hex Codes
SET	b, r	2	4 /8(4,4)	<div>Register</div> <div>(Bit) A B C D E H L</div> <div>CB (0) C7 C0 C1 C2 C3 C4 C5</div> <div>(1) CF C8 C9 CA CB CC CD</div> <div>(2) D7 D0 D1 D2 D3 D4 D5</div> <div>(3) DF D8 D9 DA DB DC DD</div> <div>(4) E7 E0 E1 E2 E3 E4 E5</div> <div>(5) EF E8 E9 EA EB EC ED</div> <div>(6) F7 F0 F1 F2 F3 F4 F5</div> <div>(7) FF F8 F9 FA FB FC FD</div> <div>Bit</div> <div>0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7</div> <div>[CB C6 CE D6 DE E6 EE F6 FE]</div>
SET	b, (HL)	2	4 /15 (4,4,4,3)	
SET	b, (IX + d)	4	6/23 (4,4,3,5,4,3)	DD CB d [C6 CE D6 DE E6 EE F6 FE]
SET	b, (IY + d)	4		FD CB d [C6 CE D6 DE E6 EE F6 FE]

Description The specified bit is set in a register or in memory. The values of b (0–7) correspond to bits D₀–D₇.

Flags No flags are affected.

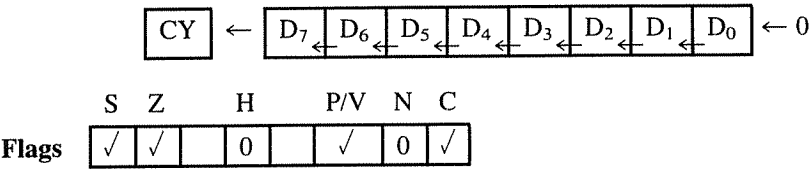
Example Write instructions to set bit 6 in register A and bit 0 in memory 2055_H. Assume that HL is already loaded with the address 2055_H.

Mnemonics	Hex Code
SET 6, A	CB F7
SET 0, (HL)	CB C6

SLA r: ARITHMETIC SHIFT LEFT IN REGISTER OR MEMORY
SLA (m):

Opcode	Operand	Bytes	MC /T-States	Hex Codes							
				A	B	C	D	E	H	L	
SLA	r	2	2 /8(4,4)	CB	27	20	21	22	23	24	25
SLA	(HL)	2	4 /15 (4,4,4,3)				CB	26			
SLA	(IX + d)	4	6 /23 (4,4,3,5,4,3)				DD	CB	d	16	
SLA	(IY + d)						FD	CB	d	16	

Description Each bit in the specified register or memory is arithmetically shifted left by one position. Bit D₇ is placed into the CY flag and 0 is placed into bit D₀. The memory address is specified using either HL or an index register.

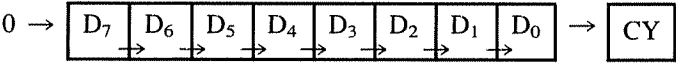


SRL r: LOGICAL SHIFT RIGHT IN REGISTER OR MEMORY

SRL (m):

Opcode	Operand	Bytes	MC /T-States	Hex Codes							
					A	B	C	D	E	H	L
SRL	r	2	2 /8(4,4)	CB	3F	38	39	3A	3B	3C	3D
SRL	(HL)	2	4 /15(4,4,4,3)	CB	3E						
SRL	(IX + d)	4	6 /23 (4,4,3,5,4,3)	DD	CB	d	3E				
SRL	(IY + d)			FD	CB	d	3E				

Description Each bit in the specified register or memory is logically shifted right by one position. Bit D₀ is placed into the CY flag and 0 is placed into bit D₇. The memory address is specified using either HL or an index register.



	S	Z		H		P/V	N	C
Flags	✓	✓		0		✓	0	✓

SUB r: SUBTRACT REGISTER FROM ACCUMULATOR

SUB 8-BIT: SUBTRACT 8-BIT FROM ACCUMULATOR

SUB (m): SUBTRACT MEMORY FROM ACCUMULATOR

Opcode	Operand	Bytes	MC /T-States	Hex Codes							
					A	B	C	D	E	H	L
SUB	r	1	1 /4		97	90	91	92	93	94	95
SUB	8-Bit	2	2 /7(4,3)		D6	8-Bit					
SUB	(HL)	1	2 /7(4,3)		96						
SUB	(IX + d)	3	5 /19(4,4,3,5,3)	DD	96	d					
SUB	(IY + d)			FD	96	d					

Description The contents of the operand (register, 8-bit, or memory) are subtracted from the contents of the accumulator, and the result is stored in the accumulator.

	S	Z		H		P/V	N	C
Flags	✓	✓		✓		✓	1	✓

Example Register B has 47_H and the accumulator has 61_H. Subtract (B) from (A).

Mnemonics: SUB B Hex Code: 90

Subtraction

(A) 0 1 1 0 0 0 0 1 (61_H)

+

(B) 1 0 1 1 1 0 0 1 (2's comp. of 47_H)

(A) 1 0 0 0 1 1 0 1 0 Complement

CY

CY 0 0 0 1 1 0 1 0 (1A_H)

Register Contents After Execution

SZ H VNC

A1A001010F

B47XC

Example The accumulator contains the byte 76_H, and the HL pair contains 2050_H. Subtract the byte A7_H which is stored in memory location 2050_H from the contents of the accumulator.

Mnemonics: SUB (HL) Hex Code: 96

Subtraction

(A) 0 1 1 1 0 1 1 0 (76_H)

+

2050 (Mem) 0 1 0 1 1 0 0 1 (2's comp. of A7_H)

1 1 0 0 1 1 1 1 (Complement CY)

1 1 0 0 1 1 1 1 CF

CY

Register Contents After Execution

SZ H VNC

A CF101111

H2050L

XOR r: EXCLUSIVELY OR REGISTER, 8-BIT, OR MEMORY WITH ACCUMULATOR

XOR 8-bit:

XOR (m):

Opcode	Operand	Bytes	MC /T-States	Hex Codes						
				A	B	C	D	E	H	L
XOR	r	1	1 /4	AF	A8	A9	AA	AB	AC	AD
XOR	8-Bit	2	2 /7(4,3)	EE 8-bit						
XOR	(HL)	1	2 /7(4,3)	AE						
XOR	(IX + d)	3	5 /19(4,4,3,5,3)	DD AE d						
	(IY + d)			FD AE d						

Description The contents of register, memory, or an 8-bit are exclusively ORed with the contents of the accumulator. The memory address is specified by the contents of the HL register or an index register with a displacement byte d.

	S	Z	H	P/V	N	C
Flags	✓	✓	0	✓	0	0

Example The contents of the accumulator and register B are 54_H and 96_H respectively. Exclusively OR (B) with (A) and show the flags and the contents of each register after the operation.

Mnemonics: XOR B Hex Code: A8

Exclusive OR		Register Contents After Instruction			
		S	Z	H	PNC
(A)	1 0 0 1 0 1 1 0 (96 _H)	A	C2	1	0
(B)	0 1 0 1 0 1 0 0 (54 _H)				
(A)	1 1 0 0 0 0 1 0 (C2 _H)				
		B	54	X	C

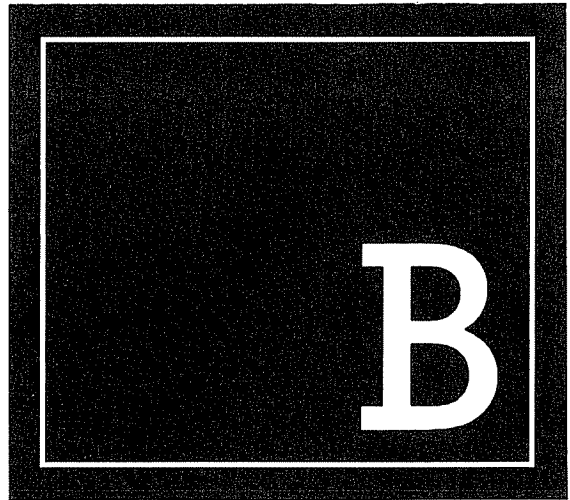
Example Write mnemonics to exclusive OR the contents of memory location 2070_H with the contents of the accumulator assuming index register IY contains address 2000_H.

Mnemonics: XOR (IY + 70H) Hex Code: FD AE 70

Number Systems

Computers communicate and operate in binary digits 0 and 1; on the other hand, human beings generally use the decimal system with ten digits, from 0–9. Other number systems are also used, such as octal with eight digits, from 0–7, and hexadecimal (Hex) system with digits from 0–15. In the hexadecimal system, digits 10 through 15 are designated as A through F, respectively, to avoid confusion with the decimal numbers, 10 to 15.

A positional scheme is usually used to represent a number in any of the number systems. This means that each digit will have its value according to its position in a number. The number of digits in a position is also referred to as the base. For example, the binary system has base 2, the decimal system has base 10, and the hexadecimal system has base 16.



B.1

NUMBER CONVERSION

A number in any base system can be represented in a generalized format as follows:

$$N = A_n B^n + A_{n-1} B^{n-1} + \dots + A_1 B^1 + A_0 B^0$$

N = number, B = base, A = any digit in that base

For example, number 154 can be represented in various number systems as follows:

Decimal: $154 = 1 \times 10^2 + 5 \times 10^1 + 4 \times 10^0 = 154$
Octal: $232 = 2 \times 8^2 + 3 \times 8^1 + 2 \times 8^0$
 $= 128 + 24 + 2 = 154$
Hexadecimal: $9A = 9 \times 16^1 + A \times 16^0$
 $= 144 + 10 = 154$
Binary: $10011010 = 1 \times 2^7 + 0 \times 2^6 + 0 \times 2^5 + 1 \times 2^4 + 1 \times 2^3 + 0 \times 2^2 + 1 \times 2^1 + 0 \times 2^0$
 $= 128 + 0 + 0 + 16 + 8 + 0 + 2 + 0 = 154$

The above example also shows how to convert a given number in any system into its decimal equivalent.

CONVERSION TABLE: DECIMAL, HEXADECIMAL, BINARY, AND OCTAL

Decimal	Hex	Binary	Octal
0	0	0000	00
1	1	0001	01
2	2	0010	02
3	3	0011	03
4	4	0100	04
5	5	0101	05
6	6	0110	06
7	7	0111	07
8	8	1000	10
9	9	1001	11
10	A	1010	12
11	B	1011	13
12	C	1100	14
13	D	1101	15
14	E	1110	16
15	F	1111	17

HOW TO CONVERT A NUMBER FROM BINARY INTO
HEXADECIMAL AND OCTAL

Example

Convert the binary number 1 0 0 1 1 0 1 0 into its Hex and octal equivalents.

Hexadecimal

Step 1: Starting from the right (LSB) arrange the binary digits in groups of four.

1 0 0 1 1 0 1 0

Step 2: Convert each group into its equivalent Hex number.

9 A

Octal

Step 1: Starting from the right (LSB) arrange the binary digits in groups of three.

1 0 0 1 1 0 1 0

Step 2: Convert each group into its equivalent octal number.

2 3 2

2'S COMPLEMENT AND ARITHMETIC OPERATIONS

B.2

The Z80 microprocessor performs the subtraction of two binary numbers using the 2's complement method. In digital logic circuits, it is easier to design a circuit to add numbers than to design a circuit to subtract numbers. The 2's complement of a binary number is equivalent to its negative number; thus by adding the complement of the subtrahend (the number to be subtracted) to the minuend, a subtraction can be performed. The method of 2's complement is explained below with the examples from the decimal number system.

DECIMAL SUBTRACTION

Subtract the following two decimal numbers using the borrow method and the 10's complement method: (52 - 23)

**Example
B.1**

$$\begin{array}{l} \text{Minuend: } 52 = 5 \times 10 + 2 \\ \text{Subtrahend: } 23 = 2 \times 10 + 3 \end{array}$$

**Borrow
Method**

Step 1: To subtract 3 from 2, 10 must be borrowed from the second place of the minuend.

$$52 = 4 \times 10 + 12$$

Step 2: The subtraction of the digits in the first place and the second place is as follows.

$$\begin{array}{rcl} 52 & = & 4 \times 10 + 12 \\ -23 & = & 2 \times 10 + 3 \\ \hline & & 2 \times 10 + 9 = 29 \end{array}$$

Step 1: Find 9's complement of the subtrahend (23), meaning subtract each digit of the subtrahend from 9.

**10's
Complement
Method**

$$\begin{array}{rcl} \text{9's complement of 23:} & 9 & 9 \\ & -2 & 3 \\ \hline & 7 & 6 \end{array}$$

Step 2: Add 1 to the 9's complement to find the 10's complement of the subtrahend.

$$\begin{array}{rcl} \text{10's complement of 23:} & 76 \\ & + 1 \\ \hline & 77 \end{array}$$

The reason to find the 9's complement is to demonstrate a similar procedure to find the 2's complement of a binary number. However, in reality, the 10's complement of 23 is equivalent to subtracting 23 from 100.

Step 3: Add 10's complement of the subtrahend (77) to the minuend (52) to subtract 23 from 52.

$$\begin{array}{r} 10\text{'s complement of 23: } 77 \\ \text{Minuend: } + 52 \\ \hline 1 \ 29 = 29 \text{ (By dropping the most significant digit)} \end{array}$$

The elimination of the most significant bit is equivalent to subtracting 100 from the sum. This is necessary to compensate for the 100 that was added to find the 10's complement of 23.

Example B.2

Perform the subtraction of the following two numbers using the borrow method and the 10's complement method: $23 - 52$.

Borrow Method

$$\begin{array}{r} \text{Minuend: } 2 \ 3 \\ \text{Subtrahend: } 5 \ 2 \end{array}$$

Step 1: The subtraction of the digits in the first place results in: $3 - 2 = 1$.

Step 2: To subtract the digits in the second place, a borrow is required from the third place. Assuming the borrow is available from the third place, the digit 5 can be subtracted from 2 as follows:

$$\begin{array}{r} 1 \ 2 \\ - 5 \\ \hline \overline{1} \ 7 \text{ (the nonexistent borrow is shown with the bar)} \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{r} \text{Result: } 23 \\ - 52 \\ \hline \overline{1} \ 71 \end{array}$$

The same result is obtained with the 10's complement method, as shown below.

10's Complement Method

Step 1: Find the 9's complement of the subtrahend (52).

$$\begin{array}{r} 9\text{'s complement of 52: } 9 \ 9 \\ - 5 \ 2 \\ \hline 4 \ 7 \end{array}$$

Step 2: Add 1 to the 9's complement to find 10's complement: $47 + 1 = 48$

Step 3: Add the 10's complement of the subtrahend to the minuend.

$$\begin{array}{r} 10\text{'s complement of 52: } 48 \\ \text{Minuend: } 23 \\ \hline \overline{71} \text{ (this is negative 29, expressed in 10's complement)} \end{array}$$

By examining these two examples, the following conclusions can be drawn, and these conclusions can be used for any number system.

1. The complement of a number is its equivalent negative number.
2. A number can be subtracted by using its complement.
3. The sum of a number and its complement results in 0 if the most significant digit of the sum is ignored.
4. When the subtrahend is larger than the minuend, the result of the 10's complement method is negative, and it is expressed in terms of 10's complement. The same result can be obtained by borrowing a digit from the most significant position.

PROCEDURE TO FIND 2'S COMPLEMENT OF A BINARY NUMBER

Step 1: Find 1's complement. This amounts to replacing 0 by 1 and 1 by 0.

Step 2: To find 2's complement, add 1 to the 1's complement. This is similar to the procedure of 10's complement.

Find the 2's complement of the binary number:

**Example
B.3**

0 0 0 1 1 1 0 0 ($1C_H$ or 28_{10})

Step 1: Find 1's complement, meaning replace 0 with 1 and 1 with 0.

1's complement = 1 1 1 0 0 0 1 1

Step 2: Add 1

$$\begin{array}{r} 1 \text{ 1 1 0 0 0 1 1} \\ + 1 \\ \hline \end{array}$$

2's complement = 1 1 1 0 0 0 1 0

By examining the result of the example, the following rule can be stated to find the 2's complement of a binary number, instead of the above procedure of the 1's complement.

Rule 1: Start at the LSB of a given number, and check all the bits to the left. Keep all the bits as they are up to and including the least significant 1.

Rule 2: After the first 1, replace all 0's with 1's and 1's with 0's.

These rules can be applied to the given binary number ($1C_H$) as illustrated below:

Binary Number: 0 0 0 1 1 1 0 0

2's complement: 1 1 1 0 0 1 0 0

The 2's complement of the number can be verified by adding the complement to the original number as follows, and the sum should be 0:

Binary Number: 0 0 0 1 1 1 0 0

2's Complement: 1 1 1 0 0 1 0 0

1 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 (ignore the MSB)

BINARY SUBTRACTION USING 2'S COMPLEMENT

The binary subtraction can be performed by using 2's complement method, and if the result is negative, it is expressed in terms of 2's complement.

Example B.4

Subtract 32_H (0011 0010) from 45_H (0100 0101).

Subtrahend: 32_H = 0 0 1 1 0 0 1 0

2's complement of 32_H = 1 1 0 0 1 1 1 0

+

Minuend: 45_H = 0 1 0 0 0 1 0 1

CY 1 1 1

0 0 0 1 0 0 1 1 = 13_H

Example B.5

Subtract 45_H (0100 0100) from 32_H (0011 0010).

Subtrahend: 45_H = 0 1 0 0 0 1 0 1

2's complement of 45_H = 1 0 1 1 1 0 1 1

+

Minuend: 32_H = 0 0 1 1 0 0 1 0

CY = 1 1 1

1 1 1 0 1 1 0 1 = ED_H

The result is negative and it is expressed in 2's complement. This can be verified by taking the 2's complement of the result; the 2's complement of the result should be 13_H as in Example 4.

Result ED_H = 1 1 1 0 1 1 0 1

Two's complement of ED_H = 0 0 0 1 0 0 1 1 = 13_H

SIGNED NUMBERS

To perform the arithmetic operations with signed numbers (positive and negative), the sign must be indicated as well as the magnitude of the number. In 8-bit microprocessors, bit D₇ is used to indicate the sign of a number; 0 in D₇ indicates a positive number and 1 indicates

a negative number. Bit D_7 can be used to indicate the sign of a number because:

1. The Z80 performs the subtraction of two numbers using 2's complement and, if the result is negative, it saves (shows) the result in the form of 2's complement.
2. 2's complements of all the 7-bit numbers have 1 in D_7 .

When a programmer uses bit D_7 to indicate the sign of a number, the magnitude of the number can be represented by seven bits (D_6 – D_0). For example, number 74_H is represented with sign as follows:

	D_7	D_6	D_5	D_4	D_3	D_2	D_1	D_0	
$+74_H =$	0	1	1	1	0	1	0	0	
$-74_H =$	1	0	0	0	1	1	0	0	(2's complement of 74_H)
	↑	↓							
	sign	magnitude							

However, the microprocessor cannot differentiate between a positive number and a negative number. For example, in the above illustration, -74_H can be interpreted as the unsigned positive number $8C_H$ or the bit pattern. It is the responsibility of the programmer to provide the necessary interpretation.

SUBTRACTION PROCESS IN THE Z80 MICROPROCESSOR

The Z80 performs the following operations when it subtracts (SUB) two binary numbers:

Step 1: Finds 1's complement of the subtrahend.

Step 2: Finds 2's complement of the subtrahend by adding 1 to the result of Step 1.

Step 3: Adds the 2's complement of the subtrahend to the minuend.

Step 4: Complements the CY flag.

These steps are internal to the microprocessor and invisible to the user; only the result is available to the user.

Show the internal steps performed by the microprocessor to subtract the following unsigned numbers:

**Example
B.6**

a. $FA_H - 62_H$

b. $62_H - FA_H$

a. Minuend: $FA_H = 1\ 1\ 1\ 1\ 1\ 0\ 1\ 0$
 Subtrahend: $62_H = 0\ 1\ 1\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 1\ 0$

$$\begin{array}{lcl}
 \text{Step 1: } 1\text{'s complement of } 62_H & = & 1 \ 0 \ 0 \ 1 \quad 1 \ 1 \ 0 \ 1 \\
 \text{Step 2: Add 1} & + & 1 \\
 2\text{'s complement of } 62_H & = & 1 \ 0 \ 0 \ 1 \quad 1 \ 1 \ 1 \ 0 \\
 \text{Step 3: Add minuend (FA}_H\text{)} & + & 1 \ 1 \ 1 \ 1 \quad 1 \ 0 \ 1 \ 0 \\
 & = & 1 \ 1 \ 0 \ 0 \ 1 \quad 1 \ 0 \ 0 \ 0 \\
 \text{Step 4: Complement CY} & & 0 \ 1 \ 0 \ 0 \ 1 \quad 1 \ 0 \ 0 \ 0 \\
 \text{Result:} & & 0 \ 1 \ 0 \ 0 \ 1 \quad 1 \ 0 \ 0 \ 0 = 98_H \\
 \text{Flags:} & & \text{CY} = 0, \text{S} = 1, \text{Z} = 0, \text{V} = 0.
 \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{lcl}
 \text{b. Minuend: } 62_H & = & 0 \ 1 \ 1 \ 0 \quad 0 \ 0 \ 1 \ 0 \\
 \text{Subtrahend: FA}_H & = & 1 \ 1 \ 1 \ 1 \quad 1 \ 0 \ 1 \ 0
 \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{lcl}
 \text{Step 1: } 1\text{'s complement of FA}_H & = & 0 \ 0 \ 0 \ 0 \quad 0 \ 1 \ 0 \ 1 \\
 \text{Step 2: Add 1} & + & 1 \\
 2\text{'s complement of FA}_H & = & 0 \ 0 \ 0 \ 0 \quad 0 \ 1 \ 1 \ 0 \\
 \text{Step 3: Add minuend (62}_H\text{)} & + & 0 \ 1 \ 1 \ 0 \quad 0 \ 0 \ 1 \ 0 \\
 & = & 0 \ 0 \ 1 \ 1 \ 0 \quad 1 \ 0 \ 0 \ 0 \\
 \text{Step 4: Complement CY} & & 1 \ 0 \ 1 \ 1 \ 0 \quad 1 \ 0 \ 0 \ 0 \\
 \text{Result:} & & 1 \ 0 \ 1 \ 1 \ 0 \quad 1 \ 0 \ 0 \ 0 = 68_H (\text{CY} = 1) \\
 \text{Flags:} & & \text{CY} = 1, \text{S} = 0, \text{Z} = 0, \text{V} = 0
 \end{array}$$

This result is negative and expressed in 2's complement of the magnitude.

Results

- $\text{FA}_H - 62_H = 98_H$ (positive), $\text{CY} = 0$, $\text{S} = 1$
- $62_H - \text{FA}_H = 68_H$ (negative), $\text{CY} = 1$, $\text{S} = 0$

These results and associated flags appear to be confusing. In Example B.6a, the result is positive but the sign flag indicates that it is negative. On the other hand, in Example B.6b, the result is negative but the sign flag indicates that it is positive. This confusion can be explained as follows:

- This subtraction is concerned with the unsigned numbers; therefore, the sign flag is irrelevant. In signed arithmetic, the number FA_H is invalid because it is an 8-bit number.
- The programmer can check whether the result indicates the true magnitude by checking the CY flag. If CY is reset, the result is positive, and if CY is set, the result is expressed in 2's complement.

Example B.7

In Example B.6a, assume that the numbers are signed numbers, and interpret the result.

Minuend: FA_H

This is a negative number because $D_7 = 1$; therefore, this must be represented in 2's complement. The magnitude of the number can be found by taking the 2's complement of

FA_H:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{FA}_H &= 1\ 1\ 1\ 1\ 1\ 0\ 1\ 0 \\ 2\text{'s complement of FA}_H &= 0\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 1\ 1\ 0 \\ &= 06_H \text{ (magnitude)} \end{aligned}$$

Subtrahend: 62_H (This is a positive number because D₇ = 0.)

The problem given in 6a can be represented as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{FA}_H - 62_H &= (-06_H) - (+62_H) \\ &= -68_H \end{aligned}$$

The final result is -68_H, which will be in the form of its 2's complement:

$$\begin{aligned} -68_H &= -(0\ 1\ 1\ 0\ 1\ 0\ 0\ 0) \\ 2\text{'s complement of } 68_H &= 1\ 0\ 0\ 1\ 1\ 0\ 0\ 0 \\ &= 98_H \end{aligned}$$

The final answer is the same as before; however, it will be interpreted as a negative number with the magnitude of 68_H. When signed numbers are used in arithmetic operations, the sign flag will indicate the proper sign of the result.

Add the following two positive numbers and interpret the sign flag: +41_H, +54_H.

**Example
B.8**

$$\begin{array}{r} 41_H = 0\ 1\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 1 \\ + \\ 54_H = 0\ 1\ 0\ 1\ 0\ 1\ 0\ 0 \\ \hline 95_H = 1\ 0\ 0\ 1\ 0\ 1\ 0\ 1 \end{array} \quad S = 1, CY = 0, Z = 0, V = 1$$

This is an addition of two positive numbers. The sign flag indicates that the sum is negative. However, the overflow (P/V = 1) flag indicates that there is an overflow; therefore, the sum is inaccurate if these are signed numbers. If this had been the sum of two unsigned numbers, the sign flag would have no significance.

MODULO-2 ARITHMETIC

B.3

Modulo-2 arithmetic is binary addition (or subtraction) without carries. There are no negative numbers, and the result can be either 0 or 1. An addition or subtraction of two numbers in Modulo-2 is similar to exclusive-ORing two logic functions as shown, and the results are the same.

$$\begin{array}{r} 1\ 0\ 1\ 0 \\ +\ 1\ 1\ 1\ 0 \\ \hline 0\ 1\ 0\ 0 \end{array} \quad \begin{array}{r} 1\ 0\ 1\ 0 \\ -\ 1\ 1\ 1\ 0 \\ \hline 0\ 1\ 0\ 0 \end{array}$$

Similarly, a division of two polynomials can be performed as follows. The example is from the Cyclic Redundancy Check (CRC—Section 15.13).

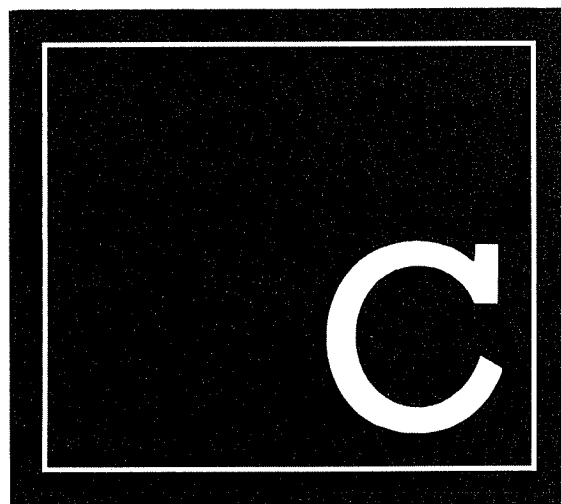
The modified polynomial for data bits 1000 1010: $x^{10} + x^8 + x^4$

The generator polynomial: $x^4 + 1$

$$\begin{array}{rcl}
 & x^6 + x^4 + x^2 & \\
 x^4 + 1 \overline{) \begin{array}{r} x^{10} + x^8 + x^4 \\ x^{10} + x^6 \end{array}} & \rightarrow \text{By multiplying } (x^4 + 1)(x^6) & \\
 \hline
 & x^8 + x^6 + x^4 & \rightarrow \text{In Modulo-2, subtraction is} \\
 & & \text{same as addition} \\
 & x^8 + x^4 & \rightarrow \text{By multiplying } (x^4 + 1)(x^4) \\
 \hline
 & x^6 & \\
 & x^6 + x^2 & \rightarrow \text{By multiplying } (x^4 + 1)(x^2) \\
 \hline
 & x^2 & \rightarrow \text{Remainder}
 \end{array}$$

American Standard Code for Information Interchange: ASCII Codes

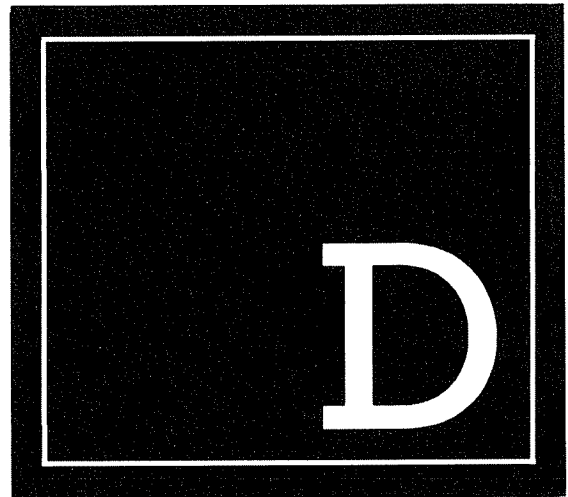
Graphic or Control		ASCII (Hexadecimal)
NUL	Null	00
SOH	Start of Heading	01
STX	Start of Text	02
ETX	End of Text	03
EOT	End of Transmission	04
ENQ	Enquiry	05
ACK	Acknowledge	06
BEL	Bell	07
BS	Backspace	08
HT	Horizontal Tabulation	09
LF	Line Feed	0A
VT	Vertical Tabulation	0B
FF	Form Feed	0C
CR	Carriage Return	0D
SO	Shift Out	0E
SI	Shift In	0F
DLE	Data Link Escape	10
DC1	Device Control 1	11
DC2	Device Control 2	12
DC3	Device Control 3	13
DC4	Device Control 4	14
NAK	Negative Acknowledge	15
SYN	Synchronous Idle	16
ETB	End of Transmission Block	17
CAN	Cancel	18
EM	End of Medium	19
SUB	Substitute	1A
ESC	Escape	1B



Graphic or Control		ASCII (Hexadecimal)
FS	File Separator	1C
GS	Group Separator	1D
RS	Record Separator	1E
US	Unit Separator	1F
SP	Space	20
!		21
"		22
#		23
\$		24
%		25

Graphic or Control	ASCII (Hexadecimal)	Graphic or Control	ASCII (Hexadecimal)
&	26	S	53
'	27	T	54
(28	U	55
)	29	V	56
*	2A	W	57
+	2B	X	58
,	2C	Y	59
-	2D	Z	5A
.	2E	[5B
/	2F	\	5C
0	30]	5D
1	31	^	5E
2	32	_	5F
3	33	`	60
4	34	a	61
5	35	b	62
6	36	c	63
7	37	d	64
8	38	e	65
9	39	f	66
:	3A	g	67
;	3B	h	68
<	3C	i	69
=	3D	j	6A
>	3E	k	6B
?	3F	l	6C
@	40	m	6D
A	41	n	6E
B	42	o	6F
C	43	p	70
D	44	q	71
E	45	r	72
F	46	s	73
G	47	t	74
H	48	u	75
I	49	v	76
J	4A	w	77
K	4B	x	78
L	4C	y	79
M	4D	z	7A
N	4E	{	7B
O	4F		7C
P	50	}	7D
Q	51	~	7E
R	52	DEL Delete	7F

Preferred Logic Symbols



THE OR GATE AS THE NEGATIVE NAND GATE

The OR gate is normally represented as shown in Figure D.1(a). The truth table in Figure D.1(c) shows that when any one of the inputs is high, the output is high; and when both inputs are low, the output is low. In applications where the output required is active high, the symbol in Figure D.1(a) accurately represents the signal states. However, in some applications, the output required is *active low* when both inputs are low. For example, in Figure 3.9(a), the control signal $\overline{\text{MEMWR}}$ is generated when both inputs $\overline{\text{MREQ}}$ and $\overline{\text{WR}}$ are low. Therefore, it is preferable to represent the active states by the Negative NAND gate as shown in Figure D.1(b). Physically, the gate in Figure D.1(a) is the same as the

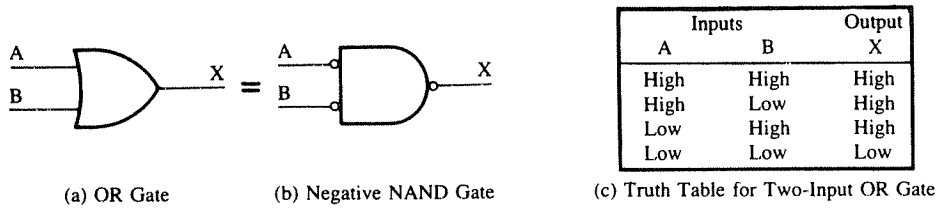


FIGURE D.1
OR Gate Logic Symbols and Truth Table

gate in D.1(b); both are OR gates. However, they will be interpreted differently. In Figure D.1(a), the gate function should be read as follows: when input A *or* input B is high, the output goes high. In Figure D.1(b), the gate function should be read as follows: when input A *and* input B are low, the output goes low.

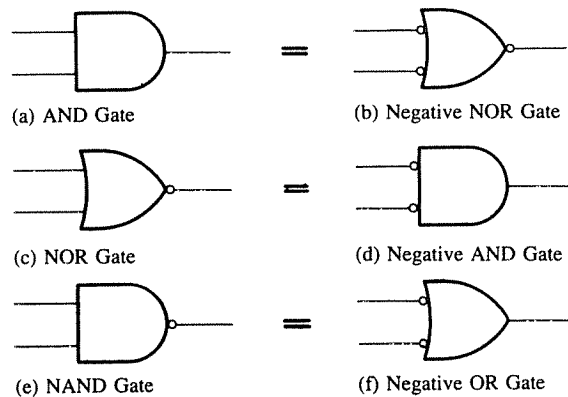
THE AND GATE AS THE NEGATIVE NOR GATE

The AND gate shown in Figure D.2(a) should be read as follows: when input A *and* input B are high, the output goes high. However, the equivalent gate shown in Figure D.2(b) should be read as follows: when input A *or* input B is low, the output goes low.

THE NOR GATE AS THE NEGATIVE AND GATE

The NOR gate in Figure D.2(c) should read as follows: when input A *or* input B is high, the output goes low. However, its equivalent gate shown in Figure D.2(d) should be read as follows: when input A *and* input B are low, the output goes high. Figure 5.4 shows the NOR gate (74LS02) connected as the Negative AND gate. It suggests that when the signal I/O write (*IOWR*) and the decoded address pulse are low, the output goes high and enables the flip-flop.

FIGURE D.2
Logic Gates and Their Equivalent Symbols



THE NAND GATE AS THE NEGATIVE OR GATE

Figure D.2(e) shows the normal representation of the NAND gate and Figure D.2(f) shows its equivalent as the Negative OR gate.

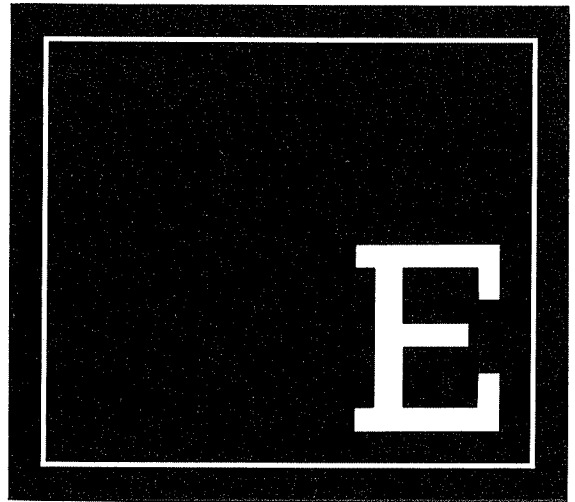
INVERTERS AND BUBBLE MATCHING

When the inverter is represented by its symbol, the bubble can be shown either in the front or in the back depending upon the active level of the input signal. For example, in Figure 2.10 the inverters to the 8-input NAND gate are shown with bubbles at the back. The bubble suggests that address lines A_{15} – A_8 should be at logic 0 to cause the output of the gate to go active low.

SUMMARY

A logic gate can be represented with different symbols. However, the symbol should be selected based on the active level of the signals. If the active level of the signals is represented, it is easy to interpret the gate function and it facilitates troubleshooting.

The Micro-Trainer*: Z80-Based Single-Board Microcomputer for Laboratory Use



THE MICRO-TRAINER SYSTEM

The Micro-Trainer is a single-board microcomputer designed with the Z80 microprocessor. The trainer system is well designed for laboratory work in colleges and universities. It includes a Hex keyboard and seven-segment LED display. The user can enter a Z80 assembly language program (in Hex code) using the keyboard or by downloading from a host microcomputer such as an IBM PC and its compatibles as described in Chapter 7 of

*The Micro-Trainer is available from CAMI Research, Arlington, MA, and information in this appendix is adapted from the Micro-Trainer manual. The main circuit board of the trainer was designed and built by the Multitech Industrial Corporation and is separately available as a training system under the trade name "Micro-Professor."

this book. The user can write Z80 assembly language programs using an editor, assemble it using a cross-assembler, and enter the code in R/W memory of the Micro-Trainer using the program called Downloader through a serial link; such a facility, called the ZAD system, is available from CAMI Research and can be added to the Micro-Trainer.

Figure E.1 shows the functional block diagram of the Micro-Trainer system. It includes the Z80 microprocessor, the 2532 4K-byte EPROM, the 6116 2K-byte R/W memory with the memory map from 1800_H to 1FFF_H, Hex keyboard, and six seven-segment LEDs for display. The keyboard enables the user to enter and store the Z80 assembly language program (Hex machine code) in R/W memory and execute the program. When a program (Hex machine code) is being entered, memory addresses and data are displayed by the LED display.

KEYBOARD AND DISPLAY

The keyboard has 36 keys, of which four are directly connected to system hardware, and the remaining 32 keys are connected in the matrix format. The display includes six seven-segment LEDs, four for memory addresses and two for data bytes. The keyboard and the LED display are scanned, and they are connected in the format as shown in Figure 17.14 using three ports of the programmable device 8255; Port C is common to the digit driver of the display and the rows of the keyboard.

The keys are divided into two primary groups: 20 function keys and 16 Hex keys which can also be used for register examine functions (Figure E.1). The function group includes features such as decrementing a memory address, inserting or deleting bytes from the stored program, moving blocks of data from one area of memory to another, and setting and clearing breakpoints. We will illustrate some of the commonly used keys in the following example.

Example E.1

The following program loads two bytes, 45_H and 4F_H, into registers A and B, respectively, and adds the bytes. The sum is stored in the accumulator. Illustrate how to enter this program in R/W memory of the Micro-Trainer, starting at location 1820_H, how to execute the program, and how to verify the result.

Solution

1. The steps in entering the program are as follows:

Key Sequence	Display at LED		Comments
	Memory Field	Data Field	
Press RESET	1800	X X	;Reset the system and display the first R/W memory location
ADDR		;Address function—subsequent Hex keys will be interpreted as memory address

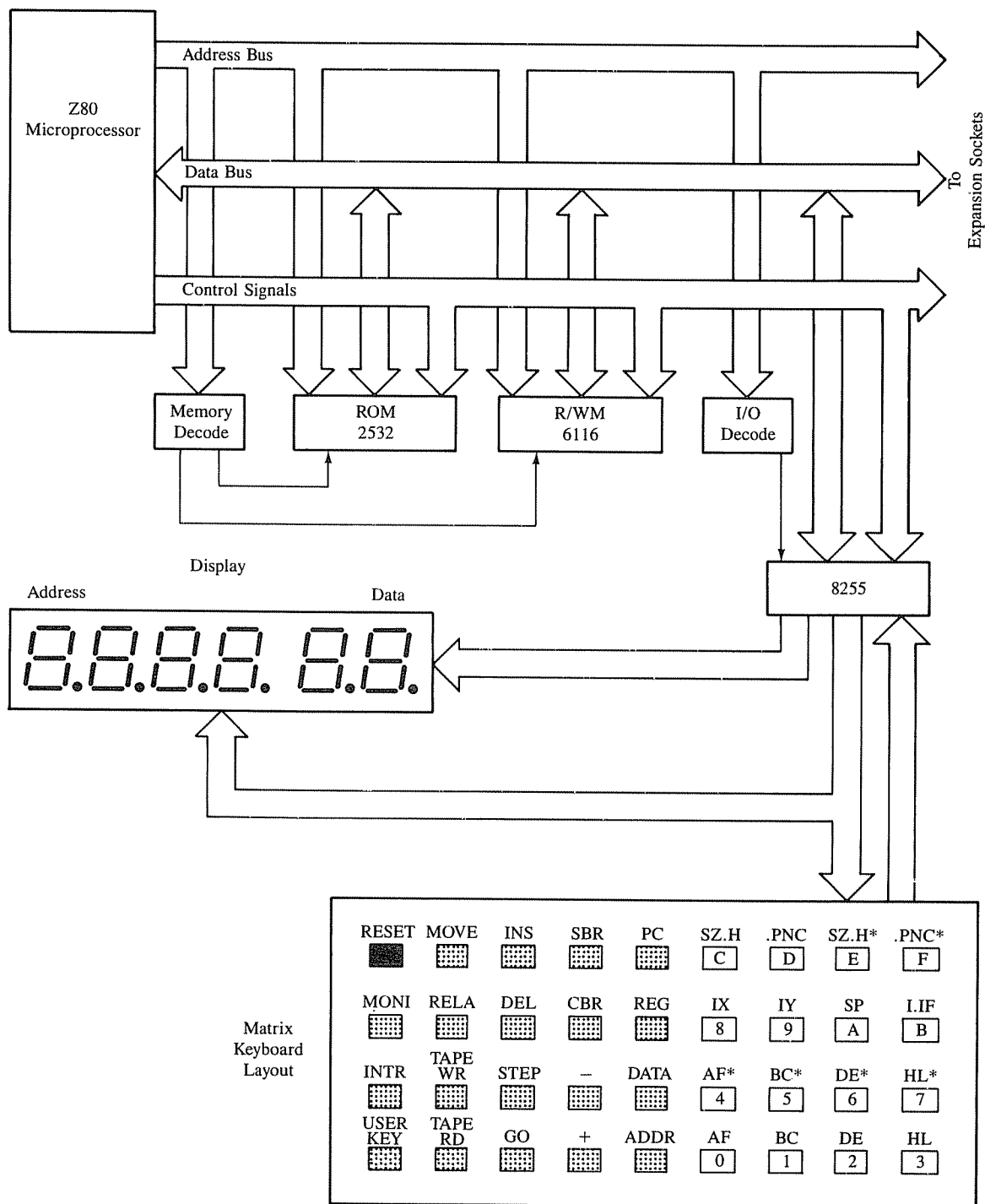


FIGURE E.1
The Micro-Trainer Functional Block Diagram

SOURCE: Courtesy of CAMI Research Inc.

1 8 2 0	1820	X X	;Enter address desired
DATA	1820	· ·	;Data—subsequent Hex keys will be interpreted as data
3 E	1820	3 E	;LD A, 45H—Load accumulator
+	1821	X X	;Next memory location
4 5	1821	4 5	;First data byte in A
+	1822	X X	;Next location
0 6	1822	0 6	;LD B, 4FH—Load register B
+	1823	X X	;Next location
4 F	1823	4 F	;Second byte in B
+	1824	X X	;Next location
8 0	1824	8 0	;ADD A, B—Add register B to A
+	1825	X X	;Next location
7 6	1825	7 6	;HALT—End of program

2. To execute the program, the steps are as follows:

RESET	1800	X X	;Reset the system
ADDR 1 8 2 0	1820	3 E	;Enter the address where program begins
GO			;Execute the program

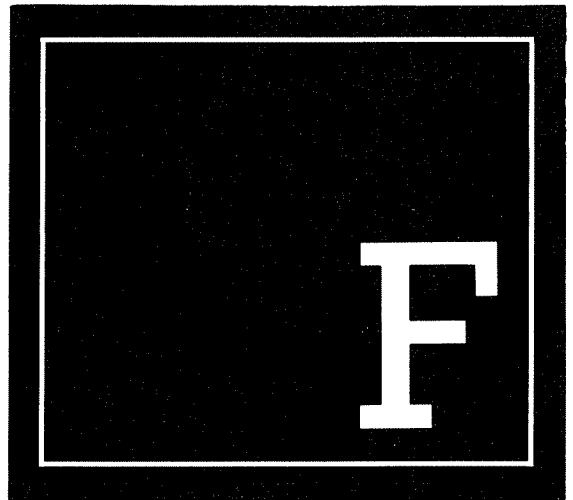
3. To examine the result, press the following keys:

RESET	1800	X X	
REG	r E G -		;Examine register
AF (Key 0)	94 84	A F	;Display contents of accumulator and flags

4. The sum of the two bytes is 94_H, which is displayed at the left, followed by the flag bits. This result sets Sign and Overflow flags; the flag byte is 84_H as shown.

Comment: We selected 1820_H as the starting location to demonstrate how to enter codes in any memory location. Ordinarily, a program is stored starting at location 1800_H, and you need not use the ADDR key to specify the starting address.

Z80 Instructional Summary

**Key:**

n = 8-bit number () = contents as a pointer to memory or I/O

nn = 16-bit number

d = 7-bit displacement (express in 2's complement for backward displacement.)

e = 7-bit displacement in reference to program counter (express in 2's complement for backward displacement.)

Mnemonic			Mnemonic			Mnemonic		
		Hex			Hex			Hex
ADC	A,A	8F	CALL	C,nn	DC 16-bit	HALT		76
ADC	A,B	88	CALL	M,nn	FC 16-bit	IM	0	ED 46
ADC	A,C	89	CALL	NC,nn	D4 16-bit	IM	1	ED 56
ADC	A,D	8A	CALL	NZ,nn	C4 16-bit	IM	2	ED 5E
ADC	A,E	8B	CALL	P,nn	F4 16-bit	IN	A,(n)	DB 8-bit
ADC	A,H	8C	CALL	PE,nn	EC 16-bit	IN	A,(C)	ED 78
ADC	A,L	8D	CALL	PO,nn	E4 16-bit	IN	B,(C)	ED 40
ADC	A,n	CE 8-bit	CALL	Z,nn	CC 16-bit	IN	C,(C)	ED 48
ADC	A,(HL)	8E	CCF		3F	IN	D,(C)	ED 50
ADC	A,(IX+d)	DD 8E d	CP	A	BF	IN	E,(C)	ED 58
ADC	A,(IY+d)	FD 8E d	CP	B	B8	IN	F,(C)	ED 70
ADC	HL,BC	ED 4A	CP	C	B9	IN	H,(C)	ED 60
ADC	HL,DE	ED 5A	CP	D	BA	IN	L,(C)	ED 68
ADC	HL,HL	ED 6A	CP	E	BB	INC	A	3C
ADC	HL,SP	ED 7A	CP	H	BC	INC	B	04
ADD	A,A	87	CP	L	BD	INC	BC	03
ADD	A,B	80	CP	n	FE 8-bit	INC	C	0C
ADD	A,C	81	CP	(HL)	BE	INC	D	14
ADD	A,D	82	CP	(IX+d)	DD BE d	INC	DE	13
ADD	A,E	83	CP	(IY+d)	FD BE d	INC	E	1C
ADD	A,H	84	CPD		ED A9	INC	H	24
ADD	A,L	85	CPDR		ED B9	INC	HL	23
ADD	A,n	C6 8-bit	CPI		ED A1	INC	IX	DD 23
ADD	A,(HL)	86	CPIR		ED B1	INC	IY	FD 23
ADD	A,(IX+d)	DD 86 d	CPL		2F	INC	L	2C
ADD	A,(IY+d)	FD 86 d	DAA		27	INC	SP	33
ADD	HL,BC	09	DEC	A	3D	INC	(HL)	34
ADD	HL,DE	19	DEC	B	05	INC	(IX+d)	DD 34 d
ADD	HL,HL	29	DEC	BC	0B	INC	(IY+d)	FD 34 d
ADD	HL,SP	39	DEC	C	0D	IND		ED AA
ADD	IX,BC	DD 09	DEC	D	15	INDR		ED BA
ADD	IX,DE	DD 19	DEC	DE	1B	INI		ED A2
ADD	IX,IX	DD 29	DEC	E	1D	INIR		ED B2
ADD	IX,SP	DD 39	DEC	H	25	JP	nn	C3 16-bit
ADD	IY,BC	FD 09	DEC	HL	2B	JP	(HL)	E9
ADD	IY,DE	FD 19	DEC	IX	DD 2B	JP	(IX)	DD E9
ADD	IY,IY	FD 29	DEC	IY	FD 2B	JP	(IY)	FD E9
ADD	IY,SP	FD 39	DEC	L	2D	JP	C,nn	DA 16-bit
AND	A	A7	DEC	SP	3B	JP	M,nn	FA 16-bit
AND	B	A0	DEC	(HL)	35	JP	NC,nn	D2 16-bit
AND	C	A1	DEC	(IX+d)	DD 35 d	JP	NZ,nn	C2 16-bit
AND	D	A2	DEC	(IY+d)	FD 35 d	JP	P,nn	F2 16-bit
AND	E	A3	DI		F3	JP	PE,nn	EA 16-bit
AND	H	A4	DJNZ	e	10 e	JP	PO,nn	E2 16-bit
AND	L	A5	EI		FB	JP	Z,nn	CA 16-bit
AND	n	E6 8-bit	EX	(SP),HL	E3	JR	C,e	38 e
AND	(HL)	A6	EX	(SP),IX	DD E3	JR	NC,e	30 e
AND	(IX+d)	DD A6 d	EX	(SP),IY	FD E3	JR	NZ,e	20 e
AND	(IY+d)	FD A6 d	EX	AF,AF'	08	JR	Z,e	28 e
BIT	b,s	see pp. 568-69	EX	DE,HL	EB	JR	e	18 e
CALL	nn	CD 16-bit	EXX		D9	LD	A,A	7F
						LD	A,B	78

Mnemonic	Hex	Mnemonic	Hex	Mnemonic	Hex
LD A,C	79	LD E,A	5F	LD (HL),D	72
LD A,D	7A	LD E,B	58	LD (HL),E	73
LD A,E	7B	LD E,C	59	LD (HL),H	74
LD A,H	7C	LD E,D	5A	LD (HL),L	75
LD A,I	ED 57	LD E,E	5B	LD (HL),n	36 8-bit
LD A,L	7D	LD E,H	5C	LD (IX+d),A	DD 77 d
LD A,n	3E 8-bit	LD E,L	5D	LD (IX+d),B	DD 70 d
LD A,R	ED 5F	LD E,n	1E 8-bit	LD (IX+d),C	DD 71 d
LD A,(BC)	0A	LD E,(HL)	5E	LD (IX+d),D	DD 72 d
LD A,(DE)	1A	LD E,(IX+d)	DD 5E d	LD (IX+d),E	DD 73 d
LD A,(HL)	7E	LD E,(IY+d)	FD 5E d	LD (IX+d),H	DD 74 d
LD A,(IX+d)	DD 7E d	LD H,A	67	LD (IX+d),L	DD 75 d
LD A,(IY+d)	FD 7E d	LD H,B	60	LD (IX+d),n	DD 36 d 8-bit
LD A,(nn)	3A 16-bit	LD H,C	61	LD (IY+d),A	FD 77 d
LD B,A	47	LD H,D	62	LD (IY+d),B	FD 70 d
LD B,B	40	LD H,E	63	LD (IY+d),C	FD 71 d
LD B,C	41	LD H,H	64	LD (IY+d),D	FD 72 d
LD B,D	42	LD H,L	65	LD (IY+d),E	FD 73 d
LD B,E	43	LD H,n	26 8-bit	LD (IY+d),H	FD 74 d
LD B,H	44	LD H,(HL)	66	LD (IY+d),L	FD 75 d
LD B,L	45	LD H,(IX+d)	DD 66 d	LD (IY+d),n	FD 36 d 8-bit
LD B,n	06 8-bit	LD H,(IY+d)	FD 66 d	LD (nn),A	32 16-bit
LD B,(HL)	46	LD HL,nn	21 16-bit	LD (nn),BC	ED 43 16-bit
LD B,(IX+d)	DD 46 d	LD HL,(nn)	2A 16-bit	LD (nn),DE	ED 53 16-bit
LD B,(IY+d)	FD 46 d	LD I,A	ED 47	LD (nn),HL	22 16-bit
LD BC,nn	01 16-bit	LD IX,nn	DD 21 16-bit	LD (nn),IX	DD 22 16-bit
LD BC,(nn)	ED 4B 16-bit	LD IX,(nn)	DD 2A 16-bit	LD (nn),IY	FD 22 16-bit
LD C,A	4F	LD IY,nn	FD 21 16-bit	LD (nn),SP	ED 73 16-bit
LD C,B	48	LD IY,(nn)	FD 2A 16-bit	LDD	ED A8
LD C,C	49	LD L,A	6F	LDDR	ED B8
LD C,D	4A	LD L,B	68	LDI	ED A0
LD C,E	4B	LD L,C	69	LDI	ED B0
LD C,H	4C	LD L,D	6A	LDI	ED B0
LD C,L	4D	LD L,E	6B	LDI	ED B0
LD C,n	0E 8-bit	LD L,H	6C	LDI	ED B0
LD C,(HL)	4E	LD L,L	6D	LDI	ED B0
LD C,(IX+d)	DD 4E d	LD L,n	2E 8-bit	LDI	ED B0
LD C,(IY+d)	FD 4E d	LD L,(HL)	6E	LDI	ED B0
LD D,A	57	LD L,(IX+d)	DD 6E d	LDI	ED B0
LD D,B	50	LD L,(IY+d)	FD 6E d	LDI	ED B0
LD D,C	51	LD R,A	ED 4F	LDI	ED B0
LD D,D	52	LD SP,HL	F9	LDI	ED B0
LD D,E	53	LD SP,IX	DD F9	LDI	ED B0
LD D,H	54	LD SP,IY	FD F9	LDI	ED B0
LD D,L	55	LD SP,nn	31 16-bit	LDI	ED B0
LD D,n	16 8-bit	LD SP,(nn)	ED 7B 16-bit	LDI	ED B0
LD D,(HL)	56	LD (BC),A	02	LDI	ED B0
LD D,(IX+d)	DD 56 d	LD (DE),A	12	LDI	ED B0
LD D,(IY+d)	FD 56 d	LD (HL),A	77	LDI	ED B0
LD DE,nn	11 16-bit	LD (HL),B	70	LDI	ED B0
LD DE,(nn)	ED 5B 16-bit	LD (HL),C	71	LDI	ED B0

Mnemonic	Hex	Mnemonic	Hex	Mnemonic	Hex
OUT (C),E	ED 59	RLCA	07	SLA B	CB 20
OUT (C),H	ED 61	RLD	ED 6F	SLA C	CB 21
OUT (C),L	ED 69	RR A	CB 1F	SLA D	CB 22
OUT (n),A	D3 8-bit	RR B	CB 18	SLA E	CB 23
OUTD	ED AB	RR C	CB 19	SLA H	CB 24
OUTI	ED A3	RR D	CB 1A	SLA L	CB 25
POP AF	F1	RR E	CB 1B	SLA (HL)	CB 26
POP BC	C1	RR H	CB 1C	SLA (IX+d)	DD CB d 26
POP DE	D1	RR L	CB 1D	SLA (IY+d)	FD CB d 26
POP HL	E1	RR (HL)	CB 1E	SRA A	CB 2F
POP IX	DD E1	RR (IX+d)	DD CB d 1E	SRA B	CB 28
POP IY	FD E1	RR (IY+d)	FD CB d 1E	SRA C	CB 29
PUSH AF	F5	RRA	1F	SRA D	CB 2A
PUSH BC	C5	RRC A	CB 0F	SRA E	CB 2B
PUSH DE	D5	RRC B	CB 08	SRA H	CB 2C
PUSH HL	E5	RRC C	CB 09	SRA L	CB 2D
PUSH IX	DD E5	RRC D	CB 0A	SRA (HL)	CB 2E
PUSH IY	FD E5	RRC E	CB 0B	SRA (IX+d)	DD CB d 2E
RES b,s	see pp. 604-5	RRC H	CB 0C	SRA (IY+d)	FD CB d 2E
RET	C9	RRC L	CB 0D	SRL A	CB 3F
RET C	D8	RRC (HL)	CB 0E	SRL B	CB 38
RET M	F8	RRC (IX+d)	DD CB d 0E	SRL C	CB 39
RET NC	D0	RRC (IY+d)	FD CB d 0E	SRL D	CB 3A
RET NZ	C0	RRCA	0F	SRL E	CB 3B
RET P	F0	RRD	ED 67	SRL H	CB 3C
RET PE	E8	RST 00H	C7	SRL L	CB 3D
RET PO	E0	RST 08H	CF	SRL (HL)	CB 3E
RET Z	C8	RST 10H	D7	SRL (IX+d)	DD CB d 3E
RETI	ED 4D	RST 18H	DF	SRL (IY+d)	FD CB d 3E
RETN	ED 45	RST 20H	E7	SUB A	97
RL A	CB 17	RST 28H	EF	SUB B	90
RL B	CB 10	RST 30H	F7	SUB C	91
RL C	CB 11	RST 38H	FF	SUB D	92
RL D	CB 12	SBC A,A	9F	SUB E	93
RL E	CB 13	SBC A,B	98	SUB H	94
RL H	CB 14	SBC A,C	99	SUB L	95
RL L	CB 15	SBC A,D	9A	SUB n	D6 8-bit
RL (HL)	CB 16	SBC A,E	9B	SUB (HL)	96
RL (IX+d)	DD CB d 16	SBC A,H	9C	SUB (IX+d)	DD 96 d
RL (IY+d)	FD CB d 16	SBC A,L	9D	SUB (IY+d)	FD 96 d
RLA	17	SBC A,n	DE 8-bit	XOR A	AF
RLC A	CB 07	SBC A,(HL)	9E	XOR B	A8
RLC B	CB 00	SBC A,(IX+d)	DD 9E d	XOR C	A9
RLC C	CB 01	SBC A,(IY+d)	FD 9E d	XOR D	AA
RLC D	CB 02	SBC HL,BC	ED 42	XOR E	AB
RLC E	CB 03	SBC HL,DE	ED 52	XOR H	AC
RLC H	CB 04	SBC HL,HL	ED 62	XOR L	AD
RLC L	CB 05	SBC HL,SP	ED 72	XOR n	EE 8-bit
RLC (HL)	CB 06	SCF	37	XOR (HL)	AE
RLC (IX+d)	DD CB d 06	SET b,s	see p. 615	XOR (IX+d)	DD AE d
RLC (IY+d)	FD CB d 06	SLA A	CB 27	XOR (IY+d)	FD AE d

SUMMARY OF FLAG OPERATION

Instructions	D ₇ S	Z	H	P/V	N	D ₀ C	Comments		
ADD A, s; ADC A, s	‡	‡	X	‡	X	V	0	‡	8-bit add or add with carry.
SUB s; SBC A, s; CP s; NEG	‡	‡	X	‡	X	V	1	‡	8-bit subtract, subtract with carry, compare and negate accumulator.
AND s	‡	‡	X	1	X	P	0	0	Logical operation.
OR s, XOR s	‡	‡	X	0	X	P	0	0	Logical operation.
INC s	‡	‡	X	‡	X	V	0	•	8-bit increment.
DEC s	‡	‡	X	‡	X	V	1	•	8-bit decrement.
ADD DD, ss	•	•	X	X	X	•	0	‡	16-bit add.
ADC HL, ss	‡	‡	X	X	X	V	0	‡	16-bit add with carry
SBC HL, ss	‡	‡	X	X	X	V	1	‡	16-bit subtract with carry.
RLA; RLCA; RRA; RRCA	•	•	X	0	X	•	0	‡	Rotate accumulator.
RL m; RLC m; RR m; RRC m; SLA m; SRA m; SRL m	‡	‡	X	0	X	P	0	‡	Rotate and shift locations.
RLD; RRD	‡	‡	X	0	X	P	0	•	Rotate digit left and right.
DAA	‡	‡	X	‡	X	P	•	‡	Decimal adjust accumulator.
CPL	•	•	X	1	X	•	1	•	Complement accumulator.
SCF	•	•	X	0	X	•	0	1	Set carry.
CCF	•	•	X	X	X	•	0	‡	Complement carry.
IN r (C)	‡	‡	X	0	X	P	0	•	Input register indirect
INI; IND; OUTI; OUTD	X	‡	X	X	X	X	1	•	Block input and output. Z = 1 if B ≠ 0, otherwise Z = 0
INIR; INDR; OTIR; OTDR	X	1	X	X	X	X	1	•	Block input and output. Z = 1 if B ≠ 0, otherwise Z = 0
LDI; LDD	X	X	X	0	X	‡	0	•	Block transfer instructions. P/V = 1 if BC ≠ 0, otherwise P/V = 0
LDIR; LDDR	X	X	X	0	X	0	0	•	Block transfer instructions. P/V = 1 if BC ≠ 0, otherwise P/V = 0
CPI; CPIR; CPD; CPDR	X	‡	X	X	X	‡	1	•	Block search instructions. Z = 1 if A = (HL), otherwise Z = 0. P/V = 1 if BC ≠ 0, otherwise P/V = 0.
LD A, I; LD A, R	‡	‡	X	0	X	IFF	0	•	IFF, the content of the interrupt enable flip-flop, (IFF ₂), is copied into the P/V flag
BIT b, s	X	‡	X	1	X	X	0	•	The state of bit b of location s is copied into the Z flag

SYMBOLIC NOTATION

Symbol	Operation	Symbol	Operation
S	Sign flag. S = 1 if the MSB of the result is 1.	‡	The flag is affected according to the result of the operation.
Z	Zero flag. Z = 1 if the result of the operation is 0.	•	The flag is unchanged by the operation.
P/V	Parity or overflow flag. Parity (P) and overflow (V) share the same flag. Logical operations affect this flag with the parity of the result while arithmetic operations affect this flag with the overflow of the result. If P/V holds parity: P/V = 1 if the result of the operation is even; P/V = 0 if result is odd. If P/V holds overflow, P/V = 1 if the result of the operation produced an overflow. If P/V does not hold overflow, P/V = 0.	0	The flag is reset by the operation.
H*	Half-carry flag. H = 1 if the add or subtract operation produced a carry into, or borrow from, bit 4 of the accumulator.	1	The flag is set by the operation.
N*	Add/Subtract flag. N = 1 if the previous operation was a subtract.	X	The flag is indeterminate.
C	Carry/Link flag. C = 1 if the operation produced a carry from the MSB of the operand or result.	V	P/V flag affected according to the overflow result of the operation.
		P	P/V flag affected according to the parity result of the operation.
		r	Any one of the CPU registers A, B, C, D, E, H, L.
		s	Any 8-bit location for all the addressing modes allowed for the particular instruction.
		ss	Any 16-bit location for all the addressing modes allowed for that instruction.
		ii	Any one of the two index registers IX or IY.
		R	Refresh counter.
		n	8-bit value in range < 0, 255 >.
		nn	16-bit value in range < 0, 65535 >.

*H and N flags are used in conjunction with the decimal adjust instruction (DAA) to properly correct the result into packed BCD format following addition or subtraction using operands with packed BCD format.

Index

- Absolute jump instructions, 182–86
 - conditional absolute jump, 183
 - unconditional absolute jump, 183
- Accumulator, 52
 - data copy instructions, 176–77
 - rotate instructions, 213–15
- ADBYTE subroutine, 268, 269
- ADC instructions, 265, 266, 562–63
- A/D converters. *See* Analog-to-digital converters
- ADD instructions, 130–31, 134, 147, 178, 267, 563, 564–66
- Addition, 134
 - example program, 193–94
 - instructions for, 177–78
 - 16-bit operations, addition with carry, 265
 - two hex numbers, example programs, 139–43, 162–65
- Address bus, 27–28
 - in MPU design, 498–99
 - Z80, 59
- Address decoding
 - memory, design, 480, 482–83
 - memory interfacing, 86–87
- Addressing modes, 137–39
 - listing of, 138
- Add/subtract flag, 56
- Alphanumeric codes, 19
- Alternate registers, 55
- ALU. *See* Arithmetic logic unit
- Analog signal processor, Intel 2920, 540
- Analog-to-digital converters, 117
- AND gate, 634
- AND instructions, 135, 138, 148, 208, 209, 566–68
- Appliance control, in memory-mapped I/O interfacing, 113–16
- Arithmetic logic unit (ALU), 6, 8, 30
- Arithmetic operations, 133–34, 147, 177–82
 - addition, 134
 - instructions for, 177–78
 - division (binary), example program, 271–74
 - flags, 180–82
 - increment/decrement, 134
 - instructions for, 178
 - Modulo-2 arithmetic, 629–30
 - multibyte numbers, adding, example program, 268–69
 - multiplication (binary), example program, 270–71
 - 1's and 2's complement, 134
 - instructions for, 179
 - signed numbers, 181–82, 626–27
 - 16-bit operations, 265–67
 - addition with carry, 265
 - subtraction with carry, 266–67
 - software project, example program, 282–85
 - subtraction, 134, 627
 - binary subtraction, 626
 - decimal subtraction, 623–25
 - instructions for, 177–78
 - See also* specific operations.
- ASCBIN subroutine, 280–81, 285
- ASCII, 19, 152
 - ASCII codes, listing of (Appendix C), 631
 - conversion from binary, example program, 281–82
 - conversion to binary, example program, 279–81
 - software design project, 282–85
- ASCII keyboard, 9, 152, 280
- ASCII subroutine, 282, 285
- ASM extension, 158
- Assembler directives, 161–62
 - DB, 161
 - DW, 161
 - END, 161, 163
 - EQU, 161, 163
 - ORG, 161, 163
- Assemblers
 - advantages in use of, 162
 - assembler directives, 161–62
 - listing of, 161
 - assembler statements, 160
 - CP/M, 157
 - error messages, 164
 - precautions, in program writing, 165
 - two-pass assembler, 164
 - use of, example program, 162–63
- Assembler statements, 160
- Assembling the code, 139, 140–41
- Assembly language programming, 17, 18, 19–20, 129–49
 - addressing modes, 137–39
 - listing of, 138
 - assemblers, 159–65
 - assembling the code, 139, 140–41
 - binary division, 271–74
 - binary multiplication, 269–71
 - example program, 139–42
 - assembling the code, 140–41
 - execution of program, 142
 - program documentation, 142–43
 - storing in memory, 141–42
 - writing format, 142–43
 - flowcharting, 143–46
 - instructions, 130–39, 170–89
 - programming statements, 160
 - repetitive techniques, 189–90
 - 16-bit operations, 264–67
 - software design project, 282–85
 - stack, 233, 234–41
 - subroutines, 241–58
 - See also* specific topics.
- Assembly process, 159–60
 - assembling the code, 139, 140–41
 - source program, statements used in, 160
- Asynchronous format, 290, 413, 420–21
- Motorola MC68000, signals, 548
- software controlled, 422–25
 - serial data reception, 425
 - serial data transmission, 422–23
- Backward jump, 186, 187
- BAK file, 158
- BASE subroutine, 282
- Baud, 411
 - baud generator design, example program, 395–97
 - baud requirements, 414–15
- BCD
 - BCD operations, 53, 55
 - flags, 55
 - BCD subroutine, 278–79
 - codes, table look-up technique, 255
 - conversion from binary, example program, 277–79, 622–23
 - conversion to binary, example program, 274–77
 - counter, example program, 252–57
 - packed BCD, 253
- BDOS, 155
- Bidirectional data transfer, example program, 359–66
- Binary code
 - assembling the code, 139, 141
 - translated from hex, 141

- Binary Code Decimal (BCD)
 - operations. *See* BCD
- Binary division, 271–74
 - example program, 271–74
- Binary multiplication, 269–71
 - example program, 270–71
- Binary subtraction, 626
- BINASC subroutine, 281–82
- BINBCD subroutine, 278
- BIOS, 155
- Bit, addressing mode, 138
- Bit and byte processor, MCS-51, 539–40
- BIT instructions, 135, 149, 216, 568–69
- Bit manipulation, 135, 148, 213
 - bit reset, 135
 - instructions for, 216
 - bit set, 135
 - instructions for, 216
 - bit test, 135
 - instructions for, 216
 - 16-bit operations, 267
- Bit mode, Mode 3, PIO, 333, 344–48
- Bit rotation, 135, 148, 149
- Bits, 4–5
- Block transfers, example program, 198–99
- Branching operations, 136, 148, 182–87
 - call/return, 136
 - instructions for, 182–87
 - jump, 136
 - absolute jump instructions, 182–86
 - relative jump instructions, 186–87
 - restart, 136
- Breakpoint technique
 - dynamic debugging, 196–97
 - restart (RST) instruction, 322–24
- BSR mode, Intel 8255A, 366, 371, 373
- Bubble matching, 635
- Bus, 8, 10
 - in MPU design, 504
 - See also* Address bus; Control bus; Data bus.
- Business microcomputers, 13
- Bus interface standards, 554–57
 - bus signals, groups of, 555
 - defining standards, 554
 - GPIO interface bus, 557
 - bus signals, 557–58
 - IBM PC bus, 555–56
 - multibus, 556–57
 - S-100 bus, 554–56
 - interface, 555–56
 - STD bus, 555
- Bytes, 16
 - adding, example program, 193–94, 195
 - instructions, 1-byte through 4-byte, 130–31
 - transfer to memory, 112
- CACODE, 354
- CALL instructions, 136, 148, 241–42, 297, 569–70
- Call/return, 136
- CALL subroutine, 241, 242, 243
- Carry flag, 55, 183, 225, 274
- CCF instructions, 267, 570
- CCP, 156
- Central processing unit (CPU),
 - explanation of, 6
- CHAR subroutine, 283–84
- Check sum, error checks, data
 - transmission, 416
- Clock signals, microprocessor unit (MPU), 29–30
- CMOS microprocessor, 551
- Code conversions. *See* ASCII; BCD; Number conversion
- COM files, 157, 158, 165
- COMMAND instruction, 159, 428
- Comments, 143, 160
- Compare, 135
 - instructions for, 212–13
 - special instructions, 223–24
- Comparing numbers, search for
 - maximum number, example programs, 217–18, 224–25
- Compiler, use of, 20
- Complement Carry flag, 54, 267, 570
- Complement operations. *See* 1's and 2's complement
- Computers
 - types of, 11–15
 - business microcomputers, 13
 - home computers, 14
 - mainframe computers, 12
 - microcomputers, 12
 - midcomputers, 12
 - minicomputers, 12
 - single-board microcomputers, 14–15
 - single-chip microcomputers (microcontrollers), 15
- Conditional absolute jump, 183
- Conditional relative jump, 186
- Control bus, in MPU design, 501
- Controllers, Z80 DMA controller, 487–91
- Control signals, 28
 - counter/timer circuit (CTC), 384, 388, 402
- serial I/O mode
 - Intel 8251A, 428
 - Z80 and DART, 441–43
 - Z80, 59, 68–69
- Control unit, 9
- Control words
 - channel control word, 389–92, 397, 398, 399, 403
 - Intel 8255A, 369–70, 371, 373, 374, 378
 - PIO, 337–39, 347–48
- Coprocessing, Intel 8086/8088, 545
- COPY, 159
- Counter/timer circuit (CTC), 383–407
 - channel control word, 389–92, 397, 398, 399, 403
 - control signals, 384, 388, 402
 - counter mode, 395, 398–401
 - use with interrupt, example program, 398–401
 - Intel 8253 interval timer/counter, 401–7
 - compared to Z80 CTC, 407
 - control signals, 402
 - control words, 403
 - data bus buffer, 402
 - programming of, 403–5
 - as square wave generator, 405–7
 - interrupts, 392–94, 400
 - interrupt priorities, 394
 - programming of, 389–92
 - programmable modes, 389
 - timer mode, 395
 - baud generator design, example program, 395–97
- Counting, 189
- CP instructions, 135, 148, 212, 571–72
- CPD instructions, 223, 572
- CPDR instructions, 149, 223, 573
- CPI instructions, 223, 224–25, 574
- CPIR instructions, 223, 574–75
- CPL instructions, 134, 179, 575
- CP/M, 155–58
 - BDOS, 155
 - BIOS, 155
 - CCP, 156
 - program assembly, 158
 - files resulting from, 158
 - utility programs, 156–57
 - assemblers, 157
 - debugger, 157
 - editor, 156–57
 - linking loading, 157
- CRIR, 223
- Cross-assemblers, and MS-DOS, 159

- Cyclic redundancy check, error checks, data transmission, 416–17
- DAA instructions, 252, 253–54, 575–76
- Daisy chain format, 394
 - PIO, 343–44
- DART. *See* Z80 and DART
- Data acquisition, flowcharts, 191, 192
- Data bus, 28
 - in MPU design, 499, 501
 - Z80, 59
- Data copy operations, 132–33, 146–47, 170–77
 - addressing modes, 137
 - example program, 190–92
 - 16-bit operations, 264
 - types of
 - among registers, 170–72
 - between accumulator and I/Os, 176–77
 - from and into memory, 172–75
- Data processing, flowcharts, 191
- Data transfer
 - bidirectional data transfer, 343, 378
 - example program, 359–66
- Direct Memory Access (DMA), 491–92
 - microprocessor controlled
 - data transfer with handshake signals, 291–92
 - data transfer with interrupt, 291
 - data transfer with status check (polling), 291
 - data transfer with WAIT signal, 291
 - unconditional data transfer, 291
 - peripheral-controlled, 292
- DB, assembler directive, 161
- DBONCE, 352
- Debugging, 194–97, 221–23
 - common errors, 194, 197, 221, 296
 - debugger, CP/M, 157
 - dynamic debugging, 194, 196–97
 - breakpoint, 196–97
 - register examine, 196
 - single step, 196
 - example program for, 221–23
 - modular programs, 258
 - static debugging, 194, 196
 - tools for
 - disassembly, 533
 - in-line assembly, 533
 - real-time trace, 533
 - register display, 533
- Decimal subtraction, 623–25
- DEC instructions, 134, 147, 178, 577
- Decision making
 - flags, use of, 180–82
 - flowcharts, 191
- Decoding
 - absolute decoding, 92
 - address decoding, 86–87
 - decoding instructions, microprocessor, 30
 - linear decoding, 92
- Defining standards, 554
- DELAY subroutine, 249, 250, 256
- Delimiters, 160
 - types of, 160
- Designing systems
 - memory system, 478–84
 - single-board microcomputer, 496–534
 - See also* specific systems.
- Destination, 132
- Diagnostic routine, 94–95
 - input/output (I/O) interfacing, 120
 - instructions in, 94–95
 - memory interfacing, 94–95
- Digit driver, 509
- DIGIT subroutine, 284
- DI instructions, 136, 578
- DIR, 159
- Directives, 160
- Direct Memory Access (DMA), 292, 484–91
 - data transfer, 491–92
 - requirements of, 486
 - sequential transfer, 486
 - simultaneous transfer, 486
 - Z80 DMA controller, 487–91
 - interfacing for, 489–90
 - programming of, 490–91
 - signals for, 488–89
- Disable Interrupt, 296
- Disassembly, debugging tool, 533
- Display buffer, 528
- Display module, software design, 527–28
- DIV8 subroutine, 273
- DIVIDE subroutine, 273, 274, 277
- Division, binary division, 271–74
- DJNZ d, 197, 198
- DJNZ instructions, 149, 578
- Documentation, for subroutines, 250
- Downloading, in-circuit emulator, 533
- DISPLAY subroutine, 255, 257, 354
- Duplex transmission, 413–14
 - full duplex, 414
 - half duplex, 413
- DW, assembler directive, 161
- Dynamic debugging
 - breakpoint, 196–97
 - register examine, 196
 - single step, 196
- Dynamic memory, 468–78
 - circuit design, 471–73
 - CAS, generating, 473, 477
 - RAS, generating, 472, 476
 - interfacing, 2118 with Z80, example of, 475–78
 - interfacing, 470
 - refreshing technique, 474, 478
 - structure of, 468
- EBCDIC, 19
- Editor, CP/M, 156–57
- 8-bit microprocessors
 - Hitachi HD64180, 551
 - Intel 8008, 550
 - Intel 8085, 71–74
 - Motorola MC6800, 74–75, 550
 - National Semiconductor NSC800, 74
 - Z280, 551, 554
 - Z8001, 550
 - Z80, 550
- 18-bit microprocessor, 7, 9
- 80386 microprocessor, 549
- 8253. *See* Intel 8253 interval timer/counter
- 8255A. *See* Intel 8255A
- EI instructions, 578
- Electrically Erasable PROM (EE-PROM), 43, 44
- Emulation process, 532
- Enable Interrupt, 296
- Encoder, keyboard, 519–20
- END, assembler directive, 161, 163
- EQU, assembler directive, 161, 163
- Erasable Programmable Read-Only Memory (EPROM), 43, 506
- Error messages, of assembler, 164
- Exchange, 239
 - 16-bit operations, 264–65
- Exchange instructions, 239, 264, 265
- Executing instructions, microprocessor, 30
- EX instructions, 239, 264, 578–79
- Extended, addressing mode, 138, 173
- Externally initiated operations, microprocessor unit (MPU), 28–29
- External requests, Z80, 59–60
- EXX instructions, 133, 239, 580
- Fetching instructions, microprocessor, 30
- Fields, 160
- File, 155
- File management utilities, 156

- Flag register, 53–55
 - alternate flag register, 55
- Flags, 562
 - add/subtract flag, 56
 - carry flag, 55
 - decision making, use in, 180–81
 - examining/manipulating, example program, 239–41
 - function of, 181
 - half-carry flag, 56
 - and jump instructions, 183
 - parity/overflow flag, 55–56
 - setting flags, 189
 - and signed numbers, 181–82
 - sign flag, 55
 - zero flag, 55
- Flip-flops, 52
 - See also* Flags.
- Floppy disks, 13, 152–54
 - sectors/tracks of, 153–54
- Flowcharting, 143–46
 - data transfer example, 192, 194
 - steps, designating blocks, 191
 - symbols used in, 144–45
- FORMAT, 159
- Forward jump, 186, 187
- 4-byte instruction, 131
- Framing, 413
- Frequency shift keying, modems, 417
- Function generator, computer as,
 - example program, 218–21
- Function module, software design, 528–30
- General-purpose registers, 55
- Half-carry flag, 56
- HALT instructions, 136, 149, 170, 171, 175, 580
- Handshake mode, Intel 8255A, 366
- Handshake signals, 291–92, 330
 - PIO, 339–40, 343
- Hard disk, 154
- Hardware, 4
- Hardware model (Z80), 57–61
 - address bus, 59
 - control signals, 59, 68–69
 - data bus, 59
 - external requests, 59–60
 - hex decoder/driver, 510–11
 - power/frequency signals, 61
 - request acknowledgment, 60
 - special signals, 60
- Hex code, 143
 - translated from mnemonics, 139, 140–41
 - translated into binary, 141
- HEX files, 157, 158, 165
 - Hex keyboard, 9
- High-level languages, 17, 20–21
 - compiler, 20
 - types of, 20
- Home computers, 14
- IBMDOS, 159
- IM instructions, 580–81
- Immediate, addressing mode, 137, 138, 170, 172
- Immediate extended addressing mode, 137, 138, 171
- Implied addressing, 138
 - See also* Logic operations.
- INC instructions, 134, 138, 147, 178, 582–83
- In-circuit emulator, 532
 - and emulation process, 532
 - features of, 532–33
 - debugging tools, 533
 - downloading, 533
 - resource sharing, 533
- Increment/decrement, 134
 - instructions for, 178
- Indexed, addressing mode, 138
- Index registers (IX and IY), 56, 187–89
 - instructions, 188–89
- Indexing, 189
- IND instructions, 582–83
- INDR instructions, 149, 583–84
- INI instructions, 584
 - input devices, interfacing, 108–9
- IN instructions, 133, 176, 581
- INIR instructions, 585
- Initialization
 - flowcharts, 191
 - PIO, 342–43
 - software design, 527
- In-line assembly, debugging tool, 533
- Input devices
 - keyboards
 - ASCII keyboard, 9
 - hexadecimal keyboard, 9
- Input devices (interfacing), 107–11
 - IN instruction, 108–9
 - execution/timing of, 108–9
 - machine cycles, 108–9
 - input switches, interfacing, 110–11
 - steps in, 109
- Input/output (I/O) modes
 - parallel I/O, 101
 - serial I/O, 101
- Input/output (I/O), explanation of, 5
- Input/output (I/O) interfacing, 101–22
 - data transfer (microprocessor controlled), 291–92
 - data transfer with interrupt, 291
 - data transfer with handshake signals, 291–92
 - data transfer with status check (polling), 291
 - data transfer with WAIT signal, 291
 - unconditional data transfer, 291
- data transfer (peripheral-controlled), 292
- of dc motor, 119–20
- diagnostic routine, 120
- memory-mapped I/O, 111–16, 290, 291
 - appliance control using, 113–16
 - data transfer instructions, execution, 112–13
- parallel I/O mode, 101, 290–91
- parallel-to-serial conversion, 291
- peripheral-mapped I/O, 44–45, 101, 290, 291
 - interfacing LEDs, example of, 105–7
 - switches as input device, example of, 110–11
- questions related to, 121–22
- serial I/O mode, 101, 290, 291
- of temperature sensor, 117–19
- See also* Input devices, interfacing; Output devices, interfacing.
- Instructions, 130–39, 143, 170–89
 - arithmetic operations, 133–34, 147, 177–82
 - bit manipulation, 135, 148
 - branching operations, 136, 148, 182–87
 - data copy operations, 132–33, 146–47, 170–77
 - 4-byte instruction, 131
 - listing of instructions, 562–619
 - logic operations, 135, 148
 - machine control operations, 136, 149
 - mnemonic, 18
 - 1-byte instruction, 130–31
 - repetitive instructions, 149
 - special instructions
 - Compare instructions, 223–24
 - for multiple tasks, 197–98
 - repetitive instructions, 149
 - stack, 235–38
 - subroutines, 241–42
 - 3-byte instruction, 131
 - 2-byte instruction, 131
 - Z80, 61
 - See also* specific operations.

- Instruction set, 130
 - Intel 8086/8088, 545
 - Motorola MC68000, 547–48
- Integrated circuits (IC), 7
- Integrated RAM, 44
- Intel 2920 analog signal processor, 540
- Intel 4004, 7
- Intel 8008, 7
- Intel 80186/80286, 548
- Intel 8085, 71–74
- Intel 8086/8088
 - coprocessing, 545
 - instruction set, 545
 - memory segmentation, 542–44
 - simultaneous processing, 544
- Intel 8251A
 - serial I/O
 - control register, 428, 429
 - control signals, 428
 - data register, 428, 429
 - elements of chips, 425–27
 - interfacing RS-232 terminal, example program, 435–39
 - programming of, 431–35
 - receiver section, 431
 - status register, 428
 - transmitter section, 430–31
- Intel 8253 interval timer/counter, 401–7
 - compared to Z80 CTC, 407
 - control signals, 402
 - control words, 403
 - data bus buffer, 402
 - programming of, 403–5
 - as square wave generator, 405–7
- Intel 8255A
 - BSR mode, 366, 371, 373
 - compared to PIO, 378–79
 - control logic, 367, 369
 - control words, 369–70, 371, 373, 374, 378
 - handshake mode, 366
 - interfacing with A/D converter, 371–79
 - Mode 0, 370, 373
 - Mode 1, 374, 376–78
 - Mode 2, 378
- Intel MCS-51 single-chip microcomputer, 539–40
- Interfacing, 290
 - See also* Input/output (I/O)
 - interfacing; Memory interfacing; Programmable interface devices.
- Interpreter, 20
- Interrupt Enable flip-flops, 295, 297, 300
- Interrupt Enable word, PIO, 341–42
- Interrupts, 293–324
 - counter/timer circuit (CTC), 392–94, 400
 - data transmission, Z80 and DART, 453–54, 455–57
 - explanation of, 294–95
 - steps in process, 299–300
 - telephone analogy, 294–95, 299
 - implementation issues, 305–7
 - Interrupt Request and Acknowledge, 300, 303
 - maskable interrupt, 293, 295–96
 - Disable Interrupt, 296
 - Enable Interrupt, 296
 - Interrupt Enable flip-flops, 295, 297, 300
 - interrupt mode, instructions for, 296
 - Mode 0, 296, 298–300
 - illustration of, 302–7
 - Mode 1, 296
 - illustration of, 307–13
 - Mode 2, 296, 313–15
 - in MPU design, 504
 - multiple interrupts, 318–22
 - interrupt vector technique, 320–22
 - polling method, 318–20
 - nonmaskable interrupt, 293, 295, 297, 315–17
 - PIO, 341–42, 343–44
 - Restart (RST) instructions, 297–98, 300, 302, 307
 - breakpoint technique, 322–24
 - and single-board microcomputers, 305
- Interrupt vectors
 - interrupt vector register (I), 56
 - interrupt vector technique, multiple interrupts, 320–22
 - PIO, 341–42
- JP instructions, 136, 139, 148, 183, 264, 585–86
- JR instructions, 138, 186, 587–88
- Jump, 136
 - instructions, 182–87
 - absolute jump, 182–86
 - relative jump, 186–87
- Keyboards
 - ASCII keyboard, 9
 - hexadecimal keyboard, 9
 - interfacing with seven-segment LED, bidirectional data transfer, 348–59
- KYBRD subroutine, 354, 514–16
- KYCHK subroutine, 350, 352
- KYCODE subroutine, 351, 352, 353
- KYPUSH subroutine, 350
- Labels, 143, 160, 163, 192–93
- Languages (computer)
 - alphanumeric codes, 19
 - ASCII, 19
 - EBCDIC, 19
 - assembly language, 17, 18, 19–20
 - writing/execution of, 19–20
 - Z80 assembly language, 18–19
 - high-level languages, 17, 20–21
 - compiler, use of, 20
 - types of, 20
 - machine language, 16, 17–18
 - Z80 machine language, 17–18
 - See also* Assembly language programming.
- Large-Scale Integration (LSI), 7, 8
- LDD instructions, 197, 596
- LDDR instructions, 197, 597
- LDI instructions, 197, 597–98
- LD instructions, 130, 131, 133, 138, 140, 146–47, 170–71, 172–73, 174–75, 234, 235, 236, 264, 589–95
- LDIR instructions, 197, 198–99, 599–600
- LEDs (Light Emitting Diodes), 5, 9, 44
 - interfacing, 105–7
 - seven-segment codes, 254, 255
- LIFO sequence, 238, 239
- Line drivers, RS-232C, 420, 436
- Line receivers, RS-232C, 420, 436–37
- Linking loading, 165
 - CP/M, 157
- Load operations, 132–33, 146–47
 - See also* Data copy operations.
- Logic operations, 135, 148, 208–12
 - AND instructions, 208, 209
 - compare, 135
 - instructions for, 212–13
 - logic functions, 135
 - OR instructions, 208, 209
 - rotate, instructions for, 213–15
 - rotate and shift, instructions for, 215–16
 - shift and rotate, 135
 - XOR instructions, 208, 209
- Logic state analyzer, 533–34
- LOOKUP subroutine, 255–56, 257
- Looping, 189
- LOOP subroutine, 256–57
- Machine code, static debugging, 194, 196
- Machine control operations, 136, 149
- Machine cycles, 464–65
 - definition of, 62

- Machine cycles (*continued*)
 - memory read machine cycle, 65–67, 68
 - memory write cycle, 67–68
 - opcode fetch machine cycles, 62–64, 68
 - T-states in, 62, 70
- Machine language, 16, 17–18
 - Z80 machine language, 17–18
- Mainframe computers, 12
- Maskable interrupt, 293, 295–96
 - Disable Interrupt, 296
 - Enable Interrupt, 296
 - Interrupt Enable flip-flops, 295, 297, 300
- Masked ROM, 43
- Matrix keyboard, 355–57
 - interfacing, 356–57
 - hardware approach, 519–20
 - interfacing circuit, 513
 - problem areas, 514
 - program for, 513–17
- Medium-Scale Integration (MSI), 7
- Memory, 32–44
 - classification of, 41–42
 - prime memory, 41
 - storage memory, 41
 - data copy, from and into memory, 172–75
 - designing system, 478–84
 - address decoding, 480, 482–83
 - EPROM memory, 506
 - issues related to, 478–80
 - PROM decoding, 484–85
 - Read/Write (R/W) memory, 506–7
 - Direct Memory Access (DMA), 484–91
 - dynamic memory, 468–78
 - explanation of, 5, 10, 32–36
 - memory chip, 33, 36
 - memory map, 37–40
 - MPU, writing/reading, 40–41
 - new advancements, 43–44
 - Integrated RAM, 44
 - Non-Volatile RAM, 44
 - Zero Power RAM, 43–44
 - Random-Access Memory (RAM), 10
 - Read-Only Memory (ROM), 10, 32, 42–43
 - Electrically Erasable PROM (EE-PROM), 43, 44
 - Erasable Programmable Read-Only Memory (EPROM), 43
 - masked ROM, 43
 - Programmable Read-Only Memory (PROM), 43
 - Read/Write Memory (R/W), 10, 32, 41–42
 - rotate instructions, 213–15
 - Memory addresses, 143
 - high-order/low-order addresses, 39–40
 - Memory interfacing, 83–97
 - address decoding, 86–87
 - design factors, 92–94
 - circuit analysis, 93–94
 - diagnostic routine, 94–95
 - problem analysis, 93
 - problem statement, 93
 - dynamic memory, 470, 475–78
 - function of, 83
 - MOSTEK MK4802, 90–92
 - absolute vs. linear decoding, 92
 - interfacing circuit, 90–91
 - memory map, 92
 - questions related to, 95–97
 - requirements of microprocessor, 83–86
 - 2732 EPROM, 87–90
 - interfacing circuit, 88–89
 - memory map, 89–90
 - wait states, 464–69
 - generation of, 466–68
 - Memory map, memory interfacing, 89–90, 92
 - Memory-mapped I/O, 111–16
 - appliance control using, 113–16
 - data transfer instructions, 112–13
 - Memory pointers, 55
 - index registers, 187–89
 - Memory read machine cycle, 65–67, 68
 - Memory refresh register (R), 56
 - Memory segmentation, Intel 8086/8088, 542–44
 - Memory write cycle, 67–68
 - Microcomputers, 12
 - components of
 - input/output (I/O) devices, 44–45
 - memory, 32–44
 - microprocessor unit (MPU), 26–32
 - organization of, 8–10
 - input, 9
 - memory, 10
 - microprocessor, 8
 - output, 9–10
 - system bus, 10
 - program execution, 10–11, 45–46
 - Microcontroller, 4
 - See also* Single-chip microcomputers.
 - Microprocessors
 - areas of
 - arithmetic/logic unit (ALU), 8
 - control unit, 9
 - register array, 9
 - binary digits, 4–5, 16
 - as a central processing unit (CPU), 6
 - and computer language, 16–21
 - assembly language, 17, 18, 19–20
 - compiler, use of, 20
 - machine language, 16, 17–18
 - explanation of, 4–5
 - and input/output, 5
 - instruction set, 16, 17
 - and memory, 5
 - and microcomputer system, 8–11
 - as programmable devices, 5
 - and semiconductor technology, 7
 - types available, 7, 9
- Microprocessor unit (MPU), 26–32
 - clock signals, 29–30
 - externally initiated operations, 28–29
 - and instructions, 30
 - decoding instructions, 30
 - executing instructions, 30
 - fetching instructions, 30
 - and memory, writing/reading, 40–41
 - program-initiated operations, 27–28
 - address bus, 27–28
 - control signals, 28
 - data bus, 28
 - operations in, 27
 - See also* Hardware model.
- Microprogramming, 9
- Micro-Trainer, 637–40
- Midicomputers, 12
- Minicomputers, 12
- MLTPLY subroutine, 270, 285
- Mnemonics, 18
 - translated into hex code, 139, 140–41
- Mode 0, 296, 298–300
 - Intel 8255A, 370, 373
 - interrupts, illustration of, 302–7
 - PIO, 333, 340
- Mode 1, 296
 - Intel 8255A, 374, 376–78
 - interrupts, illustration of, 307–13
 - PIO, 333, 339–40
- Mode 2, 296, 313–15
 - Intel 8255A, 378
 - PIO, 333, 343, 359–66
- Mode 3, PIO, 333, 344–48
- Mode instruction, 428
- Mode 0, 296, 298–300
 - Intel 8255A, 370, 373
 - interrupts, illustration of, 302–7

- Mode 0 (*continued*)
 - PIO, 333, 340
- Modular approach, 234, 257–58
 - advantages of, 258
 - debugging, 258
- Modulo-2 arithmetic, 629–30
- MOSTEK MK4802, memory
 - interfacing, 90–92
- Motorola MC6800, 74–75
- Motorola MC68000
 - asynchronous signals, 548
 - instruction set, 547–48
 - nonsegmented memory, 547
 - synchronous signals, 548
- Motors, dc, I/O interfacing of, 119–20
- MS-DOS, 158–59
 - COMMAND, 159
 - and cross-assemblers, 159
 - IBMDOS, 159
 - ROM-BIOS, 159
- Multibyte numbers, adding, example program, 268–69
- Multiple call subroutine, 249, 251
- Multiple ending subroutine, 252, 281
- Multiple interrupts, 318–22
 - interrupt vector technique, 320–22
 - polling method, 318–20
- Multiplexing, 357–59
- Multiplication, binary multiplication, 269–71
- Multi-user systems, 32-bit microprocessors, 549
- NAND gate, 635
- National Semiconductor NSC800, 74
- NEG instructions, 134, 179, 599
- Nested subroutine, 251
- NEXTKY, 355
- Nibble, 16
- NOADD, 271
- Nonmaskable interrupt, 293, 295, 297, 315–17
- Nonsegmented memory, Motorola MC68000, 547
- Non-Volatile RAM, 44
- NOP instructions, 149, 599
- NOR gate, 634
- Number conversion, 621–23
 - convert from binary into hexadecimal/octal, 622–23
- NXTBIT 270, 273
- Object code, 20
- 1-byte instruction, 130–31
- 1's and 2's complement, 134
 - instructions for, 179
- Opcode fetch machine cycle, 62–64, 68, 464–65
- Opcodes, 61, 70, 160
 - in instruction set, 130
- Operand, 61, 160
- Operating systems, 151, 155–56
 - CP/M, 155–58
 - MS-DOS, 158–59
- ORG, assembler directive, 161, 163
- OR gate, 633–34
- OR instructions, 208, 209, 600
- OTDR instructions, 149
- OTIR instructions, 602–3
- OUTD instructions, 601
- OUTI instructions, 602
- OUT instructions, 133, 176, 600–601
 - output devices, interfacing, 102–4
- Output
 - flowcharts, 191
- Output devices, 5, 10
- Output devices (interfacing)
 - LEDs
 - interfacing, 105–7
 - interfacing circuit, 106–7
 - Out instruction, 102–4
 - execution/timing of, 103–4
 - machine cycles, 103
 - steps in, 104–5
- OUTR instructions, 601–2
- Packed BCD, 253
- PACK subroutine, 284, 285
- Page zero, addressing mode, 138
- Parallel Input/Output (PIO) device, 329
 - See also* PIO.
- Parallel I/O mode, 101, 290–91, 411
- Parallel-to-serial conversion, 291, 411
- Parameter passing, 246, 248, 250
- Parity check, 280
 - error checks, data transmission, 415–16
- Parity/overflow flag, 56, 181, 182, 183, 225
- Peripheral-mapped I/O, 101
 - examples of
 - interfacing, LEDs, 105–7
 - switches as input device, 110–11
- Peripherals, 6, 289
 - asynchronous format, 290
 - interrupts, 293–324
 - programmable interface devices, 329–79
 - synchronous format, 290
 - See also* Input/output (I/O)
 - interfacing; specific topics.
- Phase shift keying, modems, 417
- PIO
 - bidirectional data transfer, 359–66
 - compared to Intel 8255A, 378–79
 - control words, 337–39, 347–48
 - daisy chain priority, 343–44
 - handshake signals, 339–40, 343
 - initialization, 342–43
 - interrupt enable word, 341–42
 - interrupt vector, 341–42
 - keyboard/seven-segment display, 348–59
 - Mode 0, 333, 344–48
 - Mode 1, 333, 339–40
 - Mode 2, 333, 343, 359–66
 - Mode 3, 333, 344–48
 - signals, 335–36
- Polling, 291
 - multiple interrupts, method for, 318–20
- POP instructions, 234, 235, 236, 238, 239, 603
- Positional weighing, 274
- Power/frequency signals, 61
- Preferred logic symbols, 633–35
 - AND gate, 634
 - inverters/bubble matching, 635
 - NAND gate, 635
 - NOR GATE, 634
 - OR gate, 633–34
- PRN file, 157, 158, 165
- Program, 4
- Program assembly, CP/M, 158
- Program coding, software design, 530
- Program counter (PC), 56
- Program development utilities, 156
- Program documentation, 142–43
- Program-initiated operations, microprocessor unit (MPU), 27–28
- Programmable interface devices, 329–79
 - bidirectional data transfer, 330, 343
 - handshake signals in, 330
 - Intel 8255A, 367–79
 - BSR mode, 366, 371, 373
 - compared to PIO, 378–79
 - control logic, 367, 369
 - control words, 369–70, 371, 373, 374, 378
 - handshake mode, 366
 - interfacing with A/D converter, example program, 371–79
 - Mode 0, 370, 373
 - Mode 1, 374, 376–78
 - Mode 2, 378
- PIO, 333–66
 - bidirectional data transfer, example program, 359–66
 - compared to Intel 8255A, 378–79
 - control words, 337–39, 347–48
 - daisy chain priority, 343–44
 - handshake signals, 339–40, 343

- Programmable interface devices
 - (*continued*)
 - initialization, 342–43
 - interrupt enable word, 341–42
 - interrupt vector, 341–42
 - keyboard/seven-segment display, example program, 348–59
 - Mode 0, 333, 340
 - Mode 1, 333, 339–40
 - Mode 2, 333, 343, 359–66
 - Mode 3, 333, 344–48
 - 74LS234 bidirectional buffer, 331–33
 - signals, categories of, 335–36
- Programmable Read-Only Memory (PROM), 43
 - decoding, 484–85
- Programming model (Z80), 52–57
 - components for programming
 - accumulator, 52
 - alternate registers, 55
 - flag register, 53–55
 - general-purpose registers, 55
 - index registers (IX and IY), 56
 - interrupt vector register (I), 56
 - memory refresh register (R), 56
 - program counter (PC), 56
 - 16-bit registers, as memory pointers, 55
 - stack pointer (SP), 56
 - illustration of use, 57
- Programming statements, 160
 - delimiters, 160
 - fields, 160
- Pseudo operations, 161
- PUSH instructions, 133, 234, 235, 236, 237, 239, 604
- Random-Access Memory (RAM), 10
- RD-423A, serial I/O mode, 418, 420
- Reading the keyboard, software design, 528
- Read-Only Memory (ROM), 10, 32, 42–43
 - Electrically Erasable PROM (EE-PROM), 43, 44
 - Erasable Programmable Read-Only Memory (EPROM), 43
 - masked ROM, 43
 - Programmable Read-Only Memory (PROM), 43
- Read Registers, data transmission, Z80 and DART, 446, 451
- Read/Write (R/W) Memory, 10, 32, 41–42, 82–83, 506–07
 - requirements of, 83
- Real-time trace, debugging tool, 533
- Receiver section
 - serial I/O mode
 - Intel 8251A, 431
 - Z80 and DART, 444, 446
- Refreshing technique, dynamic memory, 474, 478
- Registers
 - addressing mode, 137, 138, 170, 172, 173
 - data copy
 - among registers, 170–72
 - between Z80 and memory, 172–75
 - register array, 9
 - register display, debugging tool, 533
 - register examine, dynamic debugging, 196
 - register indirect, 138, 172, 173
 - rotate instructions, 213–15
 - See also* Programming model (Z80).
- Relative, addressing mode, 138
- Relative jump instructions, 186–87, 213
 - conditional relative jump, 186
 - forward/backward jump, 186, 187
 - unconditional relative jump, 186, 187
- REL files, 157, 158, 165
- Repetitive techniques, 149, 189–90
 - counting, 189
 - example programs, 190–94
 - indexing, 189
 - looping, 189
 - setting flags, 189
- Request acknowledgment, Z80, 60
- RES instructions, 135, 149, 216, 604–5
- Resource sharing, in-circuit emulator, 533
- Restart (RST) instructions, 136, 297–98, 300, 302, 307
 - breakpoint technique, 322–24
- RESULT subroutine, 273
- RET instructions, 148, 241–42, 307, 605–6
- RET subroutine, 241, 242, 244–45
- RETI instructions, 307, 606
- RETN instructions, 606
- RL instructions, 149, 215, 608
- RLA instructions, 148, 606–7
- RLCA instructions, 148, 607
- RLC instructions, 135, 149, 215, 608–9
- RLD instructions, 609
- ROM-BIOS, 159
- Rotate, instructions for, 213–15
- Rotate and shift, 135
 - instructions for, 215–16
- RR instructions, 215, 611
- RRA instructions, 135, 148, 609
- RRC instructions, 215, 611–12
- RRCA instructions, 148, 610–11
- RRD instructions, 612
- RS-232C
 - interfacing with Intel 8251A, example program, 435–39
 - interfacing with Z80 and DART, 455–59
 - serial I/O mode, 418, 419–20
 - interface requirements, 420
 - line drivers, 420, 436
 - line receivers, 420, 436–37
 - signals, 419
- RS-422A, serial I/O mode, 418, 420
- RST instructions, 136, 138, 297–302, 613
- S-100 bus, 554–56
 - interface, 555–56
- SBC instructions, 266, 613–14
- Scanned display
 - interfacing
 - hardware approach, 510–11
 - interfacing circuit, 507, 509
 - program for, 509–10
- SCF instructions, 267, 615
- Segment driver, 509
- Semiconductor technology, advancement of, 7, 11
- SEND subroutine, 364
- Sequential transfer, Direct Memory Access (DMA), 486
- Serial I/O mode, 101, 290, 291, 411, 412–59, 413–15
 - asynchronous format, 413, 420–21
 - baud requirements, 414–15
 - duplex transmission, 413–14
 - error checks, 415–17
 - check sum, 416
 - cyclic redundancy check, 416–17
 - parity check, 415–16
 - framing, 413
 - hardware approach, 421
 - hardware approach (Intel 8251A), 425–39
 - control register, 428, 429
 - control signals, 428
 - data register, 428, 429
 - elements of chip, 425–27
 - interfacing RS-232 terminal, example program, 435–39
 - programming of, 431–35
 - receiver section, 431
 - status register, 428
 - transmitter section, 430–31

- Serial I/O mode (*continued*)
 - hardware approach (Z80 SIO and DART), 439–57
 - control signals, 441–43
 - interfacing RS-232 terminal, example program, 455–57
 - interrupts, 453–54, 455–57
 - programming of, 446–52
 - Read Registers, 446, 451
 - receiver section, 444, 446
 - transmitter section, 444
 - versions of SIO, 439
 - Write Registers, 446, 449–50
 - interfacing requirements, 413
 - modem, 417
 - simple transmission, 413
 - software approach, 420, 421, 422–25
 - serial data reception, 425
 - serial data transmission, 422–23
 - standards used, 418–20
 - RS-232c, 418, 419–20
 - RS-422A, 418, 420
 - RS-423A, 418, 420
 - synchronous format, 413
- Serial-to-parallel conversion, 411
- Service subroutine, 300, 400–401
- Set carry flag, 54, 267
- SET instructions, 135, 138, 216, 615
- Setting flags, 189
- Seven-segment LED
 - components of, 352–53
 - interfacing with keyboard, bidirectional data transfer, 348–59
 - LED codes, 254, 255
- 74LS245 bidirectional buffer, 331–33
- Signature analyzer, 534
- Signed numbers, 626–27
- Sign flag, 55, 181, 182, 183, 225
- Simple transmission, 413
- Simultaneous processing, Intel 8086/8088, 544
- Simultaneous transfer, Direct Memory Access (DMA), 486
- Single-board microcomputer, 14–15, 496–534
 - design alternatives related to, 520–23
 - display in, 497
 - execute in, 497
 - instruments used
 - debugging tools, 533
 - in-circuit emulator, 532
 - logic state analyzer, 533–34
 - signature analyzer, 534
 - keyboard in, 497
 - matrix keyboard, 512–20
 - hardware approach, encoder, use of, 519–20
 - interfacing circuit, 513
 - problem areas, 514
 - program for, 513–17
 - memory design, 504–7
 - design considerations, 504–6
 - EPROM memory, 506
 - Read/Write (R/W) Memory, 506–7
 - Micro-Trainer, 637–40
 - MPU design, 497–504
 - address bus, 498–99
 - bus request, 504
 - control bus, 501
 - data bus, 499, 501
 - interrupts, 504
 - power requirements, 502
 - reset circuits, 502
 - WAIT signal, 504
 - prototype building/testing, 530–31
 - scanned display, 507–11
 - hardware approach, hex decoder/driver, use of, 510–11
 - interfacing circuit, 507, 509
 - program for, 509–10
 - software design modules, 526–31
 - display module, 527–28
 - function module, 528–30
 - initialization, 527
 - program coding, 530
 - reading the keyboard, 528
 - specifications for, 496
- Single-chip microcomputers, 15, 538–40
 - Intel 2920 analog signal processor, 540
 - Intel MCS-51 single-chip microcomputer, 539–40
 - Z80 microcomputer, 538
- Single step, dynamic debugging, 196
- Single-user systems, 32-bit microprocessors, 549
- 16-bit microprocessors, 7, 9, 540, 542–48
 - Intel 80186/80286, 548
 - Intel 8086/8088, 542–45
 - coprocessing, 545
 - instruction set, 545
 - memory segmentation, 542–44
 - simultaneous processing, 544
 - Motorola MC68000, 546–47
 - asynchronous signals, 548
 - instruction set, 547–48
 - nonsegmented memory, 547
 - synchronous signals, 548
 - objectives of, 542
- Z8000, 545–47
- 16-bit operations, 264–67
 - instructions
 - arithmetic instructions, 265–67
 - bit manipulation, 267
 - data copy instructions, 264
 - exchange instructions, 264–65
 - 16-bit registers, 55
 - SLA instructions, 149, 215, 216, 616
 - Small-Scale Integration (SSI), 7
- Software, 4
- Software design modules
 - display module, 527–28
 - function module, 528–30
 - initialization, 527
 - program coding, 530
 - reading the keyboard, 528
- Software design project, 282–85
- Software development system, 151, 152
 - components of, 152–53
 - floppy disks, 152–54
 - hard disk, 154
 - hardware, 152
 - operating systems, 155–56
 - CP/M, 155–58
 - MS-DOS, 158–59
- Source, 132
- Source code, 20
- Source file, 158
- Source program error messages, 164
- Special signals, Z80, 60
- SRA instructions, 616
- SRL instructions, 215, 617
- Stack, 233, 234–41
 - Exchange, instructions for, 239
 - flags, examining/manipulating, example program, 239–41
 - instructions for, 235–38
 - stack pointer, 234–35
- Stack pointer (SP), 56, 398
- Static debugging, 194, 196
- Static memory, interfacing, 470
- STORE subroutine, 279
- SUB instructions, 134, 147, 178, 617–18
- Subroutines, 241–58
 - BCD counter, example program, 252–57
 - documentation of, 250
 - instructions for, 241–42

- Subroutines (*continued*)
 - conditional instruction, 241–42, 243
 - unconditional instruction, 241–42, 244
 - modular approach, 234, 257–58
 - multiple call subroutine, 249, 251
 - multiple ending subroutine, 252
 - nested subroutine, 251
 - parameter passing, 246, 248, 250
 - traffic signal controller, example program, 245–49
- Subtraction, 134, 627
 - binary subtraction, 626
 - decimal subtraction, 623–25
 - instructions for, 177–78
 - 16-bit operations, subtraction with carry, 266–67
- SUM subroutine, 276
- Switches, 210–12
- Synchronous format, 290, 413
 - synchronous signals, Motorola MC68000, 548
- System display, 497
- Table look-up technique, 254
- Temperature sensor, I/O interfacing of, 117–19
- Temporary storage, flowcharts, 191
- Terminal error messages, 164
- 32-bit microprocessors, 7, 9, 548–50
 - 80386 microprocessor, 549
 - single-user systems, 549
 - Zilog Z80000 microprocessor, 549
- 3-byte instruction, 131
- Time delays, 218–20
 - waveform generating, example program, 218–21
- Timer mode, 395
 - baud generator design, example program, 395–97
 - See also* Counter/timer circuit (CTC).
- Traffic signal controller, example program, 245–49
- Transmitter section
 - serial I/O mode
 - Intel 8251A, 430–31
 - Z80 and DART, 444
- Tri-state buffer, 298
 - 74LS245 bidirectional buffer, 331–33
- T-state, 62
- 2732 EPROM, memory interfacing, 87–90
- 2-byte instruction, 131
- Unconditional absolute jump, 183
- Unconditional data transfer, 291
- Unconditional relative jump, 186, 187
- Universal Asynchronous Receiver/Transmitter (UART), 551, 554
- Universal Synchronous/Asynchronous Receiver/Transmitter (USART), 425
- Unpacking, 253, 255
- UNPACK subroutine, 255, 257, 275–76, 282
- UPDATE subroutine, 256, 257
- Upward software compatible, 7
- User display, 497
- Utility programs, categories of, 156
- Very-large-scale integration (VLSI), 7, 8
- WAIT signal
 - data transfer, 291
 - in MPU design, 504
- Wait states
 - memory interfacing, 464–68
 - generation of, 466–68
- WAIT subroutine, 256
- Waveforms, generating, example program, 218–21
- Words, 5, 130
 - definition of, 5, 16
- Write Registers, data transmission, Z80 and DART, 446, 449–50
- XOR instructions, 135, 208, 209, 618–19
- Z80
 - assembly language programming, 129–49
 - hardware model, 57–61
 - input/output (I/O) interfacing, 101–22
 - instructions, 61
 - opcode, 61, 70
 - operand, 61
 - machine cycles, 61–67, 70–71
 - definition of, 62
 - memory read machine cycle, 65–67, 68
 - memory write cycle, 67–68
 - opcode fetch machine cycle, 62–64, 68
 - T-states in, 62, 70
 - memory interfacing, 83–97
 - reading from/writing to memory, 40–41, 83
 - programming model, 52–57
 - questions related to, 69–71
 - See also* specific topics.
- Z80 assembly language, 18–19
- Z80 machine language, 17–18
- Z80 SIO and DART
 - serial I/O
 - control signals, 441–43
 - interfacing RS-232 terminal, 455–57
 - interrupts, 453–54, 455–57
 - programming of, 446–52
 - Read Registers, 446, 451
 - receiver section, 444, 446
 - transmitter section, 444
 - versions of SIO, 439
 - Write Registers, 446, 449–50
- Z80000 microprocessor, 549
- Zero flag, 55, 183, 225
- Zero Power RAM, 43–44

ISBN 0-675-20540-9



9 0000 >



9 780675 205405